



RICOH UNIVERSITY

Learning ♦ Knowledge ♦ Performance



B264/B265 **SERVICE MANUAL**

002527MIU

Gestetner **LANIER** **RICOH** **SAVIN**



B264/B265

SERVICE MANUAL

Gestetner[®]
LANIER
RICOH[®]
SAVIN[®]



RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ♦ Knowledge ♦ Performance

B264/B265

SERVICE MANUAL

002527MIU

Gestetner **LANIER** **RICOH** **SAVIN**

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Corporation and its member companies.

NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR PERMISSION OF RICOH CORPORATION.

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.

They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
B264	DSm735	LD 235	Aficio 3035	8035
B265	DSm745	LD 245	Aficio 3045	8045

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	10/2005	Original Printing

B264/B265

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....	1-1
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS	1-1
1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT	1-2
1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL	1-2
1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS.....	1-3
1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS	1-5
1.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART	1-6
1.3 MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION.....	1-7
1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-7
1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-8
Development Unit and PCU	1-10
Toner Bottle	1-13
Paper Trays	1-14
Initialize TD Sensor and Developer.....	1-16
Set Paper Size for Paper Trays	1-17
Electrical Total Counter.....	1-18
HDD Caution Decal.....	1-18
Exposure Glass Cleaner	1-19
1.4 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542)	1-20
1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-20
1.4.2 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-21
1.5 1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544)	1-25
1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-25
1.5.2 1-BIN TRAY INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....	1-26
1.6 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION (B538)	1-32
1.6.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-32
1.6.2 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-33
1.7 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION (B545).....	1-35
1.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-35
1.7.2 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....	1-36
1.8 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (B377)	1-39
1.8.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-39
1.8.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-40
1.9 ARDF INSTALLATION (B714).....	1-43
1.9.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-43
1.9.2 ARDF INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....	1-44
1.9.3 ARDF SKEW ADJUSTMENT	1-48
1.10 LCT INSTALLATION (B543).....	1-49
1.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1-49
1.10.2 LCT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....	1-50

1.11	PLATEN COVER INSTALLATION (G329)	1-52
1.12	BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION (B546)	1-53
1.12.1	ACCESSORY CHECK	1-53
1.12.2	BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-54
1.13	1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408)	1-59
1.13.1	ACCESSORY CHECK	1-59
1.13.2	1000 SHEET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-60
1.14	KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION	1-63
1.15	ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER	1-66
1.16	TRAY HEATER	1-68
1.17	TRAY HEATER (OPTIONAL PAPER TRAY UNIT)	1-69
1.18	DATA OVERWRITE SECURITY UNIT (B735)	1-70
1.18.1	SEAL CHECK AND REMOVAL	1-71
1.18.2	INSTALLATION	1-72
1.19	COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT (B770)	1-74
1.19.1	ACCESSORIES	1-74
1.19.2	INSTALLATION	1-75
1.20	SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION (B815)	1-76
1.20.1	ACCESSORIES	1-76
1.20.2	INSTALLATION	1-77
	Pre-installation	1-78
	On-Site Installation	1-84
1.21	CABINET INSTALLATION	1-88
1.22	USER ACCOUNT ENHANCEMENT UNIT TYPE E	1-91
1.22.1	INSTALLATION	1-91

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2.	PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE	2-1
2.1	PM TABLE	2-1

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.	REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	3-1
3.1	GENERAL CAUTIONS	3-1
3.1.1	LASER UNIT	3-1
3.1.2	USED TONER	3-1
3.2	SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS	3-2
3.2.1	SPECIAL TOOLS	3-2
3.2.2	LUBRICANTS	3-2
3.3	FRONT DOOR	3-3
3.4	DUPLEX UNIT	3-4
3.5	RIGHT UPPER COVER	3-5
3.6	BY-PASS TRAY UNIT	3-6
3.7	REAR COVERS	3-7
3.7.1	REAR UPPER COVER	3-7
3.7.2	REAR LOWER COVER	3-7

3.8	LEFT COVER	3-8
3.9	SCANNER UNIT	3-9
3.9.1	ARDF	3-9
3.9.2	EXPOSURE GLASS	3-10
3.9.3	SCANNER EXTERIOR PANELS, OPERATION PANEL	3-11
3.9.4	LENS BLOCK, SBU ASSEMBLY	3-12
3.9.5	ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS	3-13
3.9.6	EXPOSURE LAMP	3-14
3.9.7	SCANNER HP SENSOR/PLATEN COVER SENSOR	3-15
3.9.8	SCANNER MOTOR	3-16
3.9.9	LAMP STABILIZER AND SCANNER MOTOR DRIVE BOARD	3-17
3.9.10	SCANNER WIRE	3-18
3.10	LASER UNIT	3-22
3.10.1	CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS	3-22
3.10.2	LASER UNIT	3-23
3.10.3	POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR	3-25
3.10.4	LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR	3-26
3.10.5	LD UNIT	3-27
	Laser beam pitch adjustment	3-28
3.11	PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)	3-30
3.11.1	PCU	3-30
3.11.2	DRUM	3-31
3.11.3	PICK-OFF PAWLS	3-33
	Pick-off pawl position adjustment	3-33
3.11.4	CHARGE ROLLER AND CLEANING ROLLER	3-34
3.11.5	DRUM CLEANING BLADE 2	3-35
3.11.6	DRUM CLEANING BLADE 1	3-36
3.11.7	ID SENSOR	3-37
3.12	DEVELOPMENT	3-38
3.12.1	DEVELOPMENT UNIT	3-38
3.12.2	DEVELOPMENT FILTER	3-39
3.12.3	DEVELOPMENT ROLLER	3-40
3.12.4	DEVELOPER	3-41
3.12.5	TD SENSOR	3-43
3.13	TRANSFER UNIT	3-44
3.13.1	TRANSFER BELT UNIT	3-44
3.13.2	TRANSFER BELT	3-45
3.13.3	TRANSFER BELT CLEANING BLADE AND TONER OVERFLOW SENSOR	3-46
3.14	PAPER FEED	3-47
3.14.1	PICK-UP, SEPARATION, AND FEED ROLLERS	3-47
3.14.2	RIGHT LOWER COVER	3-48
3.14.3	RELAY/UPPER PAPER FEED AND LOWER PAPER FEED CLUTCHES	3-49
3.14.4	UPPER PAPER FEED UNIT FOR TRAY 1	3-50
3.14.5	LOWER PAPER FEED UNIT FOR TRAY 2	3-51
3.14.6	PAPER END/PAPER HEIGHT/RELAY SENSORS	3-52
3.14.7	REGISTRATION SENSOR	3-53
3.14.8	TRAY LIFT MOTOR	3-55

3.14.9	FEED/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR.....	3-56
3.14.10	IDLE ROLLER DUST BLADE.....	3-57
3.14.11	REGISTRATION ROLLER DUST BLADE	3-58
3.15	FUSING UNIT.....	3-59
3.15.1	FUSING UNIT REMOVAL	3-59
3.15.2	FUSING UNIT EXIT GUIDE	3-60
3.15.3	HOT ROLLER STRIPPERS	3-61
3.15.4	FUSING LAMPS.....	3-62
3.15.5	THERMISTORS AND THERMOSTATS	3-64
3.15.6	HOT ROLLER/PRESSURE ROLLER.....	3-65
3.15.7	FUSING UNIT SIDE FAN	3-67
3.15.8	FUSING UNIT CORNER FAN	3-69
3.16	BY-PASS TRAY	3-70
3.16.1	COVER REPLACEMENT	3-70
3.16.2	BY-PASS PAPER FEED AND PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT	3-71
3.16.3	BY-PASS SEPARATION ROLLER.....	3-72
3.16.4	PAPER END SENSOR, PICK-UP SOLENOID.....	3-73
3.16.5	PAPER SIZE SENSOR BOARD REPLACEMENT	3-74
3.16.6	BY-PASS TABLE REMOVAL	3-75
3.16.7	PAPER FEED CLUTCH REPLACEMENT.....	3-76
3.17	DUPLEX UNIT	3-77
3.17.1	DUPLEX COVER REMOVAL	3-77
3.17.2	DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR REPLACEMENT.....	3-78
3.17.3	DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR REPLACEMENT	3-79
3.18	DRIVE AREA.....	3-80
3.18.1	REGISTRATION CLUTCH, TRANSFER BELT CONTACT CLUTCH.....	3-80
3.18.2	MAIN MOTOR	3-81
3.18.3	FUSING/EXIT MOTOR.....	3-82
3.18.4	TONER SUPPLY MOTOR.....	3-83
3.19	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS	3-84
3.19.1	NVRAM.....	3-84
3.19.2	HIGH VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY	3-86
3.19.3	IOB	3-87
	IOB DIP Switch Settings (SW101)	3-88
3.19.4	BICU BOARD	3-89
3.19.5	PSU	3-90
3.20	HDD, CONTROLLER BOARD.....	3-91
3.21	COPY ADJUSTMENTS: PRINTING/SCANNING	3-92
3.21.1	PRINTING	3-92
	Registration - Leading Edge/Side-to-Side.....	3-92
	Blank Margin.....	3-93
	Main Scan Magnification.....	3-93
	Parallelogram Image Adjustment.....	3-94
3.21.2	SCANNING.....	3-95
	Registration: Platen Mode.....	3-95
	Magnification.....	3-95
3.21.3	ADF IMAGE ADJUSTMENT	3-96

Registration.....	3-96
3.21.4 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION	3-97

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING	4-1
4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS	4-1
4.1.1 SUMMARY	4-1
4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS	4-2
4.1.3 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS	4-3
4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS	4-30
4.2.1 SENSORS	4-30
4.2.2 SWITCHES.....	4-32
4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS	4-32
4.4 LEDS	4-33
4.5 TEST POINTS.....	4-33

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES.....	5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE.....	5-1
5.1.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION.....	5-1
Service Mode Lock/Unlock	5-1
SP Mode Button Summary	5-2
Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode For Test Printing	5-2
Selecting the Program Number.....	5-2
5.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES.....	5-4
5.2.1 SERVICE TABLE KEY	5-4
5.2.2 SERVICE MODE LOCK/UNLOCK.....	5-4
5.2.3 SERVICE TABLES	5-5
SP1-xxx: Feed	5-5
SP2-xxx: Drum.....	5-9
SP3-xxx: Process.....	5-19
SP4-xxx: Scanner	5-21
SP5-xxx: Mode	5-37
SP6-xxx: Peripherals	5-76
SP7-xxx: Data Log	5-78
SP8-xxx: Data Log2	5-84
5.2.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING: SP2-902.....	5-119
Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: IPU Test Print).....	5-119
Test Pattern Table: SP2-902-3 Printing Test Patterns	5-120
5.2.5 INPUT CHECK	5-121
Main Machine Input Check: SP5-803.....	5-121
ARDF Input Check: SP6-007	5-125
5.2.6 OUTPUT CHECK	5-126
Main Machine Output Check: SP5-804.....	5-126
ARDF Output Check: SP6-008)	5-128
5.2.7 SMC PRINT OUT LISTS: SP5-990.....	5-128

5.2.8 NIP BAND WIDTH ADJUSTMENT: SP1-109	5-129
5.2.9 MEMORY CLEAR: SP5-801.....	5-130
5.2.10 SOFTWARE RESET	5-132
5.2.11 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET	5-132
System Setting Reset	5-132
Copier Setting Reset.....	5-133
5.3 UPDATING THE FIRMWARE	5-134
5.4 UPLOADING/DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA.....	5-135
5.4.1 UPLOADING NVRAM DATA (SP5-824).....	5-135
5.4.2 DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA (SP5-825)	5-136
5.5 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE	5-137
5.5.1 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE AT POWER ON	5-137
5.5.2 DETAILED SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE	5-138
Executing Detailed Self-Diagnosis	5-138
5.6 USER PROGRAM MODE	5-140
5.6.1 HOW TO USE UP MODE.....	5-140
UP Mode Initial Screen: User Tools/Counter Display.....	5-140
System Settings.....	5-140
Copier/Document Server Features	5-141
Printer, Facsimile, Scanner Settings	5-141
Counter	5-142
5.7 DIP SWITCHES.....	5-143
5.8 USING THE DEBUG LOG.....	5-144
5.8.1 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG	5-144
5.8.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD	5-148
5.8.3 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY	5-148
5.8.4 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES	5-149
SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key	5-149
SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log	5-149
SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log	5-149

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	6-1
6.1 OVERVIEW	6-1
6.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT	6-1
6.1.2 PAPER PATH.....	6-3
6.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT	6-4
6.2 BOARD STRUCTURE.....	6-5
6.2.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM.....	6-5
6.2.2 CONTROLLER	6-7
6.3 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW.....	6-11
Exposure.....	6-11
Drum charge	6-11
Laser exposure	6-11
Development.....	6-11
Image transfer.....	6-12
Separation	6-12

ID sensor	6-12
Cleaning	6-12
Quenching	6-12
Cleaning	6-12
6.4 SCANNING	6-13
6.4.1 OVERVIEW	6-13
6.4.2 SCANNER DRIVE	6-14
Book Mode	6-14
ADF mode	6-14
6.4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION IN PLATEN MODE	6-15
6.5 IMAGE PROCESSING	6-17
6.5.1 OVERVIEW	6-17
6.5.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)	6-18
6.5.3 AUTO IMAGE DENSITY (ADS)	6-19
6.5.4 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)	6-20
Overview	6-20
6.5.5 IMAGE PROCESSING MODES	6-21
6.5.6 SUMMARY OF IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS	6-23
6.5.7 IMAGE PROCESSING STEPS AND RELATED SP MODES	6-24
Text Mode	6-24
Text/Photo Mode	6-25
Photo Mode	6-26
Pale (Low-Density Mode)	6-27
Generation Copy Mode	6-28
6.5.8 PRE-FILTERING	6-29
6.5.9 BACKGROUND ERASE	6-30
6.5.10 INDEPENDENT DOT ERASE	6-31
6.5.11 LINE WIDTH CORRECTION	6-32
6.5.12 FILTERING	6-33
Interactive SP Codes	6-33
Text Mode MTF Filter	6-38
Text/Photo, Photo Mode Filter	6-39
Pale, Generation Mode Filter	6-40
Photo Mode Smoothing for Dithering	6-41
Photo Mode Grayscale	6-41
Photo Mode Image Quality	6-42
6.5.13 OTHERS	6-43
Vertical Black Line Correction	6-43
Density Settings	6-43
ADS Level	6-44
6.5.14 PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF SP MODES	6-45
Solving Problems	6-45
Recommended Settings for MTF Filters	6-46
6.6 LASER EXPOSURE	6-48
6.6.1 OVERVIEW	6-48
6.6.2 AUTO POWER CONTROL (APC)	6-49
6.6.3 DUAL BEAM WRITING	6-50
6.6.4 LASER BEAM PITCH CHANGE MECHANISM	6-51
6.6.5 LD SAFETY SWITCHES	6-52

6.7	PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)	6-53
6.7.1	OVERVIEW	6-53
6.7.2	DRUM CLEANING	6-54
6.7.3	DRIVE MECHANISM	6-55
6.7.4	DRUM PAWLS	6-55
6.7.5	DRUM TONER SEALS	6-55
6.8	DRUM CHARGE	6-56
6.8.1	OVERVIEW	6-56
6.8.2	CHARGE ROLLER VOLTAGE CORRECTION	6-57
	Correction for Environmental Conditions	6-57
6.8.3	CORRECTION FOR PAPER WIDTH AND THICKNESS	6-58
6.8.4	ID SENSOR PATTERN PRODUCTION TIMING	6-59
6.8.5	DRUM CHARGE ROLLER CLEANING	6-59
6.9	DEVELOPMENT	6-60
6.9.1	OVERVIEW	6-60
6.9.2	DRIVE MECHANISM	6-61
6.9.3	DEVELOPER MIXING	6-61
6.9.4	DEVELOPMENT BIAS	6-62
	Mechanism	6-62
	Correction for paper width and thickness (by-pass tray only)	6-62
6.9.5	TONER SUPPLY	6-63
	Toner bottle replenishment mechanism	6-63
	Toner supply mechanism	6-64
	Toner Scatter Prevention	6-65
	Sensor Control Mode	6-66
	Image Pixel Count Mode	6-67
6.9.6	TONER NEAR END/END DETECTION	6-67
	Toner Near End	6-67
	Toner End	6-67
6.9.7	TONER END RECOVERY	6-68
6.9.8	TONER SUPPLY WITH ABNORMAL SENSORS	6-68
6.10	DRUM CLEANING AND TONER RECYCLING	6-69
6.10.1	DRUM CLEANING	6-69
6.10.2	TONER RECYCLING	6-69
6.11	PAPER FEED	6-70
6.11.1	OVERVIEW	6-70
6.11.2	PAPER FEED DRIVE	6-71
6.11.3	PICK-UP AND SEPARATION ROLLER RELEASE MECHANISM	6-71
6.11.4	PAPER LIFT	6-72
6.11.5	PAPER END DETECTION	6-73
6.11.6	PAPER REGISTRATION	6-74
6.11.7	PAPER SIZE DETECTION	6-75
6.12	BY-PASS TRAY	6-76
6.12.1	OVERVIEW	6-76
6.12.2	BY-PASS TRAY OPERATION	6-77
6.12.3	BY-PASS PAPER SIZE DETECTION	6-78
6.13	DUPLEX UNIT	6-79
6.13.1	OVERVIEW	6-79

6.13.2	DUPLEX DRIVE LAYOUT	6-80
6.13.3	DUPLEX BASIC OPERATION	6-81
	Longer than A4 lengthwise/LT lengthwise	6-81
	Up to A4 lengthwise/LT lengthwise	6-81
6.13.4	DUPLEX UNIT FEED IN AND EXIT MECHANISM.....	6-82
	Feed-in.....	6-82
	Inversion and Exit	6-82
6.14	IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION	6-83
6.14.1	OVERVIEW	6-83
6.14.2	BELT DRIVE MECHANISM.....	6-84
6.14.3	TRANSFER BELT UNIT CONTACT MECHANISM.....	6-84
6.14.4	IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION MECHANISM.....	6-85
6.14.5	TRANSFER BELT CHARGE	6-86
	Mechanism	6-86
	Correction for paper width and thickness.....	6-87
	Currents applied to leading edge, image areas - by-pass feed	6-88
6.14.6	TRANSFER BELT CLEANING MECHANISM	6-89
6.15	IMAGE FUSING AND PAPER EXIT	6-90
6.15.1	OVERVIEW	6-90
6.15.2	FUSING DRIVE	6-91
6.15.3	FUSING DRIVE RELEASE MECHANISM.....	6-91
6.15.4	FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE SHIFT MECHANISM.....	6-92
6.15.5	EXIT GUIDE PLATE AND DE-CURLER ROLLERS	6-92
6.15.6	PRESSURE ROLLER.....	6-93
6.15.7	CLEANING MECHANISM	6-94
6.15.8	HOT ROLLER STRIPPER CLEANING.....	6-95
	Small Jobs	6-95
	Medium Jobs	6-96
	Large Jobs	6-96
	SP Settings for Post-Job Cleaning.....	6-97
6.15.9	FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL.....	6-98
	Temperature Control.....	6-99
	Fusing Idling Temperature	6-100
6.15.10	CPM DOWN FOR THICK PAPER.....	6-101
6.15.11	COOLING AND OVERHEAT PROTECTION	6-102
6.15.12	OVERHEAT PROTECTION	6-103
6.16	ENERGY SAVER MODES	6-104
6.16.1	OVERVIEW	6-104
6.16.2	ENERGY SAVER MODE.....	6-105
	Entering the energy saver mode	6-105
	What happens in energy saver mode	6-105
	Return to stand-by mode	6-105
6.16.3	AUTO OFF MODE.....	6-106
	Entering off stand-by and off modes	6-106
	Off Stand-by mode.....	6-106
	Off Mode	6-107
	Returning to stand-by mode.....	6-107

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATIONS	7-1
1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS.....	7-1
2. MACHINE CONFIGURATION	7-3
3. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT	7-5

PUNCH UNIT B377

SEE SECTION B377 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

1000-SHEET FINISHER B408

SEE SECTION B408 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BRIDGE UNIT B538

SEE SECTION B538 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAPER TRAY UNIT B542

SEE SECTION B542 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

LARGE CAPACITY TRAY B543

SEE SECTION B543 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

1-BIN TRAY B544

SEE SECTION B544 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

TWO-TRAY FINISHER B545

SEE SECTION B545 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BOOKLET FINISHER B546

SEE SECTION B546 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER B714

SEE SECTION B714 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

FAX OPTION B779

SEE SECTION B779 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRINTER/SCANNER OPTION B783

SEE SECTION B783 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
5. If the Start key is pressed before the copier completes the warm-up period (the Start key starts blinking red and green alternatively), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
6. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

1. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The NVRAM on the system control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

1. **SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL**

Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.

2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

LASER SAFETY

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

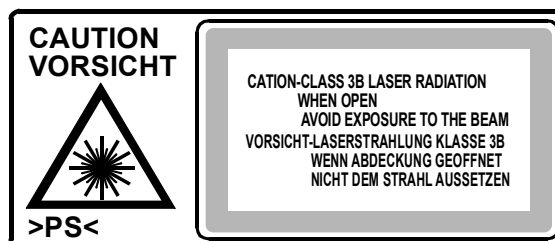
WARNING

Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

WARNING

WARNING: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

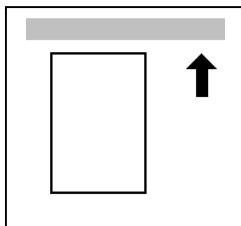
CAUTION MARKING:



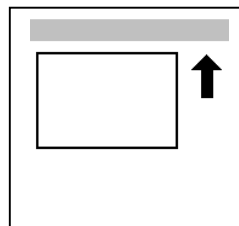
Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	See Core Tech Manual for details
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Lengthwise, SEF
(Short Edge Feed)



Sideways, LEF
(Long Edge Feed)

Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

 WARNING
FAILURE TO OBEY WARNING INFORMATION COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.

 CAUTION
Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

NOTE: This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

INSTALLATION	
	AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER B714
	FAX OPTION B779

**TAB
POSITION 1**

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE	
	PAPER TRAY UNIT B542

**TAB
POSITION 2**

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	
	LARGE CAPACITY TRAY B543

**TAB
POSITION 3**

TROUBLESHOOTING	
	PUNCH UNIT B377
	1000-SHEET FINISHER B408
	TWO-TRAY FINISHER B545
	BOOKLET FINISHER B546
	PRINTER/SCANNER OPTION B783

**TAB
POSITION 4**

SERVICE TABLES	

**TAB
POSITION 5**

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	

**TAB
POSITION 6**

SPECIFICATIONS	
	1-BIN TRAY B544

**TAB
POSITION 7**

	BRIDGE UNIT B538

**TAB
POSITION 8**

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

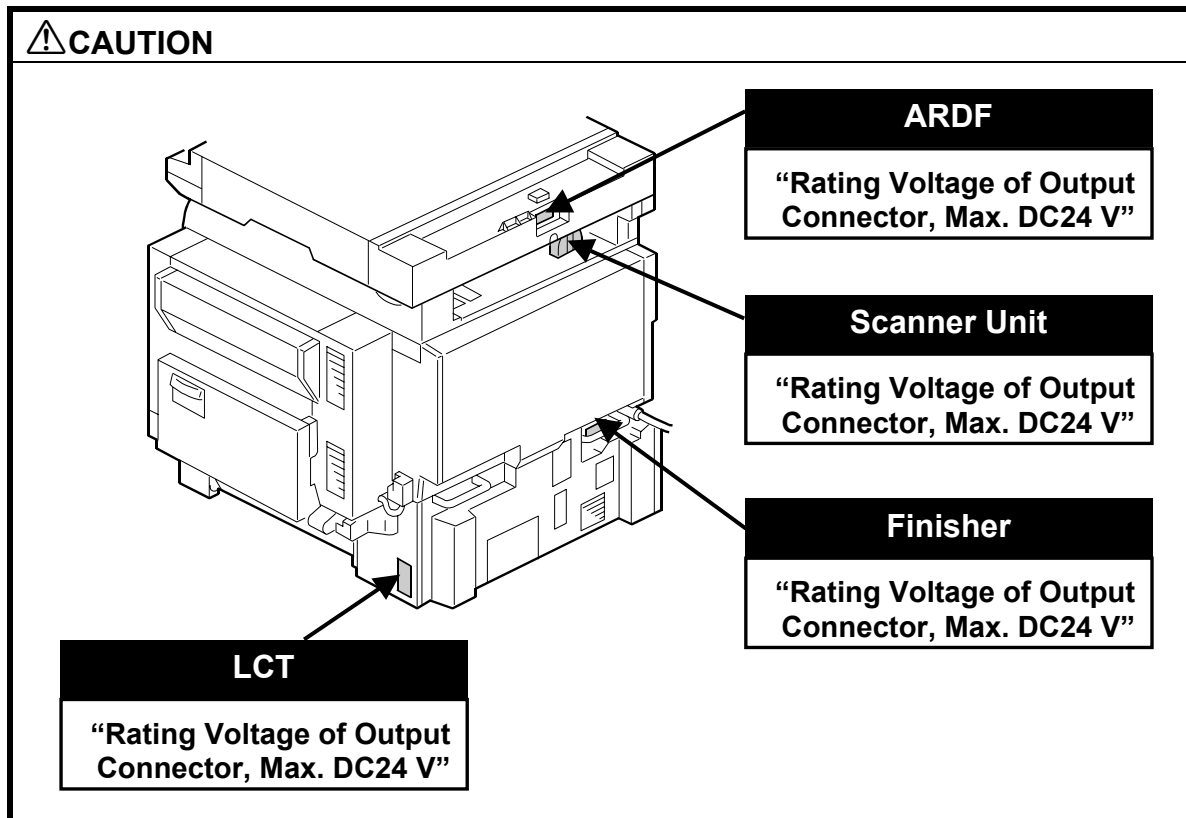
⚠ CAUTION

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

⚠ CAUTION



INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT

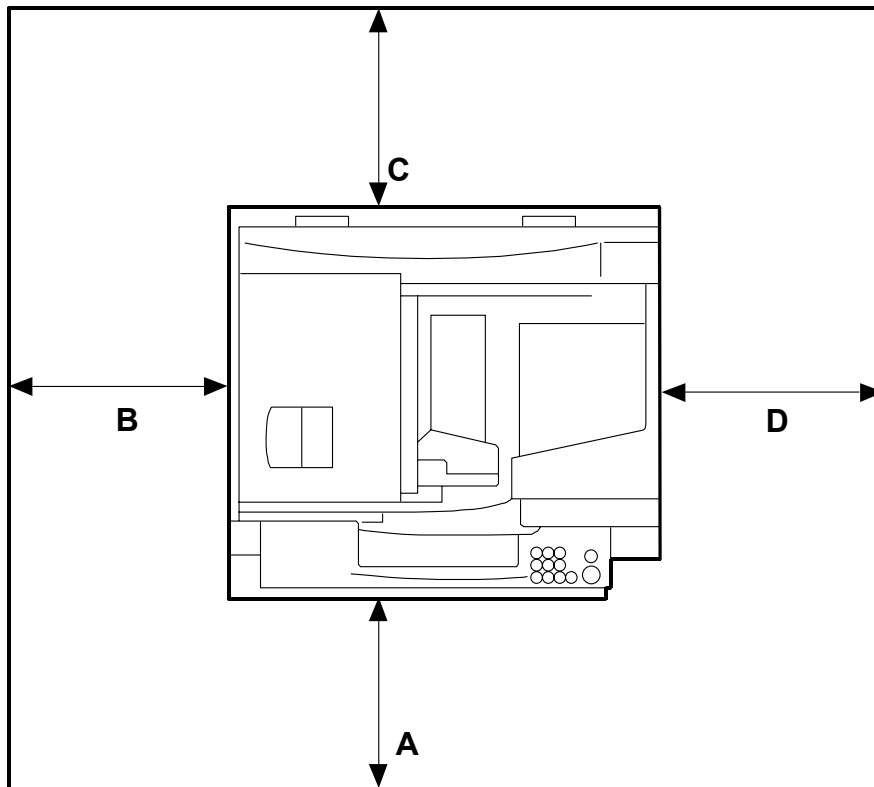
1. Temperature Range: 10 °C to 32 °C (50 °F to 90 °F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight.)
4. Ventilation: Room air should turn over at least 30 m³/hr/person
5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.10 mg/m³ (2.7 x 10⁻⁶ oz/yd³)
6. Avoid areas exposed to sudden temperature changes:
 - 1) Areas directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner.
 - 2) Areas directly exposed to heat from a heater.
7. Do not place the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gases.
8. Do not install the machine at any location over 2,000 m (6,500 ft.) above sea level.
9. Place the main machine on a strong and level base. Inclination on any side should be no more than 5 mm (0.2").
10. Do not place the machine where it may be subjected to strong vibrations.

1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

- Front to back: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level
- Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level

1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

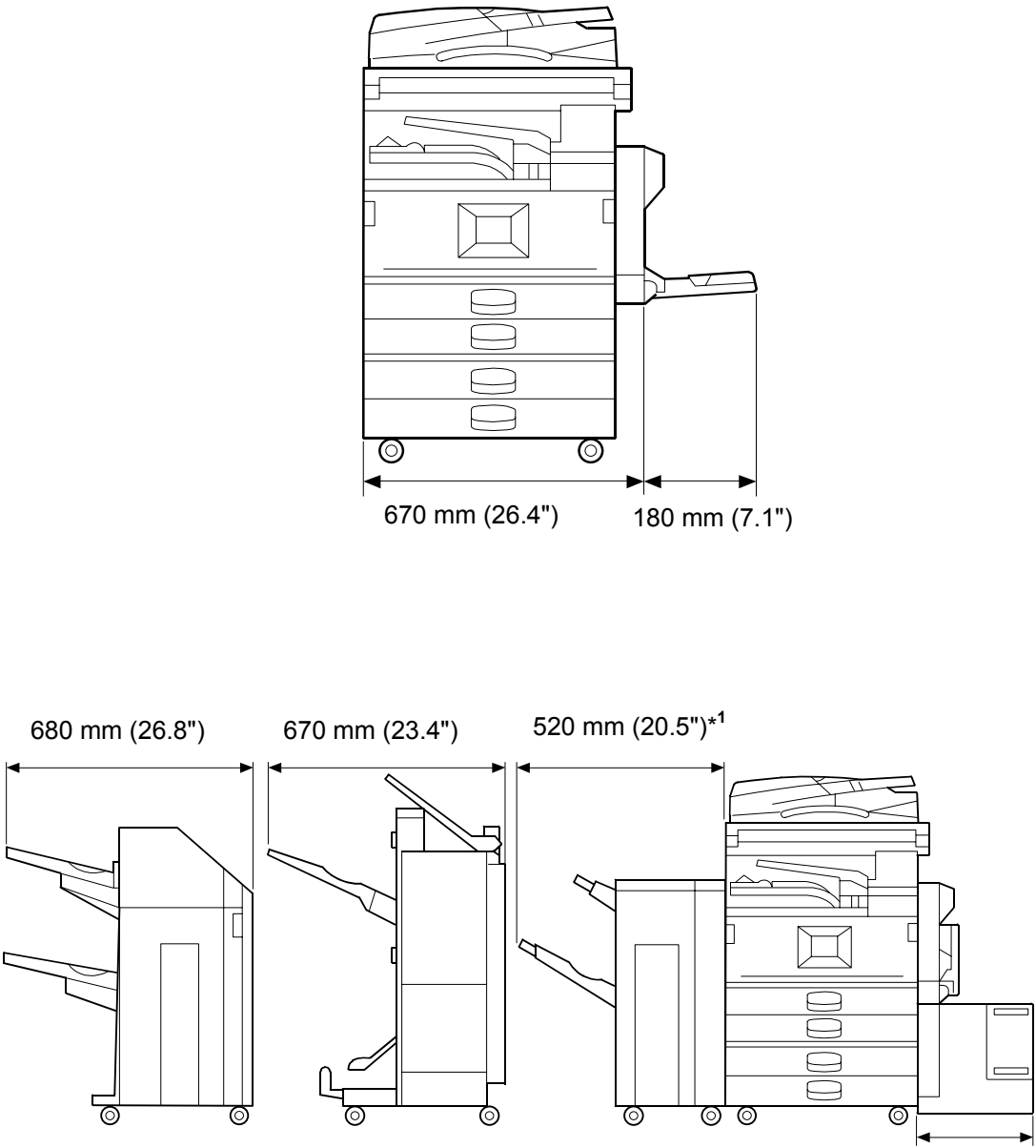
Place the main machine near the power source, providing clearance as shown:



- A:** Front: >75 cm (29.6")
- B:** Left: > 10 cm (4")
- C:** Rear: > 10 cm (4")
- D:** Right > 10 cm (4")

NOTE: The 75 cm (29.5") recommended for the space at the front is for pulling out the paper tray only. If the operator stands at the front of the main machine, more space is required.

INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS



*¹ Without tray extended.

1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

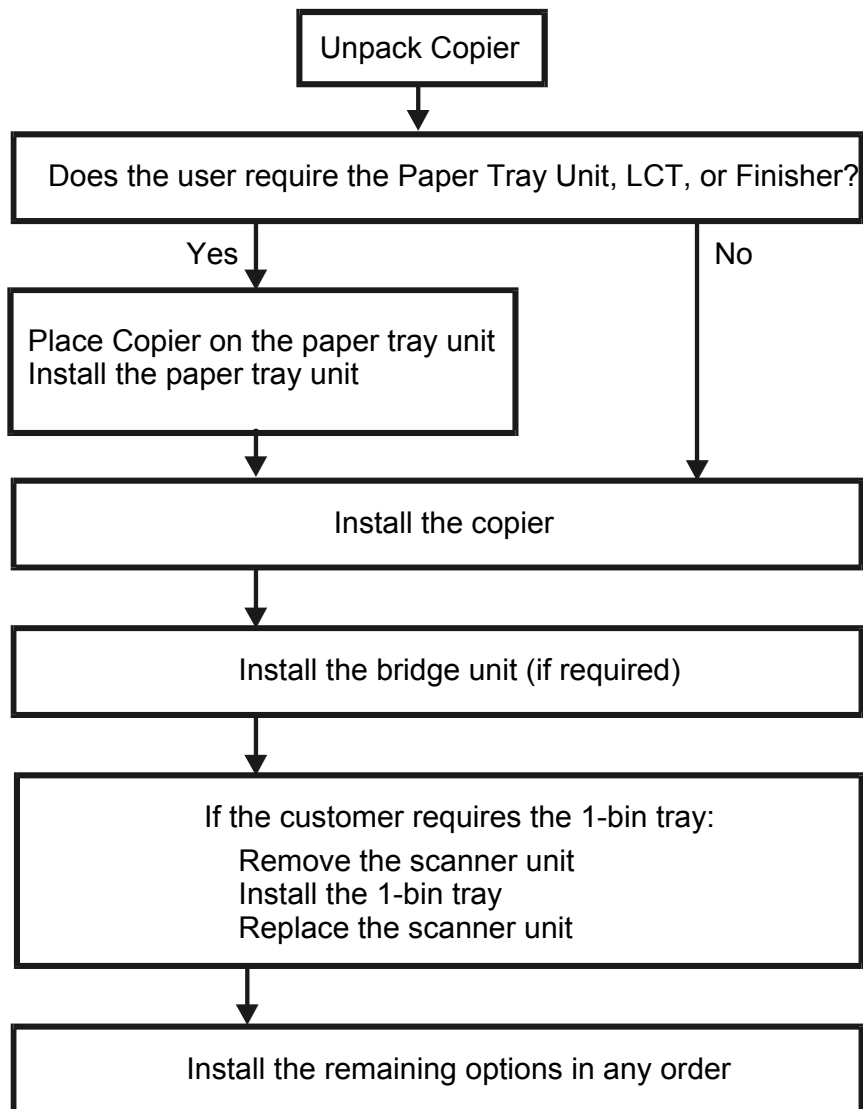
⚠ CAUTION

- 1. Make sure that the wall outlet is near the main machine and easily accessible. Make sure the plug is firmly inserted in the outlet.**
- 2. Avoid multi-wiring.**
- 3. Be sure to ground the machine.**

1. Input voltage level:
North America 120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12.5 A
Europe/Asia 220 V ~ 240V, 50 Hz/60 Hz: more than 6.8 A
2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: 10% to 15%
3. Never set anything on the power cord.

1.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART

The following flow chart shows how to install the optional units more efficiently.



Bridge Unit: Needed for the finishers and external output tray.

Paper Tray Unit: Needed for LCT and finishers.

Other requirements: See Overall Machine Information – Installation Option Table.

1.3 MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION

1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

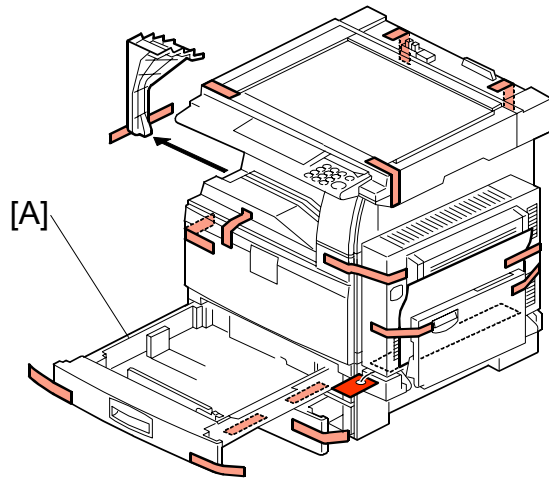
Description	Q'ty
1. Operation Instructions – System Setting.....	1
2. Operation Instructions – Copy Reference.....	1
3. Exposure Glass Cleaner Holder	1
4. Exposure Glass Cleaner.....	1
5. Paper Size Decal.....	1
6. Toner Supply Installation Decal	1
7. Middle Front Cover	1
8. HDD Caution Decals (-17, -29, -57 Machines).....	1
9. Model Name Decal (-17, -19, -29, -57 Machines).....	1
10. Stamp (-17 Machine)	1
11. EU Safety Information (-26, -27, -57, -67 Machines)	1
12. Operation Panel Indicator Decals (-26, -27, -57, -67 Machines)	1
13. Gasket (for Optional ARDF (-26, -27, -29, -57, -67 Machines)	1
14. Ferrite Core (for Optional ARDF) (-26, -27, -29, -57, -67 Machines)	1
15. Address Information Sheet – China (-21 Machine).....	1
16. Paper Caution Sheet – China (-21 Machine)	1

1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Remove the main machine from the box, and remove all shipping retainers and tapes.

NOTE: Store all shipping retainers as you remove them. You will need them if the machine is moved to another location in the future.

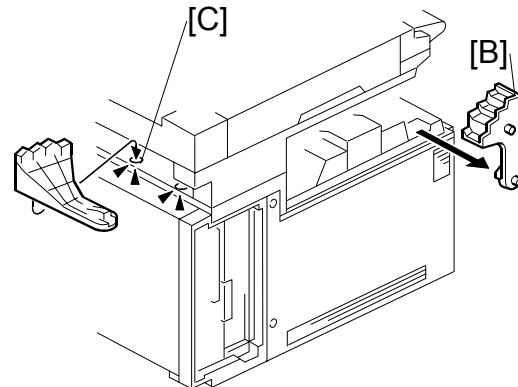
2. Pull out the paper trays and remove all shipping materials [A].



3. Remove scanner cushion [B].

NOTE: Do not discard the cushion. Store it inside the machine at [C]. You should install it the next time you move the machine.

4. Remove the middle front cover from the 2nd tray.

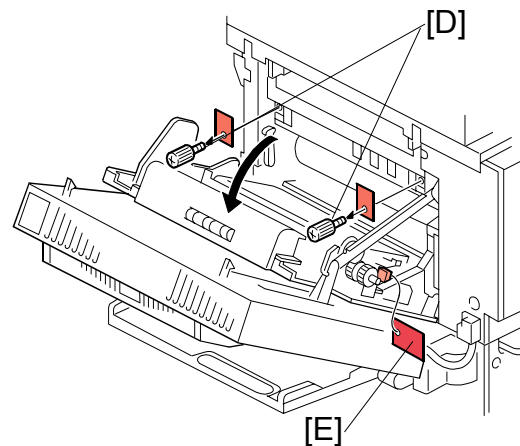


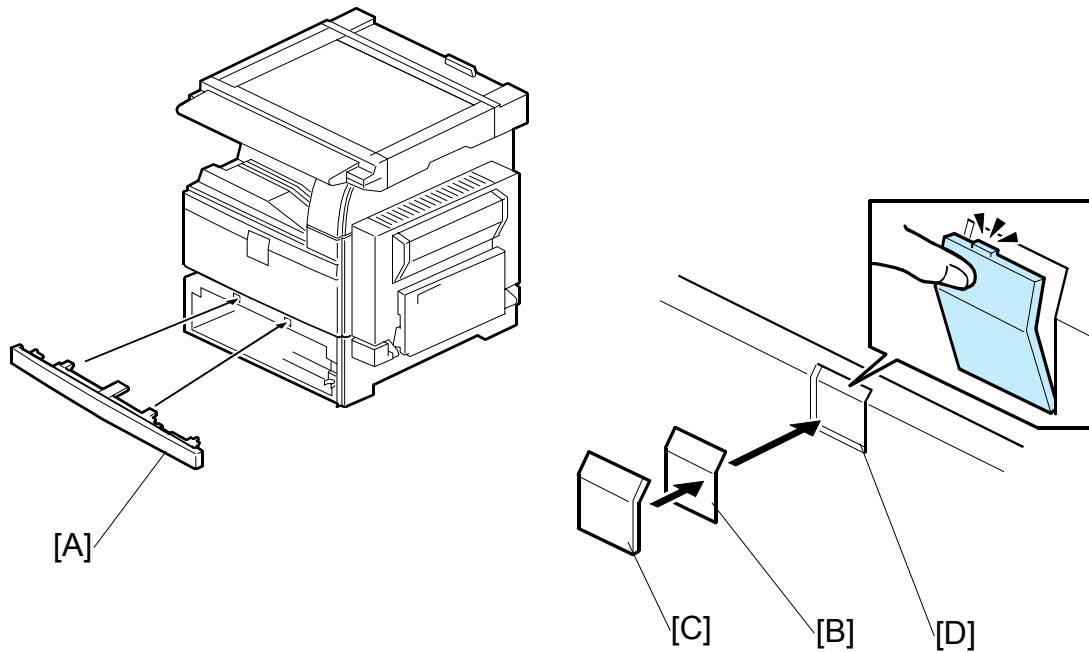
5. On the right side of the machine, open the by-pass tray, duplex unit, and transfer right cover.

6. Remove the shipping screws [D] (⌀ x2) and tags.

7. Remove the other shipping tag [E].

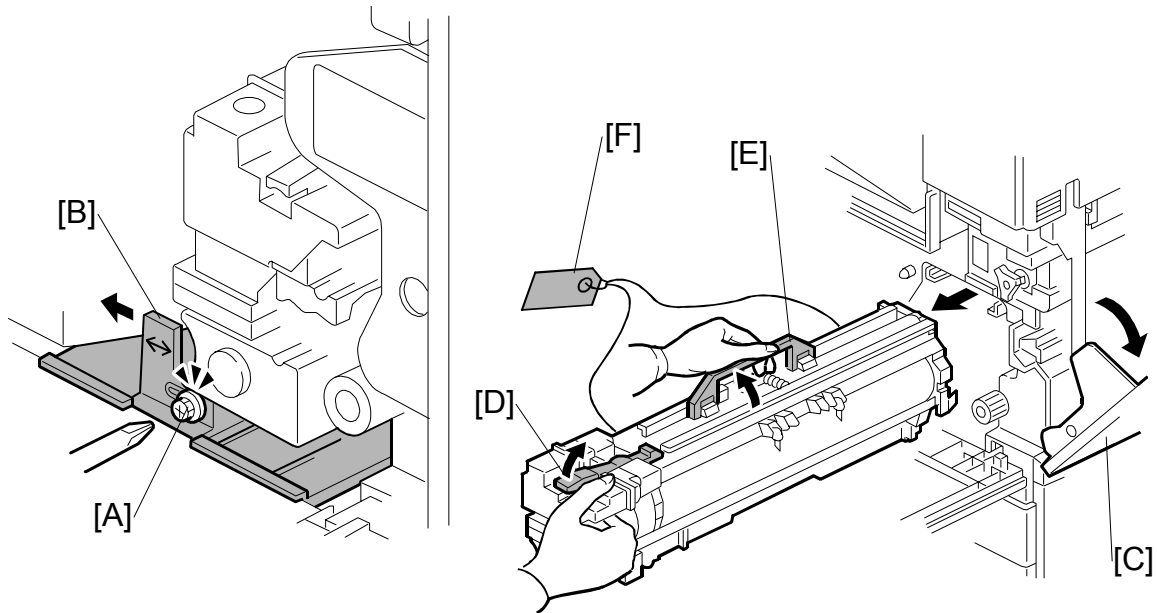
NOTE: If the paper tray unit is to be installed, do this now. (➡ 1.4)



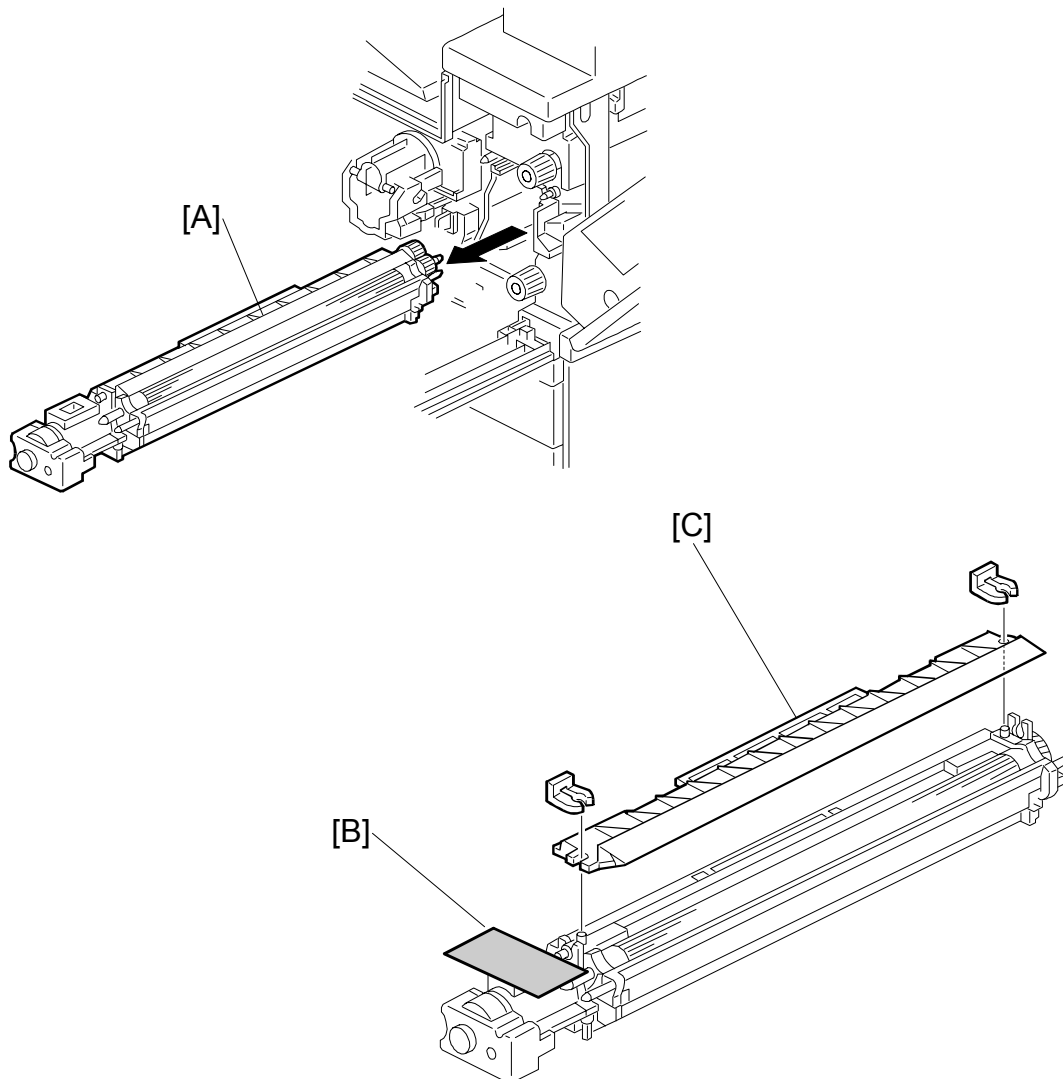


8. If the paper tray unit is not to be installed, install the middle front cover [A] (provided in the second paper tray).
9. Attach the emblem [B] and panel [C] to the front cover [D].
10. Push the panel in until the emblem and panel move into their positions with an audible click.

Development Unit and PCU

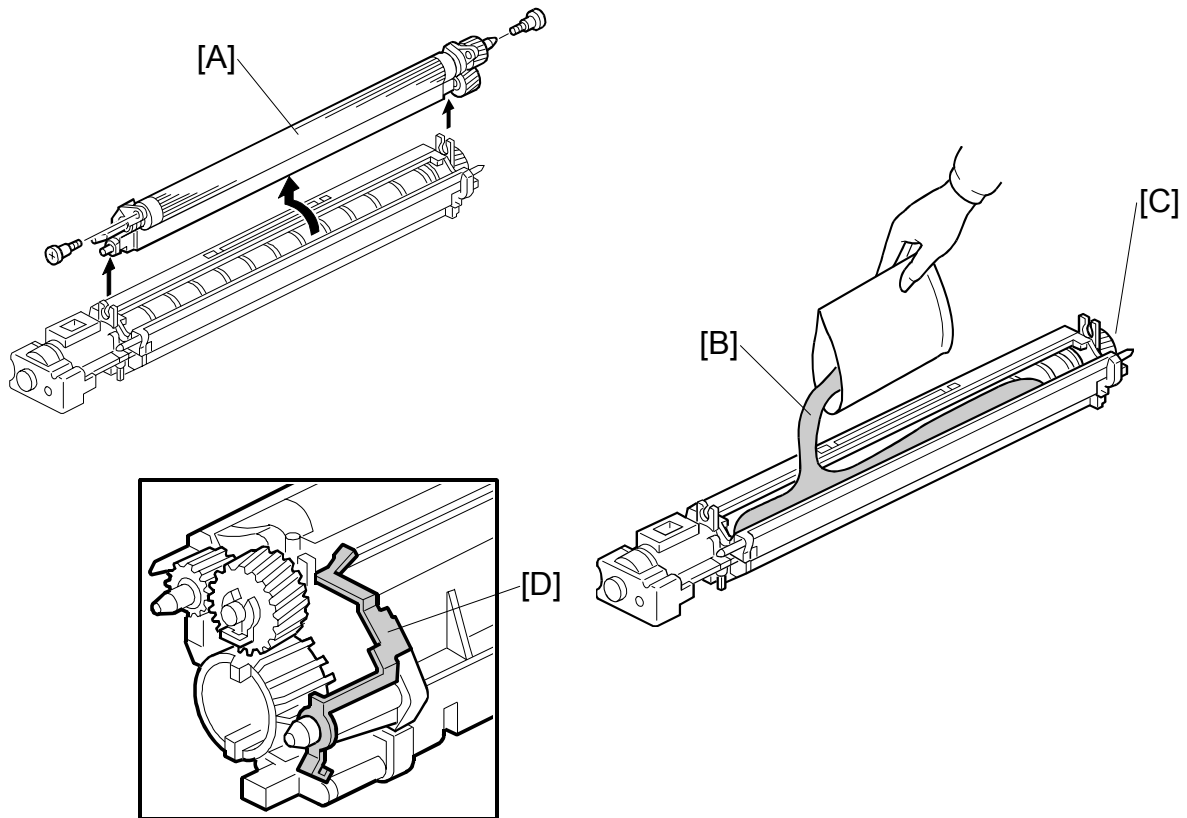


1. Open the front door.
2. Loosen [A] (⌀ x 1) (do not remove).
3. Push the base [B] the left.
4. Open the right cover [C].
5. Raise the lever [D]
6. Pull out the PCU [E] and place it on a clean flat surface.
7. Remove clamps and wire [F].



8. Spread a large piece of paper on a flat surface.
NOTE: Make sure the area is free of pins, paper clips, staples, etc. to avoid attraction to the magnetic development roller.
9. Slide the development unit [A] out and place it on the paper.
10. Remove the tape and tag [B] from the development unit
11. Remove the entrance seal plate [C] (2).

MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION



12. Remove the development roller unit [A] (⚙ x 2), and set it on the paper.

13. Pour the developer [B] into the development unit.

NOTE: The developer lot number is embossed on the end of the developer package. Do not discard the package until you have recorded the lot number. (☞ 1-16)

1) Pour approximately 1/3 of the developer evenly along the length of the development unit.

2) Rotate the drive gear [C] to work the developer into the unit.

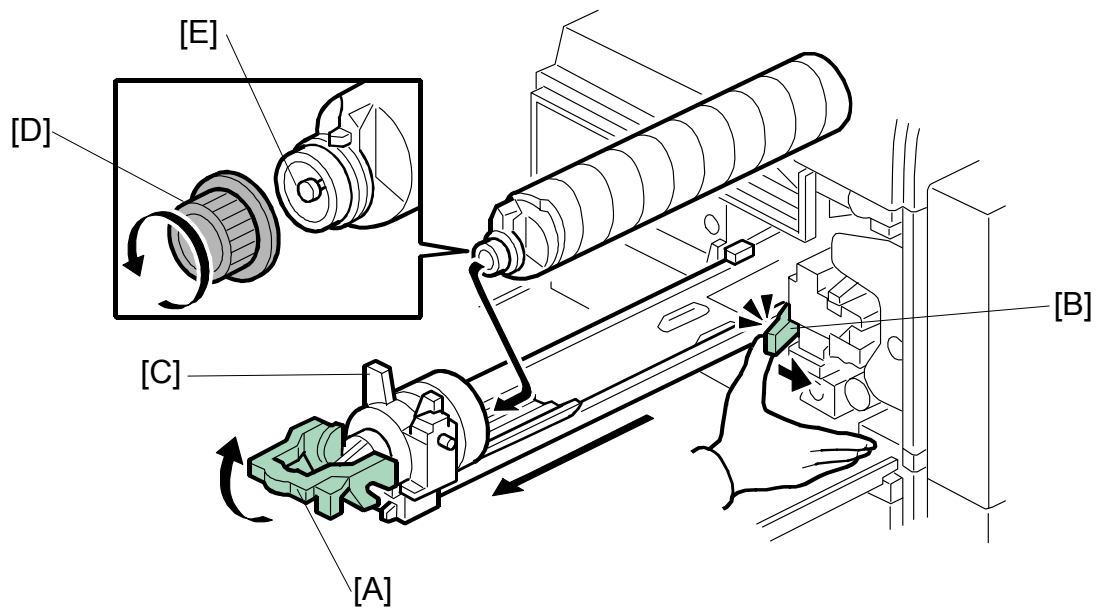
3) Repeat until all the developer is in the development unit.

4) Continue to turn the drive gear until the developer is even with the top of the unit.

14. Reassemble the development unit.

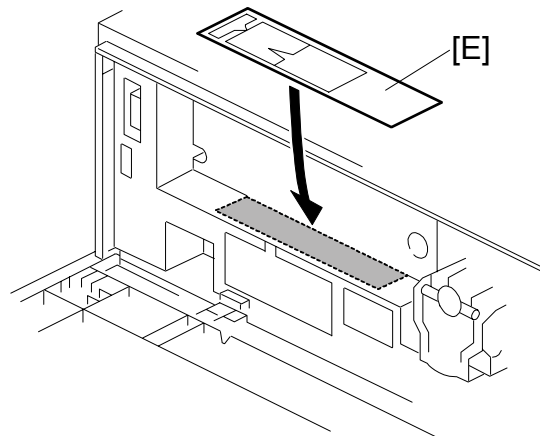
NOTE: Make sure that the earth plate [D] is positioned correctly.

15. Re-install the development unit and PCU.

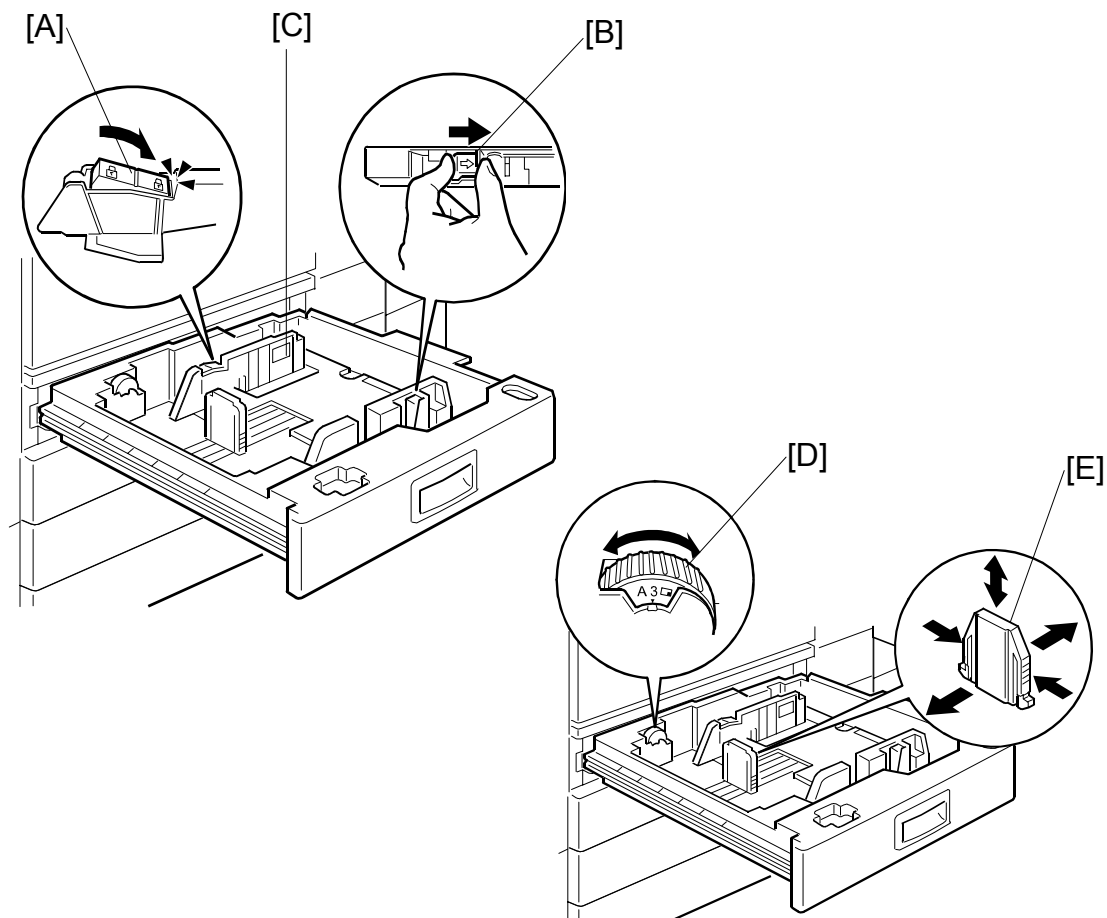


Toner Bottle

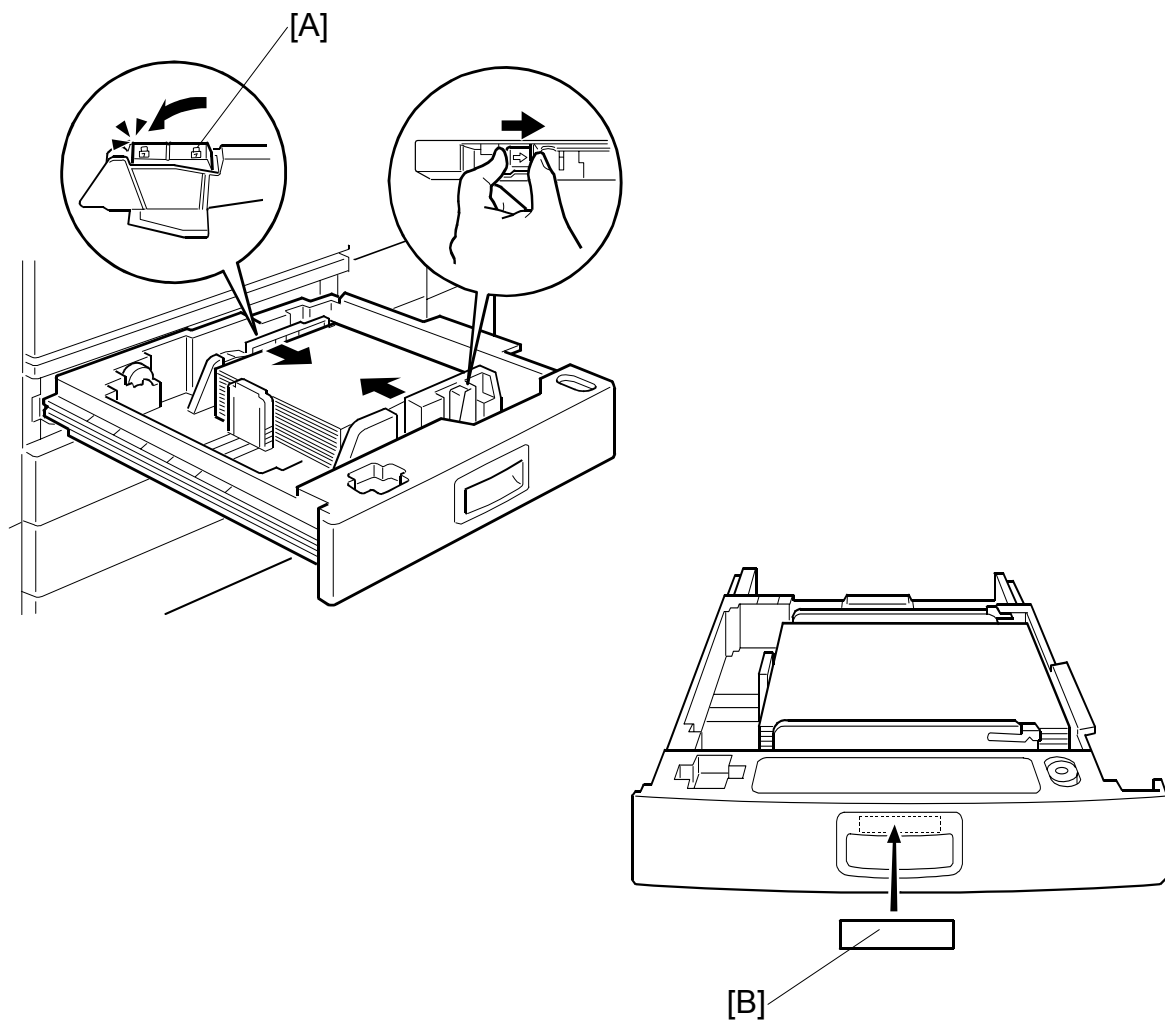
1. Raise the toner bottle holder lever [A], push the lever [B] to the side, and then pull out the toner bottle holder [C].
2. Unscrew the bottle cap [D] and set the bottle in the holder.
NOTE: Do not touch the inner bottle cap [E].
3. Push the toner bottle holder into the main machine until it locks in place, and then lower the holder lever [A] to secure the toner bottle.
NOTE: The holder lever cannot be lowered until the toner bottle has been installed.
4. Attach the toner supply installation decal [E].



Paper Trays



1. Open the 1st paper tray, and then press down on the right side of the lock [A] switch to unlock the side fences.
2. Press in on the sides of the fence release [B], and slide the side fences [C] to the appropriate mark for the paper size.
3. Turn the dial [D] to the correct setting for the paper size.
4. Pinch the sides of the bottom fence [E] and move it to the appropriate mark for the paper size, then load the paper.
5. Check the position of the stack.
 - Confirm that there is no gap between the stack and the side fences. If you see a gap, adjust the position of the side fences.
 - After loading the stack, confirm that the right side of the stack is not on top of both cushions.

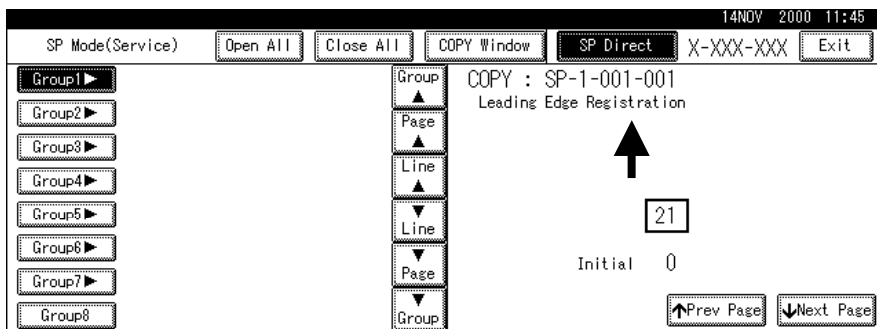


6. Press down the lock [A] to lock the side fences.
7. Attach the appropriate paper size decal [B] to the paper tray.
8. Paper size decals are also used for the optional paper tray unit. Keep any remaining decals for use with the paper tray unit.
9. Repeat this procedure to load paper in the 2nd paper tray.

MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION

Initialize TD Sensor and Developer

1. Connect the main machine to the power outlet, switch on the main machine, and wait for the fusing unit to warm up.
2. On the operation panel, press Clear Mode .
3. Use the number keys to enter 107.
4. Press and hold Clear/Stop  for three seconds.
5. On the touch-panel, press Copy SP.
6. Press SP Direct to highlight “SP Direct”, enter 2801, and then press .



7. When the message prompts you to enter the lot number of the developer, enter the 7-digit lot number, press [Yes], and then press [Execute] on the touch-panel. This initializes the TD sensor.

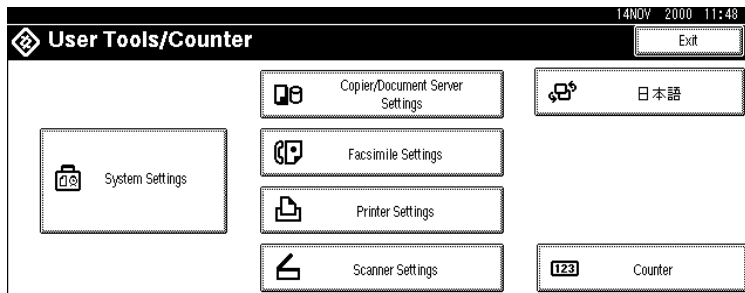
NOTE: The lot number is printed on the end of the developer package.

Recording the lot number could help troubleshoot problems later. If the lot number is unavailable, enter any seven-digit number.

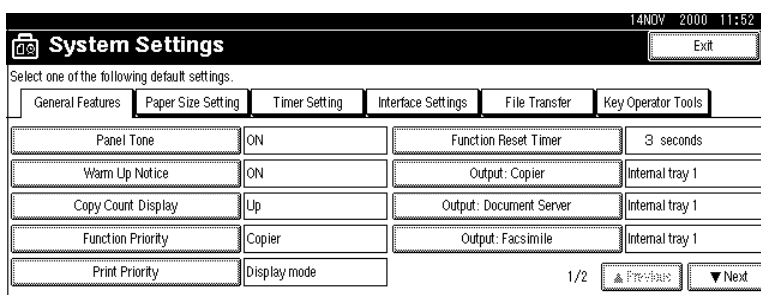
8. Press SP Direct to highlight “SP Direct” and enter 2805, press , and then press Execute on the touch-panel. This initializes the developer.
9. Press Exit twice to return to the copy window.

Set Paper Size for Paper Trays

1. Press User Tools/Counter .



2. On the touch panel, press System Settings.



3. Press the Paper Size Setting tab.
4. Press the button for the tray to change.
5. Change the setting and press the [OK] button.
6. Repeat for each tray installed.
7. Press Exit twice to return to the main display
 - The 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th paper trays are provided with paper size dial selectors. The dial settings on the paper trays have priority over the UP settings. However, if you select the asterisk (*) position on the paper size dial, you can select the paper size with the UP setting.
8. Check the copy quality and machine operation.

NOTE: The test pattern print procedure is slightly different for this machine. Use SP2-902 and select 2 for the IPU Test Print or 3 for the Print Test Patterns. (➡ 5.2.3 Test Pattern Printing)

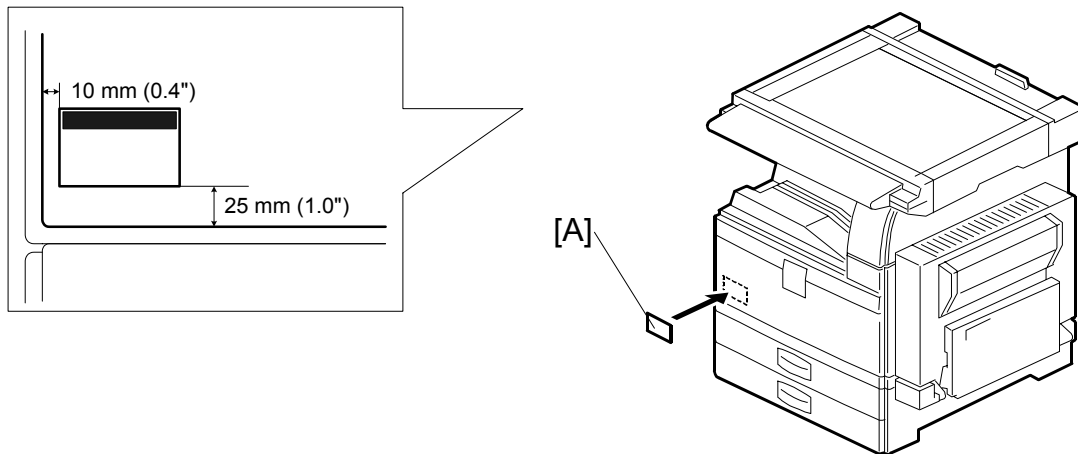
MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION

Electrical Total Counter

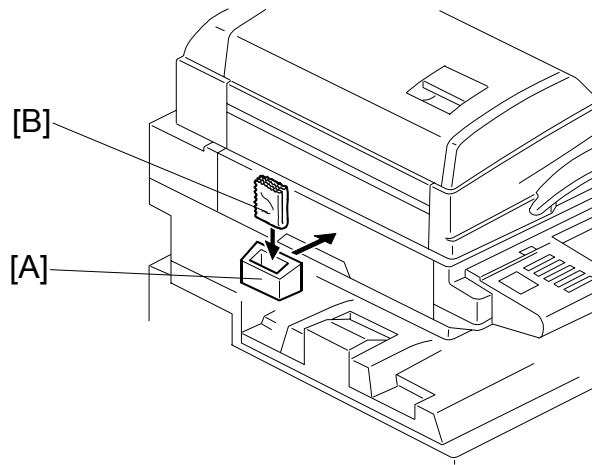
The electrical total counter no longer requires initialization. The new incrementing counter is set to “0” at the factory.

HDD Caution Decal

1. Attach the HDD Caution decal [A] to the front cover.



Exposure Glass Cleaner



1. Attach the exposure glass cleaner holder [A] to the left side of the machine.
2. Place the exposure glass cleaner [B] inside the holder.

NOTE: The exposure glass cleaner is used to clean the ARDF exposure glass and the glass strip to the left of the large exposure glass.

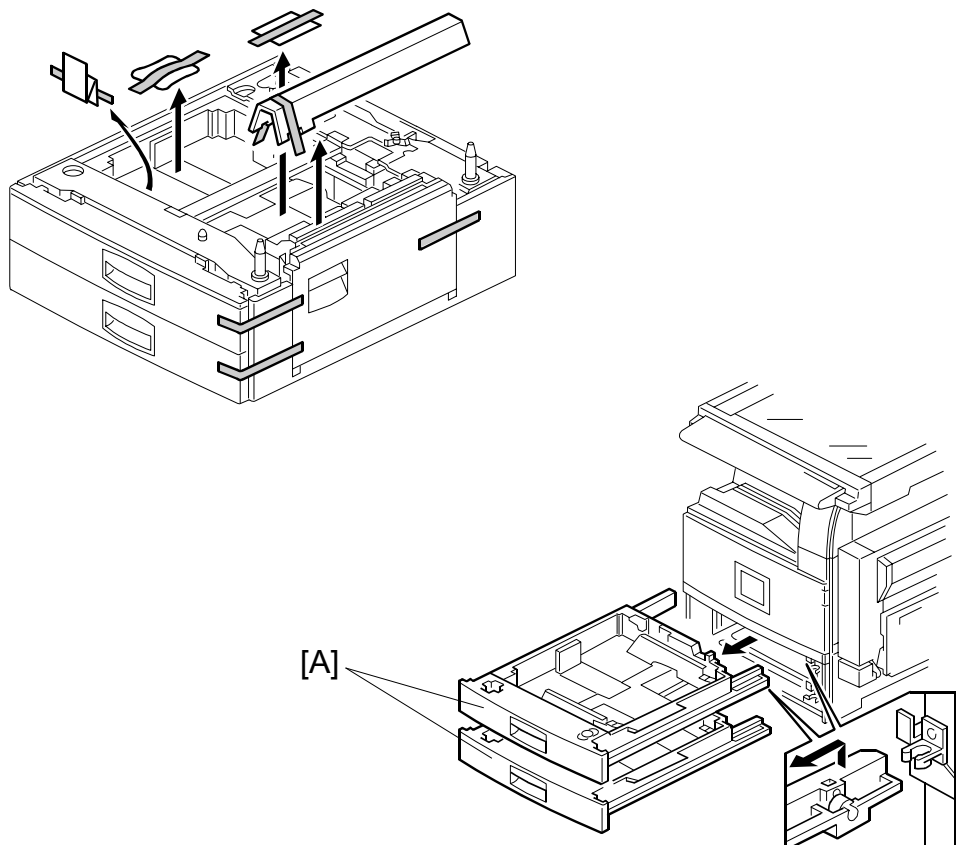
1.4 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542)

1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Knob Screw – M3	1
2. Knob Screw – M4	1
3. Joint Bracket.....	1
4. Front Stand	1
5. Rear Stand.....	1
6. Stand Bracket	1
7. Installation Procedure	1

1.4.2 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

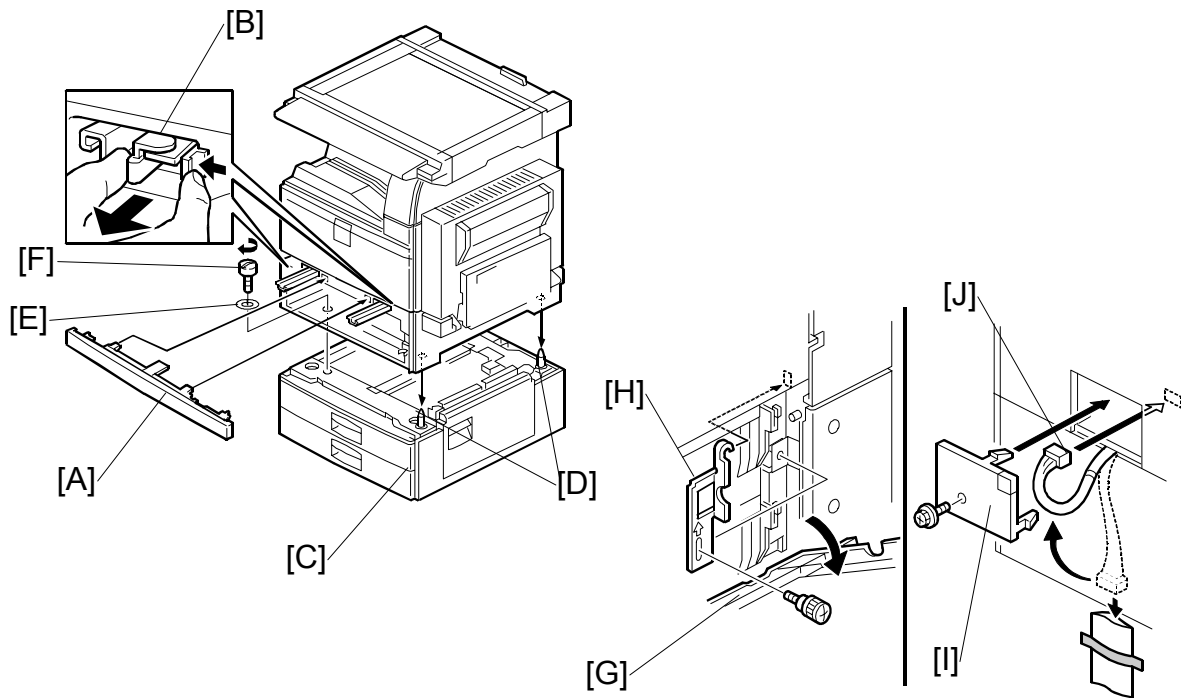


⚠ CAUTION

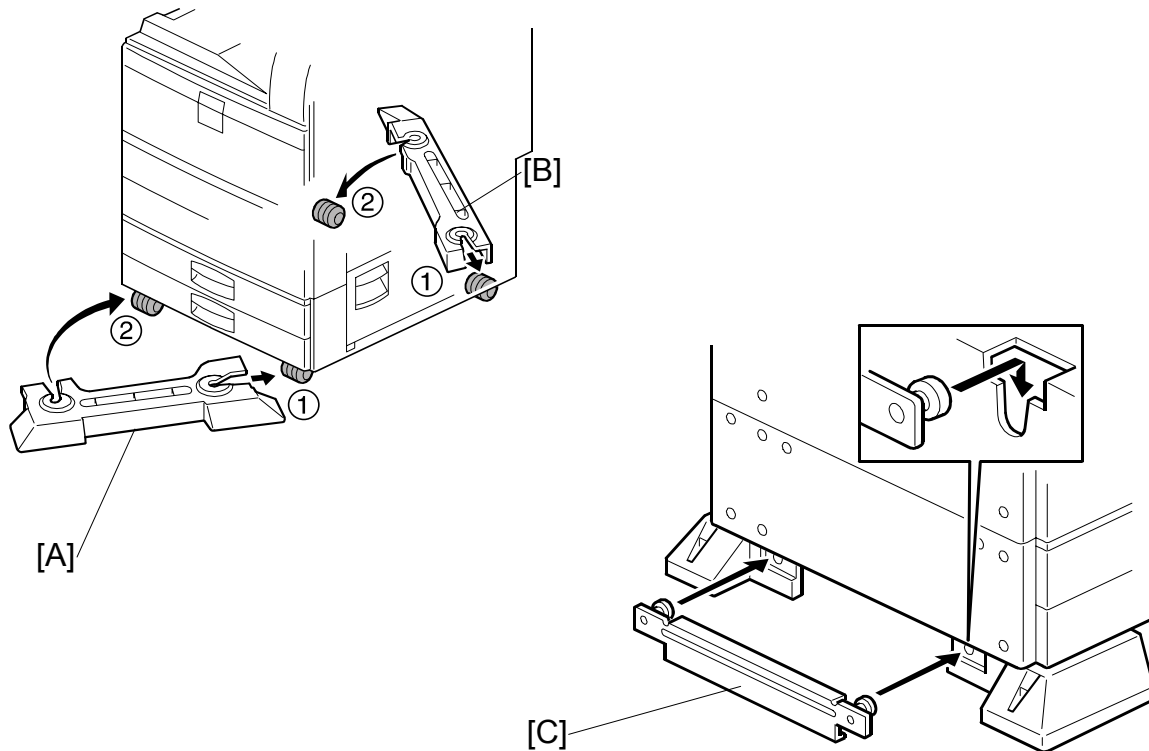
Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the paper tray unit.
2. Remove all tape and shipping materials.
3. Remove the paper trays [A].

PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542)



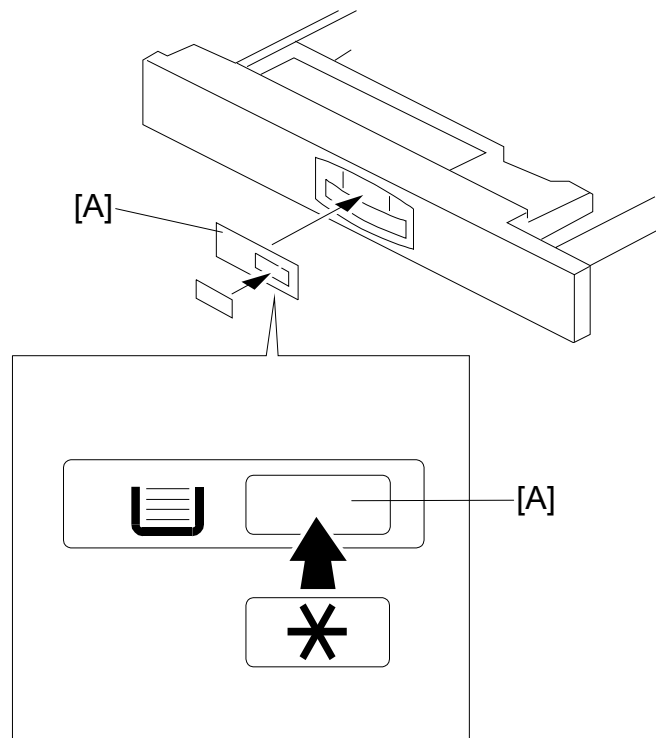
4. Remove the middle front cover [A] and pull out the front handles [B].
5. Using the front handles and rear handles, lift the machine and hold it over the paper tray unit [C].
6. Slowly lower the machine onto the paper tray unit with the pegs [D] aligned with the peg holes on the bottom of the machine.
NOTE: Do not lift the main machine by the scanner unit.
7. Re-install the middle front cover [A].
8. Attach the spring washer [E] to the short knob screw [F]. Then, secure the paper tray unit.
9. Open the right cover of the paper tray unit [G].
10. Secure the joint bracket [H] (1 long knob screw).
11. Remove the connector cover [I] of the main machine (⌀ x 1).
12. Connect the paper tray unit harness [J] to the main machine and reinstall the connector cover.



13. Install the front stand [A] and rear stand [B] as shown above.

14. Install the stand bracket [C].

PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542)



15. Load paper into the paper tray and install the paper trays.
16. Attach the appropriate tray decals [A] which are included in the accessory box for the main machine.
17. Turn on the ac switch.
18. Turn the paper size dial to the correct setting for the paper size.
19. Check the machine's operation and copy quality.

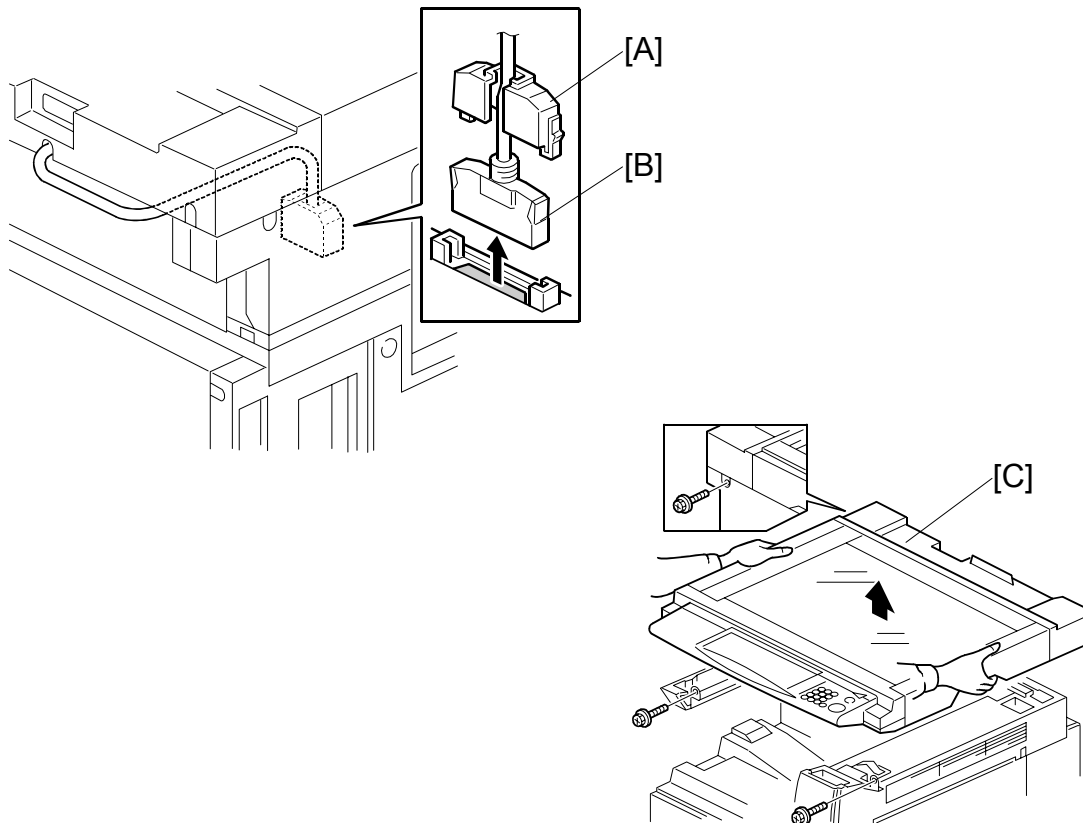
1.5 1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544)

1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Ground Bracket.....	1
2. Connector Cover.....	1
3. Base Cover	1
4. Arm Cover.....	1
5. Copy Tray	1
6. Mylar Strip.....	2
7. Stepped Screw – M3 x 8.....	5
8. Screw –M3 x 8	2
9. Screw – M4 x 7	1
10. Tapping Screw – M3 x 6	2
11. Tapping Screw – M3 x 14	1
12. Tapping Screw – M3 x 8	1
13. Installation Procedure	1

1.5.2 1-BIN TRAY INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



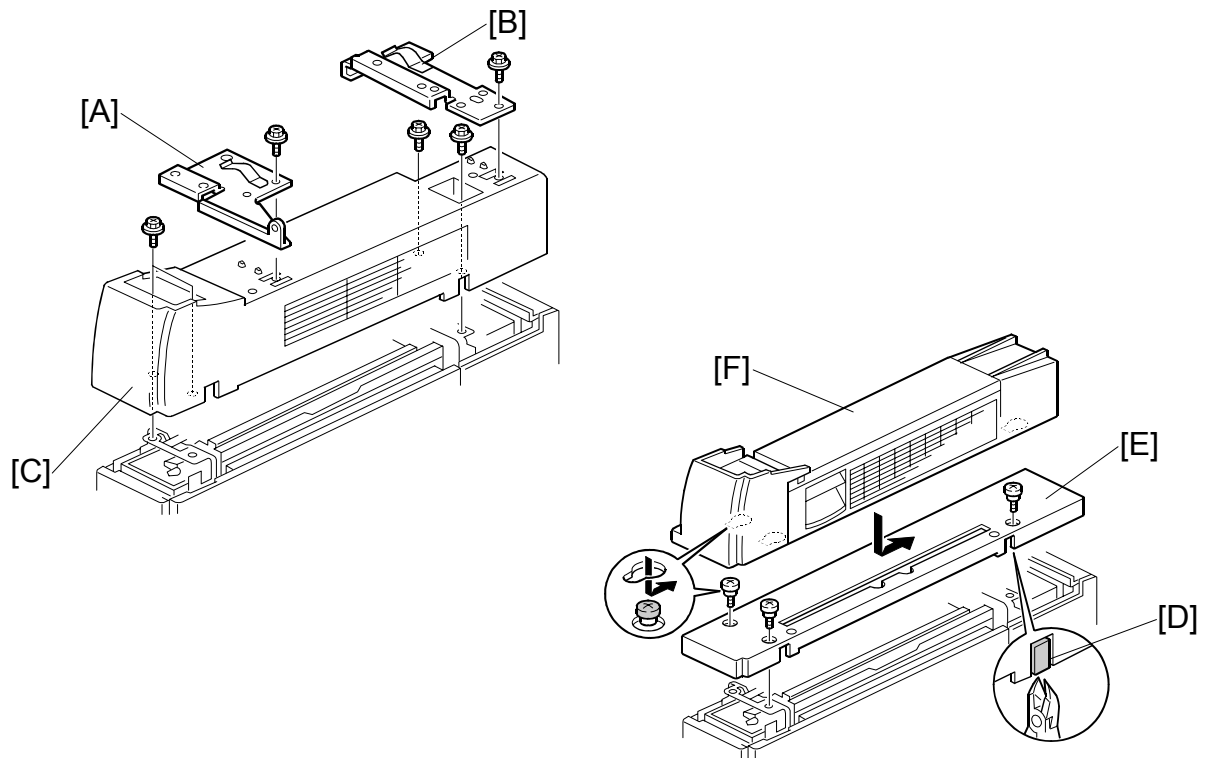
⚠ CAUTION

Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Remove Scanner Unit

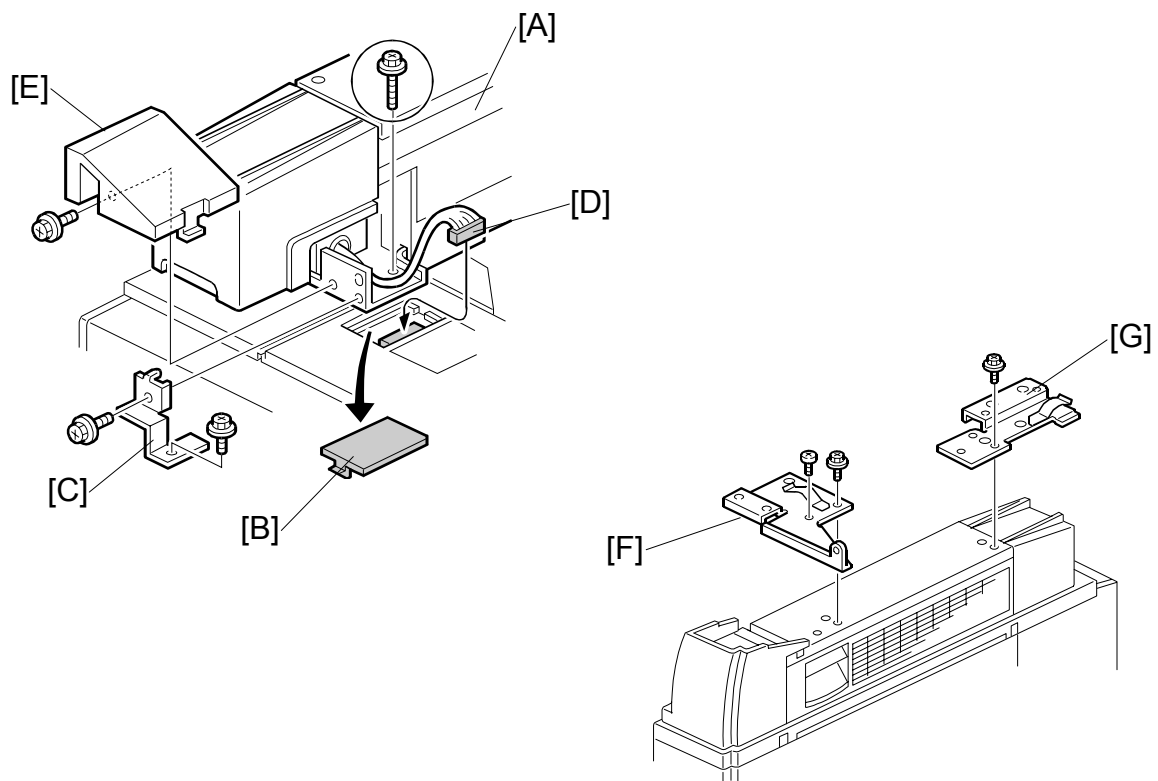
NOTE: If the ARDF is installed, remove the ARDF before removing the scanner unit.

- Remove the connector cover [A].
- Disconnect the scanner cable [B].
- Remove the scanner unit [C] (⚙ x 3).

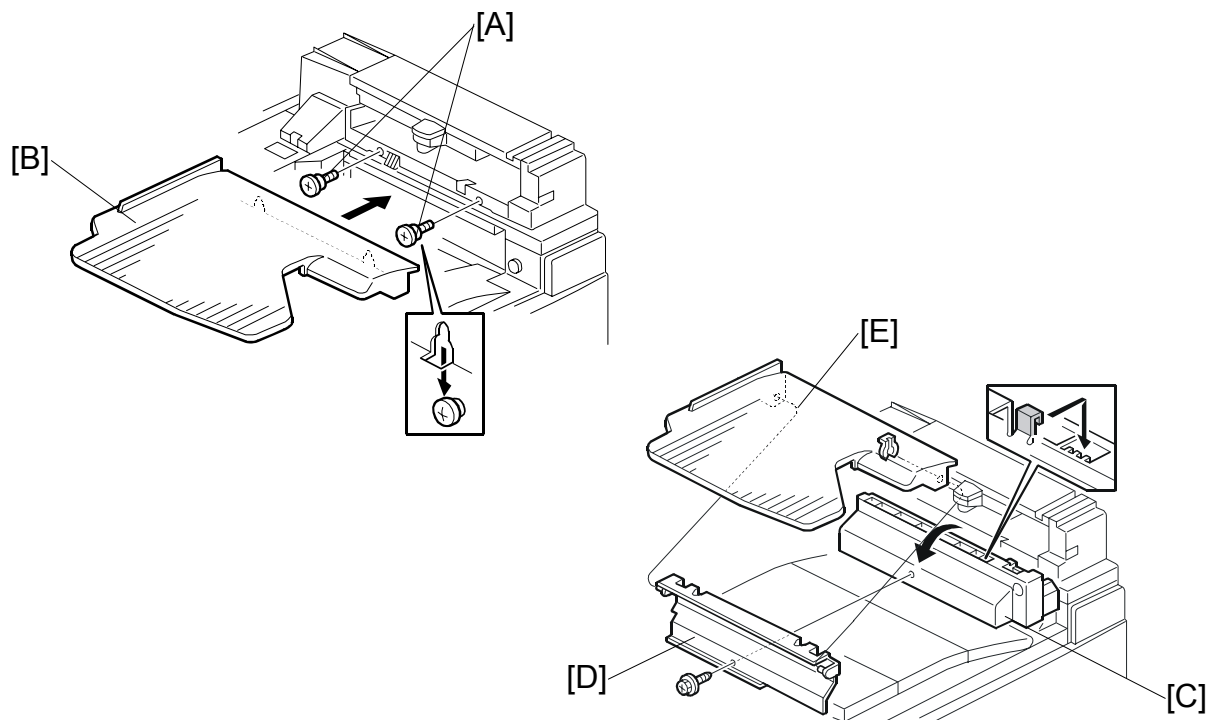


2. Unpack the 1-bin tray unit and remove the tapes.
3. Remove the front bracket [A] (⌀ x 1) and rear bracket [B] (⌀ x 1) from the top of the paper exit cover [C].
4. Remove the paper exit cover [C] (⌀ x 4).
5. Cut away two covers [D] from the base cover [E].
6. Trim the edges so they are smooth.
7. Install the base cover [E] (⌀ x 3: stepped screw).
8. Set the 1-bin tray unit [F] on the base cover and slide onto the heads of the stepped screws.

1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544)



9. Secure the 1-bin tray unit [A] (⌀ x 1 M3 x14).
10. Remove the cover [B].
11. Install the ground bracket [C] (⌀ x 2 M3 x 6).
12. Connect the harness [D].
13. Install the connector cover [E] (⌀ x 1 M3 x 8)
14. Re-install the front bracket [F] (⌀ x 2 M4 x 7, M4 x 10) and the rear bracket [G] (⌀ x 1 M4 x 10).



15. Attach the copy tray

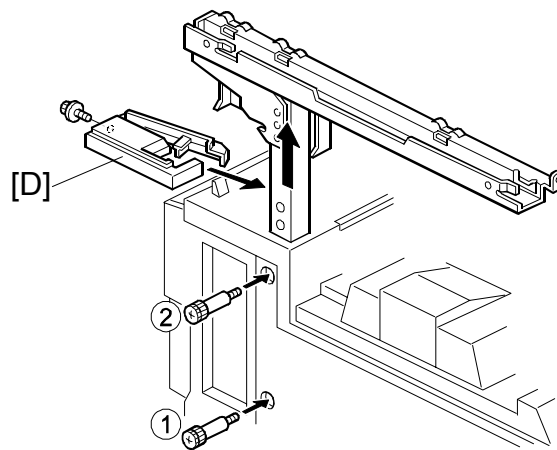
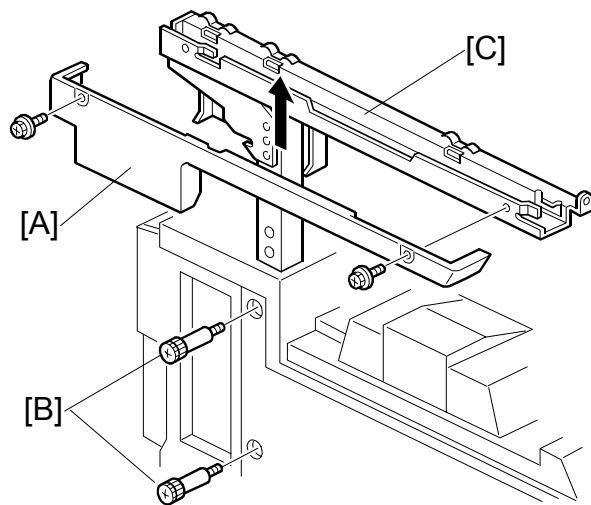
Bridge Unit (B538) has not been installed:

- 1) Secure [A] (stepped  x 2) into the side of the 1-bin tray housing.
- 2) Attach the copy tray [B] to the stepped screws.

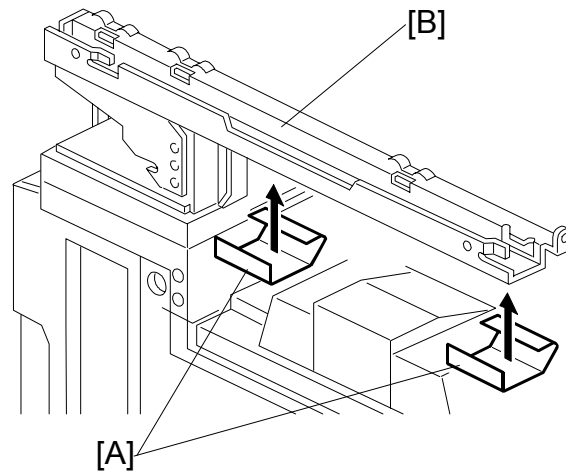
Bridge Unit (B538) has been installed

- 1) Open the cover of the bridge unit [C].
- 2) First, remove the copy tray bracket [D] ( x 1).
- 3) Re-install the copy tray bracket ( x 1: tapping screw).
- 4) Install the copy tray [E] ( x 1).

1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544)



16. Remove the scanner stand cover [A] (⚙ x 2).
17. To adjust the height of the scanner stand, first remove [B] (⚙ x 2) to release the scanner stand [C].
18. Raise the scanner stand until the next set of screw holes in the main frame can be seen through the screw holes in the scanner stand.
19. Secure the stand (⚙ x 2: ①, ②) and install the arm cover [D] (⚙ x 1).



20. Attach two mylar strips [A] to the scanner stand [B].
21. Reinstall the scanner stand cover.
22. Reinstall the scanner unit.
23. Turn on the main switch and check the 1-bin tray unit operation.

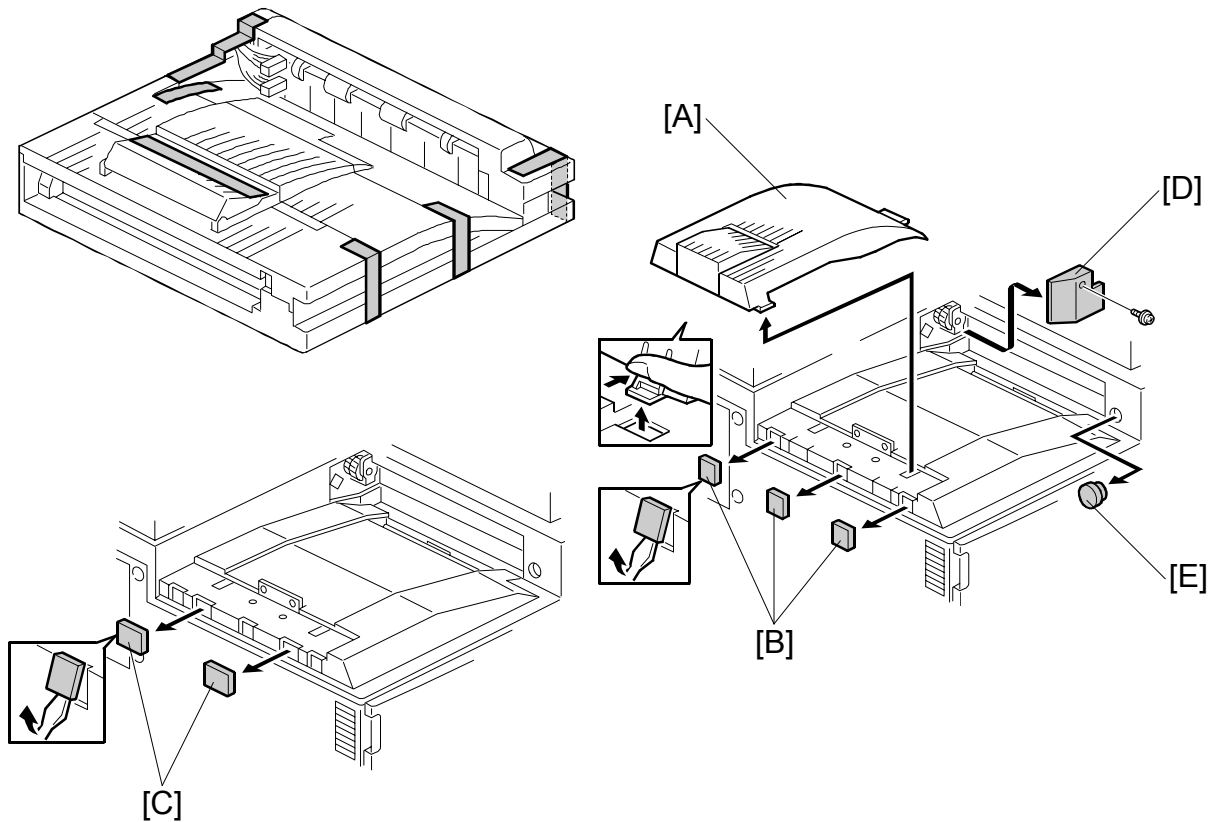
1.6 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION (B538)

1.6.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Stepped Screw	2
2. Connector Cover.....	1
3. Exit Mylar	2
4. Installation Procedure	1

1.6.2 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠ CAUTION

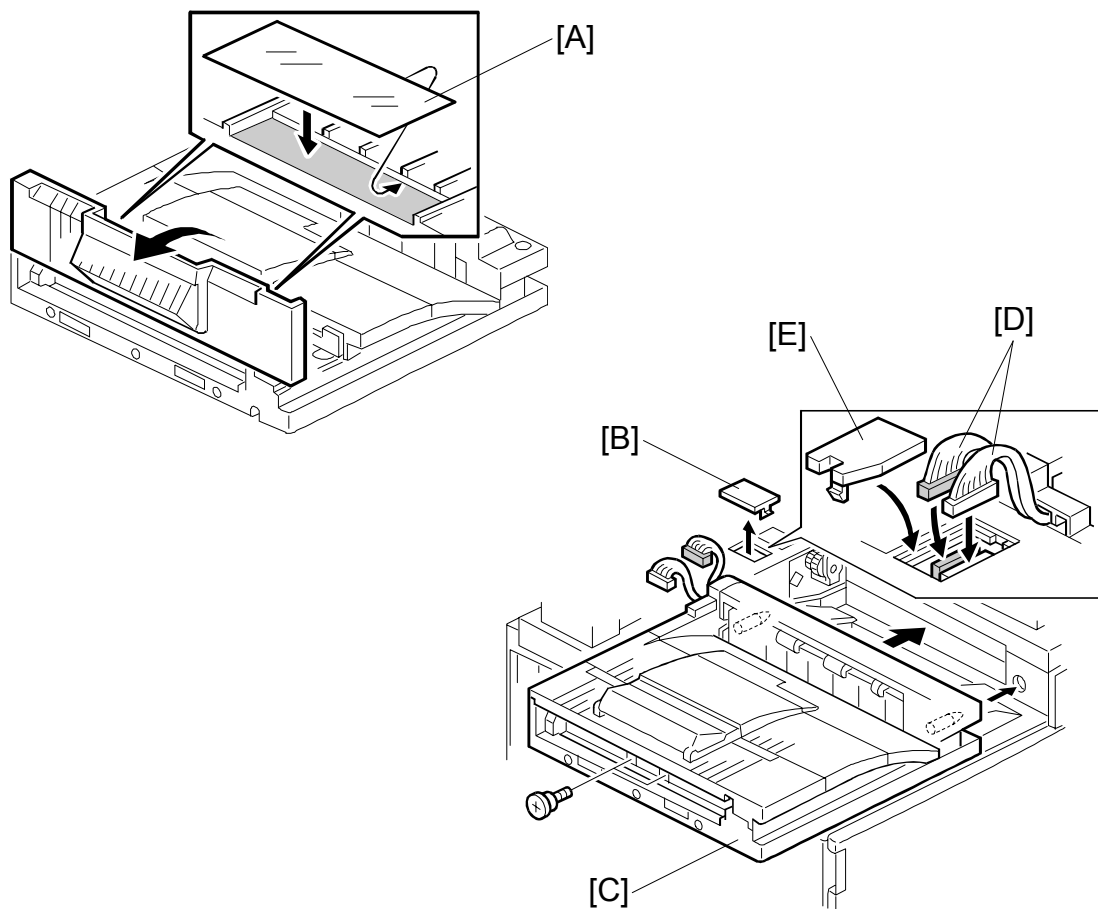
Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the bridge unit and remove all tapes shipping retainers.
2. Remove the inner tray [A].
3. On the side of the machine, remove the three small covers [B].

If the optional external output tray (A825) will be installed (instead of a finisher), do Step 4.

4. Remove the two small covers [C].
5. Remove the cover [D] (⚙ x 1).
6. Remove the cap [E].

BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION (B538)



7. If an optional finisher is to be installed, attach two exit mylars [A] to the bridge unit.
8. Remove the cover [B].
9. Install the bridge unit [C] (⌀ x 2).
10. Connect the bridge unit I/F harnesses [D] (⌀ x 2).
11. Install the connector cover [E].
12. Turn on the main switch and check the bridge unit operation (make sure that there are no paper jams).

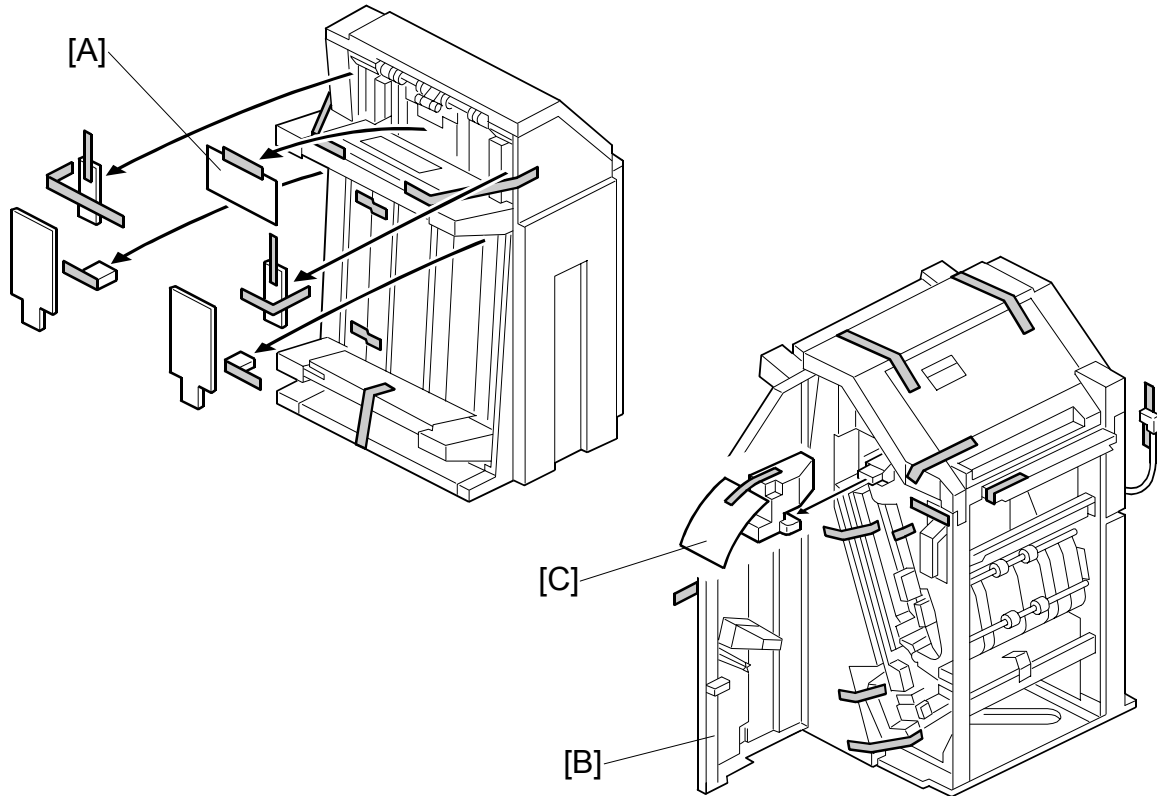
1.7 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION (B545)

1.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Right Joint Bracket.....	1
2. Left Joint Bracket.....	1
3. Shift Tray	2
4. Screw – M4 x 8	2
5. Screw – M4 x 12	5
6. Ground Plate.....	1
7. Installation Procedure	1

1.7.2 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠ CAUTION

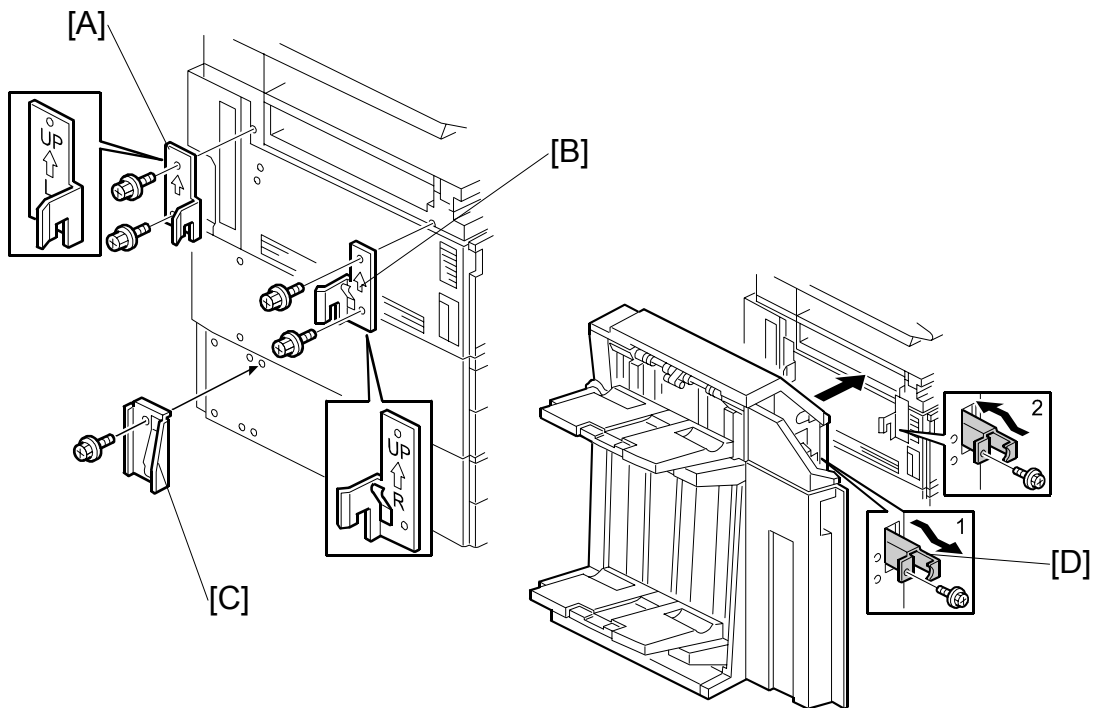
Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

NOTE: The bridge unit (B538) and paper tray unit (B542) must be installed before installing this finisher.

1. Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and shipping retainers from outside the unit [A].
2. Open the front door [B] and remove all tapes and shipping materials from inside the finisher unit.
3. Save the retainer [C] and other shipping material.

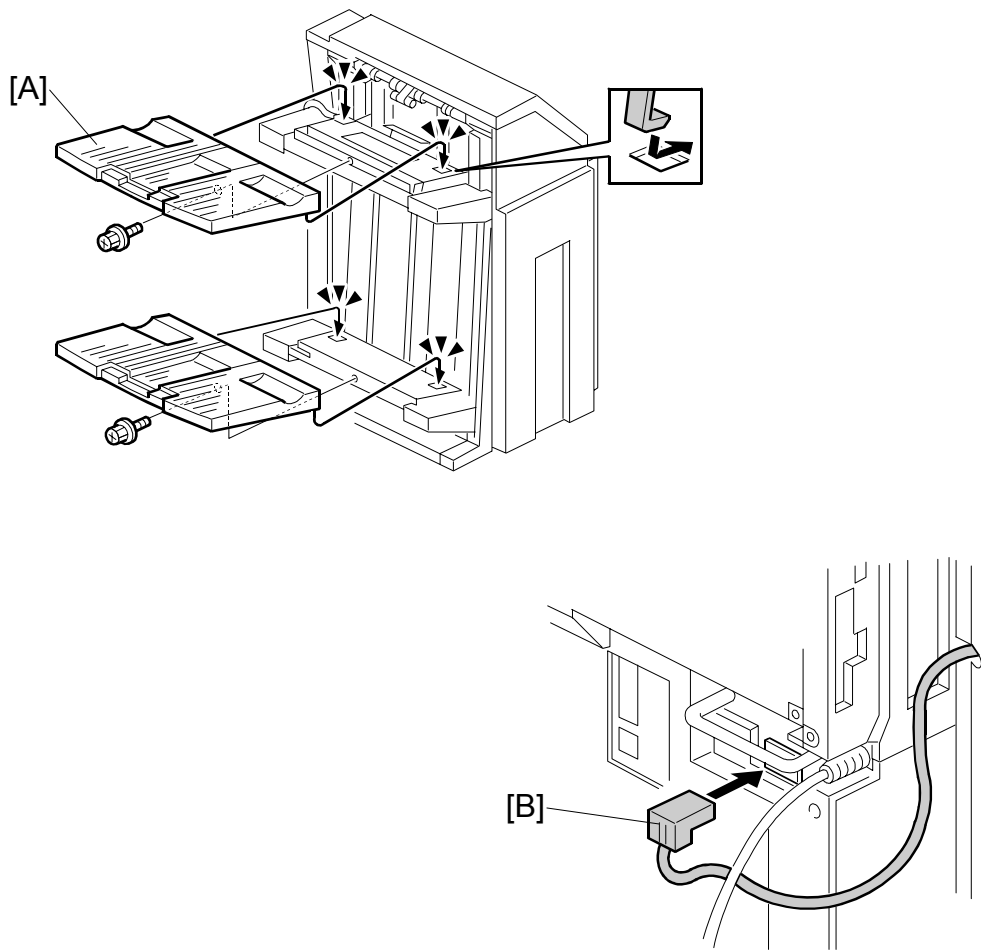
NOTE: The retainer [C] must be re-installed in the finisher before moving or shipping the finisher to another location.

TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION (B545)



4. Install the left joint bracket [A] (⌀ x 2 M4 x 12) and right joint bracket [B] (⌀ x 2 M4 x 12).
5. Attach the ground plate [C] (⌀ x 1 M4 x 12) to the center of the paper tray unit as shown.
6. Open the front door of the finisher, and pull out the locking lever [D] (⌀ x 1).
7. Push the finisher to the side of the machine with the holes in the finisher aligned with the joint brackets, and then dock the finisher against the machine.
8. Push in the locking lever and secure it (⌀ x 1), then close the front door.

TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION (B545)



9. Install two shift trays [A] (1 x 1 each).
10. Connect the finisher cable [B] to the main machine below the right, rear handle.
11. Turn on the main switch and check the finisher operation.

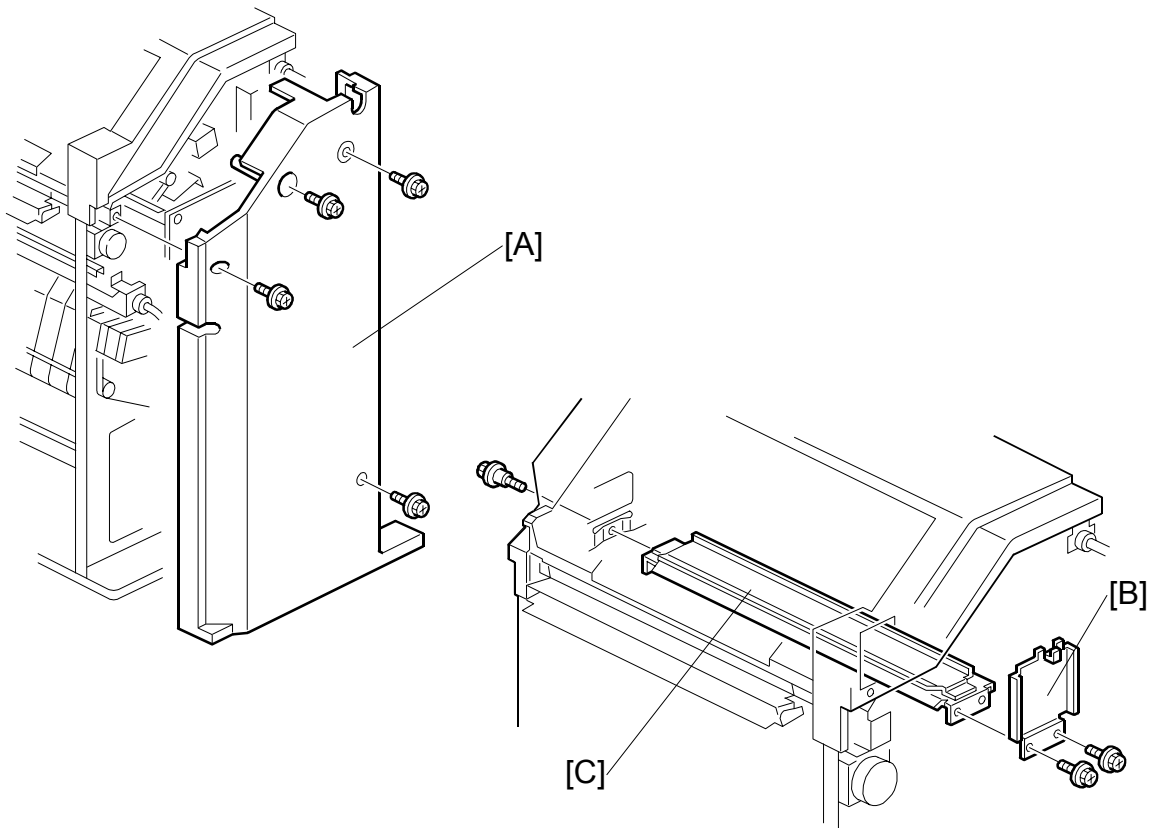
1.8 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (B377)

1.8.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Punch unit.....	1
2. Sensor bracket.....	1
3. Hopper	1
4. Step screw	1
5. Spring	1
6. Spacer (2 mm).....	1
7. Spacer (1 mm).....	1
8. Tapping screw	1
9. Tapping screw	2

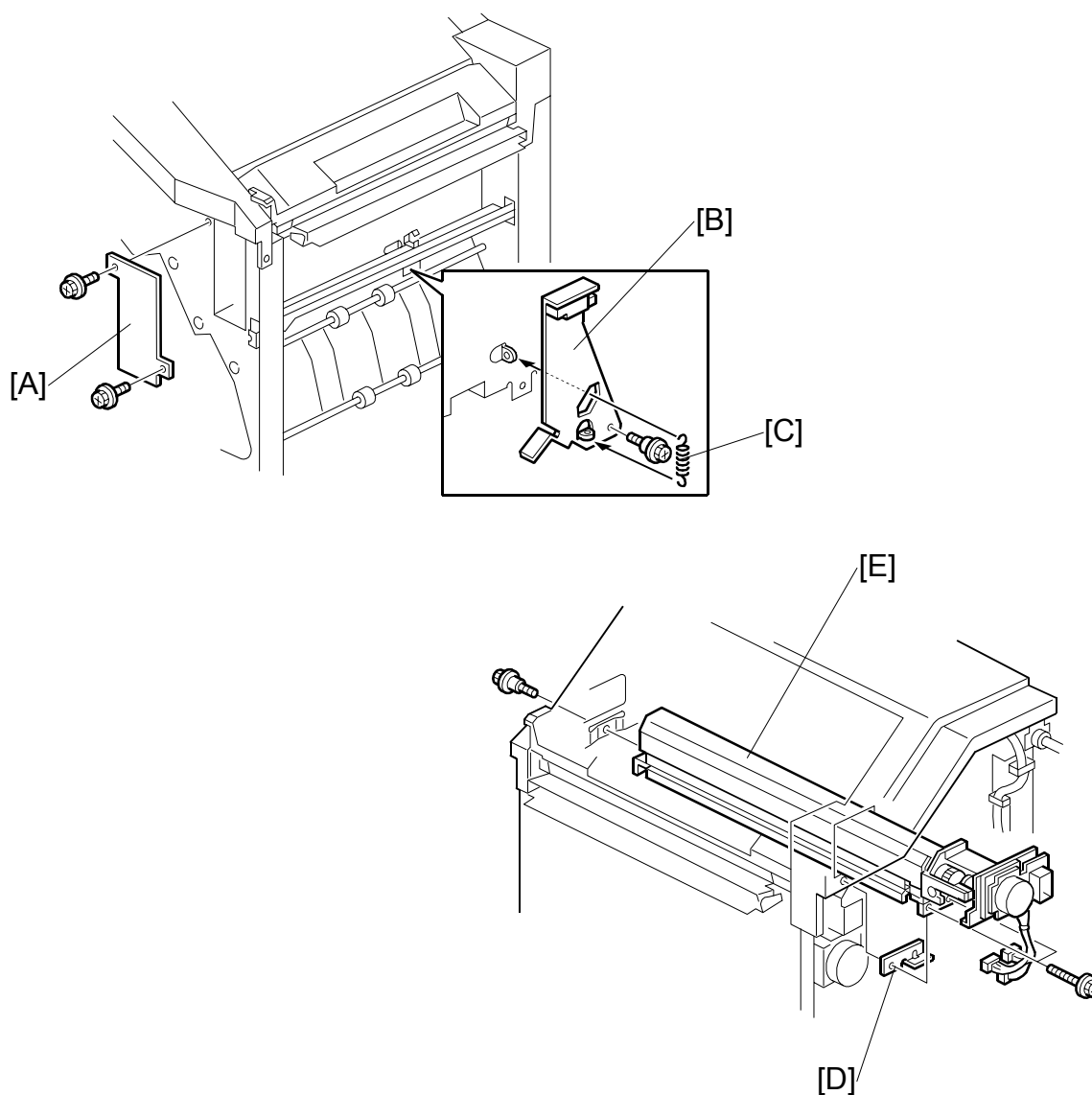
1.8.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠ CAUTION

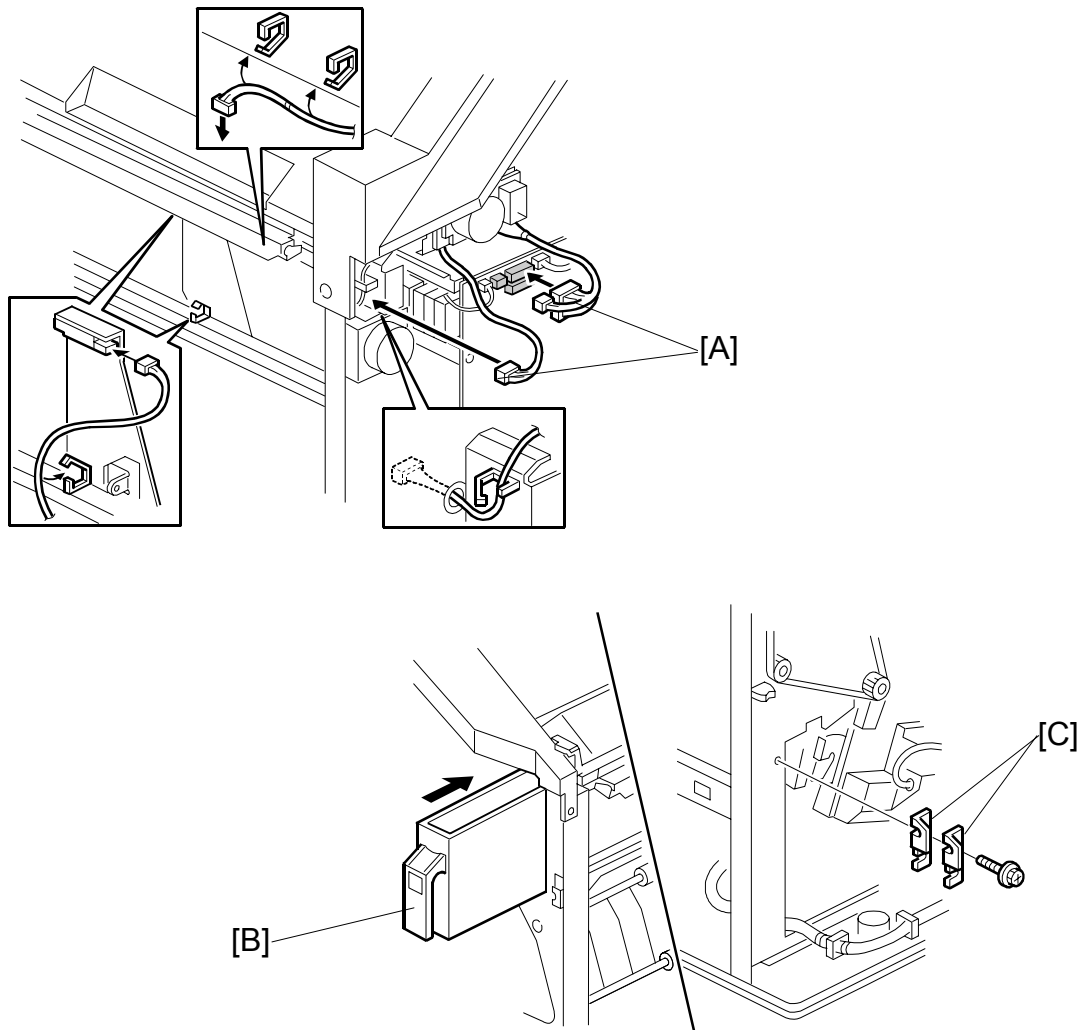
Switch off the main machine and unplug its power cord. If the Two-Tray Finisher is installed, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine. (☞1.7)

1. Unpack the punch unit and remove all tapes and shipping retainers.
2. Open the front door and remove the rear cover [A] (🔩 x4).
3. Remove the bracket [B] (🔩 x2) and paper guide [C] (🔩 x 1).



4. Remove the hopper cover [A] ($\varnothing$ x 2).
5. Install the sensor bracket [B] (stepped $\varnothing$ x 1).
6. Install the spring [C].
7. Install the 2 mm spacer [D].
8. Install the punch unit [E] ($\varnothing$ x 2, stepped $\varnothing$ x 1)

PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (B377)



9. Connect the harnesses [A] and clamp them as shown.

NOTE: No special DIP switch settings are required for this punch unit. The punch unit sends an identification signal to the machine board so it knows what type of punch unit has been installed.

10. Slide the hopper [B] into the machine.

11. Fasten the two 1 mm spacers [C] to the rear frame for future adjustment.

NOTE: The spacers are used to adjust the horizontal positioning of the holes.

12. Reassemble the finisher and check the punch operation.

1.9 ARDF INSTALLATION (B714)

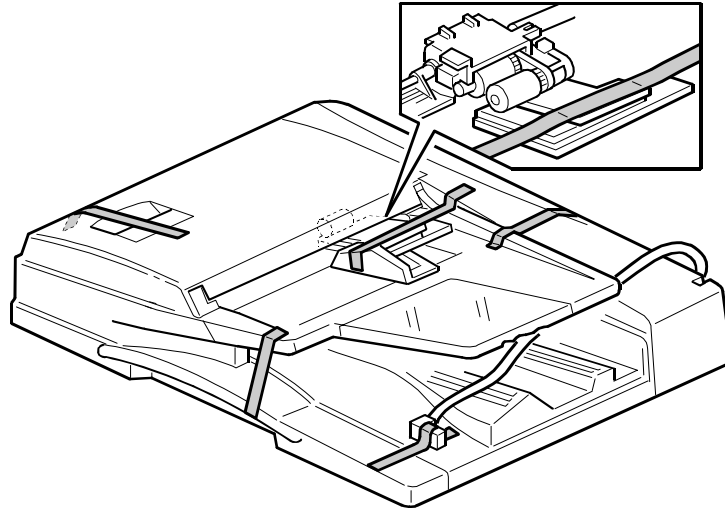
1.9.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Stepped Screw	2
2. Screw – M4 x 10	2
3. Attention Decal - Scanner	1
4. Attention Decal – Top Cover	1
5. Installation Procedure	1

NOTE: The gasket and ferrite core for the ARDF are provided with the accessories of the main machine. (➡1.3.1)

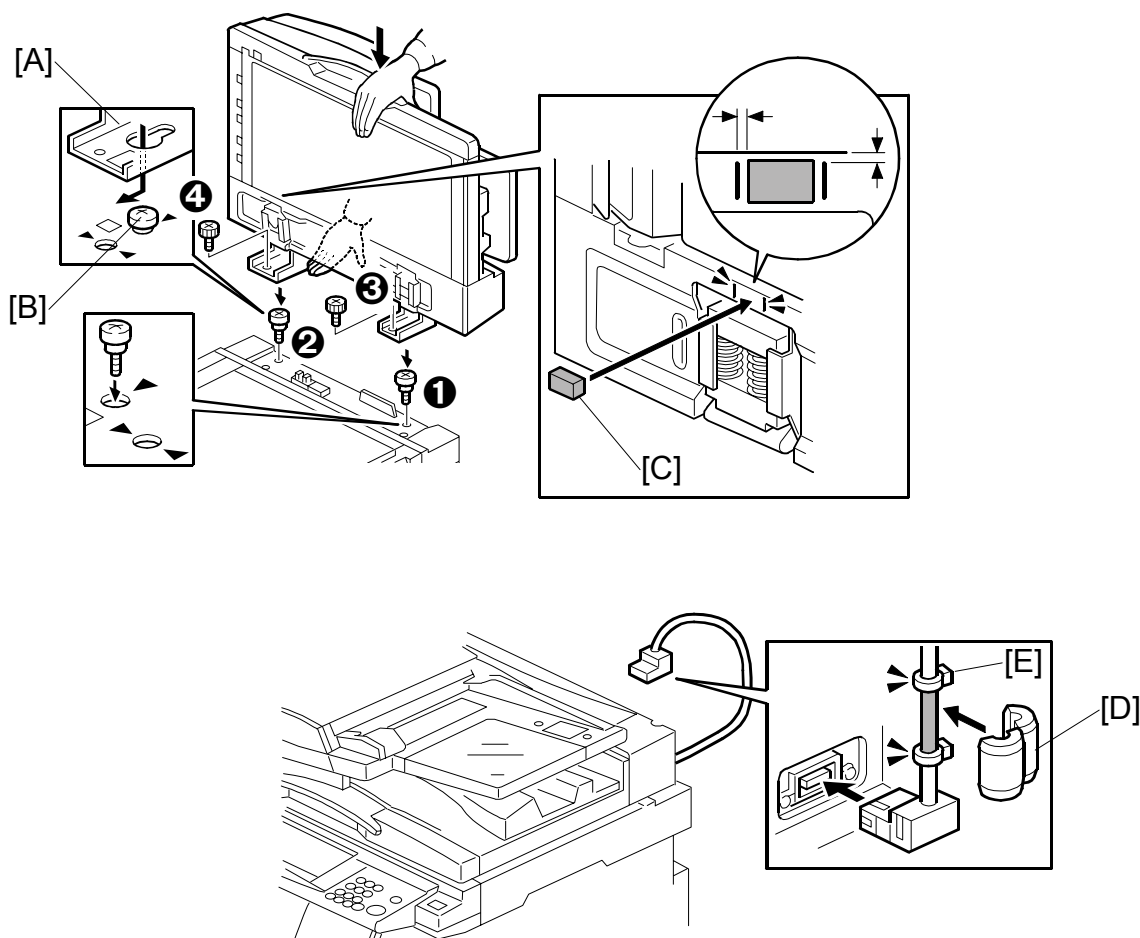
1.9.2 ARDF INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠ CAUTION

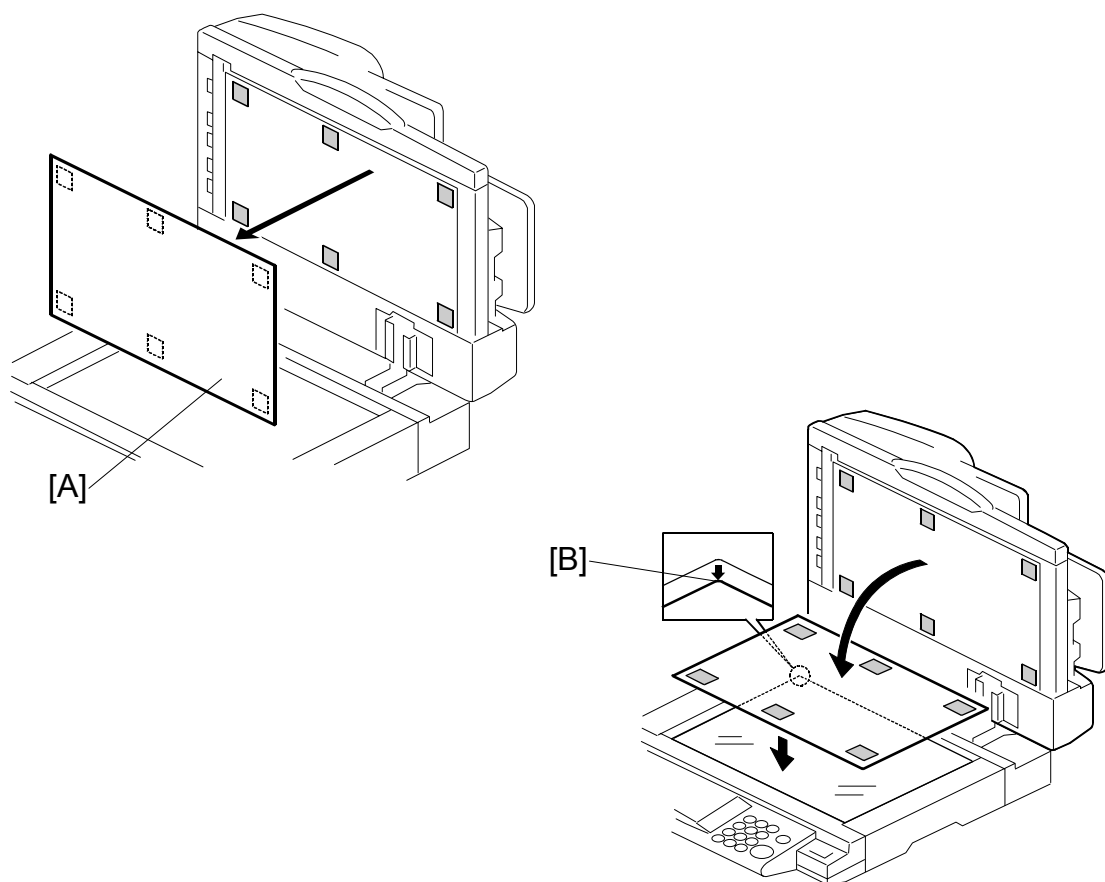
Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the ARDF and remove all tapes and shipping retainers.

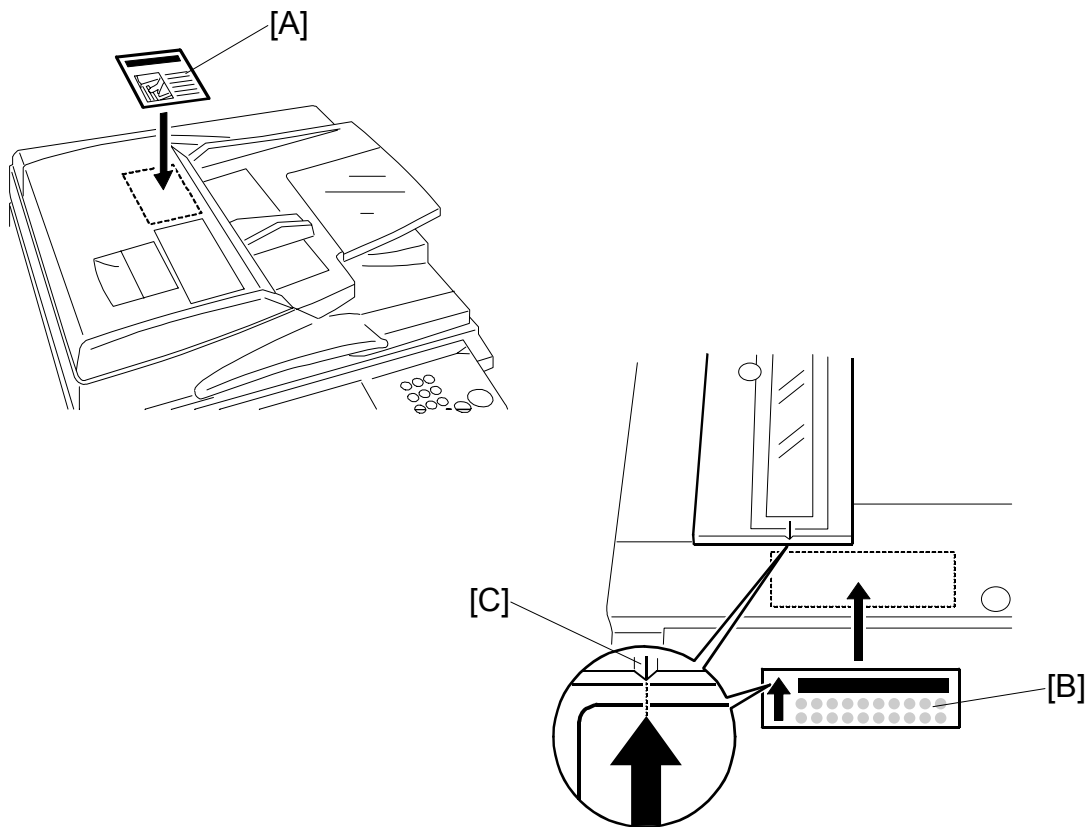


2. Attach and tighten stud screws ❶, ❷.
3. Mount the ARDF by aligning the screw keyholes [A] of the ARDF support plate over the stud screws [B], then slide the ARDF toward the front of the machine.
NOTE: To avoid damaging the ARDF, hold it as shown.
4. Secure the ARDF with the screws ❸, ❹.
5. Attach the gasket [C].
NOTE: The gasket is provided as an accessory with the mainframe.
6. Attach the ferrite core [D] to the I/F cable [E].
NOTE: The ferrite core is provided as an accessory with the mainframe.
5. Connect the I/F cable the main machine.

ARDF INSTALLATION (B714)

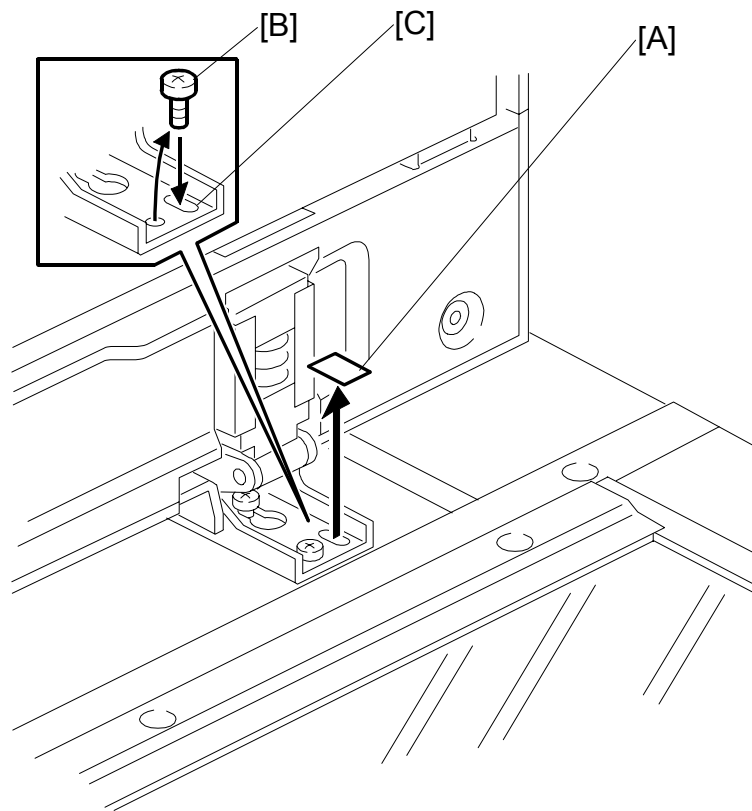


6. Peel off the platen sheet [A] and place it on the exposure glass.
7. Line up the rear left corner of the platen sheet flush against corner [B] on the exposure glass.
8. Close the ARDF.



9. Attach the top cover decal [A] to the top cover as shown, choosing the language most suitable for the machine installed.
10. Attach the scanner decal [B] to the cover so that the arrow on the decal lines up with the groove [C] of the left scale as shown. As with step 9, choose the language most suitable for the machine installed.
11. Turn on the main switch.
12. Check the ARDF operation and copy quality. Be sure to check and adjust the registration for the ARDF with the SP modes

1.9.3 ARDF SKEW ADJUSTMENT



1. Remove the tape [A] covering the elliptical hole.
2. Remove right screw [B] and install it into the elliptical hole [C].
3. Move the right side of the ARDF forward or back to adjust the position then tighten the screw.

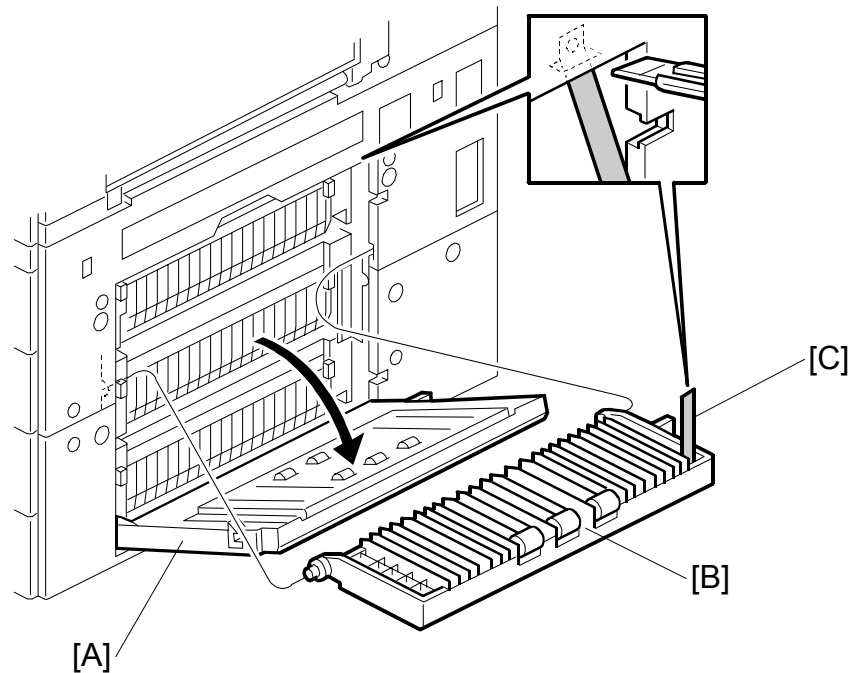
1.10 LCT INSTALLATION (B543)

1.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Joint Pin	2
2. Stepped Screw M3 x 18.....	4
3. Installation Procedure	1

1.10.2 LCT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



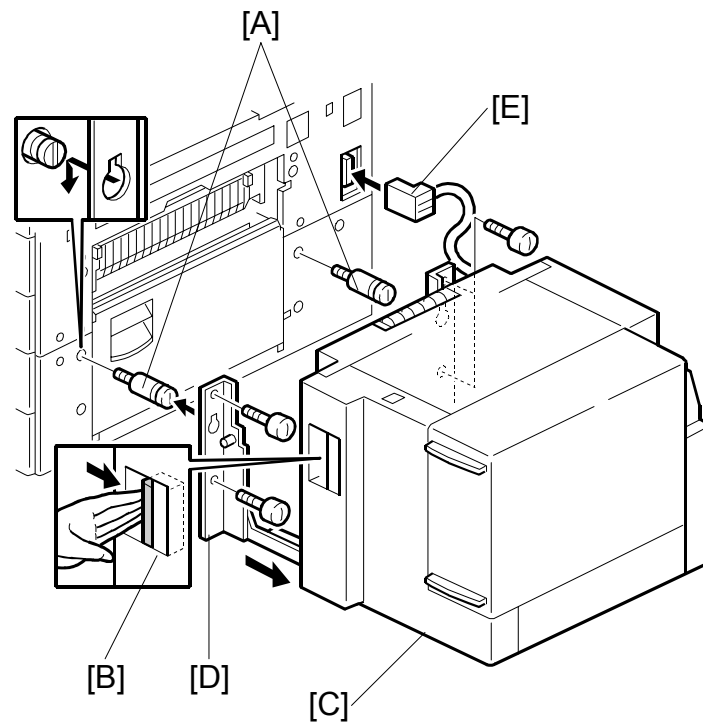
⚠ CAUTION

Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

The Paper Tray Unit (B542) or the Cabinet (FAC25) must be installed before installing the LCT.

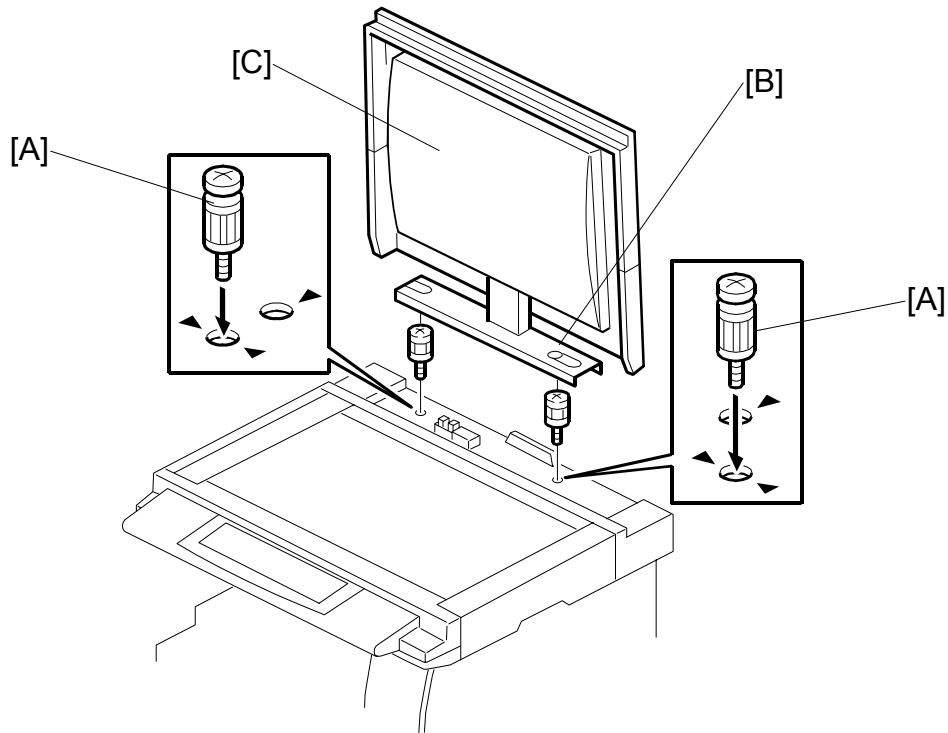
NOTE: Use the LCT mounting hardware supplied with the Cabinet (FAC25).

1. Unpack the LCT and remove the tapes.
2. Open the right cover of the paper tray unit [A].
3. Open the lower right cover [B] and cut the holding band [C].
NOTE: When cutting the holding band, the upper part of the band should be cut as shown. Otherwise, paper jams may occur.
4. Remove the lower right cover.



5. Install the joint pins [A] or the Cabinet (FAC25) joint pins.
6. Push the release lever [B] and slide the LCT to the right (front view).
7. Hang the LCT [C] on the joint pins, then secure the brackets [D] (⌀ x 4).
8. Return the LCT to the previous position and connect the LCT cable [E].
9. Open the LCT cover and load the paper.
10. Turn on the ac switch and check the LCT operation.

1.11 PLATEN COVER INSTALLATION (G329)

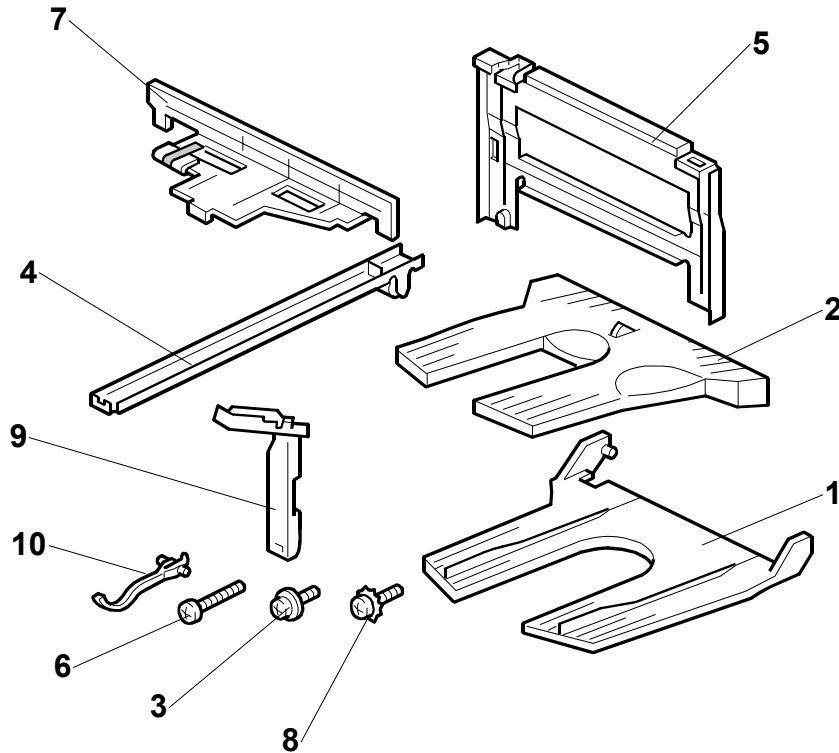


1. Install [A] (⌀ x 2) on the top cover as shown.
2. Position the platen cover bracket [B] on the heads of the stud screws and slide the platen cover [C] to the left.

1.12 BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION (B546)

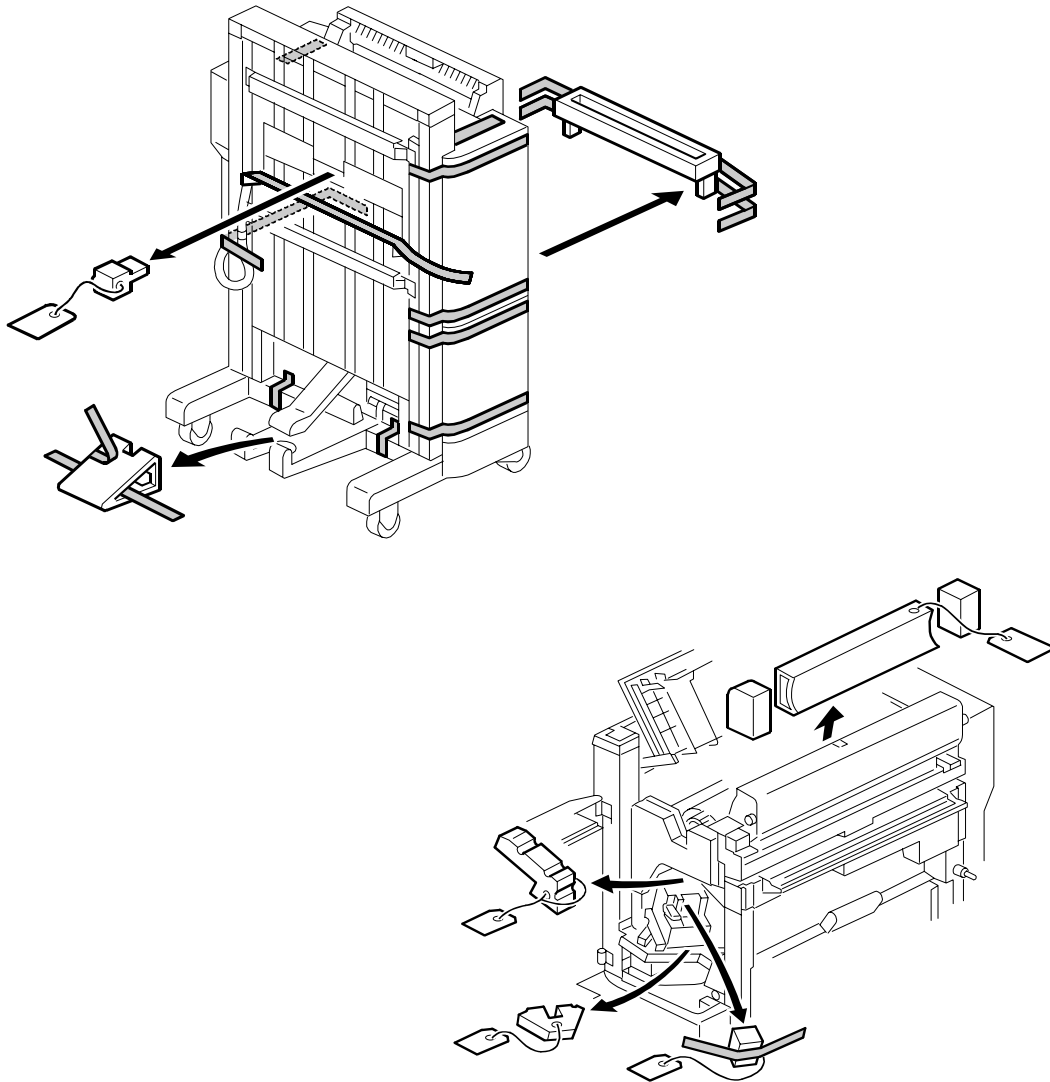
1.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list.



Description	Q'ty
1. Upper Tray.....	1
2. Shift Tray	1
3. Tapping Screw - M4 x 6.....	2
4. Rail Ass'y.....	1
5. Joint Bracket.....	1
6. Tapping Screw - M4 x 16.....	8
7. Rail Bracket	1
8. Tapping Screw - M4 x 6.....	1
9. Harness Cover.....	1
10. Sensor Feeler	1

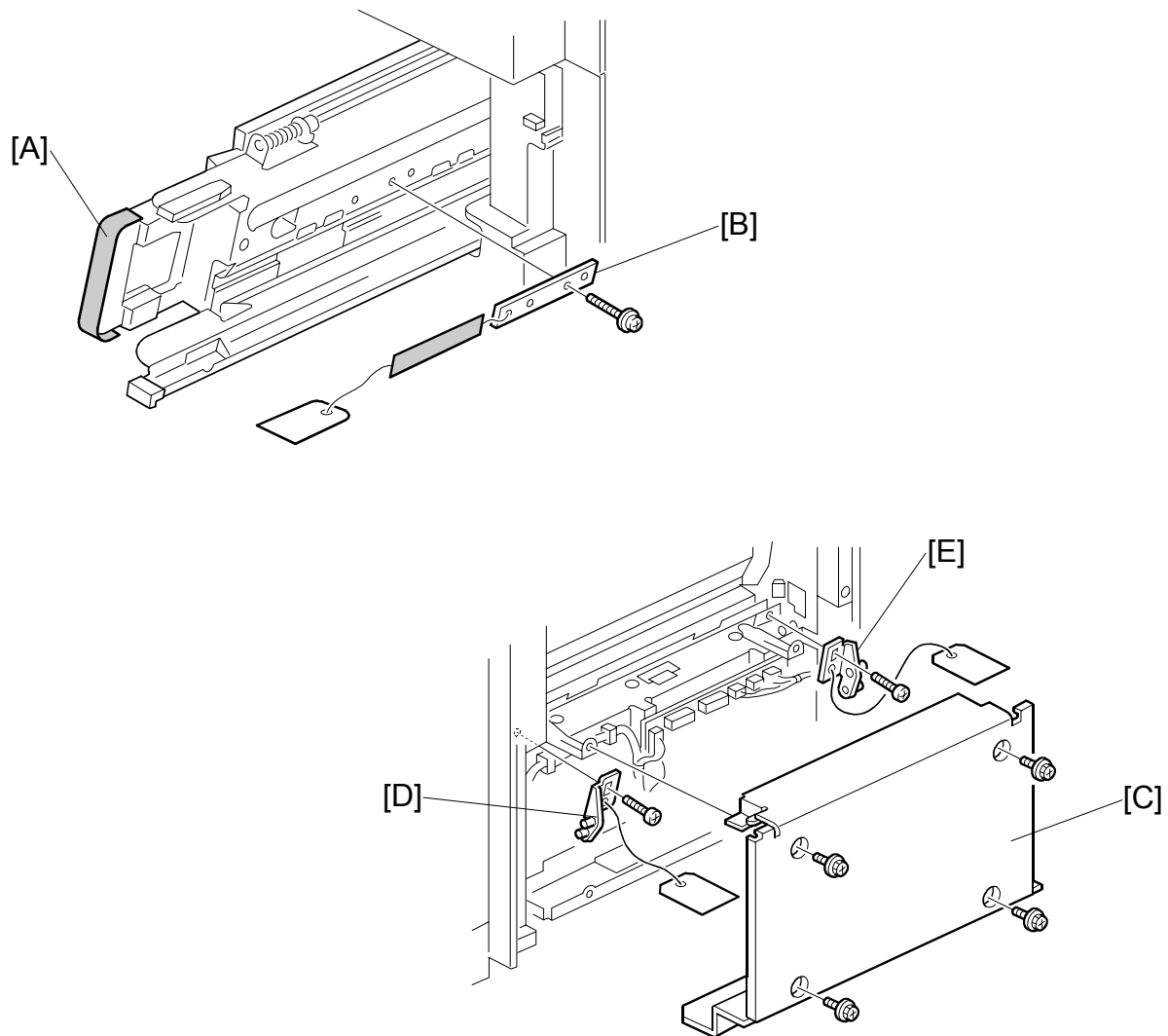
1.12.2 BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠ CAUTION

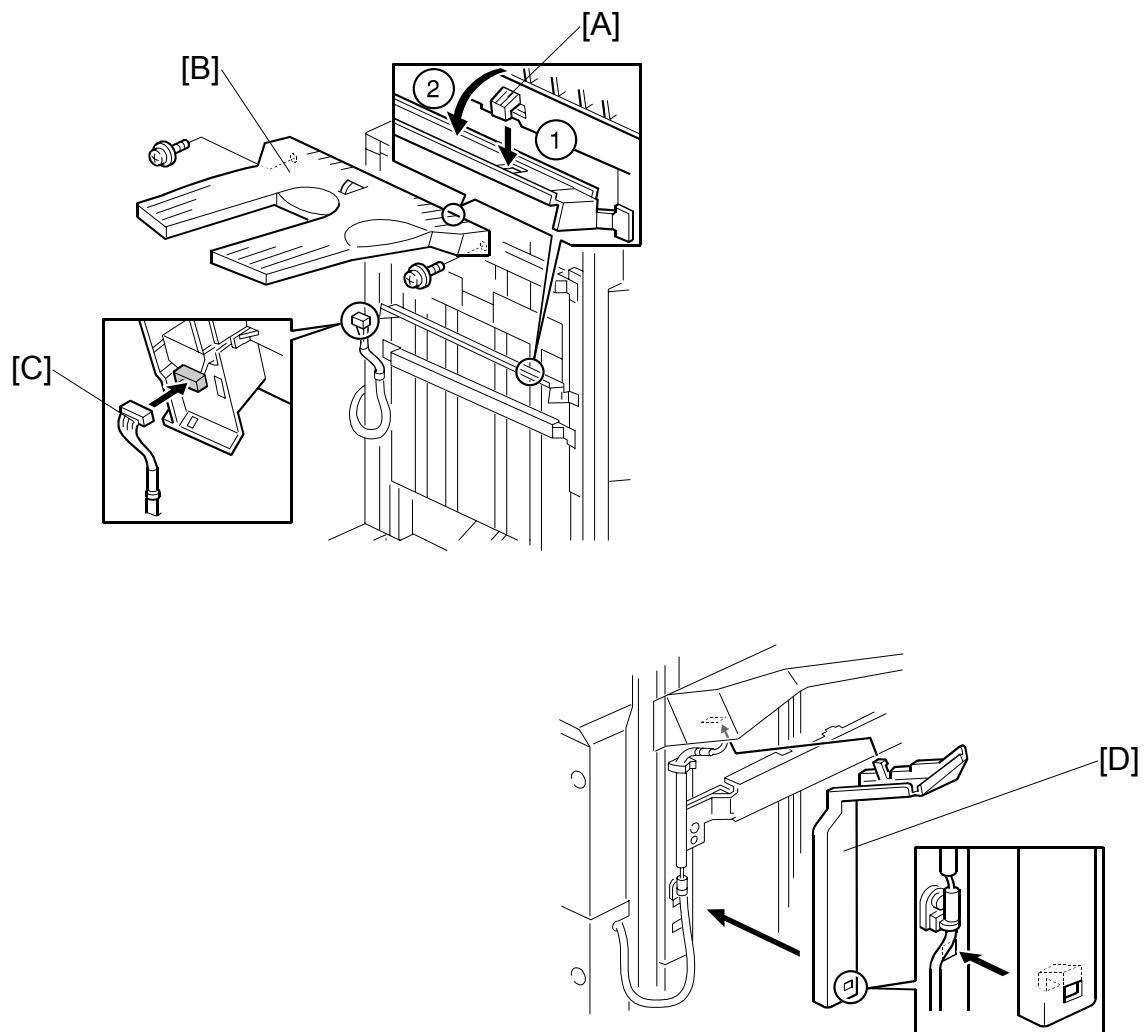
Keep the power cord unplugged when starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes and shipping retainers.

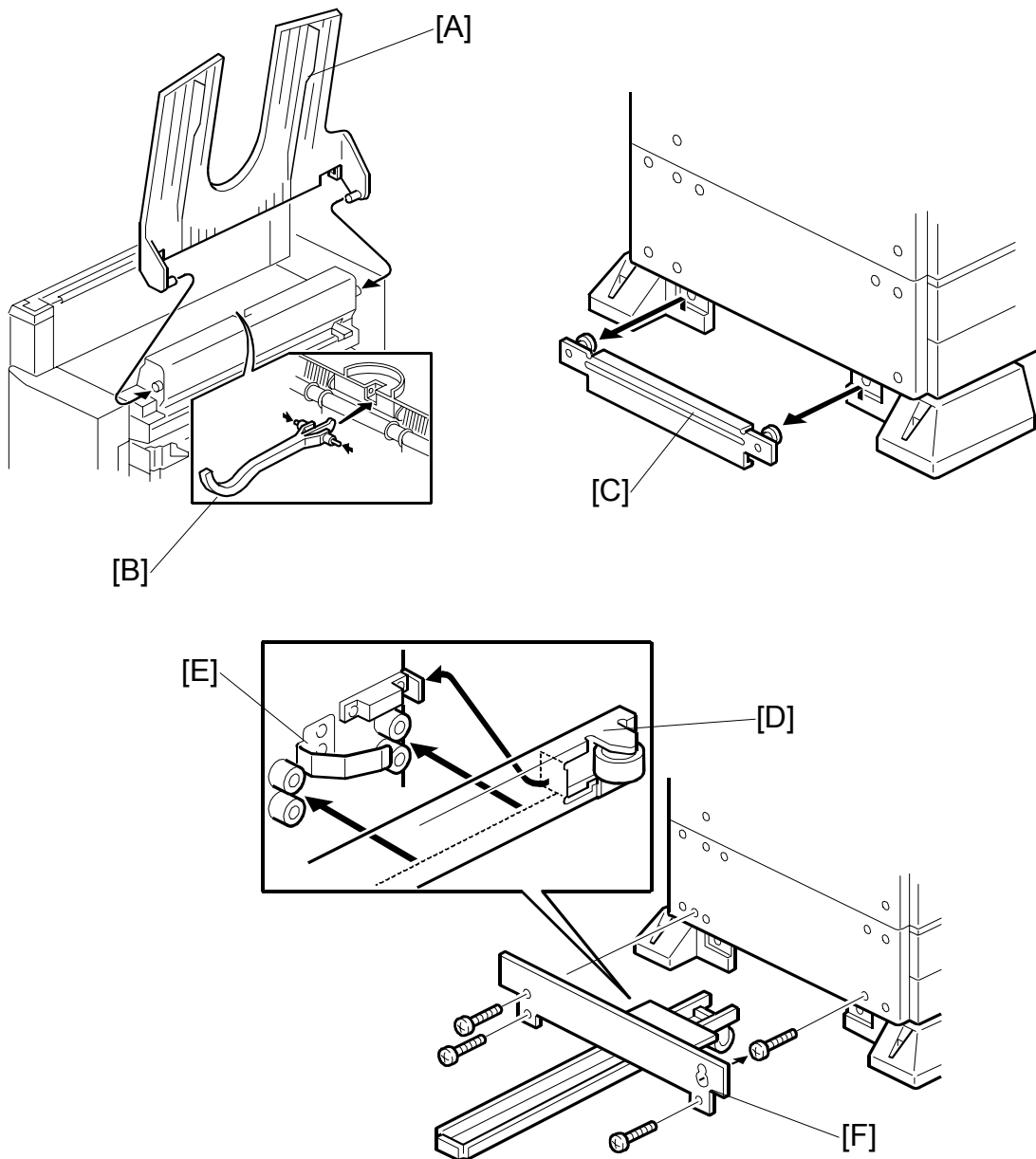


2. Open the front under door and pull out the staple unit [A].
3. Remove the stapler unit lock plate [B] (⚙ x 1).
4. Push in the stapler unit and shut the front lower door.
5. Remove the right lower cover [C] (⚙ x 4).
6. Remove the front pressure release bracket [D] (⚙ x 1).
7. Remove the rear pressure release bracket [E] (⚙ x 1).
8. Reattach the cover [C].

BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION (B546)

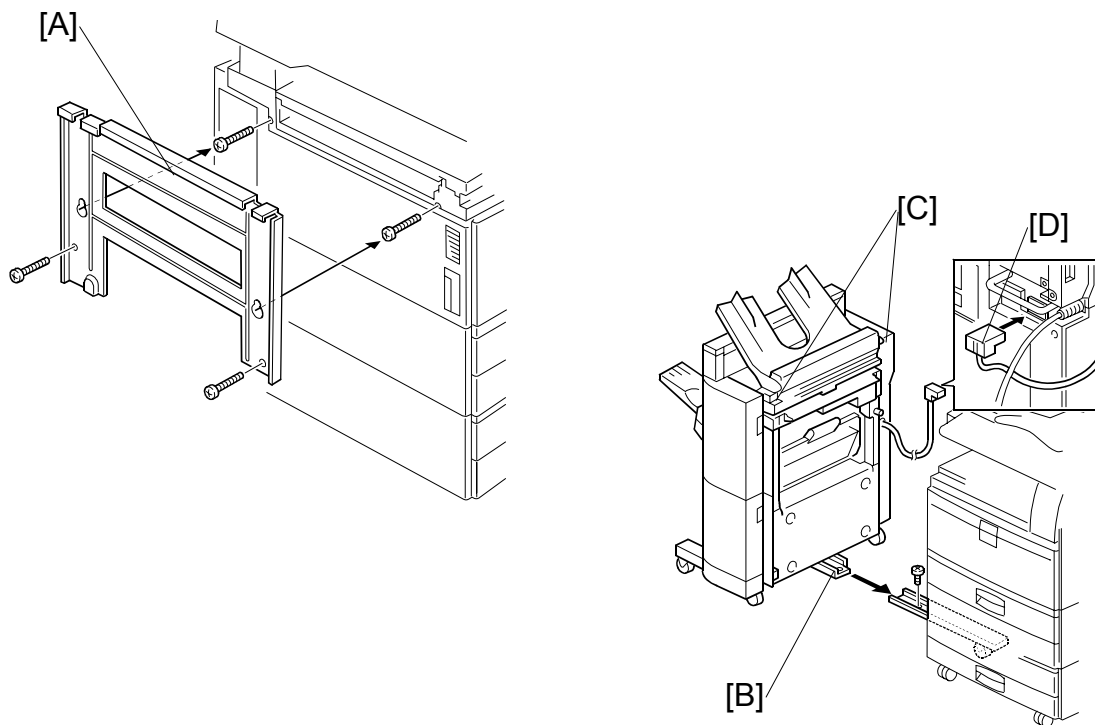


9. Set the hooks [A] of the shift tray [B] in the notches in the shift tray bracket, and secure the tray (⌀ x2 M4).
10. Connect the shift tray sensor harness [C].
11. Install the harness cover [D] (2 hooks).



12. Install the upper tray [A] (2 pins).
13. Attach the sensor feeler [B] (2 pins).
14. Remove the stand bracket [C].
15. Attach the rail [D] to the rail bracket [E] as shown.
16. Install the rail bracket [F] on the left lower cover of the copier (ϕ x 4).

BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION (B546)

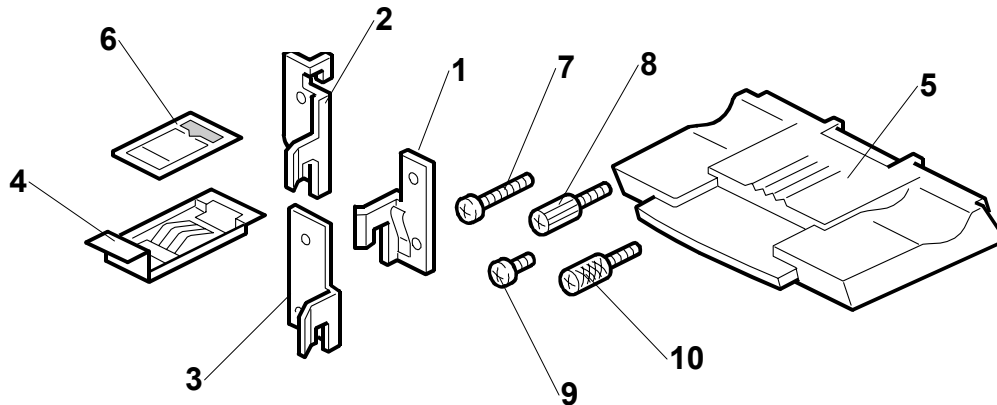


17. Install the joint bracket [A] on the left side of the copier (⌀ x 4).
18. Secure the rail [B] to the booklet finisher with 1 M4 screw.
19. Align the finisher on the joint bracket and lock the 2 hooks [C] of the finisher on the joint bracket.
20. Connect the finisher cable [D] to the copier.
21. Turn on the main switch and check the finisher operation.

1.13 1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408)

1.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

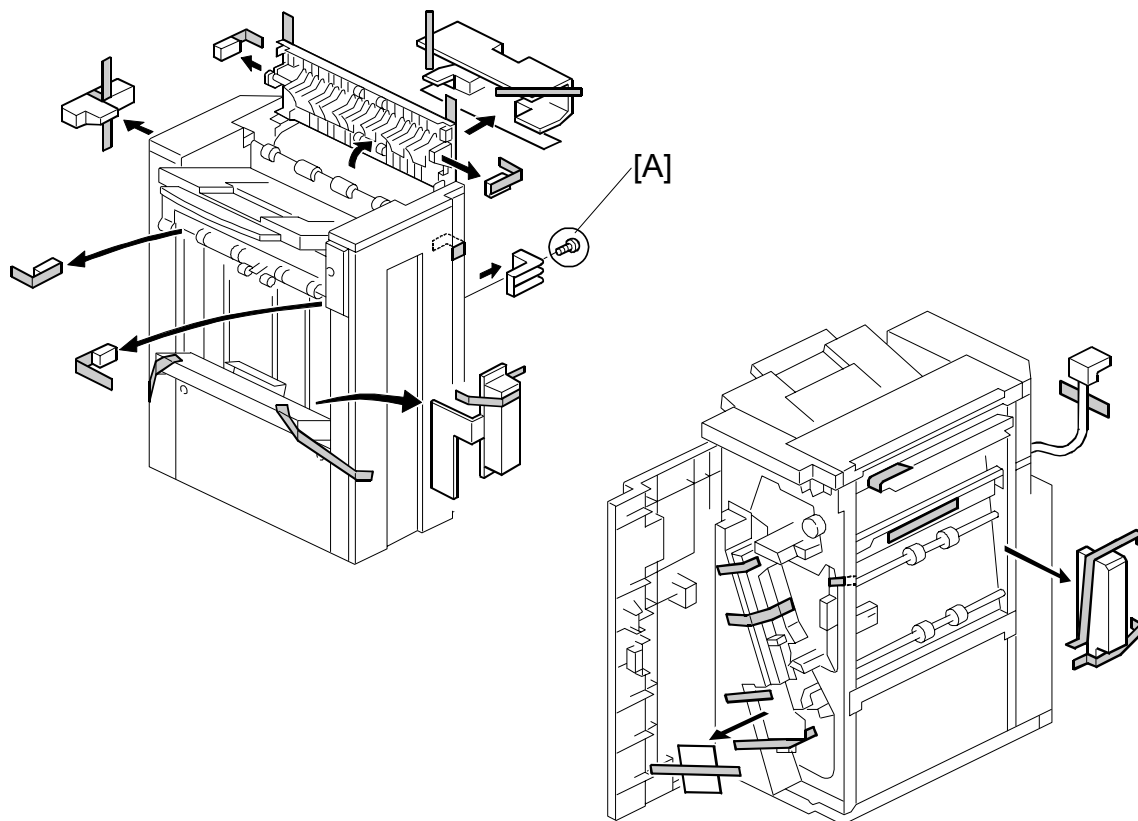
Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.



Description	Q'ty
1 Right Joint Bracket.....	1
2 Left Joint Bracket *1	1
3 Left Joint Bracket	1
4 Grounding Plate.....	1
5 Copy Tray	1
6 Staple Position Decal.....	1
7 Screw - M4 x 14.....	4
8 Knob Screw - M4 x 10	1
9 Screw - M3 x 8.....	1
10 Knob Screw - M3 x 8	1

*1: Rear joint bracket is not required for these models.

1.13.2 1000 SHEET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

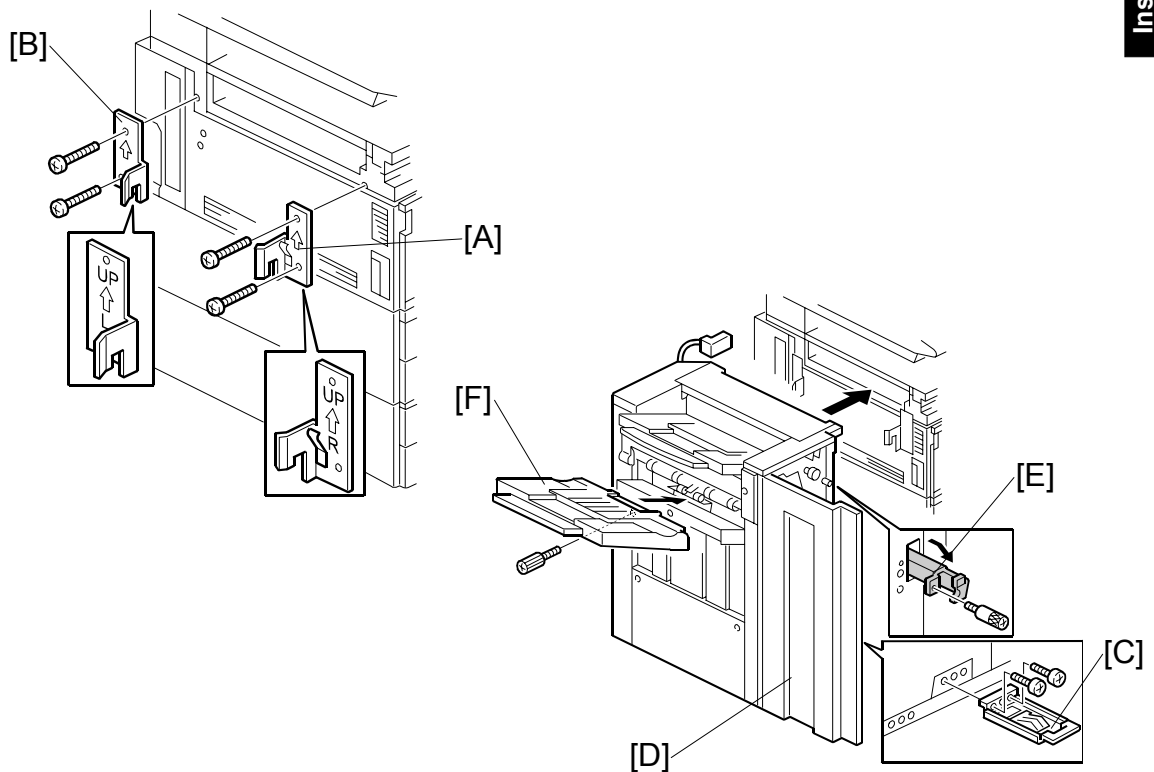


⚠ CAUTION

Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

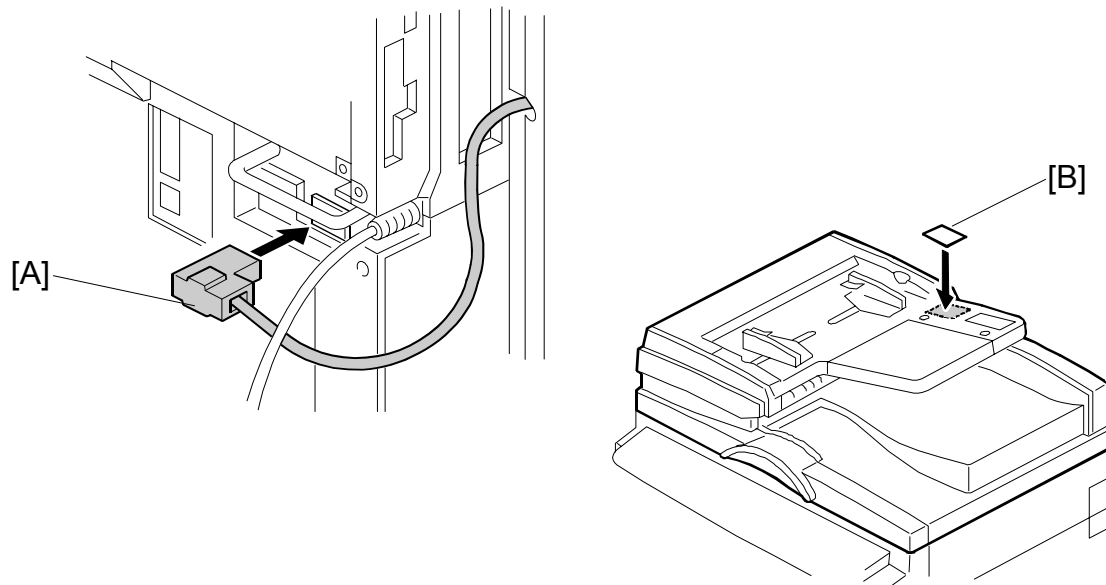
1. The following options must be installed before installing this finisher.
 - Bridge Unit (B538)
 - Paper Tray Unit (B542)
2. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes.

NOTE: Be sure to keep screw [A]. It will be needed to secure the grounding plate in Step 3.



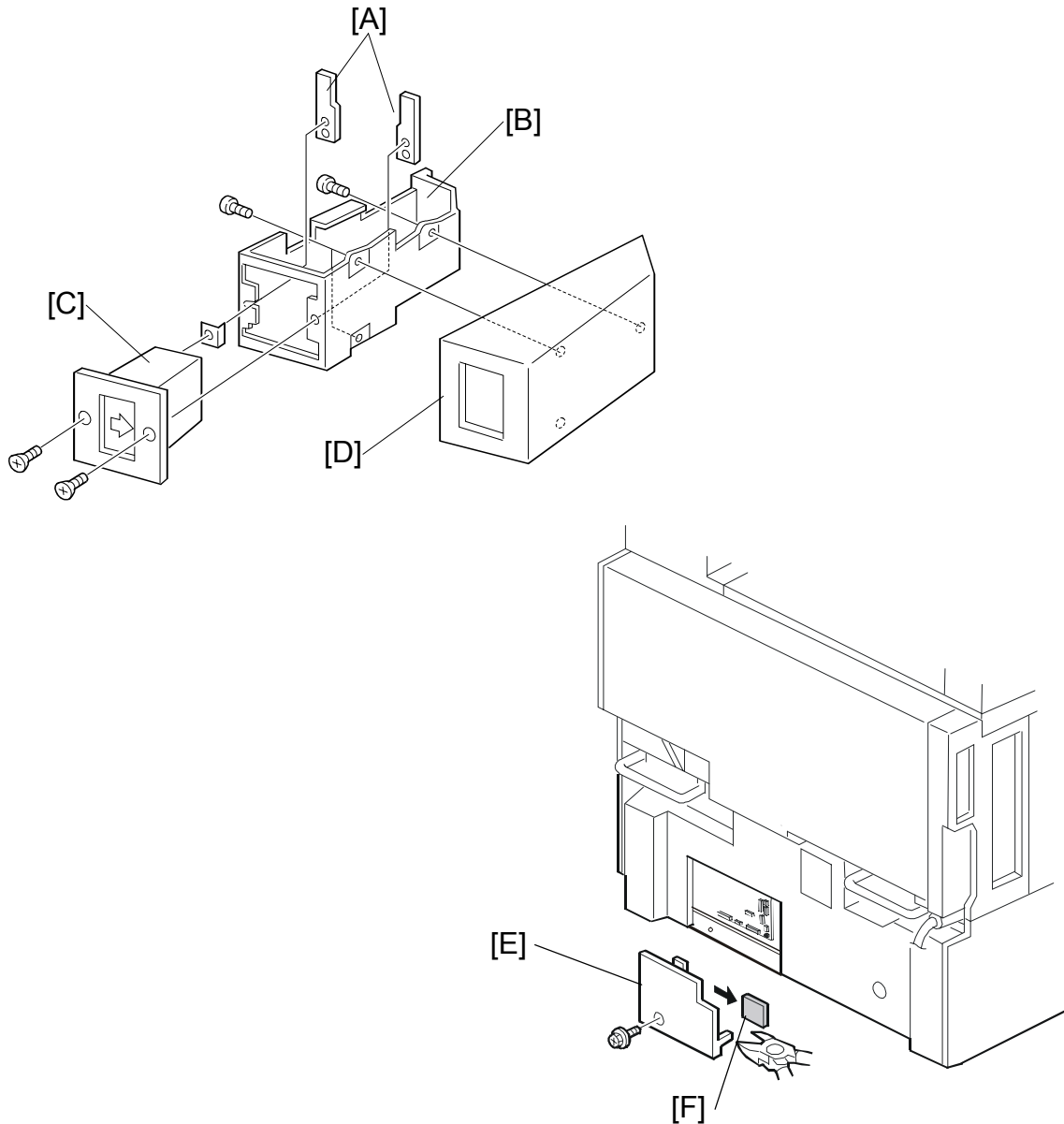
2. Install the right joint bracket [A] (2 screws - M4 x 14) and left joint bracket [B] (2 x 2 M4 x 14).
3. Install the grounding plate [C] to the finisher (2 x 2 M3 x 8).
NOTE: Use the screw removed in step 1 and the screw from the accessory box.
4. Open the front door [D] then pull the locking lever [E].
5. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.
6. Secure the locking lever (1 x 1 knob screw M3 x 8).
7. Close the front door.
8. Install the copy tray [F] (1 x 1 knob screw M4 x 10).

1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408)



9. Connect the finisher cable [A] to the main machine below the right rear handle.
10. Attach the staple position decal [B] to the ARDF as shown.
11. Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.

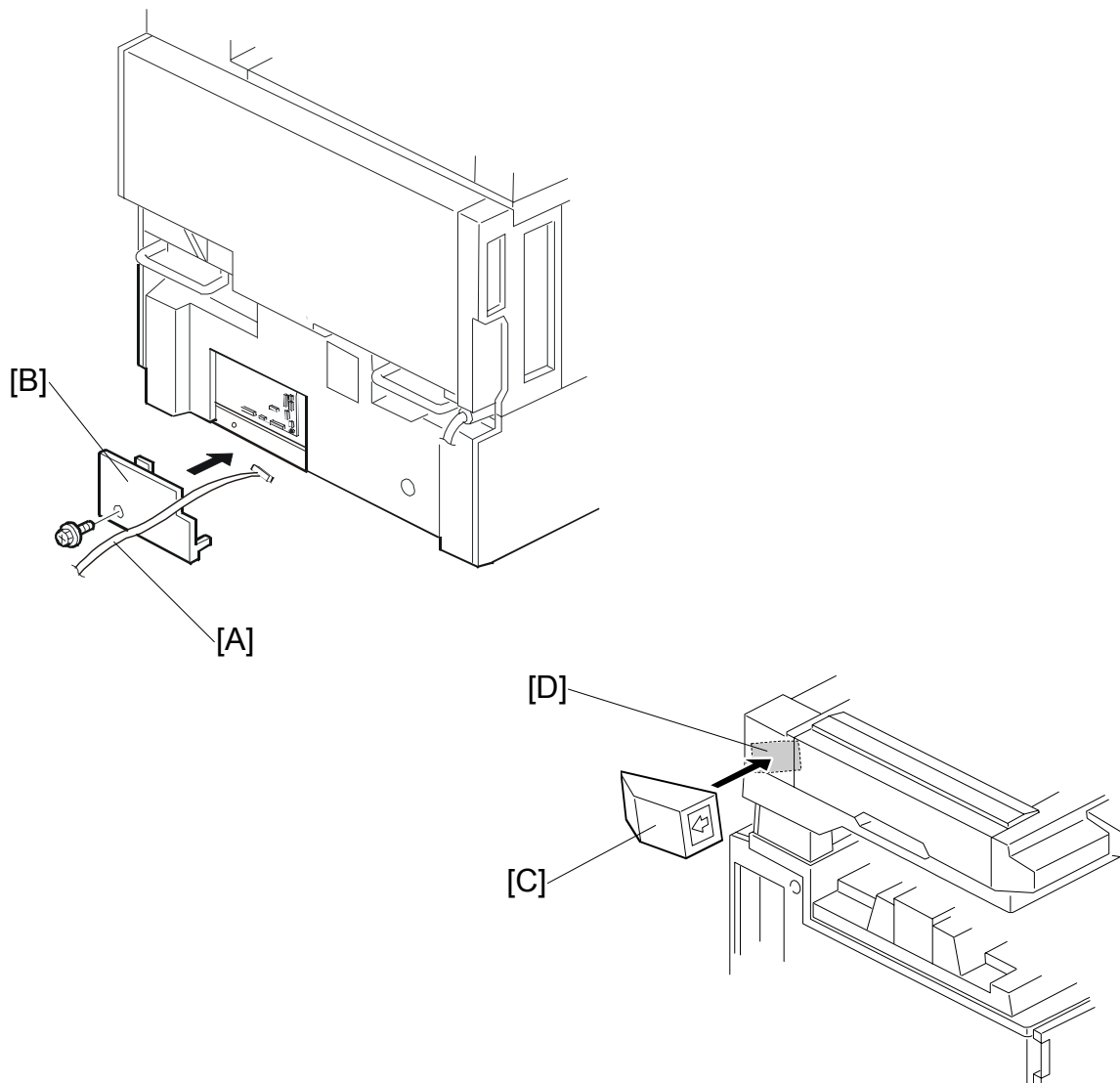
⇒ 1.14 KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION (A674)



⚠ CAUTION

Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Hold the key counter plates [A] on the inside of the key counter bracket [B] and insert the key counter holder [C].
2. Secure the key counter holder to the bracket (⚙ x2).
3. Attach the key counter cover [D] (⚙ x2).
4. Remove the connector cover [E] (⚙ x1).
5. Remove the knockout [F] from the connector cover.



6. Connect the key counter connector [A] to CN211 on the I/O board.
7. Reinstall the cover [B] (⚙ x1).
8. Attach the double-sided tape to the key counter bracket.
9. Peel off the backing of the double-sided tape and attach the key counter assembly [D] to the left side of the scanner unit.

NOTE: When attaching the key counter assembly [C], press the assembly hard against the scanner cover. Otherwise, the key counter assembly may come off easily.

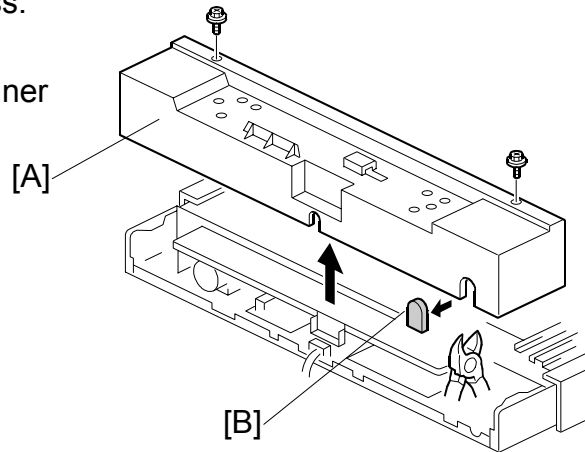
10. Set “User Tools”, “System Settings”, “Key Operator Tools”, and “Key Counter Management” to restrict access to each available function mode.



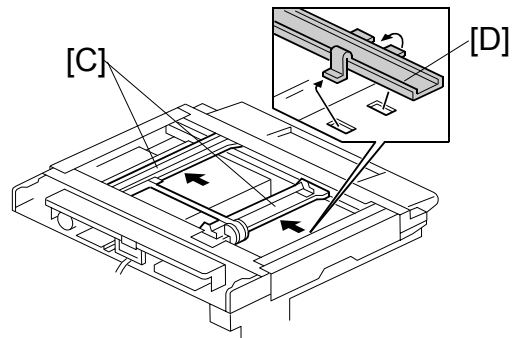
This page intentionally left blank.

1.15 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER

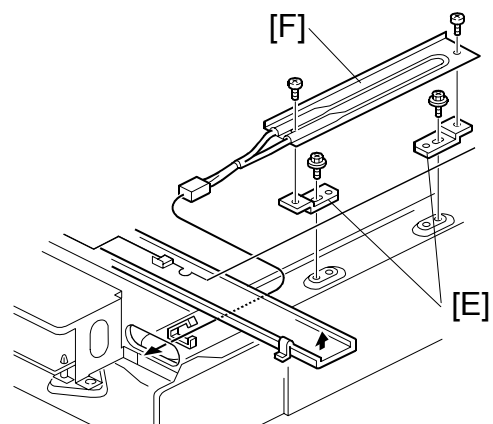
1. Remove the ARDF and exposure glass.
(☛ 3.9.1 and 3.9.2)
2. Remove the rear cover [A] of the scanner unit (🔩 x2, 🪚 x1)
3. Remove the knockout [B]



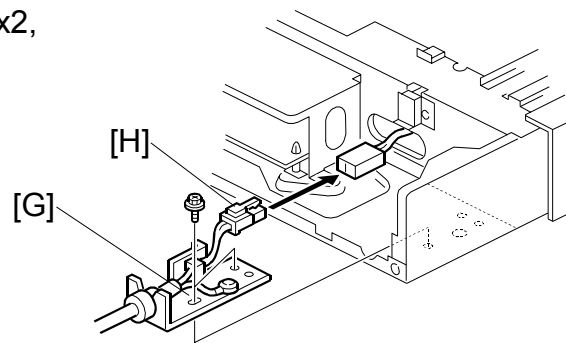
4. Push the 1st and 2nd scanners [C] to the right.
5. Lift the harness guide [D]



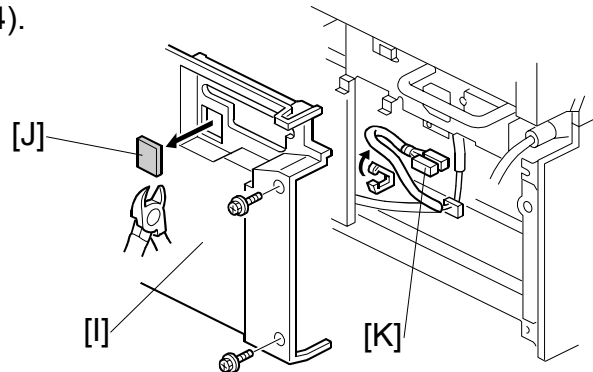
6. Install the heater brackets [E] (🔩 x2, M3x6).
NOTE: Use the screws already attached at the same position.
7. Install the heater [F] (🔩 x2, M4x6) and route the harness.



8. Install the ac harness assembly [G] (⚙ x2, M4x6) and connect the connector [H].



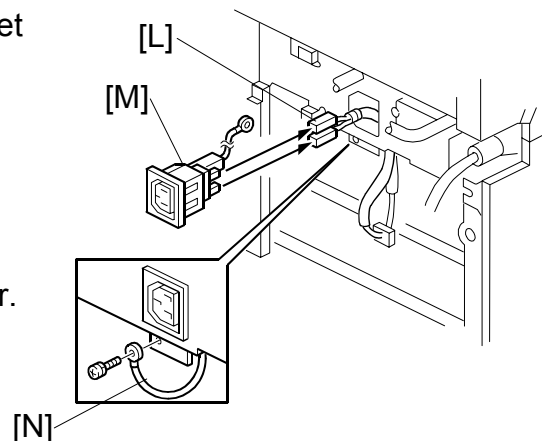
9. Remove the rear lower cover [I] (⚙ x4).
10. Remove knockout [J].
11. Pull out ac harness [K].



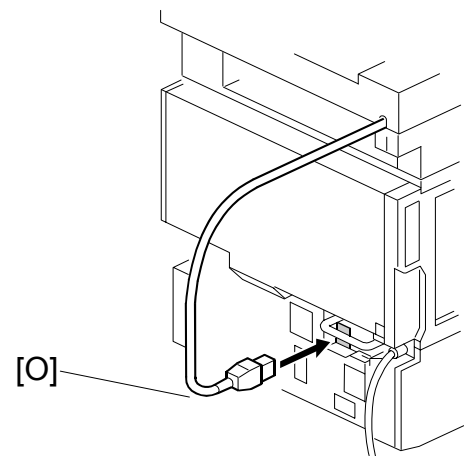
12. Connect the ac harness [L] to the ac outlet [M].

NOTE: Do not remove the ground wire from the ac outlet.

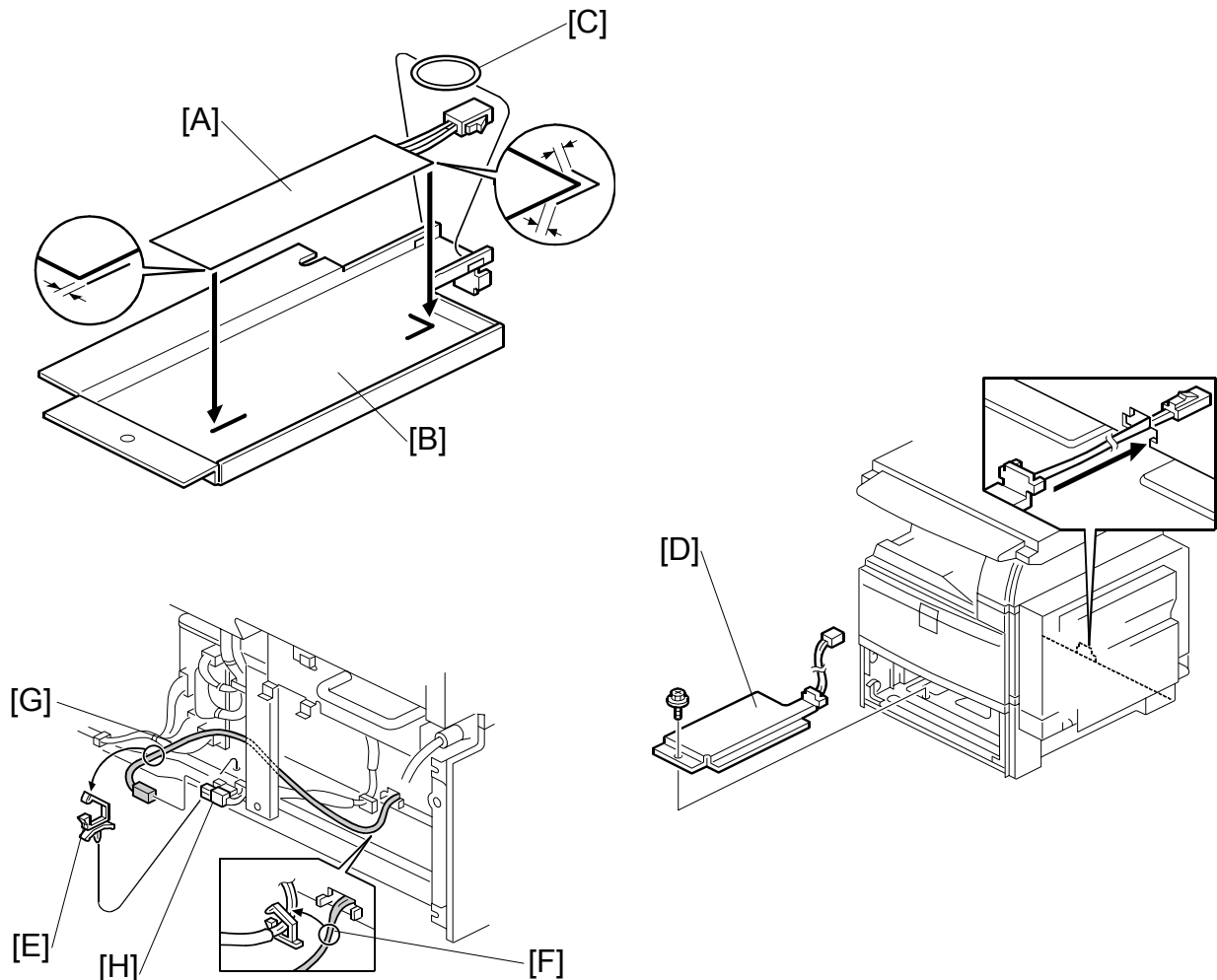
13. Install the ac outlet.
14. Install the ground wire [N] (⚙ x1, M4x6).
15. Re-install the rear cover, rear lower cover.



16. Connect the harness [O].



1.16 TRAY HEATER

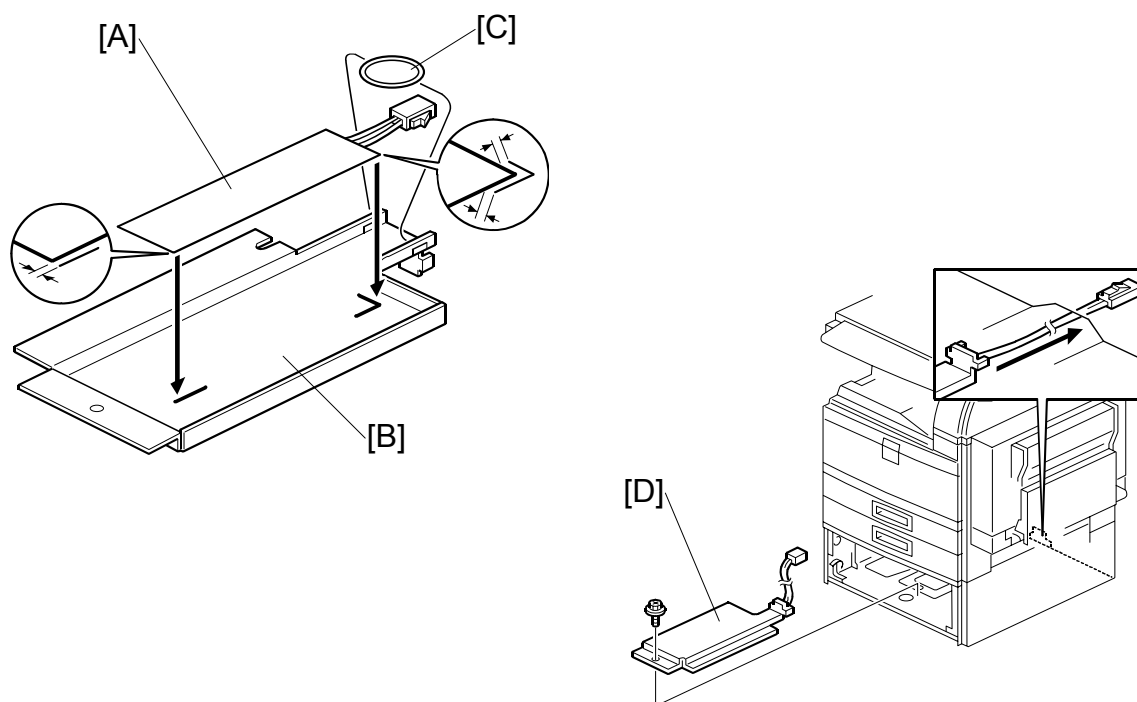


⚠ CAUTION

Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Attach the tray heater [A] to the heater bracket [B].
2. Install the harness holder [C].
3. Remove the rear lower cover.
4. Remove the upper and lower paper trays from the main machine.
5. Install the heater assembly [D] (⌀ x1).
6. Install the harness clamp [E].
7. Fasten the harness [F] with the clamp.
8. Route the heater harness [G] and connect it to the ac harness [H].

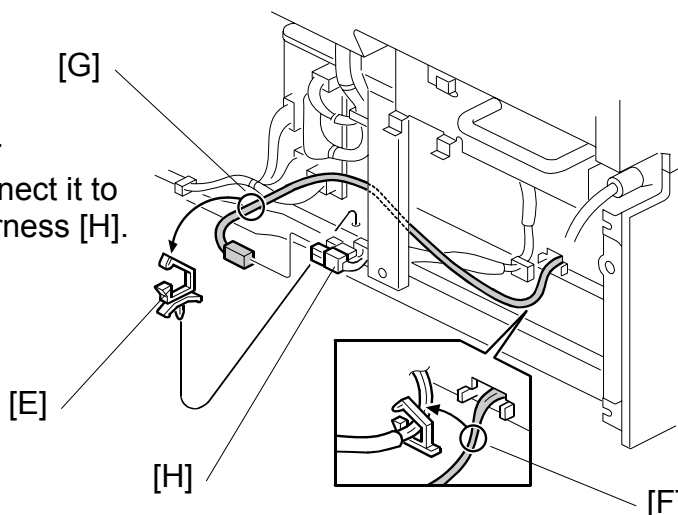
⇒ 1.17 TRAY HEATER (OPTIONAL PAPER TRAY UNIT)

**⚠ CAUTION**

Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Attach the optional tray heater [A] to the heater bracket [B].
2. Install the harness holder [C].
3. Remove the rear lower cover of the machine and the rear cover of the optional paper tray unit.
4. Remove the upper and lower paper trays of the optional paper tray unit.
5. Install the heater assembly [D] (⌀ x1).

6. Install four harness clamps [E].
7. Route the harness [F] and connect it to the harness [G] and heater harness [H].





1.18 DATA OVERWRITE SECURITY UNIT (B735)

BEFORE YOU BEGIN THE PROCEDURE

1. Make sure that the following settings are **not** at their factory default values:

- Supervisor login password
- Administrator login name
- Administrator login password

If any of these settings is at a factory default value, tell the customer these settings must be changed before you do the installation procedure.

IMPORTANT NOTE

If the Customer forgets the Supervisor login password after changing it from the default setting, a service call is required and the NVRAM must be replaced to reset the Supervisor login and password.

2. Make sure that “Admin. Authentication” – “Machine Management” is **ON**.
[System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Machine Management]

If this setting is OFF, tell the customer this setting must be ON before you do the installation procedure.

3. Make sure that under Machine Management “Administrator Tools” is **enabled** (selected).
[System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] – [Machine Management] - [Available Settings]

If this setting is disabled (not selected), tell the customer this setting must be enabled (selected) before you do the installation procedure.

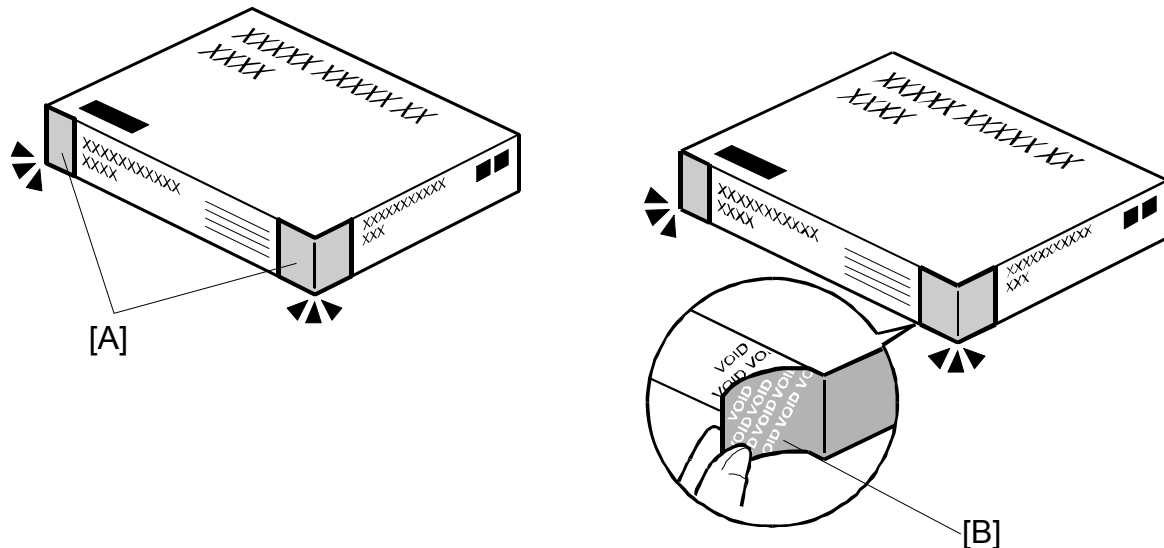
ACCESSORY CHECK

The B264/B265 uses a **Type D** Data Overwrite Security Unit. Check the accessories and their quantities against this list:

Description	Q'ty
1. SD Card	1



1.18.1 SEAL CHECK AND REMOVAL



1. Ensure a customer witness is present when opening the DOSS option.
2. Make sure that:
 - 1) The box has **two pieces of tape** [A] attached to the corners in the photo, **AND**
 - 2) These two tapes are **blank**.
- If you can see “VOID” on the surface of the tape, DO NOT install the components in the box. Stop this procedure and contact the Technical Hotline via the e-Lert form on the TSC Website. Retain the box and its contents. Any tampering of the DOSS option will need to be investigated.
3. If the results of Step 1 are OK, remove the two pieces of tape from the box.

Note: After you remove the tapes, you will see “VOID” written on the box under the tape [B]. This is normal.
4. The procedures outline in this bulletin needs to be followed if the DOSS option is replaced due to a failure.

CAUTION

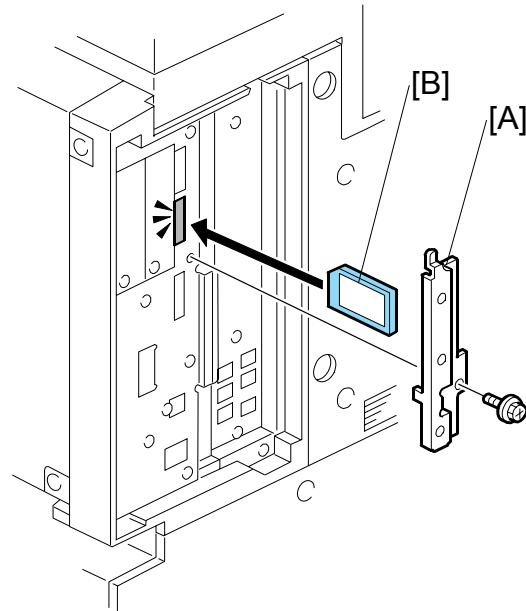
Before you begin any procedure, always turn OFF the machine main power switch and unplug the power cord.

⇒ 1.18.2 INSTALLATION

Important

- The DOS SD card must be inserted in SD card slot **C2**.
- If the PostScript3 option is also installed, you must move the DOS application to the PostScript3 SD card with SP5873 001.

1. If the machine is ON, turn the operation switch and the main power switch OFF.
2. If the NIB is installed, disconnect the network cable.
3. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x1).
4. With the printed side of the SD card [B] facing the rear of the machine, install the DOS SD card in SD card slot **C2**.
5. If the NIB is installed, reconnect the network cable.
6. Turn the main power switch ON.
7. Do SP5878 (Option Setup).
8. Exit SP mode.
9. Turn the operation switch OFF, and then turn the main power switch OFF.
10. Turn the main power switch ON.
11. Do SP5990-005 (SP print mode Diagnostic Report).
12. Make sure the ROM number and firmware version on the diagnostic report are the same as those in the chart below .



- **[A]:** “ROM Number/Firmware Version” – “HDD Format Option”
- **[B]:** “Loading Program” – “GW1a_zoffy” (Data Overwrite Security Unit **Type C**)
“Loading Program” – “GW2a_zoffy” (Data Overwrite Security Unit **Type D**)

Diagnostic Report:	“ROM No. / Firmware Version” [A]	“Loading Program” [B]
Data Overwrite Security Unit Type C	HDD Format Option: B7355050 / 0.04	GW1a_zoffy: B7355050 / 0.04
Data Overwrite Security Unit Type D	HDD Format Option: B7355060 / 0.03	GW2a_zoffy: B7355060 / 0.03

Important: The ROM number and firmware version number change when the firmware is upgraded.



- If the ROM numbers are not the same, or the version numbers are not the same, this means the unit was not installed correctly.

If this happens:

- Make sure the MFP model and unit type match (Type C or D).
The B264/B265 uses a Data Overwrite Security Unit Type D.
- If they do not match:
 - 1) Do the installation procedure again, from Step 1.
 - 2) Replace the “Data Overwrite Security Unit” (SD card) with the correct type. Redo installation procedure.
 - 3) Replace the NV-RAM. Redo installation procedure.

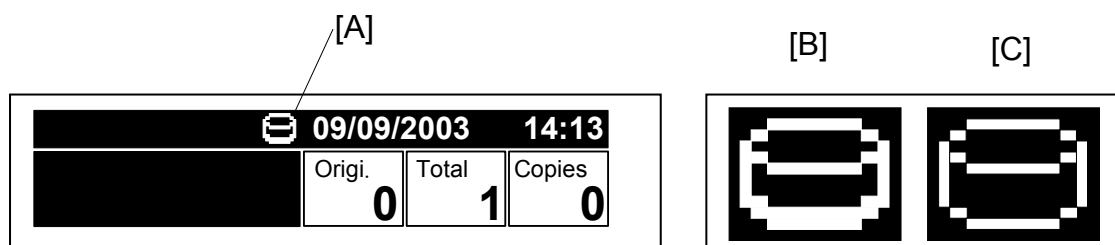
13. Turn “Auto Erase Memory Setting” ON:

User Tools >> System Settings >> Administrator Tools >> Auto Erase Memory Setting >> ON

- If the customer has enabled Administrator Authentication Management - Machine Management they will have to log in to change this User Tool setting.

14. Exit User Tools.

15. Power the machine OFF/ON.



16. Make sure the overwrite erase icon [A] is displayed on the operation panel.

If it is not displayed, do Step 7 again.

17. Make a sample copy.

18. Make sure the overwrite icon changes as follows:

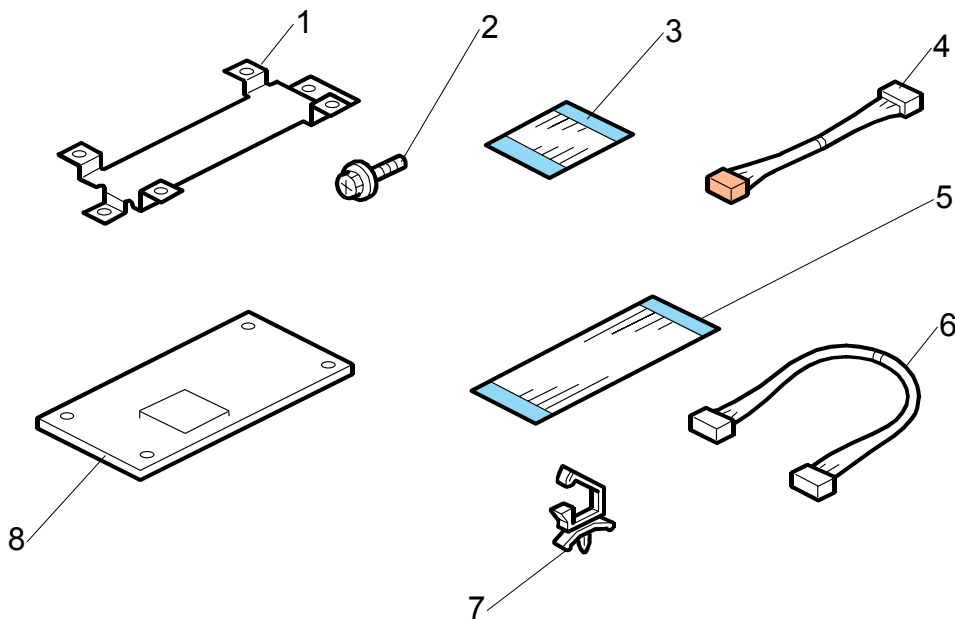
- The bottom of the icon (white part) becomes thicker [B].
- “Next Copy” is displayed for a short time under the icon.
- The icon returns to its usual shape [C].

1.19 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT (B770)

1.19.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Qty
1. Bracket	1
2. Screws.....	4
3. FFC (Short).....	1
4. Harness (Short)	1
5. FFC (Long: Not Used)	1
6. Harness (Long: Not Used)	1
7. Harness Clamp (Not Used).....	1
8. ICIB (Illegal Copy Interface Board)	1

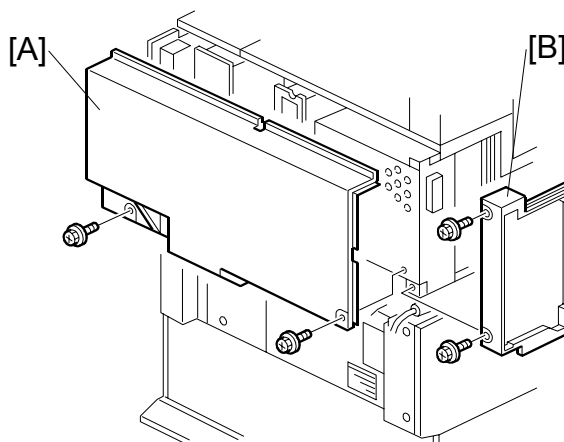


1.19.2 INSTALLATION

1. Remove:

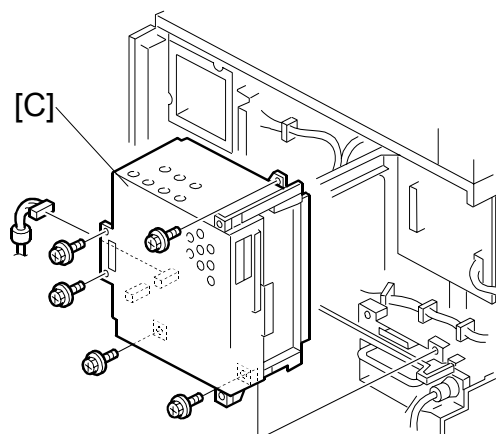
[A]: Rear upper cover (⚙️ x2)

[B]: Controller cover (⚙️ x2)



2. Remove the controller box [C]

(⚙️ x5, 📏 x1)



3. Attach the bracket [D] (⚙️ x2).

4. Attach the ICIB [E] (⚙️ x4)

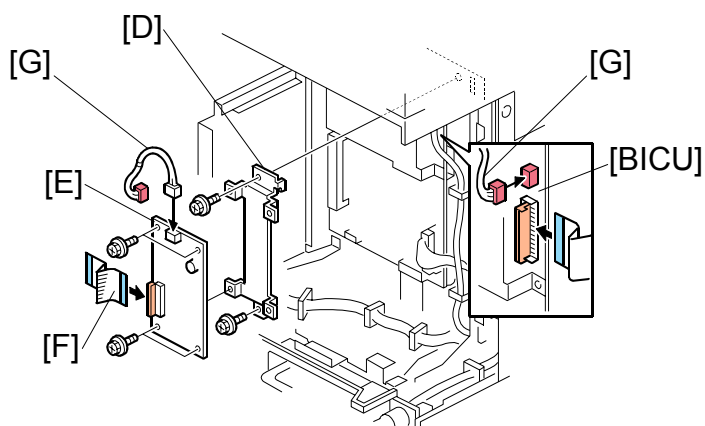
5. Connect the short FFC [F].

6. Connect the short harness [G] (📏 x2).

7. Reinstall the controller box.

8. Turn on the machine.

9. Enable the Copy Data Security function.



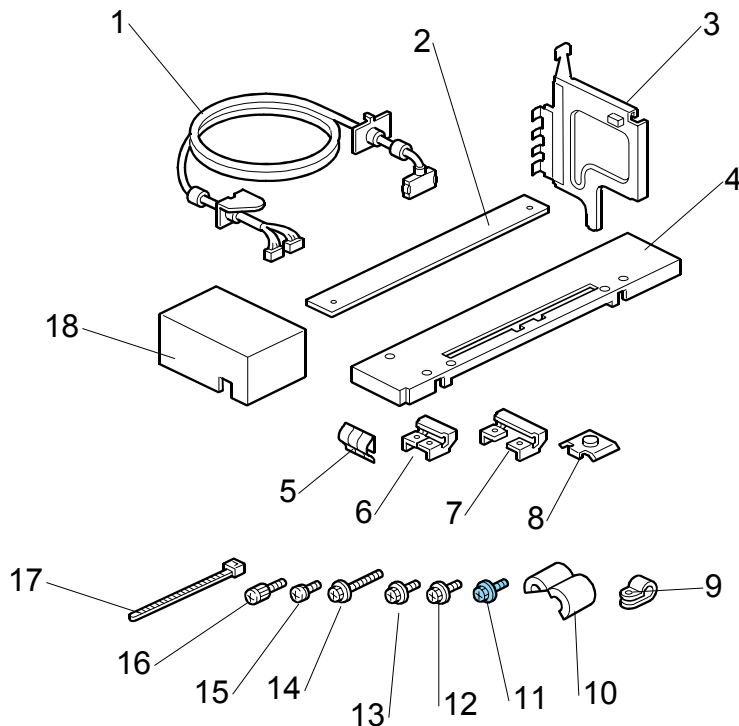
[User Tools]>System Settings>Administrator Tools>Copy Data Security Option

1.20 SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION (B815)

1.20.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Qty
1. Long I/F Cable	1
2. Paper Exit Cover.....	1
3. Rack Stack Ass'y	1
4. Upper Right Cover	1
5. Spring Plates – Operation Panel.....	2
6. Hinge Stopper – Right	1
7. Hinge Stopper – Left	1
8. Adjusting Pin Spacers.....	2
9. Clamp – NK-8N.....	1
10. Ferrite Core – RFC-8	1
11. Tapping Screw M3x6 (Blue)	1
12. Tapping Screws M3x6	5
13. Tapping Screw M3x8	1
14. Tapping Screws M3x14	4
15. Screws with Spring Washer M4x6	1
16. Knob Screws– M4	4
17. Harness Bands	2
18. Cable Cover.....	1



1.20.2 INSTALLATION

This option should be pre-installed at the service center or factory and the final installation should be done at the work site.

Pre-installation (●pp. 1-78)

- Remove Short Scanner I/F Cable
- Connect the Long Scanner Cable to the Copier
- Install Anti-Static Springs on the Operation Panel
- Replace the Board Shield Plates

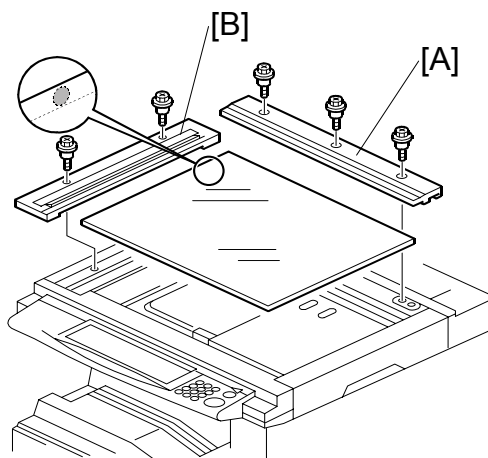
On-Site Installation(●pp. 1-84)

- Move the Scanner Unit to Its Accessible Location
- Remove the Horizontal Arm
- Connect the Long Scanner I/F Cable to the Copier
- Replace the Front Rubber Feet with the Adjustment Screws
- Connect the Scanner

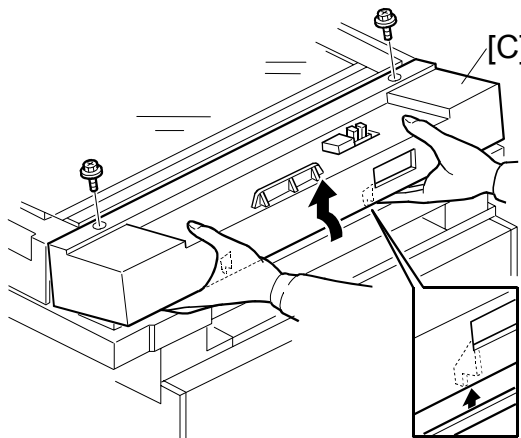
Pre-installation

Remove Short Scanner Cable

1. If the ARDF is attached, remove it.
2. Remove:
[A]: Rear scale (⚙ x3)
[B]: Left scale and exposure glass (⚙ x2)

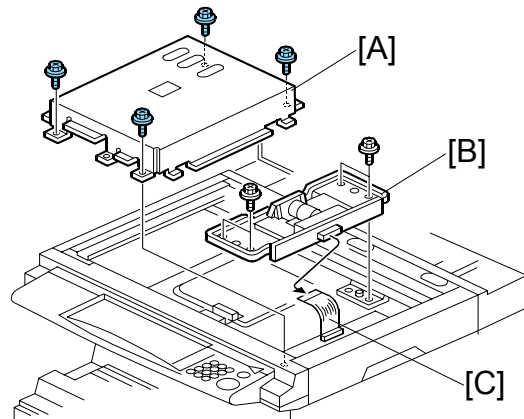


3. Remove scanner rear cover [C] (⚙ x2).



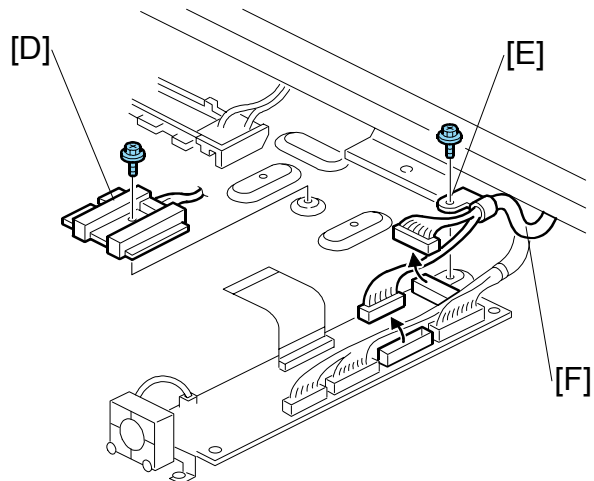
4. Remove:

- [A]: Lens block cover (⚙️ x4)
- [B]: Lens block assembly (⚙️ x4)
- [C]: Disconnect flat-film connector from the lens block.

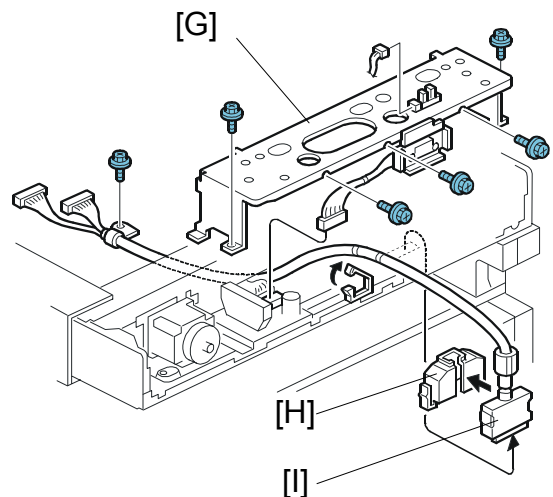


5. Disconnect:

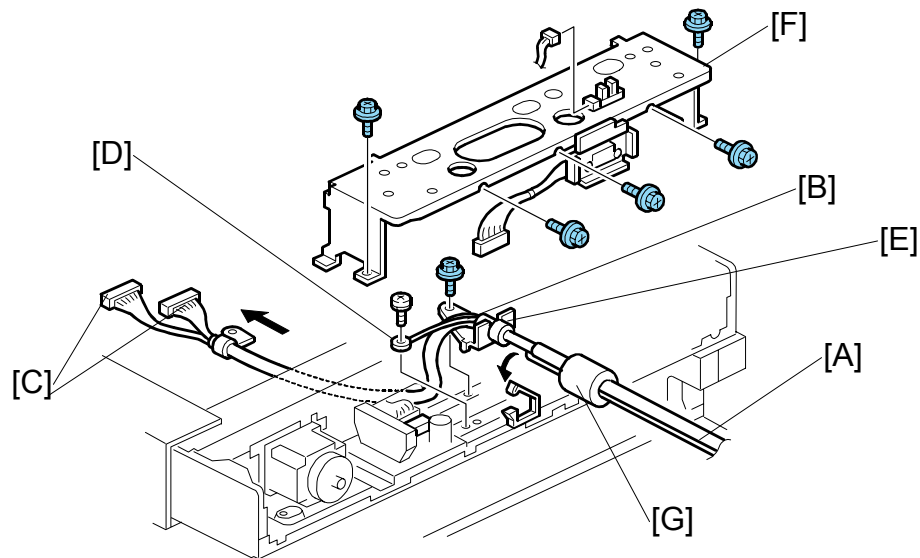
- [D]: Original length sensor (⚙️ x1)
 - Push the sensor forward toward the front. It is not necessary to disconnect or remove the sensor.
- [E]: Ground wire [E] (⚙️ x1)
- [F]: Short scanner I/F cable (🔌 x2).



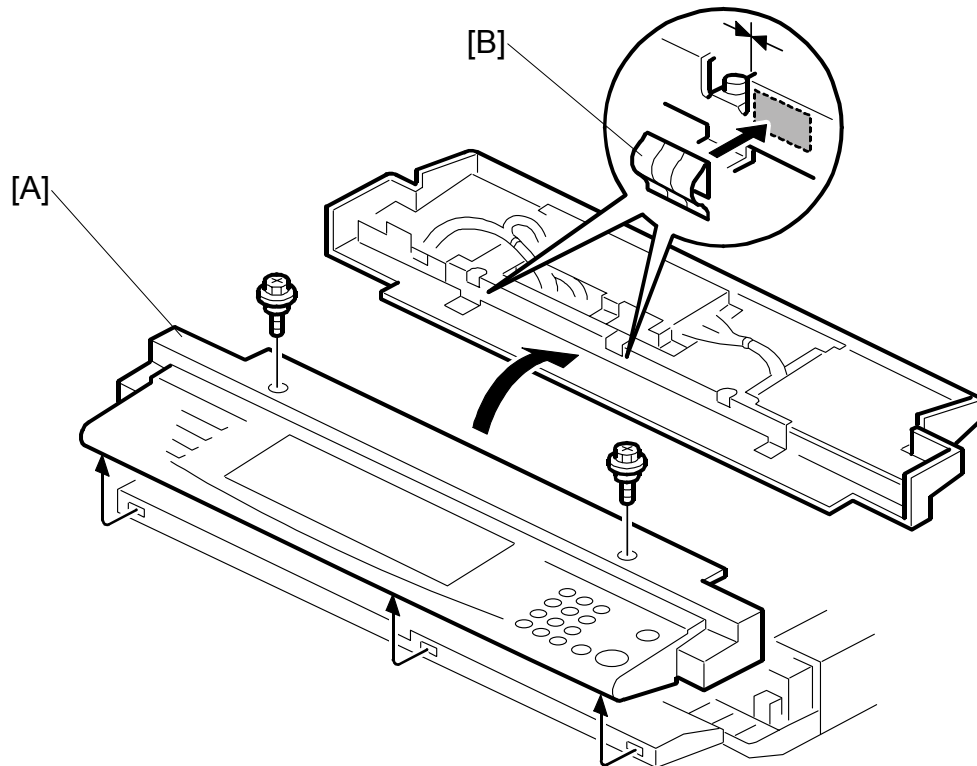
- 6. Remove the rear bracket [G] (⚙️ x5, 🔌 x1)
- 7. Remove the connector cap [H] and disconnect the short scanner I/F cable [I] from the mainframe (🔌 x1, 🖨️ x1, ⚙️ x1).
- 8. Pull the short scanner I/F cable out of the scanner unit.



Connect the Long Scanner Cable to the Copier



1. Position the cable [A] and ground wire [B] of the long scanner I/F cable as shown.
2. Reattach the long scanner I/F connectors [C] and ground wire [D] (⚙️x2)
 - Make sure the ground wire and cable loop behind the large boss.
3. Reattach (🔧Pg. 72)
 - Original length sensor (⚙️ x1).
 - Lens block assembly (⚙️ x4).
 - Lens block cover (⚙️ x4)
4. Set the collar [E] of the long scanner I/F cable in the bracket and clamp the cable (🔧x1)
5. Reinstall rear bracket [F] (⚙️ x5, 🔧x2).
6. Pull the ferrite core [G] slightly away from the back of the machine.
7. Reattach: (🔧Pg. 72)
 - Scanner rear cover (⚙️ x2)
 - Rear scale (⚙️ x3)
 - Exposure glass and left scale (⚙️ x2)

Install Anti-Static Springs on Operation Panel

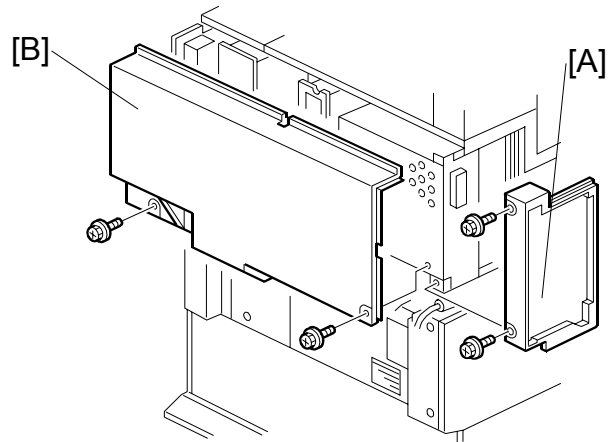
1. Remove the screws holding the operation panel [A] (⌀ x2.)
2. Pull the operation panel away from the copier (do not disconnect or remove) and turn it over.
3. Peel the covers from an anti-static springs [B] and attach them as shown.
4. Press down gently on each spring to confirm that each spring is attached securely.
5. Reattach the operation panel to the machine (⌀ x2).

Replace the Board Shield Plates

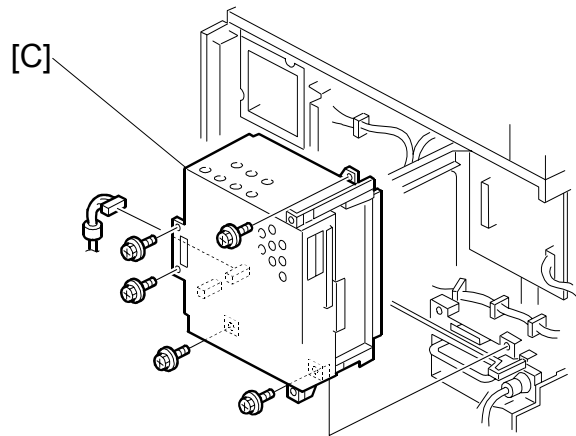
1. Remove:

[A]: Controller cover [A] (⚙️ x2)

[B]: Rear upper cover (⚙️ x2)



2. Remove controller box [C] (⚙️ x5, 📏 x1)

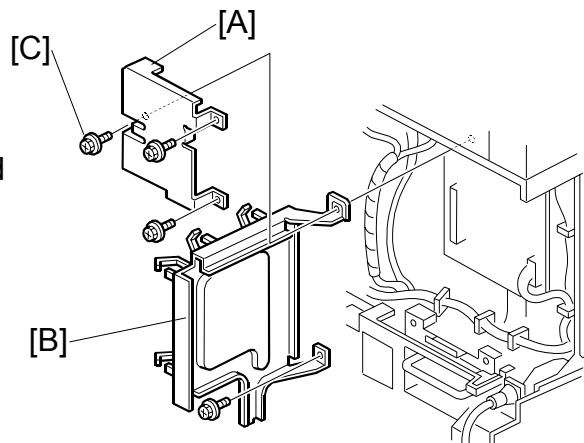


3. Remove:

[A]: BICU shield plate (⚙ x3)

[B]: IPU shield plate (⚙ x1)

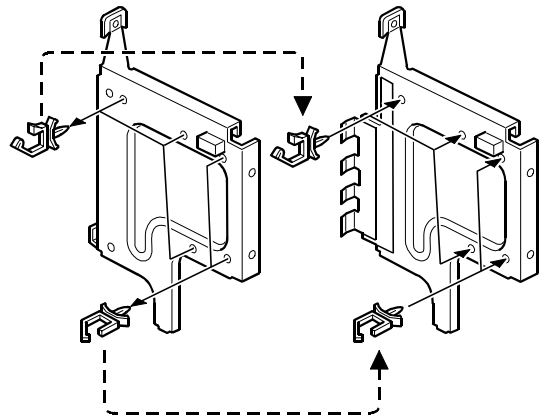
NOTE: A support on the BICU shield plate overlaps a support of the IPU shield below. One screw [C] fastens both.



4. Remove the harness clamps from the old IPU shield plate and attach them to the new plate (⚙ x2).

5. Reattach:

- New IPU shield plate (⚙ x1)
- BICU shield plate (⚙ x3).
- Controller box (⚙ x5, ⚙ x1)
- Reattach rear lower cover (⚙ x4)
- Reattach the corner plate (⚙ x2)
- ARDF



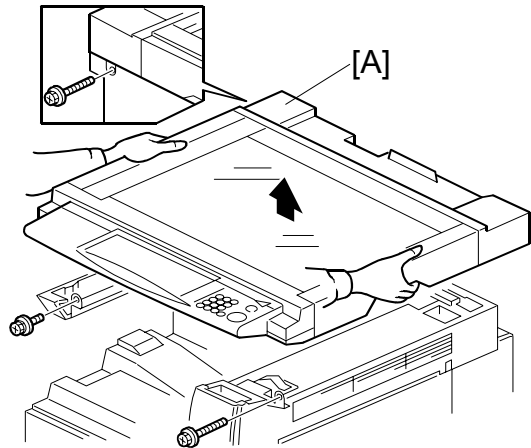
Important:

- This completes the pre-installation procedure for this option.
- The mainframe can now be moved to the work site.

On-Site Installation

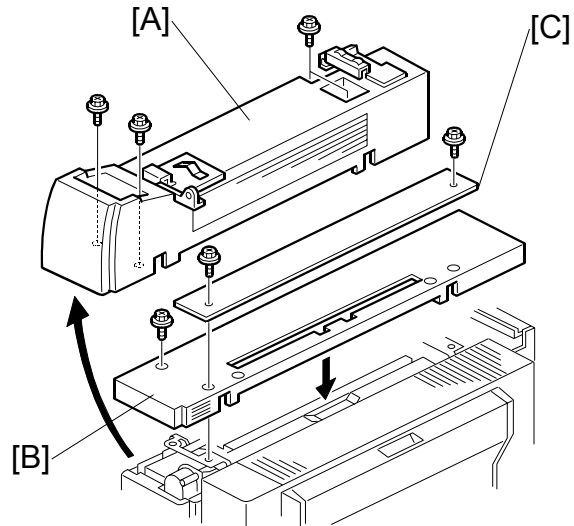
Move the Scanner Unit to Its Accessible Location

1. Disconnect the scanner unit from the machine (⚙ x3, 📄 x1)
2. Lift the scanner unit and set it at the accessible location.



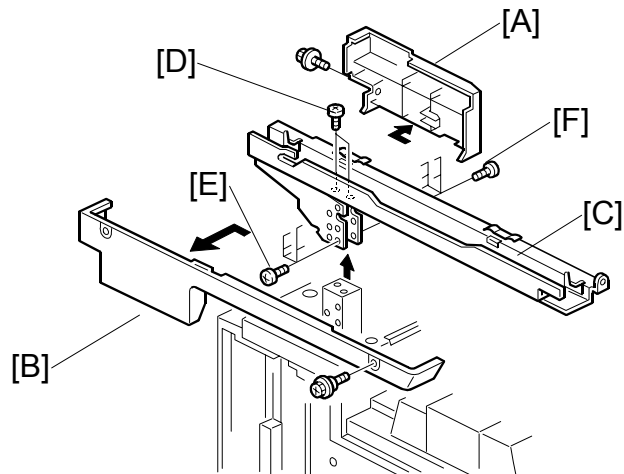
Replace the Cover

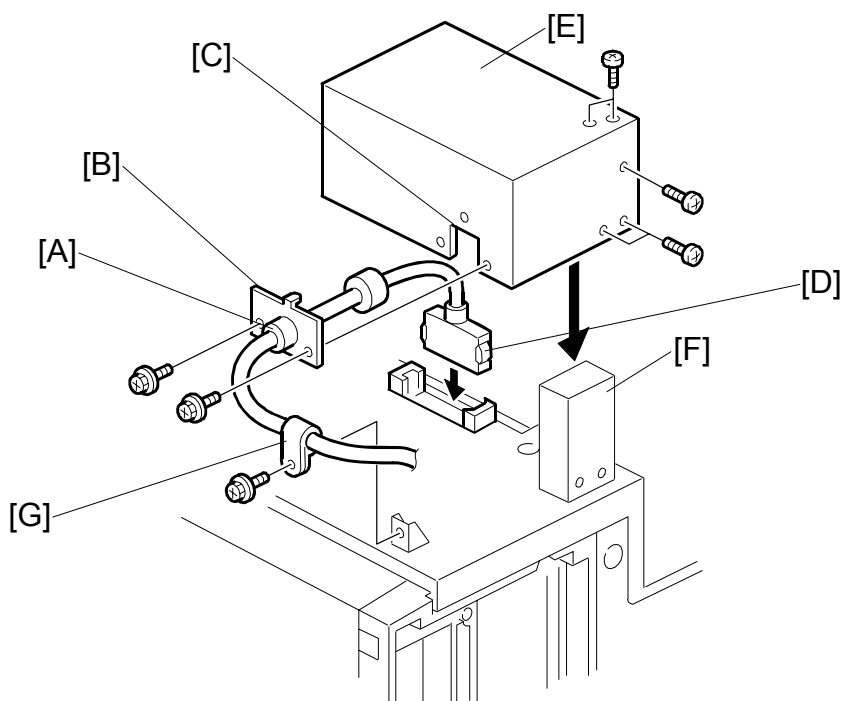
1. Remove the paper exit cover [A] (⚙ x4)
2. Remove the upper right cover and replace it with the cover [B] provided with the Scanner Accessibility Option B815 (⚙ x1).
3. Attach the paper exit cover [C] (provided with the option) (⚙ x2).



Remove the Horizontal Arm

1. Remove:
[A]: Right cover (⚙ x1)
[B]: Left cover (⚙ x2)
2. To remove the horizontal arm [C] of the scanner stand, remove these screws:
[D]: Top ⚙ x2
[E]: Right side ⚙ x6
[F]: Left side ⚙ x6

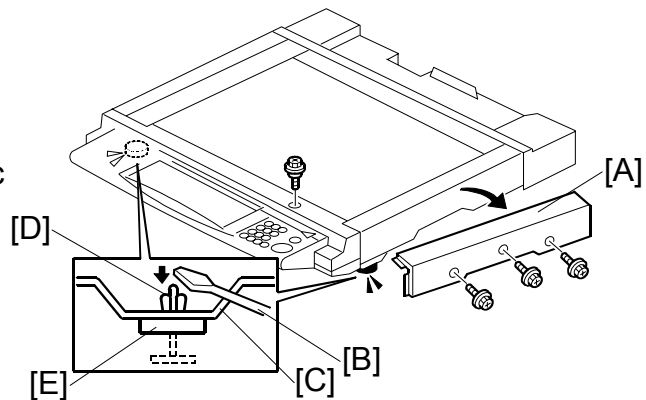


Connect the Long Scanner I/F Cable to Copier

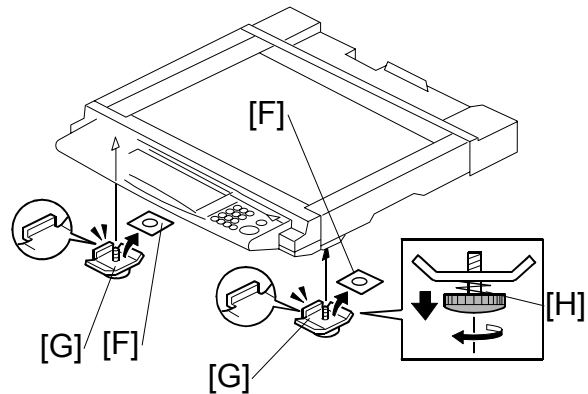
1. Fasten the collar [A] of the long scanner I/F cable to the bracket [B].
2. Fasten the bracket to the side of the housing [C] (⌀ x2).
3. Connect the cable [D] to the cable connector (⌀ x1).
4. Install the cable cover[E] over the cable connection and the vertical post [F] of the scanner stand (⌀ x4).
5. Fasten the cable clamp [G] as shown (⌀ x1).

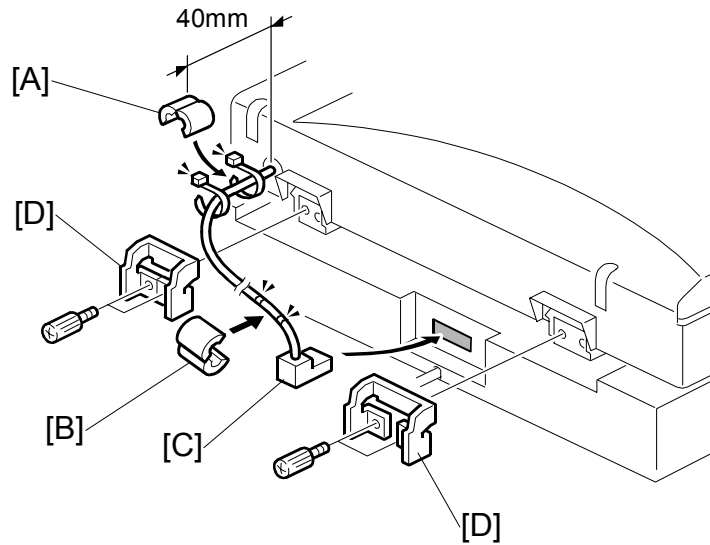
Replace the Front Rubber Feet with the Adjustment Screws

1. Remove the cover [A] (⚙ x3).
2. Under the right front corner of the scanner unit, insert a flathead screwdriver [B] behind the metal bracket [C] and dislodge the plastic pin [D].
3. Pull out the plastic pin and remove the rubber foot [E].



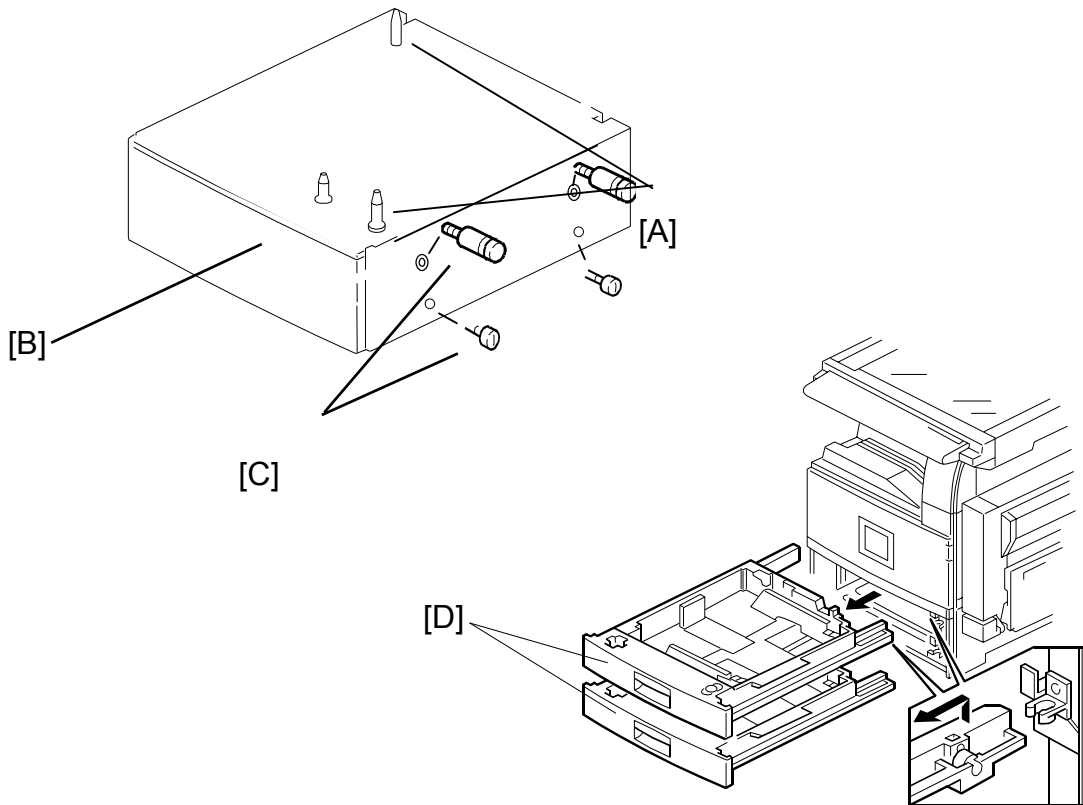
4. Remove the seal [F] from the adjusting pin spacer [G], then attach the pin spacer to the scanner unit.
5. Turn the metal foot [H] until it stops.
6. Reinstall the cover [A] (⚙ x3).
7. Repeat Steps 2 to 5 at the left front.



Connect the Scanner

1. Attach one ferrite core [A] to the cable 40 mm away from the scanner unit.
2. Attach one ferrite core [B] near the cable connector.
3. Connect the cable [C] to the scanner.
4. Attach the safety blocks [D] behind each hinge (2 x 2 ea.).
NOTE: These blocks prevent the ARDF from falling over if it is opened too far.

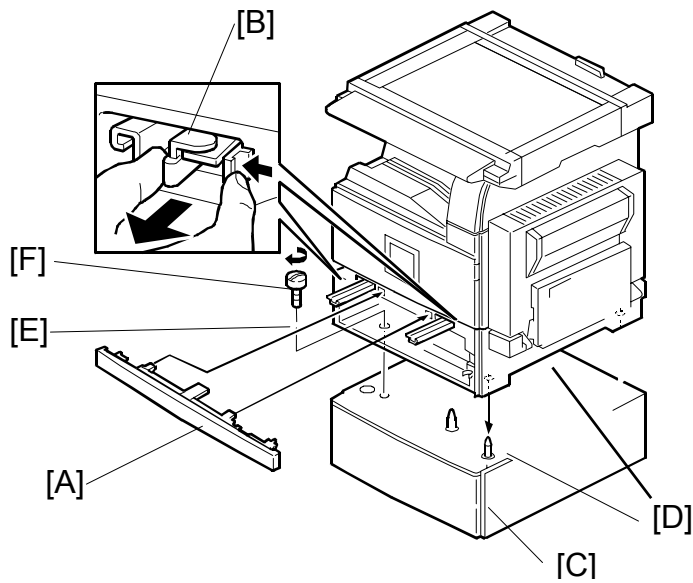
1.21 CABINET INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



CAUTION

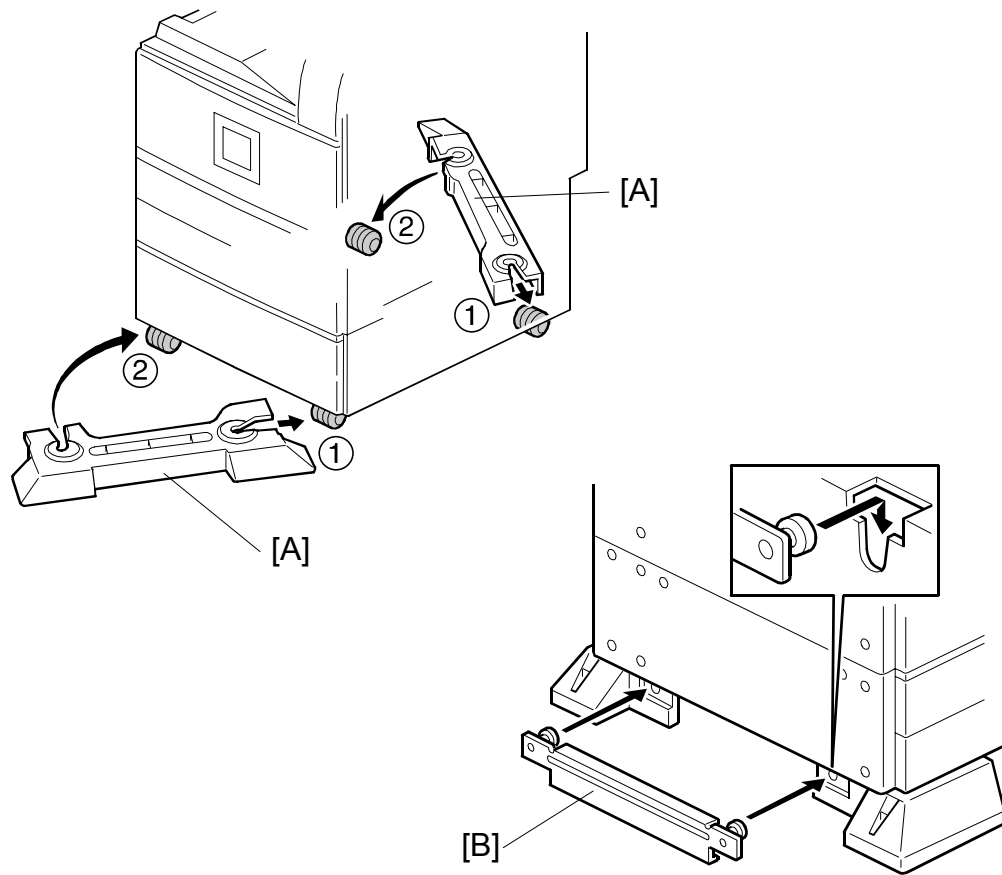
Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the cabinet.
2. Remove all tape and shipping materials.
3. Install the 2 longer [A] locating pins and the shorter [B] locating pin.
4. Install the LCT mounting screws [C] (2 types x2).
5. Remove the paper trays [D].



6. Remove the middle front cover [A] and pull out the front handles [B].
7. Using the front handles and rear handles, lift the machine and hold it over the cabinet [C].
8. Slowly lower the machine onto the cabinet with the pegs [D] aligned with the peg holes on the bottom of the machine.
NOTE: Do not hold the scanner unit.
9. Re-install the middle front cover [A].
10. Attach the step screw [E]. Then, secure the cabinet.

CABINET INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

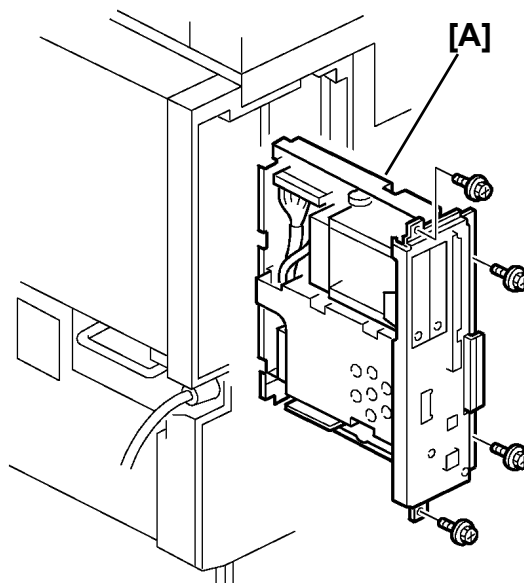


11. Install the front and rear stands [A] as shown above.
12. Install the stand bracket [B].

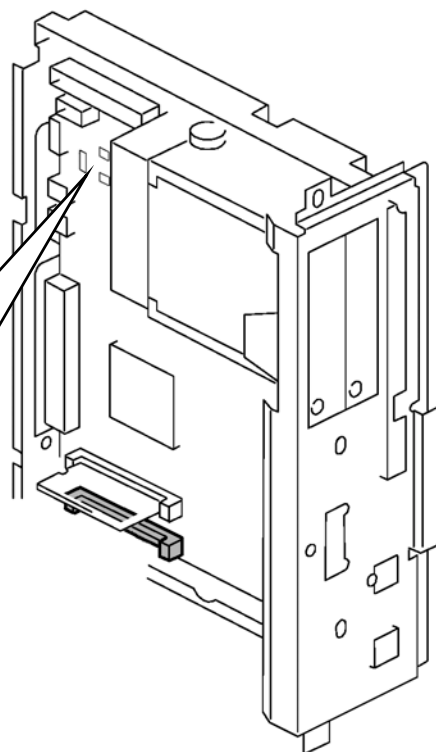
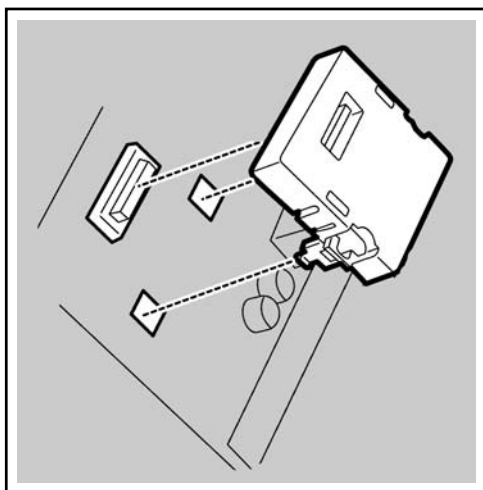
⇒ 1.22 USER ACCOUNT ENHANCEMENT UNIT TYPE E

1.22.1 INSTALLATION

1. Remove the controller board [A] (⚙ x4).



2. Align the 2 notches and the 1 connector of the user account enhancement unit and then insert it into the controller board pressing it down until it clicks into place.
3. Reinstall the controller board.



PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

2.1 PM TABLE

NOTE: Amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints.

Symbol key: **C:** Clean, **R:** Replace, **L:** Lubricate, **I:** Inspect

	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
SCANNER/OPTICS					
Reflector		C	C	C	Optics cloth
1st Mirror		C	C	C	Optics cloth
2nd Mirror		C	C	C	Optics cloth
3rd Mirror		C	C	C	Optics cloth
Scanner Guide Rails		I	I	I	Do not use alcohol. Lubricate if necessary.
Platen Sheet Cover	C	I	I	I	Dry cloth or alcohol. Replace platen sheet if required.
Exposure Glass		C	C	C	Dry cloth or alcohol
Toner Shield Glass		C	C	C	Optics cloth
APS Sensor		C	C	C	Dry cloth or alcohol
Exposure Glass (Sheet through)		C	C	C	Dry cloth or alcohol
DRUM (OPC) AREA					
OPC Drum		R	R	R	
Charge Roller		R	R	R	
Charge Roller Cleaning Roller		R	R	R	
Drum Cleaning Blade 1		R	R	R	
Drum Cleaning Blade 2		R	R	R	
Quenching Lamp			C		Dry cloth
Pick-off Pawls		R	R	R	
Spurs		C	C	C	Dry cloth or alcohol
ID Sensor		C	C	C	Perform SP3-001-2 after blower brush cleaning.
Cleaning Entrance Seal		C	C	C	Blower brush. Replace if required.
Side Seal		I	I	I	

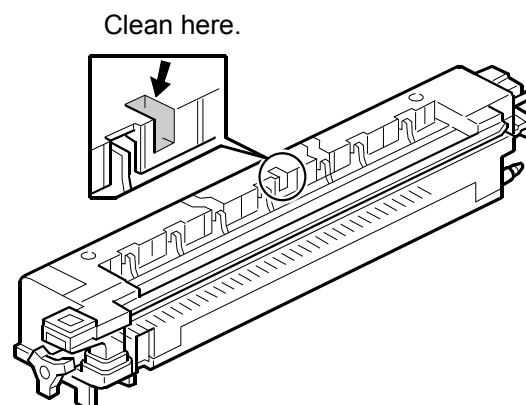
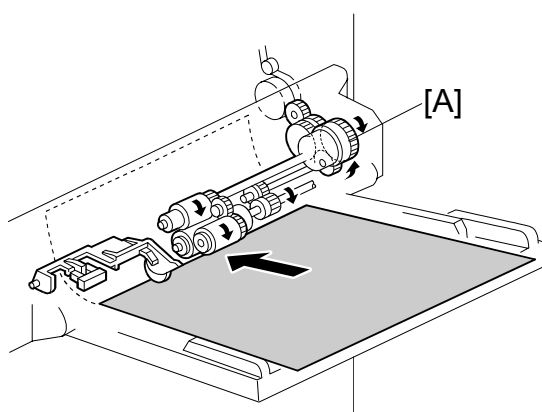
PM TABLE

	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
DEVELOPMENT UNIT					
Development Drive Gears		I	I	I	
Development Filter		R	R	R	
Developer		I	R	I	
Entrance Seal		I	I	I	
Side Seal		I	I	I	
Development Roller		C	C	C	Dry cloth
PAPER FEED					
Registration Roller	C	C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Idle Roller Dust Blade		C	C	C	Detach and tap gently on flat surface to empty. Blower brush.
Registration Roller Dust Blade		C	R	C	Blower brush.
Paper Feed Guides		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Relay Rollers		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Bottom Plate Pad (By-pass feed)		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Registration Sensor		C	C	C	Blower brush
Paper Feed Roller Gear		L	L	L	Silicone Grease G-501. See note below.* ¹
Upper Relay Sensor		C	C	C	Blower Brush
DUPLEX UNIT					
Upper Transport Roller		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Lower Transport Roller		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
TRANSFER BELT UNIT					
Transfer Belt	C	R	R	R	Dry cloth.
Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade		R	R	R	To prevent damage to the cleaning blade, always replace these items together.
Transfer Belt Rollers		C	C	C	Dry cloth
Entrance Seal		C	C	C	Dry cloth
Transfer Entrance Guide	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth
Used Toner Tank	I	C	C	C	Empty the tank.

Note: Due to their durability and extended service life, the feed rollers, separation rollers, and pick-up rollers of the mainframe, optional paper trays, and LCT have been removed from the PM parts list.

	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
FUSING UNIT AND PAPER EXIT					
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates		C	C	C	Water or alcohol.
Hot Roller		R	R	R	
Pressure Roller		R	R	R	
Fusing Thermistors		R	R	R	
Cleaning Roller		R	R	R	
Cleaning Roller Bushings		L	L	L	Grease: Barrierta JFE 55/2
Hot Roller Strippers		C	R	C	Water or alcohol.
Paper Exit Guide Ribs		C	C	C	Water or alcohol. (See illustration below.)
Exit Sensor		C	C	C	Blower brush
DRIVE					
Drive Belts			I		Replace if necessary

*1: Lubricate the paper feed clutch gear [A] with Silicone Grease G501 every P.M.



PM TABLE

B714	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
ARDF (for originals)					
Pick-up Roller	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Feed Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Separation Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Sensors		C	C	C	Blower brush
Drive Gears		L	L	L	Grease, G501

B542	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
PAPER TRAY UNIT					
Relay Rollers		C	C	C	Dry or damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C	Dry or damp cloth

B543	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
LCT					
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C	Dry or damp cloth

B408/B545	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
1000-SHEET/TWO-TRAY FINISHER					
Rollers	C				Water or alcohol.
Brush Roller (A681 only)	I	I	I	I	Replace if required.
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C	Dry cloth
Sensors	C				Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I	Replace if required.
Punch Waste Hopper*	I	I	I	I	Empty hopper.

*: Only for B545

B546	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
BOOKLET FINISHER					
Transport Belt		C	C	C	
Stapler Paddles		C	C	C	

B544	EM	150K	300K	450K	NOTE
1-BIN TRAY UNIT					
Rollers	C				Dry or damp cloth
Copy Tray	C				Dry or damp cloth
Sensors	C				Blower brush

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damage to the transfer belt, drum, or development unit when it is removed or re-installed, never turn off either power switch while electrical components are active.

⚠ CAUTION

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section.

Replacement
Adjustment

3.1.1 LASER UNIT

1. Do not loosen the screws that secure the LD drive board to the laser diode casing. Doing so would throw the LD unit out of adjustment.
2. Do not adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit, as they are adjusted in the factory.
3. The polygon mirror and F-theta lenses are very sensitive to dust. Do not open the optical housing unit.
4. Do not touch the glass surface of the polygon mirror motor unit with bare hands.
5. After replacing the LD unit, perform the laser beam pitch adjustment. Otherwise, an SC condition will be generated.

3.1.2 USED TONER

1. Dispose of used toner in accordance with local regulations. Never throw toner into an open flame, for toner dust may ignite.

3.2 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

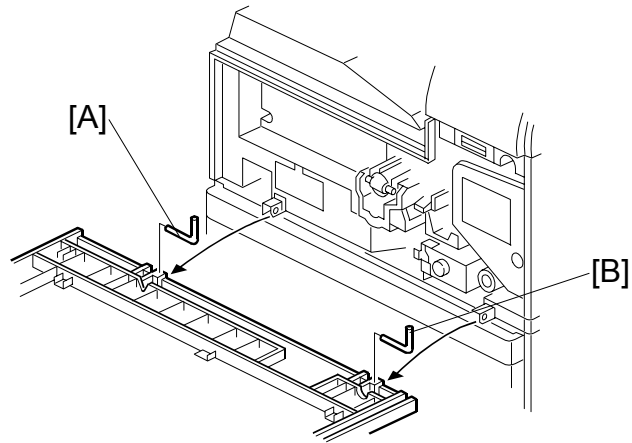
3.2.1 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A0069104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4 pc./set)	1
A2929500	Test Chart – S5S (10 pc./set)	1
VSSM9000	Digital Multimeter – FLUKE 187	1
A2309003	Adjustment Cam – Laser Unit	1
A2309004	Positioning Pin – Laser Unit	1
B6455010	SD Card	1
B6456800	USB Read/Writer	1
G0219350	Loop Back Connector	1

3.2.2 LUBRICANTS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A2579300	Grease Barrierta S552R	1
52039502	Silicone Grease G-501	1

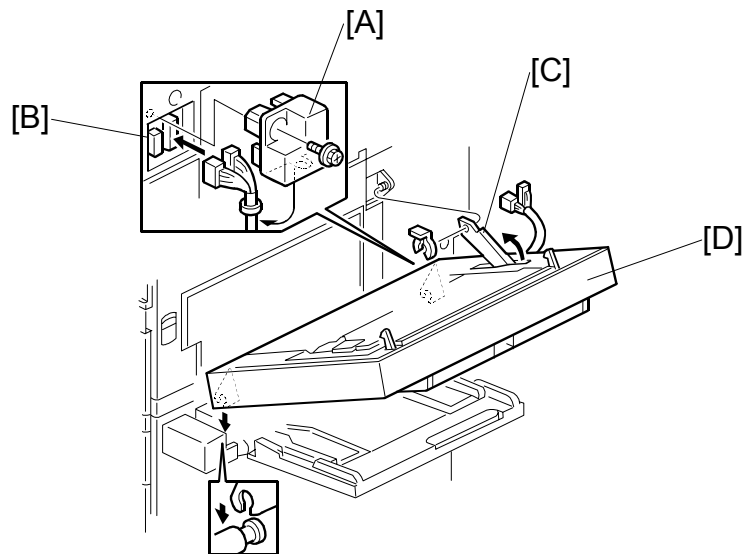
3.3 FRONT DOOR



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Open front door.
2. To remove the front door, remove left pin [A], and right pin [B].

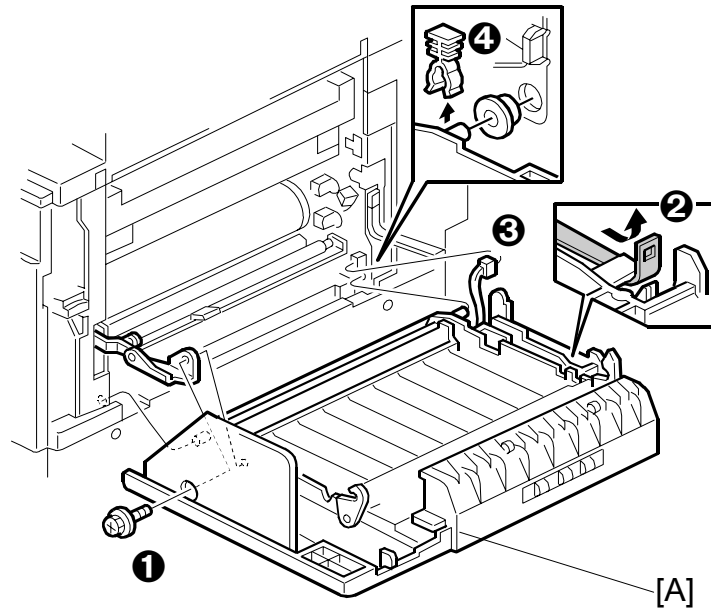
3.4 DUPLEX UNIT



1. Connector cover [A] (🔑 x1)
2. Duplex connectors [B] (🔌 x2)
3. Duplex support arm [C] (🌀 x1)
4. Duplex unit [D]

NOTE: Grip the duplex unit with both hands, slowly rotate it towards you and then lift up.

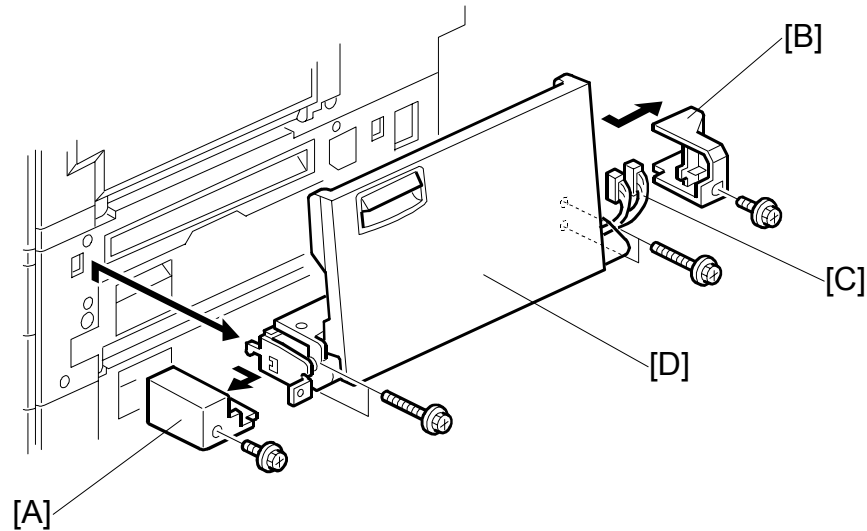
3.5 RIGHT UPPER COVER



NOTE: Work carefully to avoid damaging the development roller.

- Duplex unit (☞ 3.4)
- Transfer belt unit (☞ 3.13.1)
- Remove the upper right cover [A]
 - ❶ (🔩 x1)
 - ❷ Loop fastener
 - ❸ (🔗 x1)
 - ❹ (🔩 x1, Bushing x1)

3.6 BY-PASS TRAY UNIT



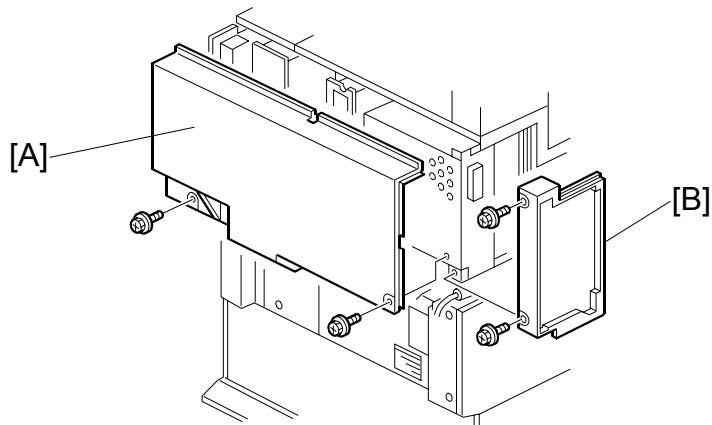
Use this procedure to remove the complete by-pass tray unit from the machine. If you wish to remove only the table, or some of the components of this unit, see 3.16.

1. Duplex unit (☛ 3.4)
2. Left cover [A] (🔩 x1)
3. Right cover [B] (🔩 x1)
4. Connectors [C] (🔌 x2)
5. By-pass unit [D] (🔩 x4)

NOTE: After removing the screws, lift to unhook the by-pass tray unit from the frame of the machine.

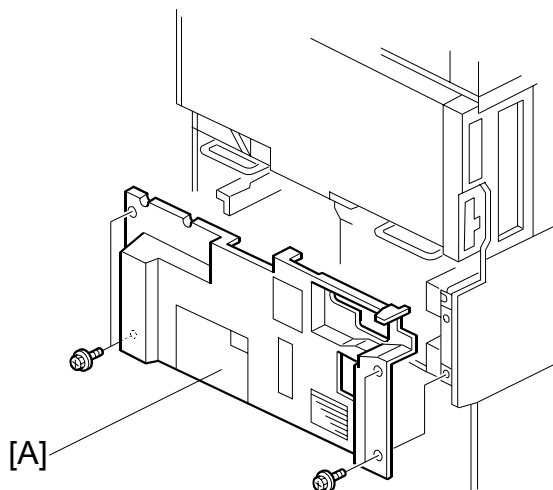
3.7 REAR COVERS

3.7.1 REAR UPPER COVER



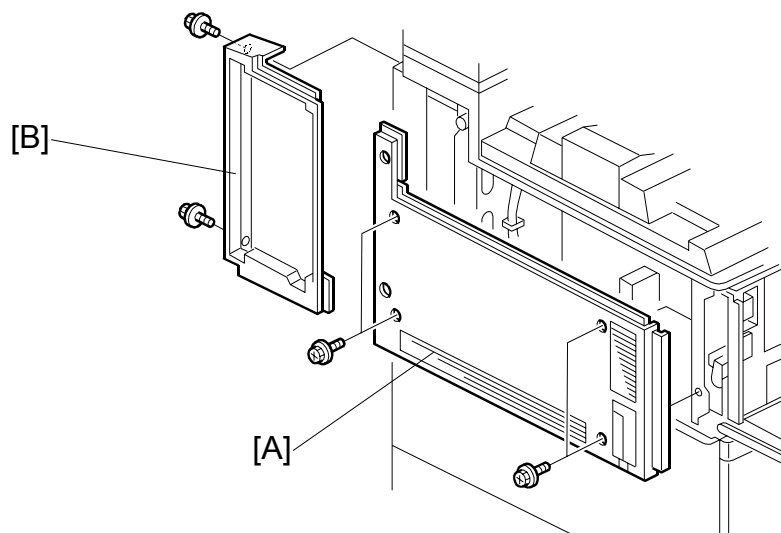
1. Rear upper cover [A] (⚙️ x2)
2. Controller cover [B] (⚙️ x2)

3.7.2 REAR LOWER COVER



1. Rear lower cover [A] (⚙️ x4)

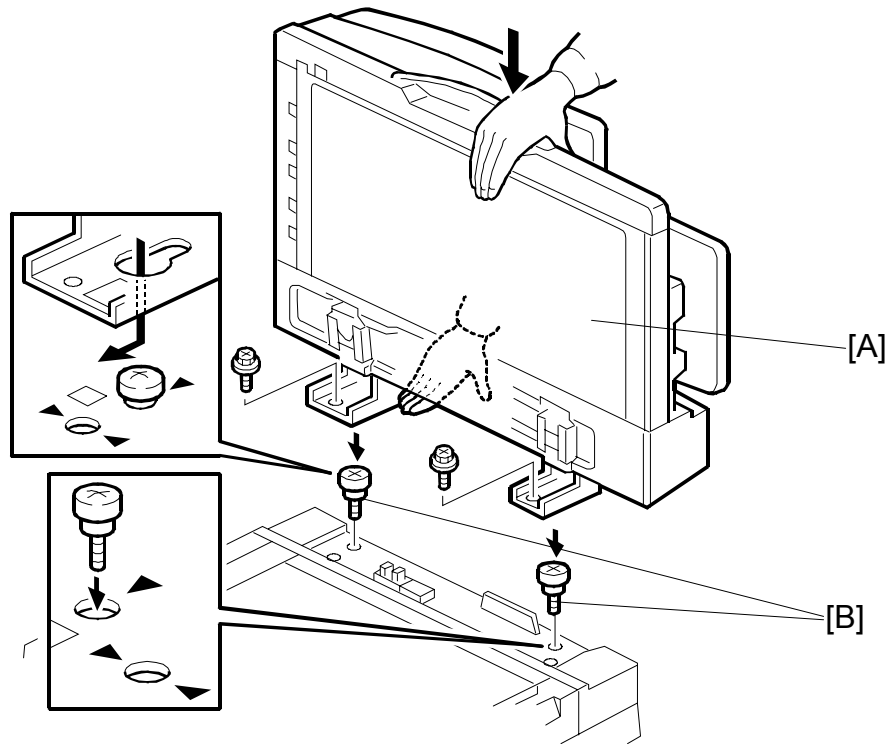
3.8 LEFT COVER



1. Left upper cover [A] (⚙️ x4)
2. Controller cover [B] (⚙️ x2)

3.9 SCANNER UNIT

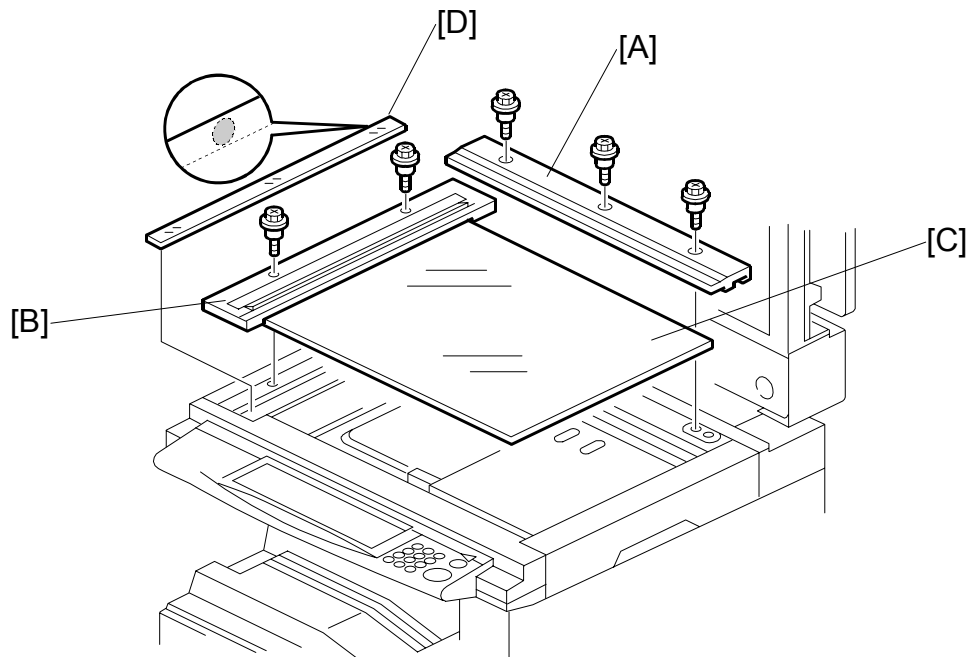
3.9.1 ARDF



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Interface connector (not shown)
2. ARDF [A] (x2)
 - Push the ARDF towards the rear of the machine to align the keyholes in the ARDF base with the heads of the stud screws and lift.

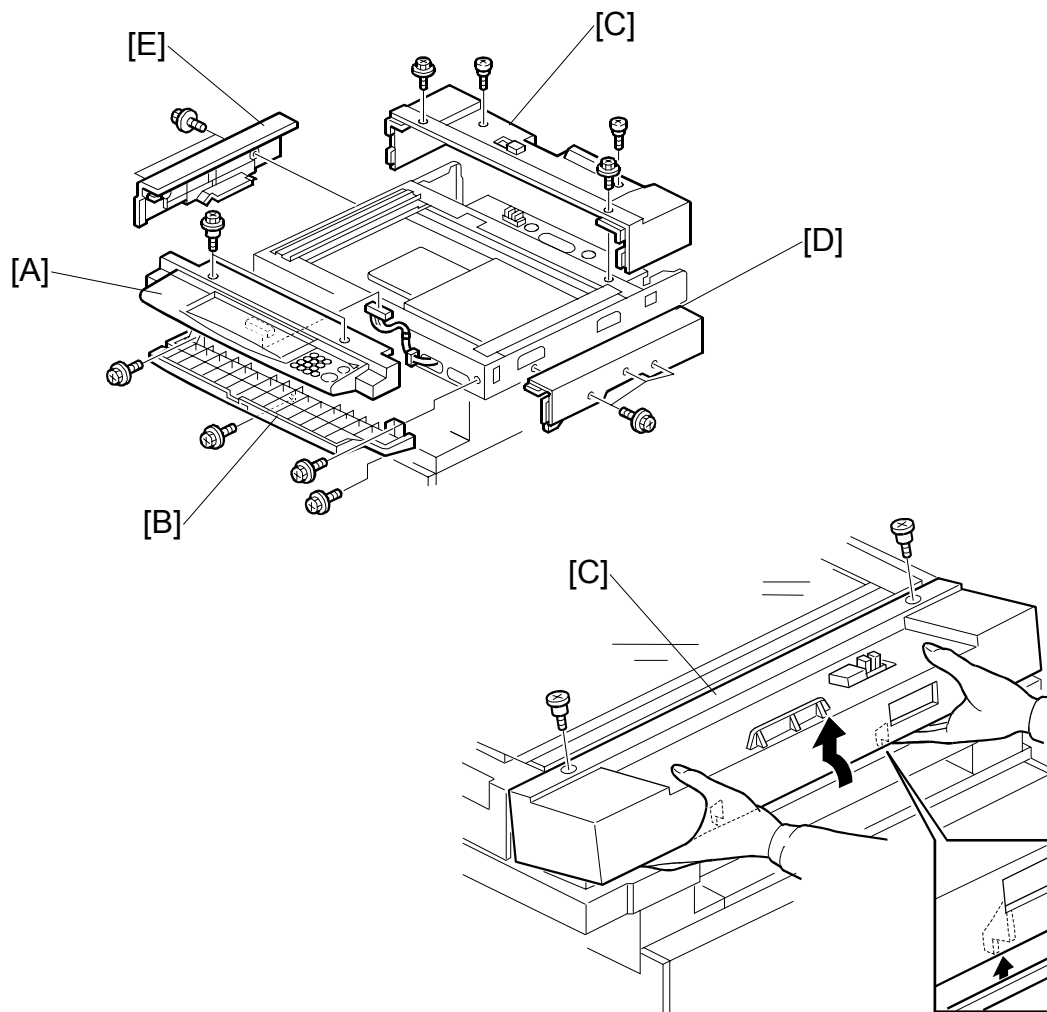
3.9.2 EXPOSURE GLASS



1. Open the ARDF or platen cover.
2. Rear scale [A] (⚙ x3)
3. Left scale [B] (⚙ x2)
4. Exposure glass [C]
5. DF exposure glass [D]

NOTE: When reinstalling the exposure glass, make sure that the white dot is positioned at the rear left corner.

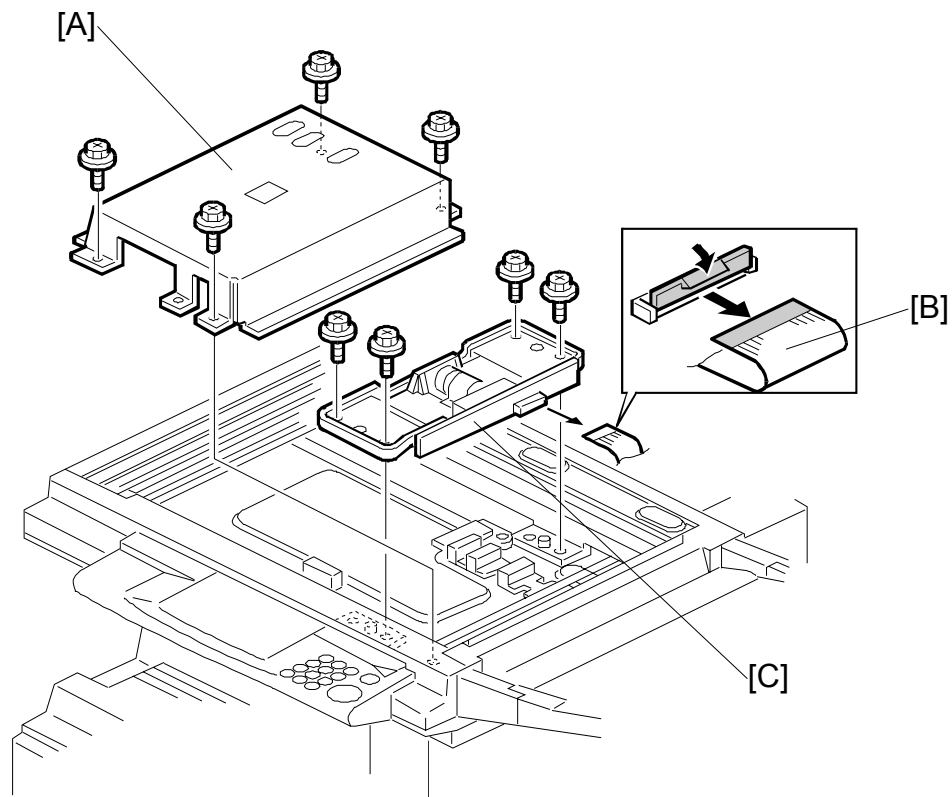
3.9.3 SCANNER EXTERIOR PANELS, OPERATION PANEL



Replacement
Adjustment

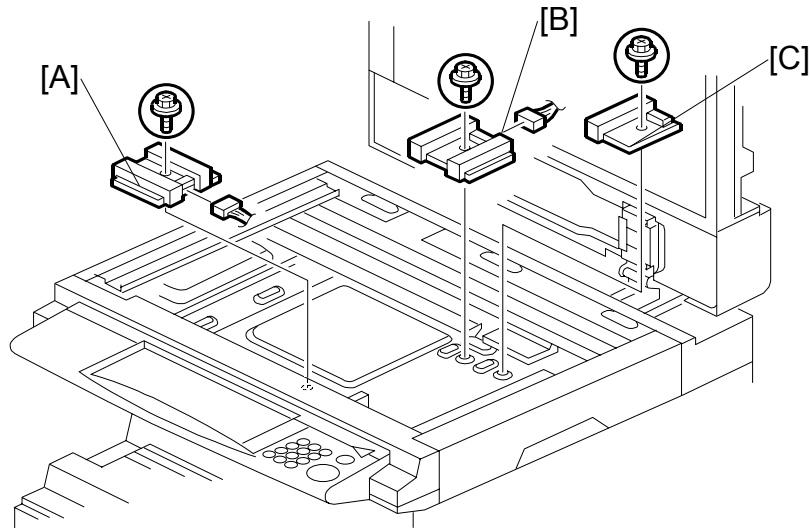
1. ARDF (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Exposure glass and DF exposure glass (☛ 3.9.2)
3. Operation panel [A] (⚙ x2, 📏 x1)
4. Operation panel base [B] (⚙ x4)
5. Scanner rear cover [C] (⚙ x4). Carefully lift in the direction of the arrow to disconnect the tab.
6. Right cover [D] (⚙ x3)
7. Left cover [E] (⚙ x2)

3.9.4 LENS BLOCK, SBU ASSEMBLY



1. ARDF (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Exposure glass and DF exposure glass (☛ 3.9.2)
3. Lens cover [A] (🔩 x4)
4. Flexible cable [B] (🔌 x1)
5. Lens block assembly [C] (🔩 x4)
NOTE: The elements of the lens block assembly have been factory adjusted and paint locked at 8 points. Do not attempt to replace these items. Replace the unit.
6. Perform scanner and printer copy adjustments (☛ 3.21)

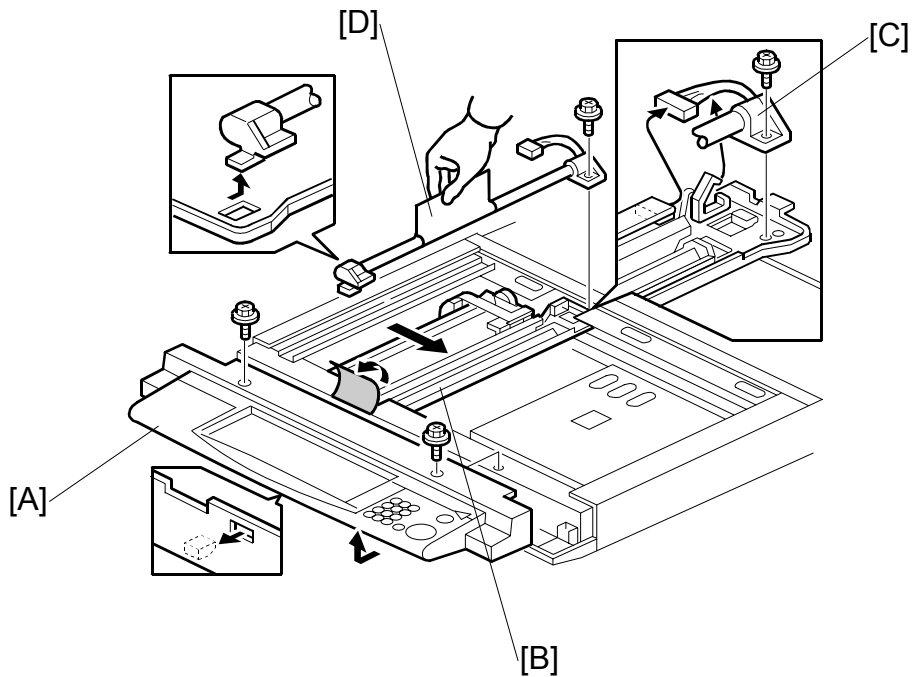
3.9.5 ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS



Replacement
Adjustment

1. ARDF (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Exposure glass (☛ 3.9.2)
3. Lens block (☛ 3.9.4)
4. Original size sensor [A] (🔩 x1, 📏 x1)
5. Original size sensor [B] (🔩 x1, 📏 x1)
6. Original size sensor [C] (🔩 x1, 📏 x1)

3.9.6 EXPOSURE LAMP

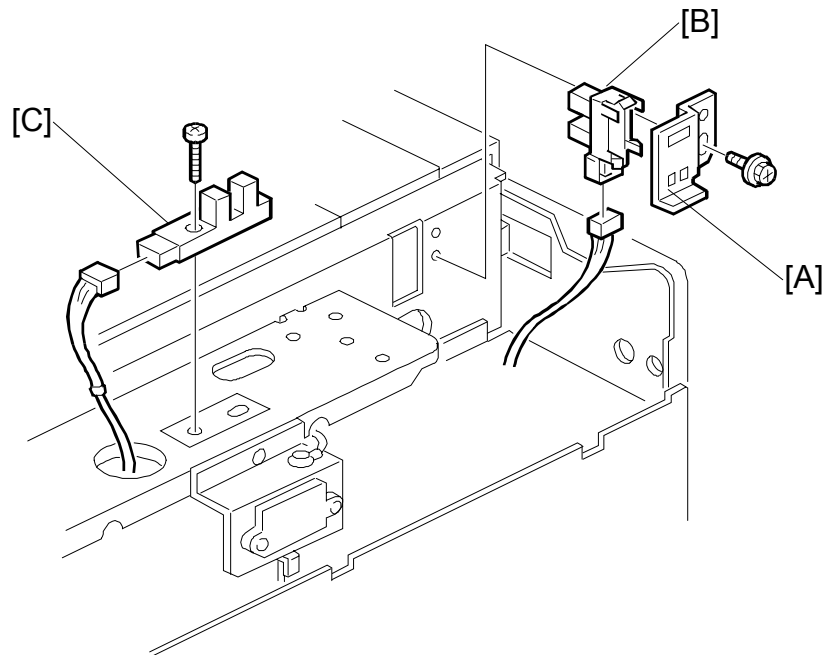


1. ARDF (☞ 3.9.1)
2. Exposure glass (☞ 3.9.2)
3. Operation panel [A] (🔧 x2, 📏 x1)
4. Slide 1st scanner [B] to the cutout to expose connector and screw.
5. Exposure lamp [C] (🔧 x1, 📏 x1)

Important

- Never touch the glass surface of the exposure lamp with bare hands [D].
- Slide the exposure lamp toward the rear to disengage the tab on its base from the hole below and then lift out.

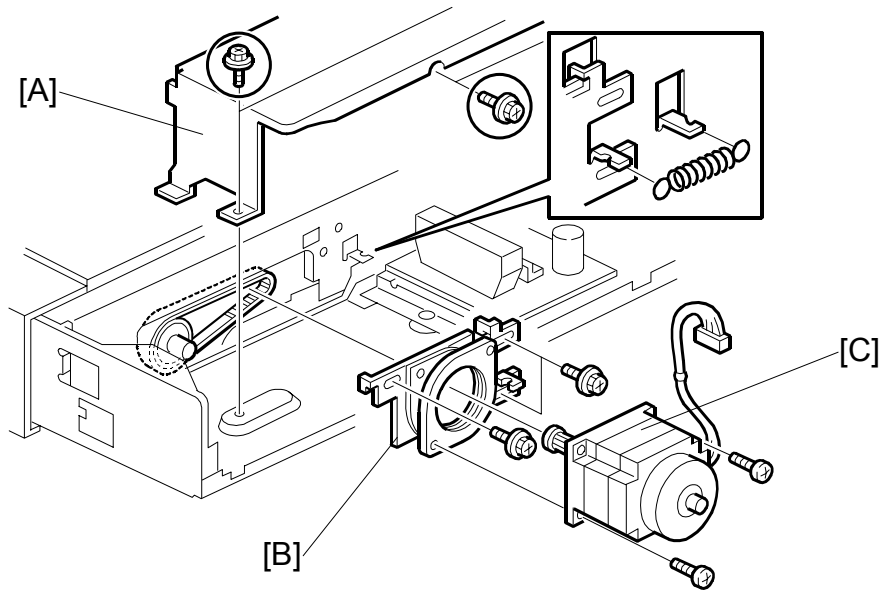
3.9.7 SCANNER HP SENSOR/PLATEN COVER SENSOR



Replacement
Adjustment

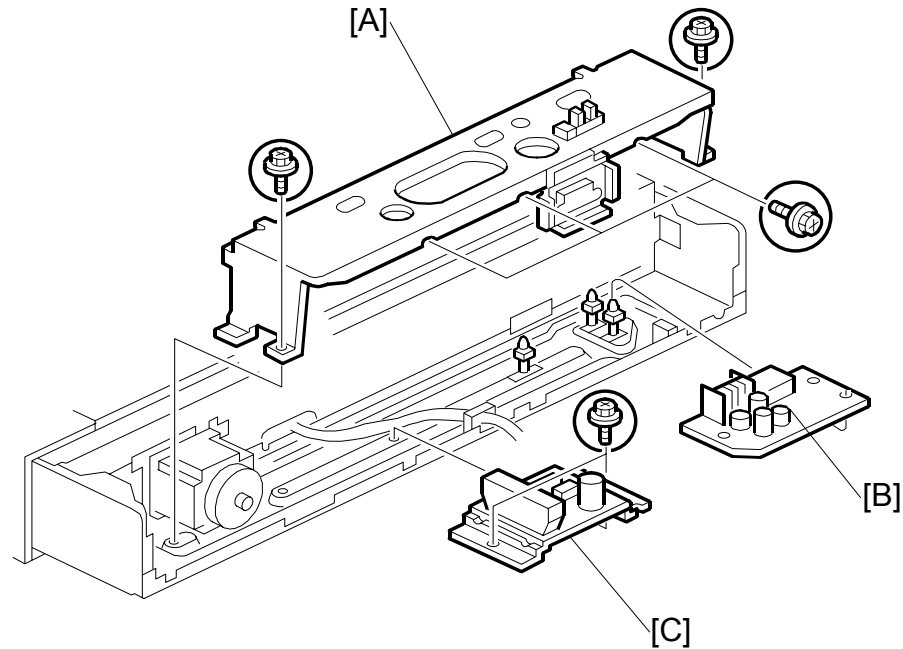
1. ARDF (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Scanner rear cover (☛ 3.9.3)
3. Scanner HP sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x1)
4. Scanner HP sensor [B] (🔌 x1)
5. Platen cover sensor [C] (🔩 x1, 🔌 x1)

3.9.8 SCANNER MOTOR



1. ARDF (➡ 3.9.1)
2. Scanner rear cover (➡ 3.9.3)
3. Rear bracket [A] (⚙ x5, 📏 x2)
4. Scanner motor bracket [B] (⚙ x3, 📏 x1, spring x1, timing belt x1)
NOTE: Loosen motor bracket [B] (⚙ x3) to release tension on belt (motor slides side to side).
5. Scanner motor [C] (⚙ x2, 📏 x1)
6. Perform scanner and printer copy adjustments (➡ 3.21)

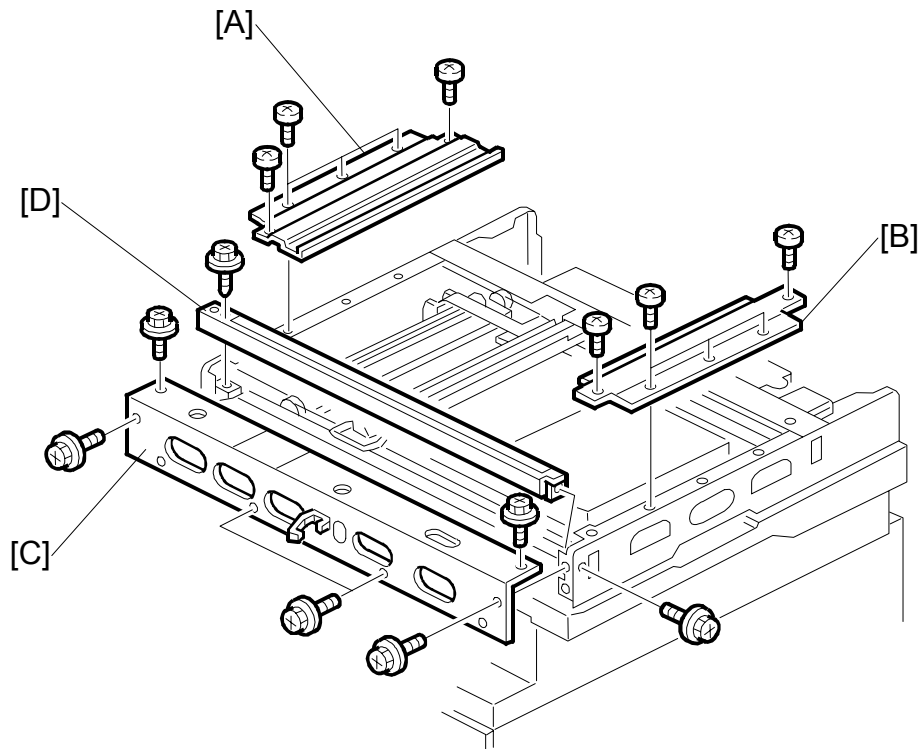
3.9.9 LAMP STABILIZER AND SCANNER MOTOR DRIVE BOARD



Replacement
Adjustment

1. ARDF (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Scanner rear cover (☛ 3.9.3)
3. Rear bracket [A] (🔩 x5, 🛡️ x2)
4. Lamp stabilizer [B] (🛡️ x2, Standoffs x3)
5. Scanner motor drive board [C] (🛡️ x2, 🔩 x2)

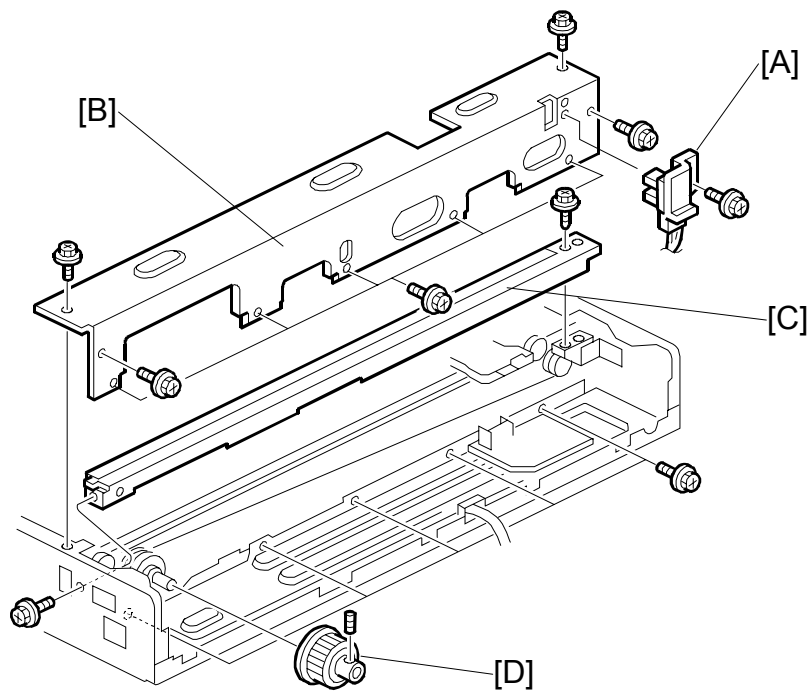
3.9.10 SCANNER WIRE



1. ARDF (☛ 3.9.1)
2. Exposure glass (☛ 3.9.2)
3. Scanner exterior panels and operation panel (☛ 3.9.3)

Front wire:

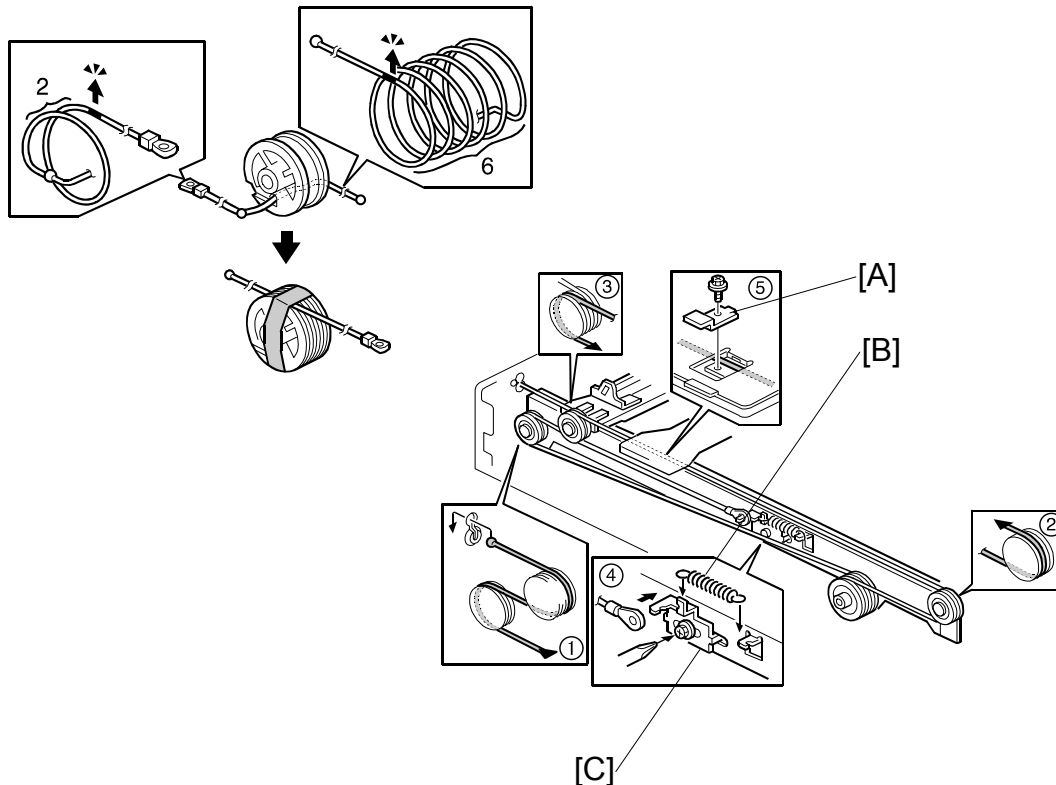
4. Left stay [A] (☛ x5)
5. Right stay [B] (☛ x5)
6. Front stay [C] (☛ x6)
7. Front scanner rail [D] (☛ x2)
8. To replace the scanner wire, see page 3-20.

Rear wire:

1. Scanner HP sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x1)
2. Scanner motor (🔌 3.9.8)
3. Rear bracket [B] (🔩 x9)
4. Rear scanner rail [C] (🔩 x2)
5. Scanner drive pulley [D] (🔩 x1)

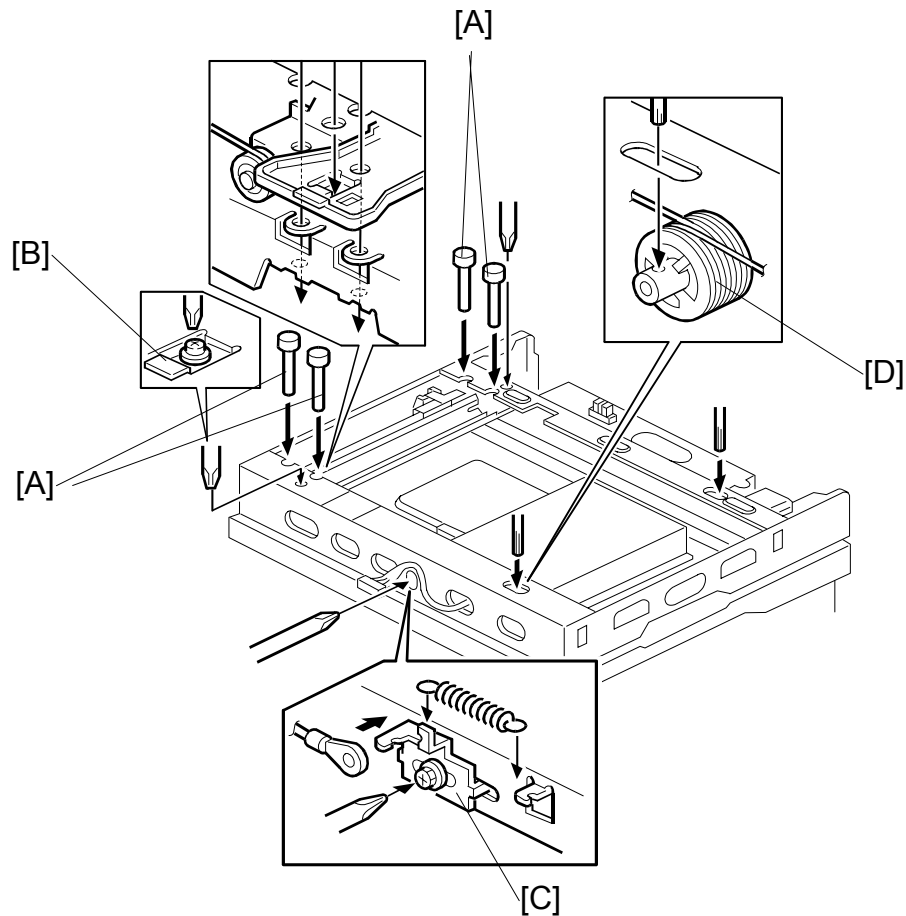
Replacement
Adjustment

SCANNER UNIT



To replace the scanner wire:

1. Front and rear scanner wire bracket [A] (⌘ x1 ea.)
2. Tension spring [B]
3. Tension bracket [C] (⌘ x1). Loosen and do not remove!
4. Remove wires, front and rear.
5. Attach the new wires.
NOTE: Illustration above shows the front wire.
6. Pass the wire through the pulleys as shown in the illustration, and then pass the bead-end of the wire through the slot in the pulley.
7. Turn the pulley until you see the red mark on the wire. 2 turns and 6 turns (see top illustration)
8. Without allowing the wire to loosen, tape the wire to the pulley.
9. Pass the wire through ①.
10. Complete threading the wire: ② → ③ → ④ → Tension spring → Screw
11. Scanner wire bracket ⑤ (⌘ x1)



Completion:

1. Adjust the 1st scanner [A] position with the scanner positioning tools (P/N A0069104).
2. Secure the 1st scanner with the scanner wire brackets [B] (⌀ x2)
3. Tighten tension bracket [C] (⌀ x1)
4. Secure scanner wire pulley [D] (Allen screw x1)
 - 1) Remove the positioning tools. After sliding the scanner to the right and left several times, set the positioning tools to check the scanner wire bracket and tension bracket again.
 - 2) Reassemble the scanner and do the scanner and printer copy adjustments (☛ 3.21)

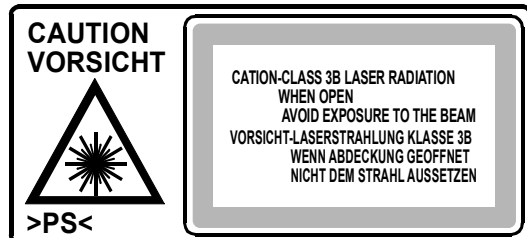
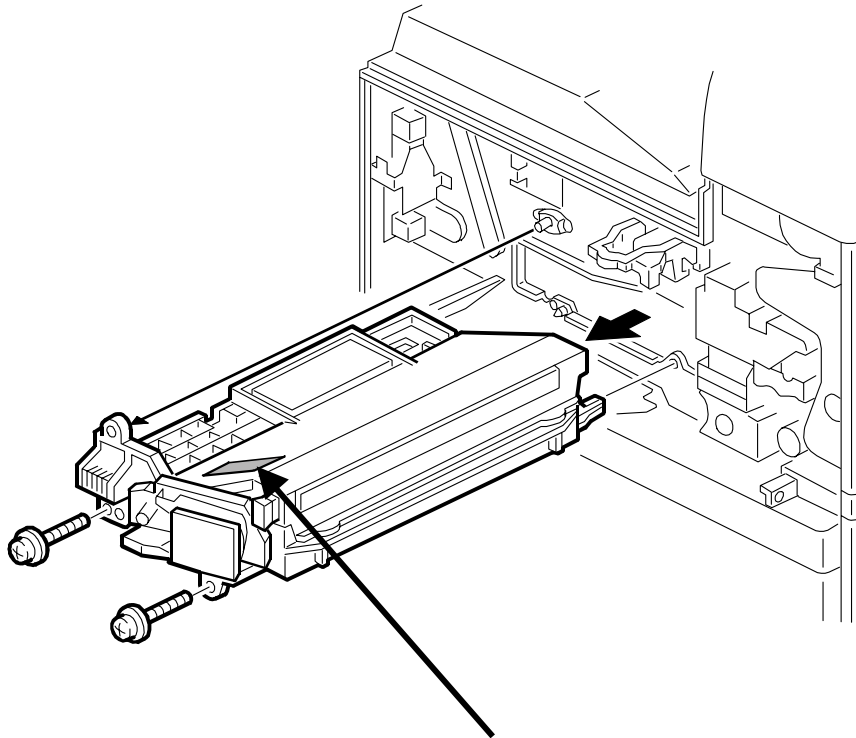
3.10 LASER UNIT

WARNING

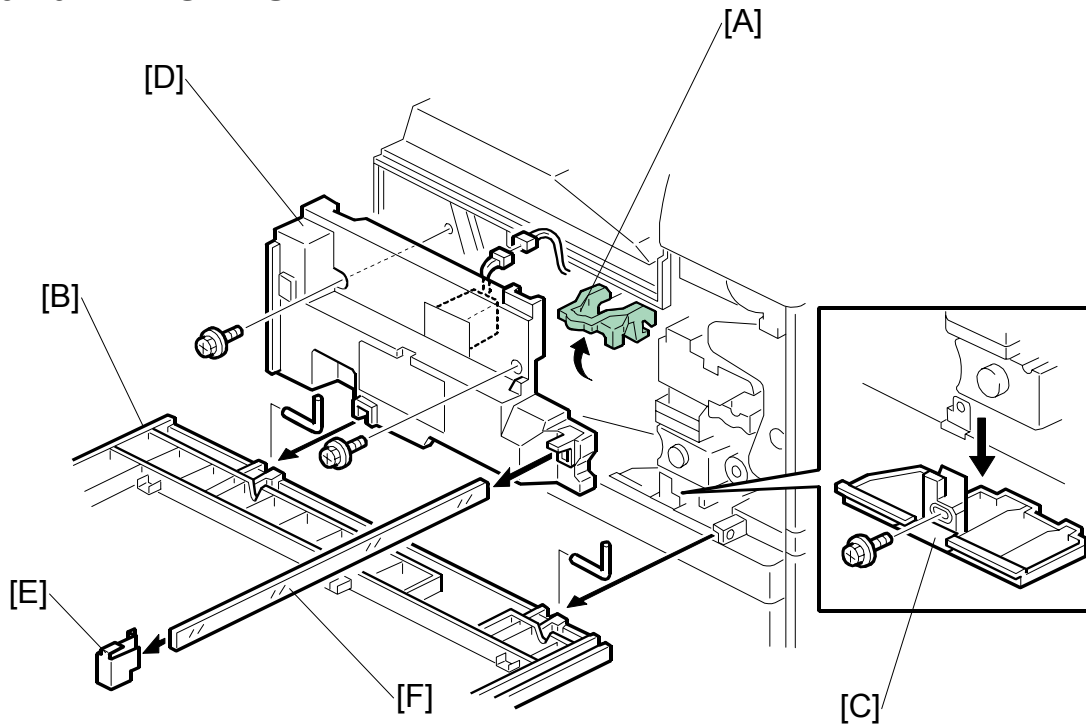
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

3.10.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS

Two caution decals are located in the laser section as shown below. (See the next page for removal instructions.)



3.10.2 LASER UNIT



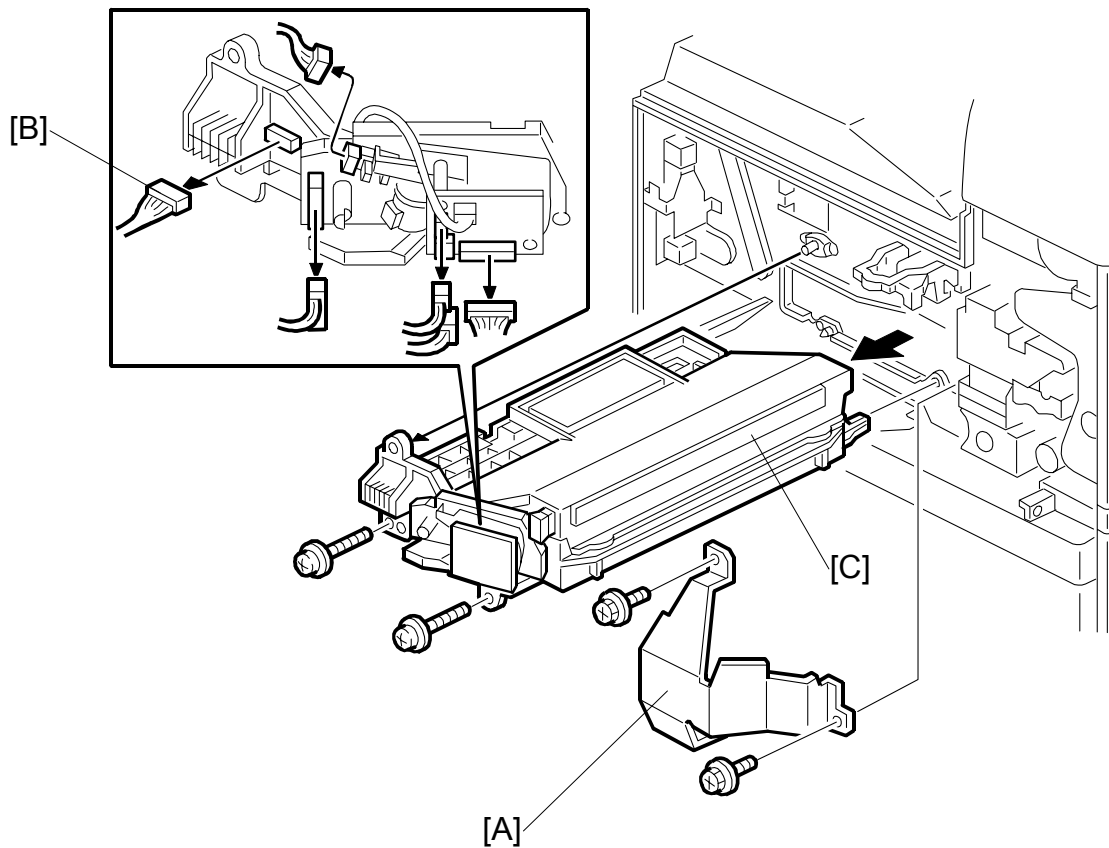
Replacement
Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting this procedure. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

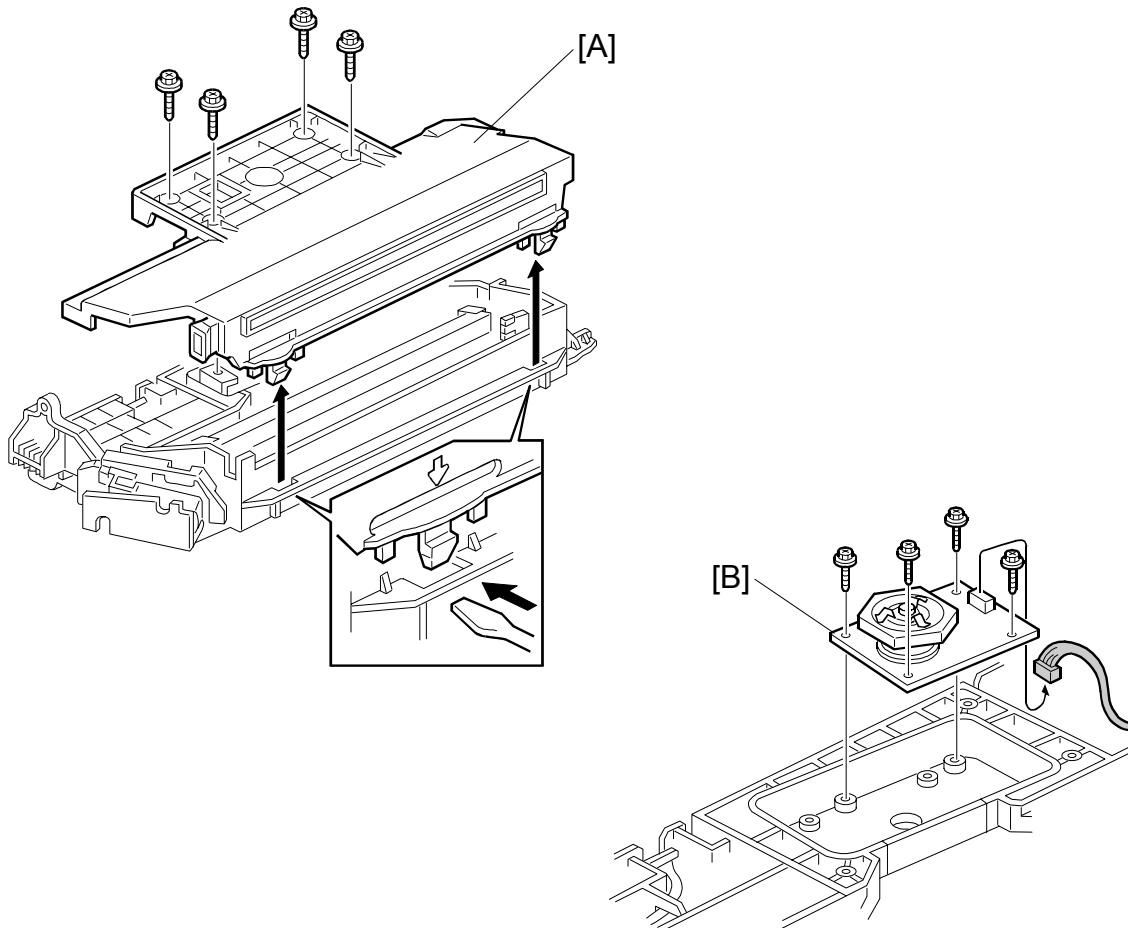
1. Open the front door.
2. Raise the toner bottle holder handle [A].
3. Remove front door [B] (Pins x2)
4. Remove toner collection plate [C] (⚙ x).
5. Remove inner cover [D] (⚙ x 2, 🔧 x 1)
6. While pressing in the top leaf on the left side, remove the shield glass cover [E].
 - The shield glass cover holds the shield glass firmly in place and prevents it from accidental removal.
 - When re-attaching the shield glass cover, the top leaf lies on top of the plastic form.
7. Shield glass [F]

LASER UNIT



8. Shield plate [A] (⚙ x 2)
9. While holding the LD board securely, disconnect the laser unit [B] (🔌 x 6, Flat film cable x1)
10. Hold the laser unit [C] by its casing, slide it out of the machine (⚙ x 2)

3.10.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR

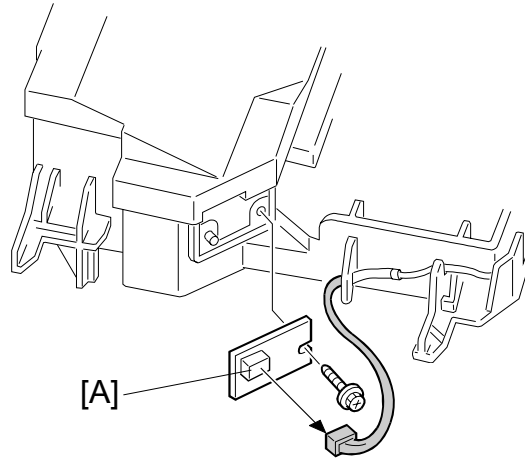


Replacement
Adjustment

1. Laser unit (☞ 3.10.2)
2. Laser unit cover [A] (⚙ x4, 2 hooks)
3. Polygon mirror motor [B] (⚙ x4, 📡 x1)
4. After replacing the motor, do the image adjustment. (☞ 3.21)

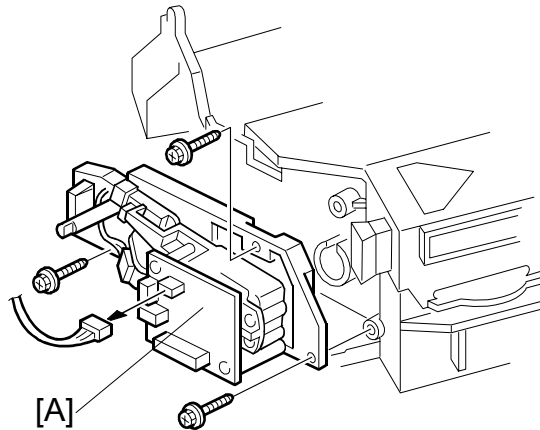
LASER UNIT

3.10.4 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR



1. Laser unit (➡ 3.10.2)
2. Laser synchronization detector [A] (🔩 x1, 📡 x1).

3.10.5 LD UNIT



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Laser unit (☞ 3.10.2)
2. LD unit [A] (🔧 x3, 📏 x1)
NOTE: To avoid damaging the LD board, hold it securely when disconnecting the connectors. Hold the laser unit casing.
3. After replacing the LD board, perform SP 2-109 to adjust the laser beam pitch (described on the next page).

Laser beam pitch adjustment

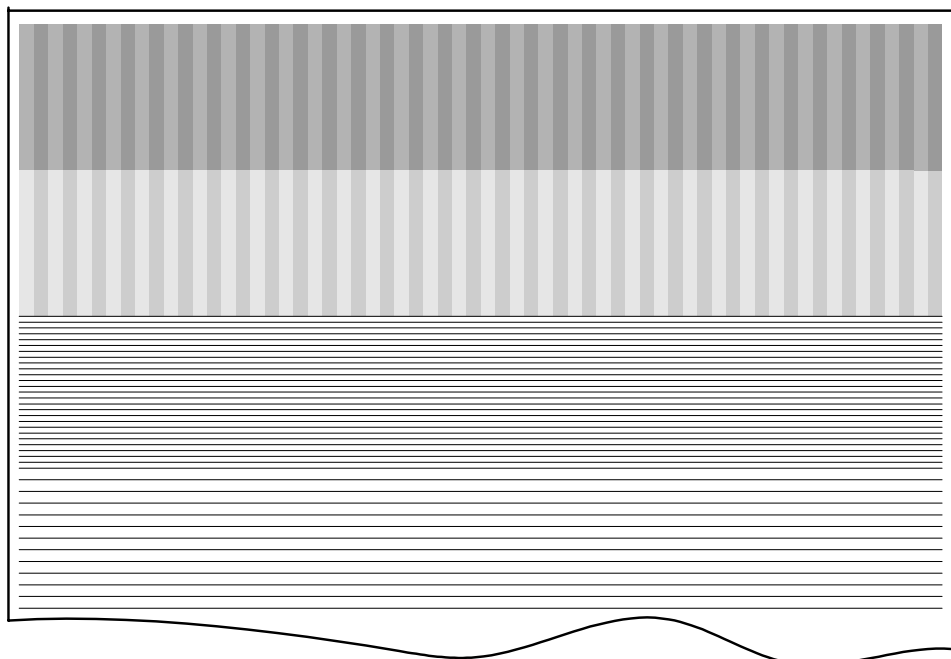
After replacing the LD board, perform the laser beam pitch adjustment. There are two laser beam pitch adjustment procedures: one for 400 dpi, and one for 600 dpi. These adjustments use the following SP modes.

SP2-110	Test Mode Dpi (0: 400 dpi, 8: 600 dpi)
SP2-109-1:	LD Beam Pitch Adjustment – 400 dpi
SP2-109-2:	LD Beam Pitch Adjustment – 600 dpi
SP2-109-3:	LD Initial Setting – 400 dpi
SP2-109-4:	LD Initial Setting – 600 dpi

1. Set SP2-110 to 0 (for 400 dpi), or to 8 (for 600 dpi).
2. Do SP 2-109-8 to reset all the beam pitch data.
3. For SP2-109-1 input 144.
NOTE: The entry “144” is only a starting reference value that will allow the machine to operate. It is only a starting point for adjustment.
4. Do SP2-109-3.
5. Print the test pattern onto A3 (11" x 17") paper using SP2-902-3 No. 12.
(☛ 5.2.3 Test Pattern Printing (SP2-902)).
6. On the test pattern write 144, the value of SP2-109-1.
7. Change the value of SP2-109-1 and then print another test pattern, repeating steps 2 to 6. Print about 5 patterns with different values for SP2-109-1 (e.g. 48, 96, 192, 240).
8. Check these test patterns. If the laser beam pitch is not correct, the image looks like a black vertical stripe pattern.
NOTE: For example, if the pattern made with the value 192 has fewer obvious stripes than the other printouts, the correct value is near 192.
9. Fine adjustment: Do steps 2 to 6 to adjust the laser beam pitch position until thin lines are of uniform thickness (no stripes should appear on the printout).
NOTE: In step 3, input a value estimated to be correct (e.g., if 192 was the closest, try 182), then do steps 4 and 5, then if necessary go back to step 2 and try another value.

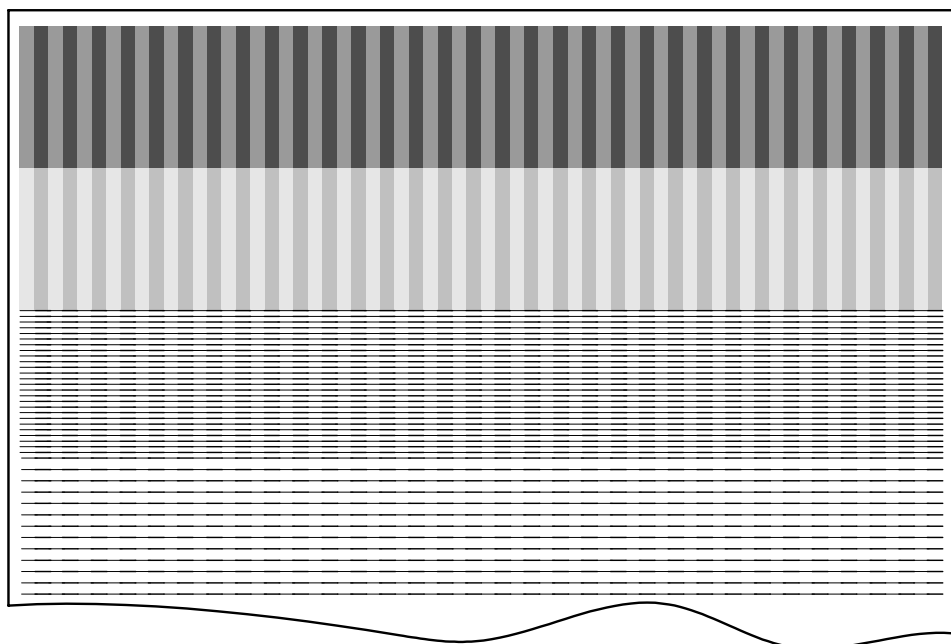
10. After adjusting the laser beam pitch for 400 dpi, adjust it for 600 dpi, using the same procedure as for 400 dpi (use the SP modes for 600 dpi). Laser beam pitch for 600 dpi should be 24~48 more than for 400 dpi.

OK: Adjustment Complete



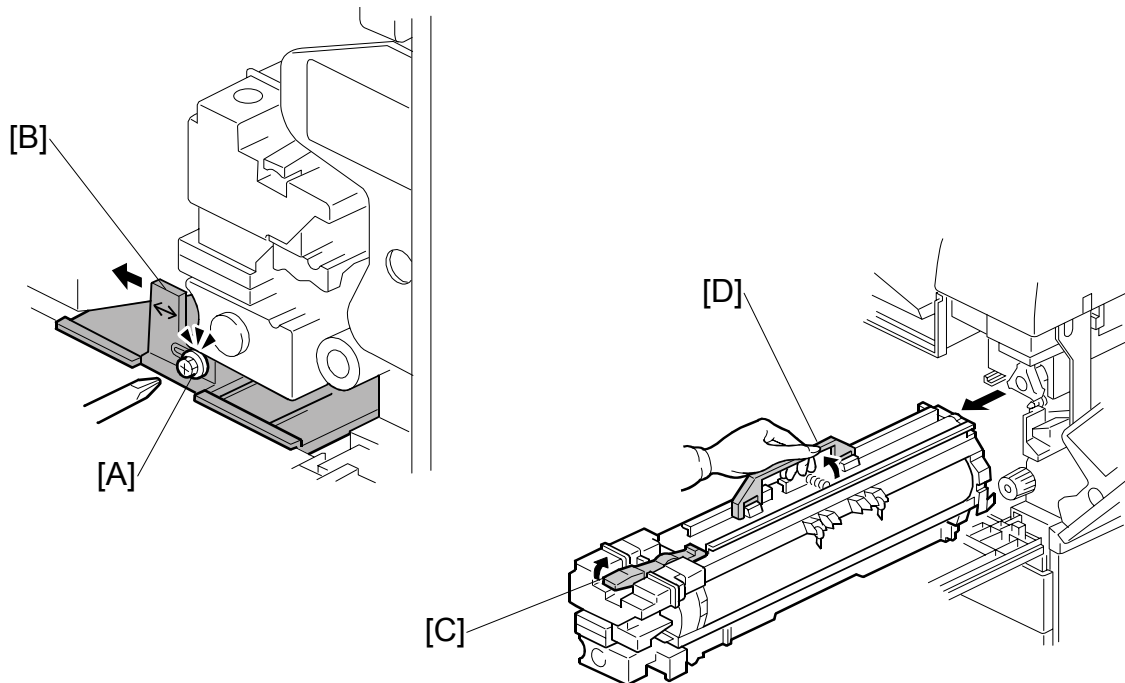
Replacement
Adjustment

NG: Adjustment Not Complete



3.11 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

3.11.1 PCU

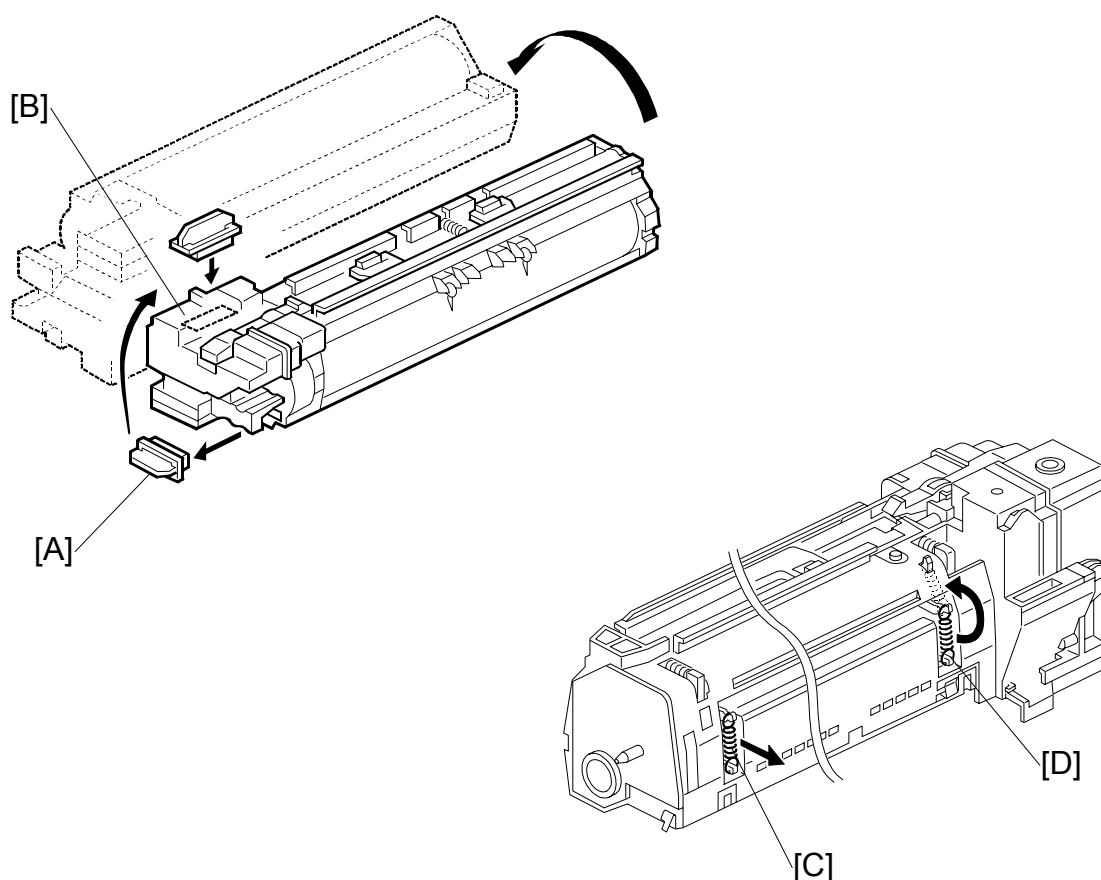


1. Open the front door.
2. Lower the by-pass tray, open the duplex unit, and open the transfer unit right cover.
3. Spread a sheet of A4/ LTR paper on top of the open front door to catch loose toner.
4. Loosen [A] (⌀ x 1).
5. Push [B] slightly to the left.
6. Raise the release lever [C].
7. Hold the PCU at [D] and pull it out of the machine.
8. Cover the OPC with a sheet of paper to protect the drum from light.

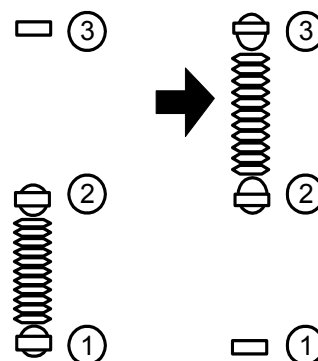
Reinstallation

- Open the right cover before you install the PCU in the machine.
- Make sure that the PCU brackets are engaged with the rails before you slowly push the PCU into the machine.

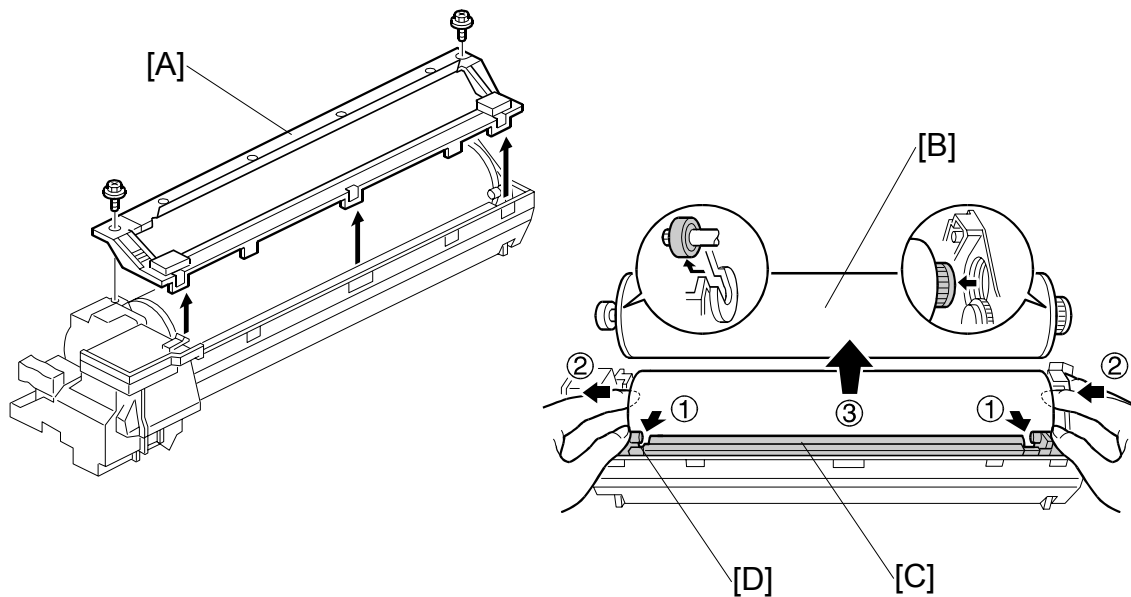
3.11.2 DRUM


 Replacement
Adjustment

1. Remove the PCU (➡3.11.1)
2. Toner cap [A]
3. Insert the toner cap [A] into the toner entrance hole [B].
NOTE: Make sure that the cap is inserted completely into the hole.
4. On the left side of the PCU, disconnect the spring [C].
5. On the right side of the PCU disconnect the spring [D] and attach it to hooks as shown.
 - To prevent breaking the weaker hook ①, use a pair of needle-nose pliers to disconnect the spring at ②, then re-attach to ② and ③.
 - Moving this spring retracts the movable drum cleaning blade so it does not touch the surface of the drum when the drum is re-installed.



PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)



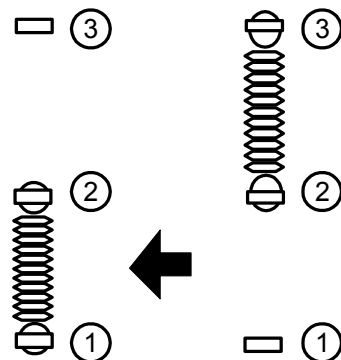
6. Turn the PCU upside-down, and remove lower PCU cover [A] (⚙ x 2, 3 paws).
7. Pull the drum [B] towards the front ② (the left side in the illustration) while releasing the charge roller [C] using the release lever ① [D], and then remove the drum ③.

CAUTION: Never touch the drum surface with bare hands.

8. Replace the drum and re-attach the lower PCU cover.
9. Detach the spring from ②, ③ and re-attach to ①, ②.

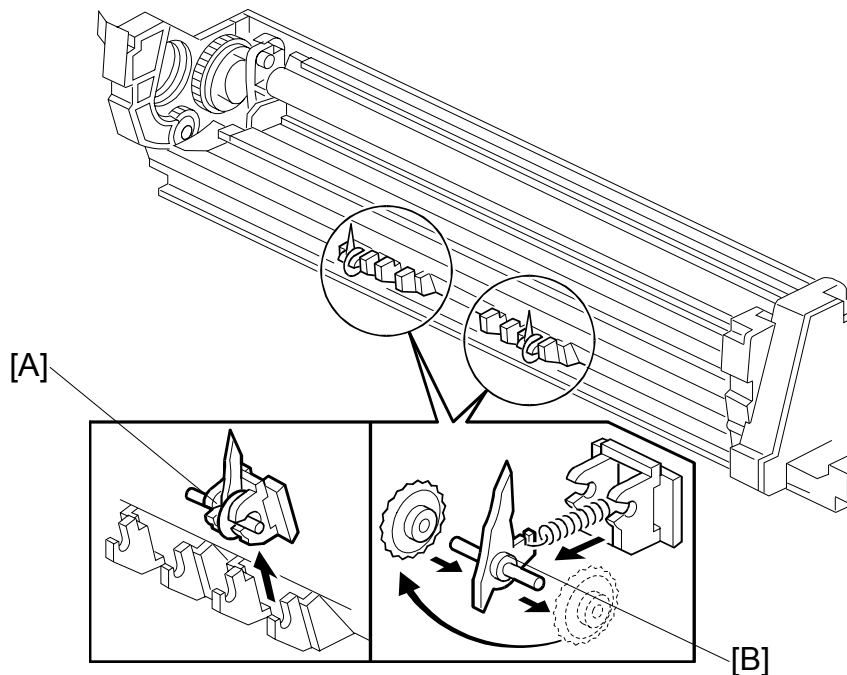
CAUTION: You must re-attach the spring to ①, ② in order for the cleaning blade to operate correctly.

If you fail to re-attach the spring to ①, ② the movable cleaning blade will not contact the drum for cleaning, but the machine will operate without generating an error. However, copies will gradually become dirty due to toner collecting on the drum.



10. Re-attach the spring on the left side of the PCU.
11. After replacing the drum, perform the ID sensor initial setting using SP3001 002.
12. Do SP2805 to initialize the developer.

3.11.3 PICK-OFF PAWLS



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Remove the drum. (☛ 3.11.2)
2. Pawl assembly [A]
3. Pick-off pawl [B] (spring x 1, spur x 1)

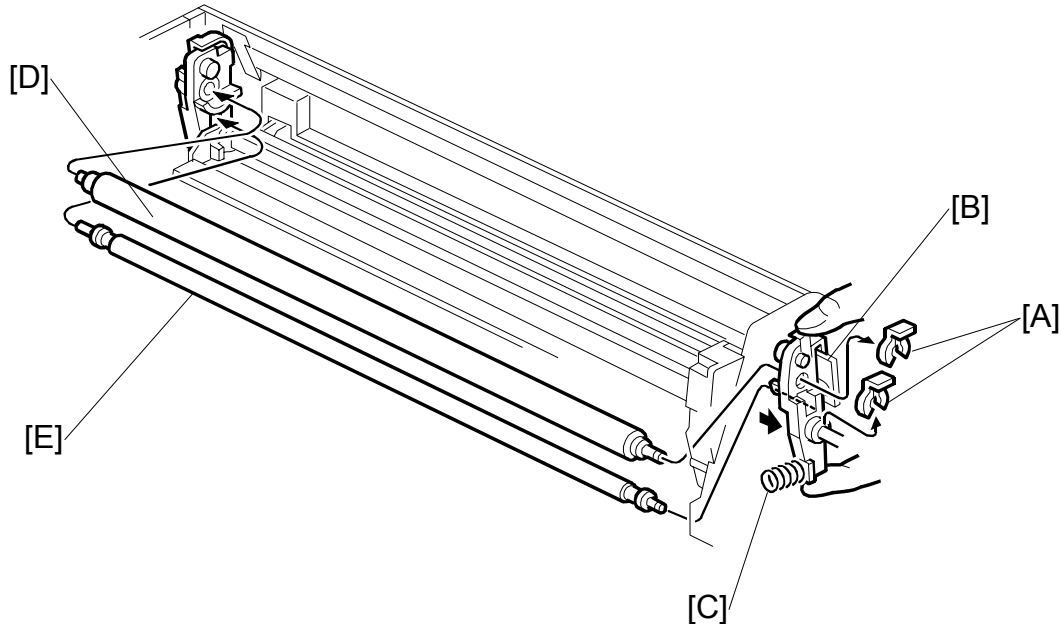
Pick-off pawl position adjustment

If the pick-off pawl has marked the drum with a line, the pick-off pawl position can be adjusted using either method:

- Changing the spur position.
- Changing the pick-off pawl assembly position

CAUTION: After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (☛ 3.11.2)

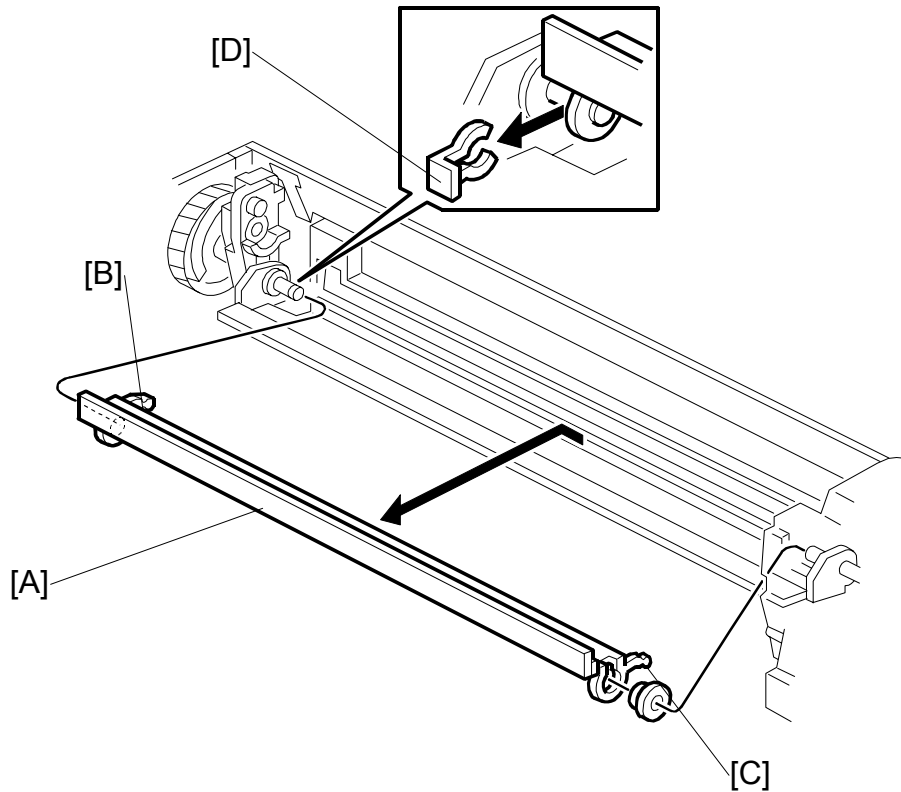
3.11.4 CHARGE ROLLER AND CLEANING ROLLER



1. Remove the drum. (➡ 3.11.2)
2. Two clip rings [A] (🔗 x 2).
3. Push charge roller holder [B] toward the front of the PCU and remove the spring [C].
4. Charge roller [D].
NOTE: Disengage the charge roller on the right side to remove. Try to avoid touching the charge roller.
5. Cleaning roller [E].
NOTE: Disengage the cleaning roller on the left to remove.
6. After replacing the charge roller and cleaning roller, check the value of SP2001 001. If it is not at the standard value (1500 V), set SP2001 001 to -1500 V.
NOTE: If this is not done, the carrier will be attracted to the drum because the charge roller voltage will be too high.

CAUTION: After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (➡ 3.11.2)

3.11.5 DRUM CLEANING BLADE 2



Replacement
Adjustment

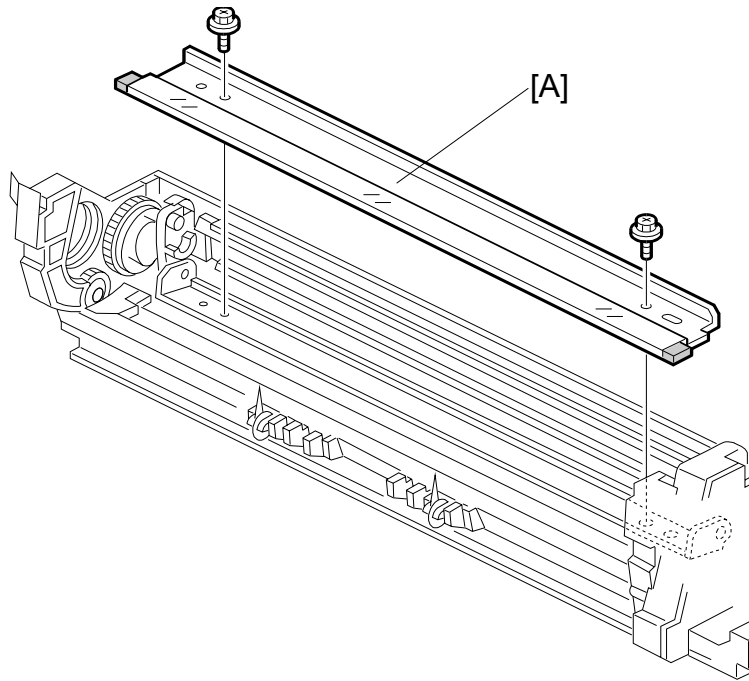
1. Remove the OPC drum. (☛ 3.11.2)
2. Remove the charge roller and cleaning roller. (☛ 3.11.4)
3. Remove the movable cleaning blade [A]. (☞ x 1)

Re-installation

- Engage the left end of the cleaning blade first, then make sure that both arms [B] and [C] are through the holes on the left and right side.
- When you re-attach the clip-ring, make sure that the head of the clip ring [D] is below the blade.

CAUTION: After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (☛ 3.11.2)

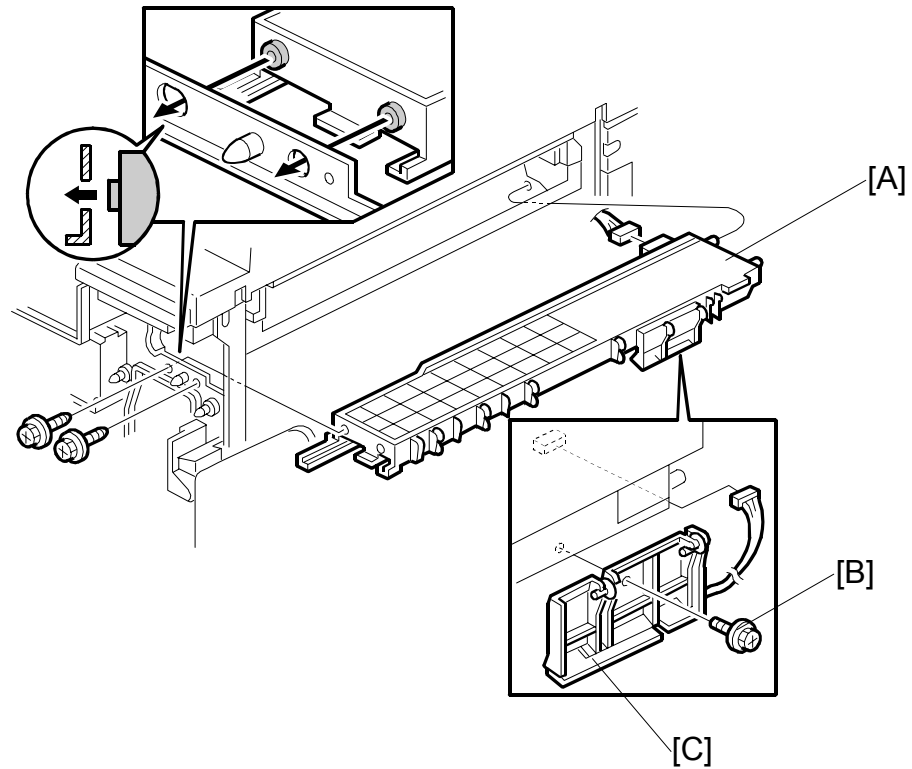
3.11.6 DRUM CLEANING BLADE 1



1. Remove the drum. (☛ 3.11.2)
2. Remove the charge roller and cleaning roller. (☛ 3.11.4)
3. Remove the movable cleaning blade. (☛ 3.11.5)
4. Remove the stationary drum cleaning blade [A] (🔧 x 2)

CAUTION: After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (☛ 3.11.2)

3.11.7 ID SENSOR



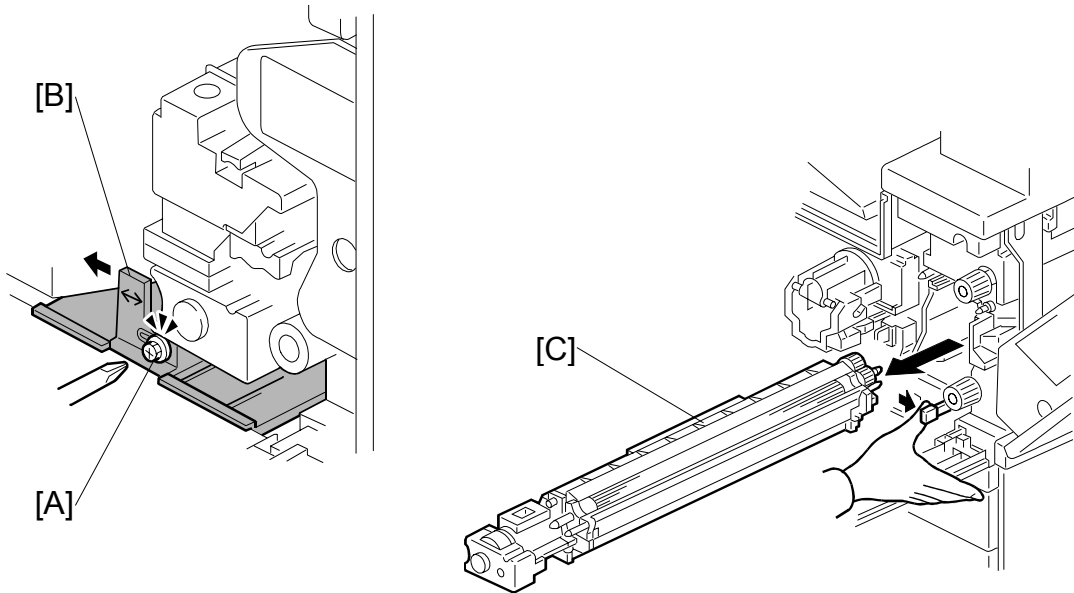
Replacement
Adjustment

Remove:

- Remove the PCU. (☛ 3.11.1)
 - Fusing unit (☛ 3.15)
 - Development unit (☛ 3.12.1)
1. Remove the PCU rail [A] (⚙ x2, 🛠 x1)
 2. Remove the ID sensor bracket [B] (⚙ x1, 🛠 x1)
 3. Remove the ID sensor [C] (⚙ x1)
 4. Do SP3-001-2 to initialize the ID sensor.

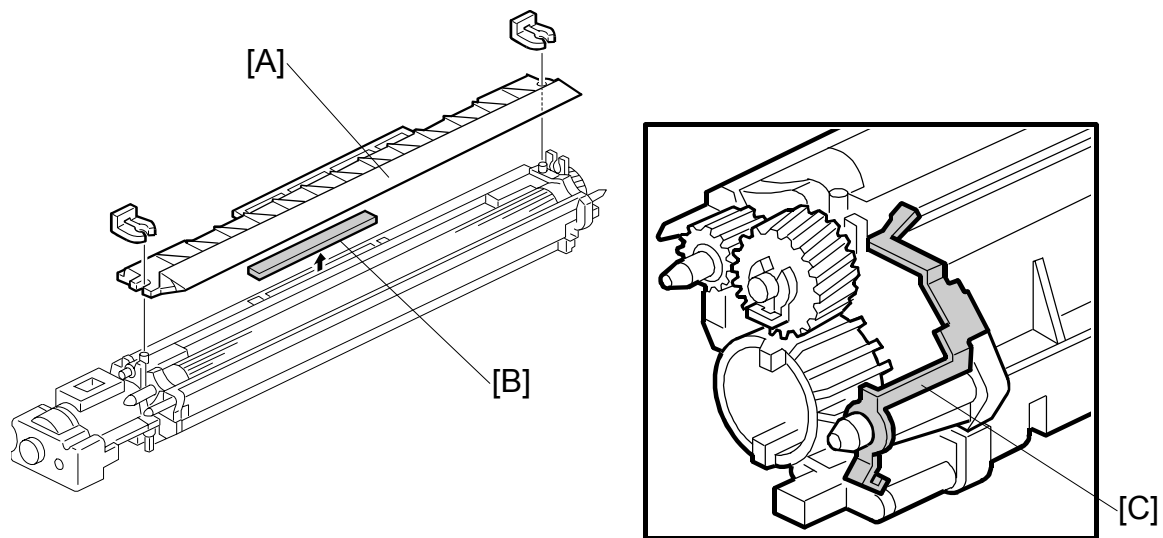
3.12 DEVELOPMENT

3.12.1 DEVELOPMENT UNIT



- Open the right upper cover and front cover.
 - PCU. (➡ 3.11.1)
1. Spread paper on a clean flat surface that is free of pins, paper clips, staples, screws or any other metal objects.
 2. Loosen [A] (⚙ x 1).
 3. Push [B] slightly to the left.
 4. Development unit [C]
NOTE: Pull slowly to avoid scratching or nicking the development roller.
 5. Set the development unit on the spread paper.
 6. If you are temporarily installing a used development unit for test purposes, perform SP2-220 and 2-802-1 after installation. For more, see Section "5. Service Tables".

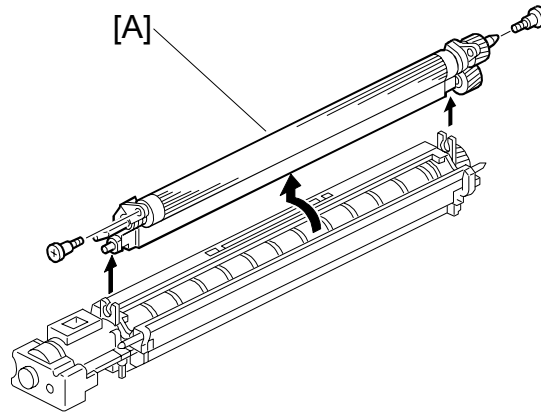
3.12.2 DEVELOPMENT FILTER



1. Development unit (☛ 3.12.1)
2. Upper development cover [A] (☞ x2)
3. Development filter [B]
NOTE: Make sure that the surface with the red mark is facing up.
4. Make sure that the ground plate [C] is positioned correctly.

Replacement
Adjustment

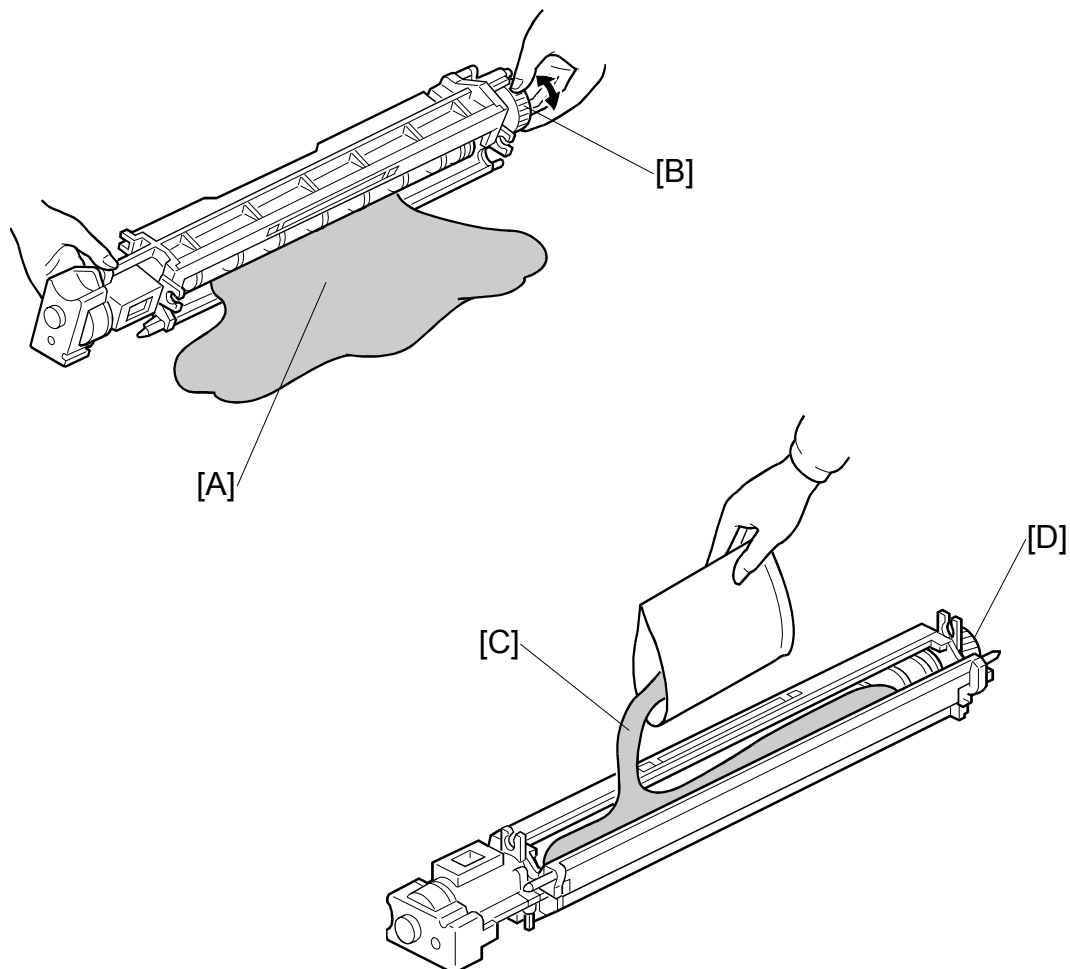
3.12.3 DEVELOPMENT ROLLER



1. Development unit (☛ 3.12.1)
2. Upper development cover (☛ 3.12.2)
3. Development roller [A] (🔩 x2)

NOTE: Work carefully to avoid scratching or nicking the development roller.

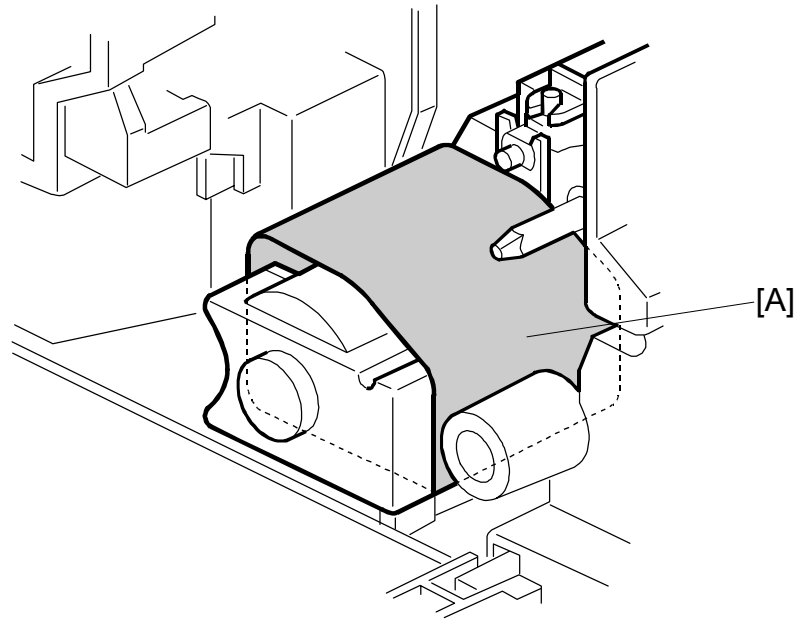
3.12.4 DEVELOPER



Replacement
Adjustment

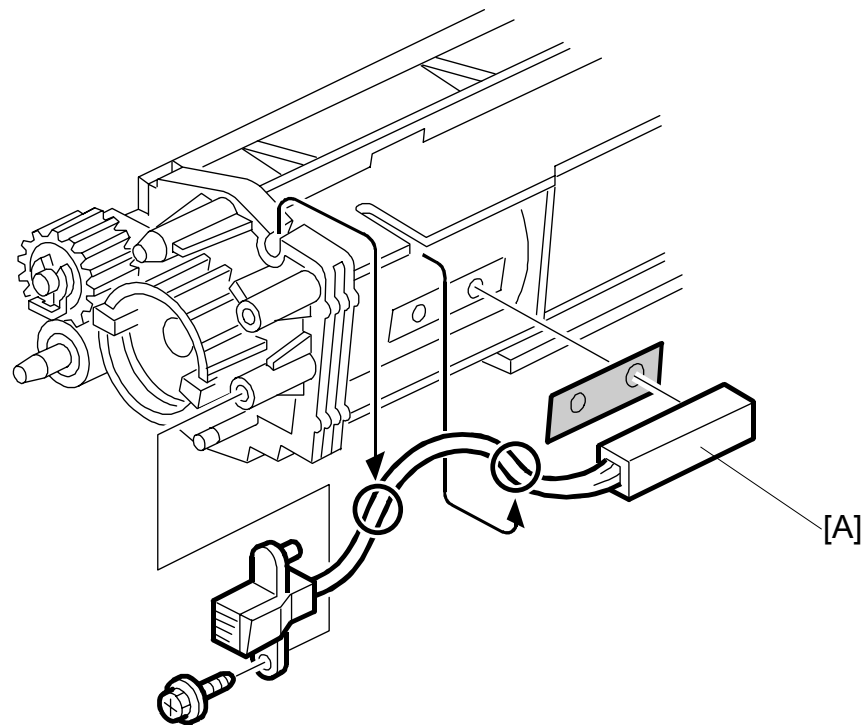
1. Development unit (☛ 3.12.1)
2. Remove the development roller (☛ 3.12.3)
3. Tip out the old developer [A].
4. Turn drive gear [B] to ensure that no developer remains in the unit or on the developer roller.
NOTE: Dispose of the used developer in accordance with local regulations.
 Work carefully to avoid scratching or nicking the development roller.
5. Pour approximately 1/3 of the developer [C] evenly along the length of the development unit.
6. Rotate the drive gear [D] to work the developer into the unit. Repeat steps 5 and 6 until all toner is in the unit and level with the edges.

DEVELOPMENT



7. Reassemble the development unit
8. Cover the toner entrance hole [A] with a piece of paper.
9. Install the development unit in the machine.
10. Turn on the main power switch, make sure that the machine has warmed up, then perform the TD sensor initial setting using SP 2-801.
NOTE: When performing this setting, cover the toner entrance hole with a piece of paper. This prevents used toner falling from the PCU into the development unit during the TD sensor initial setting and interfering with the Vref setting (toner density reference voltage).
11. After performing the TD sensor initial setting, remove the sheet [A] from the development unit.

3.12.5 TD SENSOR



Replacement
Adjustment

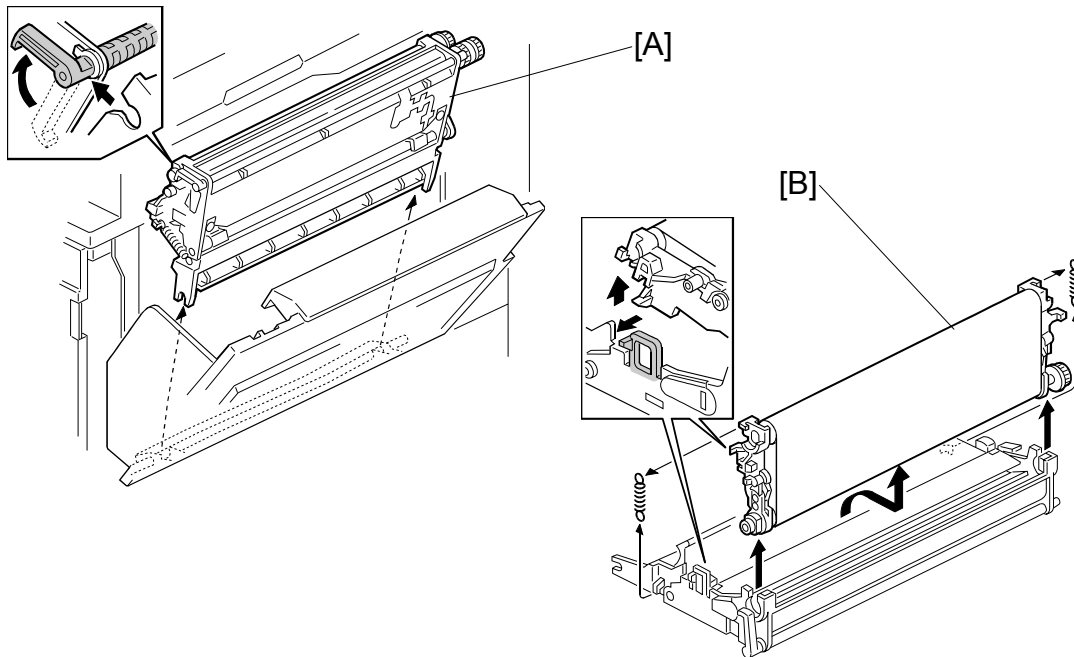
1. Remove the development unit. (➡ 3.12.1)
2. Empty all developer from the development unit
3. TD sensor [A] (🔧 x1)

NOTE: The TD sensor is attached to the casing with double-sided tape. Pry it off with the flat head of a screwdriver. Use fresh double-sided tape to re-attach the sensor.
4. Pour new developer into the development unit and perform the TD sensor initial setting using SP2-801.

NOTE: When performing the TD sensor initial setting, cover the toner entrance hole with a piece of paper.

3.13 TRANSFER UNIT

3.13.1 TRANSFER BELT UNIT

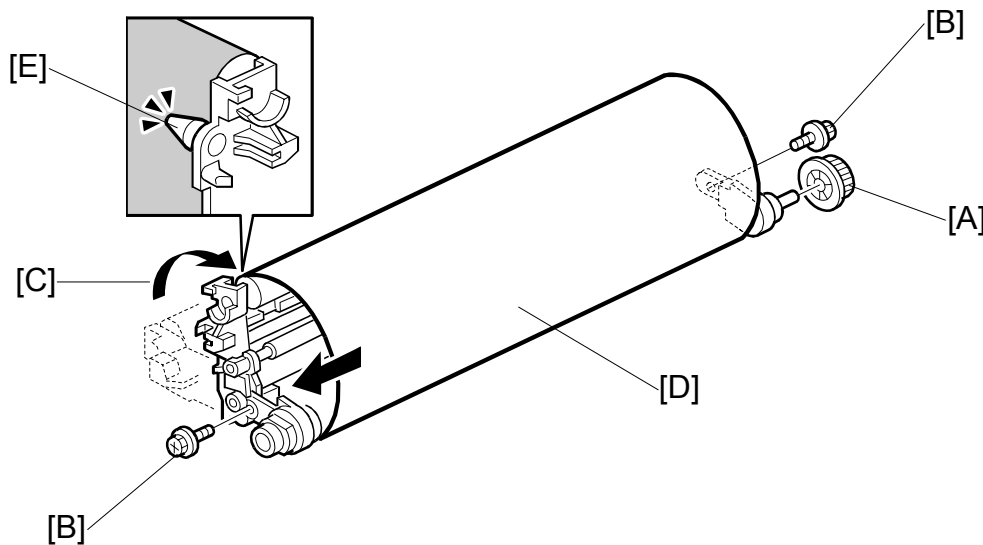


NOTE: To avoid exposing the PCU drum to strong light, cover it with paper if the right cover will be open for a long period.

1. Lower the by-pass tray, open the duplex unit, and open the right cover.
2. Transfer unit [A] (Hook x1)
3. Transfer belt [B] (springs x2, Hook x1)

NOTE: Avoid touching the transfer belt surface.

3.13.2 TRANSFER BELT

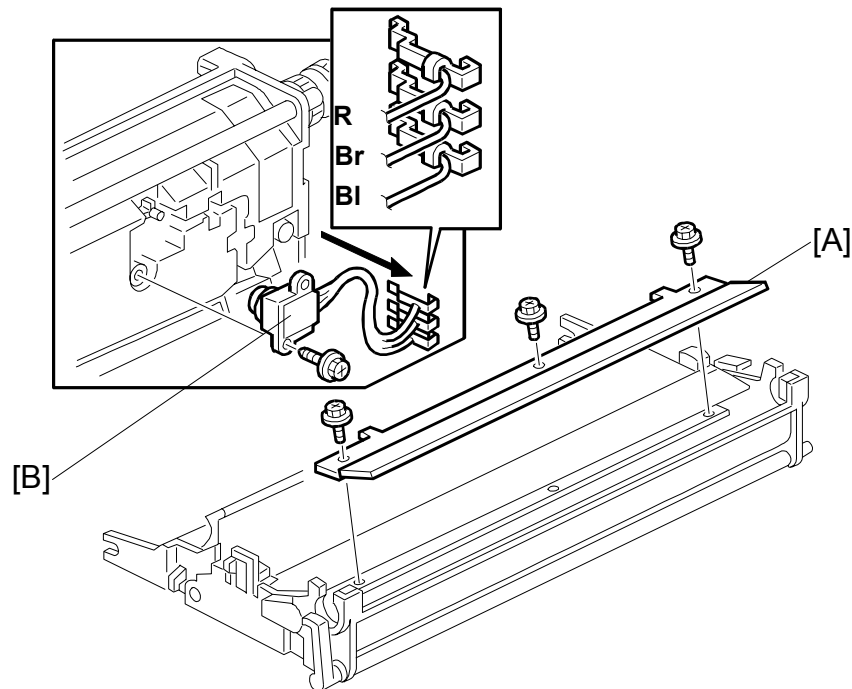


Replacement
Adjustment

1. Remove the transfer belt unit. (➡ 3.13.1)
2. Belt drive gear [A]
3. Set screws [B] (⚙ x2)
4. Lay on a flat, clean surface and fold the unit to release the tension on the belt [C].
5. Transfer belt [D]

NOTE: 1) Avoid touching the transfer belt surface.
 2) Before installing the new transfer belt, clean all the rollers and shafts with alcohol to prevent the belt from slipping.
 3) When reinstalling the transfer belt, make sure that the belt is under the pin [E].
 4) To avoid damaging the transfer belt during installation, manually turn the rollers and make sure that the new transfer belt is not running over the edges of any of the rollers.

3.13.3 TRANSFER BELT CLEANING BLADE AND TONER OVERFLOW SENSOR



Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade

1. Transfer belt unit. (☛ 3.13.1)
2. Transfer belt. (☛ 3.13.2)
3. Transfer belt cleaning blade [A] (🔩 x3)

NOTE: Avoid touching the edge of the new blade. Check the new blade for dust or damage.

Toner Overflow Sensor

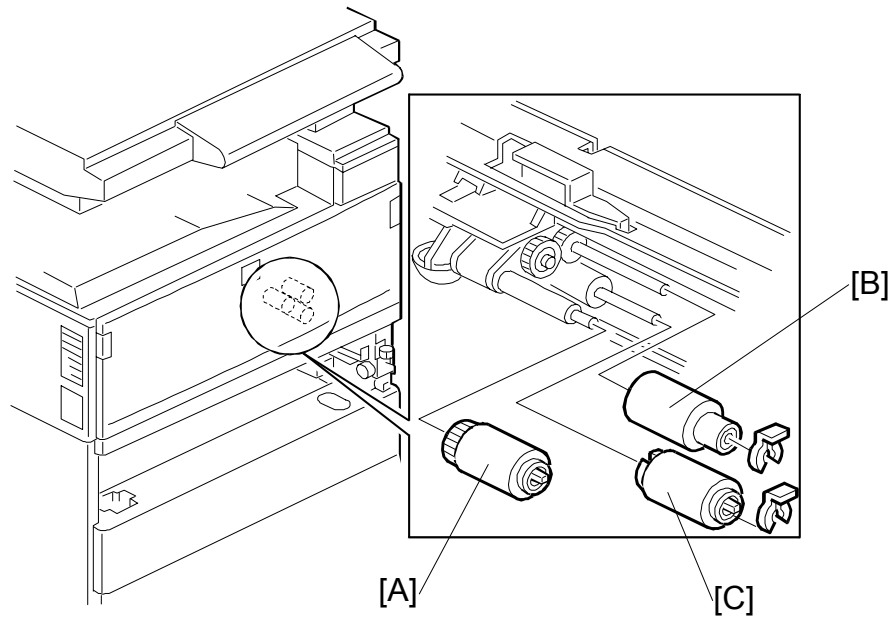
1. Transfer belt unit. (☛ 3.13.1)
2. Transfer belt.
3. Transfer belt cleaning blade [A] (🔩 x3)
4. Turn over the transfer unit and empty the used toner in the transfer unit.
5. Toner overflow sensor [B] (🔩 x1, 📡 x3)

NOTE: Re-install the color-coded wires in the correct order.

R: Red, Br: Brown, Bl: Blue

3.14 PAPER FEED

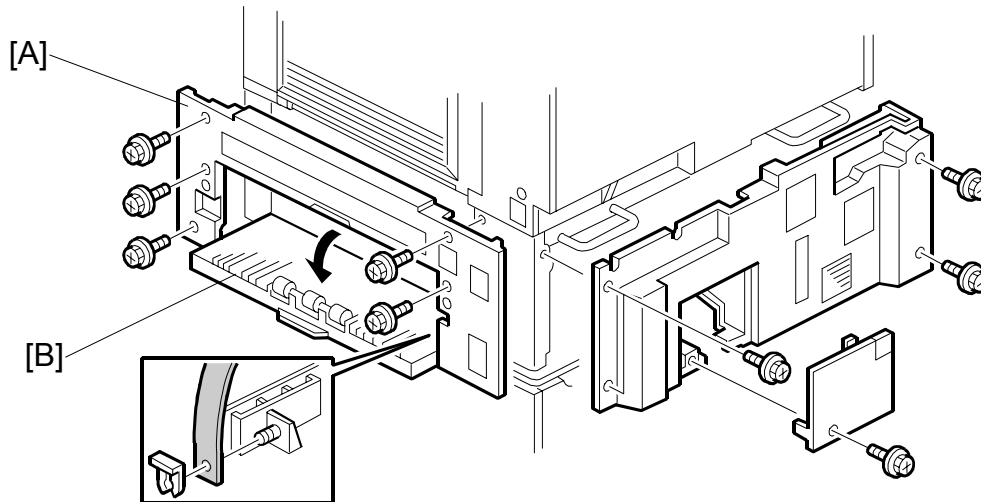
3.14.1 PICK-UP, SEPARATION, AND FEED ROLLERS



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Paper tray
2. Pick-up roller [A]
3. Feed roller [B] (⌀ x 1)
4. Separation roller [C] (⌀ x 1)

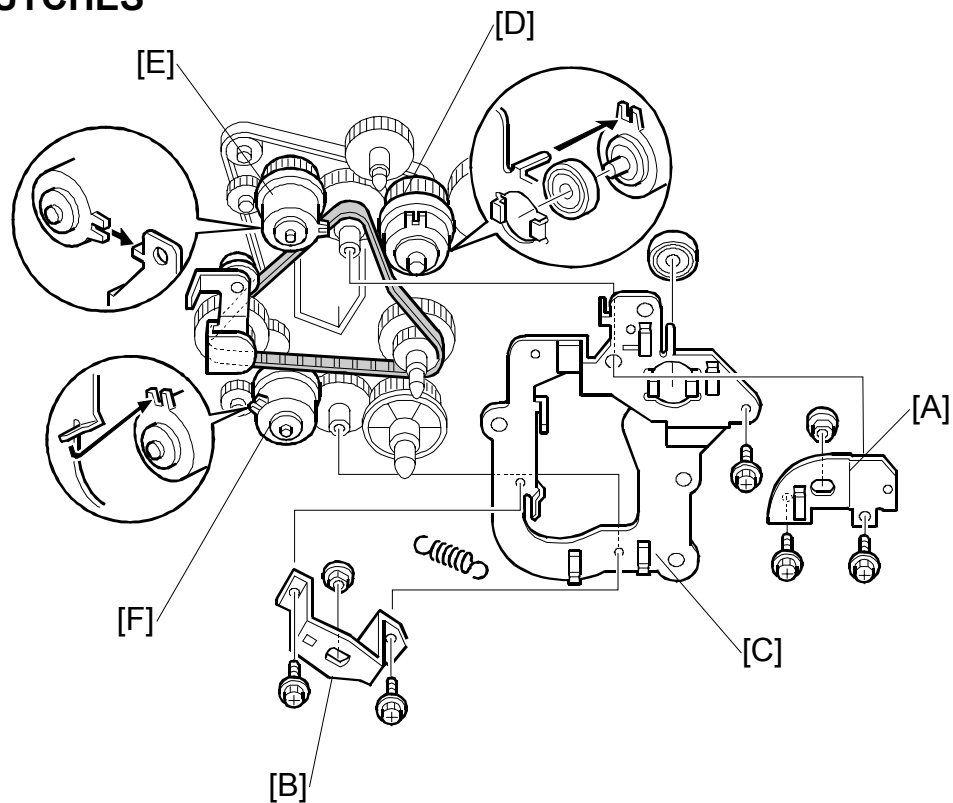
3.14.2 RIGHT LOWER COVER



1. Duplex unit (☛ 3.4)
2. By-pass tray (☛ 3.6)
3. LCT (if installed)
4. Lower right cover [A] (⚙ x5)
5. Vertical transport cover [B]

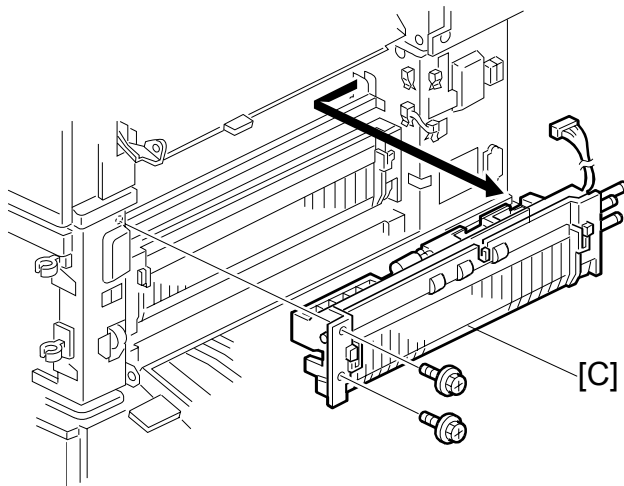
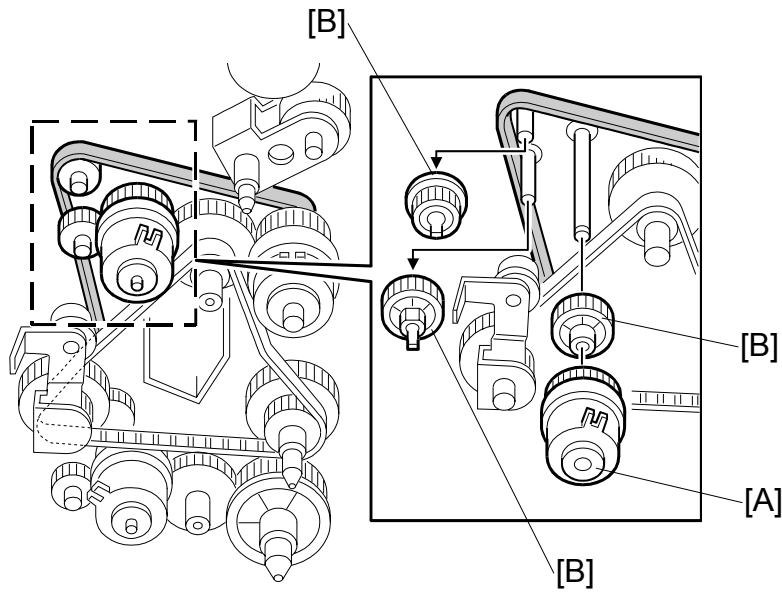
NOTE: Push the cover completely to the left and then press in on the right tab to release the peg from the hole.

3.14.3 RELAY/UPPER PAPER FEED AND LOWER PAPER FEED CLUTCHES



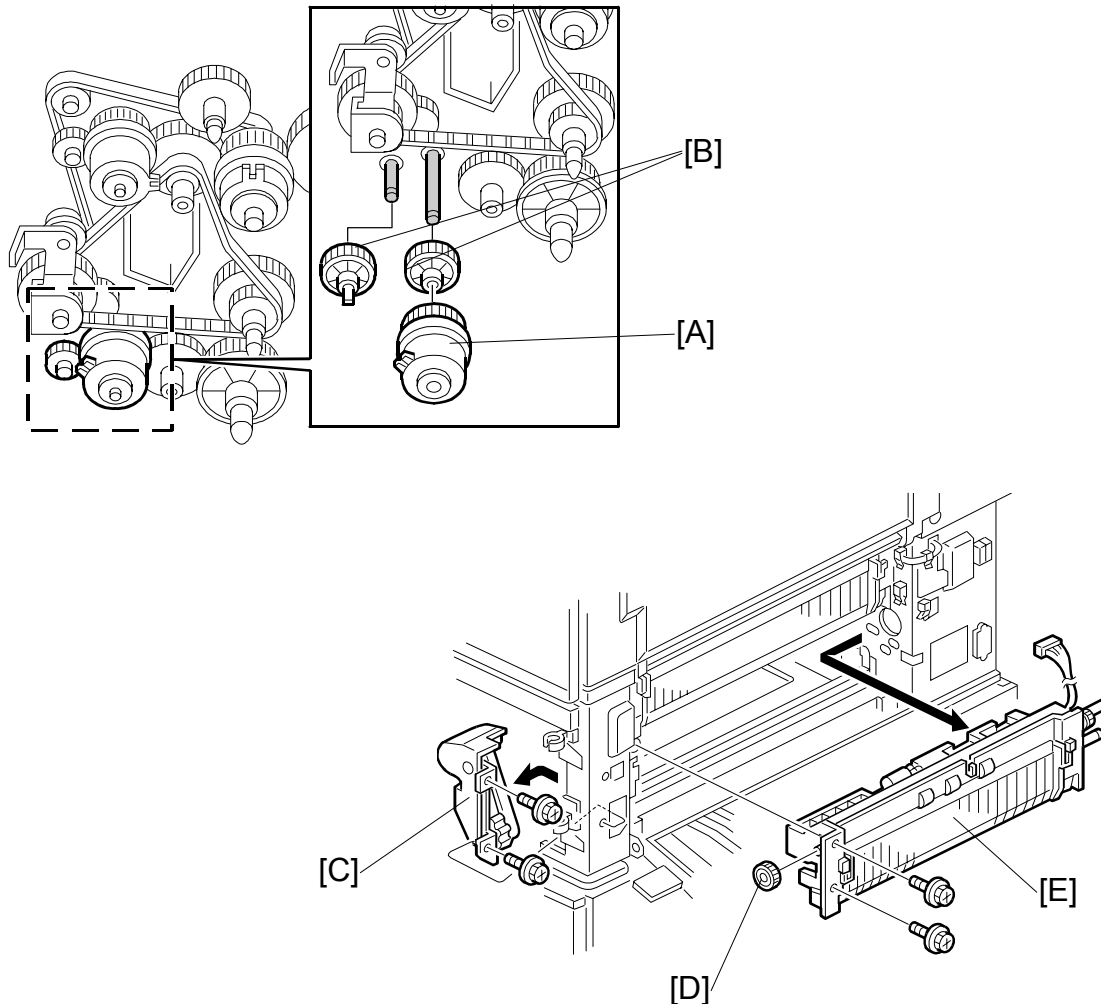
1. Rear lower cover (➡ 3.7.2)
2. Remove the IOB. (➡ 3.19.3)
3. First paper feed clutch bracket [A] (⚙ x2, bushing x1)
4. Second paper feed clutch bracket [B] (⚙ x2, bushing x1)
5. Drive bracket [C] (⚙ x1, spring x1, bearing x1)
6. Relay clutch [D] (⚙ x1)
7. Upper paper feed clutch [E] (⚙ x1)
8. Lower paper feed clutch [F] (⚙ x1)

3.14.4 UPPER PAPER FEED UNIT FOR TRAY 1



1. Upper paper tray
2. Right lower cover. (☛3.14.2)
3. Right upper cover (☛ 3.5)
4. Upper paper feed clutch [A] (☛3.14.3)
5. 3 relay gears [B]
6. Upper paper feed unit [C] (🔩 x2, 📏 x1)

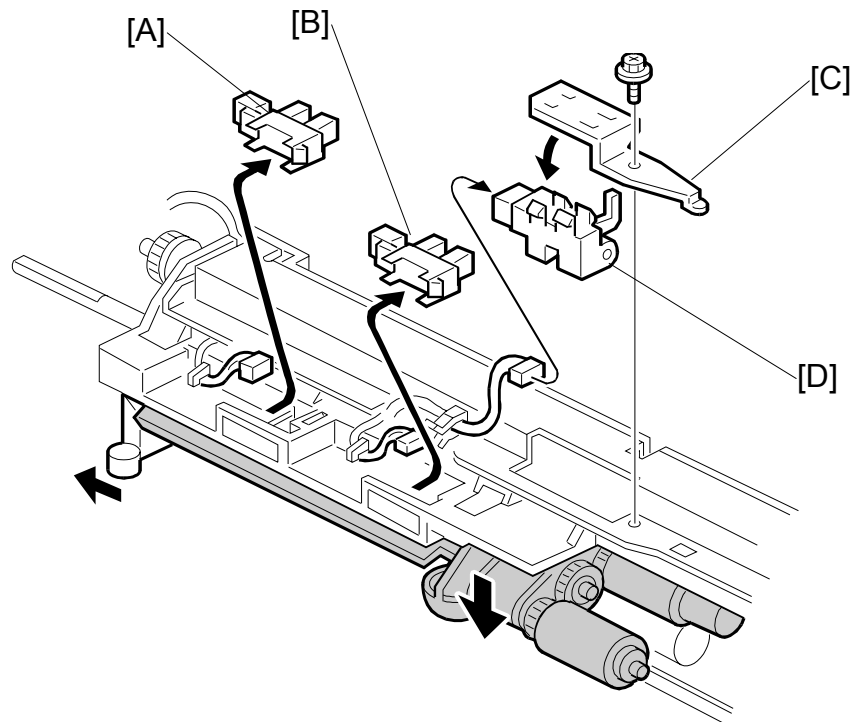
3.14.5 LOWER PAPER FEED UNIT FOR TRAY 2



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Lower the paper trays
2. Right lower cover (➡ 3.14.2)
3. Remove the lower paper feed clutch [A] (➡ 3.14.3)
4. Relay gears [B] (x2)
5. Cover [C] (⚙ x2)
6. Gear [D] (x1)
7. Lower paper feed unit [E] (⚙ x2, 📄 x1)

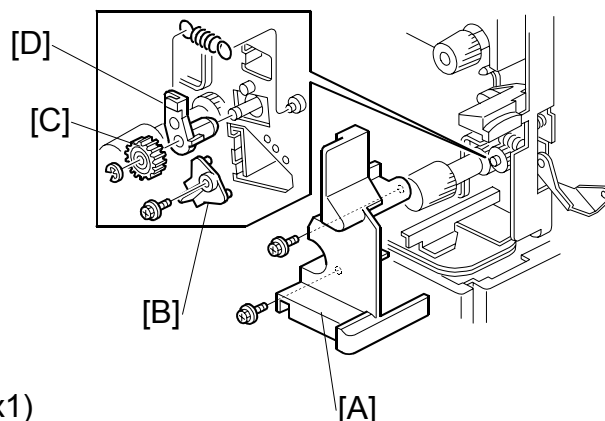
3.14.6 PAPER END/PAPER HEIGHT/RELAY SENSORS



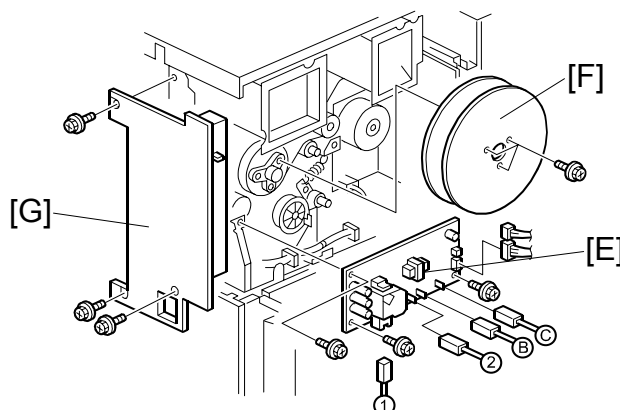
1. Remove the appropriate paper feed unit. (☛3.14.4, 3.14.5)
2. Paper height sensor [A] (☞ x1)
3. Paper end sensor [B] (☞ x1).
4. Relay sensor bracket [C] (☞ x1)
5. Relay sensor [D] (☞ x1).

3.14.7 REGISTRATION SENSOR

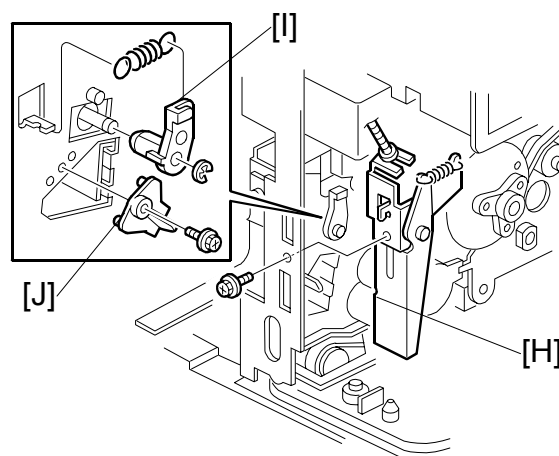
1. Remove
 - Front door (☞ 3-3)
 - Rear upper cover (☞ 3.7.1)
 - Right upper cover (☞ 3.5)
 - Transfer belt unit (☞ 3.13.1)
 - PCU (☞ 3.11.1)
2. Development unit (☞ 3.12.1)
3. Inner cover [A] (⚙ x2)
4. Front registration holder [B] (⚙ x1)
5. Front registration roller gear [C] (⊕ x1)
6. Registration roller bushing [D] (spring x 1)



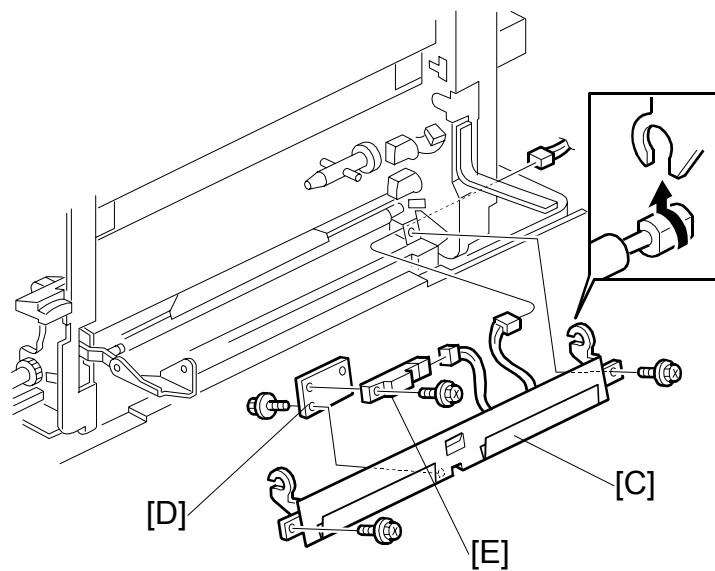
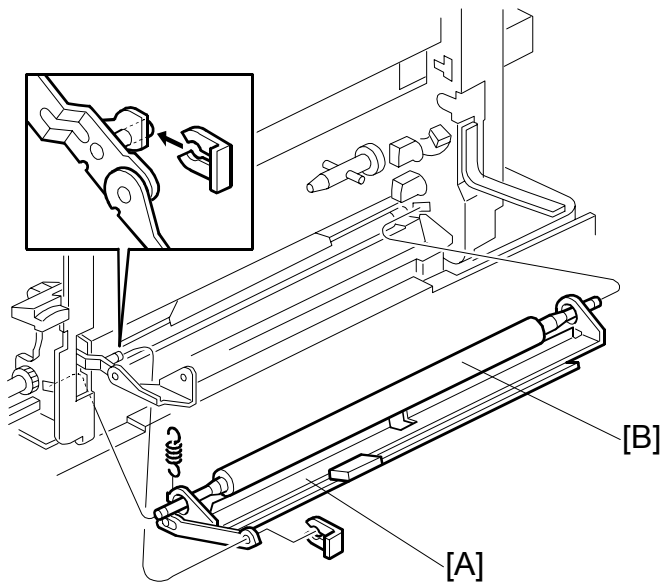
7. High voltage power supply board [E] (⚙ x3, ② x6)
8. Flywheel [F] (⚙ x3)
9. Right rear cover [G] (⚙ x3)



10. Right cover switch bracket [H] (⚙ x1)
11. Rear registration holder [I] (⚙ x1)
12. Registration roller bushing [J] (⊕ x1, spring x1)


 Replacement
Adjustment

PAPER FEED



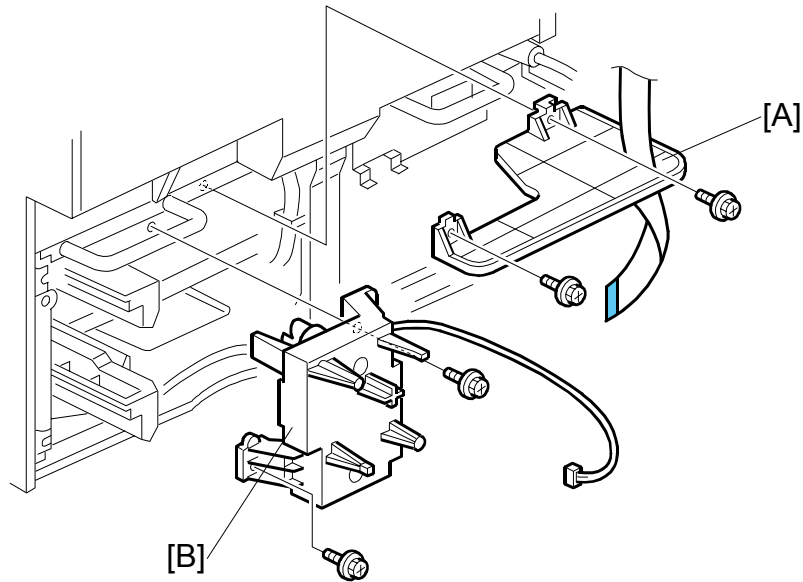
13. Guide plate [A] and registration roller [B] (spring x1,  x 1)

14. Registration guide plate [C] ( x2,  x1)

15. Sensor bracket [D] ( x1)

16. Registration sensor [E] ( x1,  x1)

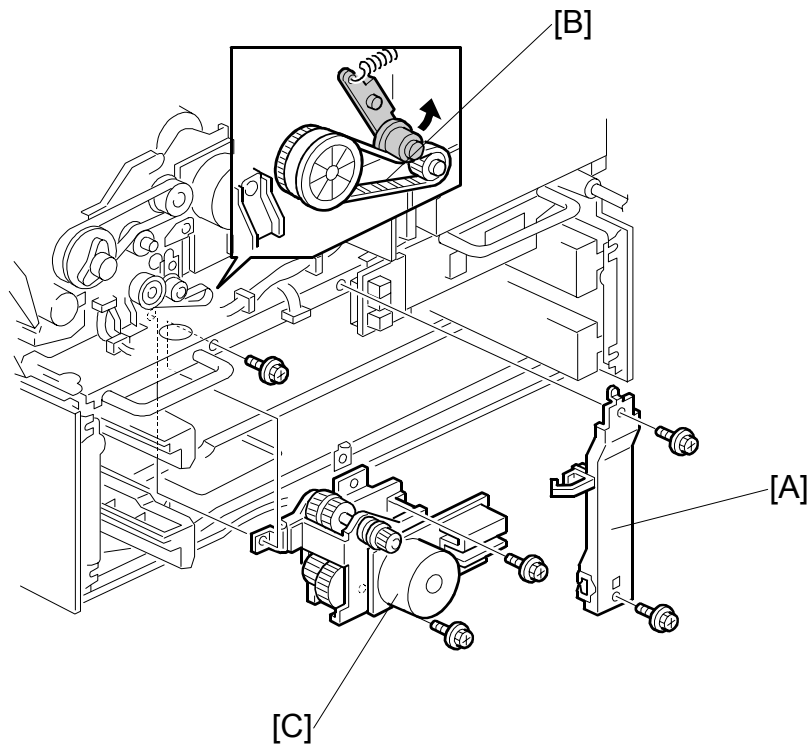
3.14.8 TRAY LIFT MOTOR



1. Rear lower cover (☛ 3.7.2)
2. Remove the IOB (☛ 3.19.3)
3. Bracket [A] (🔩 x2, 📌 x1)
4. Tray lift motor [C] (🔩 x2)

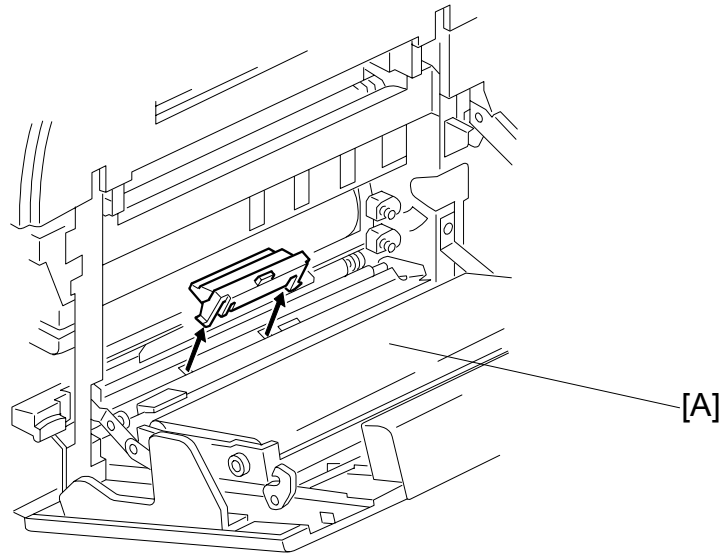
Replacement
Adjustment

3.14.9 FEED/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR



1. Rear lower cover (⚙ x4) (➡3.7.2)
2. Rear upper cover (⚙ x4) (➡3.7.1)
3. Tray lift motor (➡ 3.14.8)
4. Support [A] (⚙ x2, harnesses x2)
5. Timing belt [B] (Raise arm to release tension on belt.)
6. Feed/development motor [C] (⚙ x3, 📡 x2)

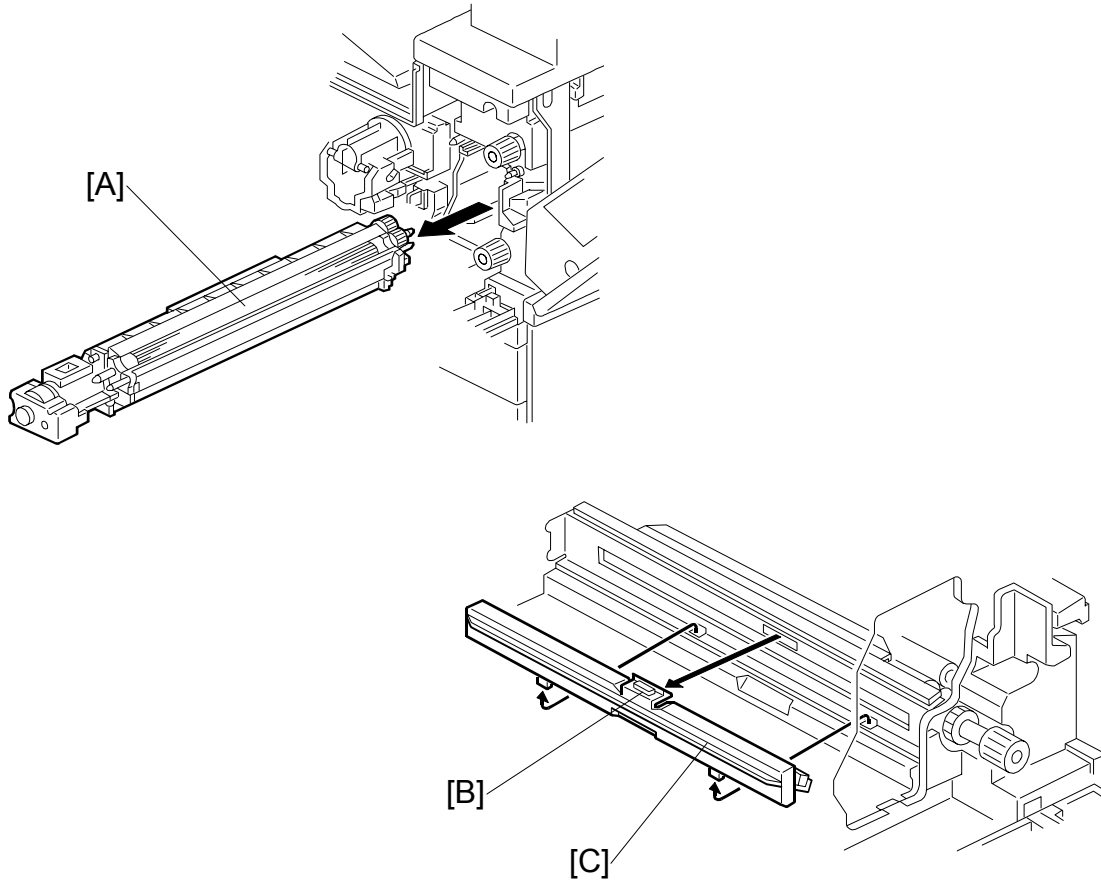
3.14.10 IDLE ROLLER DUST BLADE



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Open the duplex unit and right door.
2. Detach the dust blade [A].
3. Spread some paper on a flat surface and tap the dust blade gently to remove paper dust collected in its dust box.

3.14.11 REGISTRATION ROLLER DUST BLADE



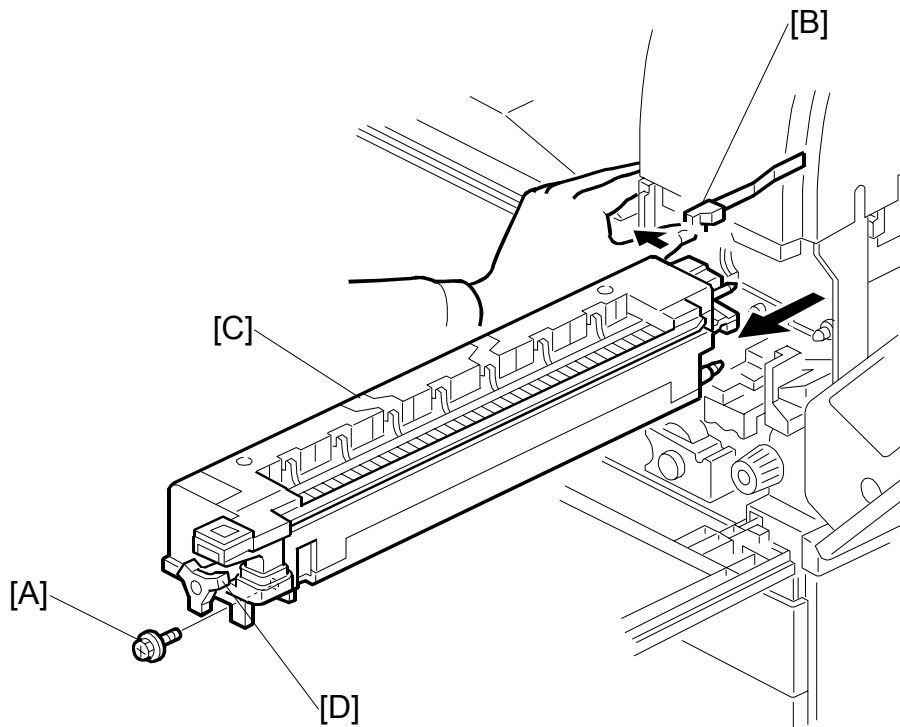
1. Open the duplex unit and open the right door.
2. Remove the PCU (➡3.11.1)
3. Remove the development unit [A].
4. Press the top of the blade [B] to unlock it and open it to the left.
5. Remove the dust blade [C] from the machine.

3.15 FUSING UNIT

⚠ CAUTION

Allow time for the unit to cool before doing the following procedure.

3.15.1 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL



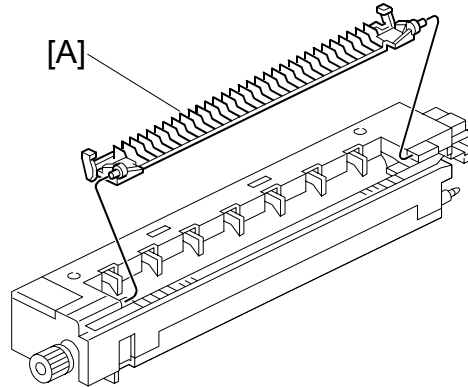
Replacement
Adjustment

1. Open the front door, duplex unit, and right door.
2. Set screw [A] (⌀ x 1)
3. Fusing unit release lever [B]
4. Slide out the fusing unit [C]

NOTE: The larger knob [D] is provided to make turning the hot roller easier to free jams.

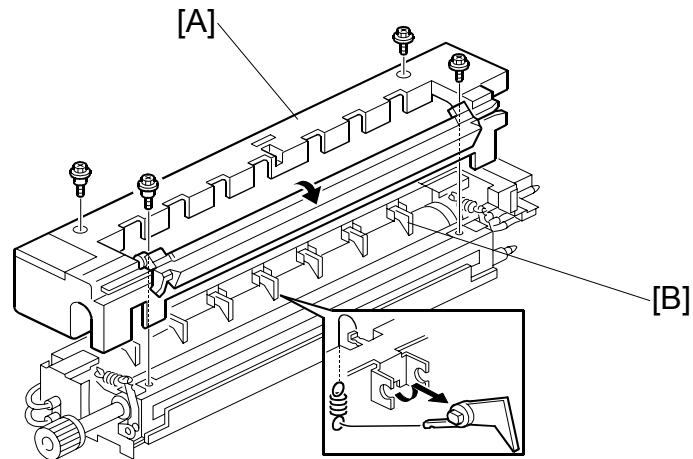
FUSING UNIT

3.15.2 FUSING UNIT EXIT GUIDE



1. Fusing unit (☛ 3.15.1)
2. Exit guide [A]. Press the guide to the left and then press on the right end to release the peg from the hole.

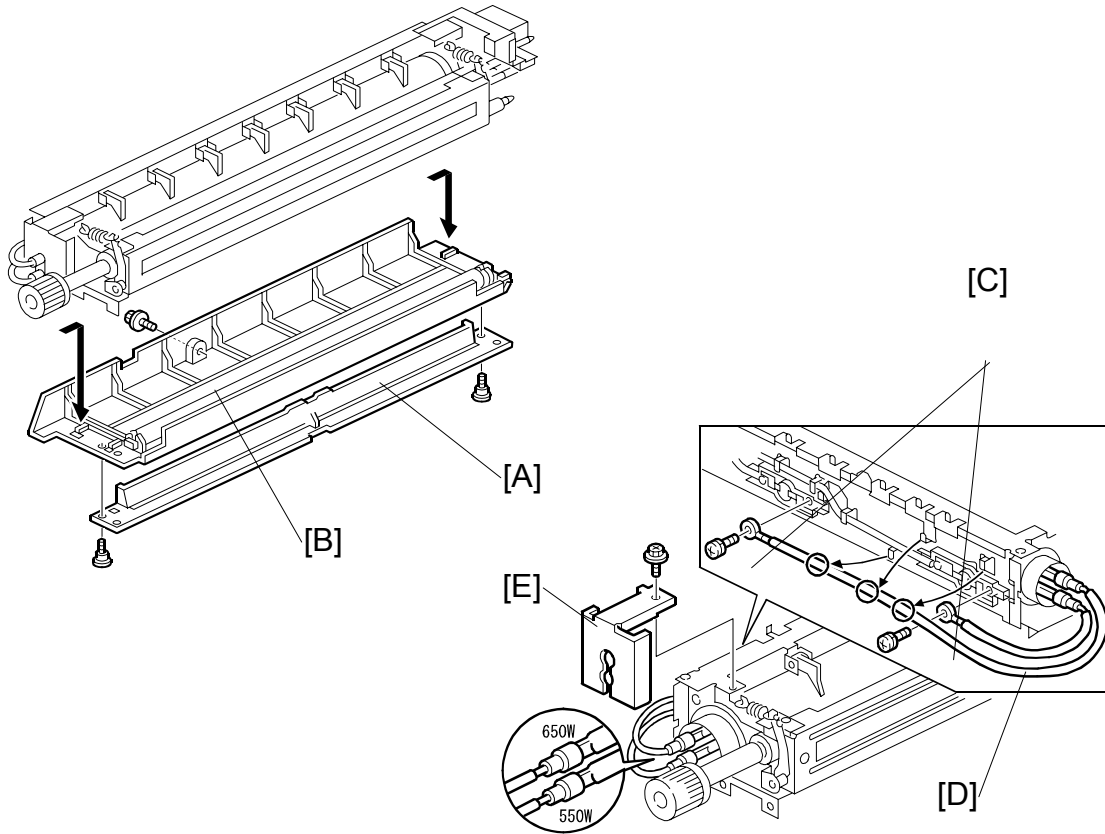
3.15.3 HOT ROLLER STRIPPERS



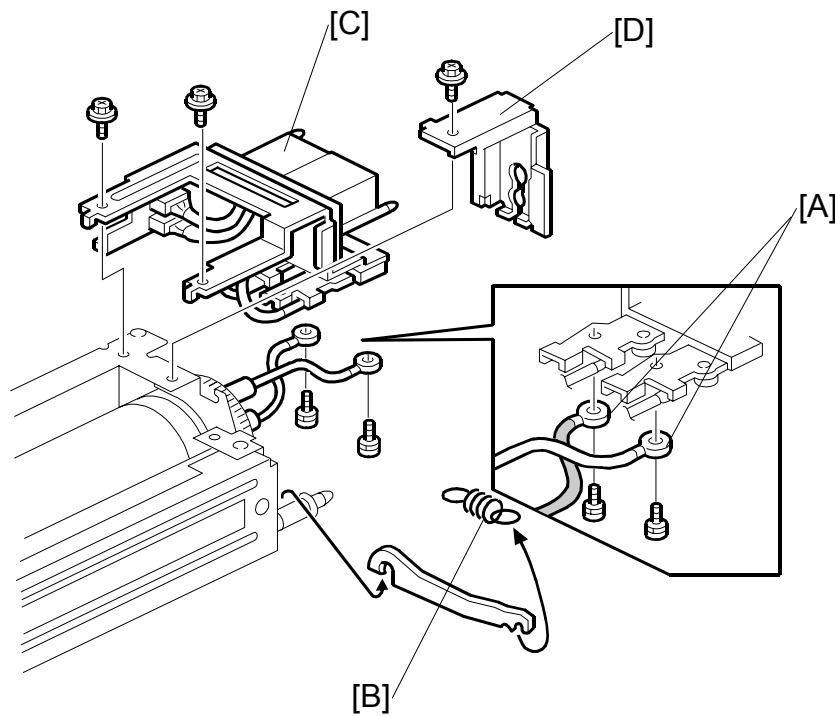
Replacement
Adjustment

1. Fusing unit (☛ 3.15.1)
2. Fusing unit cover [A] (☛ x4)
NOTE: Note the positioning of the step screws x2 and the set screws x2.
3. Hot roller strippers x7 and springs x7

3.15.4 FUSING LAMPS



1. Fusing unit (☛ 3.15.1)
 2. Fusing unit cover (☛ 3.15.3)
 3. Fusing entrance guide [A] (🔩 x2)
 4. Lower cover [B] (🔩 x1)
- Left side**
5. Two terminals [C] (🔩 x2)
 6. Center fusing lamp lead [D] (Clamps x3)
 7. Bracket [E] (🔩 x1)



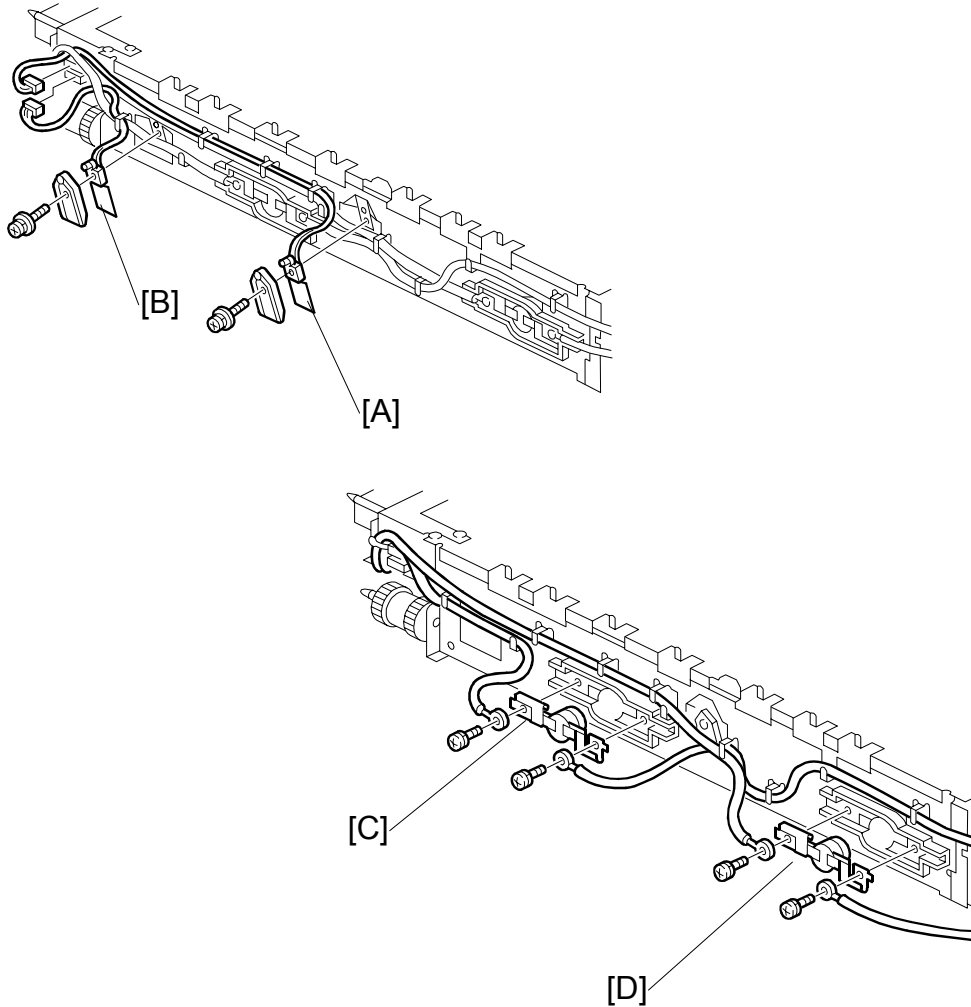
Right side

1. Two terminals [A] (⚙ x2)
2. Spring [B]
3. Connector bracket [C] (⚙ x2)
4. Bracket [D] (⚙ x1)

Important

- To avoid breaking the fusing lamps, handle them with care.
 - Avoid touching the lamps with bare hands.
 - Note the top/bottom positioning of the fusing lamps as you remove them. The sizes of the holes in the holder match the sizes of the ends of the 650 W lamp (red) and 650 W lamp (brown).
5. Remove both fusing lamps.

3.15.5 THERMISTORS AND THERMOSTATS

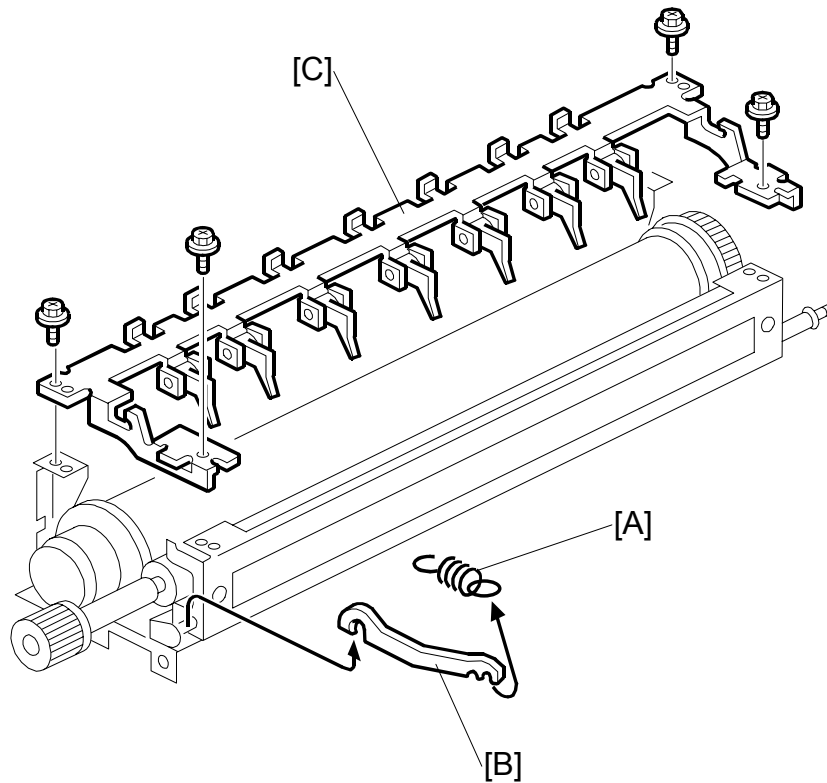


1. Fusing unit (☛ 3.15.1)
2. Fusing upper and lower cover. (☛ 3.15.3)
3. Center thermistor [A] (⚙ x1, 📏 x1, holder x1)
4. End thermistor [B] (⚙ x1, 📏 x1, holder x1)

CAUTION: The thermistors are thinly coated and extremely fragile. Handle with care to avoid damaging them. They should be replaced every 150K.

5. Center thermostat [C] (⚙ x2)
6. End thermostat [D] (⚙ x2)

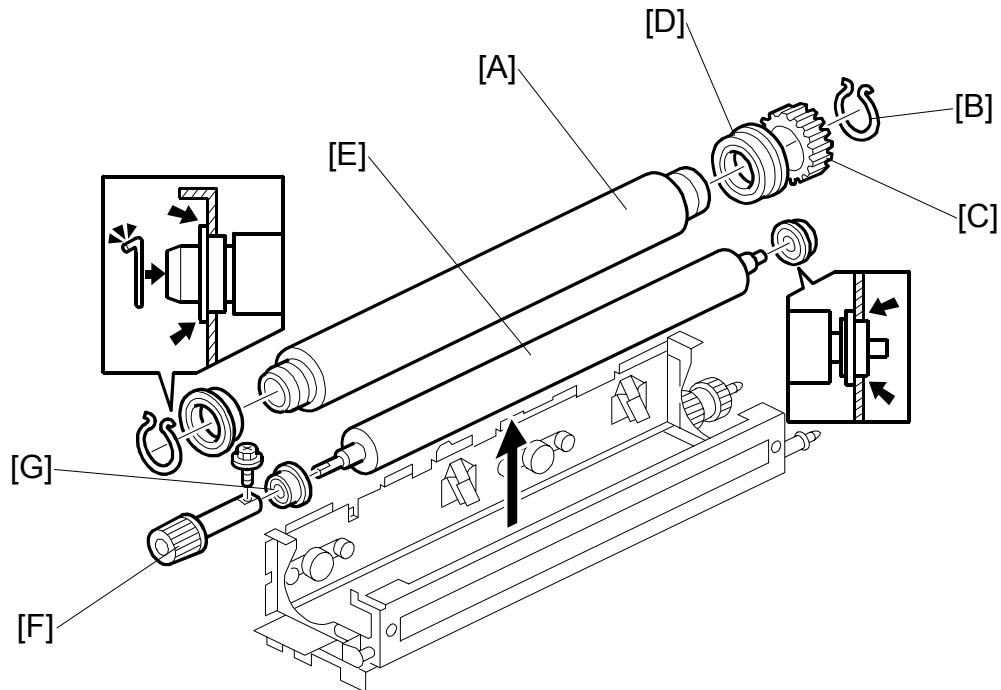
3.15.6 HOT ROLLER/PRESSURE ROLLER



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Fusing unit (☛ 3.15.1)
2. Fusing upper and lower cover. (☛ 3.15.3)
3. Fusing lamps. (☛ 3.15.4)
4. Springs x2 [A] (both sides)
5. Arms x2 [B] (both sides)
6. Pawl bracket [C] (🔩 x4)

FUSING UNIT



7. Hot roller [A]

CAUTION: The hot roller is easily damaged. Always handle it carefully.

8. C-rings x2 [B] (both ends)

9. Drive gear [C]

10. Bushings x2 [D] (both ends)

11. Pressure roller [E]

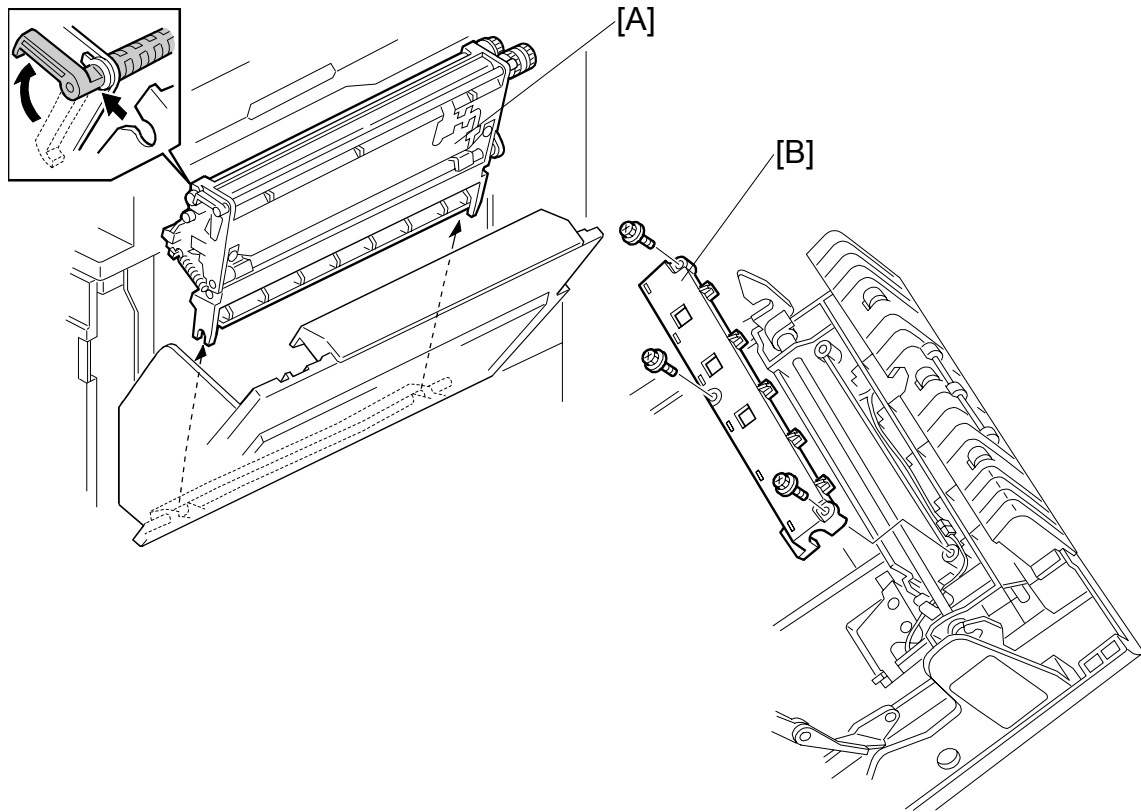
12. Fusing knob [F] (x1)

13. Bushings x2 [G] (both ends)

NOTE:

- 1) Before installing the new hot roller, peel off 3 cm (1 inch) from both ends of the protective sheet on the new roller.
- 2) Never touch the surface of the rollers.
- 3) Work carefully to avoid damaging the surface of the hot roller.
- 4) The standard pressure roller spring position is the upper position.
- 5) When reinstalling the hot roller assembly and pressure roller assembly, make sure that the flange position of the bushings is as shown.

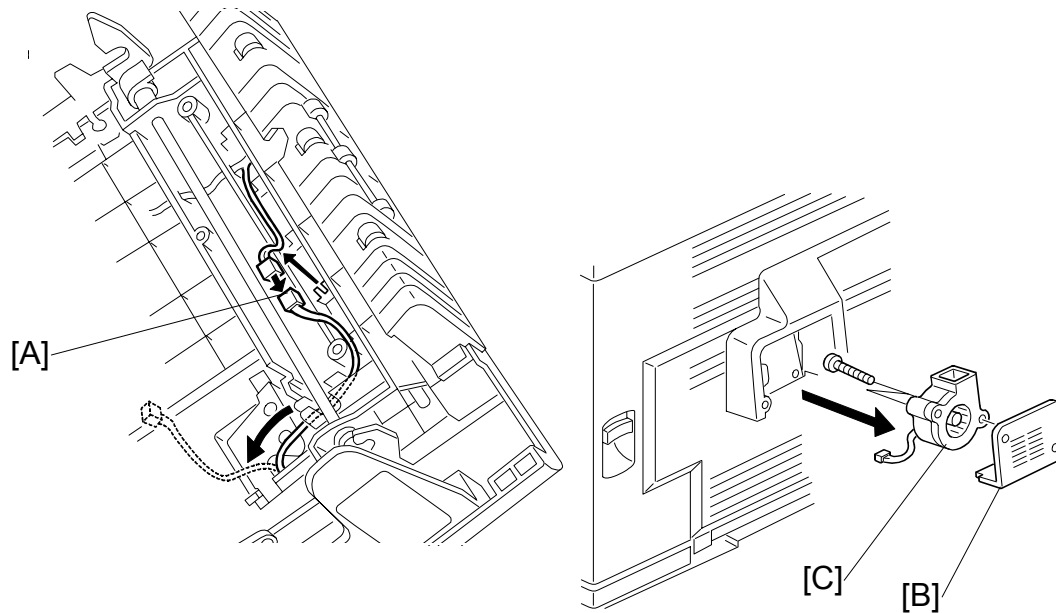
3.15.7 FUSING UNIT SIDE FAN



1. Open the duplex unit and right door.
2. Release the transfer unit [A] and remove it.
3. Remove the shaft cover [B] (⚙ x 3).

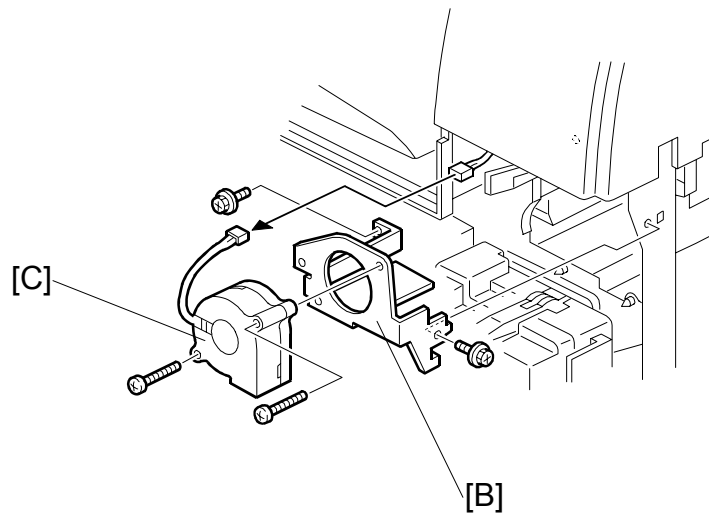
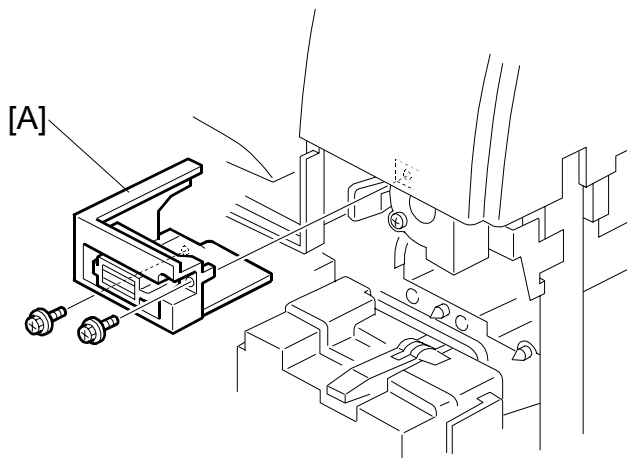
Replacement
Adjustment

FUSING UNIT



4. Separate the fan connectors [A] (🔌 x 1).
NOTE: When re-connecting, thread the connector correctly between the gaps.
5. Close the right door.
6. Use a short screwdriver to remove the fan plate [B] (🔧 x 2).
7. Pull the fan [C] out of the machine (🔌 x 1).

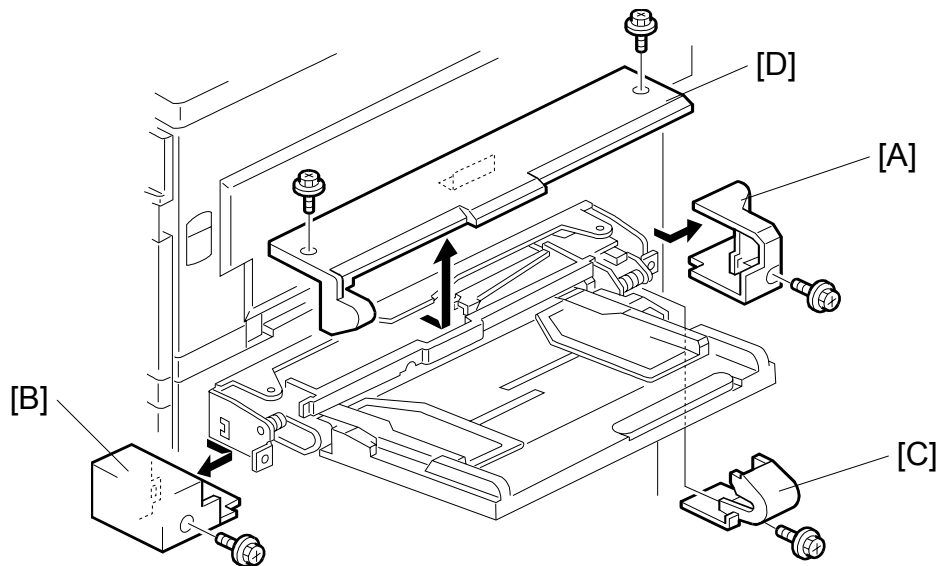
3.15.8 FUSING UNIT CORNER FAN



1. Open the front door.
2. Open the duplex unit and right door.
3. Remove the fusing unit. (➡ 3.15.1)
4. Remove the magnet lock [A] of the front door (⚙ x 2).
5. Remove the fan bracket [B] (⚙ x 2).
6. Remove the fan [C] from the bracket (⚙ x 2, 🔌 x 1).

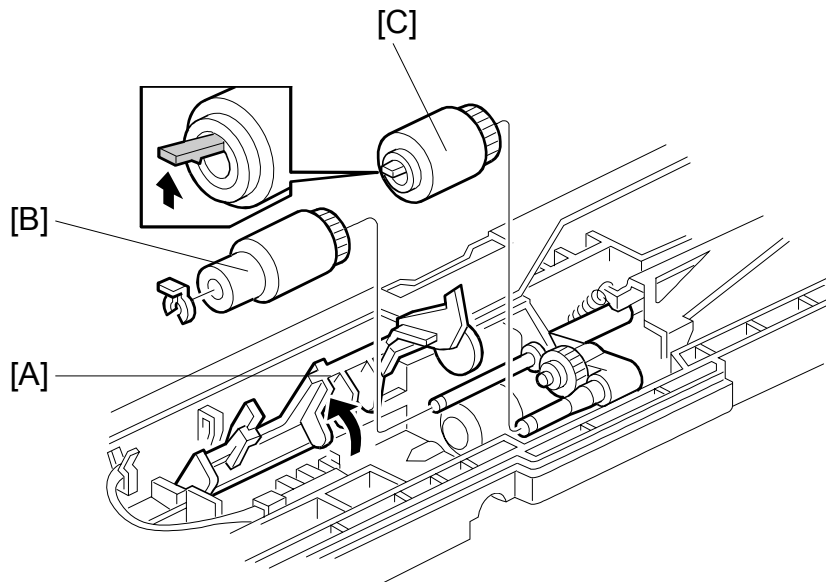
3.16 BY-PASS TRAY

3.16.1 COVER REPLACEMENT



1. Rear cover [A] (⌀ x1)
2. Front cover [B] (⌀ x1)
3. Hinge cover [C] (⌀ x1)
4. Upper cover [D] (⌀ x2)
5. Close the duplex unit and pull out the upper cover.

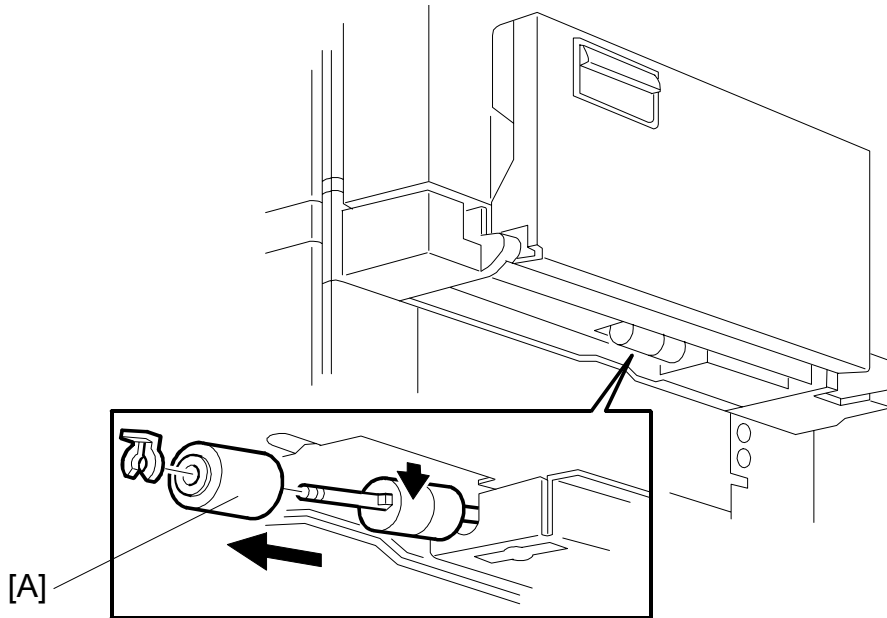
3.16.2 BY-PASS PAPER FEED AND PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT



Replacement
Adjustment

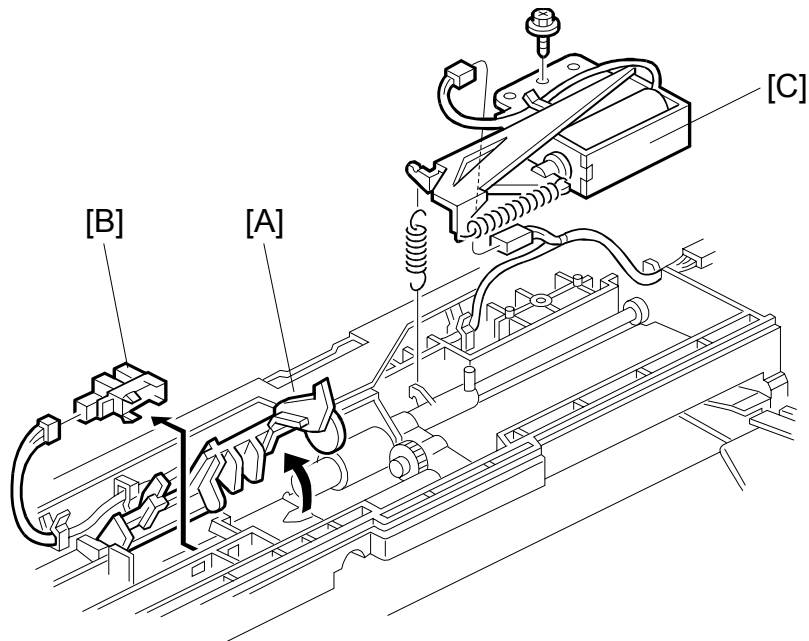
1. Upper cover (☛ 3.16.1)
2. Lift up paper end feeler [A] to lock feeler in position.
NOTE: Before reinstalling the upper cover, return the paper end feeler to its original position.
3. Replace the paper feed roller [B] (☞ x1)
4. Replace the pick-up roller [C].

3.16.3 BY-PASS SEPARATION ROLLER



1. Close the by-pass table.
2. Remove the separation roller [A] from the bottom (🔧 x1)

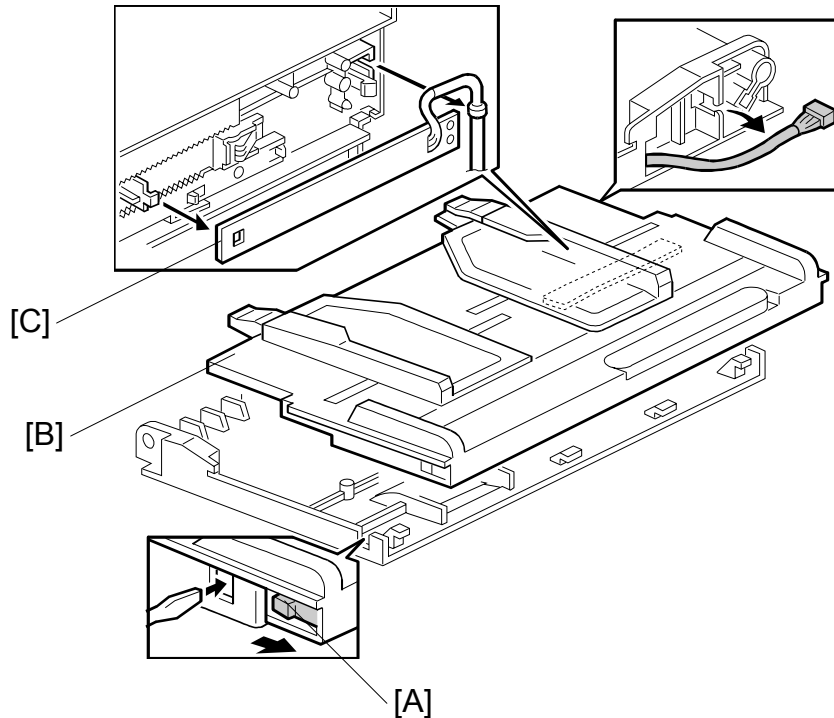
3.16.4 PAPER END SENSOR, PICK-UP SOLENOID



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Upper cover (☛ 3.16.1)
2. Lift paper end feeler [A].
NOTE: Before reinstalling the upper cover, return the paper end feeler to its original position.
3. Replace the paper end sensor [B] (☛ x1).
4. Pick-up solenoid [C] (☛ x1, ☛ x1, spring x1)

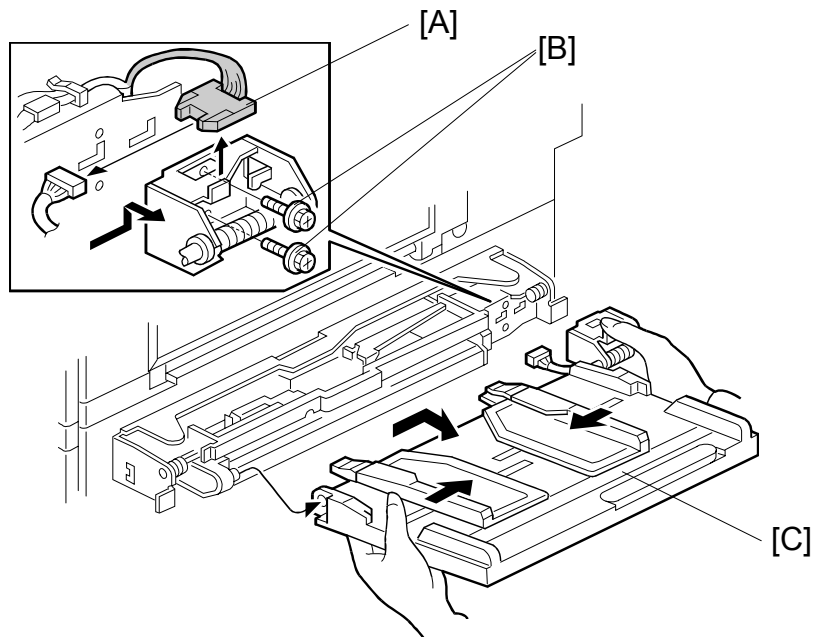
3.16.5 PAPER SIZE SENSOR BOARD REPLACEMENT



1. Hook [A]
2. Paper tray [B] (📄 x1).
3. Size sensor board [C].

NOTE: To avoid breaking the hook of the paper size sensor board, handle it carefully during removal.

3.16.6 BY-PASS TABLE REMOVAL



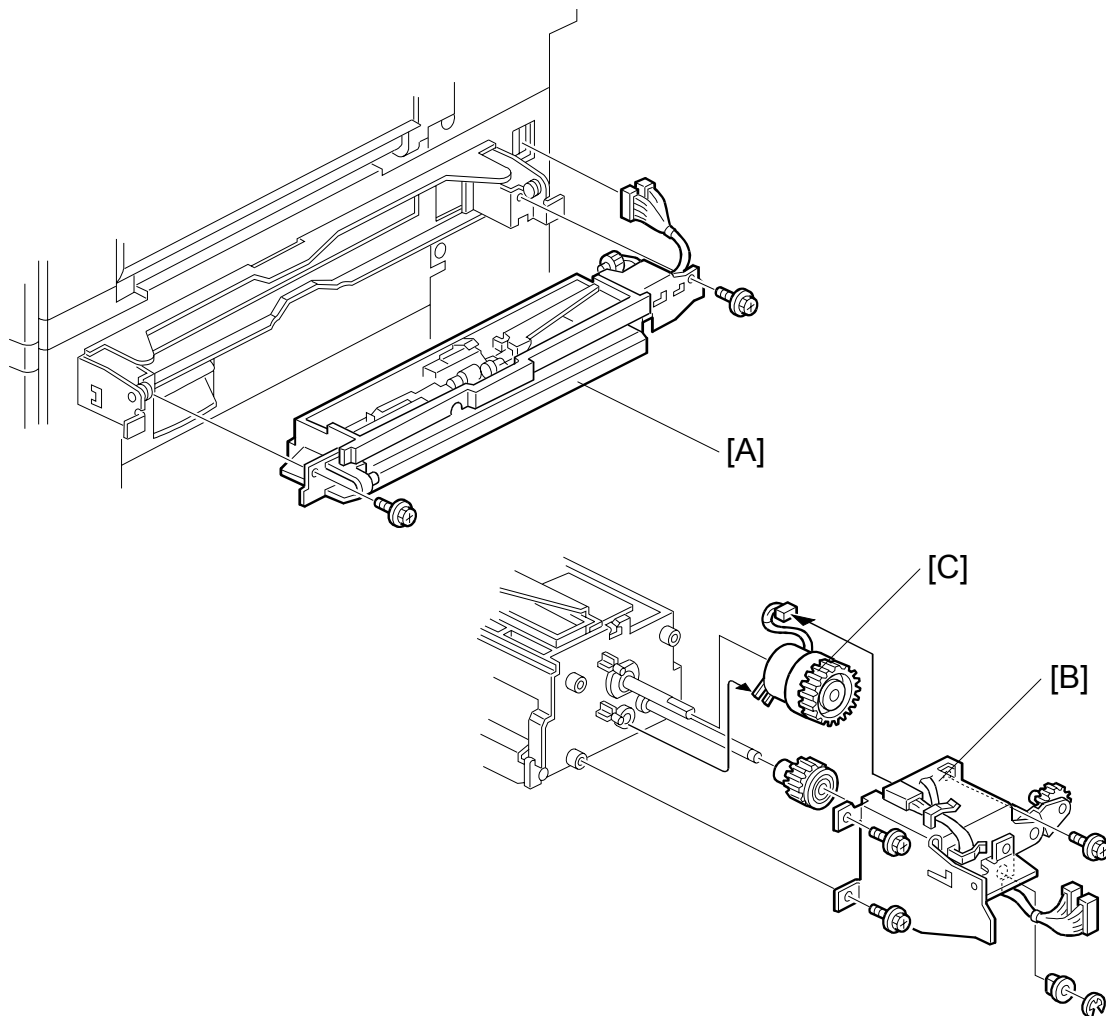
Replacement
Adjustment

Note: The entire by-pass tray unit can be removed, not just the table. (☛ 3.6)

1. Hinge cover (☛ 3.16.1)
2. Harness [A] (☛ x1).
3. Screws [B] (☛ x2)
4. By-pass table [C].

CAUTION: To relieve pressure on the spring during removal, depress it as shown in the illustration.

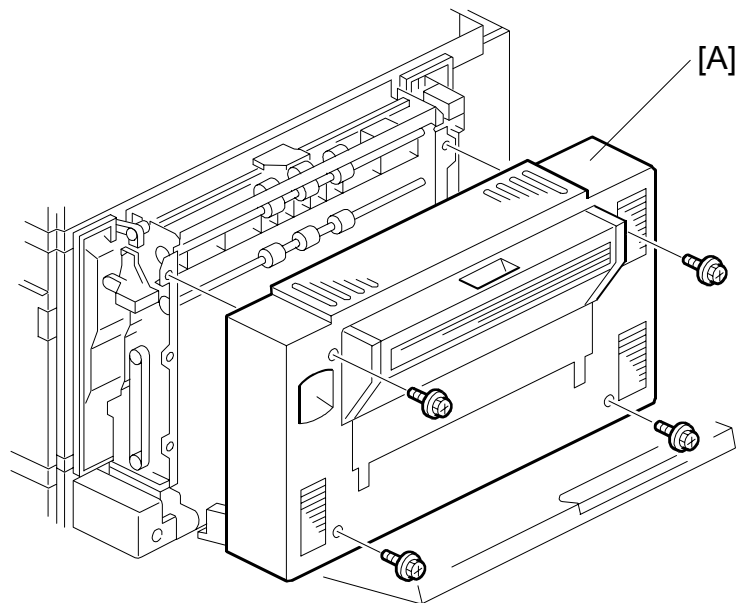
3.16.7 PAPER FEED CLUTCH REPLACEMENT



1. By-pass tray (☛ 3.16.6)
2. Paper feed unit [A] (⚙ x2, 📏 x2)
3. Rear bracket [B] (⚙ x4, 📏 x1, bushing x1, 📏 x2)
4. Paper feed clutch [C] (📏 x1)

3.17 DUPLEX UNIT

3.17.1 DUPLEX COVER REMOVAL

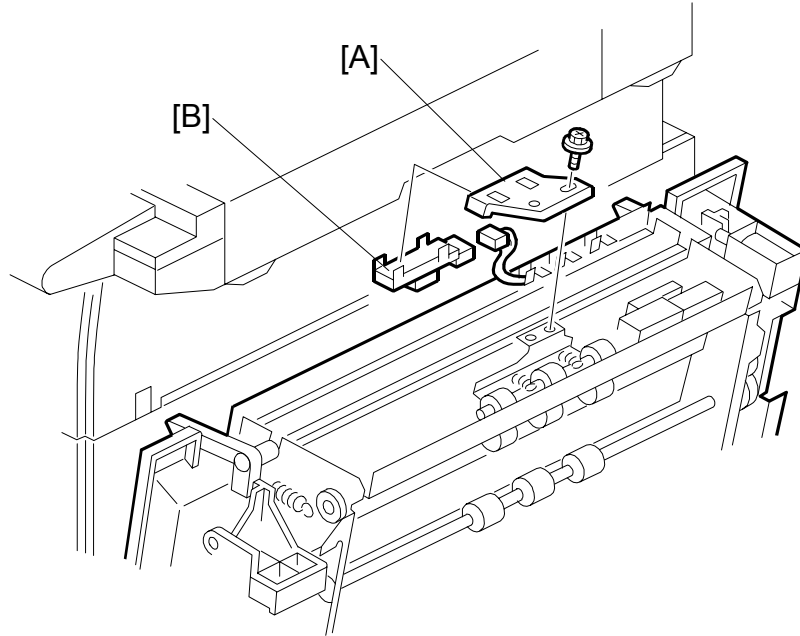


Replacement
Adjustment

1. Duplex unit cover [A] (⚙️ x4)

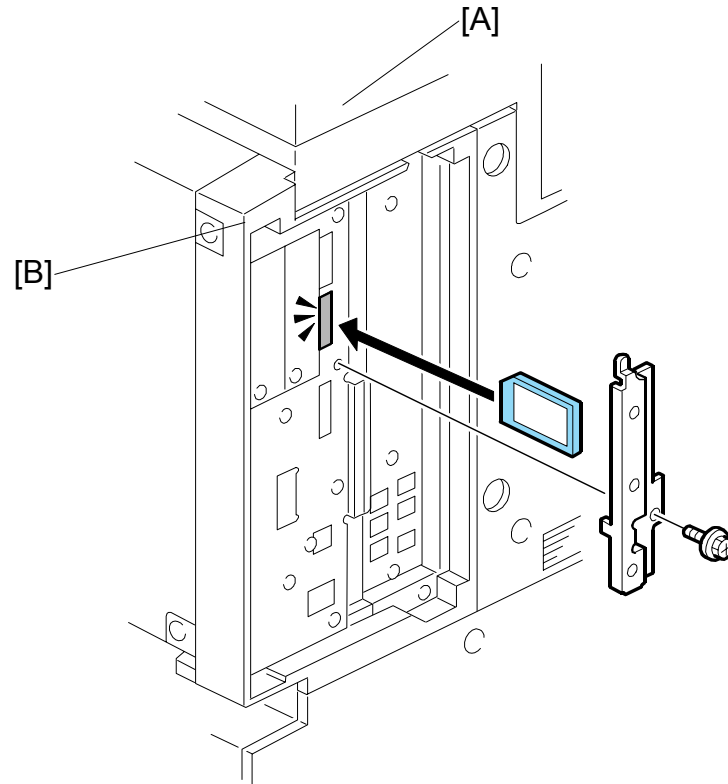
DUPLEX UNIT

3.17.2 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Duplex unit cover (☛ 3.17.1)
2. Sensor holder [A] (🔩 x1)
3. Entrance sensor [B] (🔌 x1)

3.17.3 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR REPLACEMENT

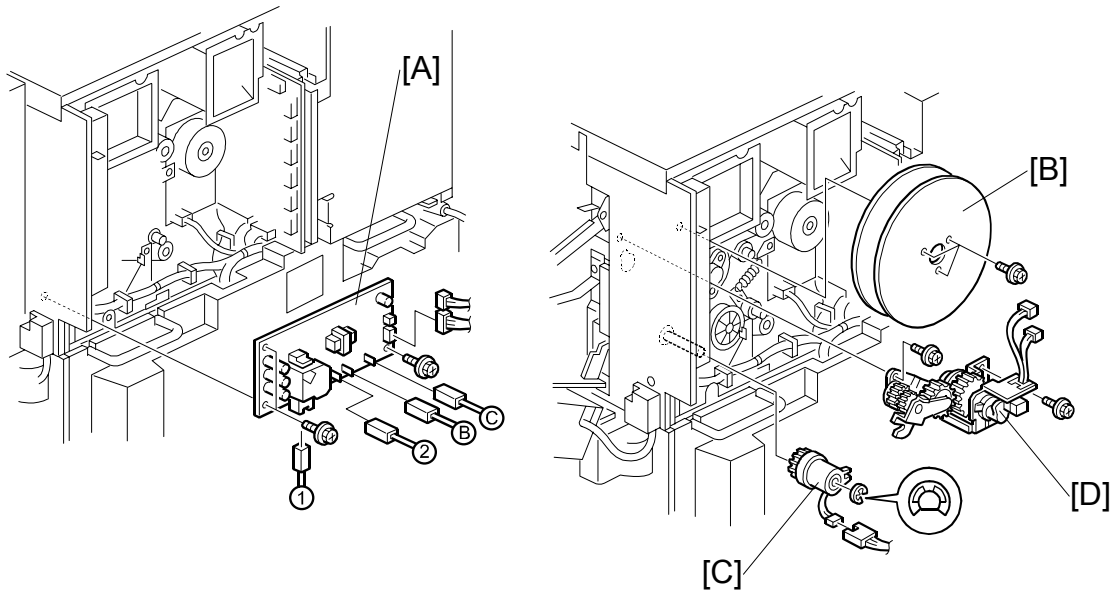


Replacement
Adjustment

1. Duplex unit (☛3.4)
2. Sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x1)
3. Exit sensor [B] (🔌 x1)

3.18 DRIVE AREA

3.18.1 REGISTRATION CLUTCH, TRANSFER BELT CONTACT CLUTCH

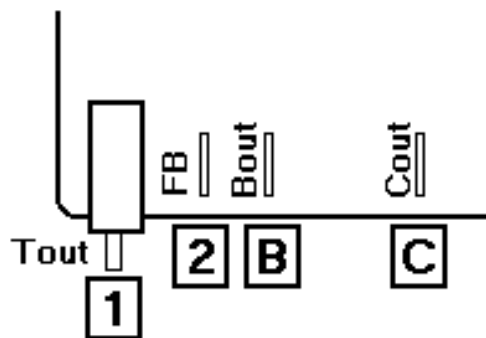


1. Rear upper cover (⚙️ x2) (➡️ 3.7.1)
2. High voltage supply board [A] (🔌 x6, ⚙️ x3)

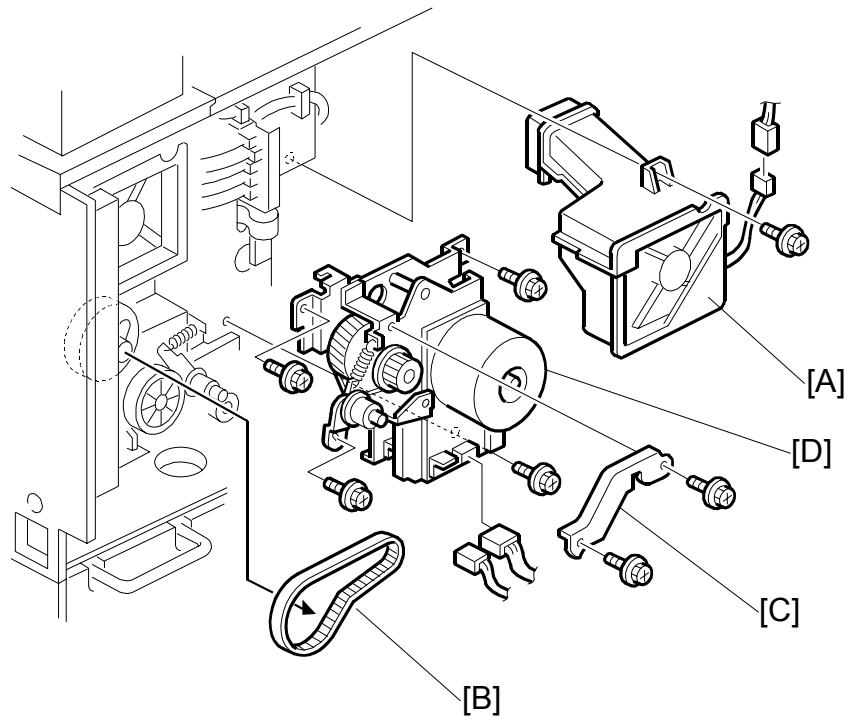
NOTE: Make sure that you re-connect the wires in the correct order. They are labeled:

1 ➡️ 2 ➡️ B ➡️ C

3. Flywheels [B] (⚙️ x3)
4. Registration clutch [C] (⌚ x1, 🔌 x1)
5. Transfer belt contact clutch [D] (🔌 x2, ⚙️ x2)



3.18.2 MAIN MOTOR



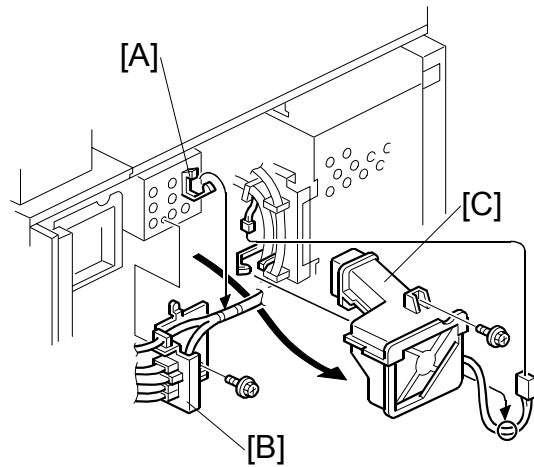
Replacement
Adjustment

Remove:

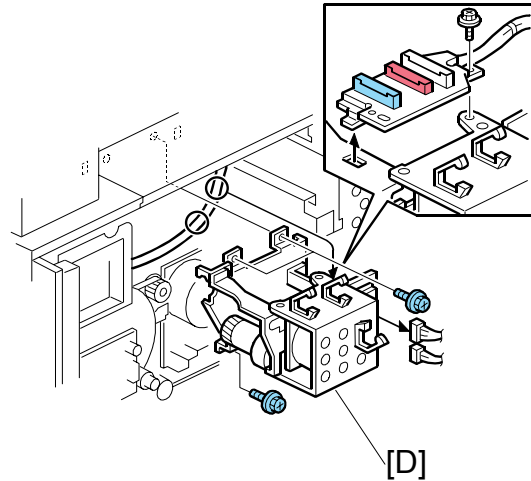
- Rear upper cover (➡3.7.1)
 - High voltage power supply, flywheel (➡3.18.1)
1. Remove the main cooling fan [A] (⚙ x2, 🔩 x1)
 2. Timing belt [B] x1
 3. Bracket [C] (⚙ x2)
 4. Main motor [D] (🔩 x2, ⚙ x3)

3.18.3 FUSING/EXIT MOTOR

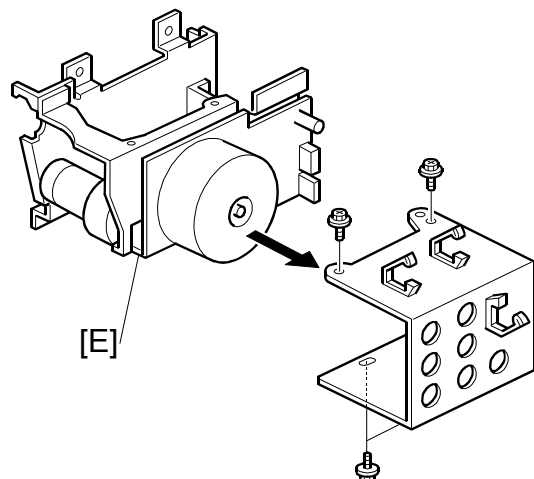
- Rear upper cover (☛3.7.1)
 - Fusing unit cover (☛3.15.3) (Do not disconnect.)
 - Paper output tray
- [A]: Harness clamps (☛x3)
- [B]: Connector bracket (☛ x1, ☛ x1)
- [C]: Main fan (☛ x1, ☛x1)



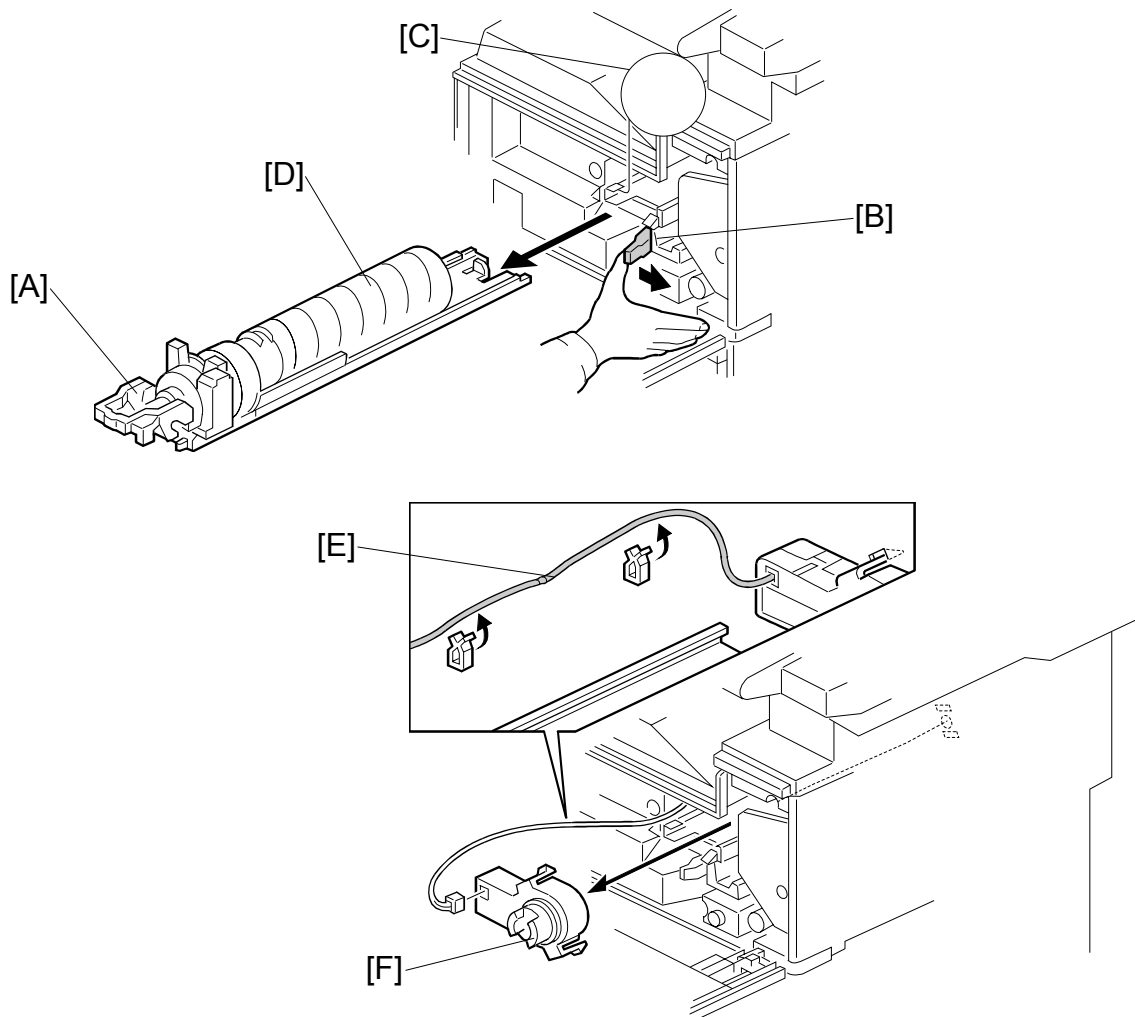
- [D]: Motor bracket (☛ x4, ☛ x2)



- [E]: Fusing exit motor (☛ x4)



3.18.4 TONER SUPPLY MOTOR



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Open the front door
 2. Raise holder handle [A]
 3. Push the holder lever [B] to the right
 4. Stopper [C]
 5. Toner bottle holder and bottle [D]
 6. Motor harness [E] (clamps x 2)
 7. Toner supply motor [F] (hooks x2, clips x1)
- NOTE:** Press both sides of the motor to release it.

3.19 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS

3.19.1 NVRAM

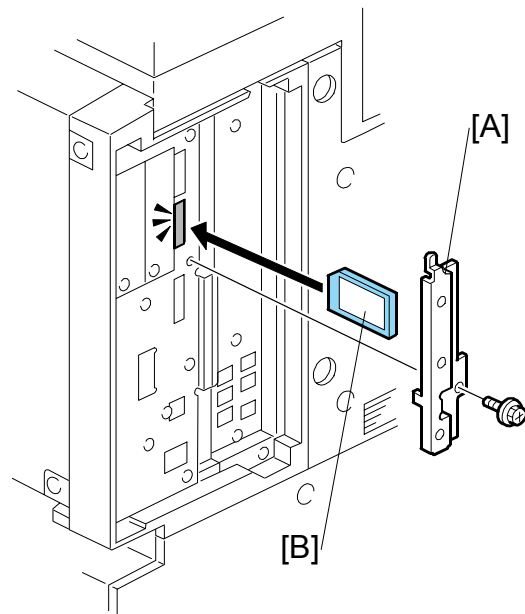
The following data cannot be downloaded from the SD card.

- Total count categories (SP7002*** Copy Counter)
- C/O, P/O Counter (SP7006*** C/O, P/O Count Display)
- Duplex, A3/DLT/Over 420 mm, Staple and Scanner application scanning counters (system settings).

Important:

- Do not remove the NVRAM until you have uploaded its contents.
- Always touch a metal surface to discharge any static on your hands before you touch the controller board.
- Work carefully when removing the NVRAM to avoid damaging other components on the controller board or short circuiting the pins of other chips.

1. Do **SP5990 001** to print the SMC report.
2. Turn off the main switch.
3. Remove the controller cover (⚙️ x2) (➡️ 3.7.1)
4. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (⚙️ x1).
5. Insert the SD card [B] into SD card slot **C3**.
6. Turn on the main switch.
7. Do SP5824.
8. Touch “Execute” to start uploading the NVRAM data.
9. Turn off the main switch and remove the SD card.
10. Remove the controller box (⚙️ x1)

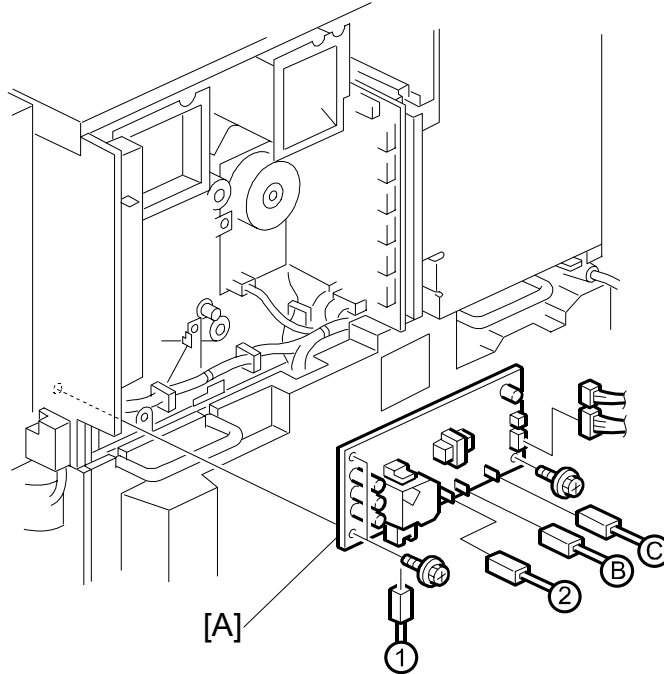


11. Remove the NVRAM (x2) from the controller board and replace them with the new chips.

NOTE: Both NVRAM chips must be replaced.

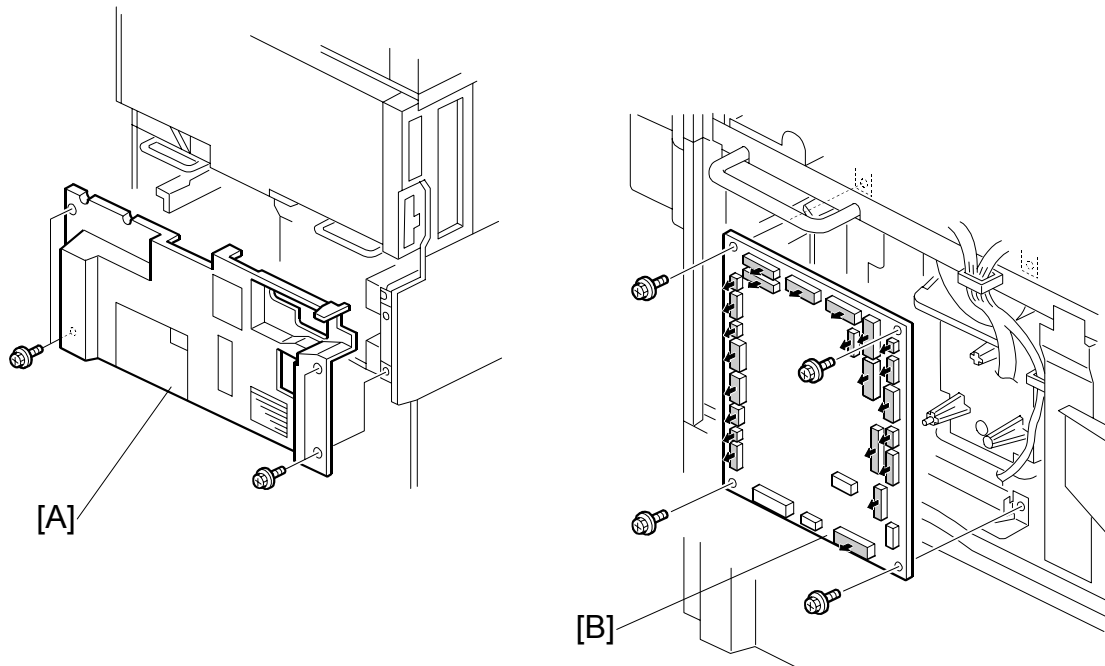
12. Reinstall the controller box.
13. Insert the SD card with the NVRAM data in SD card slot **C3**.
14. Turn on the machine.
15. Do SP5825.
16. Touch "Execute" to start downloading the NVRAM data.
17. Turn off the main switch and remove the SD card.
18. Turn on the machine.
19. Do SP5990 001 to print another SMC report.
20. Compare this new SMC report with the report you printed in Step 1. If any of the SP settings are different, enter the SP settings of the first report.
21. Execute SP5907 and enter the brand and model name of the machine for Windows Plug & Play capability.

3.19.2 HIGH VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY



1. Rear upper cover (☛ 3.7.1)
2. High voltage power supply [A] (⚙ x3, 📜 x6)

3.19.3 IOB



Replacement
Adjustment

1. Remove the rear lower cover [A] (⚙ x 4).
2. Remove the IOB [B] (🔌 All, ⚙ x 4, Ribbon cable x 1).
3. The IOB is identical for the B264/B265. However, the DIP switches are set differently for each machine. Check the DIP switches then adjust settings as required. (See next page.)

PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS

IOB DIP Switch Settings (SW101)

1. The position of SW 1 determines the engine speed. This switch should be UP (ON) for the B264 (35 cpm) or DOWN (OFF) for the B265 (45 cpm)

NOTE: Move a switch UP to ON or DOWN to OFF.

2. SW 2, 3, 4, and 5 should all be DOWN (OFF). Do not change these settings. This information is only for reference:

SW	If set to ON
2	Switches off jam detection.
3	Engine program recovery.
4	Print output for debugging.
5	Switches off SC detection.

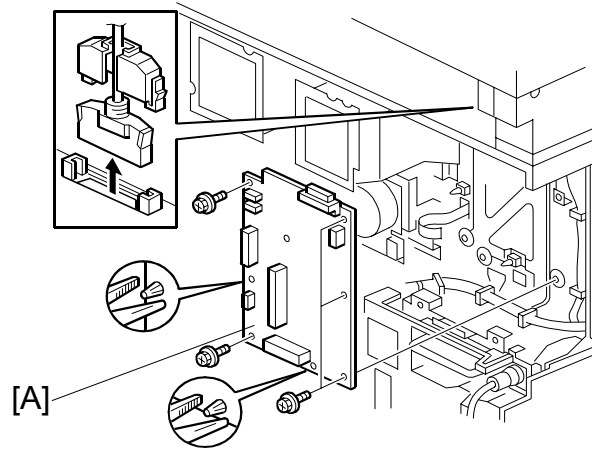
3. SW 6, 7, 8 should be set for the area where the machine is used and serviced.

6	7	8	Location
OFF	OFF	OFF	Japan
ON	OFF	OFF	North America
OFF	ON	OFF	Europe
OFF	OFF	ON	China
ON	OFF	ON	Taiwan
ON	ON	OFF	Asia
OFF	ON	ON	Korea
ON	ON	ON	Not used

ON: Up

OFF: Down

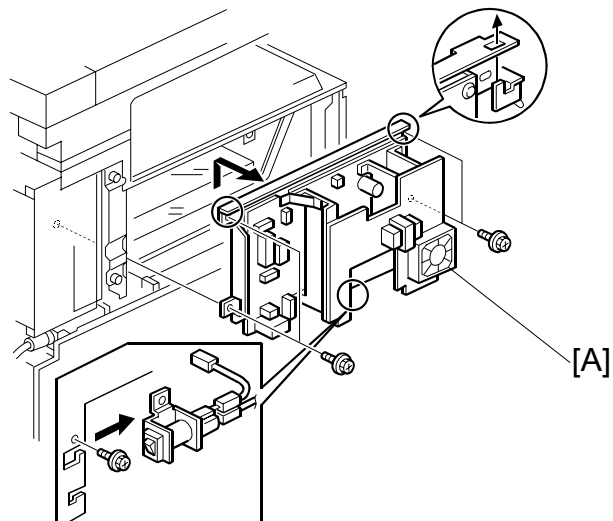
3.19.4 BICU BOARD



1. IOB (☛ 3.19.3)
2. BICU board [A] (⚙ x5, 🔌 x all)

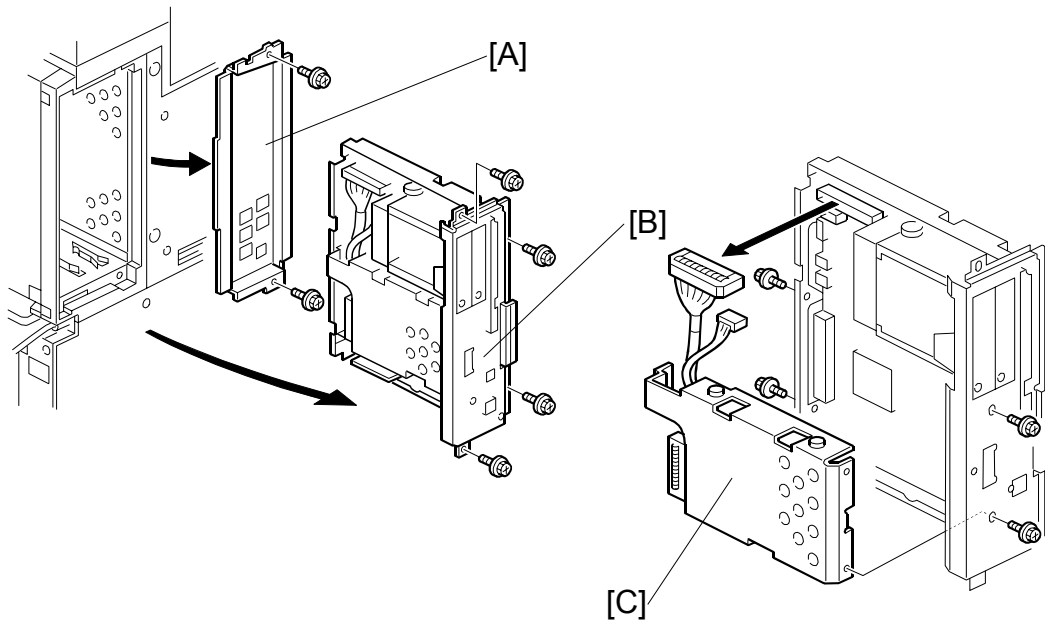
Replacement
Adjustment

3.19.5 PSU



1. Left cover (🔑 3.8)
2. PSU [A] (🔑 x4, 🛠️ x all)

3.20 HDD, CONTROLLER BOARD



Replacement
Adjustment

Important!

The controller boards are machine specific and are not interchangeable:

- The controller board for the B264 (35 cpm) must be installed in a B264 copier.
- The controller board for the B265 (45 cpm) must be installed in a B265 copier.

1. Remove the controller cover (⚙ x 2). (➡ 3.7.1)
2. Controller board faceplate [A] (⚙ x 2).
3. Controller board [B] (⚙ x 4)
4. HDD unit bracket [C] (⚙ x 3, 📏 x 2)
5. After replacing the HDD, execute SP 5853 to copy the stamp data from the firmware ROM to the new disk.

3.21 COPY ADJUSTMENTS: PRINTING/SCANNING

Perform these adjustments after replacing any of the following:

- Scanner Wire
- Lens Block/SBU Assembly
- Scanner Drive Motor
- Polygon Mirror Motor
- Paper Side Fence
- Memory All Clear

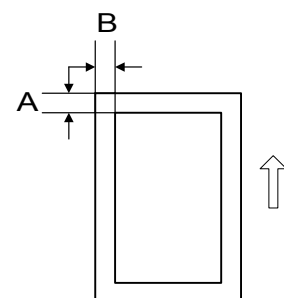
3.21.1 PRINTING

1. Make sure that the paper is installed correctly in each paper tray before you start the adjustments.
2. Use the Trimming Area Pattern (SP2-902-3, No. 10) to print the test pattern for the following procedures.
3. After completing these printing adjustments, be sure to set SP 2-902-3 to 0 again.

Registration - Leading Edge/Side-to-Side

1. Check the leading edge registration, and adjust it using SP1-001.
Specification: $3 \pm 2\text{mm}$.
2. Check side-to-side registration for each paper feed station, and adjust with the following SP modes.

	SP mode	Specification
1st paper feed	SP1-002-1	$2 \pm 1.5 \text{ mm}$
2nd paper feed	SP1-002-2	
3rd paper feed (Optional PFU tray 1)	SP1-002-3	
4th paper feed (Optional PTU tray 2)	SP1-002-4	
From the duplex tray	SP1-002-5	
By-pass feed	SP1-002-6	
LCT	SP1-002-7	



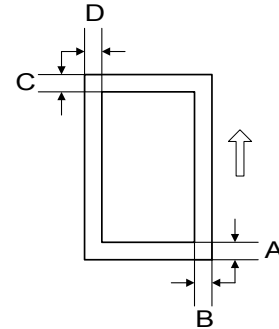
A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

Blank Margin

NOTE: If the leading edge/side-to-side registration cannot be adjusted within specifications, adjust the leading/left side blank margin.

1. Check the trailing edge and right edge blank margins, and adjust them with the following SP modes.

	SP mode	Specification
Trailing edge	SP2-101-2	3 ± 2 mm
Right edge	SP2-101-4	$2 + 2.5/-1.5$ mm
Leading edge	SP2-101-1	3 ± 2 mm
Left edge	SP2-101-3	2 ± 1.5 mm
Trailing edge (duplex copy, 2 nd side)	SP2-101-5	1.2 ± 2 mm
Left edge (duplex copy, 2 nd side)	SP2-101-6	0.3 ± 1.5 mm
Right edge (duplex copy, 2 nd side)	SP2-101-7	$0.3 + 2.5/-1.5$ mm



A: Trailing edge blank margin
 B: Right edge blank margin
 C: Leading edge blank margin
 D: Left edge blank margin

Replacement
Adjustment

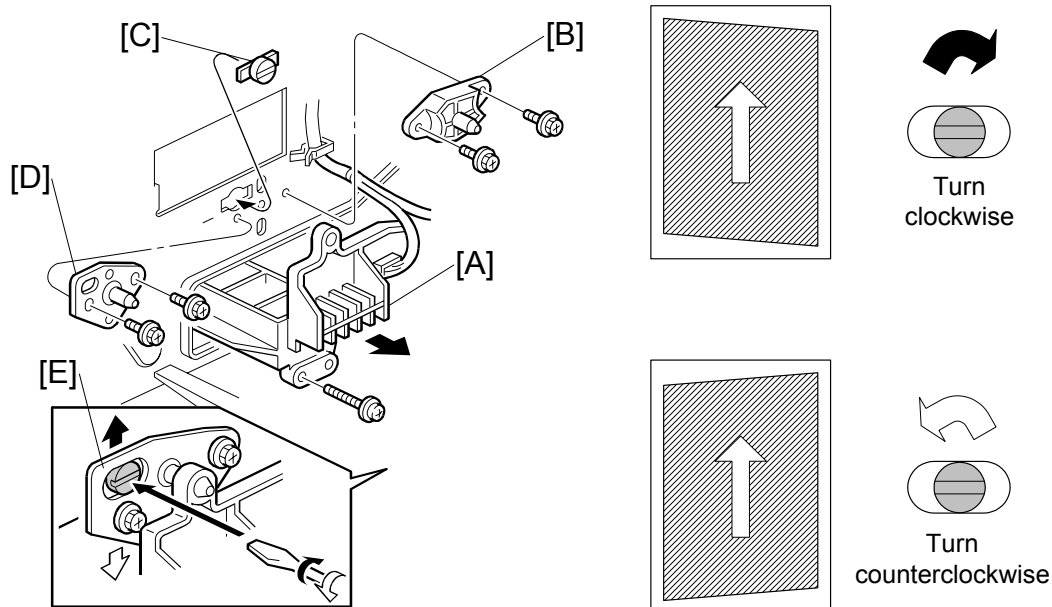
Main Scan Magnification

1. Use SP2-902-3, 5(Grid Pattern) to print a single dot pattern.
2. Check magnification, and then SP2-909-1 (Main Scan Magnification: Copy) to adjust magnification if required. Specification: $\pm 2\%$.

Parallelogram Image Adjustment

Do the following procedure if a parallelogram prints while adjusting the printing registration or printing margin using a trimming area pattern.

The following procedure should be done after adjusting the side-to-side registration for each paper tray station.



Use SP2-902-3 No. 10 (Trimming Area) to determine whether a parallelogram image appears. If the parallelogram pattern appears, perform the following procedure.

1. Laser unit [A]
2. Bracket [B] (⌀ x2)
3. Install adjustment cam [C] (P/N: A2309003)
4. Secure positioning pin [D] (P/N A2309004) with the two screws removed with the bracket [B]. Do not tighten the screws at this time.
5. To adjust the position of the laser unit [E]
 - 1) Adjust the laser unit position by turning the adjustment cam. (See the illustration above.)
 - 2) Tighten the adjustment bracket.
 - 3) Print the trimming area pattern to check the image. If the results are not satisfactory, (repeat steps 5-1 to 5-3).

3.21.2 SCANNING

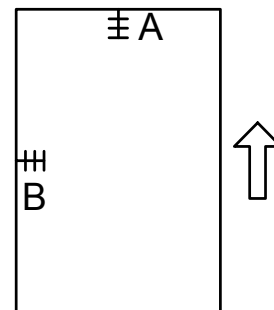
Before doing the following scanner adjustments, perform or check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment.

NOTE: Use an OS-A3 test chart to perform the following adjustments.

Registration: Platen Mode

1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration, and adjust them with the following SP modes if necessary.

	SP mode
Leading Edge	SP4-010
Side-to-side	SP4-011



A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

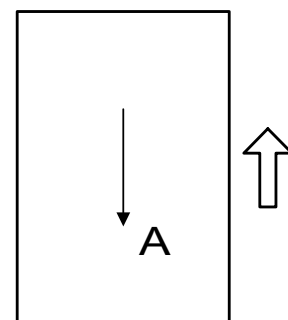
Replacement
Adjustment

Magnification

Use an OS-A3 test chart to perform the following adjustment.

Sub Scan Magnification

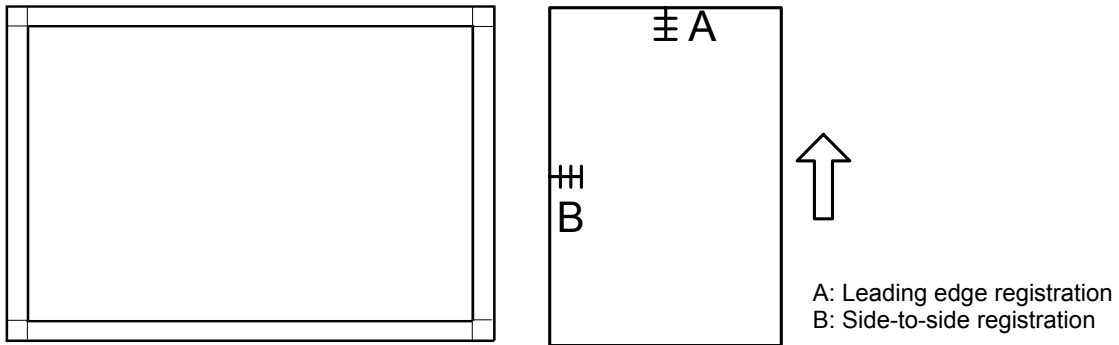
1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. Use SP4-008 (Scanner Sub Scan Magnification) to adjust if necessary.
Specification: $\pm 0.9\%$.



A: Main scan magnification

3.21.3 ADF IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

Registration



1. Make a temporary test chart as shown above using A3/DLT paper.
2. Place the temporary test chart on the ADF and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
3. Check the registration, and adjust using the following SP modes if necessary.

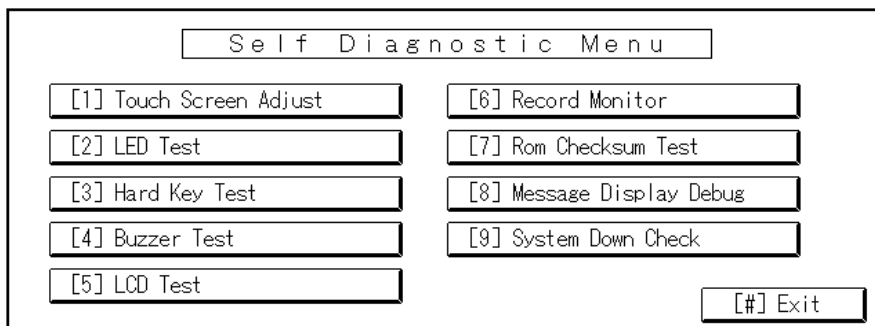
SP Code	What It Does	Adjustment Range
SP6-006-1	Side-to-Side Registration	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-2	Leading Edge Registration (Simplex)	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-3	Leading Edge Registration (Duplex: Front)	± 4.2 mm
SP6-006-4	Leading Edge Registration (Duplex: Back)	± 4.2 mm

3.21.4 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION

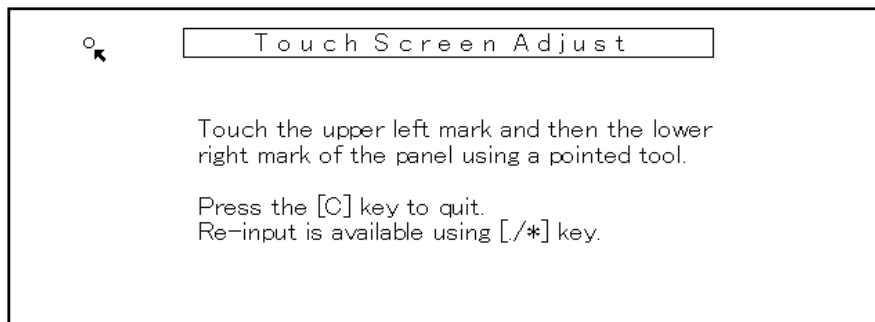
After clearing the memory, or if the touch panel detection function is not working correctly, follow this procedure to calibrate the touch screen.

NOTE: Do not attempt to use items [2] to [9] on the Self-Diagnostic Menu. These items are for design use only.

1. Press , press ①⑨⑨③, and then press  5 times to open the Self-Diagnostics menu.



2. On the touch screen press "Touch Screen Adjust" (or press ①).



3. Use a pointed (not sharp!) tool to press the upper left mark .
4. Press the lower right mark  after it appears.
5. Touch a few spots on the touch panel to confirm that the marker (+) appears exactly where the screen is touched.

If the + mark does not appear where the screen is touched, press Cancel and repeat from Step 2.

6. When you are finished, press [#] OK on the screen (or press .
7. Touch [#] Exit on the screen to close the Self-Diagnostic menu and save the calibration settings.

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

4.1.1 SUMMARY

There are 4 levels of service call conditions.

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
A	To prevent damage to the machine, the main machine cannot be operated until the SC has been reset by a service representative (see the note below).	Enter SP mode, and then turn the main power switch off and on.
B	SCs that disable only the features that use the defective item. Although these SCs are not shown to the user under normal conditions, they are displayed on the operation panel only when the defective feature is selected.	Turn the operation switch or main switch off and on.
C	The SC history is updated. The machine can be operated as usual.	The SC will not be displayed. Only the SC history is updated.
D	Turning the main switch off then on resets SCs displayed on the operation panel. These are re-displayed if the error occurs again.	Turn the operation switch off and on.

When a Level “D” SC code occurs

When a Level D SC occurs, a screen opens on the operation panel to tell the operator:

- An error occurred
- The job in progress will be erased
- The machine will reboot automatically after approximately 30 seconds.

The operator can wait until the machine reboots automatically or touch “Reset” on the screen to reset the machine immediately and go back to the copy screen.

If the operator does not touch “Reset”

The next message tells the operator that the machine will reset automatically and that the previous job was lost and must be started again. After reading the message, the operator touches “Confirm” on the screen. The next screen shows the number and title of the SC code, and stops until the operator turns the machine off and on.

If the operator touches “Reset”

If the operator touches “Reset” to bypass the 30-second interval for the machine to reboot, the machine reboots immediately and the operation panel displays the copy screen.

Important

- Do not try to use the operation panel during an automatic reboot.
- If the Remote Service System is in use, the SC code is sent immediately to the Service Center

4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

Important

- If a problem concerns a circuit board, disconnect and reconnect the connectors and then test the machine. Often a loose or disconnected harness is the cause of the problem. Always do this before you decide to replace the PCB.
- If a motor lock error occurs, check the mechanical load before you decide to replace the motor or sensors.
- When a Level “A” or “B” SC occurs while in an SP mode, the machine cannot display the SC number. If this occurs, check the SC number after leaving the SP mode.
- The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues a Level “D” SC code. This is done for Level “D” SC codes only.

CAUTION

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED () lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

4.1.3 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

101	D	Exposure lamp error	• Exposure lamp defective • Lamp stabilizer defective • Exposure lamp connector defective • Standard white plate dirty • Scanner mirror or scanner lens out of position or dirty • SBU defective
		The standard white level was not detected properly when scanning the white plate.	
120	D	Scanner home position error 1	• SIB or scanner drive motor defective • Scanner motor defective • Harness between SIB and scanner drive motor disconnected • Harness between SIB and scanner drive motor power source disconnected • Scanner HP sensor defective • Harness between SIB and HP sensor disconnected • Scanner wire, timing belt, pulley, or carriage defective
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the on condition during initialization or copying.	
121	D	Scanner home position error 2	• SIB or scanner motor drive board defective • Scanner motor defective • Harness between SIB and scanner drive motor disconnected • Harness between SIB and scanner drive motor power source disconnected • Scanner HP sensor defective • Harness between SIB and scanner HP sensor disconnected • Scanner wire, timing belt, pulley, or carriage defective
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the off condition during initialization or copying.	
143	C	SBU auto adjust error	• Exposure lamp defective • Lamp stabilizer defective • Lamp stabilizer connection loose, disconnected or damaged • White plate mounting is incorrect or defective • Scanner mirror or scanner lens out of position or dirty • SBU defective • BICU (Ri10) defective • SIB defective • Harness connections between SIB and SBU loose, disconnected, or damaged.
		One of the following occurred: When the machine was powered on, automatic adjustment of the SBU failed. Automatic white density adjustment failed when reading standard white plate.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

144	B	SBU communication error	- Flat film or harness connectors between the SBU and SIB are loose, disconnected, or damaged - Replace SBU - Replace BICU
		Immediately after power on, the operation check done by the SIB for the SBU failed because the SBU was not operating normally.	
165	B	Copy Data Security Unit error	- The Copy Data Security Unit card not installed - The Copy Data Security Unit card is installed, but it is not the correct type for the machine.
		An error occurred when the machine attempted to set the Copy Data Security Unit SD card.	
302	D	Charge roller current leak	- Charge roller damaged - High voltage supply board defective - PCU harness defective or disconnected
		A charge roller current leak signal was detected.	
304	D	Charge roller current correction error	ID sensor defective
		The charge roller bias correction is performed twice even if the maximum charge roller bias (-2000V) is applied to the roller.	

321	D	F-Gate error: No laser writing signal	- BICU board defective - PCI harness between the controller board and the BICU defective or disconnected
		The laser writing signal (F-GATE) does not go to LOW for more than 30 seconds after the copy paper reaches the registration sensor.	
322	D	Synchronization error	- Laser synchronization board connectors loose, disconnected, or damaged - Laser synchronization board defective - LD drive board defective
		The synchronization signal was not issued within 500 ms after the LD fired while the polygon motor was turning at the prescribed number of revolutions.	

323	D	LD drive current too high	- LD unit defective (not enough power, due to aging) - Poor connection between the LD unit and the BICU board - BICU defective
		The LD drive board applies more than 100 mA to the LD.	
327	D	LD unit home position error 1	- HP sensor/harness defective - LD unit home position sensor defective - LD positioning motor harness defective - LD unit movement blocked because of incorrect connector routing
		The LD unit home position sensor does not detect an on condition when the LD unit moves to its home position.	
328	D	LD unit home position error 2	- HP sensor/harness defective - LD positioning/harness motor defective - LD unit movement blocked because of incorrect connector routing
		The LD unit home position sensor does not detect an off condition when the LD unit moves from its home position.	

329	D	LD unit beam pitch adjusted incorrectly	- After initialization of the SP modes, SP2-109-3 or SP2-109-4 was not executed. - The harness is blocking the LD drive (PCB), preventing adjustment of the pitch.
		The LD unit HP sensor does not detect the ON condition while changing the LD unit position for correcting the LD position or changing the dpi.	
335	D	Polygon motor error 1: On timeout	- Polygon motor drive board I/F harness loose, disconnected, or damaged - Polygon motor drive board defective - Polygon motor defective
		The XSCRDY signal did not go LOW (Active) within 10 sec. after the polygon motor was turned on.	
336	D	Polygon motor error 2: Off timeout	- Polygon motor drive board I/F harness loose, disconnected, or damaged - Polygon motor drive board defective - Polygon motor defective
		The XSCRDY signal did not go HIGH (Inactive) within 3 sec. after the polygon motor was turned off.	
337	D	Polygon motor error 3: XSCRDY signal error	- Polygon motor drive board I/F harness loose, disconnected, or damaged - Polygon motor drive board defective - Polygon motor defective
		The XSCRDY signal did not go HIGH (Inactive) after the polygon motor had been rotating normally for 200 ms.	
338	D	Polygonal Mirror Motor Error 4: Unstable Timeout	- I/F harness of the polygonal mirror motor disconnected or defective. - Polygonal mirror motor or polygonal mirror motor driver defective. - Polygonal mirror motor drive pulse is not output incorrectly.
		The XSCRDY signal is detected LOW (Active) after the polygonal mirror motor switches on, but the signal is not detected LOW after 1 s has elapsed, and not detected after another 500 ms has elapsed.	
350	D	ID sensor pattern test error	- ID sensor defective - ID sensor connector defective - Poor ID sensor connector connection - I/O board (IOB) defective - High voltage supply board defective - ID sensor dirty - Defect at ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum
		One of the following ID sensor output voltages was detected twice consecutively when checking the ID sensor pattern. 1) $V_{sp} \geq 2.5V$ 2) $V_{sg} \leq 2.5V$ 3) $V_{sp} = 0V$ 4) $V_{sg} = 0V$	
351	D	ID sensor Vsg test error	- ID sensor defective - ID sensor connector defective - Poor ID sensor connection - I/O board (IOB) defective - Scanning system defective - High voltage supply board defective - ID sensor dirty - Defect at the ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum
		When the ID sensor was checked, the ID sensor output voltage was 5.0V while the PWM signal input to the ID sensor was 0.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

352	D	ID sensor, pattern edge detect error	- ID sensor defective - ID sensor connector defective - Poor ID sensor connector connection - I/O board (IOB) defective - High voltage supply board defective - Dirty ID sensor - Defect at the ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum
		The ID sensor pattern edge voltage is detected to be not 2.5V twice consecutively during an 800 ms interval.	
353	D	ID sensor, LED current abnormal at initialization	- ID sensor defective - ID sensor harness defective - ID sensor connector defective - Poor ID sensor connection - I/O board (IOB) defective - Exposure system defective - High voltage supply board defective - Dirty ID sensor
		One of the following ID sensor output voltages is detected at ID sensor initialization. 1) $V_{sg} < 4.0V$ when the maximum PWM input (255) is applied to the ID sensor. 2) $V_{sg} \geq 4.0V$ when the minimum PWM input (0) is applied to the ID sensor.	
354	D	ID sensor timeout abnormal at adjustment	- ID sensor defective - ID sensor harness defective - ID sensor connector defective - I/O board (IOB) defective - Exposure system defective - Poor ID sensor connector connection - High voltage supply board defective - Dirty ID sensor
		V_{sg} falls out of the adjustment target ($4.0 \pm 0.2V$) at the start of V_{sg} checking after 20 seconds	
390	D	TD sensor error: Test value abnormal	- TD sensor defective - TD sensor not connected or connector damaged - Poor connection between the TD sensor and the I/O board (IOB) - I/O board (IOB) defective - Toner supply defective
		The TD sensor output voltage is less than 0.5V or more than 5.0V after 10 consecutive times during copying.	
391	D	TD sensor error: Auto adjust error	- TD sensor abnormal - TD sensor disconnected - Poor TD sensor connection - I/O board (IOB) defective - Toner supply defective
		During automatic adjustment of the TD sensor, output voltage is less than 1.8V or more than 4.8V during TD sensor initial setting.	
395	D	Development output abnormal	- High voltage supply board defective - Poor connection at the development bias terminal - Poor connection at the high voltage supply board
		A development bias leak signal is detected. High voltage output to the development unit exceeded the upper limit (65%) for 60 ms.	
401	D	Transfer roller leak detected	- High voltage supply board defective - Poor cable connection or defective cable - Transfer connector defective
		A transfer roller current leak signal is detected.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

402	D	Transfer roller open error	• High voltage supply board defective • Transfer connector cable defective • Transfer connector defective • Poor PCU connection
		The transfer roller current feedback signal is not detected.	
403	D	Transfer belt position sensor error	• Main motor/drive malfunction • Transfer belt contact clutch defective • Transfer belt position sensor defective • Harness disconnected
		The transfer belt position sensor does not activate even if the transfer belt contact clutch has been switched on twice and rotated once.	
405	D	Transfer belt error	• Main motor/drive malfunction • Transfer belt position sensor defective • Poor transfer belt position sensor connection • Transfer belt contact clutch defective
		The transfer belt does not move away from the drum during ID sensor pattern checking.	
440	D	Main motor lock	• Too much load on the drive mechanism • Main motor defective
		A main motor lock signal is not detected within 2 seconds after the main motor turns on.	
450	D	Feed Development Motor Error	• Motor lock caused by overload. • Motor driver defective.
		The PLL lock signal remains LOW for 2 s while the feed development motor is operating.	
490	D	Exhaust fan motor lock	• Too much load on the drive mechanism • Exhaust fan motor defective or a loose object is interfering with the fan • Poor fan motor connector connection
		An exhaust fan motor lock signal is not detected within 5 seconds after the exhaust fan motor turns on.	
492	D	Cooling fan motor lock	• Too much load on the drive mechanism • Cooling fan motor defective or a loose object is interfering with the fan • Poor fan motor connector connection
		A cooling fan motor lock signal is not detected within 5 seconds after the cooling fan motor turns on.	
501	B	1st tray lift malfunction	• Lift motor malfunction or disconnected • Height sensor abnormal, or connector loose • Loose paper or object between the tray and motor • Pick-up arm malfunction
		The paper height sensor is not activated after the tray lift motor has been on for 10 seconds. If the main power switch is turned on when the paper is already at the feed height, the paper height position is detected again. At this time, the paper height sensor should de-activate within 5 seconds after the paper bottom plate starts to drop. If it does not deactivate within 5 s four times consecutively, a message will prompt the user to reset Tray 1. After two attempts to release the error by re-setting the paper tray, if this does not solve the problem then this SC is displayed.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

502	B	2nd tray lift malfunction	
		The paper height sensor is not activated after the tray lift motor has been on for 10 seconds. If the main power switch is turned on when the paper is already at the feed height, the paper height position is detected again. At this time, the paper height sensor should de-activate within 5 seconds after the paper bottom plate starts to drop. If it does not deactivate within 5 s four times consecutively, a message will prompt the user to reset Tray 2. After two attempts to re-set the paper tray, if this does not solve the problem then this SC is displayed.	
		• Lift motor abnormal or disconnected • Height sensor defective or disconnected • Loose paper or object between the tray and motor • Pick-up arm malfunction	
503	B	3rd tray lift malfunction (optional paper tray unit)	
		The paper height sensor is not activated after the tray lift motor has been on for 13 seconds. If the main power switch is turned on when the paper is already at the feed height, the paper height position is detected again. At this time, the paper height sensor should de-activate within 5 seconds after the paper bottom plate starts to drop. If it does not deactivate within 5 s four times consecutively, the tray lift motor halts. After two attempts to re-set the paper tray, if this does not solve the problem, then this SC is displayed and tray control halts.	
		• Tray lift motor defective or disconnected • Height sensor defective or disconnected	
504	B	4th tray lift malfunction (optional paper tray unit)	
		The paper height sensor is not activated after the tray lift motor has been on for 13 seconds. If the main power switch is turned on when the paper is already at the feed height, the paper height position is detected again. At this time, the paper height sensor should de-activate within 5 seconds after the paper bottom plate starts to drop. If it does not deactivate within 5 s four times consecutively, the tray lift motor halts. After two attempts to re-set the paper tray, if this does not solve the problem, then this SC is displayed and tray control halts.	
		• Tray lift motor defective or disconnected • Height sensor defective or disconnected	
506	B	Paper tray unit main motor lock (optional paper tray)	• Paper tray unit main motor defective • Paper tray unit main motor connection loose • Too much load on the drive mechanism
		A main motor lock signal is detected for more than 50 ms during rotation.	
507	B	LCT main motor lock	• LCT main motor defective • Paper tray unit main motor connection loose • Too much load on the drive mechanism
		A main motor lock signal is detected for more than 50 ms during rotation.	

510	B	LCT tray malfunction	
		1) One of the following has occurred: 2) The LCT lift sensor does not activate for more than 18 seconds after the LCT lift motor turned on. 3) The LCT lower limit sensor does not activate for more than 18 seconds after the LCT lift motor turned on. 4) The LCT lift sensor is already activated when the LCT lift motor turns on. 5) After the paper end sensor is actuated while the tray is raising, the upper limit sensor is not actuated within 5 s. A message is displayed to remind the user to set the paper and tray control halts. Resetting the display is done by opening and closing the LCT door. 6) The 4) state has been detected 3 times in succession.	
520	D	Fusing/Feed-Out Motor Error	
		The PLL lock signal remains LOW for 2 s while the feed development motor is operating.	- Motor lock caused by overload. - Motor driver defective.
541	A	Fusing thermistor open	
		The fusing temperature detected by the thermistor was below 7°C (44.6°F) for 5 seconds, or 2 seconds after reaching 45°C (113°F) the temperature does not reach an additional 15°C (59°F) after checking five times at 0.1 intervals.	- Fusing thermistor disconnected - Fusing thermistor connector defective - Fusing thermistor damaged or warped - Fusing temperature –15% less than the standard input voltage
542	A	Fusing temperature warm-up error	
		The fusing temperature does not reach the fusing standby temperature of 45°C (113°F) within 9 seconds [for the B264 (35 cpm)]/14 seconds [for the B265 (45 cpm)] after switching on the main power or closing the front cover, or 40 seconds after reaching 50°C the fusing roller does not reach warm-up temperature.	- Fusing lamp defective - Poor fusing unit connector - Thermistor warped or broken - Thermostat has tripped - BICU defective - Power supply board defective
543	A	Fusing overheat error (software detection)	
		A fusing temperature of over 230°C (446°F) is detected for 5 seconds by the fusing thermistors at the center or at either end of the fusing roller.	- Power supply unit defective - I/O board (IOB) defective - BICU defective - Fusing thermistor defective
544	A	Fusing overheat error (hardware circuit detection)	
		The dual monitoring circuitry of the BICU detects extremely high temperature and tripped the relay circuit off.	- Power supply unit defective - I/O board (IOB) defective - BICU defective - Fusing thermistor defective

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

545	A	Fusing lamp remains on	Thermistor is out of position.
		After warm-up the fusing lamp remains at full power for 10 seconds without the hot roller rotating.	
546	A	Fusing ready temperature unstable	- Thermistor connection loose - Fusing unit connector loose
		The fusing temperature is fluctuating.	
547	D	Zero cross signal error	- Switch the main switch off and on - Defective fusing relay, replace the PSU
		One of the following occurred: 1) The fusing relay remained off for 50 ms after power on and continued to remain off after the after 3 attempts to detect the zero-cross signal. 2) During 11 zero-cross signal detections, two zero-cross signal detections were below 44 Hz. 3) The zero-cross signal could not be detected within 3 sec. after the fusing relay switched on.	
548	A	Fusing unit installation error	- Fusing unit is not installed - Fusing unit connection loose
		The machine cannot detect the fusing unit when the front cover and right cover are closed.	
557	C	Zero-cross frequencyover	Nose on the ac power line
		The applied power ac frequency was detected less than 66 Hz more than 10 times, or less than 44 Hz one time.	
599	D	1-Bin tray motor lock	1-bin tray motor locked from overload 1-bin tray motor defective 1-bin tray motor connection loose
		A 1-bin tray motor lock signal is not detected for more than 300 ms during rotation.	
601	D	Communication error between BICU and scanner unit	- Serial line connecting the BICU and SIB defective - External noise on the serial line - SIB board defective - BICU board defective
		Within 800 ms after power on, after 3 attempts the BICU does not communicate with the SIB via the serial line.	
610	D	Communication timeout error between BICU and ADF	- BICU board and ADF main board serial line connection defective - External noise - ADF main board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU cannot receive a response within 100 ms after 3 attempts after sending data to the ARDF.	
611	D	Communication break error between BICU and ADF	- Serial line connecting BICU and ADF unstable - External noise - ADF main board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU receives a break signal from the ADF main board.	

612	D	Communication command error between BICU and ADF	Abnormal operation performed by software
		The BICU sends a command to the ADF main board that it cannot execute.	
620	D	Communication timeout error between BICU and finisher or mailbox	- Serial line connecting BICU and finisher unstable - External noise - BICU board and finisher main board connection defective or loose - Finisher main board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU cannot receive a response within 100 ms after 3 attempts after sending data to the finisher or mailbox.	
621	D	Communication timeout error between BICU and finisher or mailbox	- Serial line connecting BICU and finisher unstable - External noise
		A break (low) signal was received from the finisher or the mailbox.	
623	D	Communication timeout error between BICU and paper tray unit	- Serial line connecting BICU and paper tray unit unstable - External noise - BICU board and paper tray main board connection defective or loose - Paper tray main board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU cannot receive a response within 100 ms after 3 attempts after sending data to the paper tray unit.	
624	D	Communication break error between BICU and paper tray unit	- Serial line connecting BICU and paper tray unit unstable - External noise - BICU board and LCT main board connection defective or loose - Optional paper feed unit interface board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU cannot communicate with the paper tray unit normally as a result of receiving a break signal.	
626	D	Communication timeout error between BICU and LCT	- Serial line connecting BICU and LCT unit unstable - External noise - BICU board and LCT main board connection defective or loose - LCT interface board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU cannot receive a response within 100 ms after 3 attempts after sending data to the LCT.	
627	D	Communication break error between BICU and LCT	- Serial line connecting BICU and LCT unit unstable - External noise - BICU board and LCT main board connection defective or loose - LCT interface board defective - BICU board defective
		The BICU cannot communicate with the LCT unit normally as a result of receiving a break signal.	
630	D	Communication failure with CSS (RSS)	- Occurred with a SC call, CC call, Supply Management call, User call, or CE call. - Timeout while no response from the LADP, and signal on the RS-485 line between PI and LADP is abnormal.
		The communication from the copier was detected as abnormal at the CSS center. This error occurs when the acknowledge signal from the LADP does not complete normally.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

632	B	Key/card counter device error 1	
		After 1 data frame is sent to the device, an ACK signal is not received within 100 ms, and is not received after 3 retries.	The serial line from the device to the copier is unstable, disconnected, or defective.
633	B	Key/card counter device error 2	
		During communication with the device, the BCU received a break (Low) signal.	The serial line from the device to the copier is unstable, disconnected, or defective.
634	B	Key/card counter device error 3	
		The backup battery of the counter device RAM is low.	Replace the RAM backup battery.
635	B	Key/card counter device error 4	
		After installation of the device a message alerts user to a battery voltage abnormal error.	- Device control board defective - Device control board backup battery defective
670	D	Engine startup error	
		The BCU failed to respond with the prescribed time when the machine was turned on.	- Connections between BCU and controller board are loose, disconnected, or damaged - Replace the BCU - Replace the controller board
672	D	Controller startup error	
		- After power on, the line between the controller and the operation panel did not open for normal operation. - After normal startup, communication with the controller stopped.	- Controller stalled - Controller installed incorrectly - Controller board defective - Operation panel harness disconnected or defective
692	D	GAVD block I2C bus error	
		The I2C bus is defective.	Replace the BICU.

700	D	ARDF original pick-up malfunction	Original stopper HP sensor (output abnormal) Pick-up motor defective (not rotating) Timing belt out of position • ADF main board defective
		After the pick-up motor is turned on, the original stopper HP sensor is not detected.	
701	D	ARDF original pick-up/paper lift mechanism malfunction	• Original pick-up HP sensor defective. • Pick-up motor defective • ADF main board defective
		The original pick-up HP sensor does not activate three times consecutively after the pick-up motor has turned on.	
722	B	Finisher jogger motor error	• Jogger HP sensor defective • Jogger motor defective
		The finisher jogger HP sensor does not return to the home position, or move out of the home position, within the specified time.	
724	B	Finisher staple hammer motor error	• Staple jam • Stapler overload caused by trying to staple too many sheets • Staple hammer motor defective
		Stapling does not finish within 600 ms after the staple hammer motor turned on.	
725	B	Finisher stack feed-out motor error	• Stack feed-out HP sensor defective • Stack feed-out motor overload • Stack feed-out motor defective
		The stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not activate within a certain time after the stack feed-out motor turned on.	
726	D	Finisher shift tray 1 lift motor error	• Shift motor defective or overloaded • Shift tray lift motor defective or overloaded
		Tray shift does not finish within the specified time after the shift motor turned on, or the stack height sensor does not activate within the specified time after the shift tray lift motor turned on.	
727	B	Finisher stapler rotation motor error	• Stapler rotation motor defective or overloaded • Stapler rotation motor connection loose or connector defective
		Stapler rotation does not finish within the specified time after the staple rotation motor turned on, or the stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time after stapling finished.	
729	B	Finisher punch motor error	• Punch motor defective or overloaded • Punch HP sensor defective • Punch motor connection loose or connector defective
		After the punch motor is turned on, the punch HP sensor does not activate within the specified time.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

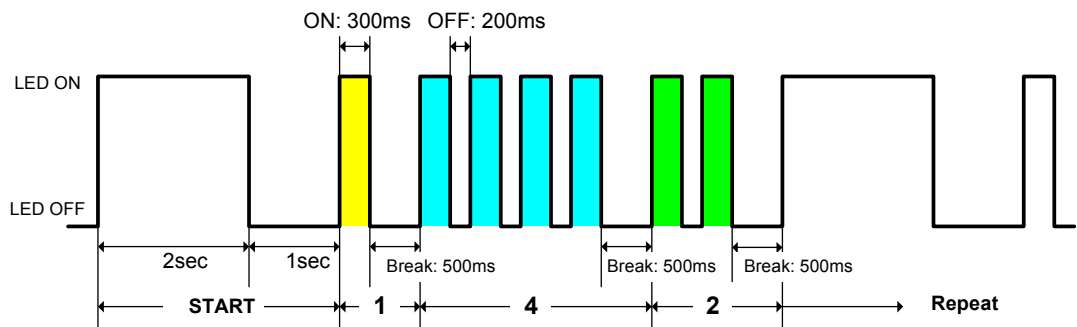
730	B	Finisher stapler positioning motor error	• Stapler positioning motor defective or overloaded • Stapler HP sensor defective • Stapler positioning motor connection loose or connector defective
		After the stapler motor is turned on, the stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time, or the stapler HP sensor does not activate within the specified time after the stapler motor is turned on.	
731	D	Finisher exit guide open/close motor error	• Finisher exit guide open/close motor defective • Open/close sensor defective
		After the finisher exit guide open/close motor is turned on, the open/close sensor does not activate within the specified time.	
732	D	Finisher upper tray shift motor error	• Upper tray shift motor defective or overloaded • Upper tray shift sensor defective
		The upper tray shift motor does not stop within the specified time.	
733	D	Finisher lower tray lift motor error	• Lower tray lift motor defective or overloaded • Upper stack height sensor defective • Lower tray lower limit sensor defective
		The stack height sensor does not activate within a certain time period after the lower tray lift motor turned on.	
734	D	Finisher lower tray shift motor error	• Lower tray shift motor defective or overloaded • Lower tray shift sensor defective
		The lower tray shift motor driving the lower tray does not stop within the specified time.	

740	D	Booklet finisher error 1: Not Saddle Stitch	• See description below
741	D	Booklet finisher error 2: Saddle Stitch	

SC740 and SC741 are issued when an error occurs in the 1000-Sheet Saddle-Stitch Finisher B546. Specific details about these SC codes are not displayed on the operation panel display. However, you can determine the specific cause of an error by observing the number of flashes and the lengths of the intervals between flashes.

To Read SC740/SC741 from LED 2

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Look at LED 2 and observe the number of flashes and the lengths of the intervals between flashes.



Trouble-
shooting

What You See		What It Means
500 ms ON, 500 ms OFF		Finisher operating normally
2 s ON, 1 s OFF		START
Example: 1-4-2		The numbers refer to the flashes and intervals in the illustration above.
1	300ms ON, 500ms OFF	
4	300ms ON, 200ms OFF (Repeats 3 times), 300ms ON, 500ms OFF (break)	
2	300 ms ON, 200ms OFF, 300 ms ON, 500ms OFF (break)	
	Returns to START and repeats (2 s ON, 1 s OFF, then 1-4-2)	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

Pattern	Error	Status	Possible Cause
1-1-1	Shutter movement	The shutter position switch does not turn on within 1 second after the transport motor starts to turn in reverse.	- Transport motor defective - Shutter position switch defective - Shift tray safety switch defective
1-1-2		The shutter sensor does not deactivate within 1 second after the transport motor starts to turn in reverse.	
1-1-3		The shutter position switch is off when the shift tray safety switch is off.	
1-2-1	Exit motor	After the exit motor turns on, the exit motor sensor does not send the proper signal to the finisher board.	- Exit motor defective - Exit motor sensor defective
1-2-2		The exit motor sensor does not send the clock signal to the finisher board for certain period while the exit motor is on.	
1-3-1	Upper exit plate movement	The upper exit guide 2 switch does not turn on within 1s after the guide plate motor turns on.	- Guide plate motor defective - Upper exit guide 2 switch defective - Upper exit guide sensor defective - Shift tray safety switch defective
1-3-2		The upper exit guide sensor does not activate within 1s after the guide plate motor turns on.	
1-3-3		The upper exit guide 2 switch does not turn on when the shift tray safety switch is off.	
1-3-4		The guide plate motor sensor does not send the clock signal to the finisher board for certain period while the exit motor is on.	
1-4-1	Jogger motor	After the jogger motor turns on to move the jogger fence from its home position, the jogger HP sensor does not deactivate within 2s.	- Jogger motor defective - Jogger HP sensor defective
1-4-2		After the jogger motor turns on to return the jogger fence to its home position, the jogger HP sensor does not activate within 2s.	
1-5-1	Stapler motor	After the stapler motor turns on to move the stapler unit from its home position, the stapler unit HP sensor does not deactivate within 4s.	- Stapler motor defective - Stapler unit HP sensor defective
1-5-2		After the stapler motor turns on to return the stapler unit to its home position, the stapler unit HP sensor does not activate within 4s.	
1-6-1	Staple hammer motor	The staple hammer HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.5s after the staple hammer motor turns on.	- Staple hammer motor defective - Staple hammer HP sensor defective
1-6-2		The staple hammer HP sensor does not activate within 0.5s after the staple hammer motor turns on.	

Pattern	Error	Status	Possible Cause
1-7-1	Tray lift motor	The tray lift motor does not stop within 15s after being turned on. The shift tray HP sensor does not activate within 15s after the tray lift motor turns on.	- Tray lift motor defective - Lift motor sensor 1 defective - Lift motor sensor 2 defective - Shift tray HP sensor defective - Shift tray upper limit switch defective
1-7-2		The shift tray upper limit switch turns on while the shift tray is being raised.	
1-7-3		Lift motor sensors 1 & 2 do not send the clock signals to the finisher board every 200ms while the tray lift motor is on.	
1-8-1	Shift tray height sensor	Abnormal communication data between finisher board and shift tray height sensor.	- Shift tray height sensor defective - Finisher board defective
1-8-2		No communication between finisher board and shift tray height sensor for a certain period.	
1-8-3		The finisher board detects a connection error with the connector for the shift tray height sensor.	
1-8-4		Adjustment error during shift tray height sensor adjustment.	
1-9-1	Back-up RAM	The check sum is abnormal when the main switch is turned on.	Finisher board defective
1-10-1	Communication	Communication error between finisher board and copier mainframe.	- Finisher board defective - Booklet unit board defective - Poor connection of the interface harness
1-10-2		Communication error between finisher board and booklet unit board.	
1-11-1	Positioning plate motor	After the positioning plate motor turns on to move the positioning plate from its home position, the positioning plate HP sensor does not deactivate within 1.25s.	- Positioning plate motor defective - Positioning plate HP sensor defective
1-11-2		After the positioning plate motor turns on to return the positioning plate to its home position, the positioning plate HP sensor does activate within 1s.	
1-12-2	Folder roller motor	The folder roller motor sensor doesn't send the clock pulse to the booklet unit board within a certain period after the folder roller motor turns on.	- Folder roller motor defective - Folder roller motor sensor defective
1-13-1	Shutter guide motor	After the shutter guide motor turns on to move the shutter guide from its home position, the shutter guide HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.4s.	Shutter guide motor defective

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

Pattern	Error	Status	Possible Cause
1-13-2		After the shutter guide motor turns on to return the shutter guide to its home position, the shutter guide HP sensor does not activate within 1s.	Shutter guide HP sensor defective
1-14-1	Booklet jogger motor	After the booklet jogger motor turns on to move the booklet jogger plate from its home position, the booklet jogger HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.5s.	- Booklet jogger motor defective - Booklet jogger HP sensor defective
1-14-2		After the booklet jogger motor turns on to return the booklet jogger plate to its home position, the booklet jogger HP sensor does not activate within 1s.	
1-15-1	Front stapler motor	The front staple hammer HP switch does not turn off within 0.5s after the front stapler motor turns on.	- Front stapler motor defective - Front staple hammer HP switch defective
1-15-2		The front staple hammer HP switch does not turn on within 0.5s after the front stapler motor turns on during jam recovery.	
1-16-1	Rear stapler motor	The rear staple hammer HP switch does not turn off within 0.5s after the rear stapler motor turns on.	- Rear stapler motor defective - Rear staple hammer HP switch defective
1-16-2		The rear staple hammer HP switch does not turn on within 0.5s after the rear stapler motor turns on during jam recovery.	
1-17-1	Folder plate motor error	After the folder plate motor turns on to return the folder plate to its home position, the folder plate HP sensor does not activate within 0.3s.	- Folder plate motor defective - Folder plate HP sensor defective - Folder plate return sensor defective - Folder plate motor sensor defective
1-17-2		After the folder plate motor turns on to move the folder plate from its home position, the folder plate HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.3s.	
1-17-3		After the folder plate motor turns on to return the folder plate to its home position, the folder plate return sensor does not deactivate within 0.3s.	
1-17-4		The pulse count from the folder plate motor sensor is lower than the target minimum.	
1-18-1	Connector	The connector of the shutter guide HP sensor is not connected.	Poor connection or no connection of the shutter guide HP sensor connector
1-18-2		The connector of the folder plate HP sensor is not connected.	

Pattern	Error	Status	Possible Cause
1-18-3		The connector of the folder plate return sensor is not connected.	• Poor connection or no connection of the folder plate HP sensor connector • Poor connection or no connection of the folder plate return sensor connector
1-19-1	Switch	When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the booklet entrance guide safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.	• Booklet entrance guide safety switch defective • Lower door safety switch defective • Booklet exit cover safety switch defective
1-19-2		When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the lower door safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.	
1-19-3		When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the booklet exit cover safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

818	C	Watchdog error	
		The bus is being held by another device, or a CPU-device infinite loop has occurred. A module that the watchdog is monitoring has not closed properly at the conclusion of its task, or the module cannot continue processing.	• System program defective; switch off/on, or change the controller firmware if the problem cannot be solved • Controller board defective • Controller option malfunction

819	C	Fatal kernel error	
		Due to a control error, a RAM overflow occurred during system processing. One of the following messages was displayed on the operation panel.	• System program defective • Controller board defective • Optional board defective • Replace controller firmware
		0x696e	init died
		0x766d	vm_pageout: VM is full
		4361	Cache Error
		Other	

For more details about this SC code error, execute **SP5990** to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

820	D	Self-Diagnostic Error: CPU	
		The central processing unit returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	• Controller board defective • Software defective

821	D	Self-diagnostic error 2: ASIC	
		The ASIC provides the central point for the control of bus arbitration for CPU access, for option bus and SDRAM access, for SDRAM refresh, and for management of the internal bus gate.	• ASIC (controller board defective)

NOTE: For more details about this SC code error, execute **SP5990** to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

822	B	Self-diagnostic error 3: HDD		
		3003	Check performed when HDD is installed: • HDD device busy for over 31 s. • After a diagnostic command is set for the HDD, but the device remains busy for over 6 s. A diagnostic command is issued to the HDD device but the result is an error	• HDD defective • HDD harness disconnected, defective • Controller board defective
		3004	No response to the self-diagnostic command from the ASIC to the HDDs	• HDD defective

823	B	Self-diagnostic Error: NIC	• Network interface board defective • Controller board defective
		The network interface board returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	

824	D	Self-diagnostic error 4: NVRAM	• NVRAM defective • Controller board defective • NVRAM backup battery exhausted • NVRAM socket damaged
		NVRAM device does not exist, NVRAM device is damaged, NVRAM socket damaged	

826	D	Self-diagnostic Error: NVRAM/Optional NVRAM	• Make sure NVRAM is seated correctly in its socket • Replace the NVRAM on the controller board
		The NVRAM or optional NVRAM returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	

827	D	Self-diagnostic Error: RAM	• Update controller firmware again • Replace RAM DIMM
		The resident RAM returned a verify error during the self-diagnostic test.	

828	D	Self-diagnostic error 7: ROM	• Software defective • Controller board defective • ROM defective
		• Measuring the CRC for the boot monitor and operating system program results in an error. • A check of the CRC value for ROMFS of the entire ROM area results in an error.	

NOTE: For more details about this SC 833, SC834 error, execute **SP5990** to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel. The additional error codes (0F30, 0F31, etc. are listed in the SMC report.

829	B	Self-diagnostic Error: Optional RAM	• Replace the optional memory board • Controller board defective
		The optional RAM returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	

838	D	Self-diagnostic Error: Clock Generator	• Replace the controller board
		A verify error occurred when setting data was read from the clock generator via the I2C bus.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

850	B	Net I/F error	
		• Duplicate IP addresses. • Illegal IP address. • Driver unstable and cannot be used on the network.	• IP address setting incorrect • Ethernet board defective • Controller board defective
851	B	IEEE 1394 I/F error	
		Driver setting incorrect and cannot be used by the 1394 I/F.	• NIB (PHY), LINK module defective; change the Interface Board • Controller board defective
853	B	Wireless LAN Error 1	
		During machine start-up, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	• Wireless LAN card missing (was removed)
854	B	Wireless LAN Error 2	
		During machine operation, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	• Wireless LAN card missing (was removed)
855	B	Wireless LAN error 3	
		An error was detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	• Wireless LAN card defective • Wireless LAN card connection incorrect
856	B	Wireless LAN error 4	
		An error was detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth).	• Wireless LAN card defective • PCI connector (to the mother board) loose
857	B	USB I/F Error	
		The USB driver is not stable and caused an error.	• Bad USB card connection • Replace the controller board
861	B	HDD re-try failure	
		At power on with the HDD detected, power supply to the HDD is interrupted, after the HDD is awakened from the sleep mode, the HDD is not ready within 30 s.	• Harness between HDD and board disconnected, defective • HDD power connector disconnected • HDD defective • Controller board defective

860	B	HDD startup error at main power on	
		• HDD is connected but a driver error is detected. • The driver does not respond with the status of the HDD within 30 s.	• HDD is not initialized • Level data is corrupted • HDD is defective

863	D	HDD data read failure	
		The data written to the HDD cannot be read normally, due to bad sectors generated during operation.	• HDD defective Note: If the bad sectors are generated at the image partition, the bad sector information is written to NVRAM, and the next time the HDD is accessed, these bad sectors will not be accessed for read/write operation.

864	D	HDD data CRC error	
		During HDD operation, the HDD cannot respond to an CRC error query. Data transfer did not execute normally while data was being written to the HDD.	• HDD defective

865	D	HDD access error	
		HDD responded to an error during operation for a condition other than those for SC863, 864.	• HDD defective.

866	B	SD card error 1: Confirmation	
		The machine detects an electronic license error in the application on the SD card in the controller slot immediately after the machine is turned on. The program on the SD card contains electronic confirmation license data. If the program does not contain this license data, or if the result of the check shows that the license data in the program on the SD card is incorrect, then the checked program cannot execute and this SC code is displayed.	
		• Program missing from the SD card • Download the correct program for the machine to the SD card	

867	D	SD card error 2: SD card removed	
		The SD card in the boot slot when the machine was turned on was removed while the machine was on.	• Insert the SD card, then turn the machine off and on.

868	D	SD card error 3: SC card access	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

		An error occurred while an SD card was used. • SD card not inserted correctly • SD card defective • Controller board defective Note: If you want to try to reformat the SC card, use SD Formatter Ver 1.1.

870	B	Address book data error
		Address book data on the hard disk was detected as abnormal when it was accessed from either the operation panel or the network. The address book data cannot be read from the HDD or SD card where it is stored, or the data read from the media is defective. • Software defective. Turn the machine off/on. If this is not the solution for the problem, then replace the controller firmware. • HDD defective.
		More Details • Do SP5846 050 (UCS Settings – Initialize all Directory Info.) to reset all address book data. • Reset the user information with SP5832 006 (HDD Formatting– User Information). • Replace the HDDs. • Boot the machine from the SD card.

872	B	HDD mail receive data error
		• The machine detected that the HDD was not operating correctly at power on. • The machine detected that the HDD was not operating correctly (could neither read nor write) while processing incoming email • HDD defective • Machine was turned off while the HDD was being accessed. • Do SP5832 007 to format the mail RX data on the HDD.

873	B	HDD mail send data error
		An error was detected on the HDD immediately after the machine was turned on, or power was turned off while the machine used the HDD. • Do SP5832-007 (Format HDD – Mail TX Data) to initialize the HDD. • Replace the HDD

874	D	Delete All error 1: HDD
		A data error was detected for the HDD/NVRAM after the Delete All option was used. Note: The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit B660 running from an SD card. • Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again. • Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit again. For more, see section “1. Installation”. • HDD defective

875	D	Delete All error 2: Data area	
		An error occurred while the machine deleted data from the HDD. Note: The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit B660 running from an SD card.	• Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again.

876	D	Log data abnormal	
		An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating.	• Software error. Update the firmware • NVRAM defective • HDD defective

880	B	File Format Converter (MLB) error	
		A request to get access to the MLB was not answered within the specified time.	• MLB defective, replace the MLB

900	D	Electrical total counter error	
		The total counter contains something that is not a number.	• NVRAM incorrect type • NVRAM defective • NVRAM data scrambled • Unexpected error from external source

901	D	Mechanical total count error	
		The IO board cannot receive the mechanical total count data.	• Mechanical total counter defective

920	B	Printer error 1	
		An internal application error was detected and operation cannot continue.	• Software defective; turn the machine off/on, or change the controller firmware • Insufficient memory

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

925	B	Net File function error The NetFile file management on the HDD cannot be used, or a NetFile management file is corrupted and operation cannot continue. The HDDs are defective and they cannot be debugged or partitioned, so the Scan Router functions (delivery of received faxes, document capture, etc.), Web services, and other network functions cannot be used. HDD status codes are displayed below the SC code: Refer to the four procedures below (Recovery from SC 925).

Here is a list of HDD status codes:

Display	Meaning
(-1)	HDD not connected
(-2)	HDD not ready
(-3)	No label
(-4)	Partition type incorrect
(-5)	Error returned during label read or check
(-6)	Error returned during label read or check
(-7)	“filesystem” repair failed
(-8)	“filesystem” mount failed
(-9)	Drive does not answer command
(-10)	Internal kernel error
(-11)	Size of drive is too small
(-12)	Specified partition does not exist
(-13)	Device file does not exist

Recovery from SC 925

Procedure 1

If the machine shows SC codes for HDD errors (SC860 ~ SC865) with SC 925, do the recovery procedures for SC860 ~ SC865.

Procedure 2

If the machine does not show one of the five HDD errors (SC860 ~ SC865), turn the machine power off and on. If this is not the solution for the problem, then initialize the NetFile partition on the HDD with **SP5832-011** (HDD Formatting – Ridoc I/F).

NetFiles: Jobs printed from the document server using a PC and DeskTopBinder

- Before you initialize the NetFile partition on the HDD, tell the customer that:
- Received faxes on the delivery server will be erased
- All captured documents will be erased
- DeskTopBinder/Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor job history will be erased
- Documents on the document server, and scanned documents, will not be erased.
- The first time that the network gets access to the machine, the management information must be configured again (this will use a lot of time).

Before you initialize the Netfile partition with **SP5832-011**, do these steps:

1. Go into the User Tools mode and do “Delivery Settings” to print all received fax documents that are scheduled for delivery. Then erase them.
2. In the User Tools mode, do Document Management> Batch Delete Transfer Documents.
3. Do **SP5832-011**, then turn the machine power off and on.

Procedure 3

If “Procedure 2” is not the solution for the problem, do **SP5832-001** (HDD Formatting – All), then turn the machine power off and on.

SP5832-001 erases all document and address book data on the hard disks. Ask the customer before you do this SP code.

Procedure 4

If “Procedure 3” is not the solution for the problem, replace the HDD.

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

990	D	Software error 1	
		The software performs an unexpected function and the program cannot continue.	Software defective, re-boot^{*1}
991	C	Software error 2	
		The software performs an unexpected function. However, unlike SC990, recovery processing allows the program to continue.	Software defective, re-boot^{*1}

^{*1}: In order to get more details about SC990 and SC991:

- 1) Execute SP7403 or print an SMC Report (SP5990) to read the history of the 10 most recent logged errors.
- 2) If you press the zero key on the operation panel with the SP selection menu displayed, you will see detailed information about the recently logged SC990 or SC991, including the software file name, line number, and so on. 1) is the recommended method, because another SC could write over the information for the previous SC.

992	D	Software error 3: Undefined	
		An error not controlled by the system occurred (the error does not come under any other SC code).	- Software defective - Turn the machine power off and on. The machine cannot be used until this error is corrected.

997	B	Software Error 4: Cannot select application function	
		An application does not start after the user pushed the correct key on the operation panel.	- Software bug - A RAM or DIMM option necessary for the application is not installed or not installed correctly.

998	D	Software Error 5: Application cannot start	
		Register processing does not operate for an application within 60 s after the machine power is turned on. No applications start correctly, and all end abnormally.	- Software bug - A RAM or DIMM option necessary for the application is not installed or not installed correctly.

951	D	F-gate error at write request	- Software defective - BICU defective
		After the IPU receives an F-gate signal, it receives another F-gate signal.	
953	D	Scanner setting error	Software defective
		The IPU does not respond with the scanner setting signal required to start scanning processing.	
954	D	Printer setting error	Software defective
		The IPU does not respond with the settings that are required to start image processing by the printer.	

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

955	D	Memory setting error	Software defective
		The IPU does not respond with the settings that are required to start image processing using the memory.	
984	D	Print image data transfer error	- Controller board defective - BICU defective - Connectors between BICU and controller loose or defective
		The image transfer from the controller to the engine via the PCI bus does not end within 15 s after starting.	
985	D	Scanner image data transfer error	- Controller board defective - BICU defective - Connectors between BICU and controller loose or defective - SIB defective
		The image transfer from the engine to the controller via the PCI bus does not end within 3 s after starting.	
986	D	Software write parameter setting error	Software defective
		An unstable area at the storage destination in the settings table is set NULL for the parameter received by the write module.	

995	D	Machine Type Information Error	Replace the controller board with the correct board.
		After the machine is powered on, a mismatch is detected between the CPM information sent from the controller to the engine.	

999	D	Program download error	- Board installed incorrectly - BICU defective - IC card defective - NVRAM defective - Loss of power during downloading - Important Notes About SC999 - Primarily intended for operating in the download mode, logging is not performed with SC999. Note: If the machine loses power while downloading, or if for some other reason the download does not end normally, this could damage the controller board or the PCB targeted for the download and prevent subsequent downloading. If this problem occurs, the damaged PCB must be replaced.
		The download (program, print data, language data) from the IC card does not execute normally.	

Trouble-
shooting

4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

4.2.1 SENSORS

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom
Scanner Home Position (S1)	504-5(SIB)	Open	SC121 is displayed.
		Shorted	SC120 is displayed.
Platen Cover (S2)	504-8 (SIB)	Open	APS and ARE do not function properly.
		Shorted	No symptom.
Original Width (S3)	505-3, 4 (SIB)	Open	CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Shorted	
Original Length-1 (S4)	505-8,9 (SIB)	Open	CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Shorted	
LD Unit Home Position (S6)	204-B2 (IOB)	Open	SC328 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed.
		Shorted	SC327 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed.
Toner Density (TD) (S7)	222-5 (IOB)	Open	The add toner indicator blinks even if there is toner in the development unit.
		Shorted	SC390-01 is displayed.
Paper Exit (S8)	202-B2 (IOB)	Open	The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made.
		Shorted	The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper.
Registration (S13)	224-B2 (IOB)	Open	The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper.
		Shorted	The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made.
Image Density (ID) (S14)	203-5 (IOB)	Open	SC350-03 is displayed after copying.
		Shorted	SC350-01 is displayed after copying.
Upper Paper Height (S15)	220-2 (IOB)	Open	Add Paper is displayed even if there is paper. If this condition occurred four times, SC501-02 will be displayed.
		Shorted	SC501-01 is displayed.
Lower Paper Height (S16)	214-2 (IOB)	Open	Add Paper is displayed even if there is paper. If this condition occurred four times, SC502-02 will be displayed.
		Shorted	SC502-01 is displayed.

ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom
Upper Paper End (S17)	220-8 (IOB)	Open	The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed in the upper paper tray.
		Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper in the upper paper tray.
Lower Paper End (S18)	214-8 (IOB)	Open	The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed in the lower paper tray.
		Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper in the lower paper tray.
Upper Relay (S19)	220-5 (IOB)	Open	The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made.
		Shorted	The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper.
Lower Relay (S20)	214-5 (IOB)	Open	The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made.
		Shorted	The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper.
Transfer Belt Position (S21)	202-A10 (IOB)	Open	No symptom
		Shorted	SC403 is displayed

Trouble-
shooting

BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

4.2.2 SWITCHES

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom
Right Lower Cover (SW1)	216-4 (IOB)	Open	"Doors/Covers Open" is displayed even if the right lower cover is closed.
		Shorted	The LCD goes blank when the lower cover is opened.
Main (SW3)	102-1~4 (PSU)	Open	The machine does not turn on.
		Shorted	The machine does not turn off.
Front Cover Safety (SW4)	107-1 (PSU)	Open	"Doors/Covers Open" is displayed even if the front cover is closed.
		Shorted	"Doors/Covers" Open is not displayed even if the front cover is opened.

4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

Fuse	Rating		Symptom at power on
	115V	210 ~ 230V	
Power Supply Board			
FU1	6.3A / 125V	6.3A / 250V	“Doors/Covers Open” is displayed
FU2	6.3A / 125V	6.3A / 250V	“Doors/Covers Open” for the finisher is displayed
FU3	6.3A / 125V	6.3A / 250V	Paper end condition
FU5	6.3A / 125V	6.3A / 250V	SC302, or SC403, or SC405 displayed
FU6	3.15A/125V	3.15A/250V	
FU9	5A/125V	4A/250V	
FU101	15A / 125V	8A/250V	No response
FU102	10A / 125V	5A / 250V	No response
FU103	2A / 125V	1A / 250V	Normal operation (optional heaters do not work)

4.4 LEDS

BICU LED Sequences

	LED 101 (Green)	LED 102 (Yellow)	LED 103 (Red)
Normal Operation	Flashes	Off	Flashes
System Startup	Flashes	On (1~2s) then Off	Flashes
Firmware Update: Normal Execution	Flashes	On	Flashes
Firmware Update: Error	Flashes	Flashes	Flashes
Firmware Update: Normal End	Flashes	Off	Flashes
Energy Save Mode	Off	Off	Off

Controller LED Sequences

	LED 1 (Red)	LED 2 (Red)
System Startup (including Self-Diagnostics)	On	Off
Self-Diagnostic Error	On	On
Normal Operation	Flashes	Off
Firmware Update: Normal Execution	Flashes	Flashes
Firmware Update: Error	Off	Off
Firmware Update: Normal End	On	On

NOTE: LED 1 monitors Data Bus Bit 14, LED 2 monitors Data Bus Bit 15.

Trouble-
shooting

4.5 TEST POINTS

Controller Board

Number	Monitored Signal
TP1	GND
TP3	GND
TP6	GND
TP8	DB0 RXD
TP9	DB0 TXD
TP10	GND
TP11	+5VE
TP12	GND
TP13	+5V
TP14	+5VE
TP15	GND
TP16	R_FGATE
TP17	W_FGATE

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES

 **CAUTION**

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

⇒ 5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

5.1.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION

The service program mode is used to check electrical data, change modes, and adjust values. Two service program modes are provided:

- **SP Mode (Service).** Includes all the options in the SP displays for normal maintenance and adjustments.
- **SSP Mode (Special Service).** Includes the normal SP modes and *some additional options in the SP displays not required for normal settings and adjustments.* (Most are marked “DFU” (Design or Factory Use) in the following tables.) Do not change these important settings needlessly. For details, contact your supervisor.

Entering and Exiting SP mode

- 
1. Press the Clear Mode key.

2. Use the keypad to enter “107”.

3. Hold down Clear/Stop for at least 3 seconds.

4. Enter the Service Mode.

To enter the Normal Service Mode:

Copy SP On the touch-panel, press Copy SP.

To enter the Special service Mode:

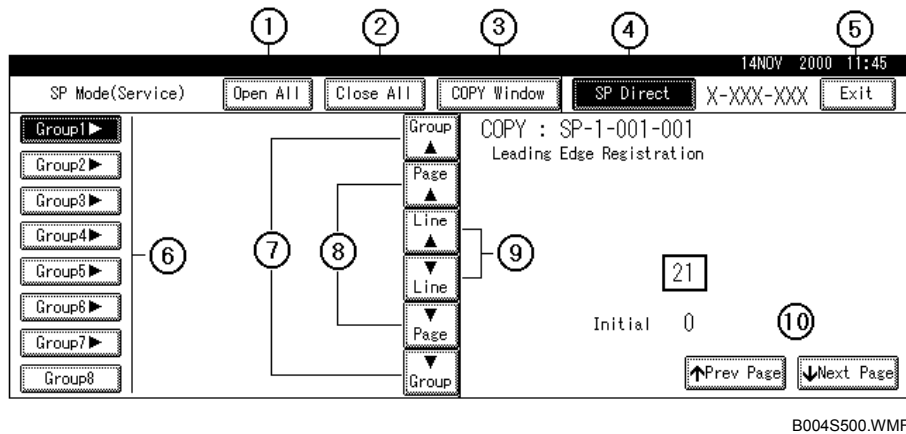
 **Copy SP** Hold down  and then press Copy SP.

Exit 5. Press Exit twice to return to the copy window.

NOTE: Use SP2-902 to perform test pattern printing. (➡ 5.2.4)

SP Mode Button Summary

Here is a short summary of the touch-panel buttons.



- ① Opens all SP groups and sublevels.
- ② Closes all open groups and sublevels and restores the initial SP mode display.
- ③ Opens the copy window (copy mode) so you can make test copies. To return to the SP mode screen, press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window.
- ④ Enter the SP code directly with the number keys if you know the SP number and then press **#**. (SP Mode must be highlighted before you can enter the number. Just press SP Mode if it is not highlighted.)
- ⑤ Press twice to leave the SP mode and return to the copy window to resume normal operation.
- ⑥ Press any Group number to open a list of SP codes and titles for that group. For example, to open the SP code list for SP1-nnn, press Group1. If an SP has sublevels, click the appropriate button to expand the list.
- ⑦ Press to scroll the display to the previous or next group.
- ⑧ Press to scroll to the previous or next display in segments the size of the screen display (page).
- ⑨ Press to scroll the display to the previous or next line, line by line.
- ⑩ Press to move the highlight on the left to the previous or next selection in the list.

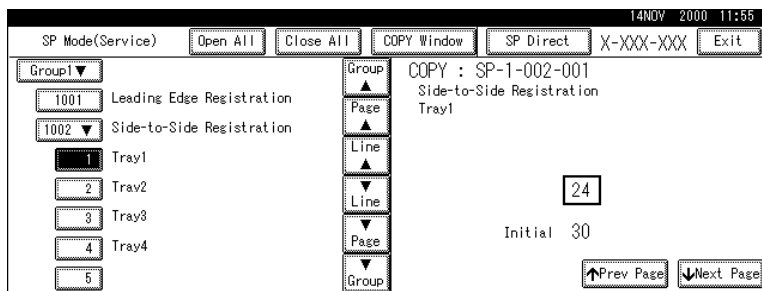
Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing

- 1) In the SP mode, select the test print and then press Copy Window.
- 2) Use the copy window (copier mode), to select the appropriate settings (paper size, etc.) for the test print.
- 3) Press Start (⏻) to execute the test print.
- 4) Press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode screen and repeat from step 1.

Selecting the Program Number

Program numbers have two or three levels.

1. Before you begin, refer to the Service Tables to find the SP that you want to adjust. (☞ 5.1.3)
2. Press the Group number on the left side SP Mode window that contains the SP that you want to adjust.
3. Use the scrolling buttons in the center of the SP mode window to display the SP number that you want to open, and then press that number to expand the list.
4. Use the center touch-panel buttons to scroll to the number and title of the item that you want to set and press. The small entry box on the right is activated and displays the default initial and the current setting below.



B004S501.WMF

NOTE: Refer to the Service Tables for the range of allowed settings. (☞ 5.1.3)

5. To enter a setting"
 - Press (+/-) to toggle between plus and minus and then use the keypad to enter the appropriate number. The number you enter will write over the previous setting.
 - Press (#) to enter the setting. (If you enter a number that is out of range, the key press is ignored.)
 - When you are prompted to complete the selection, press Yes.
6. If you need to perform a test print, press Copy Window to open the copy window and select the settings for the test print. Press Start (⏻) twice, and then press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode display.
7. When you are finished, press Exit twice to return to the copy window.

5.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES

Please note these general changes in this section:

- Group 8(Data Log 2) is a new group of counters.
- Along with the addition of Group 8, many of the Group 7 counters have been removed.

5.2.1 SERVICE TABLE KEY

Notation	What it means
[range / default / step]	Example: [-9 ~ +9 / +3.0 / 0.1 mm step]. The setting can be adjusted in the range ± 9 , value reset to +3.0 after an NVRAM reset, and the value can be changed in 0.1 mm steps with each key press.
*	Value stored in NVRAM. After a RAM reset, this default value (factory setting) is restored.
1111	An SP number set in bold-italics denotes a "Special Service Program" mode setting that appears only after entering the SP mode by pressing $\oplus$ on the 10-key pad and "Copy SP" on the touch-screen together.
35 cpm	B264
45 cpm	B265
DFU	Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value.
Japan only	The feature or item is for Japan only. Do not change this value.

5.2.2 SERVICE MODE LOCK/UNLOCK

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

1. If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the User Tool and then set "Service Mode Lock" to OFF. After he or she logs in:
[User Tools] > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Service Mode Lock > OFF
 - This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.
 - The service technician can do servicing on the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned on.
2. If you must use the printer bit switches, go into the SP mode and set **SP5169** to "1".
3. After machine servicing is completed:
 - Change **SP5169** from "1" to "0".
 - Turn the machine off and on.
 - Tell the administrator that you completed servicing the machine.
 - The administrator will then set the "Service Mode Lock" to ON.

5.2.3 SERVICE TABLES

SP1-xxx: Feed

1001*	Leading Edge Registration	
	Adjusts the printing leading edge registration using the trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No.11). [+9 ~ -9 / 3.0 / 0.1 mm] Use  to toggle between ± before entering the value. Specification: 3 ±2 mm	

1002*	Side-to-Side Registration	
	Adjusts the printing side-to-side registration from the 3rd paper feed station using the trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No.11). <i>Tray3, Tray4 for Paper Feed Unit.</i> Use the  key to toggle between + and - before entering the value. Specification: 2 ±1.5 mm	
1002 1	Tray 1	[-9 ~ +9/ +3.0 mm / 0.1 mm step]
1002 2	Tray 2	[-9 ~ +9/ +3.0 mm / 0.1 mm step]
1002 3	Tray 3	[-9 ~ +9/ +2.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step]
1002 4	Tray 4	[-9 ~ +9/ +2.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step]
1002 5	From Duplex Unit	[-9 ~ +9/ +0.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step]
1002 6	Bypass Feed	[-9 ~ +9/ +3.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step]
1002 7	LCT (if present)	[-9 ~ +9/ +1.5 mm / 0.1 mm/step]

1003*	Registration Buckle Adjustment	
	Adjusts the relay clutch timing at registration. Relay clutch timing determines the amount of paper buckle at registration. (A "+" setting causes more buckling.)	
1003 1	Trays 2,3,4 LCT	[-9 ~ +9 / 0 / 1 mm step]
1003 2	Duplex	
1003 3	Bypass	
1003 4	Tray 1 Feed	[-9 ~ +9 / 1 / 1 mm step]
1003 5	Bypass Thick Paper	[-9 ~ +9 / -2 / 1 mm step]

1007*	By-pass Feed Paper Size Display	
	Displays the paper width sensor data for the by-pass feed table.	

1012*	Exit Junction Solenoid Start Timing	
	Adjusts the timing of the solenoids at the entrance and exit of the paper exit section to accommodate the increased speed of the duplex unit. <i>This SP has been added to compensate for the increased operation speed of the duplex unit for this machine. Increase the value if the leading edges are jamming. Decrease the value if trailing edges are bending at the entrance</i>	
1012 1*	Exit Entrance Junction Solenoid	35 CPM: [200 ~ 450 ms / 370 ms / 10 ms] 45 CPM: [200 ~ 450 ms / 300 ms / 10 ms]
1012 2*	Exit Last Junction Solenoid	35 CPM: [200 ~ 450 ms / 370 ms / 10 ms] 45 CPM: [200 ~ 450 ms / 370 ms / 10 ms]

1103*	Fusing Idling Switches fusing idling on/off. When on, printing will not start until enough time has elapsed so the hot roller can reach optimum temperature. This ensures even heat on the hot roller. <i>Switch on if fusing on the 1st and 2nd copies is incomplete (this may occur if the room is cold.) You must switch SP1103-1 ON before you set the fusing interval with SP1103-2.</i>	
1103 1*	Enable Fusing Idling	0 = Off, 1 = On
1103 2*	Fusing Idling Interval	[0 ~ 60 sec. / 30 sec. / 1 sec.]
1103 3*	Fusing Pre-Rotation	Sets the machine to fusing idling only for 5 sec. for every job (when the original is set on the ARDF, when the ARDF cover is opened, etc.) and the fusing unit has reached the reload temperature (optimum temperature for operation). 0: Off. No 5 sec. idling done before a job. 1: On. 5 sec. idling done before every job. Note • The pre-fusing idling set with SP5959 executes after the 5 sec. idling selected with this SP is finished. • The idling stops if a new job is received before the idling completes.

1104*	Fusing Temperature Control Selects the fusing temperature control method. After changing this setting, be sure to power the machine off and on again with the main power switch to enable the new setting. [0~1 / 0 / 1] 0: Normal (ON/OFF control). Allows full application from ac power supply to bring the hot roller up to the target fusing temperature then shuts off. Determines the on time from the present temperature (detected by the thermistor on the hot roller) and the temperature of 1 cycle before. 1: Phase (hysteresis) control. Sets the upper and lower limits for the temperature; at the lower temperature the fusing lamp is on and at the higher temperature the fusing lamp is off. Change this setting to "0" only if the user has excessive electrical noise or interference on the power supply line. Such interference can cause voltage to drop when power is applied using the ON/OFF control method. Interference can be caused by the general poor quality of the power supply lines, or if the machine is sharing a power supply with other electrical devices such as fluorescent lights. Before changing this setting, make sure that the machine is connected to a power supply not shared by other electrical equipment. Note: Selecting Phase control ("1") could cause the fusing temperature control board to emit low pitched noise.	

1105*	Fusing Temperature Adjustment	
	<i>Allows adjustment of the hot roller temperature at the center and ends of the roller for the quality or thickness of the paper. The hot roller in this machine has two fusing lamps: one heats the center of the roller, the other heats both ends. Each fusing lamp can be adjusted separately.</i> <i>The "re-load temperature" is the "print ready temperature. When the fusing temperature exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Re-load Temp. = Fusing. Temp – SP Value.) that is higher than the SP1-105-2 setting.</i>	
1105 1	Roller Center: Trays	35 cpm: [120 ~ 200 / 160 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.]
	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller.	
1105 2	Roller Ends: Trays	35 cpm: [120 ~ 200 / 165 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: [120 ~ 200 / 175 / 1 deg.]
	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller.	
1105 3	Roller Center: Bypass	35 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg.]
	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller for bypass feed.	
1105 4	Roller Center: Ends	35 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg]
	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller for bypass feed.	
1105 5	Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center	[0 ~ 60 / 30 / 1 step]
	Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note: Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays)	
1105 6	Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends	[0 ~ 60 / 30 / 1 step]
	Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note: Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays)	
1105 7	Roller Center: Bypass (Thick Paper)	35 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg] 45 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg]
	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller for thick paper.	
1105 8	Roller Ends: Bypass (Thick Paper)	35 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg] 45 cpm: [120 ~ 220 / 170 / 1 deg]
	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller for thick paper.	
1105 9*	Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center (Thick Paper)	35 cpm: [0 ~ 60 / 0°C / 5] 45 cpm: [0~ 60 / 5°C /1]
	Sets the temperature for re-heating the hot roller center for thick paper.	
1105 10*	Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends (Thick Paper)	35 cpm: [0 ~ 60 / 0°C / 5] 45 cpm: [0~ 60 / 5°C /1]
	Sets the temperature for re-heating the hot roller ends for thick paper.	

1106	Fusing Temperature Display	
1106 1	Roller Center	Displays the fusing temperature for the center of the hot roller.
1106 2	Roller Ends	Displays the fusing temperature for the ends of the hot roller.
1106 3	I/O Board Temp. at Power On	Displays in the internal temperature of the machine when it was powered on.

1109*	Fusing Nip Band Check	
	Checks the fusing nip band. [0=Off, 1=On]	

1111*	Paper Reverse Timing (Duplex)	[+5 ~ -5 / 0 mm / 1 mm step]
	Adjusts the timing for stopping the rotation of the reverse roller after the trailing edge of the paper passes the duplex entrance sensor. <i>Adjust the timing if paper frequently jams at the inverter gate in the duplex unit.</i>	

1801*	Motor Speed Adjustment	
	Adjusts the speeds of the main motor, feed/development motor, and fusing exit motor. Each step decreases or increases motor speed in 0.15% increments	
1801 1	Main Motor	[-4 ~ +4 / 0 / 0.15%]
1801 2	Feed/Development Motor	[-4 ~ +4 / 0 / 0.15%]
1801 3	Fusing/Exit Motor	[-4 ~ +4 / 0 / 0.15%]

SP2-xxx: Drum

2001*	Charge Roller Bias Adjustment	
2001 1*	Copying	[−1000 ~ −2000 / −1500V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller for copying.	
2001 2*	ID Sensor Pattern	[0 ~ 700 / 250V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller when making the VSDP ID sensor pattern (for charge roller voltage correction). The actual charge roller voltage is this value plus the value of SP2001 1.	

2005*	Charge Roller Bias Correction	
2005 1*	Charge Roller Voltage Correction 1	[0.1 ~ 1.0 / 0.85 / 0.05 step]
	Adjusts the lower threshold value for the charge roller correction. <i>When the value of VSP/VSG is greater than this value, the charge roller voltage increases by 30 V (e.g., from −500 to −530).</i>	
2005 2*	Charge Roller Voltage Correction 2	[0.1 ~ 1.0 / 0.90 / 0.05 step]
	Adjusts the upper threshold value for the charge roller correction. <i>When the value of VSP/VSG is greater than this value, the charge roller voltage decreases by 30 V (absolute value).</i>	
2005 3*	Charge Roller Voltage Adjustment 1	[−1000 ~ −2000 / −1500V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the lower limit value for charge roller voltage correction.	
2005 4*	Charge Roller Voltage Adjustment 2	[−1000 ~ −2000 / −2000V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the upper limit value for charge roller voltage correction.	
2005 5*	Charge Roller Voltage Step	[0 ~ 100V / 30V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the correction voltage adjustment step size.	

2101*	Printing Erase Margin	
	Adjusts the leading edge (top), trailing edge (bottom), left, and right margins	
2101 1*	Leading Edge (Top)	[0.9 ~ 9.0 / 3 / 0.1 mm step] Spec: ±2 mm
2101 2*	Trailing Edge (Bottom)	[0.9 ~ 9.0 / 3 / 0.1 mm step] Spec: ±2 mm
2101 3*	Left Edge	[0.9 ~ 9.0 / 2 / 0.1 mm step] Spec: ±1.5 mm
2101 4*	Right Edge	[0.9 ~ 9.0 / 2 / 0.1 mm step] Spec: ±1.5 mm
2101 5*	Trailing Edge - Back side	[0.0 ~ 4.0 / 1.2 / 0.1 mm step] <i>Recommended: 2 ±1.5 mm</i>
2101 6*	Back Side - Left	[0.0 ~ 9.0 / 0.3 / 0.1 mm step] <i>Recommended: 2 ±1.5 mm</i>
2101 7*	Back Side - Right	[0.0 ~ 9.0 / 0.3 / 0.1 mm step] <i>Recommended: 2 +2.5/-1.5 mm</i>

2103*	LD Power Adjustment	DFU
	Adjusts the intensity of the laser for the copier, printer, and fax unit. The Copier and Printer/Fax settings can be adjusted separately.	
2103 1*	LD1 (Copier)	35 cpm: [−30~+64/ −10 /1 LSB step] 45 cpm: [−30~64/ 5 /1 LSB step]
2103 2*	LD2 (Copier)	35 cpm: [−30~+79/ −30 /1 LSB step] 45 cpm: [−30~79/ −25 /1 LSB step]
2103 3*	LD1 (Printer, FAX)	[−50 ~ −35 / −45 / 1 LSB step]
2103 4*	LD2 (Printer, FAX)	[−50 ~ −35 / −45 / 1 LSB step]
2103 5*	LD1 Adjustment Start/End	OFF/ON
2103 6*	LD2 Adjustment Start/End	OFF/ON

2109*	LD Beam Pitch Adjustment	
	Adjusts the beam gap for the dual beam system. After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing the NVRAM, use this SP mode to adjust the laser beam pitch. <i>This adjustment is performed by specifying the number of pulses to the stepper motor that will adjust the angle of rotation of the LD unit from the home position.</i>	
2109 1*	400 dpi	[400 dpi: [8~ 262 / 144 / 1 pulse step]
	Adjusts the laser beam pitch value for 400 dpi resolution. <i>After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing NVRAM, use this SP and SP2-109-3 to adjust the laser beam pitch.</i>	
2109 2*	600 dpi	[600 dpi: [30 ~ 284 / 168 / 1 pulse step]
	Adjusts the laser beam pitch value for 600 dpi resolution. <i>After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing NVRAM, use this SP and SP2-109-4 to adjust the laser beam pitch.</i>	
2109 3*	400 dpi Initial Setting	
	Initializes the laser beam pitch for 400 dpi using the value for SP2-109-1. <i>After entering a value for SP2-109-1, this SP must be used.</i>	
2109 4*	600 dpi Initial Setting	
	Initializes the laser beam pitch for 600 dpi using the value for SP2-109-2. <i>After entering a value for SP2-109-2, this SP must be used.</i>	
2109 5*	Auto Pitch Adjustment Interval	[0 ~ 65535 / 1000 / 1 step]
	Sets the interval for automatic laser beam pitch adjustment. <i>When the number of times that the resolution has been changed reaches this value, the laser unit position is automatically corrected.</i>	
2109 6	Current LD Unit Position	
	Displays the current LD unit position (number of pulses from home position). If this is different from the value of 2-109-1 or 2-109-2, LD unit positioning has failed.	
2109 7	Beam Pitch Change Counter	
	Displays how many times the LD unit position has been changed (how many times the resolution has changed.) <i>When the laser beam pitch adjustment is done, this counter is reset to zero.</i>	
2109 8	Beam Pitch Data Reset	
	Resets the values of SP2-109-6 and SP2-109-7. <i>After replacing the LD unit, this SP mode must be performed. See the LD Unit Removal Procedure.</i>	

2110	Test Mode dpi	DFU , [See below / 8/ 0 ~ 18]
	Sets the scanning resolution (dpi). Note: Any setting other than 0, 4, or 8 will cause an error.	
	0 = 400 x 400 dpi	15 = 439 x 430 dpi
	1 = 391 x 406 dpi	16 = 476 x 476 dpi
	4= 300 x 300 dpi	17 = 483 x 465 dpi
	8= 600 x 600 dpi	18= 465 x 483 dpi

2112	Polygon Motor Off Timer	[0 ~ 60 s / 10 s / 5 s step]
	Input the time that the polygon motor is to switch off after the printer has remained idle for the specified time and entered the standby mode. <i>If set to zero, the polygon motor never switches off in standby mode. However, if the machine enters the energy saver mode, the polygon motor will ignore the zero setting and switch itself off.</i>	

2201*	Development Bias Adjustment	
2201 1*	Development Bias	[-200 ~ -700 / -560V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the development bias for copying. <i>Use as a temporary measure to correct faint copies from an aging drum.</i>	
2201 2*	ID Sensor Pattern	[- 200 ~ -700 / -480V / 10V step]
	Adjusts the development bias for the ID sensor pattern for VSP	

2207	Forced Toner Supply	
	Forces the toner bottle to supply toner at 1-second intervals for up to 30 seconds. To start, press  .	

2208*	Toner Supply Mode	[0 : Sensor control, 1: Image pixel count]
	Selects the toner mode. <i>If you select 1, SP2-209-002 should be set to its default value. Use image pixel count modes only as a temporary measure if the ID or TD sensor is defective.</i>	

2209*	Toner Supply Rate	
2209 1	Toner Rate	[10 ~ 800 / 60 mg/s / 5 mg/s step]
	Sets the amount of toner supplied every second by the toner supply motor. The length of time the motor remains on is determined by the data read by the TD sensor and ID sensor. <i>Increasing this value reduces the toner supply clutch on time. Use a lower value if the user tends to make lots of copies that have a high proportion of black.</i>	
2209 2*	Toner Supply Correction Data	[25 ~ 300 / 300 / 25 step]
	Displays the toner supply correction coefficient (K). It can also be used to adjust K, but the value is changed again when VT is measured for the next copy. <i>The toner supply rate depends on the amount of toner in the toner bottle. This change is corrected using this coefficient. This SP can be used to check the toner supply condition. The lower the value of K, the lower the toner density</i>	

2210*	ID Sensor Pattern Interval	
	Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern prints.	
2210 1*	Job Page Count	[0 ~ 200 / 10 / 1]
	Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern printing. For users that do not make many copies daily, set a smaller interval to compensate for the effects of seasonal and weather changes.	
2210 2*	Forced Page Count	[2 ~ 999 / 200 / 1]
	Forces creation of the ID sensor pattern to prevent low density copies for customers who use the copier for long copy jobs.	

2213*	Copies After Toner Near-End
	Selects the number of copies that can be printed once the copier has detected toner near-end. [0~2/0/1 step] [0: 90 copies, 1: No copies, 2: 10 copies] Notes: • If "1" is selected the machine stops printing when the TD sensor output drops below the prescribed level. • Select 1 or 2 if the customer normally makes copies of very high density.

2220*	Vref Manual Setting
	Adjusts the TD sensor reference voltage (Vref). Change this value after replacing the development unit with another development unit that contains toner. [1.0 ~ 5.00 V / 4.00V / 2.0 step] 1. Check the value of SP2-220 in both the machine containing the test unit and the machine that you are going to move it to. 2. Install the test development unit, and then input the VREF for this unit into SP2-220. 3. After the test, put back the old development unit, and change SP2-220 back to the original value. Notes:

2223*	Vt Display
2223 1	Current
	Displays the TD sensor output voltage for the immediately previous copy.
2223 2	Average Previous 10 copies
	Displays the average of the most recent TD sensor outputs (from the previous 10 copies).
2223 3	Rate of Change
	Displays the rate of change in the TD sensor output.
2223 4	GAIN
	Displays the GAIN value used to calculate the on time for the toner supply motor.
2223 5	Image Pixel Count
	Displays the image pixel count.

2228	Developer Lot No.
	Use the keyboard display to enter the lot number of the developer. (The lot number is embossed on the top edge of the developer pack.) Press "Execute" to initialize the developer and force toner supply to the toner hopper at machine installation.

2301	Transfer Current Adjustment	
2301 1	1st Side of Paper	35 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 35 / 1 μ A step] 45 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 45] / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for printing the first side of the paper (image area). <i>If the user uses thicker paper, the current may have to be increased to ensure sufficient transfer of toner.</i>	
2301 2	2nd Side of Paper	35 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 35 / 1 μ A step] 45 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 40] / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for printing the second side of the paper (image area).	
2301 3	Leading Edge	35 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 35 / 1 μ A step] 45 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 45] / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for copying at leading edge of the paper. <i>Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.</i>	
2301 4	Bypass Feed (45ppm)	45 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 45 / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for copying from the by-pass tray (image area) for the 45 CPM. <i>If the user normally feeds thicker paper from the bypass tray, use a higher setting.</i>	
2301 5	Leading Edge Bypass Feed (45ppm)	45 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 60 / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for copying at the leading edge of paper fed from the by-pass tray for the 45 CPM. <i>Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.</i>	
2301 6	Bypass Feed (35 ppm)	35 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 35 / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for copying from the by-pass tray (image area) for the 35 CPM.	
2301 7	Leading Edge Bypass Feed (35 ppm)	35 CPM: [20 ~ 100 μ A / 45 / 1 μ A step]
	Adjusts the transfer current for copying at the leading edge of paper fed from the by-pass tray for the 35 CPM.	

2309*	Transfer Current Correction	
2309 1	Paper Lower Width (a)	[0 ~ 297 / 150 / 1 mm step]
	Adjusts the lower paper width threshold for the transfer current, charge voltage, and development bias corrections. <i>Use this SP when an image problem (e.g., insufficient toner transfer) occurs with a small width paper. If the paper width is smaller than this value, the transfer current will be multiplied by the factor in SP2-309-3 (paper tray) or SP2-309-5 (by-pass).</i>	
2309 2	Paper Upper Width (b)	[0 ~ 297 / 216 / 1 mm step]
	Adjusts the upper paper width threshold for the transfer current, charge voltage, and development bias corrections. <i>As for SP2-309-1, but the factors are in SP2-309-4 (paper tray) and SP2-309-6 (by-pass).</i>	
2309 3	Paper Tray (alpha)	[1.0 ~ 3 / 1.2 / 0.1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-1.	
2309 4	Paper Tray (beta)	[1.0 ~ 3 / 1.2 / 0.1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-2.	
2309 5	By-Pass Feed (gamma)	[1.0 ~ 3 / 1.5 / 0.1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-1.	
2309 6	By-Pass Feed (delta)	[1.0 ~ 3 / 1.5 / 0.1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-2.	

2801*	TD Sensor Initial Setting	
	Performs the TD sensor initial setting. This SP mode controls the voltage applied to the TD sensor to make the TD sensor output about 4.0 V. Press "Execute" to start. After finishing this, the TD sensor output voltage is displayed. <i>Use this mode only after installing the machine, changing the TD sensor, or adding new developer.</i>	

2802*	TD Sensor Manual Setting	
	Allows you to adjust the TD sensor output manually for the following.	
2802 1	VTs	[1.00 ~ 5.00V / 4.78V / 0.02V step]
	Adjusts the TD sensor output (VT). <i>Change this value after replacing the development unit with another one that already contains toner. For example, when using a development unit from another machine for test purposes. To adjust VT, use a similar procedure as for SP2-220.</i>	
2802 2	VTMAX	[1.00 ~ 5.00V / 4.78V / 0.02V step]
	Adjusts the maximum value for SP2802 1.	
2802 3	VTMIN	[1.00 ~ 5.00V / 1.00V / 0.02V step]
	Adjusts the minimum value for SP2802 1.	

2805*	Developer Initialization	
	Performs the developer initialization. Press "Execute" to start. This SP should be performed after doing SP2801 at installation and after replacing the drum.	

2902	Test Pattern	
2902 2	IPU Test Pattern	Pattern 0 ~ 15 (●5.2.4)
	Prints the test patterns for the IPU chip. <i>This SP mode is useful for finding whether the BICU or the SBU is defective. If the printout is not OK, the BICU is defective.</i>	
2902 3	Printing Test Pattern	Pattern 0 ~ 38(●5.2.4)
	Prints the printer test patterns. Select the number of the test pattern that you want to print. <i>This SP mode is useful for finding whether the LDDR or the BICU is defective. If the printout is not satisfactory, the LDDR is defective.</i>	

2909*	Main Scan Magnification	
	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction for copy mode and printer mode. Press $\odot$ to toggle $\pm$.	
2909 1*	Copier	[-2.0 ~ +2.0 / 0 / 0.1% step]
2909 2*	Printer	[-2.0 ~ +2.0 / 0 / 0.1% step]

2911	Transfer Current On/Off Timing	
2911 1	La (On Timing)	[-30 ~ +30 / 0 mm / 1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current on timing at leading edge.	
2911 2	Lb (Switch Timing)	[0 ~ +30 / 10 mm / 1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current switch timing. This determines when the leading edge stops and the image area current begins (see SP2-301).	
2911 3	Lc (Off Timing)	[-30 ~ +30 / - 5 mm / 1 mm step]
	Adjusts the transfer current off timing. (e.g. -5 mm is 5 mm after the trailing edge.)	

2912*	Drum Reverse Rotation Interval	DFU

2913*	Print Density for Test Pattern	[0 ~ 15 / 15 / 1]
	Sets the print density for the patterns printed with SP2-902-3.	

2914*	Process Control Setting	
2914 1*	C-alpha	[0 ~ 400 / 150 / 10V step]
	Adjusts the charge roller voltage used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-1. <i>Use this SP when an image problem (such as white spots at the center of black dots or breaks in thin black lines) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.</i>	
2914 2*	C-beta	[0 ~ 400 / 0 / 10V step]
	Adjusts the charge roller voltage used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-2. <i>Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.</i>	
2914 3*	B-gamma	[0 ~ 300 / 200 / 10V step]
	Adjusts the development bias used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-1. <i>Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.</i>	
2914 4*	B-delta	[0 ~ 300 / 50 / 10V step]
	Adjusts the development bias used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-2. <i>Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.</i>	

2920	LD Off Check	DFU

2960*	Toner Overflow Sensor	[0 = No, 1 = Yes]
	Selects whether or not the toner overflow sensor is activated.	

2964*	Transfer Cleaning Blade Forming	[0 ~ 30/ 0 / 1 sheets]
	Applies a pattern of toner to the transfer belt at a defined interval between sheets on the transfer belt in order to reduce friction between the belt surface and the cleaning blade. <i>Under conditions of high temperature and high humidity, the density control feature may reduce the amount of toner, which also reduces the amount of toner on the surface of the transfer belt. With less toner on the belt, the friction between the belt and the blade increases, and could cause the blade to bend or scour the surface of the belt.</i>	

2969*	LD – PWM Selection	
2969 1*	Printer Output LD – PWM Selection	[1 ~ 4 / 1 / 1 step]
	Changes the LD power PWM control for printed copies. A smaller value produces a lighter image. Use this SP to adjust the image density for printing from a personal computer or printing a received fax message. 1: 87.5% 2: 75% 3: 62.5% 4: 50%	
2969 2*	Fax Output LD – PWM Selection	[1 ~ 4 / 1 / 1 step]
	Changes the LD power PWM control for printed fax messages. A smaller value produces a lighter image. Use this SP to adjust the image density for printing fax messages. 1: 87.5% 2: 75% 3: 62.5% 4: 50%	

2971	Toner Full Sensor Count	DFU

2972*	Grayscale Limit	
	A new feature of this machine that controls the halftone density level to prevent deterioration of the OPC. The halftone density is detected by the ID sensor, and the machine adjusts the intensity of the LD beam according to the upper/lower limit setting.	
2972 1*	Upper Limit	[0 ~ 100 / 60 / 1 step]
	Defines the upper limit for grayscale. <i>A larger value allows a wider range of halftones at the pale end of the scale. If the image contains pale areas with fuzzy borders surrounded by dark areas, reduce this value to make the borders clearer.</i>	
2972 2*	Lower Limit	[0 ~ 100 / 40 / 1 step]
	Defines the lower limit for grayscale. <i>A smaller value allows a wider range of halftones at the dark end of the scale.</i>	

2973*	Grayscale Copy Interval Check	[0 ~ 1000 / 100 / 10 step]
	Sets the halftone operation interval in order to prevent deterioration of the OPC. If the number of copies exceeds this setting, at the end of the job, or if the door is opened and closed, charge correction is executed.	

2974*	Image Density Adjustment	[1 ~ 5 / 3 / 1 step]
	Adjusts image density. Changing this setting adjusts development bias and ID sensor output voltage that in turn raises or lowers image density.	

2975*	Toner End Detection ON Time	[0 ~ 2,000 / 0 / 10 s step]
	Sets a time limit for issuing the toner near end warning on the operation panel. The time may need to be shorter for customers who run especially large print jobs (working at night, for example) to ensure earlier warning of the toner near end condition so toner out does not interrupt a long job. 0: Normal end detection (90 sheets after near-end detected (SP2213))	

2976*	Toner Bottle Total On Time	[0 ~ 2,000,000 / 0 / 1 ms step]
	Displays the total ON time of the toner supply motor, calculated from when the toner bottle was replaced. Use this to check that the toner end count (SP2975) is working properly. <i>When SP2975 is set to any value other than "0", this value is displayed when it matches the setting of SP2975. When SP2975 is set to "0", SP2976 is disabled. SP2976 is automatically set to zero by toner end recovery.)</i>	
2980*	Charge Counter	[0 ~ 1000000 / 0 / 1 step]
	Sets the number of pages to print after toner and carrier initialization before the charge input is increased to compensate for deterioration over time in the polarity of the carrier. <i>The strength in the polarity of the carrier in the toner will eventually decrease and cause lower charge output. Setting the charge output to increase after a specified number of copies can compensate for this effect.</i>	
2981	Polygon Mirror Rotation Switch	DFU
	Switches the number revolutions per minute of the polygon mirror motor. 0: Rpm determined by engine 1: Rpm for 35 CPM 2: Rpm for 45 CPM	

SP3-xxx: Process

3001*	ID Sensor Initial Setting	
3001 1	ID Sensor PWM Setting	[0 ~ 255 / 100 / 1 step]
	Allows you to reset the PWM of the ID sensor LED to avoid a service call error after clearing NVRAM or replacing the NVRAM. <i>The PWM data is stored by executing SP-3001-2.</i>	
3001 2	ID Sensor Initialization	—
	Performs the ID sensor initial setting. ID sensor output for the bare drum (VSG) is adjusted automatically to 4.0 ±0.2 V. <i>Press “Execute” to start. Perform this setting after replacing or cleaning the ID sensor, replacing the drum, or clearing NVRAM.</i>	

3103*	ID Sensor Output Display	
	Displays the current VSG, VSP, VSDP, and grayscale control. If the ID sensor does not detect the ID pattern, “VSP = 5.0 V/VSG = 5.0 V” is displayed and an SC code is generated. If the ID sensor does not detect the bare area of the drum, “VSP = 0.0 V/VSG = 0.0 V” is displayed and an SC code is generated.	
3103 1*	Vsg (Drum Surface Output)	[0V ~ 5.00V]
3103 2*	Vsp (Pattern Output)	[0V ~ 5.00V]
3103 3*	Vsdp (Immediate Post-Pattern Output).	[0V ~ 5.00V]
3103 4*	Vsm/Vsg (Grayscale Post-Pattern Output)	[0V ~ 5.00V]

3905*	Hot Roller Stripper Cleaning After Job	
	Toner and carbon clinging to the hot roller strippers can cause poor print quality. To prevent this, toner and carbon are dislodged from the hot roller strippers in two ways: 1) switching the fusing motor on/off after every print job, and 2) freely rotating the hot roller for 5 s at the beginning of every print job. These SP set up operation of the first method (switching the fusing motor on/off after a print job.)For details, see Section “6.6.2 Hot Roller Stripper Cleaning”. Also see SP 5959.	
3905 1*	Number Rotations	
	This SP sets the number of times the 1st Cleaning is done for the number of pages prescribed with SP3905 002 have been printed. [0.0~1.0/ 1.0 /0.1] Note: - All fans remain on during cleaning and then switch off 60 sec. after the cleaning cycle ends. - Raising this setting can increase wear on the hot roller and cleaning roller and shorten the service life of the hot roller.	
3905 2*	Number of Pages	
	This SP prescribes the number of pages to accumulate before the fusing motor is switched on/off (1 cycle). [0 ~ 1000 / 5 / 1] Unless you change this setting, 15 sec. after a total of 5 pages have been printed (the accumulated total of several small jobs), the fusing motor will switch on for 15 sec. and then switch off. This 15 sec. off/15 sec. on at the end of a cleaning job is the <i>1st Cleaning</i> .	

3905 3*	No. addtnl. sheets for 2nd HR stripper cleaning This SP prescribes the number of pages to print continuously before the fusing motor is switched on/off twice. [6 ~ 49 / 30 / 1] Unless you change this setting, 15 sec. after the end of every print job of 30 to 49 <u>continuous</u> pages, the <i>1st Cleaning</i> will be done twice (fusing motor is switched on/off twice at 15 sec. intervals).
3905 4*	No. addtnl. sheets for 3rd HR stripper cleaning This SP prescribes the number of pages to print continuously before the 1st Cleaning is done once at the end of the print job, pauses 45 sec., and then executes again. [50 ~ 999/ 100 / 1] Unless you change this setting, 15 sec. after the end of every print job of 50 to 999 continuous pages, the fusing motor will switch on for 15 sec., switch off for 4 sec. switch on for 15 sec. and then switch off. Switching the fusing motor on again for 15 sec. after 45 sec. have elapsed after the 1st Cleaning is called the <i>2nd Cleaning</i>.
3905 5*	No. of times for 3rd HR stripper cleaning This SP prescribes the number of times that the cleaning pattern of SP3905 004 is repeated for the number of pages prescribed by SP3905 004. [0~5/0/1] Unless you change this setting, the cleaning pattern of SP3904 (1st Cleaning, then the 2nd Cleaning after 35 sec.) is not repeated. If you change this setting to "1" for example, then the pattern will be repeated once.
3905 6*	Job/HR stripper cleaning priority setting This SP setting determines whether cleaning is canceled if another job starts while cleaning is in progress. 0: New job priority 1: Cleaning priority Setting this SP to "1" ensures that every cleaning cycle executes completely before another job is allowed to start.

SP4-xxx: Scanner

4008*	Scanner Sub Scan Magnification	[−0.9 ~ 0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1% step]
	Adjusts the magnification of the sub scan direction during scanning. Changing this value changes the scanner motor speed. Press  to toggle ±.	

4010*	Scanner Leading Edge Registration	[−0.9 ~ 0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm step]
	Adjusts the leading edge registration for scanning. Press  to toggle ±. <i>As you enter a negative value, the image moves toward the leading edge.</i>	

4011*	Scanner Side-to-Side Registration	[−4.6 ~ +4.6 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm step]
	Adjusts side-to-side registration for scanning. Press  to toggle ±. <i>As you enter negative values, the image will disappear at the left, and as you enter positive values, the image will appear at the left.</i>	

4012*	Scanner Erase Margin	
	Adjusts scanning margins for the leading and trailing edges (sub scan) and right and left edge (main scan). Do not adjust unless the customer desires a scanner margin greater than the printer margin.	
4012 1*	Leading Edge	[0 ~ 9 / 1.0 / 0.1 mm step] (Specification: 3 ± 2 mm)
4012 2*	Trailing Edge	[0 ~ 9 / 0.5 / 0.1 mm step] (Specification: 2 ± 2 mm)
4012 3*	Right	[0 ~ 9 / 0.5 / 0.1 mm step] (Specification: +2.5 ~ -1.5 mm)
4012 4*	Left	[0 ~ 9 / 1.0 / 0.1 mm step] (Specification: 2 ± 1.5 mm)

4013	Scanner Free Run	
	Performs a scanner free run with the exposure lamp off. [OFF] [ON]	

4016	White Board Read Adjust	
4016 1	Read Start Position	
	Adjusts the scanning start position on the white plate for auto shading. The default is 10.5 mm from the leading edge. The setting specifies how far scanning starts from the default position. [−5.0 ~ +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]	
4016 2	Read Width	
	Adjusts the width of the area on the white plate (in the sub scan direction) that is scanned for auto shading. The default is 4.76 mm. The current setting specifies the difference from this default. [−5.0 ~ +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]	

4018	Scanner Optical Adjust Axis DFU	

4019	Scanner Read Position DFU	

4020*	ADF Scan Glass Dust Check
	This function checks the narrow scanning glass of the ADF for dust that can cause black lines in copies. If dust is detected a system banner message is displayed, but processing does not stop.
4020 1*	Check On/Off Change
	Issues a warning if there is dust on the narrow scanning glass of the ADF when the original size is detected before a job starts. This function can detect dust on the white plate above the scanning glass, as well as dust on the glass. Sensitivity of the level of detection is adjusted with SP4999 2. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Off. No dust warning. 1: On. Dust warning. This warning does not stop the job. Note: Before switching this setting on, clean the ADF scanning glass and the white plate above the scanning glass.
4020 2*	Detect Level
	Adjusts the sensitivity for dust detection on the ADF scanning glass. This SP is available only after SP49991 is switched on. [0~8/ 4/ 1] If you see black streaks in copies when no warning has been issued, raise the setting to increase the level of sensitivity. If warnings are issued when you see not black streaks in copies, lower the setting. Note: Dust that triggers a warning could move be removed from the glass by the originals in the feed path. If the dust is removed by passing originals, this is not detected and the warning remains on.

4301	APS Sensor Output Display
	Displays the time required to detect the size of the paper on the scanner exposure glass. (7) [00011111] (0)

4303*	APS A5/LT Size Detection
	Determines whether an original of non-standard size is detected as A5/HLT size by the APS sensor. 0: Non-standard size not detected as A5/HLT 1: Non-standard size detected as A5/HLT LEF 2: Non-standard size detected as A5/HLT SEF <i>If 0 is selected, "Cannot detect original size" will be displayed.</i>

4305*	Original Size Detection
	Selects whether or not the copier APS sensor detects the original as 8K/16K or A4/LT. 0: Normal (APS detects standard sizes) 1: A4 or LT original size detect enabled 1: 8K, 16K paper size detect enabled (For China, Taiwan only)

4307*	APS Sensor Output Display	0: Original size detection at power on disabled. 1: Original size detection at power on enabled
	Determines whether or not the original size is detected while the exposure lamp lights during initialization.	

4428	Scanner Adjustment DFU	
44281	Flag Display	
44282	Start	
44283	Flag Reset	

4901*	SBU Setting DFU

4995	Scanner Evaluation Mode DFU

4550*	Scanner: Text: Print	
	These SP codes set the MTF (Modular Transfer Function* ¹) for text printed after scanning. Note: - As a general rule, adjust the level (coefficient) before adjusting the strength. - Raising the brightness or contrast level may increase the occurrence of moiré	
4550 1	MTF Filter Level: Main Scan	Set the MTF coefficient for main/sub scan directions. [0~15/8/1] 0: Weakest ← 8: Default → 15: Strongest
4550 2	MTF Filter Level: Sub Scan	
4550 3	MTF Filter Strength: Main Scan	Set the MTF strength for main/sub scan directions. [0~7/4/1] 0: Weakest ← 4: Default → 7: Strongest
4550 4	MTF Filter Strength: Sub Scan	
4550 5	Smoothing Filter	Selects the level of smoothing for originals that contain dithered images. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest
4550 6	Brightness (Not Used)	Sets the overall brightness of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4550 7	Contrast (Not Used)	Sets the overall contrast of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4550 8	Isolated Dot Removal	Sets the level of independent dot erasure to improve the appearance of background. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest

*1 When the CCD converts the original image to electrical signals, the contrast is reduced due to the influence that adjacent white and black pixels have on one another as a result of lens properties. Typically, you will see very narrow width and spacing between black and white areas. MTF corrects this problem and emphasizes image detail.

4551*	Scanner: Text: OCR	
	These SP codes set the MTF (Modular Transfer Function* ¹) for OCR scan mode. Note: - As a general rule, adjust the level (coefficient) before adjusting the strength. - Raising the brightness or contrast level may increase the occurrence of moiré	
4551 1	MTF Filter Level: Main Scan	Set the MTF coefficient for main/sub scan directions. [0~15/8/1] 0: Weakest ← 8: Default → 15: Strongest
4551 2	MTF Filter Level: Sub Scan	
4551 3	MTF Filter Strength: Main Scan	Set the MTF strength for main/sub scan directions. [0~7/4/1] 0: Weakest ← 4: Default → 7: Strongest
4551 4	MTF Filter Strength: Sub Scan	
4551 5	Smoothing Filter	Selects the level of smoothing. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest
4551 6	Brightness (Not Used)	Sets the overall brightness of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4551 7	Contrast (Not Used)	Sets the overall contrast of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4551 8	Isolated Dot Removal	Sets the level of independent dot erasure to improve the appearance of background. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest

*1 When the CCD converts the original image to electrical signals, the contrast is reduced due to the influence that adjacent white and black pixels have on one another as a result of lens properties. Typically, you will see very narrow width and spacing between black and white areas. MTF corrects this problem and emphasizes image detail.

4552*	Scanner: Text/Photo	
	These SP codes set the MTF (Modular Transfer Function* ¹) for Text/Photo mode. Note:	
	- As a general rule, adjust the level (coefficient) before adjusting the strength. - Raising the brightness or contrast level may increase the occurrence of moiré	
4552 1	MTF Filter Level: Main Scan	Set the MTF coefficient for main/sub scan directions. [0~15/8/1] 0: Weakest ← 8: Default → 15: Strongest
4552 2	MTF Filter Level: Sub Scan	
4552 3	MTF Filter Strength: Main Scan	Set the MTF strength for main/sub scan directions. [0~7/4/1] 0: Weakest ← 4: Default → 7: Strongest
4552 4	MTF Filter Strength: Sub Scan	
4552 5	Smoothing Filter	Selects the level of smoothing. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest
4552 6	Brightness (Not Used)	Sets the overall brightness of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4552 7	Contrast (Not Used)	Sets the overall contrast of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4552 8	Isolated Dot Removal	Sets the level of independent dot erasure to improve the appearance of background. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest

*1 When the CCD converts the original image to electrical signals, the contrast is reduced due to the influence that adjacent white and black pixels have on one another as a result of lens properties. Typically, you will see very narrow width and spacing between black and white areas. MTF corrects this problem and emphasizes image detail.

4553*	Scanner: Photo	
	These SP codes set the MTF (Modular Transfer Function* ¹) for Photo mode. Note: - As a general rule, adjust the level (coefficient) before adjusting the strength. - Raising the brightness or contrast level may increase the occurrence of moiré	
4553 1	MTF Filter Level: Main Scan	Set the MTF coefficient for main/sub scan directions. [0~15/8/1] 0: Weakest ← 8: Default → 15: Strongest
4553 2	MTF Filter Level: Sub Scan	
4553 3	MTF Filter Strength: Main Scan	Set the MTF strength for main/sub scan directions. [0~7/4/1] 0: Weakest ← 4: Default → 7: Strongest
4553 4	MTF Filter Strength: Sub Scan	
4553 5	Smoothing Filter	Selects the level of smoothing. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest
4553 6	Brightness (Not Used)	Sets the overall brightness of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4553 7	Contrast (Not Used)	Sets the overall contrast of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4553 8	Isolated Dot Removal	Sets the level of independent dot erasure to improve the appearance of background. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest

*1 When the CCD converts the original image to electrical signals, the contrast is reduced due to the influence that adjacent white and black pixels have on one another as a result of lens properties. Typically, you will see very narrow width and spacing between black and white areas. MTF corrects this problem and emphasizes image detail.

4556*	Scanner Grey Scale	
	These SP codes set the MTF (Modular Transfer Function* ¹) for Grayscale.	
	Note: - As a general rule, adjust the level (coefficient) before adjusting the strength. - Raising the brightness or contrast level may increase the occurrence of moiré	
4556 1	MTF Filter Level: Main Scan	Set the MTF coefficient for main/sub scan directions. [0~15/0/1] 0: Weakest ← 8: Default → 15: Strongest
4556 2	MTF Filter Level: Sub Scan	
4556 3	MTF Filter Strength: Main Scan	Set the MTF strength for main/sub scan directions. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest
4556 4	MTF Filter Strength: Sub Scan	
4556 5	Smoothing Filter	Selects the level of smoothing. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest
4556 6	Brightness (Not Used)	Sets the overall brightness of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4556 7	Contrast (Not Used)	Sets the overall contrast of the image. [1~255/128/1] 1: Weakest ← 128: Default → 255: Strongest
4556 8	Isolated Dot Removal	Sets the level of independent dot erasure to improve the appearance of background. [0~7/0/1] 0: Default (Off) → 7: Strongest

*1 When the CCD converts the original image to electrical signals, the contrast is reduced due to the influence that adjacent white and black pixels have on one another as a result of lens properties. Typically, you will see very narrow width and spacing between black and white areas. MTF corrects this problem and emphasizes image detail.

4600*	SBU Version
	This SP displays the ID code of the SBU. This is an 8-byte display. Bytes 3 to 0 are fixed (0010). Bytes 7 to 4 display the ID code of the SBU.

4605*	Scanner Adjustment	
	Use these SP codes to 1) display the status of the white level peak adjustment for the SBU, and 2) do the adjustment manually.	
4605 1*	Flag Display	Displays the status of standard white plate density adjustment: 1: White level peak density adjusted 0: White level peak density not adjusted
4605 2*	Start	Sets the machine in the standard white plate density adjustment mode (a message is displayed on the LCD). Place a T6200 text chart on the exposure glass and press [1] to do the white level peak density adjustment with the standard white plate. After execution a message tells you whether the adjustment succeeded or not. 0: Off 1: On
4605 3*	Flag Reset	Resets the flag that indicates the status of the standard white plate density adjustment.

4610*	Standard White Level Adjustment: This Time After the white peak level density has been adjusted manually with SP 4605 2, this SP code detects the difference between the adjustment and the target reference and stores this value in NVRAM. [0~255/ 150 /1]	
4613*	Standard White Pre-Level Adjustment: Last Time DFU	
4616*	Standard White Level Adjustment: At Factory DFU	
4624*	BK Adjustment DFU These SP codes allow you to confirm the values for rough and detail adjustments of the black level even and odd channels when the machine was turned on. You can also adjust these values manually with the 10-key pad. If you change any of these SP codes manually, be sure to turn the machine off and on to enable the new settings.	
4624 1	EVEN	Rough adjustment, this time [0~255/ 200 /1]
4624 2	ODD	
4624 3	EVEN	Detail adjustment, this time [0~255/ 200 /1]
4624 4	ODD	
4629*	Gain Adjustment: Current When the machine is turned on, the SBU performs separate fine adjustments for Ech (the even channel) and Och (the odd channel). These SP codes read the values of adjustments done after the machine was powered on. These SP codes should display 223±1, set by the white level peak adjustment as the fine gain adjustment and sent to the DAC. You can use these SP codes to adjust the value manually. Be sure to turn the printer off and on to enable any settings that you change.	
4629 1	EVEN	EVEN Channel (Ech) [0~255/ 0 /1]
4629 2	ODD	ODD Channel (Och) [0~255/ 0 /1]
4640*	SBU Setting DFU	
4640 1	Black Level Loop Count: Offset 1	[0~255/ 0 /1]
4640 2	Black Level Loop Count: Offset 2	
4641*	SBU Setting: White Level Loop Count Displays the number of loops executed during white peak level adjustment for AGC (Automatic Gain Control). This SP is for display only and the value cannot be adjusted. NIA [0~255/ 0 /1]	

4646*	SBU Setting: Time-out Flag	
	Use this SP to determine whether the automatic scanner adjustment loop has exceeded the prescribed number of loops and flagged a timeout. The position of the bits that display "1" tell you where the error has occurred.	
	Bit No.	Where the Error Occurred
	Bit 0	Black Level Scan Data – Ech
	Bit 1	Black Level Scan Data – Och
	Bit 2	Gain Adjustment Timeoout – Ech
	Bit 3	Gain Adjustment Timeout – Och
	Bit 7	Reference Adjustment Timeout

4655*	BK Adjustment: Prev. DFU	
	These SP codes allow you to confirm the values for rough and detail adjustments of the black level even and odd channels before the machine was powered on. You can also adjust these values manually with the 10-key pad. If you change any of these SP codes manually, be sure to turn the machine off and on to enable the new settings.	
4655 1	EVEN	Rough adjustment – EVEN channel. [0~255/ 0 /1]
4655 2	ODD	Rough adjustment – ODD channel. [0~255/ 200 /1]
4655 3	EVEN	Detail adjustment – EVEN channel. [0~255/ 200 /1]
4655 4	ODD	Detail adjustment – ODD channel. [0~255/ 200 /1]

4647	SBU Setting: SBU Reset Flag Error DFU	

4659*	Gain Adjustment Last Time	
	When the machine is turned on, the SBU performs separate fine adjustments for Ech (the even channel) and Och (the odd channel). These SP codes read the values of the adjustments in effect before the machine was powered on. These SP codes should display 223±1, set by the white level peak adjustment as the fine gain adjustment and sent to the DAC. You can use these SP codes to adjust the value manually. Be sure to turn the printer off and on to enable any settings that you change.	
4659 1	EVEN	[0~255/ 0 /1]
4659 2	ODD	

4674*	BK Rough Adjustment: Factory DFU	
4674 1	EVEN	[0~255/ 200 /1]
4674 2	ODD	
4674 3	EVEN	
4674 4	ODD	

4678*	Gain Adjustment: Factory DFU	
	When the machine is turned on, the SBU performs separate fine adjustments for Ech (the even channel) and Och (the odd channel). These SP codes read the values of the adjustments in effect before the machine was powered on. These SP codes should display 223 ± 1 , set by the white level peak adjustment as the fine gain adjustment and sent to the DAC. You can use these SP codes to adjust the value manually. Be sure to turn the printer off and on to enable any settings that you change.	
46781	EVEN	[0~255/0/1]
46782	ODD	

4691*	White Peak Level	
4691 1	EVEN	[0~255/0/1]
4691 2	ODD	

4694*	Black Level	
4694 1	EVEN	[0~255/0/1]
4694 2	ODD	

4800	Black Level Adjustment Mode DFU	
	This SP switches the black offset compensation mode on and off. Black offset correction is done during automatic image density correction (ADS). Note: This SP operates only if the black offset correction circuit is built into the SBU. 0: Off 1: On	

4801*	SBU Setting: Standard White Level Adjustment Loop Count DFU	
	Displays the number of loops executed during white peak level adjustment for AGC (Automatic Gain Control). This SP is for display only and the value cannot be adjusted.	

4903*	Filter Setting	
	<i>Many filter setting SP modes have discussions in section 6. (6.2)</i>	
4903 5	Full Size Mode	0: No. Normal operation 1: Yes. Main scan magnification always full-size
	Selects whether the copy is always full size, even if the magnification ratio has been changed. Set to 1 to check the main scan magnification. If the magnification is not 100%, the image processing circuits could be malfunctioning. <i>This SP is used to determine whether magnification is operating correctly. If this SP is set to 1 can make it easier to determine which part of the IPU is malfunctioning.</i>	
4903 7	Image Shift in Magnification	DFU, [0~7199 / 0 / 1 step]
	Adjusts the amount of pixel shift in the main scan direction in the magnification mode.	
4903 8*	Fax 25%, 50% Reduction	DFU, [0~3 / 0 / 1 step]
	Determines whether 25% and 50% reduction is available in the fax mode. 0: Off 1: Conducts fax mode OR processing for main scan for resolution below 100 dpi in only Text mode. 2: Conducts pre-filter processing for fax mode. 3: Conducts fax Text mode OR processing for main scan for resolution below 100 dpi. Pre-filter processing is done in every mode except Fax Text mode.	
	4903 10 to 4903 16, Pre-Filter Processing (6.5) The following 5 SP modes Selects the filter processing setting for smoothing in order to reduce the incidence of moiré in images in different original modes. Specifically, they set 1) the compression rate for parallel lines in the main scan direction and for long lines in the sub scan direction, and 2) the strength of smoothing. Enter the appropriate number with the 10-key pad then press (#). <i>These settings attempt to smooth lines without making them stand out. Increasing the strength of a setting can reduce the incidence of moiré but can also decrease sharpness.</i>	
4903 10*	Pre-Filter: Text	[0~9 / 0 / 1]
4903 12*	Pre-Filter: Photo Mode	[0~9 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 13*	Pre-Filter: Text/Photo	[0~9 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 15*	Pre-Filter: Light	[0~9 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 16*	Pre-Filter: Generation	[0~9 / 0 / 1 step]
	4903 20 to 4903 35, Text Mode MTF Filter Coefficient and MTF Filter Strength The following 15 SP modes select either the MTF filter coefficient (Level) or the MTF filter strength for text mode at various reproduction ratios. Each SP applies to either the main-scan direction or the sub-scan direction. (6.5)	
4903 20*	Main Filter Level: Text 25%-64%	[0~15 / 9 / 1 step]
4903 21*	Sub Filter Level: Text 25%-64%	[0~13 / 13 / 1 step]
4903 22*	Main Filter Strength: Text 25%-64%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 23*	Sub Filter Strength: Text 25%-64%	[0~15 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 24*	Main Filter Level: Text 65%-154%	[0~7 / 12 / 1 step]
4903 25*	Main Filter Strength: Text 65%-154%	[0~13 / 13 / 1 step]
4903 26*	Sub Filter Level: Text 65%-154%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 27*	Sub Filter Strength: Text 65%-154%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 28*	Main Filter Level: Text 155%-256%	[0~15 / 14 / 1 step]
4903 29*	Sub Filter Level: Text 155%-256%	[0~13 / 13 / 1 step]
4903 30*	Main Filter Strength: Text 155%-256%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 31*	Sub Filter Strength: Text 155%-256%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 32*	Main Filter Level: Text 257%-400%	[0~15 / 15 / 1 step]

4903 33*	Sub Filter Level: Text 257%-400%	[0~13 / 13 / 1 step]
4903 34*	Main Filter Strength: Text 257%-400%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
4903 35*	Sub Filter Strength: Text 257%-400%	[0~7 / 2 / 1 step]
	4903 36 to 4903 38, Photo Mode MTF Filter Coefficients (6.5) 4903 36: Selects the MTF filter coefficient for edges in the photo mode 4903 37: Selects the filter coefficient for smoothing in the photo mode. The higher the number you select, the greater the applied smoothing effect. 4903 38: Selects the MTF filter coefficient sharpening an entire image in the Photo mode. For 4903 36 and 4903 38, the higher the number you select, the greater the effect on sharpening low contrast text and thin lines. However, a high setting could cause background to drop or, or cause moiré to appear in photos shaded with dots. (0:Off, 1: Softest, 7: Sharpest)	
4903 36*	Photo MTF (Edge)	[[0~7 / 0 / 1]
4903 37*	Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode	[0~7 / 2 / 1]
4903 38*	Photo MTF (All)	[[0~7 / 0 / 1]
	4903 39 to 4903 52, Text/Photo Mode MTF Filter Coefficient (6.5) The following 8SP modes select the filter coefficients for either the edges (Edge) or for the entire image (All) for the Text/Photo mode at various reproduction ratios. Generally, increasing the value can improve the appearance of low contrast text; however, it can also cause background to fade or drop out completely or increase the incidence of moiré. Each SP has a range of 0~7 (0:Off, 1: Softest, 7: Sharpest)	
4903 39*	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 25-64%	[0~7 / 1 / 1]
4903 40*	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 25-64%	[0~7 / 4 / 1]
4903 43*	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 65-154%	[0~7 / 1 / 1]
4903 44*	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 65-154%	[0~7 / 4 / 1]
4903 47*	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 155-256%	[0~7 / 1 / 1]
4903 48*	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 155-256%	[0~7 / 4 / 1]
4903 51*	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 257-400%	[0~7 / 1 / 1]
4903 52*	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 257-400%	[0~7 / 4 / 1]
	4903 55 and 4903 56, MTF Filter Coefficients for Light Originals (6.5) These modes select the MTF filter coefficient (Level) and strength for originals scanned in the Pale mode. While these SPs can improve the appearance of low contrast originals, a high setting can also increase the incidence of moiré.	
4903 55*	Filter Level: Light Original	[0~6 / 6 / 1]
4903 56*	Filter Strength: Light Original	0: 1/32x, 1: 1/16x, 2: 1/8x, 3: 1/4x , 4: 1/2x, 5: 1x, 6: 2x, 7: 4x
	4903 57 and 4903 58, MTF Filter Coefficients for Generation Copy (6.5) These modes select the MTF filter coefficient (Level) and strength for originals scanned in the Generation Copy mode. While selecting a higher number strengthens the effect of the filter to improve contrast, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré.	
4903 57*	Filter Level: Generation Copy	[0~6 / 3 / 1 step]
4903 58*	Filter Strength: Generation Copy	0: 1/32x, 1: 1/16x, 2: 1/8x, 3: 1/4x, 4: 1/2x, 5: 1x, 6: 2x, 7: 4x
	4903 60 to 4903 64, Independent Dot Erase Level The following 4 SP modes select the independent dot erase level for originals scanned in different modes. While selecting a higher setting erases more dots, setting a very high setting can cause very fine text or other detail to fade or drop out completely. 1: Weakest (fewest dots erased), 15: Strongest (most dots erased)	
4903 60*	Independent Dot Erase: Text Mode	[0~15 / 5 / 1 step]
4903 62*	Independent Dot Erase: Text/Photo	[0~15 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 63*	Independent Dot Erase: Light Original	[0~15 / 0 / 1 step]

4903 64*	Independent Dot Erase: Generation Copy	[0~15 / 8 / 1 step]
	4903 65 to 4903 69, Background Erase Level The following 5 SP modes adjust the threshold for background erase in originals scanned in different modes. A higher setting reduces more dirty background, but a very high setting can cause the image to reverse or cause other unexpected results. For all these modes, 0 = off (default).	
4903 65*	Background Erase Level: Text Mode	[0~255 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 66*	Background Erase Level: Photo Mode	[0~255 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 67*	Background Erase Level: Text/Photo Mode	[0~255 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 68*	Background Erase Level: Light Original	[0~255 / 0 / 1 step]
4903 69*	Background Erase Level: Generation Copy	[0~255 / 0 / 1 step]
	4903 75 to 4903 77, Line Width Correction 4903 75: Determines whether line thickness is adjusted in the main and/or sub scan direction. Enter the appropriate number with the 10-key pad then press # 4903 76 and 4903 77: Select the threshold for line width detection in originals copied in the Generation Copy mode. Higher numbers make it easier to thicken thin lines.	
4903 75*	Line Width Correction: Generation Mode	0: None, 1: Thin, 2: Thin, 3: Thick
4903 76*	LWC Threshold (Main Scan): Generation Mode	[0~5 / 1 / 1 step]
4903 77*	LWC Threshold (Sub Scan): Generation Mode	[0~5 / 1 / 1 step]
	4903 79 to 4903 93, Filter Strength: Edge, Filter Adj.: Edge Detection, Filter Adj.: Magnification (6.5) The following 15 SP modes modify the effects of the MTF filter coefficients set by SP 4903 39 to 4903 52. The related SP mode is in parenthesis in the right column. See page 6-28 for details about how they work.	
4903 79*	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 25-64%	[0~3 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 039)
4903 80*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25-64%	[0~15 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 039)
4903 81*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 25-64%	[0~15 / 12 / 1] (SP4903 039)
4903 82*	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 65-154%	[0~3 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 043)
4903 83*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154%	[0~15 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 043)
4903 84*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 65-154%	[0~15 / 12 / 1] (SP4903 043)
4903 85*	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 155-256%	[0~3 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 047)
4903 86*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155-256%	[0~15 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 047)
4903 87*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 155-256%	[0~15 / 12 / 1] (SP4903 047)
4903 88*	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 257-400%	[0~3 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 051)
4903 89*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257-400%	[0~15 / 3 / 1] (SP4903 051)
4903 90*	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 257-400%	[0~15 / 12 / 1] (SP4903 051)
4903 91*	Filter Strength: Photo (Edge)	[0~3 / 2 / 1] (SP4903 036)
4903 92*	Filter Adj.: Photo (Edge Det.)	[0~15 / 0 / 1] (SP4903 036)
4903 93*	Filter Adj.: Photo (Mag.%)	[0~15 / 15 / 1] (SP4903 036)

4904*	IPU Setting				
	Many IPU setting SP modes have discussions in section 6. (●6.5)				
4904 1*	Grayscale Photo Mode	0: Dithering and smoothing 1: Error diffusion and MTF filter processing			
	Selects the method of grayscale processing for the Photo Mode. “Dithering and smoothing” is the same as the setting for “Print Photo” selected on the operation panel in Photo Mode. Dithering can be adjusted with SP4903 037. “Error diffusion and MTF filter processing” is the same as the setting for “Normal” or “Glossy Photo” selected on the operation panel in Photo Mode. Error diffusion can be adjusted with SP4903 036 and 038.				
4904 2*	Quality Photo Mode	Value	Method	Lines	Effect
		0	4-Value Error Diffusion	---	Best resolution
		1	Dither 8x 8	75	Screening
		3	Dither 8x 8	106	Best grayscale
		2	Dither 6 x 6	142	Grayscale priority
		4	Dither 4 x 4	212	Resolution priority
Selects the size of the dither matrix for the photo mode.					
4904 3*	Density Setting for Low Density Original Mode	0: Selects γ normal density 1: Digitizes to near binary image			
	Selects the density γ factor for the low-density original mode. Use to achieve better balance between text and images, correct shadows that appear around text in handwritten documents, to enhance documents written in pencil, or to achieve stark contrast when copying blueprints, building plans, etc.				
4904 4*	Density Setting for Copied Original Mode	0: Selects γ normal density 1: Digitizes to near binary image			
	Selects the density γ factor for the copied original mode.				
4904 5*	Special Text Density	[0~7 / 0 / 1] 0: Off, 1: Weaker, 7: Stronger			
	Enter the appropriate number with the 10-key pad then press (#). This SP code adjusts the density of the image to eliminate vertical black lines in originals that were caused by previous scanning with a dirty optics. While selecting a higher setting to erase more lines, selecting a very high setting can cause low contrast areas to become faint or cause them to drop out. (●6.5)				
4904 7*	Error Diffusion Pattern	0: Edge threshold pattern is used. 1: Texture Pattern (matrix) 0 is used 2: Texture Pattern (matrix) 1 used. 3: Texture Pattern 2 (matrix) used.			
	Adjusts the threshold level for error diffusion processing in the Text/Photo mode. The effect of error diffusion can vary, depending on the image of the original. Adjust this setting if the results of the texture in copies is not what you expect, especially before starting a large copy job.				
	4904 8to 4904 12, Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.), Photo (Edge Det.) The following 5 SP modes adjust the setting for edge detection during grayscale processing of originals scanned with the Custom Setting of the Text/Photo mode and Photo mode in the specified magnification range. At defined edges error diffusion executes on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, error diffusion executes grayscale processing for photographs. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. A lower setting improves the appearance of photographs, but can cause text and thin lines to drop out. A higher setting sharpens text and thin lines, but can also cause grayscale areas to degrade. (●6.5)				
4904 8*	Gray Adj: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25-64%	[0~15 / 8 / 1]			

4904 9*	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154%	
4904 10*	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155-256%	
4904 11*	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257-400%	[0~15 / 8 / 1]
4904 13*	Gray Adj.: Photo (Edge Det.)	[0~15 / 0 / 1]
	4904 20 to 4904 23, Text (General) Quality (6.5) The following 4 SP modes allow adjustment together with other SP codes to improve image quality of originals copied in Text Mode at magnification within the specified magnification range. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. 0: Off, 1: Pictures highest priority, 13: Text/thin lines highest priority	
4904 20*	Text (General) Quality 25-64%	[0~13 / 0 / 1]
4904 21*	Text (General) Quality 65-154%	45 cpm [0~13 / 0 / 1]
		35 cpm [0~13 / 4 / 1]
4904 22*	Text (General) Quality 155-256%	[0~13 / 0 / 1]
4904 23*	Text (General) Quality 254-400%	
4904 24*	Photo (General) Quality	[0~10 / 0 / 1]
	0: Off, 1: Picture high priority, 10:Text high priority	
	Allows overall adjustment of photo images in originals scanned in the Photo mode. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. (6.5)	
	4904 25 to 4904 28, Text/Photo (General) Quality (6.5) The following 4 SP modes allow adjustment with other SP codes to improve quality of images scanned in the Text/Photo mode and in the specified magnification range. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. 0: Off, 1: Pictures highest priority, 10: Text highest priority	
4904 25*	Text/Photo (General) Quality 25-64%	[0~10 / 0 / 1]
4904 26*	Text/Photo (General) Quality 65-154%	[0~10 / 0 / 1]
4904 27*	Text/Photo (General) Quality 155-256%	[0~10 / 0 / 1]
4904 28*	Text/Photo (General) Quality 257-400%	[0~10 / 0 / 1]
4904 29*	Pale (General) Quality	[0~13 / 0 / 1]
	0: Off, 1: Picture high priority, 13:Text high priority	
	Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve the overall quality of images scanned in Pale Mode. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. (6.5)	
4904 30*	Generation (General) Quality	[0~13 / 0 / 1]
	0: Off, 1: Picture high priority, 13:Text high priority	
	Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve the overall quality of images in originals scanned in Generation Copy mode. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. (6.5)	

4905*	Image Data Path	
	SP4905 1 allows switching between filter and magnification processing of the image for testing. SP4905 4 allows switching of the printout for testing.	
4905 1*	Filter Mag. Path Switch	DFU 0: Uses settings of each application and mode 1: Through filter 2: Through magnification 3: Through filter, magnification
4905 4*	Printout Type Selection	DFU 0: Uses settings of each application, mode 1: Reverses image logic (normally inverse black/white).

4909*	Image Data Path	
	SP4909 1 selects the method for image quality through processing. SP4909 20 Forces switching of the data output format between writing for the Ri10, CDIA for testing.	
4905 1*	Image Quality Through Processing	DFU 0: Normal operation 1: Grayscale through processing 2: Gamma correction through processing 3: Printer gamma, grayscale through processing
4905 20*	Image Data Path – Printer	DFU 0: Normal operation 1: Sets output from the Ri10 to the CDICA for grayscale output (1 pixel/8bits) 2: Sets output from the Ri10 to the write unit for grayscale output (4 pixels/8bits) 3: Sets output from the Ri10 to the CDICA for grayscale output (1 pixel/8bits), also sets output from the Ri10 to the write unit for grayscale output (4 pixels/8bit)

SP5-xxx: Mode

5024*	mm/inch Display Selection	0: Europe/Asia (mm), 1: North America (inch)
	Selects the unit of measurement. After selection, turn the main power switch off and on.	

5044*	Operation Panel Bit SW	DFU



5045	Accounting Counter
	Selects whether the printer counter is displayed on the LCD. NOTE: You can change the setting only one time. [0~1/0/1] 0: Displays total counter only. 1: Displays both total counter and printer counter.

5047	Reverse Paper Display
	Determines whether the tray loaded with paper printed on one side is displayed. [0~1/1] 0: Not displayed 1: Displayed

5104*	A3/DLT Double Count
	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/DLT. "Yes" counts except from the bypass tray. When "Yes" is selected, A3 and DLT paper are counted twice, that is A4 x2 and LT x2 respectively.

5106*	Density Level Setting	[1~7 / 4 / 1 notch per step]
	Selects the image density level used in ADS mode. Example: If you set SP5106 6 to "2": Pressing the Auto Image Density key toggles the display off and manual notch 2 is selected. <i>Adjust this SP if the customer cannot attain clean copies after performing automatic density adjustment</i>	

5112	Non-Std. Paper Sel.
	Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, Tray 3) [0~1/1] 0: No 1: Yes. If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode.

5113	Optional Counter Type
001	Default Optional Counter Type
	Selects the type of counter: 0: None 1: Key Card (RK3, 4) Japan only 2: Key Card Down 3: Pre-paid Card 4: Coin Rack 5: MF Key Card 11: Exp Key Card (Add) 12: Exp Key Card (Deduct)
002	External Optional Counter Type
	Enables the SDK application. This lets you select a number for the external device for user access control. Note: "SDK" refers to software on an SD card. [0~3/1] 0: None 1: Expansion Device 1 2: Expansion Device 2 3: Expansion Device 3

5118	Disable Copying
	Temporarily denies access to the machine. Japan Only [0~1/1] 0: Release for normal operation 1: Prohibit access to machine

5120	Mode Clear Opt. Counter Removal
	Do not change. Japan Only [0~2/1] 0: Yes. Normal reset 1: Standby. Resets before job start/after completion 2: No. Normally no reset

5121	Counter Up Timing
	Determines whether the optional key counter counts up at paper feed-in or at paper exit. Japan Only [0~1/1] 0: Feed count 1: No feed count

5127*	APS Off Mode	0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Selects whether the APS function is enabled or disabled with the contact of a pre-paid card or coin lock.	

5131*	Paper Size Type Selection	0: Japan, 1: North America, 2: Europe
	Selects the paper size (type) for both originals and copy paper. (Default depends on DIP SW 101 setting.) <i>After changing the setting, turn the copier off and on. If the paper size of the archive files stored on the HDD is different, abnormal copies could result.</i>	

5150*	By-Pass Length Setting	0: Off, 1: On
	Determines whether the transfer sheet from the by-pass tray is used or not. <i>Normally the paper length for sub scanning paper from the by-pass tray is limited to 600 mm, but this can be extended with this SP to 1260 mm.</i>	

5162*	App. Switch Method	0: SW, 1: HW
	Determines whether the application screen is switched with a hardware switch or software switch. 0: Soft Key Set 1: Hard Key Set	

5167	Fax Printing Mode at Optional Counter Off	
	Enables or disables the automatic print out without an accounting device. This SP is used when the receiving fax is accounted for by an external accounting device. 0: Automatic printing 1: No automatic printing	

5169	CE Login	
	If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode. [0~1/1] 0: Off. Printer bit switches cannot be adjusted. 1: On. Printer bit switches can be adjusted.	



5212	Page Numbering	
5212 3	Duplex Printout Left/Right Position	Horizontally positions the page numbers printed on both sides during duplexing. [−10~+10/1 mm] 0 is center, minus is left, + is right.
5212 4	Duplex Printout High/Low Position	Vertically positions the page numbers printed on both sides during duplexing. [−10~+10/1 mm] 0 is center, minus is down, + is up.

5179*	Bypass Size Error
	This SP determines whether a paper size error prompt appears when the machine detects the wrong paper size for the job and jams during feed from the bypass tray. [0~1/0/1] 0: Off 1: On

5302	Set Time DFU
	Sets the time clock for the local time. This setting is done at the factory before delivery. The setting is GMT expressed in minutes. [−1440~1440/1 min.] JA: +540 (Tokyo) NA: -300 (NY) EU: +6- (Paris) CH: +480 (Peking) TW: +480 (Taipei) AS: +480 (Hong Kong)

5305	Auto Off Function Release Setting
	This SP prevents the user from easily disabling the auto off timer. This is done to conform with international Energy Star standards that specifically state that the user shall not be able to easily switch off the auto off feature. 0: On (Auto Off cannot be released) 1: Off (Auto Off can be released)

⇒ 5307	Summer Time		
5307 1	Setting	ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / NA, EU, ASIA / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled NA and EUR: 1, ASIA: 0
		Enables or disables the summer time mode.  Note Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1".	
5307 3	Rule Set (Start)	Start	03200210 Specifies the start setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, so the eight-digit setting for -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [1 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] 7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step] 8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step] For example: 3500010 (EU default) The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March - The digits are counted from the left. - Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".
5307 4	Rule Set (End)	End	11100200 Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] The 7th and 8th digits must be set to "00". - The digits are counted from the left. - Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".

5401	Access Control DFU	
	This SP stores the settings that limit uses access to SDK application data.	
5401 6	User Recognition – Copier	This SP codes are provided for future customization of the access control feature. This is to be done at the factory, not in the field. DFU
5401 16	User Recognition – Document Server	
5401 26	User Recognition – Fax	
5401 36	User Recognition – Scanner	
5401 46	User Recognition – Printer	
5401 76	User Recognition – Expanded Function 1	
5401 86	User Recognition – Expanded Function 2	
5401 96	User Recognition – Expanded Function 2	
5401 103	Default Document ACL Used to assign the default access privileges of users to their own documents on the Document Server. 0: Read only (default) 1:edit 2:edit/delete 3:full control NOTE: Available only when using Windows / LDAP / Integration Server Authentication. Applies to new users only, it will not affect existing users.	
5401 200	SDK1 Unique ID	"SDK" is the "Software Development Kit". This data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when installed or uninstalled. DFU
5401 201	SDK1 Certification Method	
5401 210	SDK2 Unique ID	
5401 211	SDK2 Certification Method	
5401 220	SDK3 Unique ID	
5401 221	SDK3 Certification Method	

5404	User Code Count Clear
	Clears the counts for the user codes assigned by the key operator to restrict the use of the machine. Press [Execute] to clear.

5501*	PM Alarm	
5501 1*	PM Alarm Level	[0~9999 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Alarm off 1~9999: Alarm goes off when <i>Value (1~9999) ≥ PM counter</i>
5501 2*	Original Count Alarm	0: No alarm sounds 1: Alarm sounds after the number of originals passing through the ARDF ≥ 10,000

5504*	Jam Alarm Japan Only	
	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included). [0~3 / 3 / 1 step] 0: Zero (Off) 1: Low (2.5K jams) 2: Medium (3K jams) 3: High (6K jams)	

5505*	Error Alarm	
	Sets the error alarm level. Japan only DFU [0~255 / 50 / 100 copies per step]	

5507	Supply Alarm	
5507 1	Paper Supply Alarm (0:Off 1:On)	Switches the control call on/off for the paper supply. DFU 0: Off, 1: On 0: No alarm. 1: Sets the alarm to sound for the specified number transfer sheets for each paper size (A3, A4, B4, B5, DLT, LG, LT, HLT)
5507 2	Staple Supply Alarm (0:Off 1:On)	Switches the control call on/off for the stapler installed in the finisher. DFU 0: Off, 1: On 0: No alarm 1: Alarm goes off for every 1K of staples used.
5507 3	Toner Supply Alarm (0:Off 1:On)	Switches the control call on/off for the toner end. DFU 0: Off, 1: On If you select "1" the alarm will sound when the copier detects toner end.
5507 128*	Others	The "Paper Supply Call Level: nn" SPs specify the paper control call interval for the referenced paper sizes. DFU [00250 ~ 10000 / 1000 / 1 Step]
5507 132*	Interval: A3	
5507 133*	Interval: A4	
5507 134*	Interval: A5	
5507 141*	Interval: B4	
5507 142*	Interval: B5	
5507 160*	Interval: DLT	
5507 164*	Interval: LG	
5507 166*	Interval: LT	
5507 172*	Interval: HLT	

5508	CC Call Japan Only	
5508 1	Jam Remains	Enables/disables initiating a call. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable
5508 2	Continuous Jams	
5508 3	Continuous Door Open	
5508 4	Low Call Mode	Enables/disables the new call specifications designed to reduce the number of calls. [0~1/1] 0: Normal mode 1: Reduced mode
5508 11	Jam Detection: Time Length	Sets the length of time to determine the length of an unattended paper jam. [03~30/1] This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1).
5508 12	Jam Detection Continuous Count	Sets the number of continuous paper jams required to initiate a call. [02~10/1] This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1).
5508 13	Door Open: Time Length	Sets the length of time the remains opens to determine when to initiate a call. [03~30/1] This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1).
5508 21	Jam Operation: Time Length	Determines what happens when a paper jam is left unattended. [0~1/1] 0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine
5508 22	Jam Operation: Continuous Count	Determines what happens when continuous paper jams occur. [0~1/1] 0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine
5508 23	Door Operation: Time Length	Determines what happens when the front door remains open. [0~1/1] 0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine

5801	Memory Clear	
	Resets NVRAM data to the default settings. Before executing any of these SP codes, print an SMC Report.	
5801 1	All Clear	Initializes items 2 ~ 15 below.
5801 2	Engine Clr	Initializes all registration settings for the engine and copy process settings.
5801 3	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information.
5801 4	IMH Memory Clr	Initializes the image file system. (IMH: Image Memory Handler)
5801 5	MCS	Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored documents. (MCS: Memory Control Service)
5801 6	Copier Application	Initializes all copier application settings.
5801 7	Fax Application	Not used.
5801 8	Printer Application	Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP bit switches, and the printer CSS counter.
5801 9	Scanner Application	Initializes the defaults for the scanner and all the scanner SP modes.
5801 10	Web Service/ Network Application	Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files and thumbnails, and initializes the Job login ID. Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
5801 11	NCS	Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartNetMonitor for Admin settings, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings. (NCS: Network Control Service)
5801 12	R-Fax	Deletes received faxes.
5801 14	Clear DCS Setting	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.
5801 15	Clear UCS Setting	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.
5801 16	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.
5801 17	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.
5801 18	SRM Memory Clr	Initializes information in non-volatile RAM.
5801 19	LCS Memory Clr	Initializes information in non-volatile RAM.

5802*	Printer Free Run	[Disable] [Enable]
	Performs a free run. The scanner scans once and the printer prints for the number of copies requested. To perform the free run, after selecting "1", press the Copy Window to enter copy mode, input the number of copies, and then press the Start key. To stop the free run, press  .	

5803	Input Check	
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. (➡5.2.5)	

5804	Output Check	
	Turns on the electrical components individually for test purposes. (➡5.2.6)	

5807	Option Connection Check	
5807 1	ARDF	Execution will return either a "1" or "0": 0: Device not connected correctly. 1: Device connected correctly.
5807 2	Bank (Paper Tray Unit)	
5807 3	LCT	
5807 4	Finisher (1000-sheet, Two-Tray finisher)	

5811	Machine No. Setting	
	This SP presents the screen used to enter the 11-digit number of the machine. The allowed entries are "A" to "Z" and "0" to "9". The setting is done at the factory, and should not be changed in the field. DFU	

5812*	Service Tel. No. Setting	
	Use these SP modes to input service and support telephone numbers. Enter the number and press Press the  key to input a pause. Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number.	
5812 1*	Service	Service representative telephone number.
5812 2*	Facsimile	Fax number of service representative
5812 3*	Supply	Supplier of consumables
5812 4*	Operation	Operation support

5816	Remote Service
5816 1	I/F Setting
	Turns the remote diagnostics off and on. [0~2/1] 0: Remote diagnostics off. 1: Serial (CSS or NRS) remote diagnostics on. 2: Network remote diagnostics.
5816 2	CE Call
	Lets the customer engineer start or end the remote machine check with CSS or NRS; to do this, push the center report key
5816 3	Function Flag
	Enables and disables remote diagnosis over the NRS network. [0~1/1] 0: Disables remote diagnosis over the network. 1: Enables remote diagnosis over the network.
5816 6	Device Information Call Display
	Controls if the item for initial setting of the screen for the NRS device-information notification-call is shown. [0~1/1] 0: Enabled. Item initial setting not shown. 1: Disable. Item for initial setting shown.
5816 7	SSL Disable
	Controls if RCG (Remote Communication Gate) confirmation is done by SSL during an RCG send for the NRS over a network interface. [0~1/1] 0: Yes. SSL not used. 1: No. SSL used.
5816 8	RCG Connect Timeout
	Sets the length of time (seconds) for the time-out when the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) connects during a call via the NRS network. [1~90/1 sec.]
5816 9	RCG Write to Timeout
	Sets the length of time (seconds) for the time-out when sent data is written to the RCG during a call over the NRS network. [0~100/1 sec.]
5816 10	RCG Read Timeout
	Sets the length of time (seconds) for the timeout when sent data is written from the RCG during a call over the NRS network. [0~100/1 sec.]
5816 11	Port 80 Enable
	Controls if permission is given to get access to the SOAP method over Port 80 on the NRS network. [0~1/1] 0: No. Access denied 1: Yes. Access granted.
5816 16	Connection Method
	Selects how the remote service is connected. 0: Internet 1: Dial-up

5816 21	RCG – C Registered (RCG – C = Embedded Remote Communication Gate)	
	This SP displays the RCG – C installation end flag. 1: Installation completed 2: Installation not completed	
5816 22	RCG – C Registered Detail	
	This SP displays the RCG – C installation status. 0: RCG – B not registered (RCG – B = Remote Communication Gate) 1: RCG – B registered 2: Device registered	
5816 23	Connect Type (N/M)	
	This SP displays and selects the RCG – C connection method. 0: Internet connection 1: Dial-up connection	
5816 61	Cert. Expire Timing DFU	
	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.	
5816 62	Use Proxy	
	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.	
5816 67	CERT: Up State	
	Displays the status of the certification update.	
	0	The certification used by RCG – C is set correctly.
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.
	4	The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.
	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL.
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event.
	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.
	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.

5816 68	CERT: Error
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.
	0 Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.
	1 Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired.
	2 An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired.
	3 Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.
	4 Notification of a common certification without ID2.
	5 Notification that no certification was issued.
	6 Notification that GW URL does not exist.
5816 69	CERT: Up ID
	The ID of the request for certification.
5816 83	Firmware Up Status
	Displays the status of the firmware update.
5816 84	Non-HDD Firm Up
	This setting determines if the firmware can be updated, even without the HDD installed.
5816 85	Firm Up User Check
	This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.
5816 86	Firmware Size
	Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.
5816 87	CERT: Macro Version
	Displays the macro version of the NRS certification
5816 88	CERT: PAC Version
	Displays the PAC version of the NRS certification.
5816 89	CERT: ID2 Code
	Displays ID2 for the NRS certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisk (****) indicate that no NRS certification exists.
5816 90	CERT: Subject
	Displays the common name of the NRS certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisk (****) indicate that no DESS exists.
5816 91	CERT: Serial Number
	Displays serial number for the NRS certification. Asterisk (****) indicate that no DESS exists.
5816 92	CERT: Issuer
	Displays the common name of the issuer of the NRS certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asterisk (****) indicate that no DESS exists.
5816 93	CERT: Valid Start
	Displays the start time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.

5816 94	CERT: Valid End
	Displays the end time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
5816 200	Manual Polling
	No information is available at this time.
5816 201	Regist: Status
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the NRS service device.
	0 Neither the NRS device nor RCG - C device are set.
	1 The RCG - C device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status the RCG - B unit cannot answer a polling request.
	2 The RCG - C device is set. In this status the RCG - B unit cannot answer a polling request.
	3 The NRS device is being set. In this status the RCG - C device cannot be set.
	4 The NRS module has not started.
5816 202	Letter Number
	Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the RCG - C device.
5816 203	Confirm Execute
	Executes the inquiry request to the NRS GW URL.
5816 204	Confirm Result
	Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with SP5816 203.
	0 Succeeded
	1 Inquiry number error
	2 Registration in progress
	3 Proxy error (proxy enabled)
	4 Proxy error (proxy disabled)
	5 Proxy error (Illegal user name or password)
	6 Communication error
	7 Certification update error
	8 Other error
	9 Inquiry executing
5816 205	Confirm Place
	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the GW URL in answer to the inquiry request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the GW URL.
5816 206	Register Execute
	Executes RCG - C Registration.
5816 207	Register Result
	Displays a number that indicates the registration result.
	0 Succeeded
	2 Registration in progress
	3 Proxy error (proxy enabled)
	4 Proxy error (proxy disabled)
	5 Proxy error (Illegal user name or password)
	6 Communication error
	7 Certification update error
	8 Other error
	9 Registration executing

⇒	5816 208	Error Code	
		Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816 204 or SP5816 207 was executed.	
		Cause	Code Definition
	Illegal Modem Parameter		-11001 Chat parameter error
			-11002 Chat execution error
			-11003 Unexpected error
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting		-12002 Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.
			-12003 Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.
			-12004 Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.
			-12005 @Remote communication is prohibited. The device has a problem with an internal @Remote function.
			-12006 After confirmation is completed, confirmation request was made again.
			-12007 Different request number was used for registration than the number which was used for confirmation.
			-12008 Certification update failed because the device was in use.
	Error Caused by Response from GW URL		-2385 Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.
			-2387 Not supported at the Service Center
			-2389 Database out of service
			-2390 Program out of service
			-2391 Two registrations for same device
			-2392 Parameter error
			-2393 RCG - B not managed
			-2394 Device not managed
			-2395 Box ID for RCG - B is illegal
			-2396 Device ID for RCG - B is illegal
			-2397 Incorrect ID2 format
			-2398 Incorrect request number format
	5816 250	CommLog Print	
		Prints the communication log.	

5821*	Remote Service Address	Japan Only.
5821 1*	CSS PI Device Code	Sets the PI device code. After changing this setting, you must switch the machine off and on.
5821 2*	RCG IP Address	Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [00000000h ~ FFFFFFFFh/ 00000000h /

5824	NVRAM Data Upload	
	Uploads the UP and SP mode data (except for counters and the serial number) from NVRAM on the control board to a flash memory card. <i>While using this SP mode, always keep the front cover open. This prevents a software module accessing the NVRAM during the upload.</i>	

5825	NVRAM Data Download	
	Downloads the content of a flash memory card to the NVRAM on the control board.	

5828	Network Setting				
582850	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	Enables and disables bi-directional communication on the parallel connection between the machine and a computer. [0~1/1] 0:Off 1: On			
582852	ECP (Centro)	Disables and enables the ECP feature (1284 Mode) for data transfer. [0~1/1] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			
582865	Job Spool Setting	Switches job spooling spooling on and off. 0: No spooling 1: Spooling enabled			
582866	Job Spool Clear	This SP determines whether the job interrupted at power off is resumed at the next power on. This SP operates only when SP5828065 is set to 1. 1: Resumes printing spooled jog. 0: Clears spooled job.			
582869	Job Spool Protocol	This SP determines whether job spooling is enabled or disabled for each protocol. This is a 8-bit setting.			
		0	LPR	4	BMLinks (Japan Only)
		1	FTP (Not Used)	5	DIPRINT
		2	IPP	6	Reserved (Not Used)
		3	SMB	7	Reserved (Not Used)
582877	IPv4 DNS Server 2	Sets the IPv4 address for a DNS server. This address can be used among devices that have IPv4 devices (Ethernet, IPv4 Over 1394, IEEE 802.11b, etc.)			
582878	IPv4 DNS Server 3				
582879	Domain Name (Ethernet)				
582884	Setting List PrintPrint Settings List	Prints a list of the NCS parameter settings.			
582890	TELNET Operation SettingsTELNET (0:OFF 1:ON)	Disables or enables Telnet operation. If this SP is disabled, the Telnet port is closed. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable			
582891	Web Operation Web (0:OFF 1:ON)	Disables or enables the Web operation. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable			
582896	Rendezvous Operation	This SP disables/enables Rendezvous operation. This is a set of protocols that allows a device on an IP network to automatically recognize and connect with other devices (such as a printer) on a network. Once a new device is connected to the network, it can be used immediately by every computer on the network. No special setup procedures or configuration settings are required 1: Enable 0: Disable			

5832	HDD Formatting
	Enter the SP number for the partition to initialize, then press #. When the execution ends, cycle the machine off and on.
5832 1	HDD Formatting (All)
5832 2	HDD Formatting (IMH)
5832 3	HDD Formatting (Thumbnail)
5832 4	HDD Formatting (Job Log)
5832 5	HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts)
5832 6	HDD Formatting (User Info1)
5832 7	Mail RX Data
5832 8	Mail TX Data
5832 9	HDD Formatting (Data for Design)
5832 10	HDD Formatting (Log)
5832 11	HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F) (for Ridoc Desk Top Binder)

5833	e-Cabinet Enable
	Enables the e-Cabinet function. Then, the user names in the cabinet are enabled for use with the POP server. [0~1/1] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

5834	Operation Panel Image Exposure	0: Off (disable), 1: On (enable)
	Enables and disables the operation panel read (dump) feature. After powering on the machine, set this option to 1 to enable this feature. <i>To reset the machine to 0, the machine must be turned off and on again. Selecting 0 for this option without cycling the power off and on does not restore the default setting (0).</i>	

5836	Capture Setting
5836 1	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)
	With this function disabled, the settings related to the capture feature cannot be initialized, displayed, or selected. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable
5836 2	Panel Setting
	Determines whether each capture related setting can be selected or updated from the initial system screen. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable The setting for SP5836-001 has priority.

5836 3	Print Backup Function (0:Off 1:On)	
	Turns the print backup feature on and off. Default: 0 (Off) When this feature is on, the print backup features are shown in the initial system settings. <i>Enabled only when optional File Format Converter (MLB:Media Link Board) is installed.</i> [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable	
5836 71	Reduction for Copy Color	[0~3/1] 0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 DFU
5836 72	Reduction for Copy B&W Text	[0~6/1] 0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 6:2/3
5836 73	Reduction for Copy B&W Other	[0~6/1] 0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 6:2/3
5836 74	Reduction for Printer Color	[0~3/1] 0:1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 DFU
5836 75	Reduction for Printer B&W	[0~6/1] 0 1 1:1/2 2:1/3 3:1/4 6:2/3
5836 76	Reduction for Printer B&W HQ	[1~5/1] 1:1/2 3:1/4 4:1/6 5:1/8
5836 77	Reduction for Printer Col 1200 dpi	
5836 78	Reduction for Printer B&W 1200 dpi	
5836 81	Format for Copy Color	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR DFU
5836 82	Format for Copy B&W Text	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
5836 83	Format Copy B&W Other	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
5836 84	Format for Printer Color	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR DFU
5836 85	Format for Printer B&W	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
5836 86	Format for Printer B&W HQ	[0~3/1] 0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
5836 91	Default for JPEG	[5~95/1]
	Sets the JPEG format default for documents sent to the document management server with the MLB, with JPEG selected as the format. <i>Enabled only when optional File Format Converter (MLB: Media Link Board) is installed.</i>	
5836 92	High Quality for JPEG	Sets the quality level of JPEG images for high quality sent to the Document Server with the MLB (Media Link Board). [5~95/1]
5836 93	Low Quality for JPEG	Sets the quality level of JPEG images for low quality sent to the Document Server with the MLB (Media Link Board). [5~95/1]

5836 94	Default Format for Backup Files	Sets the format of the backup files. [0~2/1] 0: TIFF 1: JPEG 2: For printing This feature can be selected only if SP5836-3 is set to "1".
5836 95	Default Resolution for Backup Files	Sets the resolution conversion ratio for the backup files. [0~3/1] 0: 1x 1: 1/2x 2: 1/3 x 3: 1/4x
5836 97	Default Compression for Backup Files	Sets the rate of compression for the backup files. [0~2/1] 0: Standard 1: Low 2: High
5836 98	Back Projection Removal	Removes the ghost images that are copied from the back sides of two-sided originals. [0~1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5839	IEEE 1394	
	This SP is displayed only when an IEEE 1394 (firewire) card is installed.	
5839 4	Host Name	
	Enter the name of the device used on the network. Example: RNP0000000000	
5839 7	Cycle Master	
	Enables or disables the cycle master function for the 1394 bus standard. [0~1/1] 0: Disable (Off) 1: Enable (On)	
5839 8	BCR Mode	
	Determines how BCR (Broadcast Channel Register) operates on the 1394 standard bus when the independent node is in any mode other than IRM. (NVRAM: 2-bits) [Always Effective]	
5839 9	IRM 1394a Check	
	Conducts a 1394a check of IRM when the independent node is in any mode other than IRM. [0~1/1] 0: Checks whether IRM conforms to 1394a 1: After IRM is checked, if IRM does not conform then independent node switches to IRM.	
5839 10	Unique ID	
	Lists the ID (Node_Unique_ID) assigned to the device by the system administrator. Bit0: Off Bit1: On OFF: Does not list the Node_Unique_ID assigned by the system administrator. Instead, the Source_ID of the GASP header in the ARP is used. ON: The Node_Unique_ID assigned by the system administrator is used, and the Source_ID of the GASP header in the ARP is ignored. Also, when the serial bus is reset, extra bus transactions are opened for the enumeration.	

5839 11	Logout
	Handles the login request of the login initiator for SBP-2. (1-bit) Bit0: Off Bit1: On OFF: Disable (refuse login). Initiator retry during login. Login refusal on arrival of login request (standard operation) ON: Enable (force logout). Initiator retry during login. Login refusal on arrival of login request, and the initiator forces the login.
5839 12	Login
	Enables or disables the exclusive login feature (SBP-2 related). Bit0: Off Bit1: On OFF: Disables. The exclusive login (LOGIN ORB exclusive it) is ignored. ON: Enables. Exclusive login is in effect.
5839 13	Login MAX
	Sets the maximum number of logins from the initiator (6-bits) [0~63/1] 0: Reserved 63: Reserved

5840	IEEE 802.11b
5840 6	Channel MAX
	Sets the maximum range of the bandwidth for the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1~14/1]
5840 7	Channel MIN
	Sets the minimum range of the bandwidth for operation of the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1~14/1]
5840 11	WEP Key Select
	Determines how the initiator (SBP-2) handles subsequent login requests. [0~1/1] 0: If the initiator receives another login request while logging in, the request is refused. 1: If the initiator receives another login request while logging in, the request is refused and the initiator logs out. Note: Displayed only when the wireless LAN card is installed.

5841	Supply Name Setting	
	Press the User Tools key. These names appear when the user presses the Inquiry button on the User Tools screen.	
5841 1	Toner Name Setting: Black	
5841 7	Org Stamp	
5841 11	StapleStd1	
5841 12	StapleStd2	Standard Staples for B698
5841 13	StapleStd3	Standard Staples for B700/B701
5841 14	Staple Std4	
5841 21	StapleBind1	
5841 22	StapleBind2	Booklet Staples for B700
5841 23	StapleBind3	

5842*	Net File Analysis Mode Setting This is a debugging tool. It sets the debugging output mode of each Net File process. Bit SW 0011 1111	DFU	
		Bit	Groups
		0	System & other groups (LSB)
		1	Capture related
		2	Certification related
		3	Address book related
		4	Machine management related
		5	Output related (printing, delivery)
		6	Repository related

5844*	USB	
5844 1*	Transfer Rate	Full Speed / Auto Change
	Sets the speed for USB data transmission. Full Speed: (12 Mbps fixed) Auto Change: 480 Mbps/12 Mbps auto adjust	
5844 2*	Vendor ID	[0x0000~0xFFFF/ 0x05CA /1], DFU
	Sets the vendor ID: Initial Setting: 0x05CA Ricoh Company.	
5844 3*	Product ID	[0x0000~0xFFFF/ 0x0403 /1], DFU
	Sets the product ID.	
5844 4*	Device Release Number	[0000~9999/ 0100 /1], DFU
	Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display. <i>Enter as a decimal number. NCS converts the number to hexadecimal number recognized as the BCD.</i>	

5845*	Delivery Server Setting	
	Provides items for delivery server settings.	
5845 1*	FTP Port No.	[0~65535 / 3670 / 1]
	Sets the FTP port number used when image files to the Scan Router Server.	
5845 2*	IP Address (Primary)	Range: 000.000.000.000 ~ 255.255.255.255
	Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be referenced by the initial system setting.	
5845 5	Capture Server IP Address	
	Sets the IP address that is assigned to the PC that the capture server (eCabinet or ScanRouter) operates. This IP address is set remotely when the delivery server (Scan Router) IO device is registered. This SP only enables the IP address permit access to the DNS browser names.	
5845 6*	Delivery Error Display Time Netfiles:	[0~999 / 300 / 1]
	Use this setting to determine the length of time the prompt message is displayed when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device.	
5845 8*	IP Address (Secondary)	Range: 000.000.000.000 ~ 255.255.255.255
	Specifies the IP address assigned to the computer designated to function as the secondary delivery server of Scan Router. This SP allows only the setting of the IP address without reference to the DNS setting.	
5845 9*	Delivery Server Model	[0~4/ 0 / 1]
	Allows changing the model of the delivery server registered by the I/O device. 0: Unknown 1: SG1 Provided 2: SG1 Package 3: SG2 Provided 4: SG2 Package	
5845 10*	Delivery Svr Capability	
	Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device registered. [0~255 / 0 / 1] (7) [0000 0000] (1)	
	Bit7 = 1 Comment information exists	
	Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible	
	Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible	
	Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists	
	Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists	
	Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists	
	Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists	
	Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to "0")	
5845 11	Delivery Svr.Capability (Ext)	
	These settings are for future use. They will let you increase the number of registered devices (in addition to those registered for SP5845 010). There are eight bits (Bit 0 to Bit 7). All are unused at this time.	

5846*	UCS Setting
5846 1	Machine ID (for Delivery Server)
	Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is only displayed and cannot be changed. This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI. The ID is displayed as either 6-byte or 8-byte binary. 6-byte %02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X 8-byte %02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X.%02X
5846 2	Machine ID Clear (Delivery Server)
	Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on.
5846 3	Maximum Entries
	Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. [2000~50000/1] If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed.
5846 6	Delivery Server Retry Timer
	Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book. [0~255/1 s] 0: No retries
5846 7	Delivery Server Retry Times
	Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book. [0~255/1]
5846 8	Delivery Server Maximum Entries
	Lets you set the maximum number of account entries and information about the users of the delivery server controlled by UCS. [20000~50000/1]
5846 10	LDAP Search Timeout
	Sets the length of the time-out for the search of the LDAP server. [1~255/1]

5846 40	Addr Book Migration (SD -> HDD) This SP moves the address book data from an SD card to the HDD. You must cycle the machine off and on after executing this SP. 1. Turn the machine off. 2. Install the HDD. 3. Insert the SD card with the address book data in SD card Slot C3. 4. Turn the machine on. 5. Do SP5846 040. 6. Turn the machine off. 7. Remove the SD card from SD card Slot C3. 8. Turn the machine on. Notes: • Executing this SP overwrites any address book data already on the HDD with the data from the SD card. • We recommend that you back up all directory information to an SD card with SP5846 051 before you execute this SP. • After the address book data is copied to HDD, all the address book data is deleted from the source SD card. If the operation fails, the data is not erased from the SD card.
5846 41	Fill Addr Acl Info. This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can be accessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the service technician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users. Procedure 1. Turn the machine off. 2. Install the new HDD. 3. Turn the machine on. 4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatically. However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the system administrator or key operator. 5. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846 041. After this SP executes successfully, any user can access the address book.
5846 47	Initialize Local Address Book Clears all of the address information from the local address book of a machine managed with UCS.
5846 48	Initialize Delivery Addr Book Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the delivery address book that is controlled by UCS.
5846 49	Initialize LDAP Addr Book Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the LDAP address book that is controlled by UCS.
5846 50	Initialize All Addr Book Clears everything (including users codes) in the directory information managed by UCS. However, the accounts and passwords of the system administrators are not deleted.

5846 51	Backup All Addr Book
	Uploads all directory information to the SD card.
5846 52	Restore All Addr Book
	Downloads all directory information from the SD card.
5846 53	Clear Backup Info.
	Deletes the address book uploaded from the SD card in the slot. Deletes only the files uploaded for that machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected. Note: After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.
5846 60	Search Option
	This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book.
	Bit Meaning
	0 Checks both upper/lower case characters
	1 Japan Only
	2
	3
	4 --- Not Used ---
	5 --- Not Used ---
	6 --- Not Used ---
	7 --- Not Used ---
5846 62	Complexity Option 1
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to <u>upper case</u> and sets the length of the password. [0~32/1] Note: • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.
5846 63	Complexity Option 2
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to <u>lower case</u> and defines the length of the password. [0~32/1] Note: • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.

5846 64	Complexity Option 3
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to <u>numbers</u> and defines the length of the password. [0~32/1] Note: • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.
5846 65	Complexity Option 4
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to <u>symbols</u> and defines the length of the password. [0~32/1] Note: • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.
5846 90	Plain Data Forbidden
	Lets you to prevent the address from transmission as plain data. This is a security function that prevents unauthorized access to address book data. [0~1/1] 0: No check. Address book data not protected. 1: Check. Enables operation of UCS without data from HDD or SC card and without creating address book information with plain data.
5846 91	FTP Auth. Port Settings
	Sets the FTP port to get the delivery server address book that is used in the individual authorization mode. [0~65535/1]
5846 94	Encryption Start
	Shows the status of the encryption function of the address book on the LDAP server. [0~255/1] No default

5847	Net File Resolution Reduction		
	5847 1 through 5847 6 changes the default settings of image data sent externally by the Net File page reference function. [0~2/1] 5847 21 sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files controlled by NetFile. "NetFile" refers to jobs to be printed from the document server with a PC and the DeskTopBinder software.		
5847 1	Rate After Copy Col	[0~5/1]	0: 1x 1: 1/2x 2: 1/3x 3: 1/4x 4: 1/6x 5: 1/8x 6: 2/3x ¹ ¹ : "6: 2/3x" applies to 003, 005, 006 only.
5847 2	Rate for Copy B&W Text	[0~6/1]	
5847 3	Rate for Copy B&W Other	[0~6/1]	
5847 4	Rate for Printer Color	[0~5/1]	
5847 5	Rate for Printer B&W	[0~6/1]	
5847 6	Rate for Printer B&W HQ	[0~6/1]	
5847 21	Network Quality Default for JPEG		
	Sets the default value for the quality of JPEG images sent as NetFile pages. This function is available only with the MLB (Media Link Board) option installed. [5~95/1]		

5848	Web Service	
	5847 2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. 5847 100 sets the maximum size of images that can be downloaded. The default is equal to 1 gigabyte.	
5848 1	Access Control. : NetFile (Lower 4 Bits Only)	
	Bit switch settings. 0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to Desk Top Binder. Access and deliveries from Scan Router have no effect on capture.	
5848 2	Acc. Ctrl.: Repository (only Lower 4 Bits)	0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder.
5848 3	Acc. Ctrl.: Doc. Svr. Print (Lower 4 Bits)	Switches access control on and off. 0000: OFF, 0001: ON
5848 4	Acc. Ctrl.: User Directory (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 5	Acc. Ctrl.: Delivery Input (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 7	Acc. Ctrl Comm. Log Fax (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 9	Acc. Ctrl.: Job Control (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 11	Acc. Ctrl: Device Management (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 13	Acc. Ctrl: Fax (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 21	Acc. Ctrl: Delivery (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 22	Acc. Ctrl: User Administration (Lower 4 Bits)	
5848 41	Acc. Ctrl: Security Setting (Lower 4 Bits only)	
5848 100	Repository: Download Image Max. Size	[1~1024/1 K]
5848 201	Access Ctrl: Regular Trans	
	No information is available at this time. 0: Not allowed 1: Allowed	

5848 210	Setting: Log Type: Job 1
	No information is available at this time.
5848 211	Setting: Log Type: Job 2
	No information is available at this time.
5848 212	Setting: Log Type: Access
	No information is available at this time.
5848 213	Setting: Primary Srv
	No information is available at this time.
5848 214	Setting: Secondary Srv
	No information is available at this time.
5848 215	Setting: Start Time
	No information is available at this time.
5848 216	Setting: Interval Time
	No information is available at this time.
5848 217	Setting: Timing
	No information is available at this time.

5849	Installation Date	
	Displays or prints the installation date of the machine.	
5849 1	Display	The "Counter Clear Day" has been changed to "Installation Date" or "Inst. Date".
5849 2	Switch to Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0~1/1] 0: No Print 1: Print

5850*	Address Book Function	
5850 1	Switch Module	Selects the module for managing user information. [0~1/1] 0: SCS 1: UCS
5850 2	Select Title	Selects the default heading of the address book. [2~4/1] 2: Heading 1 3: Heading 2 4: Heading 3

5851	Bluetooth Mode	
	Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key. [0:Public] [1: Private]	

5852*	SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. The protocol for communication between Internet main MTAs (Message Transfer Agents).
5852 1*	SMTP Server Name	Allows you to specify the server by either its IP address or host name. If you use the host name, then you must also specify the DNS.
5852 2*	SMTP Server Port Number	Sets the port number of the SMTP server. [0~65535 / 25 / 1]
5852 3*	SMTP Type	
5852 4*	SMTP User Name	Enter a text string for the user name.
5852 5*	SMTP Password	Enter a character string for the password.
5852 7*	POP Before SMTP	During mail sending, determines whether the POP server connection is validated before connecting to the SMTP server. This prevents unauthorized access to the SMTP server and requires users to access and log onto the POP3 server before sending e-mail. 0 : No. POP server connection validated. 1 : Yes. POP server connection validated before SMTP connection.
5852 8*	POP Server Name	Sets the name of the POP server. You can use either the IP address or the host name. If you use the host name, then you must also specify the DNS.
5852 9*	POP Server Port Number	Sets the port number of the POP server. [1~65535 / 110 / 1]
5852 10*	POP User Name	Sets the POP user name used to validate POP connection before SMTP connection. This validation is switched on with SP5852 6 (POP Before SMTP). Limit: 63 characters.
5852 11*	POP Password	Sets the POP password used to validate POP connection before SMTP connection. This validation is switched on with SP5852 6 (POP Before SMTP). Limit: 63 characters.
5852 12*	POP Auth. Encryption	Determines whether encryption is done when POP connection is validated before SMTP connection. [0~2 / 0 / 1] 0 : Automatic 1 : No. Without encryption. 2 : Yes. With encryption.

5853*	Stamp Data Download	Use this SP to download the fixed stamp data stored in the firmware of the ROM and copy it to the HDD. This SP can be executed as many times as required. This SP must be executed after replacing or formatting the hard disks. Note : This SP can be executed only with the hard disks installed.

5856	Remote ROM Update	When set to "1" allows reception of firmware data via the local port (IEEE 1284) during a remote ROM update. This setting is reset to zero after the machine is cycled off and on. [0~1 / 0 / 1] 0 : Not allowed 1 : Allowed

5857	Save Debug Log
001	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)
	Switches on the debug log feature. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on. [0~1/1] 0: OFF 1: ON
002	Target (2: HDD 3: SD Card)
	Selects the destination where the debugging information generated by the event selected by SP5858 will be stored if an error is generated [2~3 /1] 2: HDD 3: SD Card
005	Save to HDD
	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the hard disk.
006	Save to SD Card
	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the SD Card.
009	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)
	Takes the most recent 4 MB of the log written to the hard disk and copies them to the SD Card. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.
010	Copy HDD to SD Card Latest 4 MB Any Key)
	Takes the log of the specified key from the log on the hard disk and copies it to the SD Card. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4 MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. This SP does not execute if there is no log on the HDD with no key specified.
011	Erase HDD Debug Data
	Erases all debug logs on the HDD
012	Erase SD Card Debug Data
	Erases all debug logs on the SD Card. If the card contains only debugging files generated by an event specified by SP5858, the files are erased when SP5857 010 or 011 is executed. To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off and on.
013	Free Space on SD Card
	Displays the amount of space available on the SD card.
014	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB)
	Copies the last 4MB of the log (written directly to the card from shared memory) onto an SD card.
015	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB Any Key)
	This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number.
016	Make HDD Debug
	This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD.
017	Make SD Debug
	This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card.

5858*	Debug Save When	
	These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857 002. SP58583 stores one SC specified by number. <i>Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes.</i>	
58581*	Engine SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by copier engine errors.
58582*	Controller SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by GW controller errors.
58583*	Any SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	[0~65535 / 0 / 1]
58584*	Jam (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores jam errors.

5859*	Debug Log Save Function	
5859 1*	Key 1	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board. (●5.3.1) [-9999999~9999999 / 0 / 1]
5859 2*	Key 2	
5859 3*	Key 3	
5859 4*	Key 4	
5859 5*	Key 5	
5859 6*	Key 6	
5859 7*	Key 7	
5859 8*	Key 8	
5859 9*	Key 9	
5859 10*	Key 10	

5860	SMTP/POP3/IMAP4	
5860 1	SMTP Server Name	Allows you to specify the name of the SMTP server. Enter either the host name or the IP address. If you enter the host name, you must also specify the name of the DNS server.
5860 2	SMTP Server Port Number	
	This SP sets the number of the SMTP server port. [1~65535/1]	
5860 3	SMTP Certification	This setting switches SMTP certification on and off for mail sending. 0 : Off 1: On
5860 4	SMTP Certification User Name	
	Allows you to set the user name to be used for SMTP certification. This user name is used only when the user name for SMTP certification has not been selected with the software application. The user name includes the "realmID" string.	
5860 5	SMTP Certification Password	Allows you to set the password to be used for SMTP certification. The length of the password is limited to 128 alphanumeric characters.

5860 6	SMTP Certification Encryption
	This setting determines whether the password for SMTP certification is encrypted. 0: Automatic 1: No encryption done 2: Encryption done
5860 7	POP Before SMTP
	This setting determines whether the transmission connects with the POP server first for certification before it connects to the SMTP server for sending. 0: No connection to POP server 1: Connection to POP server
5860 8	Standby Wait Time After POP3 Certification
	This SP sets the amount of time to allow for the connection to the SMTP server after the transmission has connected to the POP server and been certified during the execution of POP Before SMTP. [0~10000/ 300 /1]
5860 9	RX Protocol
	This SP specifies POP3 protocol or switches off receiving. 0: No receiving 1: POP3 protocol
5860 10	POP3/IMAP4 Server Name
	This SP specifies the POP3/IMAP4 server that uses POP Before SMTP during mail receiving. The server can be specified either by IP address or host name. If you use the host name, you also need the name of the DNS server.
5860 11	POP3/IMAP4 User Name
	This SP sets the user name used during POP3/IMAP4 certification.
5860 12	POP3/IMAP4 Password
	This SP sets the password used during POP3/IMAP4 certification.
5860 13	POP3/IMAP4 Certification Encryption
	This SP specifies whether password encryption is done for POP3/IMAP4 certification. 0: Automatic 1: No encryption done 2: Encryption done
5860 14	POP3 Server Port Number
	This SP sets the number of the POP3 server port. [1~65535/ 110 /1]
5860 15	IMAP4 Server Port Number
	This SP sets the number of the IMAP4 server port. [1~65535/ 143 /1]
5860 16	SMTP RX Port Number
	This SP sets the number of the port that receives SMTP mail. [1~65535/ 25 /1]
5860 17	Mail RX Interval
	This SP sets the timing for mail received at regular intervals. [2~1440/15/1 min.] Note: Setting this SP to "0" switches off receiving mail at timed intervals.

5860 18	Limit Size of RX Mail
	This SP specifies the maximum size of mail that can be received. [1~50/2/1 MB]
5860 19	Server Mail Store
	This SP setting determines whether received mail is stored on the server. 0: Received mail not stored 1: All received mail stored 2: Stores only mail that generated errors during receiving
5860 20	Partial Mail Receive Timeout
	[1~168/72/1] Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time.
5860 21	MDN Response RFC2298Compliance
	Determines whether RFC2298compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. [0~1/1] 0: No 1: Yes
5860 22	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement
	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated. [0~1/1] 0: No. "From" item not switched. 1: Yes. "From" item switched.
5860 23	SMTP Certification Account Mail
	This is the mail address for SMTP certification. When SMTP certification is done in response to a send request for a document or text mail, this SP sets the mail address for the SMTP protocol MAIL FROM command in the following cases: • When the SMTP certification information has not been set from the software application. • When the SMTP certification information for UCS has been set or not set on the mainframe with the User Tools.
5860 24	POP3/IMAP4 Account Mail Address
	This is the mail address for POP Before SMTP mail address. When POP Before SMTP certification is done in response to a send request for a document or text mail, this SP sets the mail address for the SMTP protocol MAIL FROM command in the following cases: • When the POP Before SMTP certification information has not been set from the software application. • When the SMTP certification information for UCS has been set or SMTP certification information has not set on the mainframe with the User Tools. • Also, when SP5960 022 is set to "1" (Yes – "From" item switched), this mail address is inserted into the header for the "From" item.

5860 25	SMTP Auth Direct Sending
	Occasionally, all SMTP certifications may fail with SP5860 006 set to "2" to enable encryption during SMTP certification for the SMTP server. This can occur if the SMTP server does not meet RFC standards. In such cases you can use this SP to set the SMTP certification method directly. However, this SP can be used only after SP5860 003 has been set to "1" (On). Bit0: LOGIN Bit1: PLAIN Bit2: CRAM_MD5 Bit3: DIGEST_MD5 Bit4 to Bit 7: Not Used

5861	Account Setting
5861 1	Administrator Mail Address
	This SP sets the mail address of the system administrator. If the mainframe has a HDD installed, this address is saved in a file in UFS on the hard disk. If the mainframe has no HDD and uses RAM Disk, the address is saved in NVRAM.

5862	Main Subject Setting
	These SP codes enable and specify the character string to be displayed in the subject line of the email header. If the mainframe has a HDD installed, the information address is saved in a file in UFS on the hard disk. If the mainframe has no HDD and uses RAM Disk, then the address is saved in NVRAM. • The SP codes listed below enable the IDs and allow you to enter character strings for the information (a character string) to appear in the subject line of mail headers. • The IDs are paired. The first SP of each pair enables (or disables) the ID and the second SP of the pair allows you to enter the character string. • The length of the character string that you can enter is 20 alphanumeric characters (SP_CHAR_CODE_DEF (20)). • ID=1 and ID=2 have default settings ("Urgent" and "High", respectively). The other IDs do not have default settings.
5862 1	Subject ID=1 Enable Flag
5862 2	Subject ID=1: Text/Character Code Set
...	
5862 47	Subject ID=48 Enable Flag
5862 48	Subject ID=48: Text/Character Code Set

5863	SMP/FTP/NCP Settings	
5863 1	SMB Default User Name	This SP sets the default user name used for SMB sending.
5863 2	SMB Default Password	This SP sets the default password used for SMB sending.
5863 3	FTP Default User Name	This SP sets the default user name used for FTP sending.
5863 4	FTP Default Password	This SP sets the default password for FTP sending.
5863 6	NCP Default User Name	This SP sets the default user name used for NCP sending.
5863 7	NCP Default Password	This SP sets the default password for NCP sending.

5870	Common Key Info Writing	
	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for NRS specifications.	
5870 1	Writing	Note: These SPs are for future use and currently are not used.
5870 3	Initialize	

5871	HDD Function Disable DFU	
	Disables the HDD functions by suppressing all functions that write data to the HDD. After this SP is executed, the machine must be switched off and on to enable the setting. [0~1/1] 0: OFF 1: ON Note: This SP is intended for use during installation of the Data Overwrite Security Unit B735 (a new option). For more, see section "1. Installation".	

5872	HDD Overwrite Status Check DFU	

5873	SD Card Appli Move	
	Allows you to move applications from one SD card another. For more, see Printer/Scanner Service Manual 1.3 "Merging Applications on One SD Card".	
5873 1	Move Exec	Executes the move from one SD card to another.
5873 2	Undo Exec	This is an undo function. It cancels the previous execution.

5875	SC Auto Reboot	
	This SP determines whether the machine reboots automatically when an SC error occurs. Note: The reboot does not occur for Type A SC codes.	
5875 1	Reboot Setting	The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot.
5875 2	Reboot Type	The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs.

5878	Option Setup	Data Overwrite Security (DOS) Setup
	Press [Execute] to initialize the Data Overwrite Security option for the copier. For more, see 1.18.2 Data Overwrite Security Unit, 'Installation'.	

5879	Edit Option Setup	
	This SP is used to install the edit option card.	

5907	Plug & Play Maker/Model Name	
	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again. After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.	

5913	Switchover Permission Time	
5913 2	Print Application Timer	
	Sets the length of time to elapse before allowing another application to take control of the display when the application currently controlling the display is not operating because a key has not been pressed. [3~30/1 s]	
5913 102	Print Application Set	
	This SP prescribes the time interval to expire before the machine shifts to another application when another application currently holds access control for the standby mode while there is no key input. [0~1/1/1]	

5914*	Application Counter Display	0: Off, 1: On
5914 1*	Printer Counter	Selects whether or not these total counters are displayed in the UP mode.
5914 2*	Copy Counter	

5915	Mechanical Counter Detection	0: Not detected, 1: Detected, 2: Unknown
	Confirms that the mechanical counter inside the inner cover is connected.	

5918*	A3/DLT Counter Display	[0, 1 / 0 / --] (0: OFF, 1: ON)
	Sets the key press display for the counter key. This setting has no relation to (SSP) SP5-104 A3/DLT Double Count.	

5923*	Border Removal Area Switching	[0~1 / 0 / 1]
	Toggles between two settings that affect the appearance of the pages for border removal and printed facing pages: (1) Using the original area as the allotted area, or (2) Using only the copy paper as the allotted area. 0: Original 1: Paper	

5958*	Feed Clutch Start Timing Adjustment, DFU	
	Adjusts the clutch timing to optimize the intervals between fed sheets to reduce jams in the feed unit.	
59581*	Start Timing: Tray 1, 2	[35 ~ 57.5 / 42.5 / 2.5mm] DFU
59582*	Start Timing: Tray 3, 4, LCT	35 ~ 57.5 / 42.5 / 2.5mm] DFU
59583*	Leading Edge Detection	[19~34 / 26.5 / 2.5 mm] DFU

5959*	1st Print Delay Timing	[0~60 / 0 / 1 s]
	Sets the amount of time the machine waits to project the latent image onto the drum after the feed/development motor, main motor, and fusing/feed-out motor switch on. This setting allows the drum and hot roller to turn freely in order to allow more time for cleaning toner and carbon that has accumulated on the hot roller strippers. Changing this can improve image quality but can also slow down the first print time. Adjust only when necessary.	

5961*	Large Capacity Exit Mode	0: OFF, 1: ON
	Selects whether or not all stapled copies are sent to Shift Tray 1 when the Two-Tray finisher is installed.	

5962*	8K 16K Paper Mode		0: Off, 1: On.	
	Switches on/off the use of 8-kai, and 16-kai China paper sizes. If 'Off', 8-kai, 16-kai paper sizes are not displayed after pressing the selection key. If 'On', 8-kai, 16-kai paper sizes displayed after pressing the selection key. For this setting to take effect, "2" must be selected for SP5131. With "2" (Europe) selected for SP5131, the ADF can select 16-kai LEF. With SP5962 set for "0" (Off), the nearest size is detected as shown below.			
	Size Loaded	16-kai SEF	6-kai LEF	8-kai SEF
	Size Detected	B5 SEF	B5 LEF	B4 LEF

5963	Power Consumption Reduction Mode DFU		

5967*	Copy Server Set Function	0: ON, 1: OFF
	Enables and disables the document server. This is a security measure that prevents image data from being left in the temporary area of the HDD. After changing this setting, you must switch the main switch off and on to enable the new setting.	

5970*	Debug Serial Output DFU		
	Determines whether the debug information is output by the serial port when the machine is powered on. [0~1 / 0 / 1] 0: Disable 1: Enable		

5974	Cherry Server
	Selects which version of the Scan Router application program, "Light" or "Full (Professional)", is installed. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: <i>Light version (supplied with this machine)</i> 1: <i>Full version (optional)</i>

5985	Onboard Device Setting	
	The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1".	
5985 1	On Board NIC	0: Disable 1: Enable
5985 2	On Board USB	

5990	SP Print Mode (SMC Printout)	
5990 1	All (Data List)	Prints all of the system parameter lists for the item selected. (➡ 5.2.7) Input the number for the item that you want to print, and then press ①: “Execute” on the touch panel.
5990 2	SP (Mode Data List)	
5990 3	User Program	
5990 4	Logging Data	
5990 5	Diagnostic Report	
5990 6	Non-Default	
5990 7	NIB Summary	
5990 8	Capture Log	
5990 21	Copier User Program	
5990 22	Scanner SP	
5990 23	Scanner User Program	

SP6-xxx: Peripherals

6006*	ADF Registration Adjust	
	Adjusts the side-to-side and leading edge registration for simplex and duplex original feeding in ARDF mode. Press $\odot$ to toggle $\pm$. SP6006 5 sets the maximum setting allowed for rear edge erase.	
6006 1*	Side-to-side	[-3 ~ +3 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm step]
6006 2*	Leading Edge (Thin Original)	[-30 ~ +30 / 0.0 / 0.17 mm step]
6006 3*	Leading Edge (Duplex Front)	[-42 ~ +42 / 0.0 / 0.12 mm step]
6006 4*	Leading Edge (Duplex Rear)	[-42 ~ +42 / 0.0 / 0.12 mm step]
6006 5*	Rear Edge Erase	[-20 ~ +20 / -3.0 / 0.5 mm step]

6007	ADF Input Check	
6007 1	Group 1	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the ARDF. (➡ 5.2.5)
6007 2	Group 2	
6007 3	Group 3	

6008	ADF Output Check	
	Switches on each electrical component (ARDF motor, solenoid, etc.) of the ARDF for testing. (➡ 5.2.6)	

6009	ADF Free Run	
	Performs a free run with the ARDF for duplex and stamp testing. Input the number for the item you want to check, and then press $\odot$ to start. <i>This is a general free run controlled from the copier. For more detailed free run modes, see the ARDF manual.</i>	
6009 1	Duplex Mode	OFF/ON
6009 2	Stamp Mode	OFF/ON

6010*	ADF Stamp Position Adjustment	[-7~+7 / 0 / 0.5 mm steps]
	Adjusts the horizontal position of the stamp on the scanned originals.	

6016*	Original Size Decision Priority	Japan		
		Bit	0	1
		7	DLT SEF	11"x15"
		North America		
		Bit	0	1
		6	DLT SEF	11" x 15"
		5	LT LEF	US Exec LEF
		4	LT SEF	8"x10" SEF
		3	LG SEF	F4 SEF
		Europe		
		Bit	0	1
		2	DLT SEF	8-K SEF
		1	LT SEF	16-K SEF
		0	LT LEF	16-K LEF
	Determines which original sizes are detected when an original is detected that is larger than the size assigned to the original size sensor. This provides an alternate selection for detection, other than that assigned with SP5131.			

6017*	Sheet Through Magnification	[−50.0 ~ +50.0 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step]
	Adjusts the magnification in the sub-scan direction for ADF mode. Use the  key to toggle between + and - before entering the value	

6105*	Staple Position Adjustment	[−3.5~+3.5 / 0.0 / 0.5 mm step]
	Adjusts the staple position in the main scan direction when using the two-tray finisher. <i>Press  to toggle ±. A larger value shifts the staple toward the edge of the paper.</i>	

6113*	Punch Hole Adjustment	
	Adjusts the punch hole position. SP6113 1: 2-hole punches for Japan, North America, Europe, and 4-hole punches for Northern Europe. SP6113 2: 3-hole punches for North America, and 4-hole punches for Europe. <i>Press  to toggle ±. A larger value shifts the holes toward the edge of the paper.</i>	
6113 1*	2-Holes	[−7~+7 / 0 / 0.5 mm steps]
6113 2*	3-Holes	[−7~+7 / 0 / 0.5 mm steps]

6902*	Fold Position Adjustment	
	Allows fine adjustment of the fold position on paper when the Booklet Finisher is connected and used.	
6902 1*	A3/DLT	[−30~+30 / 0 / 0.5 mm]
6902 2*	B4	[−20~+20 / 0 / 0.5 mm]
6902 3*	A4/LT	[−15~+15 / 0 / 0.5 mm]

SP7-xxx: Data Log

7001*	Main Motor Operation Time	Display: 00000000~99999999 min
	The number of prints and drive time for drum revolutions can be obtained by counting the main motor revolution time. If the amount of time required for the drum to revolve to print 1 copy increases, this data combined with the number of copies can be used to analyze problems and could be useful for future product development.	

7401*	Total SC Counter	Displays the total number of service calls that have occurred. Display range: 0000~9999

7403*	SC History	
7403 1*	Latest	Displays the most recent service calls successive groups of 10.
7403 2*	Latest 1	
7403 3*	Latest 2	
7403 4*	Latest 3	
7403 5*	Latest 4	
7403 6*	Latest 5	
7403 7*	Latest 6	
7403 8*	Latest 7	
7403 9*	Latest 8	
7403 10*	Latest 9	

7502*	Total Paper Jam Counter	Displays the total number of copy jams. Display range: 0000~9999

7503*	Total Original Jam Counter	Displays the total number of original jams. Display range: 0000~9999

7504*	Paper Jam Counter by Jam Location		Display range: 0000~9999
	Displays the total number of copy jams by location. <i>A "Paper Late" error occurs when the paper fails to activate the sensor at the precise time. A "Paper Lag" paper jam occurs when the paper remains at the sensor for longer than the prescribed time.</i>		
	Error No.	Error	
	1*	At Power On	
	3*	Tray 1: On	
	4*	Tray 2: On	
	5*	Tray 3/LCT: ON	
	6*	Tray 4: On	
	7*	External Tray: On	
	8*	Registration: ON	
	9*	External Tray: ON	
	10*	Internal Tray: ON	
	13*	Duplex Exit 2: ON	
	14*	Duplex Exit 3: ON	
	16*	Exit 1: Off	
	17*	---	
	18*	---	
	19*	Ent. Duplex 1: Off	
	23*	Exit Duplex: Off	
	24*	---	
	25*	Finisher Entrance	
	26*	Finisher Proof Tray	
	27*	Finisher Shift Tray	
	28*	Finisher Stapler	
	29*	Finisher Exit	
	30*	Mailbox Entrance	
	31*	Mailbox Proof Tray	
	32*	Mailbox Relay	
	33*	Mailbox MBX	
	35*	Booklet FIN Entrance	
	36*	Booklet FIN Transport	
	37*	Booklet FIN Early	
	38*	Booklet FIN Staple	
	39*	Booklet FIN Late Saddle Stitch	
	40*	Ent. FIN Off	
	41*	Exit FIN Off	
	57*	LCT Tray	
	58	Vert. Trans 1: ON	
	59	Vert. Trans 2: ON	
	60	Registration: OFF	
	61	Transport Sensor 4	
	63	External Tray: OFF	
	64	---	
	66	Duplex Exit 1: OFF	
	67	---	
	68	Relay Sensor 2: OFF	
	69	Duplex Feed: OFF	
	73	Exit Duplex: ON	
	74	1-Bin Tray Sensor: OFF	

7505*	Total Original Jam by Location		Display range: 0000~9999
	Displays the total number of original jams by location. These jams occur when the original does not activate the sensors.		
	Note:		
	• A "Check In" failure occurs when the paper fails to activate the sensor at the precise time. • A "Check Out" failure occurs when the paper remains at the sensor for longer than the prescribed time and causes a jam. • The 3rd column in the table below tells you the correct component name used in the service manual.		
		Operation Panel Display	Service Manual Name
	1	At Power On	---
	3	Registration Sensor Check In Failure	Skew Correction Sensor
	4	Nip-in Sensor Check In Failure	Interval Sensor
	5	Registration Sensor (On Check)	---
	6	Relay Sensor (On Check)	
	7	Inverter Sensor (On Check)	
	53	Registration Sensor Check Out Failure	Skew Correction Sensor
	54	Nip-in Check Out Failure	Interval Sensor
	55	Registration Sensor (Off Check)	
	56	Relay Sensor (Off Check)	
	57	Inverter Sensor (Off Check)	

7506*	Jam Count by Copy Size	
7506 5*	A4 LEF	Displays the total number of copy jams by paper size.
7506 6*	A5 LEF	
7506 14*	B5 LEF	
7506 38*	LT LEF	
7506 44*	HLT LEF	
7506 132*	A3 SEF	
7506 133*	A4 SEF	
7506 134*	A5 SEF	
7506 141*	B4 SEF	
7506 142*	B5 SEF	
7506 160*	DLT SEF	
7506 164*	LG SEF	
7506 166*	LT SEF	
7506 172*	HLT SEF	
7506 255*	Others	

7507*	Copy Jam History (Transfer Sheet)	
	Displays the copy jam history of the transfer unit in groups of 10, starting with the most recent 10 jams. Display contents are as follows: CODE is the SP7-505-*** number. SIZE is the paper size code in hex. (See "Paper Size Hex Codes" below.) TOTAL is the total jam error count (SP7-003) DATE is the date the previous jam occurred	
7507 1*	Latest	Sample Display: CODE: 007 SIZE: 05h TOTAL: 0000334 DATE: Mon Mar 15 11:44:50 2000
7507 2*	Latest 1	
7507 3*	Latest 2	
7507 4*	Latest 3	
7507 5*	Latest 4	
7507 6*	Latest 5	
7507 7*	Latest 6	
7507 8*	Latest 7	
7507 9*	Latest 8	
7507 10*	Latest 9	

7508*	Original Jam History	
	Displays the original jam history of the transfer unit in groups of 10, starting with the most recent 10 jams. Display contents are as follows: CODE is the SP7-505-*** number. SIZE is the paper size code in hex. (See "Paper Size Hex Codes" below.) TOTAL is the total jam error count (SP7-003) DATE is the date the previous jam occurred	
75081*	Latest	Sample Display: CODE: 007 SIZE: 05h TOTAL: 0000334 DATE: Mon Mar 15 11:44:50 2000
75082*	Latest 1	
75083*	Latest 2	
75084*	Latest 3	
75085*	Latest 4	
75086*	Latest 5	
75087*	Latest 6	
75088*	Latest 7	
75089*	Latest 8	
750810*	Latest 9	

Paper Size Hex Codes

These codes are displayed by SP7507 and SP7508.

Paper Size	Code (hex)	Paper Size	Code (hex)
A4 LEF	05	B4 SEF	8D
A5 LEF	06	B5 SEF	8E
B5 LEF	0E	DLT SEF	A0
LT LEF	26	LG SEF	A4
HLT LEF	2C	LT SEF	A6
A3 SEF	84	HLT SEF	AC
A4 SEF	85	Others	FF
A5 SEF	86		

7801	ROM No./Firmware Version	Displays the ROM number and firmware version numbers.
7803*	PM Counter Display	Displays the PM counter since the last PM.
7804	PM Counter Reset	Resets the PM counter. To reset, press ①.
7807	SC/Jam Counter Reset	Resets the SC and jam counters. To reset, press ①.
	This SP does not reset the jam history counters: SP7-507, SP7-508.	
7808	Counter Reset	Resets all counters except SP7-003-***, SP7-006-***. To reset, press ①.
7810	Access Code Clear	Clears the access code. To clear, press ①.
	Use to clear the access code if the customer forgets the code. After clearing the code is reset for Null and the password entry display does not open.	
7811	Original Count Clear	Clears the original total display, displayed with SP7-002-***. To clear, press ①.
7816	Print Counter Reset by Tray	
7816 1	Bypass	Resets the total copy count by paper tray. To reset, press ①. Use these SP modes when replacing the pick-up, feed, and separation rollers.
7816 2	Tray 1	
7816 3	Tray 2	
7816 4	Tray 3	
7816 5	Tray 4	
7816 6	LCT	
7825	Total Counter Reset	No longer used. (Has no effect)
7826	MF Error Counter Japan Only	
	Displays the number of counts requested of the card/key counter.	
7826 1	Error Total	A request for the count total failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected.
7826 2	Error Staple	The request for a staple count failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected.
7827	MF Error Counter Clear	
	Press Execute to reset to 0 the values of SP7826. Japan Only	
7832	Self-Diagnosis Result Display	Opens the "Self-Diagnose Result Display"
	Execute to open the "Self-Diagnose Result Display" to view details about errors. Use the keys on in the display on the touch-panel to scroll through all the information. If no errors have occurred, you will see the "No Error" notation.	

7833	Pixel Coverage Ratio	
	Displays the coverage ratio of the output (the ratio of the total pixel area of the image data to the total printable area on the paper). Note that this value is not directly proportional to the amount of toner consumed, although of course it is one factor that affects this amount. The other major factors involved include: the type, total image area and image density of the original, toner concentration and developer potential.	
7833 1*	Last Pages	0% to 100%.
7833 2*	Average Pages	0% to 100%.
7833 3*	Toner Bottles In Use	0 to 65,535 copies
7833 4*	Copy Count: Previous Toner Bottle	0 to 999,999 copies
7833 5*	Copy Count: Toner Bottle Before Previous	0 to 999,999 copies

7834	Clear Pixel Coverage Data	
	These SPs clear the counters for the following items.	
7834 1	Last & Average	
7834 2	Toner Bottles	
7834 3	Page Count: Bottle	
7834 4	Dot Coverage Clear	
7834 255	All Coverage Counts	

7836	Total Memory Size	
	Displays the memory capacity of the controller system.	

7852*	ADF Exposure Glass	
	Counts the number of occurrences (0 ~ 65,535) when dust was detected on the scanning glass of the ADF.	
7852 1*	Detect Count	Counts the occurrences. Counting is done only if SP4999 1 (ADF Scan Glass Dust Check) is switched on.
7852 2*	Counter Clear	Clears the count. Memory All Clear (SP5801) resets this counter to zero.

7901*	Assert Info. DFU	
	These SP numbers display the results of the occurrence of the most recent SC code generated by the machine.	
7991 1*	Source File Name	Module name
7991 2*	Line Number	Number of lines
7991 3*	Result	Value

SP8-xxx: Data Log2

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8211~SP8216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8401~SP8406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8691~SP8696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an 'application'). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

PREFIXES	WHAT IT MEANS	
T:	Total: (Grand Total).	Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.)..
C:	Copy application.	Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each application when the job was <i>not</i> stored on the document server.
F:	Fax application.	
P:	Print application.	
S:	Scan application.	
L:	Local storage (document server)	Totals (jobs, pages, etc.) for the document server. The L: counters work differently case by case. Sometimes, they count jobs/pages stored on the document server; this can be in document server mode (from the document server window), or from another mode, such as from a printer driver or by pressing the Store File button in the Copy mode window. Sometimes, they include occasions when the user uses a file that is already on the document server. Each counter will be discussed case by case.
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

ABBREVIATION	WHAT IT MEANS
/	"By", e.g. "T:Jobs/Apl" = Total Jobs "by" Application
>	More (2> "2 or more", 4> "4 or more")
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
C	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)
IFax	Internet Fax
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.
K	Black (YMCK)
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.
LSize	Large (paper) Size
Mag	Magnification
MC	One color (monochrome)
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. "NRS" is used overseas, "CSS" is used in Japan.
Org	Original for scanning
OrgJam	Original Jam
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.
PC	Personal Computer
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.
PJob	Print Jobs
Ppr	Paper

ABBREVIATION	WHAT IT MEANS
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam
PrtPGS	Print Pages
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.
Rez	Resolution
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)
Scn	Scan
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.
Svr	Server
TonEnd	Toner End
TonSave	Toner Save
TXJob	Send, Transmission
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black

NOTE: All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear, or the Counter Reset SP7 808.

8001	T:Total Jobs	These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] Note: The L: counter is the total number of times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used.
8002	C:Total Jobs	
8003	F:Total Jobs	
8004	P:Total Jobs	
8005	S:Total Jobs	
8006	L:Total Jobs	

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either "Delete Data" or "Specify Output" is specified.
- A job is counted as a fax job when the job is stored for sending.
- When a fax is received to fax memory, the F: counter increments but the L: counter does not (the document server is not used).
- A fax broadcast counts as one job for the F: counter (the fax destinations in the broadcast are not counted separately).
- A fax broadcast is counted only after all the faxes have been sent to their destinations. If one transmission generates an error, then the broadcast will not be counted until the transmission has been completed.
- A printed fax report counts as one job for the F: counter.
- The F: counter does not distinguish between fax sending or receiving.
- When a copy job on the document server is printed, SP8022 also increments, and when a print job stored on the document server is printed, SP8024 also increments.
- When an original is both copied and stored on the document server, the C: and L: counters both increment.
- When a print job is stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user presses the Document Server button to store the job on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user enters document server mode and prints data stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When an image received from Palm 2 is received and stored, the L: counter increments.
- When the customer prints a report (user code list, for example), the O: counter increments. However, for fax reports and reports executed from the fax application, the F: counter increments.

8011	T:Jobs/LS	These SPs count the number of jobs stored to the document server by each application, to reveal how local storage is being used for input. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8012	C:Jobs/LS	
8013	F:Jobs/LS	
8014	P:Jobs/LS	
8015	S:Jobs/LS	The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8016	L:Jobs/LS	
8017	O:Jobs/LS	

- When a scan job is sent to the document server, the S: counter increments. When you enter document server mode and then scan an original, the L: counter increments.
- When a print job is sent to the document server, the P: counter increments.
- When a network application sends data to the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When an image from Palm 2 is stored on the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When a fax is sent to the document server, the F: counter increments.

8021	T:Pjob/LS	These SPs reveal how files printed from the document server were stored on the document server originally. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8022	C:Pjob/LS	
8023	F:Pjob/LS	
8024	P:Pjob/LS	
8025	S:Pjob/LS	The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8026	L:Pjob/LS	
8027	O:Pjob/LS	

- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the C: counter increments.
- When an application like DeskTopBinder merges a copy job that was stored on the document server with a print job that was stored on the document server, the C: and P: counters both increment.
- When a job already on the document server is printed with another application, the L: counter increments.
- When a scanner job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the S: counter increments. If the original was scanned from within document server mode, then the L: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application (including Palm 2), are printed with another application, the O: counter increments.
- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with a network application (Web Image Monitor, for example), the C: counter increments.
- When a fax on the document server is printed, the F: counter increments.

8031	T:Pjob/DesApl	These SPs reveal what applications were used to output documents from the document server. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8032	C:Pjob/DesApl	
8033	F:Pjob/DesApl	
8034	P:Pjob/DesApl	
8035	S:Pjob/DesApl	
8036	L:Pjob/DesApl	
8037	O:Pjob/DesApl	

- When documents already stored on the document server are printed, the count for the application that started the print job is incremented.
- When the print job is started from a network application (Desk Top Binder, Web Image Monitor, etc.) the L: counter increments.

8041	T:TX Jobs/LS	These SPs count the applications that stored files on the document server that were later accessed for transmission over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] Note: Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. The L: counter counts the number of jobs scanned from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8042	C:TX Jobs/LS	
8043	F:TX Jobs/LS	
8044	P:TX Jobs/LS	
8045	S:TX Jobs/LS	
8046	L:TX Jobs/LS	
8047	O:TX Jobs/LS	

- When a stored copy job is sent from the document server, the C: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application or Palm2 are sent as an e-mail, the O: counter increments.

8051	T:TX Jobs/DesApl	These SPs count the applications used to send files from the document server over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs sent from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8052	C:TX Jobs/DesApl	
8053	F:TX Jobs/DesApl	
8054	P:TX Jobs/DesApl	
8055	S:TX Jobs/DesApl	
8056	L:TX Jobs/DesApl	
8057	O:TX Jobs/DesApl	

- If the send is started from Desk Top Binder or Web Image Monitor, for example, then the O: counter increments.

8061	T:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.	
8062	C:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for copy jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.	
8063	F:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for fax jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. Note: Finishing features for fax jobs are not available at this time.	
8064	P:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.	
8065	S:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for scan jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. Note: Finishing features for scan jobs are not available at this time.	
8066	L:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs output from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. The finishing method is specified from the print window within document server mode.	
8067	O:FIN Jobs [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application, over the network. The finishing method is specified by the application.	
806x 1	Sort	Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8066 1)
806x 2	Stack	Number of jobs started out of Sort mode.
806x 3	Staple	Number of jobs started in Staple mode.
806x 4	Booklet	Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments.
806x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).
806x 6	Punch	Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8064 6.)
806x 7	Other	Reserved. Not used.

8071	T:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.		
8072	C:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8073	F:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of fax jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8074	P:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8075	S:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of scan jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8076	L:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel, by the number of pages in the job.		
8077	O:Jobs/PGS		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of "Other" application jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
807x 1	1 Page	807x 8	21~50 Pages
807x 2	2 Pages	807x 9	51~100 Pages
807x 3	3 Pages	807x 10	101~300 Pages
807x 4	4 Pages	807x 11	301~500 Pages
807x 5	5 Pages	807x 12	501~700 Pages
807x 6	6~10 Pages	807x 13	701~1000 Pages
807x 7	11~20 Pages	807x 14	1001~ Pages

- For example: When a copy job stored on the document server is printed in document server mode, the appropriate L: counter (SP8076 0xx) increments.
- Printing a fax report counts as a job and increments the F: counter (SP 8073).
- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- For copy jobs (SP 8072) and scan jobs (SP 8075), the total is calculated by multiplying the number of sets of copies by the number of pages scanned. (One duplex page counts as 2.)
- The first test print and subsequent test prints to adjust settings are added to the number of pages of the copy job (SP 8072).
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8111	T:FAX TX Jobs	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, on a telephone line. Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time.	
8113	F:FAX TX Jobs	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax directly on a telephone line. Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time.	

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- This SP counts fax jobs sent over a telephone line with a fax application, including documents stored on the document server.
- If the mode is changed during the job, the job will count with the mode set when the job started.
- If the same document is faxed to both a public fax line and an I-Fax at a destination where both are available, then this counter increments, and the I-Fax counter (812x) also increments.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8121	T:IFAX TX Jobs	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, as fax images using I-Fax. Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time.	
8123	F:IFAX TX Jobs	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent (not stored on the document server), as fax images using I-Fax. Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time.	

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The counters for color are provided for future use; the color fax feature is not available at this time.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8131	T:S-to-Email Jobs	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and attached to an e-mail, regardless of whether the document server was used or not.	
8135	S:S-to-Email Jobs	
	These SPs count the number of jobs scanned and attached to an e-mail, without storing the original on the document server.	

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is stored on the document server, after the job is stored it is determined to be color or black-and-white then counted.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- If several jobs are combined for sending to the Scan Router, Scan-to-Email, or Scan-to-PC, or if one job is sent to more than one destination. each send is counted separately. For example, if the same document is sent by Scan-to-Email as well as Scan-to-PC, then it is counted twice (once for Scan-to-Email and once for Scan-to-PC).

8141	T:Deliv Jobs/Svr	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent to a Scan Router server.	
8143	F:Deliv Jobs/Svr	
	These SPs count the number of jobs scanned in fax mode and sent to a Scan Router server.	

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The jobs are counted even though the arrival and reception of the jobs at the Scan Router server cannot be confirmed.
- If even one color image is mixed with black-and-white images, then the job is counted as a "Color" job.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be delivered, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8151	T:Deliv Jobs/PC	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC). Note: At the present time, 8151 and 8155 perform identical counts.	
8155	S:Deliv Jobs/PC	
	These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent with Scan-to-PC.	

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, it is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled while it is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8161	T:PCFAX TX Jobs	These SPs count the number of PC Fax transmission jobs. A job is counted from when it is registered for sending, not when it is sent. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] Note: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8163	F:PCFAX TX Jobs	

- This counts fax jobs started from a PC using a PC fax application, and sending the data out to the destination from the PC through the copier.

8191	T:Total Scan PGS	These SPs count the pages scanned by each application that uses the scanner to scan images. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8192	C:Total Scan PGS	
8193	F:Total Scan PGS	
8195	S:Total Scan PGS	
8196	L:Total Scan PGS	

- SP 8191 to 8196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

Examples

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8201	T:LSize Scan PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. Note: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.	
8205	S:LSize Scan PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan jobs only. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. Note: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.	

8211	T:Scan PGS/LS	These SPs count the number of pages scanned into the document server. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8212	C:Scan PGS/LS	
8213	F:Scan PGS/LS	The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.
8215	S:Scan PGS/LS	
8216	L:Scan PGS/LS	

- Reading user stamp data is not counted.
- If a job is cancelled, the pages output as far as the cancellation are counted.
- If the scanner application scans and stores 3 B5 sheets and 1 A4 sheet, the S: count is 4.
- If pages are copied but not stored on the document server, these counters do not change.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8221	ADF Org Feeds [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the number of pages fed through the ADF for front and back side scanning.	
8221 1	Front	Number of front sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for either simplex or duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is determined by which side the user loads face up.)
8221 2	Back	Number of rear sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex rear-side scanning.

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

8231	Scan PGS/Mode [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by each ADF mode to determine the work load on the ADF.	
8231 1	Large Volume	Selectable. Large copy jobs that cannot be loaded in the ADF at one time.
8231 2	SADF	Selectable. Feeding pages one by one through the ADF.
8231 3	Mixed Size	Selectable. Select "Mixed Sizes" on the operation panel.
8231 4	Custom Size	Selectable. Originals of non-standard size.
8231 5	Platen	Book mode. Raising the ADF and placing the original directly on the platen.

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.
- The user cannot select mixed sizes or non-standard sizes with the fax application so if the original's page sizes are mixed or non-standard, these are not counted.
- If the user selects "Mixed Sizes" for copying in the platen mode, the Mixed Size count is enabled.
- In the SADF mode if the user copies 1 page in platen mode and then copies 2 pages with SADF, the Platen count is 1 and the SADF count is 3.

8241	T:Scan PGS/Org		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]			
	These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by original type for all jobs, regardless of which application was used.					
8242	C:Scan PGS/Org		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]			
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Copy jobs.					
8243	F:Scan PGS/Org		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]			
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Fax jobs.					
8245	S:Scan PGS/Org		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]			
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Scan jobs.					
8246	L:Scan PGS/Org		[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]			
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen					
		8241	8242	8243	8245	8246
824x 1: Text		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
824x 2: Text/Photo		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
824x 3: Photo		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
824x 4: GenCopy, Pale		Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
824x 5: Map		Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
824x 6: Normal/Detail		Yes	No	Yes	No	No
824x 7: Fine/Super Fine		Yes	No	Yes	No	No
824x 8: Binary		Yes	No	No	Yes	No
824x 9: Grayscale		Yes	No	No	Yes	No

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.

8251	T:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	These SPs show how many times Image Edit features have been selected at the operation panel for each application. Some examples of these editing features are: • Erase> Border • Erase> Center • Image Repeat • Centering • Positive/Negative [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] Note: The count totals the number of times the edit features have been used. A detailed breakdown of exactly which features have been used is not given.
8252	C:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	
8254	P:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	
8256	L:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	
8257	O:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	

The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.

8281	T:Scan PGS/TWAIN	These SPs count the number of pages scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] Note: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8285	S:Scan PGS/TWAIN	

8291	T:Scan PGS/Stamp	These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8293	F:Scan PGS/Stamp	
8295	S:Scan PGS/Stamp	
8296	L:Scan PGS/Stamp	

8301	T:Scan PGS/Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441].	
8302	C:Scan PGS/Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Copy application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-442].	
8303	F:Scan PGS/Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Fax application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-443].	
8305	S:Scan PGS/Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Scan application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-445].	
8306	L:Scan PGS/Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-446].	
830x 1	A3	
830x 2	A4	
830x 3	A5	
830x 4	B4	
830x 5	B5	
830x 6	DLT	
830x 7	LG	
830x 8	LT	
830x 9	HLT	
830x 10	Full Bleed	
830x 254	Other (Standard)	
830x 255	Other (Custom)	

8311	T:Scan PGS/Rez	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.	
8315	S:Scan PGS/Rez	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings. Note: At the present time, 8311 and 8315 perform identical counts.	
831x 1	1200dpi ~	
831x 2	600dpi~1199dpi	
831x 3	400dpi~599dpi	
831x 4	200dpi~399dpi	
831x 5	~199dpi	

- Copy resolution settings are fixed so they are not counted.
- The Fax application does not allow finely-adjusted resolution settings so no count is done for the Fax application.

8381	T:Total PrtPGS	These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8382	C:Total PrtPGS	
8383	F:Total PrtPGS	
8384	P:Total PrtPGS	
8385	S:Total PrtPGS	
8386	L:Total PrtPGS	
8387	O:Total PrtPGS	

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
 - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
 - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
 - Reports printed to confirm counts.
 - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
 - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
 - Error notification reports.
 - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

8391	LSize PrtPGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger. Note: In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.	

8401	T:PrtPGS/LS	These SPs count the number of pages printed from the document server. The counter for the application used to print the pages is incremented. The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8402	C:PrtPGS/LS	
8403	F:PrtPGS/LS	
8404	P:PrtPGS/LS	
8405	S:PrtPGS/LS	
8406	L:PrtPGS/LS	

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the L: count.
- Fax jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the F: count.

8411	Prints/Duplex	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]

8421	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.	
8422	C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the copier application.	
8423	F:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the fax application.	
8424	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application.	
8425	S:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the scanner application.	
8426	L:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.	
8427	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications	
842x 1	Simplex> Duplex	
842x 2	Duplex> Duplex	
842x 3	Book> Duplex	
842x 4	Simplex Combine	
842x 5	Duplex Combine	
842x 6	2>	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)
842x 7	4>	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)
842x 8	6>	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)
842x 9	8>	8pages on 1 side (8-Up)
842x 10	9>	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)
842x 11	16>	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)
842x 12	Booklet	
842x 13	Magazine	

- These counts (SP8421 to SP8427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet	
Original Pages	Count
1	1
2	2
3	2
4	2
5	3
6	4
7	4
8	4

Magazine	
Original Pages	Count
1	1
2	2
3	2
4	2
5	4
6	4
7	4
8	4

8431	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used.	
8432	C:PrtPGS/ImgEdt [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the copy application.	
8434	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the print application.	
8436	L:PrtPGS/ImgEdt [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the total number of pages output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel with the three features below.	
8437	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with Other applications.	
843x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet	Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2.
843x 2	Series/Book	The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination.
843x 3	User Stamp	The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping.

8441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications.	
8442	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the copy application.	
8443	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the fax application.	
8444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.	
8445	S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the scanner application.	
8446	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.	
8447	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.	
844x 1	A3	
844x 2	A4	
844x 3	A5	
844x 4	B4	
844x 5	B5	
844x 6	DLT	
844x 7	LG	
844x 8	LT	
844x 9	HLT	
844x 10	Full Bleed	
844x 254	Other (Standard)	
844x 255	Other (Custom)	

- These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.	
8451 1	Bypass	Bypass Tray
8451 2	Tray 1	Copier
8451 3	Tray 2	Copier
8451 4	Tray 3	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
8451 5	Tray 4	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
8451 6	Tray 5	LCT (Option)
8451 7	Tray 6	Currently not used.
8451 8	Tray 7	Currently not used.
8451 9	Tray 8	Currently not used.
8451 10	Tray 9	Currently not used.

8461	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications.	
	• These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing. • Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted. • During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1.	
8462	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application.	
8463	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the fax application.	
8464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.	
8466	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.	
846x 1	Normal	
846x 2	Recycled	
846x 3	Special	
846x 4	Thick	
846x 5	Normal (Back)	
846x 6	Thick (Back)	
846x 7	OHP	
846x 8	Other	

8471	PrtPGS/Mag	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed.	
8471 1	~49%	
8471 2	50%~99%	
8471 3	100%	
8471 4	101%~200%	
8471 5	201% ~	

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8481	T:PrtPGS/TonSave
8484	P:PrtPGS/TonSave
	These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on. Note: These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]

8511	T:PrtPGS/Emul [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.	
8514	P:PrtPGS/Emul [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.	
8514 1	RPCS	
8514 2	RPDL	
8514 3	PS3	
8514 4	R98	
8514 5	R16	
8514 6	GL/GL2	
8514 7	R55	
8514 8	RTIFF	
8514 9	PDF	
8514 10	PCL5e/5c	
8514 11	PCL XL	
8514 12	IPDL-C	
8514 13	BM-Links	Japan Only
8514 14	Other	

- SP8511 and SP8514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

8521	T:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications.	
8522	C:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application.	
8523	F:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Fax application. Note: Print finishing options for received faxes are currently not available.	
8524	P:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.	
8525	S:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application.	
8526	L:PrtPGS/FIN	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.	
852x 1	Sort	
852x 2	Stack	
852x 3	Staple	
852x 4	Booklet	
852x 5	Z-Fold	
852x 6	Punch	
852x 7	Other	

NOTE: 1) If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
2) The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8531	Staples	This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]

8581	T:Counter	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

8591	O:Counter	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.	
8591 1	A3/DLT	
8591 2	Duplex	
8591 3	Staple	

8631	T:FAX TX PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	
8633	F:FAX TX PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8631 and SP8633 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8641	T:FAX TX PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to as fax images using I-Fax. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	
8643	F:FAX TX PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by Fax as fax images using I-Fax. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8641 and SP8643 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8651	T:S-to-Email PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	
8655	S:S-to-Email PGS	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for the Scan application only. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

- NOTE:** 1) The count for B/W and Color pages is done after the document is stored on the HDD. If the job is cancelled before it is stored, the pages are not counted.
- 2) If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).
- 3) If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- 4) Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

8661	T:Deliv PGS/Svr	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	
8665	S:Deliv PGS/Svr	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by the Scan application. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

- NOTE:** 1) The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the HDD of the Scan Router server.
- 2) If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the counts are not done.
- 3) The count is executed even if regardless of confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

8671	T:Deliv PGS/PC	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	
8675	S:Deliv PGS/PC	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application. Note: This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

8681	T:PCFAX TXPGS	These SPs count the number of pages sent by PC Fax. These SPs are provided for the Fax application only, so the counts for SP8681 and SP8683 are the same. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8683	F:PCFAX TXPGS	

- This counts pages sent from a PC using a PC fax application, from the PC through the copier to the destination.
- When sending the same message to more than one place using broadcasting, the pages are only counted once. (For example, a 10-page fax is sent to location A and location B. The counter goes up by 10, not 20.)

8691	T:TX PGS/LS	These SPs count the number of pages sent from the document server. The counter for the application that was used to store the pages is incremented. [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8692	C:TX PGS/LS	
8693	F:TX PGS/LS	
8694	P:TX PGS/LS	
8695	S:TX PGS/LS	
8696	L:TX PGS/LS	

- NOTE:** 1) Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- 2) If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- 3) When several documents are sent by a Fax broadcast, the F: count is done for the number of pages sent to each destination.

8701	TX PGS/Port	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12.	
8701 1	PSTN-1	
8701 2	PSTN-2	
8701 3	PSTN-3	
8701 4	ISDN (G3,G4)	
8701 5	Network	

8 711	T:Scan PGS/Comp	[0~9999999/ 1]
	These SPs count the number of compressed pages scanned into the document server, counted by the formats listed below.	
8 711 1	JPEG/JPEG2000	
8 711 2	TIFF (Multi/Single)	
8 711 3	PDF	
8 711 4	Other	

8 715	S:Scan PGS/Comp [0~9999999/ 1]	
	These SPs count the number of compressed pages scanned by the scan application, counted by the formats listed below.	
8 715 1	JPEG/JPEG2000	
8 715 2	TIFF (Multi/Single)	
8 715 3	PDF	
8 715 4	Other	

8741	RX PGS/Port [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the number of pages received by the physical port used to receive them.	
8741 1	PSTN-1	
8741 2	PSTN-2	
8741 3	PSTN-3	
8741 4	ISDN (G3,G4)	
8741 5	Network	

8771	Dev Counter [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners. Note: For machines that do not support color, the Black toner count is the same as the Total count.	

8781	Pixel Coverage Ratio	
	This SP displays the number of toner bottles used. The count is done based on the equivalent of 1,000 pages per bottle.	

8791	LS Memory Remain	This SP displays the percent of space available on the document server for storing documents. [0~100/ 0 / 1]

8801	Toner Remain [0~100/ 0 / 1]	
	This SP displays the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows the user to check the toner supply at any time. Note: - This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines in the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps). - This SP is expanded for color MFP and color LP machines. For this machine, the count is done for black only.	

8831	Pixel Cover Ave.	Average Pixel Coverage
8831 1	Accum. Ave. K	
8831 2	Accum. Ave. M	Do not display for this machine.
8831 3	Accum. Ave. C	
8831 4	Accum. Ave. Y	

8841	Pixel Cover Last	Average Pixel Coverage
001	Last Page K	
002	Last Page M	Do not display for this machine.
003	Last Page C	
004	Last Page Y	

8851	Toner Coverage 0-10%		[0~9999999]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners.		
8851 1	K	Black toner	Do not display for this machine.
8851 2	M	Magenta toner	
8851 3	C	Cyan toner	
8851 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8861	Toner Coverage 11-20%		[0~9999999]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners.		
8861 1	K	Black toner	Do not display for this machine.
8861 2	M	Magenta toner	
8861 3	C	Cyan toner	
8861 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8871	Toner Coverage 21-30%		[0~9999999]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners.		
8871 1	K	Black toner	Do not display for this machine.
8871 2	M	Magenta toner	
8871 3	C	Cyan toner	
8871 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8881	Toner Coverage 31 -%		[0~9999999]
	These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners.		
8881 1	K	Black toner	Do not display for this machine.
8881 2	M	Magenta toner	
8881 3	C	Cyan toner	
8881 4	Y	Yellow toner	

8901	Coverage Display (Toner Bottle: Previous) DFU	
8911	Coverage Display (Toner Bottle: Before Previous) DFU	

8941	Machine Status [0~9999999/ 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards.	
8941 1	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).
8941 2	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.
8941 3	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.
8941 4	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing.
8941 5	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.
8941 6	SC	Total down time due to SC errors.
8941 7	PrtJam	Total down time due to paper jams during printing.
8941 8	OrgJam	Total down time due to original jams during scanning.
8941 9	Supply PM Wait End	Total down time due to toner end.

8951	AddBook Register		
	These SPs count the number of events when the machine manages data registration.		
8951 1	User Code	User code registrations.	[0~9999999/ 0 / 1]
8951 2	Mail Address	Mail address registrations.	
8951 3	Fax Destination	Fax destination registrations.	
8951 4	Group	Group destination registrations.	
8951 5	Transfer Request	Fax relay destination registrations for relay TX.	
8951 6	F-Code	F-Code box registrations.	
8951 7	Copy Program	Copy application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	[0~255 / 0 / 255]
8951 8	Fax Program	Fax application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	
8951 9	Printer Program	Printer application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	
8951 10	Scanner Program	Scanner application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	

5.2.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING: SP2-902

NOTE: Always print a test pattern to confirm correct operation of the machine.

1. Enter the SP mode and select SP2-902.
2. Press **2** or **3**.
 - **2** IPU Test Print
 - **3** Test Pattern
3. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press **#**. (See the tables below.)
4. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, press Yes. This selects the test pattern for printing.
5. Press Copy Window to open the copy window and then select the settings for the test print (paper size, etc.)
6. Press Start **⏏** twice. (Ignore the "Place Original" messages) to start the test print.
7. Press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode display.

Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: IPU Test Print)

No.	Test Pattern	No.	Test Pattern
0	None	8	Grayscale (Horizontal)
1	Vertical Line (1-dot)	9	Grayscale (Vertical)
2	Horizontal Line (1-dot)	10	Cross Pattern
3	Vertical Line (2-dot)	11	Cross Shape
4	Horizontal Line (2-dot)	12	Argyle Pattern
5	Alternating Dot Pattern	13	Cross Pattern (256)
6	Grid Pattern (1-dot)	14	Cross Pattern (64)
7	Vertical Strips		

Test Pattern Table: SP2-902-3 Printing Test Patterns

No.	Test Pattern
0	None
1	Vertical Line (1-dot)
2	Horizontal Line (1-dot)
3	Vertical Line (2-dot)
4	Horizontal Line (2-dot)
5	Grid Pattern (1-dot)
6	Independent Pattern (1-dot)
7	Independent Pattern (2-dot)
8	Full Dot Pattern
9	Black Band
10	Trimming Area
11	Argyle Pattern
12	Hounds Tooth Check (2-Dot Horizontal)
13	Checker Flag Pattern
14	Black Band (Vertical)
15	Independent Pattern (4-Dot)
16	Horizontal Line (1-Dot) (Reversed LD1, LD2)
17	Grid Pattern (1-dot pair) (Reversed LD1, LD2)
18	Independent Pattern (1-dot) (Reversed LD1, LD2)
19	Grayscale (Horizontal)
20	Grayscale (Vertical)
21	Grayscale (Horizontal/Vertical)
22	Grayscale (Grid)
23	Grayscale (Horizontal Margin)
24	Grayscale (Vertical Margin)
25	Grayscale (Vertical/Horizontal Margin)
26	White Pattern
27	Grid (1-dot pair) (OR Outside Data 1)

5.2.5 INPUT CHECK

Main Machine Input Check: SP5-803

1. Enter the SP mode and select SP5-803.
2. Enter the number (1 – 13) for the item that you want to check. A small box will be displayed on the SP mode screen with a series of 0's and 1's.
The meaning of the display is as follows.

0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

3. Check the status of each item against the corresponding bit numbers listed in the table below.

Number	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
1: Paper Feed 1 (Upper Tray)	7	Fusing Exit Sensor	Activated	Deactivated
	6	Near End Sensor 2	Activated	Deactivated
	5	Near End Sensor 1	Activated	Deactivated
	4	Not Used	---	---
	3	Paper Size Sensor 4	Activated	Deactivated
	2	Paper Size Sensor 3	Activated	Deactivated
	1	Paper Size Sensor 2	Activated	Deactivated
	0	Paper Size Sensor 1	Activated	Deactivated
2: Paper Feed 2 (Lower Tray)	7	Duplex Unit Set Sensor	Unit set	Unit not set
	6	Near End Sensor 2	Off	On
	5	Near End Sensor 1	Off	On
	4	Fusing/Paper Output Motor Lock	Not Locked	Locked
	3	Paper Size Sensor 4	Activated	Deactivated
	2	Paper Size Sensor 3	Activated	Deactivated
	1	Paper Size Sensor 2	Activated	Deactivated
	0	Paper Size Sensor 1	Activated	Deactivated
3: Registration and Others	7	Zero Cross Signal	Detected	Not detected
	6	Transfer Belt Unit HP Sensor	Not present	Present
	5	Exhaust Fan Lock Signal	Not locked	Locked
	4	Cooling Fan Lock Signal	Not locked	Locked
	3	Main Motor Lock Signal	Not locked	Locked
	2	Toner Overflow Sensor	Tank not full	Tank full
	1	Cover Open	Cover closed	Cover opened
	0	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected

Number	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
4: By-pass Feed	7	Duplex reverse path door	Closed	Open
	6	Paper End Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	5	Not used		
	4	Paper Size Sensor 4, By-pass	Activated	Deactivated
	3	Paper Size Sensor 3, By-pass	Activated	Deactivated
	2	Paper Size Sensor 2, By-pass	Activated	Deactivated
	1	Paper Size Sensor 1, By-pass	Activated	Deactivated
	0	Unit Set Signal	Yes	No
5: Relay Unit (Bridge Unit)	7	Not used	Yes	No
	6	Unit Set Signal	Connected	Not connected
	5	Paper Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	4	Relay Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	3	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	2	Left Cover Switch	Switch pressed (cover closed)	Switch not pressed
	1	Middle Cover Switch	Switch pressed (cover closed)	Switch not pressed
	0	Right Cover Switch	Switch pressed (cover closed)	Switch not pressed
6: Unit Set	7	Feed Motor Lock	No	Yes
	6	F-Gate Signal	Active	Not active
	5	Height Sensor	Feed height	Not feed height
	4	Paper Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	3	Fusing Unit	Detected	Not detected
	2	Total Counter	Not detected	Detected
	1	Key Counter	Detected	Not detected
	0	Key Card Present	Detected	Not detected
7: Paper End	7	Front cover/open closed	Open	Closed
	6	Vertical feed path	Clear	Not clear
	5	2nd Tray Height Sensor	Paper not at upper limit	Paper at upper limit
	4	1st Tray Height Sensor	Paper not at upper limit	Paper at upper limit
	3	Lower Relay Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	2	Upper Relay Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
	1	Lower Paper End Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	0	Upper Paper End Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected

Number	Bit	Description	Reading			
			0		1	
8: DIP Switches	7	Dip Switch - 8	On		Off	
	6	Dip Switch - 7	On		Off	
	5	Dip Switch - 6	On		Off	
	4	Dip Switch - 5	On		Off	
	3	Dip Switch - 4	On		Off	
	2	Dip Switch - 3	On		Off	
	1	Dip Switch - 2	On		Off	
	0	Dip Switch - 1	On		Off	
9: Duplex Unit	7	Not used				
	6	Right cover open/closed	Closed		Open	
	5	1-Bin Unit Set	Detected		Not detected	
	4	LD, HP sensor	Positioned		Not positioned	
	3	Exit Sensor (Jam)	Paper detected		Paper not detected	
	2	Entrance Sensor (Jam)	Paper detected		Paper not detected	
	1	Paper End Sensor	Paper detected		Paper not detected	
	0	Duplex Unit Switch	Cover closed		Cover open	
10: Remainder of Feed Tray 1	7	Tray 4: Bit 1				
	8	Tray 4: Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 0	Capacity	
	5	Tray 3: Bit 1	1	1	Full	
	4	Tray 3: Bit 0	1	0	50% or more	
	3	Tray 2: Bit 1	0	1	10% or more	
	2	Tray 2: Bit 0	0	0	Out, or tray not set	
	1	Tray 1: Bit 1				
	0	Tray 1: Bit 0				
11: Remainder of Feed Tray 2	7	By-pass Yes/No				
	6	Not Used				
	5	Not Used				
	4	Not Used				
	3	Not Used	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Capacity
	2	LCT: Bit 2	1	1	1	Full
	1	LCT: Bit 1	1	0	0	80% or more
	0	LCT: Bit 0	0	1	1	50% or more
			0	1	0	30% or more
			0	0	0	10% or more

Number	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
12: Full Exit Tray 1	7	Mailbox 9-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	6	Mailbox 8-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	5	Not used	-	-
	4	Finisher: Shift Tray 1	Not full or no tray	Full
	3	Finisher: Shift Tray 2	Not full or no tray	Full
	2	Not used	-	-
	1	1-Bin Exit	Not full or no tray	Full
	0	Machine Exit	Not full or no tray	Full
13: Full Exit Tray 2	7	Mailbox 7-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	6	Mailbox 6-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	5	Mailbox 5-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	4	Mailbox 4-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	3	Mailbox 3-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	2	Mailbox 2-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	1	Mailbox 1-bin	Not full or no tray	Full
	0	Mailbox Proof Tray	Not full or no tray	Full

Table 1: By-pass Feed Table Paper Size Data

Number.	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Paper Width
4: By-pass	1	1	1	1	Post Card
	1	1	1	0	B6 SEF
	1	1	0	1	B5 SEF
	1	1	0	0	A5 SEF / 5.5"
	1	0	1	1	B4 SEF
	1	0	0	1	A4 SEF / 8.5" / 8"
	0	1	1	1	A3 SEF
	0	0	1	1	11" x 17"

ARDF Input Check: SP6-007

1. Enter the SP mode and select SP6-007.
2. Enter the number (1 – 13) for the item that you want to check. A small box will be displayed on the SP mode screen with a series of 0's and 1's.
The meaning of the display is as follows.

0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

3. Check the status of each item against the corresponding bit numbers listed in the table below.

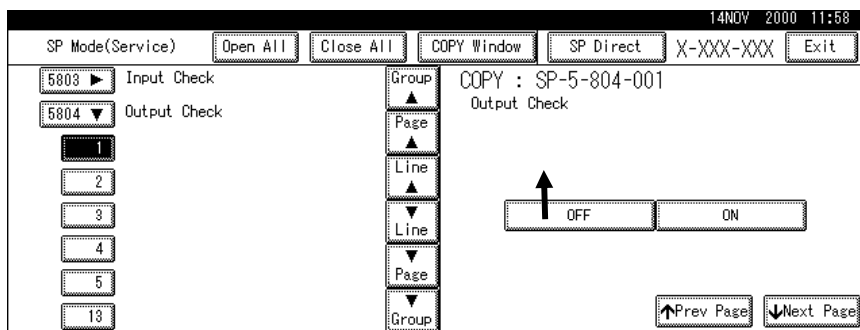
Group	Bit No.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
1	7	Original width sensor 4	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	6	Original width sensor 3	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	5	Original width sensor 2	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	4	Original width sensor 1	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	3	Skew correction sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	2	Original set sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	1	Original B5 sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	0	Original LG sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
2	7	Original stopper HP sensor	Original stopper up	Original stopper down
	6	Pick-up HP sensor	Cover closed	Cover opened
	5	Top cover Sensor	Cover closed	Cover opened
	4	Lift sensor	Pick-up roller up	Pick-up roller down
	3	Inverter sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	2	Exit sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	1	Registration sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
	0	Interval Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
3	0	Original A4 sensor		

5.2.6 OUTPUT CHECK

NOTE: Motors keep turning in this mode regardless of upper or lower limit sensor signals. To prevent mechanical or electrical damage, do not keep an electrical component on for a long time.

Main Machine Output Check: SP5-804

1. Open SP mode 5-804.
2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check.
(Refer to the table on the next page.)
3. Press On then press Off to test the selected item.



NOTE: You cannot exit and close this display until you press off to switch off the output check currently executing. Do not keep an electrical component switched on for a long time.

SP5-804 Output Check Table

No.	Description	No.	Description
1	1st Paper Feed CL	45	Duplex Junction Gate Solenoid
2	2nd Paper Feed CL		
3	3rd Paper Feed CL (PTU)	47	Relay Junction Gate Solenoid
4	4th Paper Feed CL (PTU)		
5	By-pass Paper Feed CL	50	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6	LCT Paper Feed CL	51	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
		52	Positioning Roller Solenoid (Finishers)
13	By-pass Pick-up Solenoid		
14	LCT Pick-up Solenoid	56	Toner Bottle Motor
		57	Transfer Belt Positioning Clutch
17	Transport Motor 1 (Finisher)		
18	Transport Motor 2 (Finisher)	62	Quenching Lamp
19	Exit Motor (Finisher)	63	Charge Bias
20	Staple Motor (Finisher)		
21	Punch Motor (Finisher)	67	Development Bias
25	LCT Motor	69	Transfer Belt Voltage
26	Bank Motor (Paper Tray Unit)	70	ID Sensor LED
27	Fusing Exit Motor		
28	Main Motor	75	Exhaust Fan Motor
29	Duplex Transport Motor	76	Elec. Equipment Cooling Fan Motor
30	Duplex Inverter Motor (Rev.)		
31	Duplex Inverter Motor (Fwd.)	78	Relay Fan Motor
32	Feed/Development Motor	79	Fusing Fan Motor
		85	Total Counter
35	Bank Relay Clutch (Paper Tray Unit)		
36	Relay Clutch		
38	LCT Relay Clutch	92	Shift Tray Lift Motor (Finisher)
39	Registration Clutch	93	Jogger Motor (Finisher)
40	Development Clutch	94	Stapler Unit Motor (Finisher)
41	Exit Junction Gate Solenoid (Upper Unit)	95	Stack Feed Out Motor (Finisher)
42	Duplex Junction Gate Solenoid (Lower Unit)	96	Shift Motor (Finishers)
		97	Stapler Rotation Motor (Two-Tray Finisher)

ARDF Output Check: SP6-008)

1. Open SP mode SP6-008.
2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check. (Refer to the table below.)
3. Press On then press Off to test the selected item. You cannot exit and close this display until you click Off to switch off the output check currently executing.

No.	Description
1	Feed Motor (Forward)
2	Feed Motor (Reverse)
3	Drive Motor (Forward)
4	Inverter Motor (Forward)
5	Inverter Motor (Reverse)
6	Feed Clutch
7	Inverter Solenoid
8	Pick-up Motor (Forward)
9	Pick-up Motor (Reverse)

5.2.7 SMC PRINT OUT LISTS: SP5-990

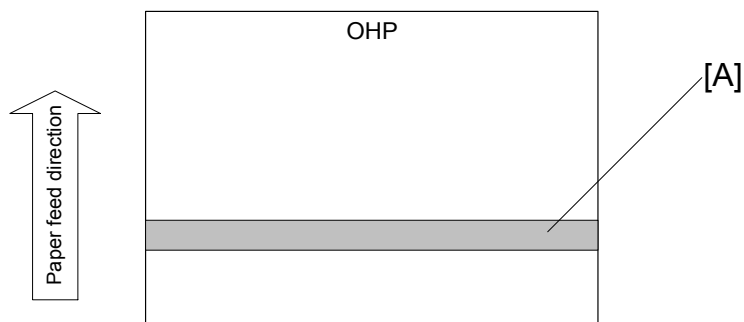
1. Open SP mode 5-990 and select the number corresponding to the list that you wish to print.

SMC (System Parameter and Data Lists)	
1	All Data List
2	SP Mode Data List
3	UP Mode Data List
4	Logging Data List
5	Self-Diagnostics Results List
6	Non-Default
7	NIB Summary
8	NetFile Log
21	Copy UP Mode List
22	Scanner SP Mode List
23	Scanner UP Mode List

2. Press "Execute" on the touch panel.
3. Select "Single Face" or "Both Face".
4. After printing the list, press "Close" to return to the SP mode display.
5. Press Exit twice to close the SP Mode screen and return to copy mode.

5.2.8 NIP BAND WIDTH ADJUSTMENT: SP1-109

When paper wrinkling or image offset occurs, the pressure from the pressure roller



can be adjusted by changing the position of the pressure springs. At this time, the nip bandwidth can also be checked with SP1-109.

1. Execute SP5-802 to perform a free run of about 50 sheets.
2. Open SP1-109-1, press Ⓢ , and then press Yes to confirm the selection.
3. Press Copy Window to return to the copy window.
4. Place an OHP sheet (A4/8.5" x 11" sideways) on the by-pass feed tray.
5. Press Start Ⓢ twice. The OHP sheet stops in the fusing unit for about 10 seconds, then it exits automatically.
6. Check the nip bandwidth [A]. The relationship between the position of the pressure spring and the bandwidth is as follows.

NOTE: Check the nip bandwidth around the center of the OHP.

Pressure spring position	Nip width
Upper (default position)	6.0 ± 0.5 mm
Lower	6.5 ± 0.6 mm

If the width is out of the above specification, the pressure spring should be replaced.

5.2.9 MEMORY CLEAR: SP5-801

Executing Memory All Clear resets all the settings stored in the NVRAM to their default settings except the following:

SP7-003-1:	Electrical total counter value
SP5-811-1:	Machine serial number
SP5-907:	Plug & Play Brand Name and Production Name Setting

1. Execute SP5-990 to print out all SMC Data Lists.
2. Open SP mode 5-801.
3. Press the number for the item that you want to initialize. The number you select determines which application is initialized. For example, press 1 if you want to initialize all modules or select the appropriate number from the table below.

5801	Memory Clear	Comments
5801 1	All Clear	Initializes items 2 ~ 12 below. ^{*1}
5801 2	Engine	Initializes all registration settings for the engine and processing settings. ^{*1}
5801 3	SCS	Initializes default system settings, CSS settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information. ^{*1}
5801 4	IMH Memory Clr	Initializes the registration setting for the image memory handler by deleting all image files on the HDD.
5801 5	MCS	Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored documents.
5801 6	Copier application	Initializes all copier application settings.
5801 7	Fax application	Initializes the fax reset time, job login ID, all TX/RX settings, local storage file numbers, and off-hook timer.
5801 8	Printer application	Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP Bit SW, and printer CSS counter.
5801 9	Scanner application	Initializes the scanner defaults for the scanner and all the Scanner SP modes.
5801 10	Web Service/Network Application	Deletes the NFA management files and thumbnails, and initializes the JOB login ID.
5801 11	NCS	Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartNetMonitor for Admin, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings.
5801 12	R-FAX	Initializes the Job login ID, SmartNetMonitor for Admin, Job History, and local storage file numbers.
5801 13	Clear DCS Settings	Initialization
5801 14	Clear UCS Settings	Initialization

^{*1}: Resetting 1~3 resets the operation panel screen coordinates, so after executing 1, 2, or 3, you must re-calibrate the screen.

4. Press Execute, and then follow the prompts on the display to complete the procedure.
5. Make sure that you perform the following settings:
 - Do the laser beam pitch adjustment (SP2-109).
 - Do the printer and scanner registration and magnification adjustments (➡3.21).
 - Do the touch screen calibration (➡ 3.21.4).
 - Referring to the SMC data lists, re-enter any values, which had been changed from their factory settings.
 - Do SP 3-001-2 (ID Sensor Initial Setting).
6. Check the copy quality and the paper path, and do any necessary adjustments.

5.2.10 SOFTWARE RESET

The software can be reboot when the machine hangs up. Use the following procedure.

Turn the main power switch off and on.

-Or-

Press and hold down   together for over 10 seconds. When the machine beeps once release both buttons. After “Now loading. Please wait” is displayed for a few seconds the copy window will open. The machine is ready for normal operation.

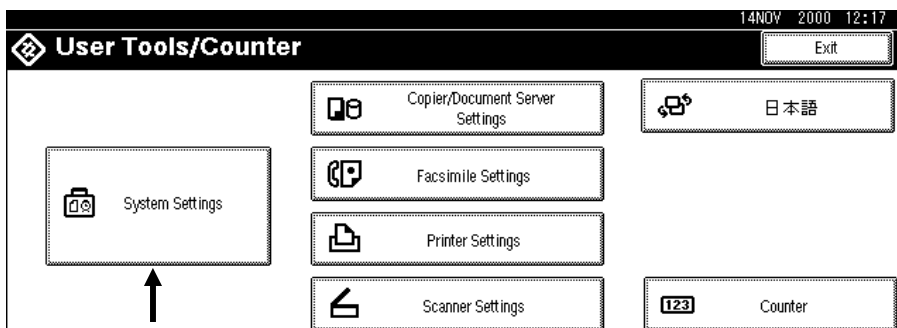
5.2.11 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET

System Setting Reset

The system settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults. Use the following procedure.

1. Press User Tools/Counter  .
2. Hold down  and then press System Settings.

NOTE: You must press  first.

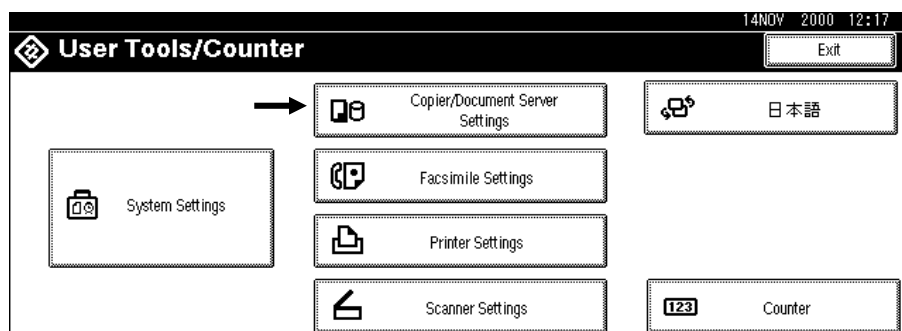


3. When the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the system settings, press Yes.
4. When the message tells you that the settings have been reset, press Exit.

Copier Setting Reset

The copy settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults. Use the following procedure.

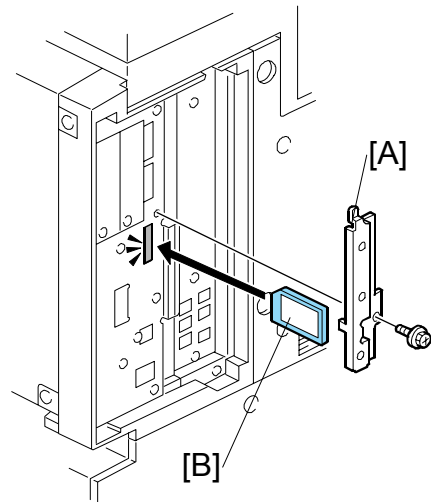
1. Press User Tools/Counter .
 2. Hold down  and then press Copier/Document Server Settings.
- NOTE:** You must press  first.



3. When the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the Copier Document Server settings, press Yes.
4. When the message tells you that the settings have been reset, press Exit.

5.3 UPDATING THE FIRMWARE

1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the SD card [A] cover.
3. Insert the SD card [B] containing the software you wish to download into SD card slot C3.
4. Turn on the main power.
5. Follow the instructions displayed on the LCD panel
6. Monitor the downloading status on the operation panel.
 - While downloading is in progress, the LCD will display "Writing". When downloading has been completed, the panel will display "OK".
 - For operation panel software, the Start key lights red while downloading is in progress, and then lights green again after downloading is completed.



CAUTION

Never switch off the power while downloading. Switching off the power while the new software is being downloading will damage the boot files in the controller.

7. After confirming that downloading is completed, turn off the main power and remove the SD card.
8. If more software needs to be downloaded, repeat steps 1 to 7.
9. Turn the main power on and confirm that the new software loads and that the machine starts normally.

⇒ 5.3.1 ERRORS DURING FIRMWARE UPDATE

An error message will display if an error occurs during the download. The error code consists of the letter “E” and a number (e.g., “E20”).

Error Message Table

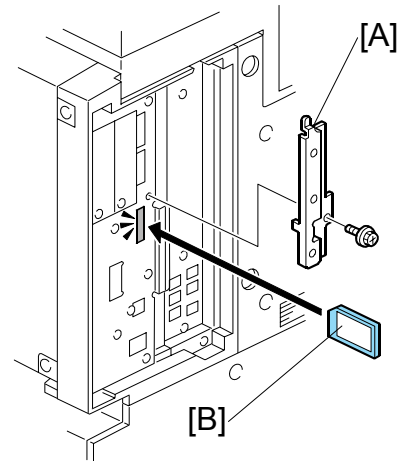
NO.	MEANING	SOLUTION
20	Cannot map logical address	Make sure the SD card is installed correctly, or use a different SD card.
21	Cannot access memory	HDD connection incorrect, or replace HDD.
22	Cannot decompress compressed data	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is damaged.
23	Error occurred when ROM update program started	Controller program is defective. If the second attempt fails, replace the controller board.
24	SD card access error	Make sure the SD card is installed correctly, or use a different SD card.
30	No HDD available for stamp data download	HDD connection not correct or replace hard disks.
31	Data incorrect for continuous download	Install the SD card with the remaining data necessary for the download, then re-start the procedure.
32	Data incorrect after download interrupted	Execute the recovery procedure for the module, then repeat the installation procedure.
33	Incorrect SD card version	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is damaged.
34	Module mismatch - Correct module is not on the SD card	The data on the SD is not correct. Get the correct data (Japan, Overseas, OEM, etc.) then install again.
35	Module mismatch – Module on SD card is not for this machine	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for a different machine. Get the correct data then install again.
36	Cannot write module – Cause other than E34, E35	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for a different machine. Get the correct data then install again.
40	Engine module download failed	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the BICU.
41	FAX module download failed	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the MBU.
42	Operation panel module download failed	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the LCDC.
43	Stamp data module download failed	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the HDD.
44	Controller module download failed	Replace the data for the module on the SD card and tray again, or replace the Controller board.
50	Electronic confirmation check failed	SD update data is not correct. The data on the SD card is for a different machine. Get the correct data then install again.

5.4 UPLOADING/DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA

The content of the NVRAM can be uploaded to and downloaded from an SD card.

5.4.1 UPLOADING NVRAM DATA (SP5-824)

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the SD card cover [A].
3. Insert the SD card [B] into SD card slot C3.
4. Turn on the main switch.
5. Execute SP5-824.
6. Press ① to start uploading the NVRAM data.

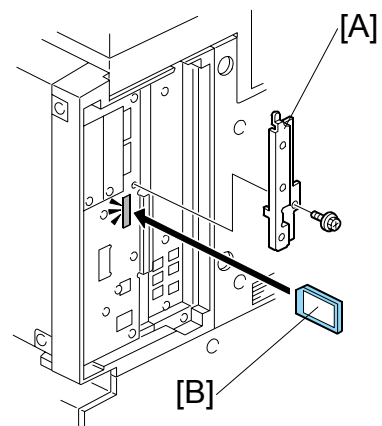


5.4.2 DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA (SP5-825)

The following data are not downloaded from the SD card:

- Total count categories (SP7-003-*** Copy Counter)
- C/O, P/O Counter (SP7-006-*** C/O, P/O Count Display)
- Dupelx, A3/DLT/Over 420 mm, Staple and Scanner application scanning counters (system settings).

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the SD card cover [A].
3. Plug the SD card [B] into SD card slot C3.
4. Turn on the main switch.
5. Execute SP5-825.
6. Press ① to start downloading the NVRAM data.



Note that the following errors could occur during downloading:

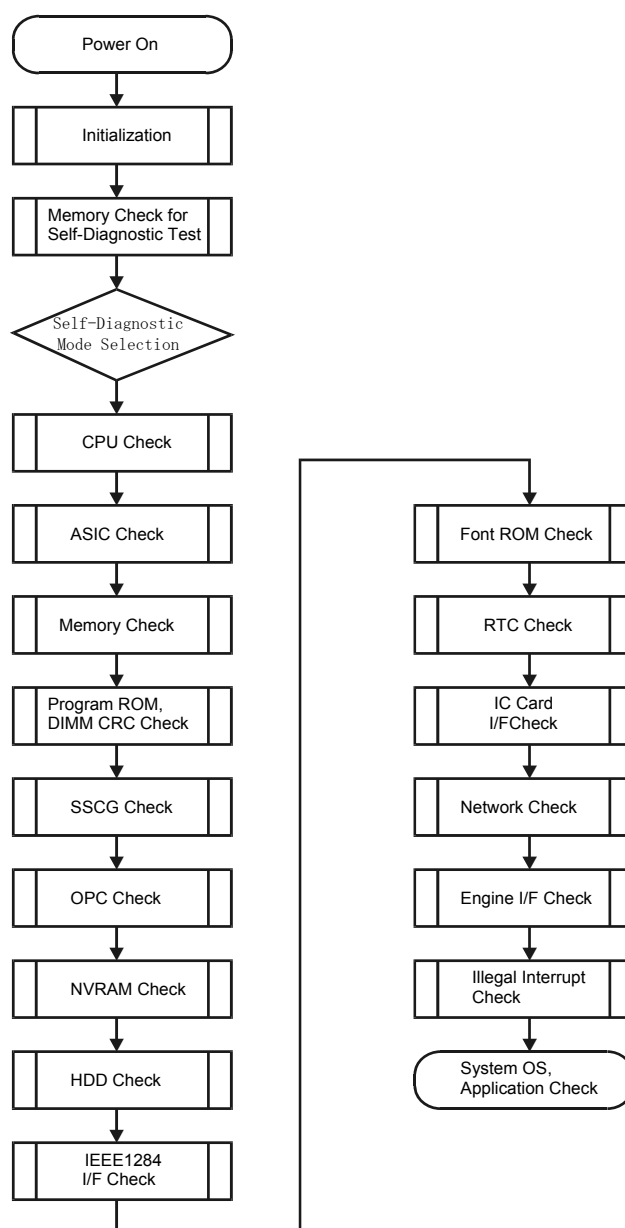
- If a card is not installed in the card slot and a message tells you that downloading cannot proceed, you cannot execute downloading, even by pressing ①.
- If the correct card for the NVRAM data is not inserted in the card slot, after you press ① a message will tell you that downloading cannot proceed because the card is abnormal and the execution will halt.

5.5 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE

5.5.1 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE AT POWER ON

As soon as the main machine is powered on, the controller waits for the initial settings of the copy engine to take effect and then starts an independent self-diagnostic test program. The self-diagnostic test follows the path of the flow chart shown below and checks the CPU, memory, HDD, and so on. An SC code is displayed in the touch panel if the self-diagnostic program detects any malfunction or abnormal condition.

Self-Diagnostic Test Flow



5.5.2 DETAILED SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE

In addition to the self-diagnostic test initiated every time the main machine is powered on, you can set the machine in a more detailed diagnostic mode manually in order to test other components or conditions that are not tested during self-diagnosis after power on. The following device is required in order to put the machine in the detailed self-diagnosis mode.

No.	Name
G02119350	Parallel Loopback Connector

Executing Detailed Self-Diagnosis

Follow this procedure to execute detailed self-diagnosis.

1. Switch off the machine, and connect the parallel loopback device to the Centronics I/F port.
2. Hold down (#), press and hold down (*), and then while pressing both keys at the same time, switch on the machine.

You will see "Now Loading" on the touch-panel, and then you will see the results of the test.

A report like the one below is printed every time a detailed self-diagnostic test is executed, whether errors were detected or not.

MODEL NAME XXXX

Serial No. : ACLD000034 Firmware P/# : ACP82XXXX [1/1]
Firmware Version : 2.49.01 Wed Nov 22 13:15:30 2000

Self-Diagnosis Report

[System Construction]

Kernel Version : NetBSD 1.3.3 (SHINYOKOHAMA_ROM) #0: Sat Nov 11 16:15:35 JST 2000
CPU System Bus Clock : 100.0 MHz CPU Pipeline Clock : 200.0 MHz
Board Type : 7 ASIC Version : 1397306160
RTC Existence : existence RAM Capacity : 100.663296 MB
HDD Existence : existence HDD Model :

[Total Counter]

0001000

[Program No. @]

MAIN : ACP82XXXX ENGINE : Ver1.96
LCDC : V1.39 PI :
ADF : B3515620B SIB : B0045383
FIN : FIN_SDL :
BANK : A6825150 LCT :
MBX : FCU :
DPX :

[Error List @@@]

SCCODE (ERROR CODE)	SC CODE (ERROR CODE)	SC CODE (ERROR CODE)	SC CODE (ERROR CODE)
SC835 (110C)	SC820 (0001)	SC820 (0002)	SC820 (0003)
SC820 (0004)	SC820 (0005)		

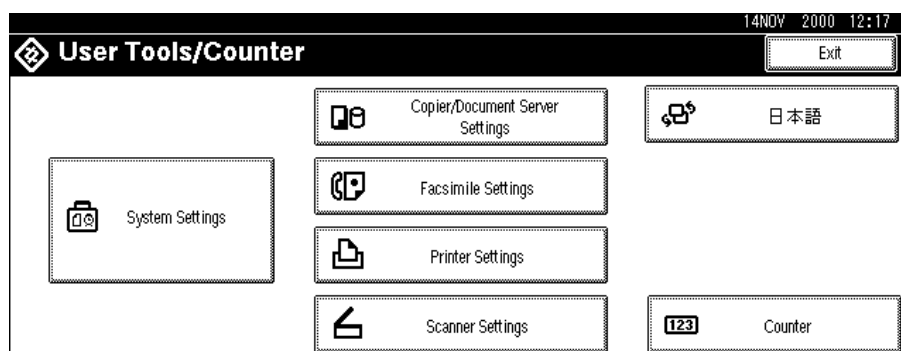
5.6 USER PROGRAM MODE

The user program (UP) mode is accessed by users and operators, and by sales and service staff. UP mode is used to input the copier's default settings. The default settings can be reset at any time by the user. (➡ 5.2.11)

5.6.1 HOW TO USE UP MODE

UP Mode Initial Screen: User Tools/Counter Display

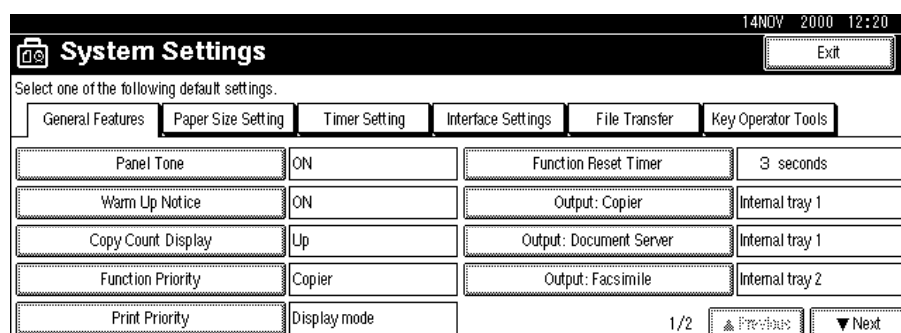
To enter the UP mode, press User Tools/Counter .



System Settings

In the User Tools/Counter display, press System Settings.

Click a tab to display the settings. If the Next button is lit in the lower right corner, press to display more options. Perform the settings, press Exit to return to the User Tools/Counter display, and then press exit to return to the copy window.



Copier/Document Server Features

In the User/Tools Counter display, press Copy/Document Server Settings.

14NOV 2000 12:22	
Copier/Document Server Features Exit	
Select items to set.	
General Features	Reproduction Ratio Edit Stamp Input/Output
Auto Paper Select Priority	Yes
Auto Image Density Priority	
Auto Tray Switching	With image rotation
Copy Quality	
Paper Display	No
Image Density	
Original Mode Priority	Text
Original Mode Display	No
1/4	Previous Next

Click a tab to display the settings. If the Next button is lit in the lower right corner, press to display more options. Perform the settings, press Exit to return to the User Tools/Counter display, and then press Exit to return to the copy window.

Printer, Facsimile, Scanner Settings

In the User/Tools Counter display, press Printer Settings, Facsimile, or Scanner Settings to open the appropriate screen and then click the tab to display more settings. The screen below shows the Printer Features screen.

14NOV 2000 12:28	
Printer Features Exit	
Select one of the following items.	
Paper input	List/Test Print Maintenance System Host interface PCL Config. Page
Config. Page	
Menu List	
PS Font List	
PCL Config. Page	
Hex Dump	

Service
Tables

Counter

In the User/Tools Counter display, press Counter.

14NOV 2000 12:24			
123 Counter		Exit	
▶ Total	9998032		
▶ Copier	9998012	▶ A3	9998000
Print Counter List			

View the settings, press Print Counter Exit to return to the User Tools/Counter display, and then press Exit to return to the copy window.

5.7 DIP SWITCHES

Controller: DIP SW1

DIP SW No.	ON	OFF
1	ROM Board	SD Card Boot
2~7	Keep at "OFF"	
8	Keep at "ON"	

I/O Board: DIP SW101

DIP SW No.	Function	ON			OFF			
1	Copy Speed	35 cpm (180 mm/s)			45 cpm (230 mm/s)			
2	Jam Detection (see Note)	Jam Detection Off			On			
3	---	---			Keep at "OFF".			
4	Print Output for Debugging	---			Keep at "OFF".			
5	SC Detection	SC Detection Off			SC Detection On			
		JPN	NA	EUR	China	Taiwan	Asia	Korea
6	Destination	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
7		OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
8		OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON

NOTE: Disabling jam detection is effective only for the main machine (not for the options).

5.8 USING THE DEBUG LOG

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows the Customer Engineer to save and retrieve error information for analysis.

Every time an error occurs, debug information is recorded in volatile memory but this information is lost when the machine is switched off and on.

To capture this debug information, the Save Debug Log feature provides two main features:

- Switching on the debug feature so error information is saved directly to the HDD for later retrieval.
- Copying the error information from the HDD to an SD card.

When a user is experiencing problems with the machine, follow the procedure below to set up the machine so the error information is saved automatically to the HDD. Then ask the user to reproduce the problem.

5.8.1 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG

The debug information cannot be saved until the “Save Debug Log” function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

1. Enter the SP mode.
 - Press  (Clear Modes) then use the 10-key pad to enter ①①⑦.
 - Press and hold down  (Clear/Stop) for more than 3 seconds.
 - Press “Copy SP” on the touch-panel.
 - Enter ⑤⑧⑤⑦ then press ③.
2. Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, press ①.

COPY : SP-5857-001

Save Debug Log

On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)

Initial 0

3. On the control panel keypad, press “1” then press ③. This switches the Save Debug Log feature on.

NOTE: The default setting is “0” (OFF). This feature must be switched on in order for the debug information to be saved.

4. Next, select the target destination where the debug information will be saved. Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, touch “2 Target”, enter “2” with the operation panel key to select the hard disk as the target destination, then press $\text{\textcircled{\#}}$.

```

COPY : SP-5-857-002
Save Debug Log
Target (2:HDD 3:SD Card)
      2
Initial 2

```

NOTE: Select “3 SD Card” to save the debug information directly to the SD card if it is inserted in the service slot.

5. Now touch “5858” and specify the events that you want to record in the debug log. SP5858(Debug Save When) provides the following items for selection.

1	Engine SC Error	Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated.
2	Controller SC Error	Saves debug data when a controller-related SC Code is generated.
3	Any SC Error	Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number.
4	Jam	Saves data for jams.

NOTE: More than one event can be selected.

Example 1: To Select Items 1, 2, 4

Touch the appropriate items(s). Press “ON” for each selection. This example shows “Engine SC Error” selected.

```

COPY : SP-5-858-001
Debug Save When
Engine SC Error
      OFF  ON

```

Example 2: To Specify an SC Code

Touch “3 Any SC Error”, enter the 3-digit SC code number with the control panel number keys, then press $\text{\textcircled{\#}}$. This example shows an entry for SC670.

```

COPY : SP-5-858-001
Debug Save When
Any SC Error
      670

```

NOTE: For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section “4. Troubleshooting”.

6. Next, select the one or more memory modules for reading and recording debug information. Touch “5859”.

Under “5859” press the appropriate key item for the module that you want to record.

Enter the appropriate 4-digit number, then press (#).

NOTE: Refer to the two tables below for the 4-digit numbers to enter for each key.

The example below shows “Key 1” with “2222” entered.

COPY : SP-5-859-001 Debug Save Key No. Key 1	2222

The following keys can be set with the corresponding numbers. (The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.)

4-Digit Entries for Keys 1 to 10

KEY NO.	COPY	PRINTER	SCANNER	WEB
1	2222 (SCS)			
2	2223 (SRM)			
3	256 (IMH)			
4	1000 (ECS)			
5	1025 (MCS)			
6	4848(COPY)	4400 (GPS)	5375 (Scan)	5682 (NFA)
7	2224 (BCU)	4500 (PDL)	5682 (NFA)	6600 (WebDB)
8		4600 (GPS-PM)	3000 (NCS)	3300 (PTS)
9		2000 (NCS)	2000 (NCS)	6666 (WebSys)
10		2224 (BCU)		2000 (NCS)

NOTE: The default settings for Keys 1 to 10 are all zero (“0”).

Key to Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning	Acronym	Meaning
ECS	Engine Control Service	NFA	Net File Application
GPS	GW Print Service	PDL	Printer Design Language
GSP-PM	GW Print Service – Print Module	PTS	Print Server
IMH	Image Memory Handler	SCS	System Control Service
MCS	Memory Control Service	SRM	System Resource Management
NCS	Network Control Service	WebDB	Web Document Box (Document Server)

The machine is now set to record the debugging information automatically on the HDD (the target selected with SP5-857-002) for the events that you selected SP5-858 and the memory modules selected with SP5-859.

Please keep the following important points in mind when you are doing this setting:

- Note that the number entries for Keys 1 to 5 are the same for the Copy, Printer, Scanner, and Web memory modules.
- The initial settings are all zero.
- These settings remain in effect until you change them. Be sure to check all the settings, especially the settings for Keys 6 to 10. To switch off a key setting, enter a zero for that key.
- You can select any number of keys from 1 to 10 (or all) by entering the corresponding 4-digit numbers from the table.
- You cannot mix settings for the groups (COPY, PRINTER, etc.) for 006~010. For example, if you want to create a PRINTER debug log you must select the settings from the 9 available selections for the "PRINTER" column only.
- One area of the disk is reserved to store the debug log. The size of this area is limited to 4 MB.

5.8.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD

1. Insert the SD card into service slot of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857 009 (Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB) to write the debugging data to the SD card.
NOTE: The SD card can hold up to 4MB of data. If the debugging data is larger than 4MB, you can switch to another SD card.
3. Use a card reader to copy the file and send it for analysis to your local Ricoh representative by email, or just send the SD card by mail.

5.8.3 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY

Since only SC errors and jams are recorded to the debug log automatically, for any other errors that occur while the customer engineer is not on site, please instruct customers to perform the following immediately after occurrence to save the debug data. Such problems would include a controller or panel freeze.

NOTE: In order to use this feature, the customer engineer must have previously switched on the Save Debug Feature (SP5857-001) and selected the hard disk as the save destination (SP5857-002).

1. When the error occurs, on the operation panel, press  (Clear Modes).
2. On the control panel, enter "01" then hold down  for at least 3 sec. until the machine beeps then release. This saves the debug log to the hard disk for later retrieval with an SD card by the service representatives.
3. Switch the machine off and on to resume operation.

The debug information for the error is saved on the hard disk so the service representatives can retrieve it on their next visit by copying it from the HDD to an SD card.

5.8.4 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES

SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key

This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. The copy operation is executed in the log directory of the SD card inserted in the same slot. (This function does not copy from one slot to another.) Each SD card can hold up to 4 MB of file data. Unique file names are created for the data during the copy operation to prevent overwriting files of the same name. This means that log data from more than one machine can be copied onto the same SC card. This command does not execute if there is no log on the HDD for the name of the specified key.

SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log

This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the HDD when the first log is stored on the HDD, but this operation takes time. This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the HDD. With the file already created on the HDD for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, execute SP5857-011 to delete the debug log data from the HDD and then execute this SP (SP5857-016).

SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log

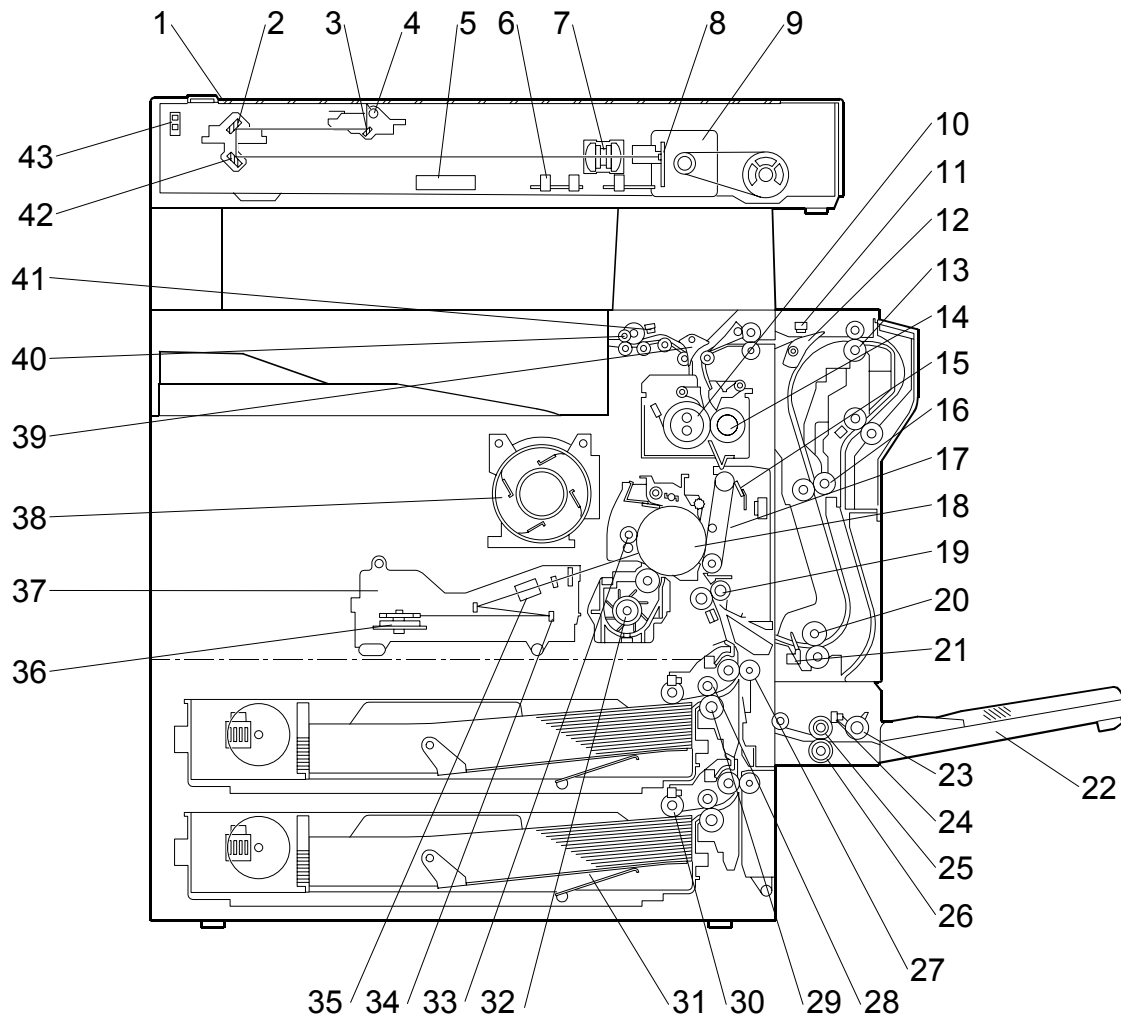
This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the SD card when the first log is stored on the SD card, but this operation takes time. This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the SD card. With the file already created on the SD card for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, execute SP5857-012 to delete the debug log data from the SD card and then execute this SP (SP5857-017).

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6.1 OVERVIEW

6.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

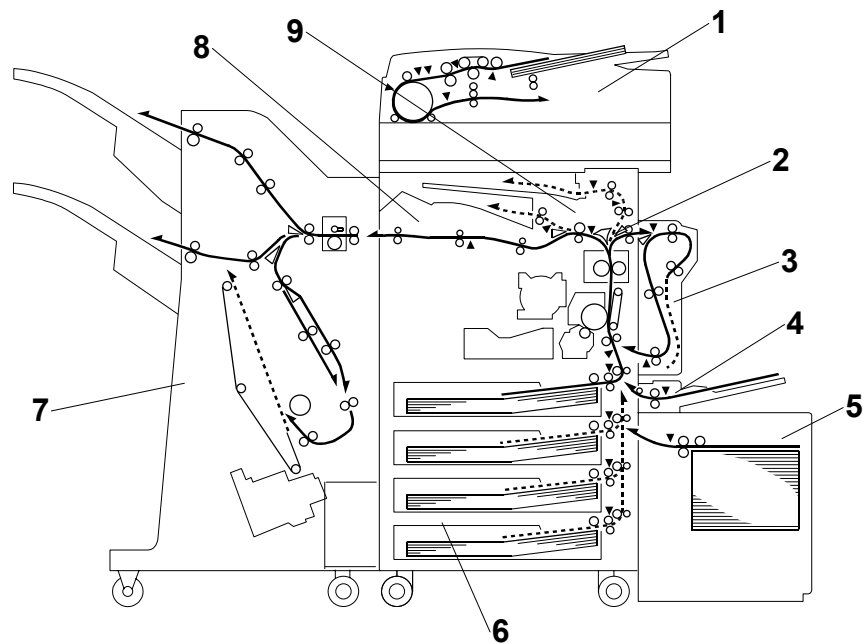


Detailed
Descriptions

OVERVIEW

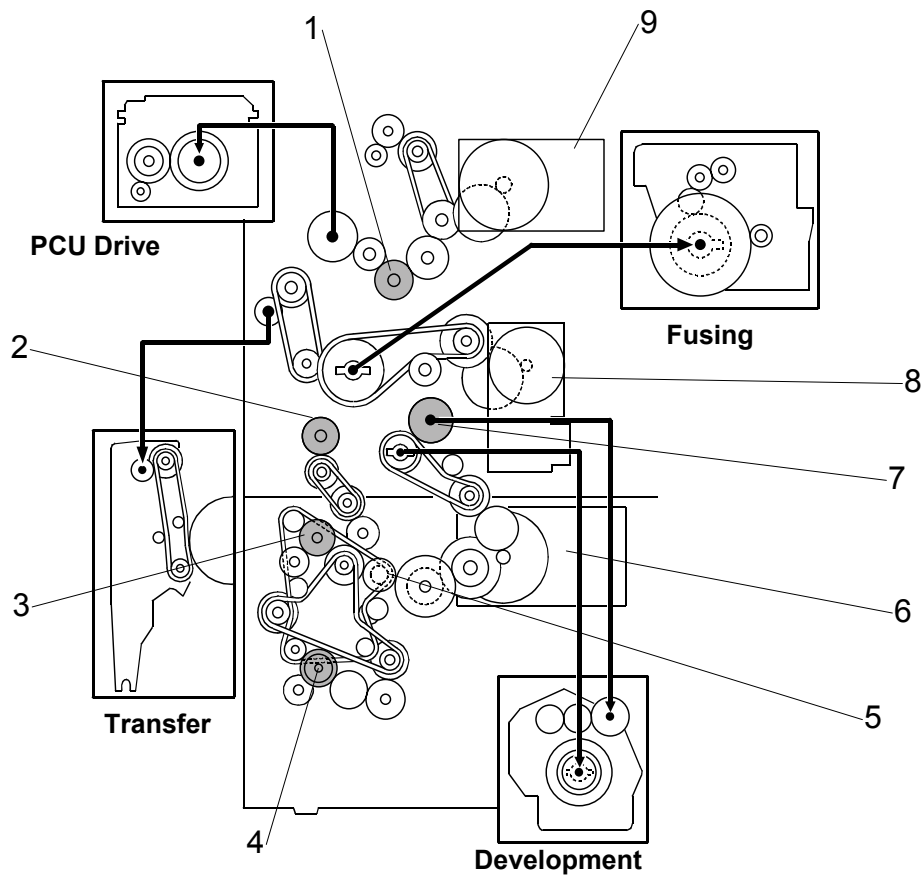
1	Exposure Glass	23	By-pass Pick-up Roller
2	2nd Mirror	24	By-pass Paper End Sensor
3	1st Mirror	25	By-pass Paper Feed Roller
4	Exposure Lamp	26	By-pass Separation Roller
5	Original Width Sensors	27	Upper Relay Roller
6	Original Length Sensors	28	Feed Roller
7	Lens	29	Separation Roller
8	SBU	30	Pick-up Roller
9	Scanner Motor	31	Bottom Plate
10	Hot Roller	32	Development Unit
11	Entrance Sensor	33	Charge Roller
12	Inverter Gate	34	F θ Mirror
13	Inverter Roller	35	Barrel Toroidal Lens (BTL)
14	Pressure Roller	36	Polygonal Mirror Motor
15	Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade	37	Laser Unit
16	Upper Transport Roller	38	Toner Bottle Holder
17	Transfer Belt	39	Exit Junction Gate
18	OPC Drum	40	Exit Roller
19	Registration Roller	41	Paper Exit Sensor
20	Lower Transport Roller	42	3rd Mirror
21	Duplex Exit Sensor	43	Scanner HP Sensor
22	By-pass Tray		

6.1.2 PAPER PATH



- 1 ARDF
- 2 Interchange unit
- 3 Duplex unit
- 4 By-pass tray
- 5 Large Capacity Tray (LCT)
- 6 Paper tray unit
- 7 Two-Tray Finisher
- 8 Bridge unit
- 9 1-Bin Tray

6.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT

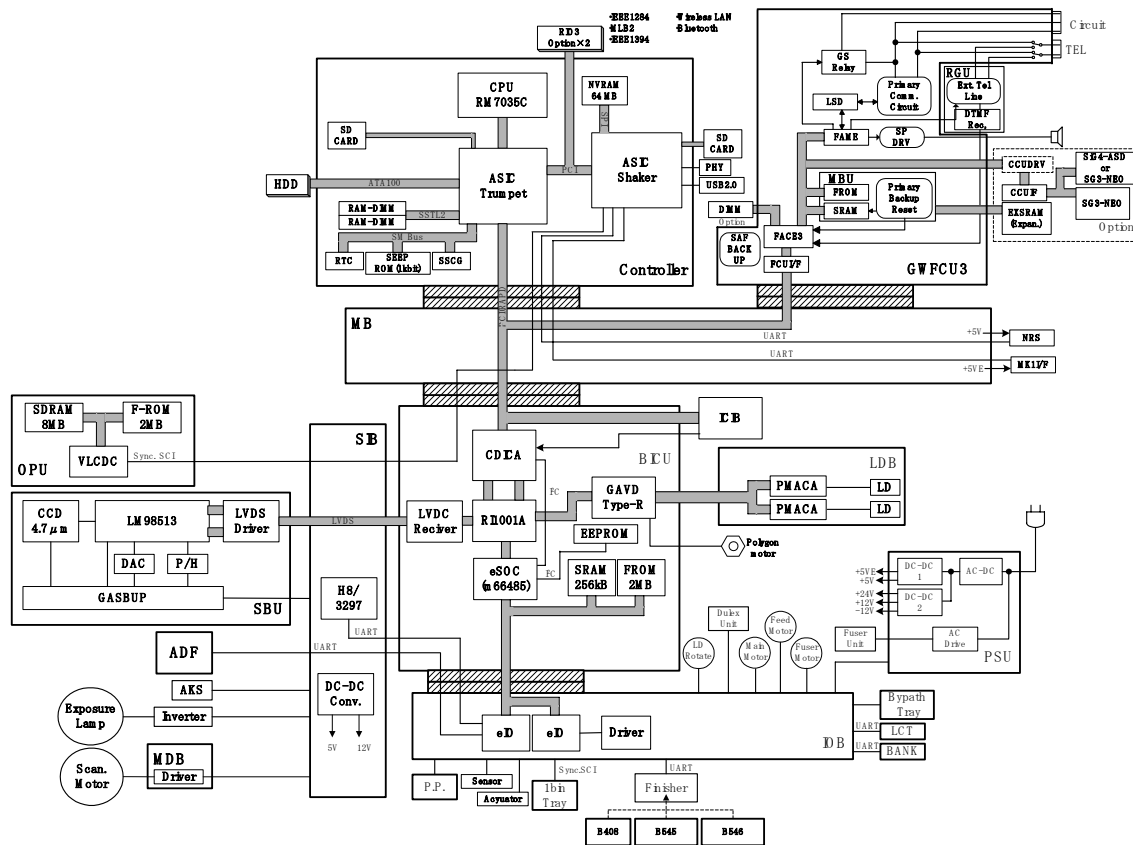


1 Transfer Belt Contact Clutch	6 Paper Feed/Development Motor
2 Registration Clutch	7 Development Clutch
3 Upper Paper Feed Clutch	8 Main Motor
4 Lower Paper Feed Clutch	9 Fusing/Exit Motor
5 Relay Clutch	

In this machine, the development unit is provided with its own motor, separate from the main motor.

6.2 BOARD STRUCTURE

6.2.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



This machine uses the R2K architecture, which allows the copier to be expanded as an MFP by installing simple modular components (SD cards) on the controller board. The BICU and FCU are connected to the controller via a PCI bus.

BOARD STRUCTURE

SBCU (Scanner and Base engine and Image Control Unit). This is the engine control board. It controls the following functions.

- Engine sequence
- Timing control for peripherals
- Image processing, video control
- Scanner Motor

Controller. The R2K Controller (05S) controls memory and all peripheral devices. The NCU (Network Control Unit) and USB 2.0 are built into this control board.

FCU (Facsimile Control Unit). This option controls fax communications and fax features.

ICIB (Copy Data Security Unit). This option provides copy protection of sensitive documents. Once a document is copied or printed with an RCPS or other printer driver that supports this function, the hard copy cannot be copied on a copier that supports hard copy protection.

IOB (Input/Output Board). The IOB uses the new eI0 chips and handles the following functions.

- Drive control for the sensors, motors, and solenoids of the main unit
- PWM control for the high voltage supply board
- Serial interface with peripherals
- Fusing control
- Paper feed control

The IOB is located behind the rear covers for easy access. The same IOB is used for both the B264 and B265 but the DIP switches must be set correctly for each model. (➡3.19.3)

LDB (Laser Drive Board). Holds the laser diodes. The board and diodes are controlled by the GAVD Type-R mounted on the BICU not the LDB itself.

MB (Mother Board). Interfaces the BICU with controller and the optional FCU.

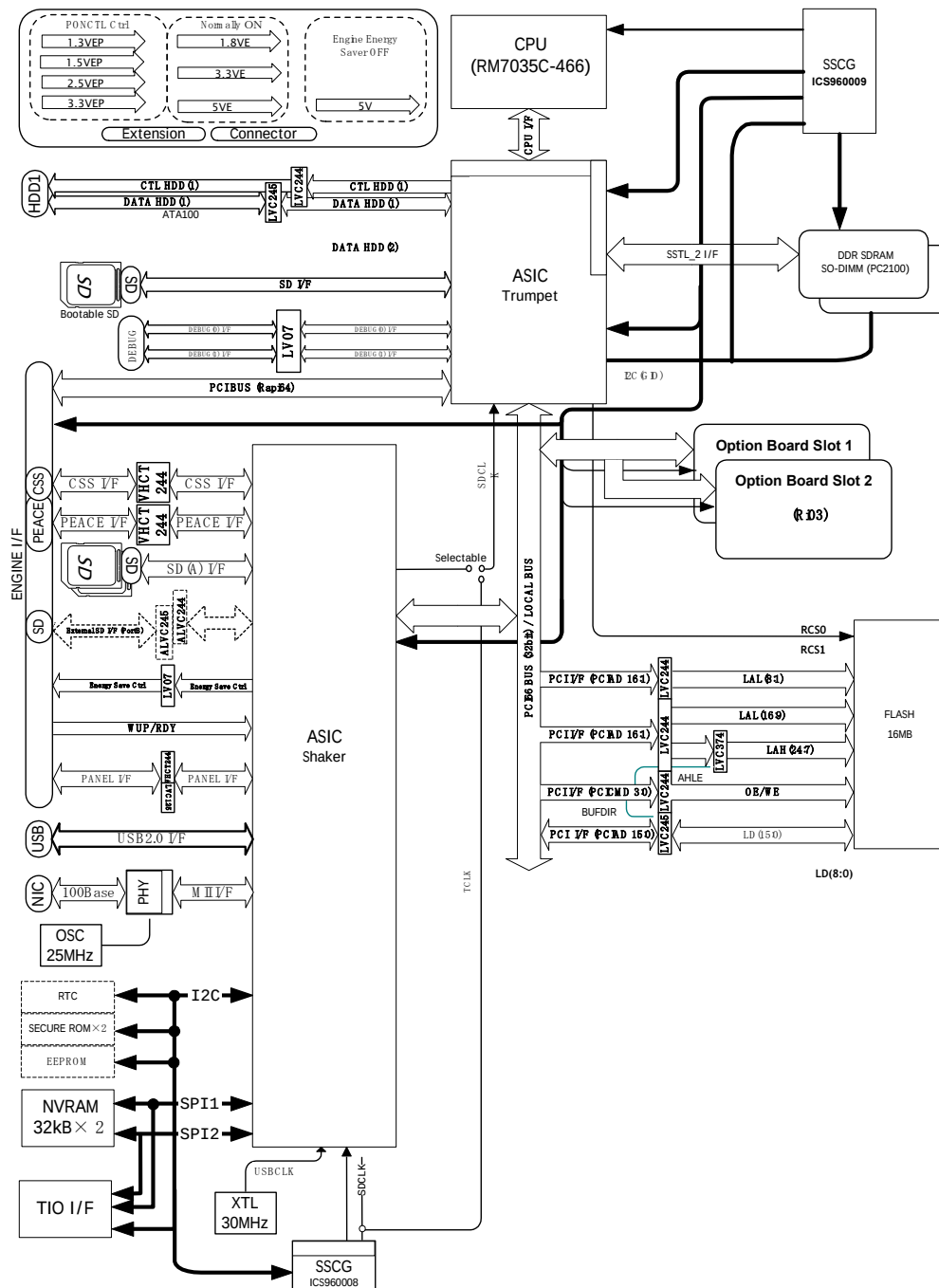
OPU (Operation Panel Unit). Controls operation panel and display.

PSU (Power Supply Unit). The improved PSU on this machine consumes less than 1 W when the machine is in the energy save (low power) mode.

SBU (Sensor Board Unit). Receives analog signals from the CCD (now encased in plastic, not ceramic) and converts them into digital signals.

SIB (Scanner Interface Board). Controls the scanner, and serves as the signal I/F board for the SBU and the OPU. The SIB passes signals between the BICU and the scanner unit components, and transmits video signals from the SBU to the BICU.

6.2.2 CONTROLLER



The controller controls all applications, including copier, printer, scanner, and fax applications. To add the optional printer, scanner, or fax applications, SD cards must be inserted in the SD card slots of the controller. The fax option, however, requires installation of an FCU.

ASCI Trumpet. Contains the dedicated R2K controller chips of the shared resources (the CPU, memory, and HDD hardware) for the copying and printing functions.

- **CPU (RM7035C-466)** The central processing unit that controls the operation of the controller board.
- **HDD.** The interface for connection of the flat film cable connection to the HDD unit. The hard disk is mounted on the controller board.
- **SD (Bootable C3).** Service slot for firmware version updates, moving applications to other SD cards, and downloading/uploading NVRAM contents.
- **DDR SDRAM.** The image memory for the printer function where image compression, image rotation and other operations are done.

ASIC Shaker. Controls the following functions: USB, Ethernet, PCI (optional boards for Bluetooth, FireWire, Wireless LAN, and Centronics), debug serial, I2C, applications on SD cards mounted in SD card slots C1 and C2, and the energy save features.

- **SD.** This is the interface for SD card slots C1, and C2. C1 is for the Printer/Scanner B783. C2 is for PostScript3 B720 or Data Overwrite Security B735.
- **Board Option Slots 1, 2.** Only one of the following options can be installed in either Slot 1 or Slot 2: IEEE1284 Interface Board B679 (Centronics), IEEE802.11b G813 (Wireless LAN), IEEE1394 Interface Board B581 (FireWire), Bluetooth Interface Unit B736. The following options can also be installed in either slot: File Format Converter B609 (MLB), and Key Browser Unit B720
- **Flash ROM.** Stores the program. Maximum capacity: 32 MB.
- **USB.** The interface for USB 2.0 devices. Supports both low-speed and high-speed modes. USB support is built-into the controller. No installation is required for the USB function. But, SP5895 001 must be set to "1" to enable the network functions.
- **NIB.** The Ethernet interface connection. Network support is built-into the controller. No installation is required for the network function. But, SP5895 002 must be set to "1" to enable the network functions.
- **EEPROM.** Stores the data for the SP code settings.
- **NVRAM.** The memory that stores the system configuration and other information.

HDD: A 3.5" HDD (more than 20 GB) can be connected using an IDE I/F. The hard disk is partitioned as shown below.

How the HDD Is Partitioned

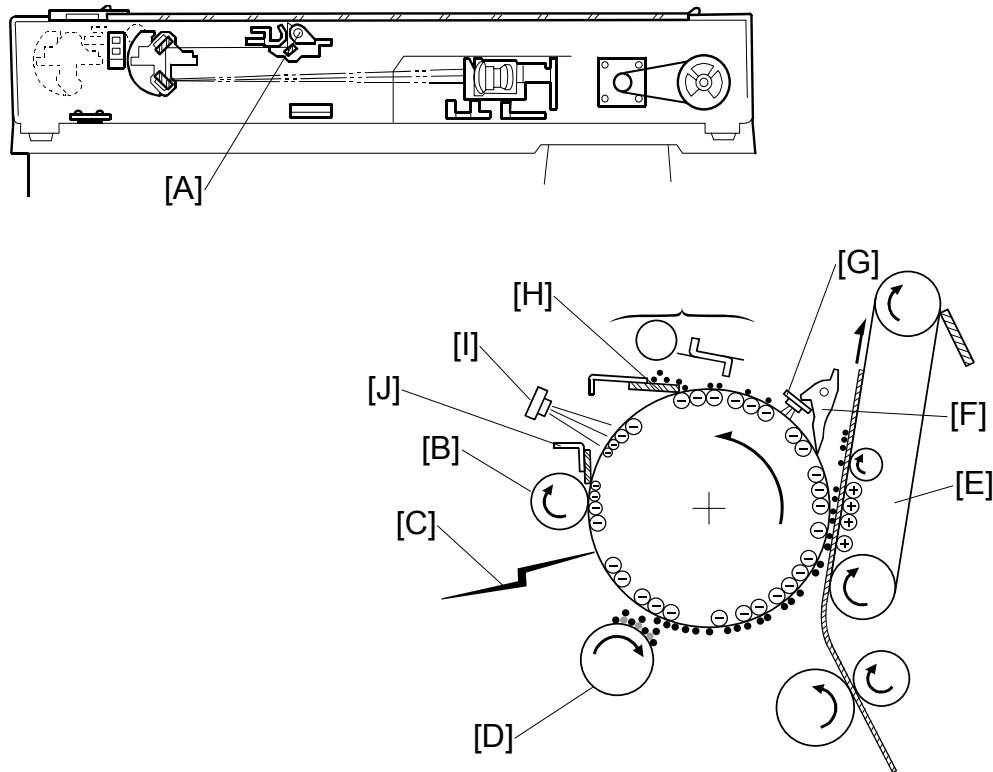
Name	Power OFF	Size (MB)	Files	Function	Comments
a	Remains	256	256	Object Area	ROM update, etc.
b	Remains	256	---	Swap Area	Debugging
d	Remains	7900	3000	Copy server, local storage, print job storage, document storage	Document server application.
	Remains	1000	---	Management (user stamps, etc.)	Stamps: 100 MB Image Overlays: 900 MB
	Erased	5370	100	Electronic sorting	imh management, used for other applications
e	Remains	300	2500	SAF Thumbnails	SAF = Store and Forward
f	Remains	500	6600	Font download, form registration	Stored on HDD even after cycling machine off/on.
g	Remains	500	5000	Job spooling area	Spooling long print jobs
h	Remains	2000	1000	LS thumbnails	MCS
i	Remains	200	---	SDK Log	SDK = Software Development Kit
j	Remains	1000	10000	For SDK	SDK
k	Remains	200	50	Job Log	
l	Remains	150	30	Fax, Debug Log	SCS, Fax
m	Remains	300	256	Address Book (Local, Distribution, LADP)	UCS
n	Remains	200	10	---	DCS
o	Remains	1002	16102	Distribution History (Application), Temporary area for emails, For email TX (DCS)	2 MB used for DCS/Scanner applications.
p	Remains	500	10100	---	---
q	Erased	500	1000	Temporary storage area for printer.	For print jobs using PDF, PCL, PS, RTIFF. Jobs erased after machine is cycled off/on.
r	Remains	30	1~2	ROM update data	This ROM data on the HDD s used in the rescue or recover modes.
Total		22.1 GB			

BOARD STRUCTURE

Allotment of Temporary Pages on the HDD

Application	Capacity (MB)	Pages
Common Area	4415	1000
Copy	400	200
NFA	25	50
Fax	256	1000
Print Collating	100	100
Scanner	100	50
Remote Fax	64	100
Sample Print	---	---
MCS Thumbnails	10	10
Swapping	---	---
Other	---	---

6.3 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW



Exposure

The xenon lamp [A] exposes the original. The reflected light is passed to the CCD, where it is converted into analog data, processed, and stored in the memory. The data is retrieved and sent to the laser diode for printing.

Drum charge

The charge roller [B] gives a negative charge to the organic photoconductive (OPC) drum. The charge remains on the surface of the drum because the OPC layer has a high electrical resistance in the dark.

Laser exposure

Processed data from the scanned original is retrieved from the memory and transferred to the drum by two laser beams [C], which form an electrostatic latent image on the drum surface. The amount of charge remaining as a latent image on the drum depends on the laser beam intensity, controlled by the BICU.

Development

The magnetic developer brush on the development roller [D] contacts the latent image on the drum. Toner particles are electrostatically attracted to the areas of the drum surface where the laser reduced the negative charge on the drum.

Image transfer

Paper is fed into the area between the drum surface and the transfer belt [E] at the proper time to align it with the image on the drum. The transfer bias roller applies a high positive charge to the reverse side of the paper through the transfer belt. This positive charge pulls the toner particles from the drum surface onto the paper while the paper is electrostatically attracted to the transfer belt.

Separation

Paper separates from the drum as a result of the electrical attraction between the paper and the transfer belt. Pick-off pawls [F] help separate the paper from the drum.

ID sensor

The ID sensor [G] measures the reflectivity of the pattern formed by the laser on the surface of the drum. This output signal is used for toner supply control and also measures the drum surface reflectivity, which is used for charge roller voltage control.

Cleaning

The drum cleaning blade [H] removes any toner remaining on the drum surface after the image is transferred to the paper.

Quenching

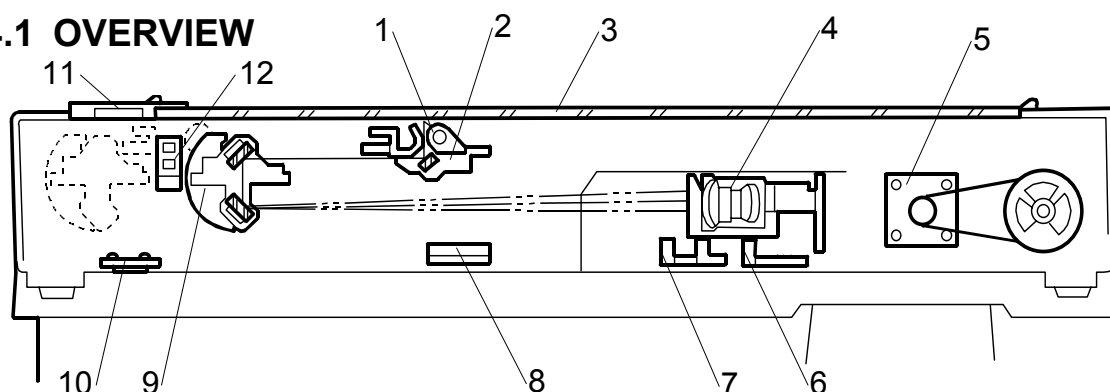
The light from the quenching lamp [I] electrically neutralizes the charge on the drum surface.

Cleaning

The 2nd drum cleaning blade [J] removes any remaining toner.

6.4 SCANNING

6.4.1 OVERVIEW



1 Exposure lamp	7 Original length sensors 1, 2
2 1st Scanner	8 Original width sensors
3 Exposure glass	9 2nd Scanner
4 Lens block	10 Anti-condensation heater (option)
5 Scanner drive motor	11 Exposure glass (for document feeder)
6 Original length sensor 3	12 Scanner HP sensor

The original is illuminated by the exposure lamp (a xenon lamp). The image is reflected onto a CCD (charge coupled device) on the lens block via the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd mirrors, and through the lens on the lens block.

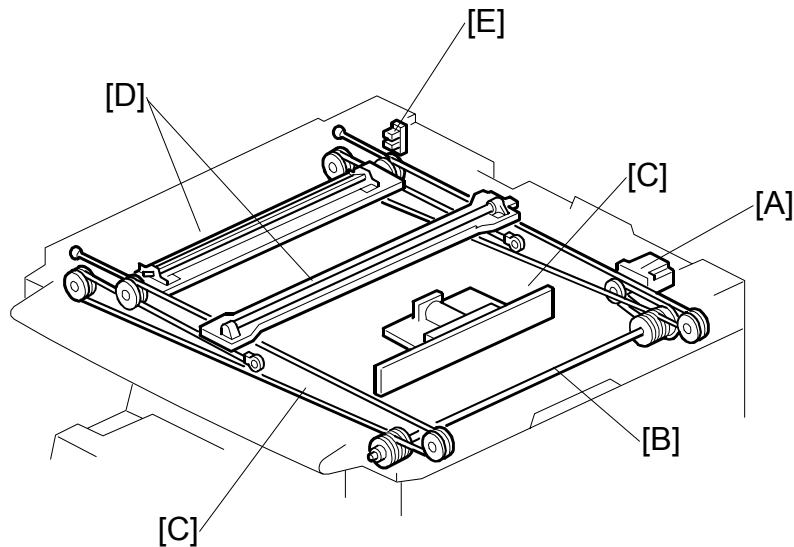
The 1st scanner consists of the exposure lamp, a reflector, and the 1st mirror.

The exposure lamp is energized by a dc supply to avoid uneven light intensity while the 1st scanner moves in the sub scan direction (down the page). The entire exposure lamp surface is frosted to ensure even exposure in the main scan direction (across the page).

The light reflected by the reflector is of almost equal intensity in all directions, to reduce shadows on pasted originals.

When the optional optics anti-condensation heater is installed on the left side of the scanner, it turns on whenever the power cord is plugged in.

6.4.2 SCANNER DRIVE



Book Mode

Scanner drive motor [A] and timing belt drive the scanner drive shaft [B]. The drive shaft drives the pulleys attached to the two scanner wires [C] (front and back). The scanner wires move the 1st and 2nd scanners [D] on their rails. The 2nd scanner speed is half that of the 1st scanner.

The scanner interface board (SIB) controls the scanner drive motor. In full size mode, the 1st scanner speed is 230 mm/s during scanning.

In reduction or enlargement mode, the scanning speed depends on the magnification ratio. The returning speed is always the same, whether in full size or magnification mode. The image length change in the sub scan direction is done by changing the scanner drive motor speed, and in the main scan direction it is done by image processing on the BICU board.

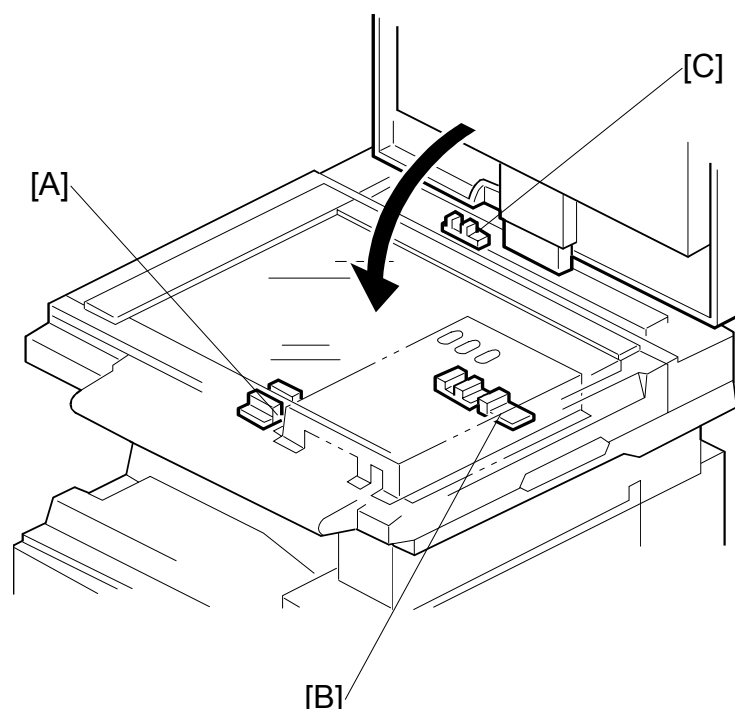
NOTE: Magnification in the sub-scan direction can be adjusted by changing the scanner drive motor speed using SP4-008.

ADF mode

The scanners are always kept at their home position (the scanner home position sensor [E] detects the 1st scanner) to scan the original. The ADF motor feeds the original through the ADF. In reduction/enlargement mode, the image length change in the sub-scan direction is done by changing the ADF motor speed. Magnification in the main scan direction is done in the BICU board, like for book mode.

NOTE: Magnification in the sub-scan direction can be adjusted by changing the ADF motor speed using SP6-017. In the main scan direction, it can be adjusted with SP2-909, like for book mode.

6.4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION IN PLATEN MODE

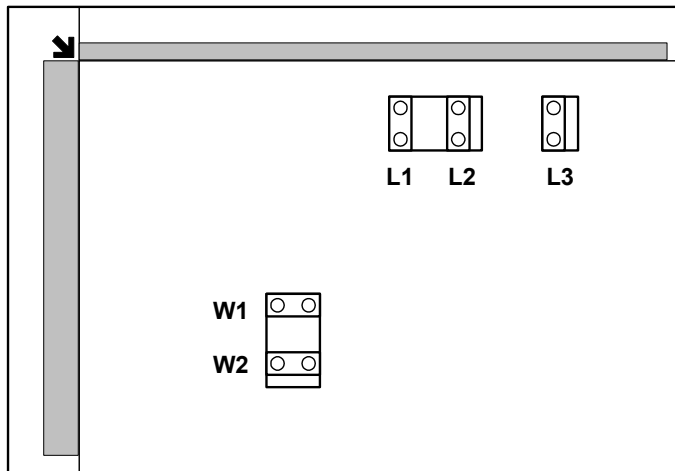


The original width sensors [A] detect the original width, and the original length sensors [B] detect the original length. These reflective photo sensors are referred to collectively as the APS (Auto Paper Select) sensors.

While the power is on, these sensors are active and the original size data is always sent to the CPU. However, the CPU checks the data only when the platen cover sensor [C] is activated after the platen reaches about 15 cm above the exposure glass as it is closed. The main CPU detects the original size by the on/off signals received from the APS sensors.

NOTE: If the copy is made with the platen fully open, the main CPU determines the original size from the sensor outputs after the Start Ⓢ key is pressed.

SCANNING



Original Size		Length Sensor			Width Sensor		SP4-301 display
A4/A3 version	LT/DLT version	L3	L2	L1	W2	W1	
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	00011111
B4	10" x 14"	O	O	O	X	O	00011101
F4	8.5" x 14" (8" x 13")	O	O	O	X	X	00011100
A4-L	8.5" x 11"	X	O	O	X	X	00001100
B5-L		X	X	O	X	X	00000100
A4-S	11" x 8.5"	X	X	X	O	O	00000011
B5-S		X	X	X	X	O	00000001
A5-L, A5-S	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	X	X	X	X	X	00000000

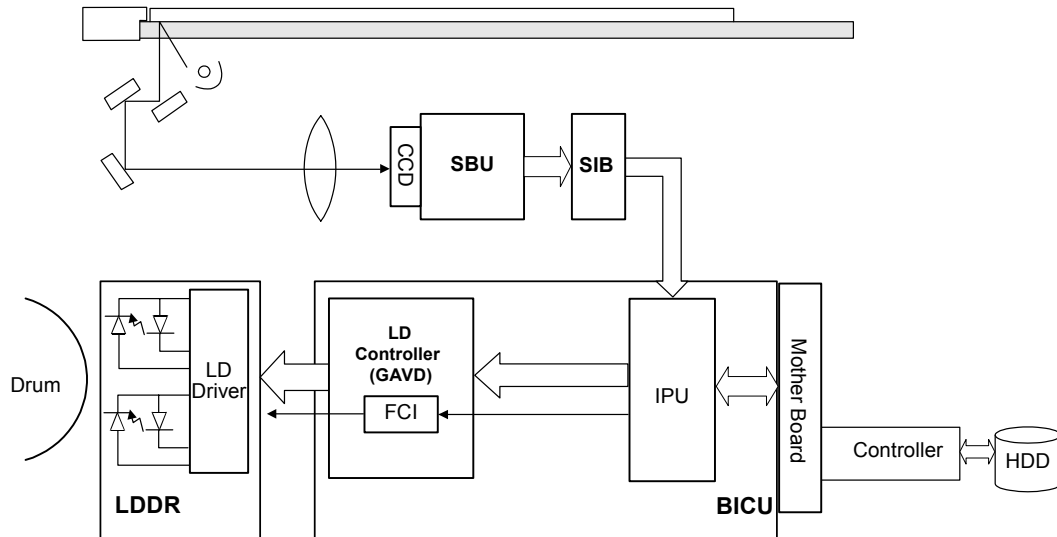
NOTE: L: Lengthwise, S: Sideways, O: Paper present X: Low

For other combinations, "CANNOT DETECT ORIG. SIZE" will be indicated on the operation panel display.

The above table shows the outputs of the sensors for each original size. This original size detection method eliminates the necessity for a pre-scan and increases the machine's productivity.

However, if the by-pass tray is used, note that the machine assumes that the copy paper is lengthwise (L). For example, if A4 sideways paper is placed on the by-pass tray, the machine assumes it is A3 paper and scans a full A3 area, disregarding the original size sensors.

6.5 IMAGE PROCESSING



6.5.1 OVERVIEW

SBU: The SBU (Sensor Board Unit) converts the analog signal from the CCD to an 8-bit digital signal and sends it to the SIB.

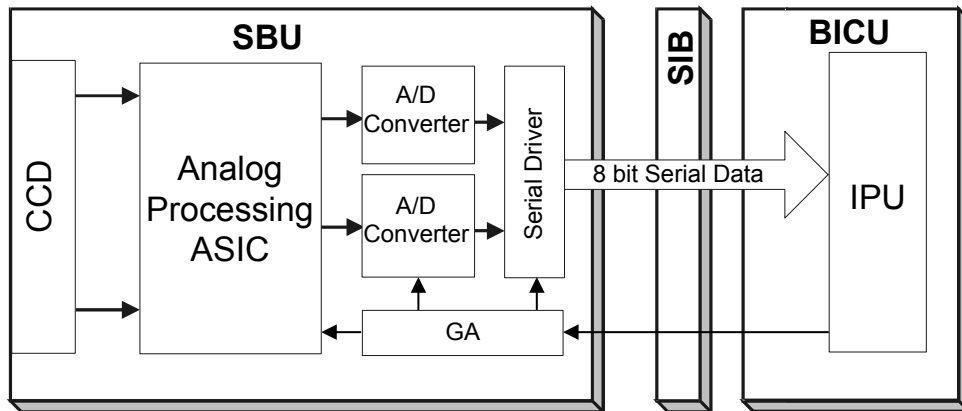
SIB: Relays image signals and controls the scanner.

BICU: The BICU (Base Engine Image Control Unit) performs timing control and command control. The IPU on the BICU processes auto shading, filtering, magnification, γ correction, and gradation. The memory controller performs image compression, decompression, and memory address control (for binary picture processing mode only)

LD Unit: Performs dual channel multi-beam exposure, multiple exposure, and synchronous detection.

Controller: Performs dual channel multi-beam exposure, multiple exposure, and synchronous detection.

6.5.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)



The CCD converts the light reflected from the original into an analog signal. The CCD line has 7200 pixels at a resolution of 600 dpi.

The CCD has two output lines to the analog processing ASIC, one for handling odd and one for handling even pixels. The analog processing ASIC performs the following operations on the signals received from the CCD:

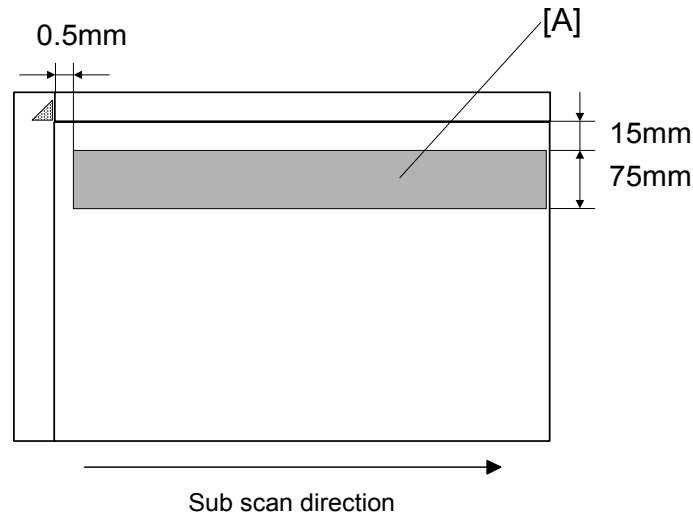
Z/C (Zero/Clamp): Adjusts the black level for even pixels to match the odd pixels.

Signal composition: Analog signals for odd and even pixels from the CCD are merged by a switching device.

Signal amplification: The analog signal is amplified by amplifiers in the AGC circuit. The maximum gains of the amplifiers are controlled by the CPU on the BICU board.

After the above processing, the analog signals are converted to 8-bit signals by the A/D converter. This gives a value for each pixel on a scale of 256 shades of gray. Then, this data goes to the BICU via the SIB.

6.5.3 AUTO IMAGE DENSITY (ADS)



This mode prevents the background of an original from appearing on copies.

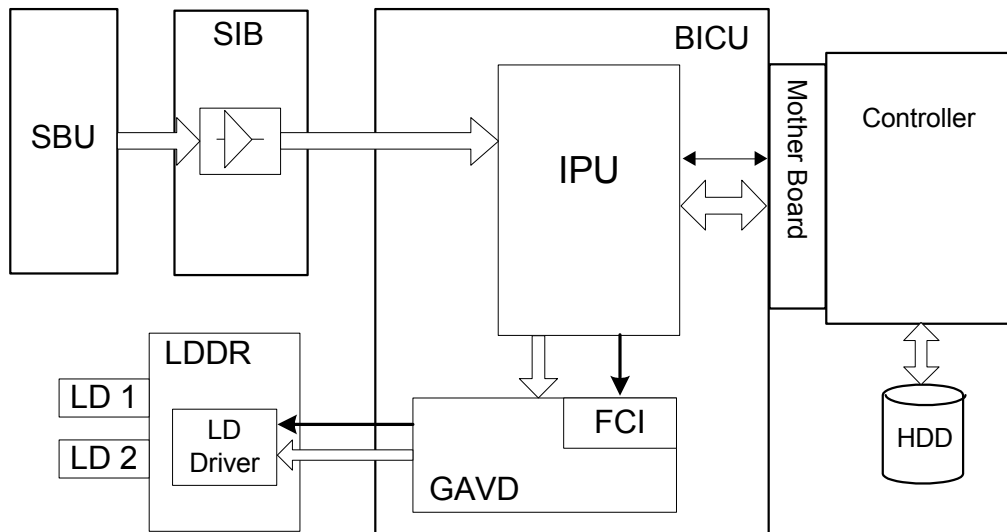
The copier scans the auto image density detection area [A]. This corresponds to a narrow strip at one end of the main scan line, as shown in the diagram. As the scanner scans down the page, the IPU on the BICU detects the peak white level for each scan line, within this narrow strip only. From this peak white level, the IPU determines the reference value for A/D conversion for the scan line. Then, the IPU sends the reference value to the A/D controller on the SBU.

When an original with a gray background is scanned, the density of the gray area is the peak white level density. Therefore, the original background will not appear on copies. Because peak level data is taken for each scan line, ADS corrects for any changes in background density down the page.

As with previous digital copiers, the user can select manual image density when selecting auto image density mode and the machine will use both settings when processing the original.

6.5.4 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)

Overview



The image data from the SBU goes to the IPU (Image Processing Unit) IC on the BICU board, which carries out the following processes on the image data:

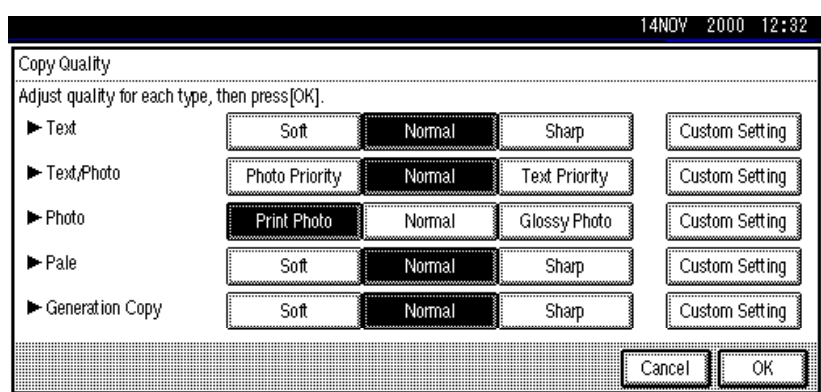
1. Auto shading
2. Filtering (MTF and smoothing)
3. Magnification
4. γ correction
5. Grayscale processing
6. Binary picture processing
7. Error diffusion
8. Dithering
9. Video path control
10. Test pattern generation

The image data then goes to the HDD.

6.5.5 IMAGE PROCESSING MODES

The user can select one of the following modes with the User Tools screen: Text, Text/Photo, Photo, Pale, Generation. Each of these modes has a range of different settings (e.g. Soft, Normal, Sharp, etc). For each mode, a Custom Setting options is also available. This Custom Setting holds the values selected with the SP modes, which can be adjusted to meet special requirements that cannot be covered by the standard settings.

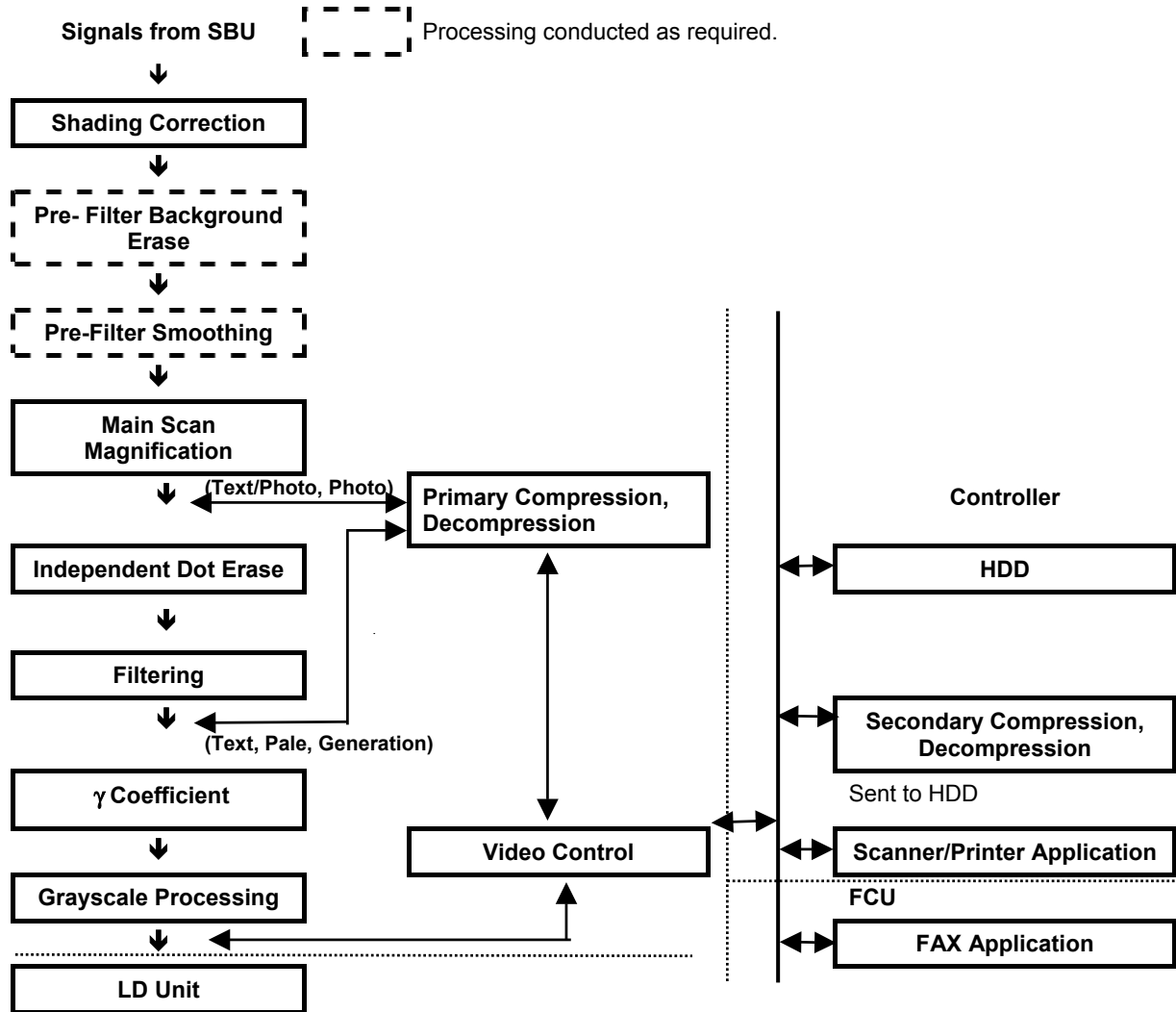
To display this screen, press User Tools/Counter> Copier/Document Server Settings> General Features> Copy Quality.



Mode	Function
Text	Best reproduction of text and sharp lines. Ignores background texture. (☛ pg. 6-24)
Text/Photo	Good reproduction of mixed text and photographs with accurate grayscale, better than that achieved in the Text mode. (☛ pg. 6-25)
Photo	Best possible reproduction of photographs. (☛ pg.6-26)
Pale	Reproduction similar to Text mode, but of lower contrast. Ideal for copying thin originals. (☛ pg.6-27)
Generation Copy	Attempts to achieve the best reproduction of copied originals, which have faded due to making copies of copies. (☛ pg.6-28)

IMAGE PROCESSING

General Image Processing Flow



6.5.6 SUMMARY OF IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS

Shading correction: Compensates for the possible differences in the amount of light at the edges and center of a scanned image caused by the scanner lens, or scatter among pixels of the CCD.

Pre-Filter Background erase: Attempts to eliminate the heavy background texture from copies (newspaper print or documents printed on coarse paper). Elements below the selected threshold level are eliminated.

Pre-Filter Smoothing: Reproduces halftones while reducing the incidence of moiré which can occur as a result of compressing and then decompressing the image.

Main scan magnification: Adjusts magnification to the desired level by processing adjusting multiple, adjacent pixels in the direction of main scanning. Adjustment of magnification in the sub scan direction is done by changing the scanning speed.

Independent dot erase: Attempts to recognize and eliminate scattered, independent dots in copies. Processes only pixels of high density and eliminates those of low density.

Filtering (MTF filter/smoothing): Performs mainly edge enhancement with the MTF filter. Performs smoothing only in the Photo mode. The matrix size of the filter is 9 pixels x 7 lines.

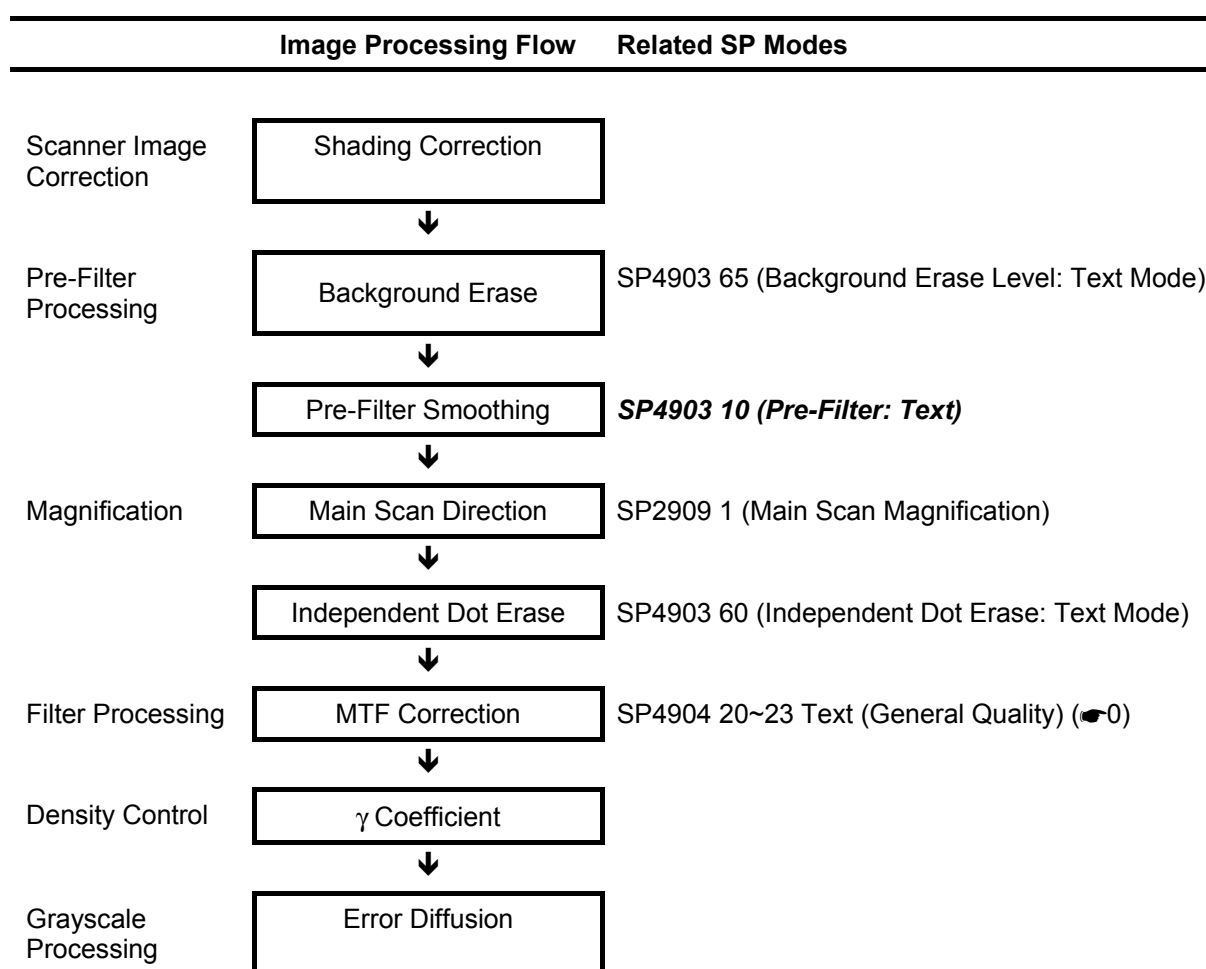
Gamma (γ) coefficient: Controls the image density for images processed with grayscaling. Copy density adjustment is achieved with special notch γ coefficient conversion. The best γ coefficient suited for the selected mode can be stored and adjusted as needed.

Grayscale processing: Performs reproduction of grayscales, using mainly error diffusion. (In the Photo mode, conducts processing with dithering.)

6.5.7 IMAGE PROCESSING STEPS AND RELATED SP MODES

Text Mode

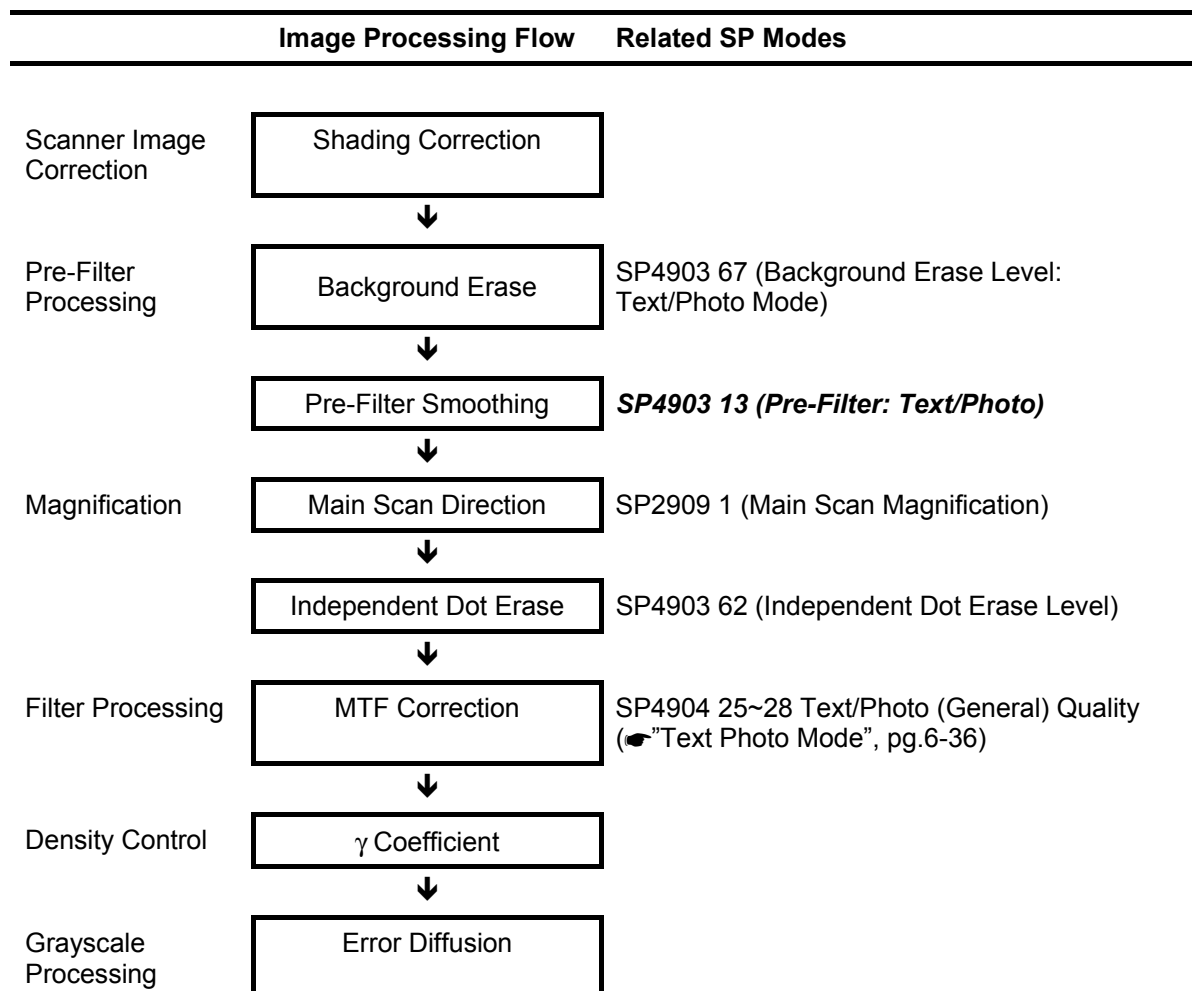
The Text mode achieves quality reproduction of text and sharp lines and ignores background texture. Processing is conducted with a high resolution MTF filter; special processing with the γ coefficient prevents background reproduction and achieves the best reproduction of images with error diffusion. Because the Soft and Normal settings use a weak MTF filter, the quality of the image is improved with the elimination of moiré. The Sharp selection uses an MTF filter stronger than that of the Normal setting, thus increasing the sharpness of lines.



NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down Ⓢ on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

Text/Photo Mode

Text/Photo mode achieves high quality reproduction of pictures with accurate grayscale. Processing is conducted with the special γ coefficient which reproduces a wide range of grayscale. Compared with the Text mode, text reproduced in the Text/Photo mode appears lighter and textured backgrounds could appear on copies, but the incidence of moiré is reduced with an edge detection filter. Because Photo Priority uses an MTF filter weaker than that of the Normal setting, the quality of the image is improved with the elimination of moiré. The Text Priority selection uses an MTF filter stronger than that of the Normal setting, thus increasing the sharpness of lines.



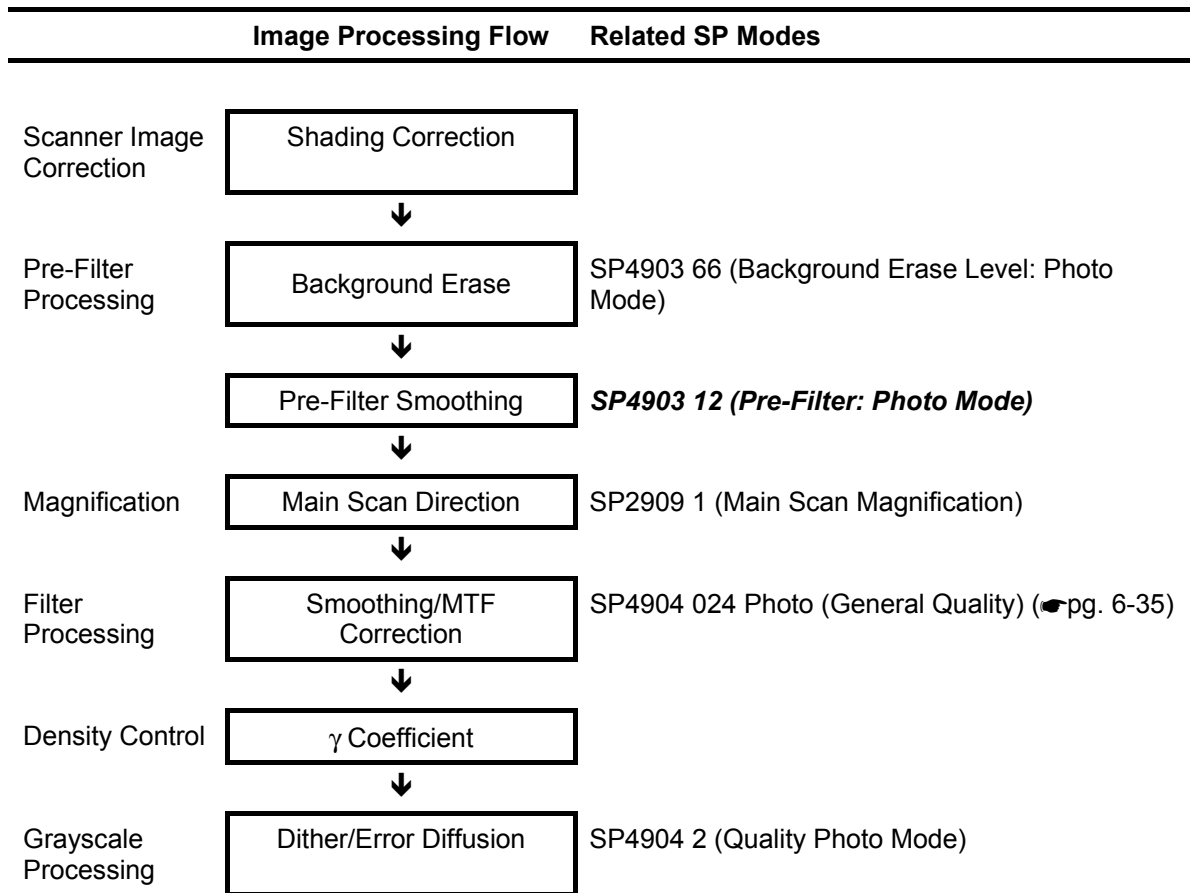
Detailed
Descriptions

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down $\text{\textcircled{\#}}$ on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Photo Mode

Photo mode emphasizes grayscale processing to achieve the best possible reproduction of photographs and eliminate moiré by using the highest density and γ coefficient in the reproduction of grayscales and dithering. Print Photo performs smoothing and dithering for photos copied from magazines, newspapers, etc. The Normal selection uses a higher resolution setting and employs error diffusion but does not use smoothing to improve the appearance of text in photographs. Glossy photo paper employs MTF filter processing and error diffusion to copy glossy or matte photographs and achieves a low incidence of moiré, thus reproducing copies of photographs of high resolution.

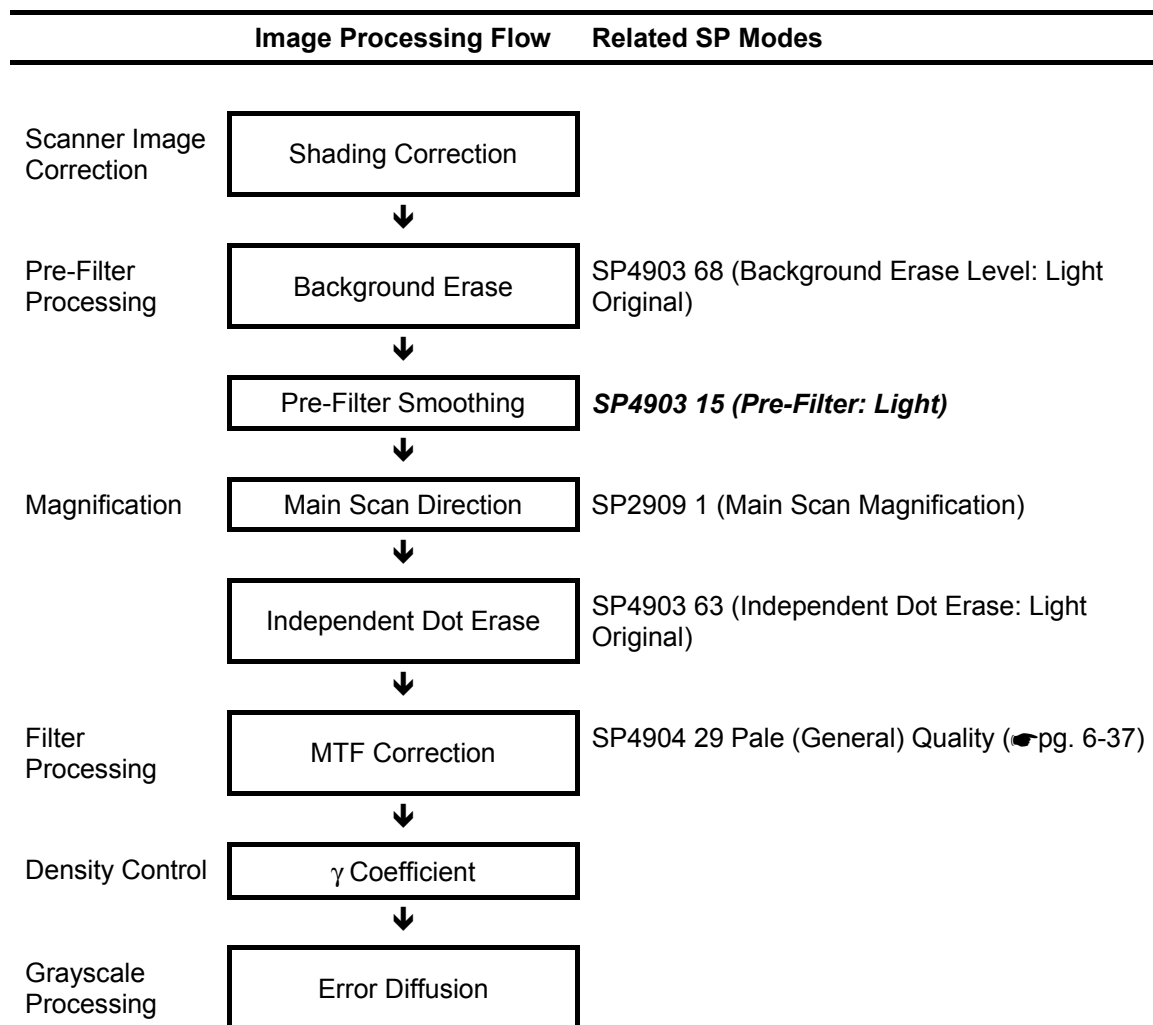
For photo mode, the features used depend on which type of greyscale processing has been selected for Photo mode (either 'dithering and smoothing' or 'error diffusion and MTF'); this depends on the setting of SP 4904 001. Details are explained later in this section.



NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down $\text{\textcircled{\#}}$ on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Pale (Low-Density Mode)

Pale achieves image quality comparable with Text mode, but of lower contrast. Pale employs an MTF filter stronger than that employed by the Text mode and uses a darker γ coefficient, thus increasing the incidence of copying textured backgrounds. Ideal for copying extremely thin originals. Soft employs an MTF filter weaker than Normal, thus achieving a softer image with less moiré. Sharp employs an MTF filter stronger than that of Normal, thus increasing the sharpness of lines.

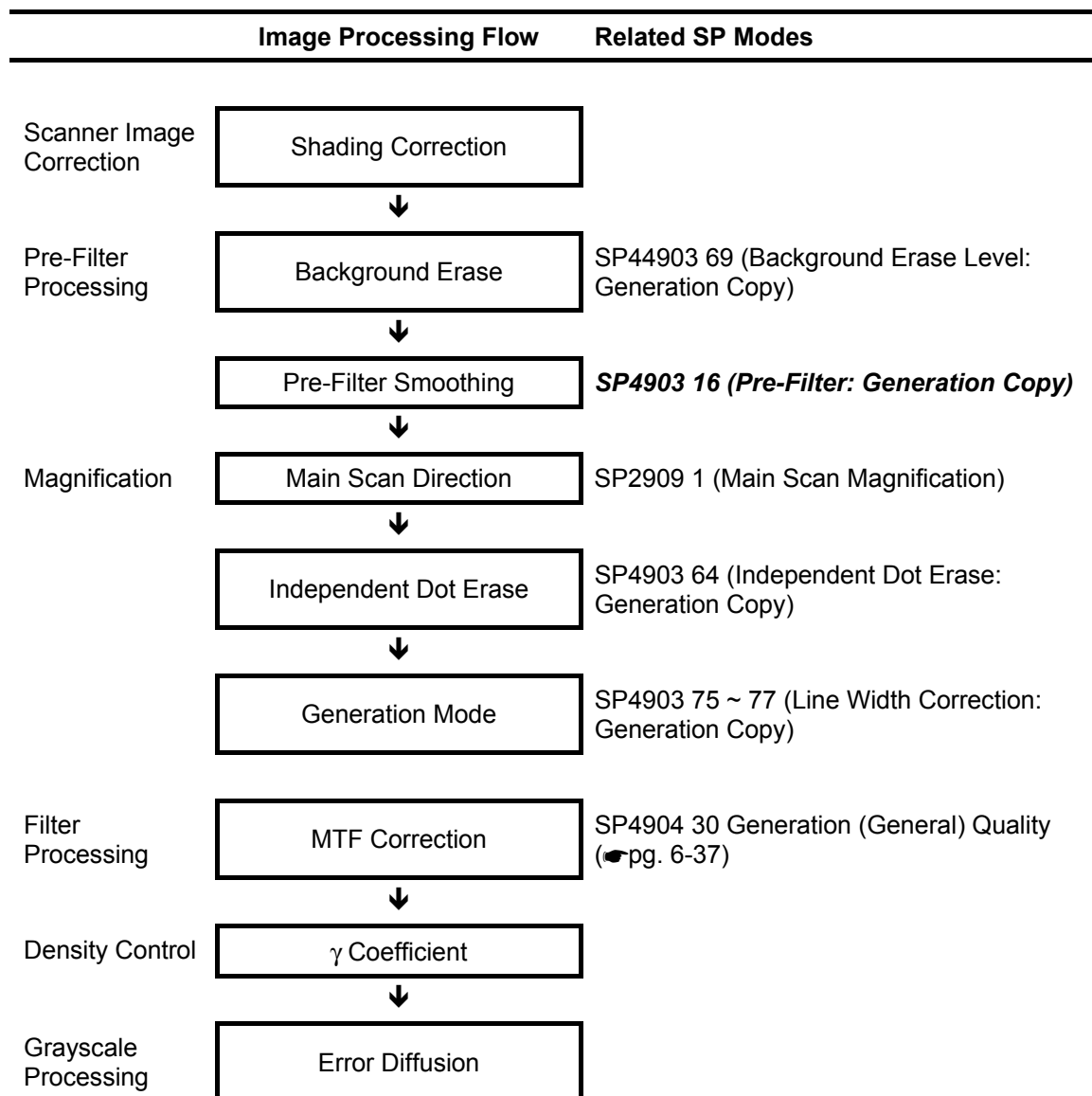


Detailed
Descriptions

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down $\#$ on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

Generation Copy Mode

Generation Copy, based mainly on Text mode, aims to achieve the best reproduction of copied originals (so called “generation copies” or copies of copies). This mode 1) employs an MTF filter weaker than that of the Text mode to eliminate spurious dots, 2) uses the γ coefficient to smooth the image, and 3) uses generation processing to thicken thin lines. Soft employs an MTF filter weaker than the Normal setting to achieve a softer image with less moiré. Sharp employs an MTF filter stronger than that for Normal to emphasize lines for better image quality.



NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down Ⓢ on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

6.5.8 PRE-FILTERING

SP mode settings 4903 10 ~ 15 select pre-filters by changing the filter coefficient settings.

Original Mode	SP No.	Default	Setting	Mag.	Smoothing
Text	SP4903 10	0	0	25% ~ 400%	OFF
Photo	SP4903 12	0	1	25% ~ 50%	Weak
Text/Photo	SP4903 13	0	2	25% ~ 50%	Medium
Pale	SP4903 15	0	3	25% ~ 50%	Strong
Generation	SP4903 16	0	4	25% ~ 99%	Weak
↓ Range 0 ~ 9			5	25% ~ 99%	Medium
			6	25% ~ 99%	Strong
			7	25% ~ 400%	Weak
			8	25% ~ 400%	Medium
			9	25% ~ 400%	Strong

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down  on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

These SP mode settings are provided to reduce the incidence of moiré in the reproduction of images whose data signals have been compressed in the direction of the main scan. However, these SP adjustments can cause different effects in the reproduction of images depending on:

- Whether they contain areas shaded with dot screening (newspaper, magazine photos)
- Their reduction ratios.

These adjustments can also cause blurring in the reproduction of images that contain:

- Low density dots
- Low contrast text characters
- Fine lines

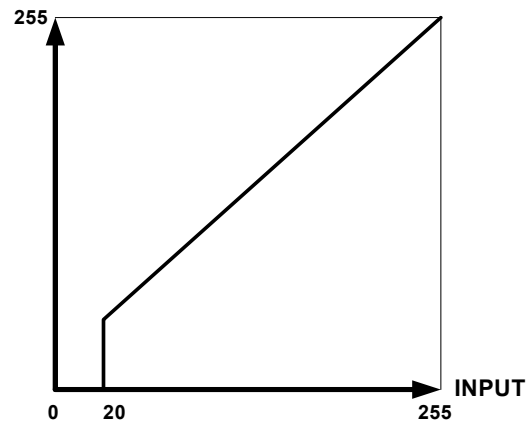
While filter processing is provided to reduce the incidence of moiré generated from digital signals, you must always pay attention to how these adjustments affect text characters and fine lines.

6.5.9 BACKGROUND ERASE

SP4903 65 ~ 69 cut the background from around images scanned from an original of rough texture such as a newspaper or parchment. The larger the setting done for this SP, the more background drops out from behind the image or text.

This SP mode setting for image processing executes separately from the ADS (Auto Image Density) function that is performed in the SBU to set the peak white level for scanning to eliminate background.

For example, if this SP is set for “20”, then the scanning data up to 20 is set to “0” and cut from the image. The range for this SP code adjustment is 0 ~ 255. The recommended range for a normal document is 0 ~ 60. An official document on rough texture paper would fall in the recommended range of 120 ~ 160. The correct setting for any original will vary with the texture and quality of the background, but remember that selecting a higher numbers for this setting will eventually lower the quality of the document or cause unexpected results.



Mode	Background Erase Filter	Default	Range
Text	SP4903 65	0	0 ~ 255
Photo	SP4903 66	0	
Text/Photo	SP4903 67	0	
Pale	SP4903 68	0	
Generation Copy	SP4903 69	0	

NOTE: The “0” setting switches off the background erase filter.

6.5.10 INDEPENDENT DOT ERASE

Independent dot erase (set with the SP mode settings listed in the table below) remains in effect even when a “Custom Setting” is selected with the User Tools.

Independent dot erase targets for elimination random, irregular shaped black dots on the surface of the original that would otherwise appear in the copy after scanning and printing. The strength of the application of this feature can be adjusted for each mode.

The filter compares each pixel with the pixels around an area 7 pixels x 7 lines. If the sum of the pixels at the edges is smaller than the threshold value, the object pixel is changed to zero (white), depending on the strength of the SP mode setting. Setting a larger setting increases the number of dots erased, but if set too high, this SP can also remove small or fine text characters or even portions of large text characters.

Mode	Independent Dot Erase Filter	Default	Range
Text	SP4903 60	5	0 ~ 15
Text/Photo	SP4903 62	0	
Pale	SP4903 63	0	
Generation Copy	SP4903 64	8	

NOTE: The “0” setting switches off the filter.

6.5.11 LINE WIDTH CORRECTION

This section describes how to select a setting for line width correction (LWC) for the Generation Copy mode. LWC (Line Width Correction) can make lines thicker or thinner in generation copies.

SP4903 75 LWC: Generation Mode

Setting	Effect
0	No correction
1	Lighter lines
2	Darker lines (Default)
3	Thick lines

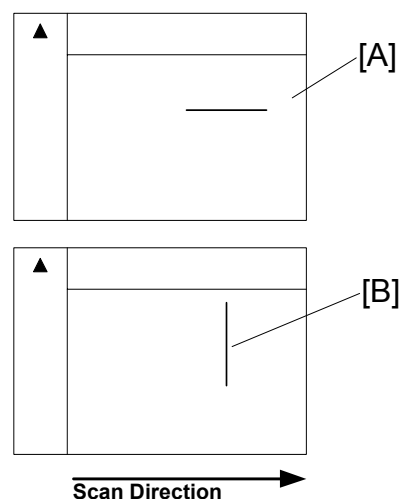
SP4903 75 adjusts the thickness of lines in faint generation copies. Specifically, this adjustment affects the lines targeted for adjustment by:

- SP4903 76 (LWC Threshold (Main Scan): Generation Mode). Targets main scan, lines parallel to the direction of feed [A].
- SP4903 77 LWC Threshold (Sub Scan): Generation Mode). Targets sub scan, lines at right angles to the direction of feed [B].

For sharp thin lines, set SP4903 75 for a higher LWC setting, and for softer lines set a lower setting. For thick lines, select “3”.

- To thin (or thicken) lines in the main scan direction, select an SP4903 75 setting larger (or smaller) than the setting for SP4903 76
- To thin (or thicken) lines in the sub scan direction select an SP4903 75 setting larger (or smaller) than the setting for SP4903 77.

However, remember that too large a setting can cause unexpected results in copied images.



SP Mode	Default	Range
SP4903 76 LWC Threshold (Main Scan): Generation Mode	1	0 ~ 5
SP4903 77 LWC Threshold (Sub Scan): Generation Mode	1	

6.5.12 FILTERING

Interactive SP Codes

Overview

The tables in this section are for quick reference. For details about how each SP code operates and interacts with other SP settings, please refer to the sections that follow.

Many of the SP codes used for image processing adjustments are interactive in that they exist as master and slave SPs. Use the *master* SP codes for gross adjustment. If you need to fine adjust a master setting, set the master setting to “0” to access its *slave* SP codes.

NOTE: In the tables below, the master SP codes are set in **bold** type. The slave SP codes are indented and set in normal type.

Keep the following points in mind while you are using these SP codes:

- The slave SP codes cannot be accessed until the master SP is set to “0”.
- For the slave SP code settings to take effect, the master SP code must remain set to “0”.
- If the master SP code is reset to any value other than “0”, then the slave SP codes are disabled and their adjustments have no effect on image processing.
- If a master SP code is provided with both a Strength and Level (coefficient) adjustment, adjust the Strength setting first to achieve the approximate effect that you want, then do the Level adjustment.

IMAGE PROCESSING

Text Mode

Adjust the image for the Text mode with the four master settings within their allowed ranges (for ranges see Section “5. Service Tables”. To fine adjust a master setting set it to “0” then perform the adjustments listed below.

SP4904 020 = 0	Text (General) Quality 25-64%
SP4903 020	Main Scan Filter Level: Text 25%-64%
SP4903 021	Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 25%-64%
SP4903 022	Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 25%-64%
SP4903 023	Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 25%-64%
SP4904 021 = 0	Text (General) Quality 65-154%
SP4903 024	Main Scan Filter Level: Text 65%-154%
SP4903 025	Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 65%-154%
SP4903 026	Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 65%-154%
SP4903 027	Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 65%-154%
SP4904 022 = 0	Text (General) Quality 155-256%
SP4903 028	Main Scan Filter Level: Text 155%-256%
SP4903 029	Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 155%-256%
SP4903 030	Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 155%-256%
SP4903 031	Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 155%-256%
SP4904 023 = 0	Text (General) Quality 257%-400%
SP4903 032	Main Scan Filter Level: Text 257%-400%
SP4903 033	Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 257%-400%
SP4903 034	Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 257%-400%
SP4903 035	Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 257%-400%

Photo Mode***Dithering or Error Diffusion for Photo Mode***

Use SP4904 001 to select either dithering or error diffusion to process image fills and halftones.

0: Selects the dithering and smoothing filter.

1: Selects the error diffusion and MTF filter.

Photo Mode Dithering: SP4904 001 = 0

If you select “0” for SP4904 001 to enable dithering halftones, only one SP code is available for fine adjusting dithering.

SP4903 037	Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode

Photo Mode Error Diffusion: SP4904 001 = 1

If you select “1” for SP4904 001 to enable error diffusion, all the SP codes in the Mode tables below (Text Mode, Text/Photo Mode, etc.) are available for adjustment.

Use the *master* SP codes gross adjustment of the image processing mode after you have set SP4904 001 = 1 for error diffusion. If you need to fine adjust a master setting, set the master setting to “0” to access its slave SP codes.

Adjust the image for the Photo mode with the one master setting within its allowed range (for the range, see Section “5. Service Tables”). To fine adjust the master setting set it to “0” then perform the adjustments listed below.

SP4904 024 = 0	Photo (General Quality)
SP4903 036	Photo MTF (Edge)
SP4903 038	Photo MTF (All)
SP4903 091	<i>Filter Strength: Photo (Edge)</i>
SP4903 092	<i>Filter Adj.: Photo (Edge Det.)</i>
SP4903 093	<i>Filter Adj.: Photo (Mag.%)</i>
SP4904 013	<i>Halftone Adjustment: Edge Detection</i>

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down  on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

Text/Photo Mode

Adjust the image for the Text/Photo mode with the four master settings within their allowed ranges (for ranges, see Section “5. Service Tables”). To fine adjust a master setting set it to “0” then perform the adjustments listed below.

SP4904 025 = 0	Text/Photo (General) Quality 25%-64%
SP4903 039	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 25%-64%
SP4903 040	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 25%-64%
SP4903 079	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 25%-64%
SP4903 080	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25%-64%
SP4903 081	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 25%-64%
SP4904 008	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25-64%
SP4904 026 = 0	Text/Photo (General) Quality 65%-154%
SP4903 043	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 65%-154%
SP4903 044	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 65%-154%
SP4903 082	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 65%-154%
SP4903 083	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154%
SP4903 084	Filter Adj. Text/Photo (Mag.%) 65%-154%
SP4904 009	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154%
SP4904 027 = 0	Text/Photo (General Quality) 155%-256%
SP4903 047	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 155%-256%
SP4903 048	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 155%-256%
SP4903 085	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 155%-256%
SP4903 086	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155%-256%
SP4903 087	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 155%-256%
SP4904 010	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155-256%
SP4904 028 = 0	Text/Photo (General) Quality 257%-400%
SP4903 051	Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 257%-400%
SP4903 052	Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 257%-400%
SP4903 088	Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 257%-400%
SP4903 089	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257%-400%
SP4903 090	Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 257%-400%
SP4904 011	Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257-400%

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down **#** on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

Also, SP4904 007 adjusts the error diffusion process that is used in text/photo mode.

Gray adjustment: At areas defined as edges, error diffusion is done on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, grayscale processing for photographs is done. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. For details, refer to the SP table.

Pale Mode

Adjust the image for the Pale mode with the one master setting within its allowed range (for range see Section “5. Service Tables”. To fine adjust the master setting set it to “0” then perform the adjustments listed below.

SP4904 029 = 0	Pale (General) Quality
SP4903 055	Filter Level: Light Original
SP4903 056	Filter Strength: Light Original

Generation Copy Mode

Adjust the image for the Generation Copy mode with the one master setting within its allowed range (for range see Section “5. Service Tables”. To fine adjust the master setting set it to “0” then perform the adjustments listed below.

SP4904 030 = 0	Generation (General) Quality
SP4903 057	Filter Level: Generation Copy
SP4903 058	Filter Strength: Generation Copy

Text Mode MTF Filter

This section describes how to select the MTF filter coefficient and filter strength for the Text mode. You can use the SP mode settings listed in the table below to adjust these items for scanning in Text mode:

- MTF filter coefficient for the main scan and sub scan
- MTF filter strength for the main scan and sub scan

Text Mode (Mag.)	Coefficient		Strength	
	Main Scan .	Sub Scan .	Main Scan .	Sub Scan .
25% ~ 64%	SP4903 20	SP4903 21	SP4903 22	SP4903 23
65% ~ 154%	SP4903 24	SP4903 25	SP4903 26	SP4903 27
155% ~ 256%	SP4903 28	SP4903 29	SP4903 30	SP4903 31
257% ~ 400%	SP4903 32	SP4903 33	SP4903 34	SP4903 35
Ranges	0 ~ 15	0 ~ 13	0 ~ 7	0 ~ 7

Strengthening the MTF filter sharpens the edges of text characters and improves the appearance of low contrast text but can also cause moiré to appear in photos on the same original.

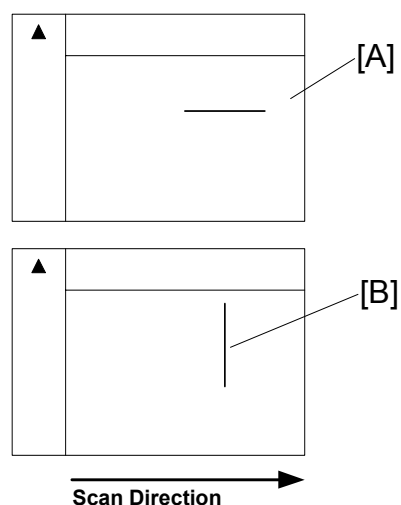
Conversely, weakening the MTF filter softens the edges of text characters and reduces the occurrence of moiré but low contrast characters may fade.

Strengthen or weaken the MTF filter for the Text mode only when necessary.

Adjustment of the MTF filter coefficient performs very fine level adjustment of the applied strength of the MTF filter. Adjustment of the MTF filter strength greatly affects the rate of the change applied to the image. Basically, you should first adjust the MTF filter strength in 1 step increments without adjusting the coefficient to achieve nearly the effect you want, and then use the coefficient settings for fine adjustment.

Coefficient and strength adjustments for main scan affect lines parallel to the direction of scanning [A].

Coefficient and strength adjustments for sub scan affect lines at right angles to the direction of scanning [B].



Text/Photo, Photo Mode Filter

SP mode settings listed in Columns 2~4 below adjust the clarity of originals that contain text, thin lines, and photos; the SP codes of Columns 5~6 are intended to adjust the clarity of originals with text and thin lines or only photos. The photo mode settings are only valid if SP 4904 001 is set to 1.

Mode, Mag.	Filter Setting: Edge	Filter Setting: All	Filter Strength: Edge	Filter Adj.: Edge Det.	Filter Adj.: Mag.
Text/Photo 25 ~ 64%	SP4903 39	SP4903 40	SP4903 79	SP4903 80	SP4903 81
Text/Photo 65 ~ 154%	SP4903 43	SP4903 44	SP4903 82	SP4903 83	SP4903 84
Text/Photo 155 ~ 256%	SP4903 47	SP4903 48	SP4903 85	SP4903 86	SP4903 87
Text/Photo 257 ~ 400%	SP4903 51	SP4903 52	SP4903 88	SP4903 89	SP4903 90
Photo (Error Diffusion)	SP4903 36	SP4903 38	SP4903 91	SP4903 92	SP4903 93
Ranges	0~7	0~7	0~3	0~15	0~15

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in ***bold italic*** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down  on the 10-key pad then “Copy SP” on the touch-screen.

Filter Setting: Edge (Column 2): Provides filter processing of edges to improve the clarity of originals that contain text and lines. Selecting a larger value sharpens the clarity. However, increasing the value also increases the possibility of producing moiré in the image.

Filter Setting: All (Column 3): Provides filter processing for the overall image, not to improve just text, lines, or photographs, but to improve the image as a whole. This filter coefficient reduces the incidence of moiré in images that contain shaded areas created with dots. Increasing the value improves reproduction of low contrast text and lines. However, increasing the value also increases the possibility of producing moiré in the image.

Filter Strength: Edge (Column 4): Aims to increase the *strength* of the “Filter Setting: Edge” effect that processes edges to improve the clarity of originals that contain text and lines. Increasing this setting not only increases the strength of the effect and creates thicker text characters and lines, but can also cause moiré to appear in the image. On the other hand, decreasing this setting lessens the effect, creating thinner characters and lines and also reduces the incidence of moiré.

Filter Adj.: Edge Detection (Column 5): Broadens the *range* of the effect of the “Filter Setting Edge” SP. Lowering this setting broadens the range for edge filter processing and increases clarity. Also, using this SP together with “Filter Adj. Mag.” below can sharpen edges to an extent that an abnormal looking image is created.

Filter Adj.: Magnification (Column 6): Allows gradual adjustment of clarity in original images that contain varying degrees of clarity between text and lines, or between areas of the same image. Increasing these settings in large increments could easily cause moiré to appear in the images. These settings should always be changed in small increments.

Follow these general rules with these settings:

- Increasing the settings dramatically increases clarity but can also increase the incidence of moiré.
- Reducing the settings produces a smoother image, reduces the incidence of moiré, but also reduces the effect of the filters.
- Adjusting the “Filter Adj. Mag.” SPs in combination with other settings can even produce abnormal images.

Also, SP4904 007 adjusts the error diffusion process that is used in text/photo mode.

Pale, Generation Mode Filter

The SP mode settings listed in the table below are used to adjust MTF filter coefficient and strength for the Pale mode and Generation Copy modes.

Mode	Coefficient	Strength
Pale Mode	SP4903 55	SP4903 56
Generation Copy	SP4903 57	SP4903 58
Ranges	0 ~ 6	0 ~ 7

Strengthening the MTF filter sharpens the edges of text characters and improves the appearance of low contrast text but can also cause moiré to appear in photos on the same original. Conversely, weakening the MTF filter softens the edges of text characters and reduces the occurrence of moiré but low contrast characters may fade.

Strengthen or weaken the MTF filter for the Text mode only when necessary.

Adjustment of the MTF filter coefficient performs very fine level adjustment of the applied strength of the MTF filter. Adjustment of the MTF filter strength greatly affects the rate of the change applied to the image. Basically, you should first just the MTF filter strength in 1 step increments without adjusting the coefficient to achieve the effect you want, and then use the coefficient settings for fine adjustment.

Photo Mode Smoothing for Dithering

Strengthening this SP4903 37 (Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode) makes images smoother and reduces the occurrence of moiré but can also cause fading. Strengthen this setting only when necessary. Only valid if SP 4901 001 is at 0.

Smoothing Coefficient	Range
SP4903 37 (Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode)	0 ~ 7

Photo Mode Grayscale

This SP mode adjustment sets how grayscales are processed when the user selects Photo mode on the operation panel.

SP4904 1 Grayscale Photo Mode

Setting	Description
0	Dithering and smoothing
1	Error diffusion, MTF filter correction for edges

If “0” is selected, the image grayscales are processed with dithering and filter processing, just as they are processed with the “Print Photo” selection on the operation panel. In this case the filter processing means smoothing only. The filter coefficient for smoothing can be adjusted with SP4904 37 (Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode).

If “1” is selected, then the image grayscales are processed with error diffusion processing, just as they are processed with the “Normal” and “Glossy Photo” settings on the operation panel. The MTF filter applied is the same as that applied for the “Normal” setting.

To achieve better photo image quality with slightly less clarity in lines and text, select “0” for dithering. You can also adjust SP4904 2 to achieve better reproduction of photographs.

On the other hand, to achieve better clarity in text and lines, with a slight sacrifice in the quality grayscale and smoothness in photographs, select “1” for error diffusion. To improve the clarity of fine lines and text, you can also increase the strength of the MTF filter. However, increasing the strength of the filter can also increase the incidence of moiré in areas of newspaper, magazine, or other photographs created with dot screening.

Photo Mode Image Quality

This section describes how to select a setting to improve image quality in the Photo mode with dithering in order to create an extremely smooth photo image.

Generally, a larger dithering matrix uses rougher dither pattern to reproduce a smoother gray image, but lowering the resolution can make text and lines more difficult to see. Conversely, a smaller dithering matrix uses a finer dithering pattern to reproduce a gray image of rougher texture, but raising the resolution can make text and lines easier to see.

SP4904 002 Quality Photo Mode

Setting	Dither Pattern	Picture Quality	Text Quality	Processing Priority
0	8 x 8 (75 lines)	High	Low	Dot screen areas
1	8 x 8 (106 lines)	Highest	Low	Filled areas (highest priority) Default
2	6 x 6 (142 lines)	Medium	Medium	Filled areas
3	4 x 4 (212 lines)	Low	High	Resolution

For these dither adjustments to take effect, SP4904 1 (Grayscale Photo Mode) must be set to “0” to enable dithering.

Here are some general rules:

- If your main concern is reproducing legible text, use the smaller matrixes, but a smaller matrix could cause spurious lines to appear in images.
- When using the smallest matrix with setting “3” (4 x 4), you should switch off the smoothing filter for the Photo mode by setting SP4903 37 to “0”.
- Use the largest dither matrix (setting “0”) for originals that contain dot screening such as newspaper and magazine photographs.

6.5.13 OTHERS

Vertical Black Line Correction

This section describes how to select a setting to correct vertical black lines. SP4904 5 (Special Text Density) adjusts the overall intensity of the image to eliminate vertical black lines in originals caused by documents scanned on a copy machine with dirty optics.

SP Mode	Default	Range
SP4904 5 Special Text Density	0	0 ~ 7

Normally, the default setting (0) leaves this feature switched off.

Select a higher setting to increase the effect or a lower setting to decrease the effect. High density vertical black lines may require a higher setting, but a higher setting could cause the overall density of the copy to lower, or could cause low density areas to drop out completely.

NOTE: Generally, this SP code corrects most low density vertical black lines but may not be able to correct extremely dark or wide black lines.

Density Settings

This section describes how to adjust the density settings for the Pale mode Generation Copy mode, and Text mode.

SP4904 3 is used to switch the density characteristics to binary digital processing for black and white originals to achieve better balance between text and images, correct shadows that appear around text in handwritten documents, to enhance documents written in pencil, or to achieve stark contrast when copying blueprints, building plans, etc.

SP4903 3 Density Setting for Low Density Original Mode

Settings	Density Characteristics
0	Selects γ normal density (Default).
1	Digitizes to near binary image.

SP4904 4 is used to switch between normal density and better reproduction of areas with graduated fill in originals copied in the Generation Copy mode. To improve the appearance of graduated fill areas of high density, set to “1” so the process can ignore black and more accurately reproduce areas with graduated fill. For example, the “1” setting is ideal for copying Generation Copy originals of medical charts that contain images of internal organs.

SP4904 4 Density Setting for Copied Original Mode

Settings	Density Characteristics
0	Selects normal density (Default) for Generation Copy originals.
1	Produces better gradation in fill areas of high density.

If “1” is selected for SP4904, the following SP mode settings may also need adjustment.

SP No.	Function	Recommended Setting
SP4903 57	Filter Level: Generation Copy	4 (or change as required)
SP4903 58	Filter Strength: Generation Copy	2 (or change as required)
SP4903 64	Independent Dot Erase: Generation Copy	0 (OFF)
SP4903 69	Background Erase Level: Generation Copy	0 OFF
SP4903 75	Line Width Correction: Generation Mode	0 (LWC OFF)

ADS Level

This section shows you how to adjust the center notch for the ADS (Automatic Density Setting) level. The notches are not displayed during ADS adjustment. Of 7 steps (notches) the center notch is 4. This is the value adjusted with this SP code.

SP5106 6 (ADS Level Selection) selects the image density used in ADS mode. For example, if you set SP5106 66 to “2”, pressing the Auto Image Density key toggles the display off and manual notch 2 is selected. This SP code is adjusted, if the customer cannot attain clean copies after performing automatic density adjustment.

This mode prevents the background of an original from appearing on copies.

The copier scans the auto image density detection area, a narrow strip at one end of the main scan line. As the scanner scans down the page, the IPU on the BICU detects the peak white level for each scan line in this narrow strip only. The IPU uses this peak white level as a reference value for analog-to-digital conversion of the scan line, then the IPU sends the reference value to the A/D controller on the SBU.

When an original with a gray background is scanned, for example, the density of the gray area becomes the peak white level density, so the original background will not appear on copies. Because peak level data is taken for each scan line, ADS corrects for any changes in background density down the page.

As with previous digital copiers, the user can select manual image density when selecting auto image density mode and the machine will use both settings when processing the original.

6.5.14 PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF SP MODES

Solving Problems

This section describes some common problems that can be solved with SP code adjustments. This table lists the recommended settings; fine adjustments may be required for the actual type of originals that the customer is copying.

NOTE: To do the settings in the table below, first you must set the Master SP code to "0". (●"FILTERING", 6-23~6-31)

Job	User Tool	Custom Setting Adjustment
Eliminate blue lines from graph paper, or erase shadows caused by originals that have been pasted up for layout.	• Lighten the image density for Text mode. • Select "Soft" for Text mode (User Tools).	• Increase the setting of SP4903 60 (Independent Dot Erase) to about 6 ~ 10. • Increase the setting of SP4903 65 (Background Erase) to about 20 ~ 60.
Eliminate orange or other color backgrounds from official documents.		• Increase the setting of SP4903 60 (Independent Dot Erase) to about 10 ~ 15. • Increase the setting of SP4903 65 (Background Erase) to about 120 ~ 160.
Reproduce blue lines of graph paper.	• Darken the image density for Text/Photo mode. • Select "Sharp" for the Text/Photo mode (User Tools).	
De-emphasize fine lines in jagged valleys and reduce the occurrence of moiré.	• Select "Soft" for Text mode (User Tools).	Weaken the MTF filters for Text mode: • SP4903 24, Main Scan: 9 • SP4903 25, Sub Scan: 13 • SP4903 26, Main Scan: 2 • SP4903 27, Sub Scan: 2
Reduce the occurrence of moiré when reducing the size of the original for copying.	• Select "Soft" for Text mode (User Tools).	Weaken the MTF filters for Text mode reduction: • SP4903 20, Main Scan: 14 • SP4903 21, Sub Scan: 13 • SP4903 22, Main Scan: 1 • SP4903 23, Sub Scan: 1
Reproduce areas of graduated fill in high density originals in Photo mode.	• Select "Glossy Photo" for Photo mode (User Tools).	
Sharpen text in Photo mode.	• Select "Normal" or "Glossy Photo" for Photo mode (User Tools).	Set SP4904 1 to "1" to enable error diffusion. Strengthen the settings for the Photo mode MTF filters coefficients: • SP4903 36: Select "3" • SP4903 38: Select "1"
Improve the appearance of originals handwritten with pencil, or make lighter copies of color originals (invoices and other commonly used business forms)	• Select "Sharp" for Pale mode (User Tools). • Select "Sharp" for Text mode (User Tools).	Strengthen the MTF filters for Pale mode: • SP4903 55: Select "3" • SP4903 56: Select "4" Strengthen the MTF filters for Text mode: • SP4903 24: Set to "9". • SP4903 25: Set to "13". • SP4903 26: Set to "3". • SP4903 27: Set to "3".

Recommended Settings for MTF Filters

Text Mode

– Text Mode Filter Setting (25% ~ 64%) –

MTF Strength	Strong ←				Default →				Weak
Default Settings:		Sharp			Normal			Soft	
SP4903 20 Main Filter Level: Text	15	14	12	10	9	9	14	10	9
SP4903 21 Sub Filter Level: Text	13	13	12	12	13	10	13	13	10
SP4903 22 Main Filter Strength	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1
SP4903 23 Sub Filter Strength: Text	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1

–Text Mode Filter Setting (65% ~ 154%) –

MTF Strength	Strong ←				Default →				Weak
Default Settings:		Sharp			Normal			Soft	
SP4903 24 Main Filter Level	9	9	15	14	12	10	9	14	11
SP4903 25 Sub Filter Level	13	11	13	13	13	13	13	13	13
SP4903 26 Main Filter Strength	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	1	1
SP4903 26 Sub Filter Strength	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	1	1

–Text Mode (155% ~ 256%) –

MTF Strength	Strong ←				Default →				Weak
Default Settings:		Sharp			Normal			Soft	
SP4903 28 Main Filter Level	11	10	9	9	14	12	10	9	9
SP4903 29 Sub Filter Level	13	13	13	10	13	13	13	13	10
SP4903 30 Main Filter Strength	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2
SP4903 31 Sub Filter Strength	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2

–Text Mode (257% ~ 400%) –

MTF Strength	Strong ←				Default →				Weak
Default Settings:		Sharp			Normal			Soft	
SP4903 32 Main Filter Level	12	11	10	9	15	14	12	10	9
SP4903 33 Sub Filter Level	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13
SP4903 34 Main Filter Strength	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2
SP4903 35 Sub Filter Strength	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2

Pale Mode

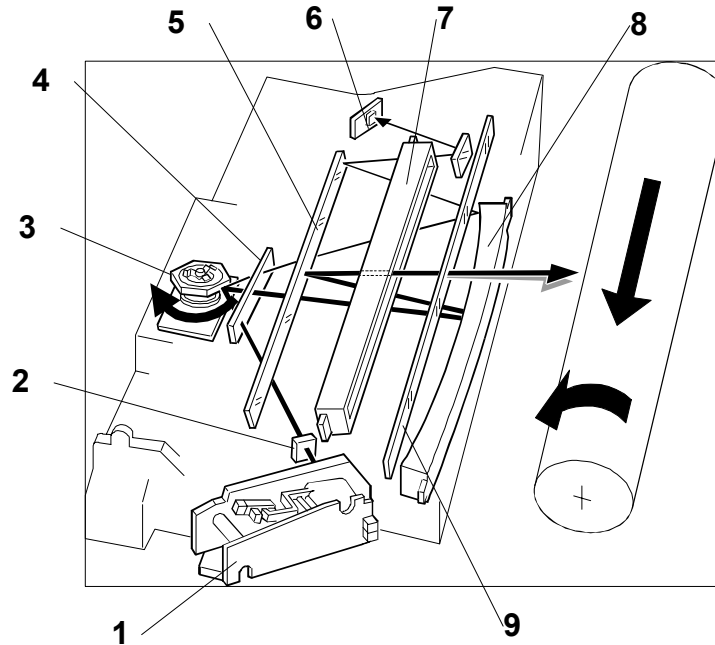
MTF Strength	Strong		←	Default				→	Weak	
Default Settings:		Sharp			Normal			Soft		
SP4903 55 Filter Level: Light Original	5	4	3	2	6	4	3	2	6	
SP4903 56 Filter Strength: Light Original	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3	2	

Generation Copy Mode

MTF Strength	Strong		←	Default				→	Weak	
Default Settings:		Sharp			Normal			Soft		
SP4903 57 Filter Level: Generation Copy	2	6	5	4	3	2	6	5	4	
SP4903 58 Filter Strength: Generation Copy	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	

6.6 LASER EXPOSURE

6.6.1 OVERVIEW



1 LD unit	6 Synchronization detector
2 Cylindrical lens	7 BTL (Barrel Toroidal Lens)
3 Polygonal mirror	8 F-theta mirror
4 Shield glass	9 Toner shield glass
5 Mirror	

This machine uses two laser diodes to produce electrostatic images on an OPC drum. The laser diode unit converts image data from the BICU board into laser pulses, and the optical components direct these pulses to the drum. To produce a high quality copy image, these are 256 gradations for the laser power.

The output path from the laser diode to the drum is shown above. The LD unit outputs two laser beams to the polygon mirror through the cylindrical lens and the shield glass.

Each surface of the polygon mirror reflects two full main scan lines. The laser beams go to the F-theta mirror, mirror, and BTL (barrel toroidal lens). Then these laser beams go to the drum through the toner shield glass. The laser synchronization detector determines the main scan starting position.

NOTE: The front door and upper right door (transfer door) are equipped with safety switches that automatically shut down the laser unit when either door is opened.

6.6.2 AUTO POWER CONTROL (APC)

The LD driver on the LDDR drives the laser diode. Even if a constant electric current is applied to the laser diode, the intensity of the output light changes with the temperature. The intensity of the output decreases as the temperature increases.

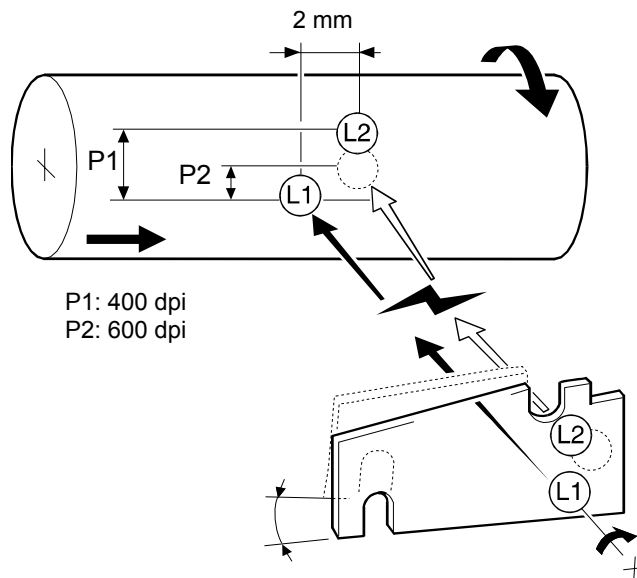
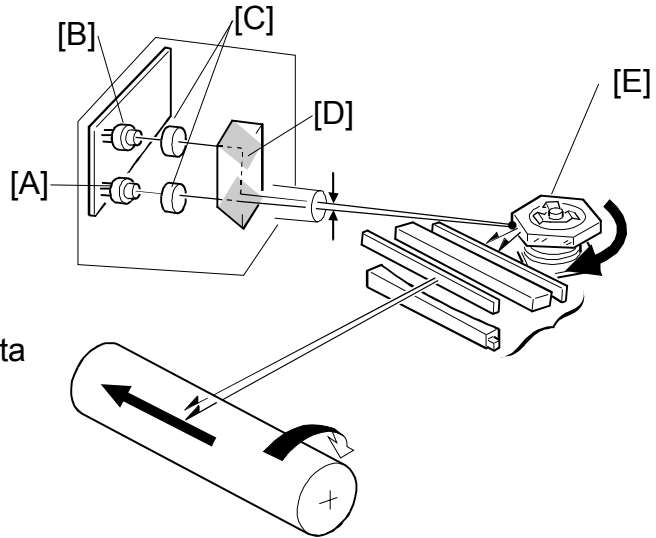
In order to keep the output level constant, the LDDR monitors the electrical current passing through the photodiode (PD). Then it increases or decreases the current to the laser diode as necessary, comparing it with the reference level. This auto power control is done just after the machine is turned on and during printing while the laser diode is active.

The reference levels are adjusted on the production line. Do not touch the variable resistors on the LDDR in the field.

6.6.3 DUAL BEAM WRITING

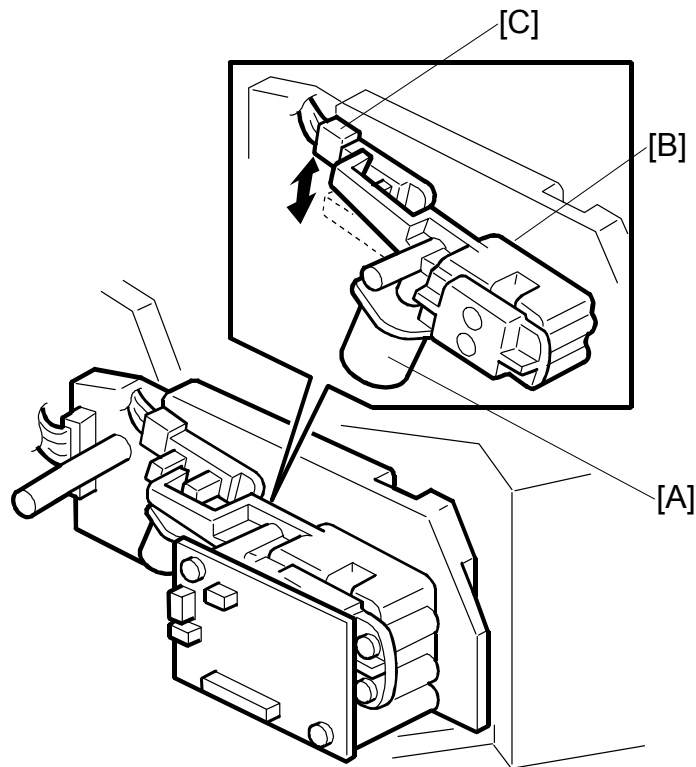
This LD unit employs two laser diodes [A] (LD) and [B] (L2). Each face of the polygon mirror writes two main scan lines, and twelve main scans are produced when the polygon mirror rotates once. This reduces polygon motor rotation speed, reduces noise generated by the polygon motor, and reduces the frequency of the image data clock.

The two laser beams follow the path: collimating lenses [C] → prism [D] → polygon mirror [E]



The two laser beams arrive on the drum surface about 2 mm apart in the main scan direction and about 0.06 mm apart (at 400 dpi) in the sub scan direction. The two-mm difference in the main scan direction allows the machine to detect the laser synchronization signal for each beam.

6.6.4 LASER BEAM PITCH CHANGE MECHANISM

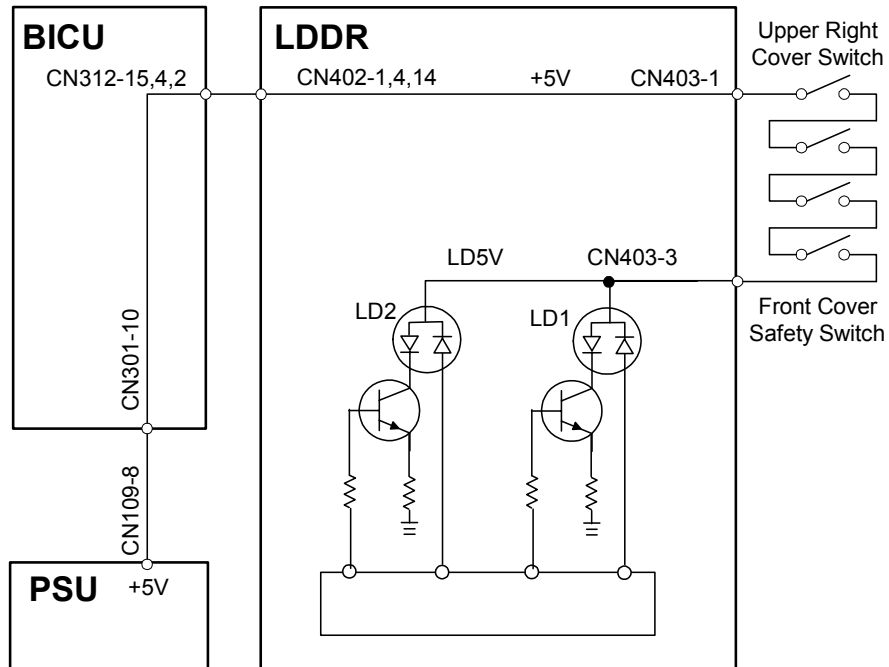


The LD positioning motor [A] moves the LD unit housing [B] up and down and changes the position of L2 (L1 does not move).

Both LD unit positions are at fixed distances from the LD unit home position sensor [C].

Usually, the LD unit moves directly to the proper position. However, when the number of times that the resolution has changed reaches the value of SP2-109-5 (Auto Pitch Adjustment Interval), the LD unit moves to the home position, and this re-calibrates the LD unit positioning mechanism.

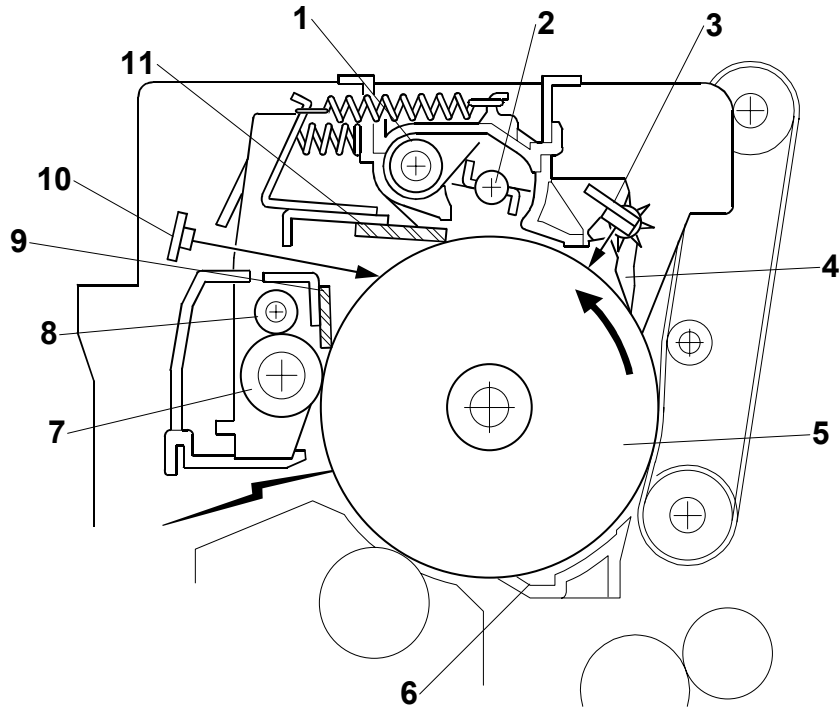
6.6.5 LD SAFETY SWITCHES



To ensure personal safety and to prevent the laser beam from inadvertently switching on during servicing, power to the laser diode is switched off when the front cover or upper right cover is opened. Four safety switches are installed in series on the LD5 V line from the power supply unit (PSU) via the BICU board.

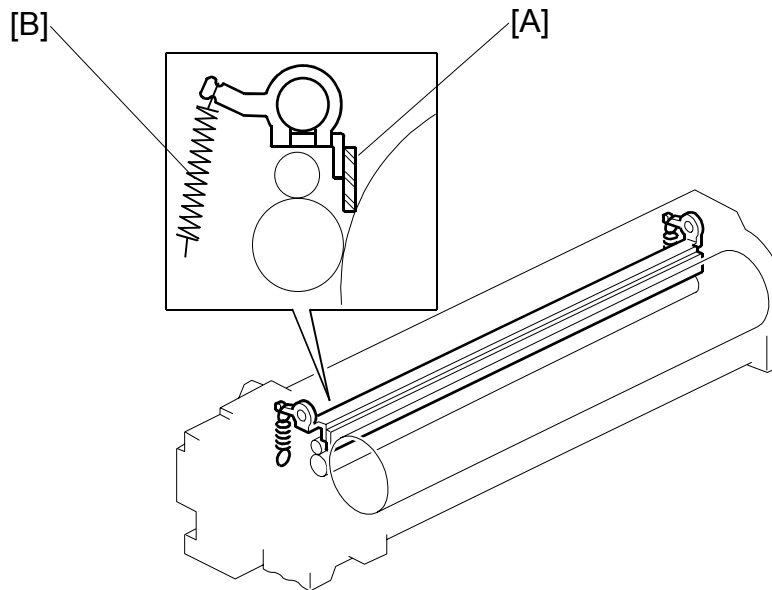
6.7 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

6.7.1 OVERVIEW



1. Toner Collection Coil	7. Charge Roller
2. Toner Collection Plate	8. Charge Roller Cleaning Roller
3. Image Density Sensor	9. Drum Cleaning Blade 2
4. Pick off Pawl	10. Quenching Lamp
5. OPC Drum ($\phi 60$ mm)	11. Drum Cleaning Blade 1
6. Transfer Entrance Guide	

6.7.2 DRUM CLEANING



The PxP (Polyester Polymerization) toner of this machine is of much finer particle size so in addition to the stationary cleaning blade, mounted with two screws at the bottom of the PCU, an additional cleaning blade [A] has been added to increase the efficiency of drum cleaning.

The new cleaning blade is held in contact with the drum by two small springs [B] (one on each end) that keep the cleaning blade in contact with the drum. This cleaning blade is not a counter blade.

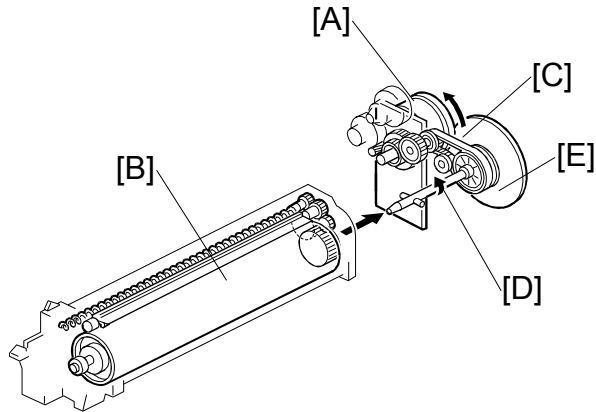
The tension of these springs has been reduced for this model in order to reduce the amount of pressure applied by the blade against the drum.

Every time the PCU is opened for replacement or cleaning, the spring closest to the front of the PCU must be moved in order to retract the cleaning blade away from the OPC drum. After cleaning or replacement, the spring must be returned to its original position to keep the blade in contact with the OPC drum for normal operation. For details, see Section “3 Replacement and Adjustment”.

6.7.3 DRIVE MECHANISM

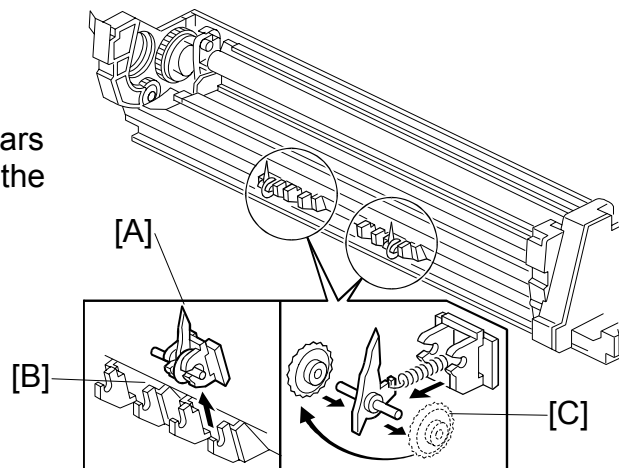
The drive from the main motor [A] is transmitted to the drum [B] through a series of gears, a timing belt [C], and the drum drive shaft [D].

The main motor has a drive controller, which outputs a motor lock signal when the rotation speed is out of the specified range. The flywheel [E] on the end of the drum drive shaft stabilizes the rotation speed (this prevents banding and jitter on copies).



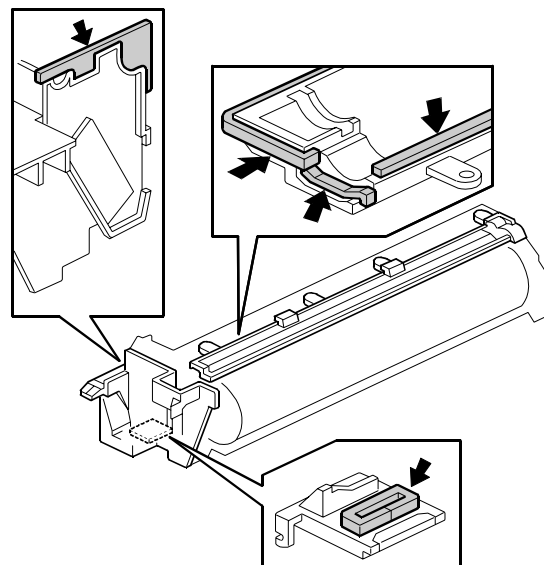
6.7.4 DRUM PAWLS

The pick-off pawls [A], mounted in the holders [B] on the drum and in contact with the drum, strip the paper from the drum if it has not yet separated. The gears [C] are removable, and the positions of the holders can be adjusted.



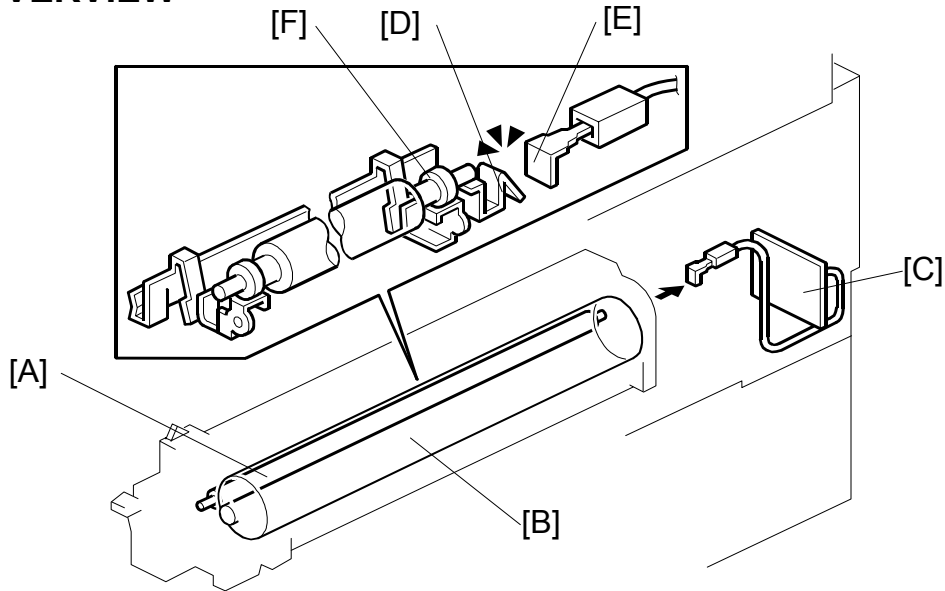
6.7.5 DRUM TONER SEALS

Seals have been added to the structure of the PCU (photoconductor unit) to further prevent toner leakage.



6.8 DRUM CHARGE

6.8.1 OVERVIEW

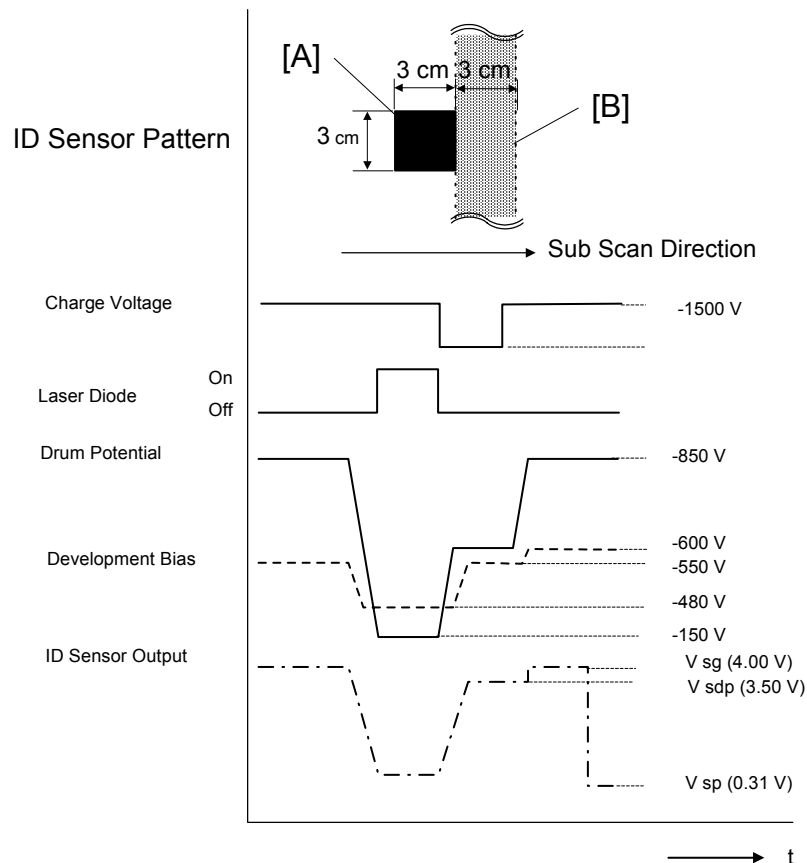


This copier uses a drum charge roller to charge the drum.

The drum charge roller [A] contacts the surface of the drum [B] to give it a negative charge. The high voltage supply board [C] supplies a negative dc voltage to the drum charge roller through the charge roller terminal [D], bias plate [E], and the rear roller bushing [F] to give the drum surface a negative charge of -850V .

6.8.2 CHARGE ROLLER VOLTAGE CORRECTION

Correction for Environmental Conditions



The voltage transferred from roller to drum could vary with the temperature and humidity around the drum charge roller. The lower the temperature or humidity, the higher the applied voltage required.

The ID sensor measures the effects of ambient conditions, and any small change in drum potential caused by changes in temperature/humidity is reflected in the amount of toner transferred to the drum.

This measurement is done immediately after the ID sensor pattern for toner density control. After creating ID sensor pattern [A], another pattern [B] is made. To do this, the LD switches off, the charge roller voltage drops, and the drum potential is reduced to -600V. At the same time, development bias returns to -550V. The drum potential is now slightly higher than the development bias, so only a very small amount of toner transfers to the drum. The ID sensor measures the density of pattern [B], and V_{sdp} , the output voltage, is compared with V_{sg} which was read from the bare drum at the same time.

6.8.3 CORRECTION FOR PAPER WIDTH AND THICKNESS

NOTE: This correction is done for the bypass tray only.

The by-pass tray can be used for non-standard paper narrower than sizes accepted by the paper trays. Thicker paper, OHP sheets, etc. can also be loaded in the by-pass tray but adjustments must be performed with the SP modes listed below in order to avoid jams and copy quality problems.

SP Mode	SP Name	
SP2001 1	Charge Roller Bias Adjustment	Width 216 - 297 mm (Default: -1450 V)
SP2309 1	Paper Lower Width [a]	Width limit (Default: 150 mm)
SP2309 2	Paper Upper Width [b]	Width limit (Default: 216 mm)
SP2914 1	C-alpha	Adjust 10V/step (Default: 150 V)
SP2914 2	C-beta	Adjust 10V/step (Default: 0 V)

The way that these SP modes are used is shown below.

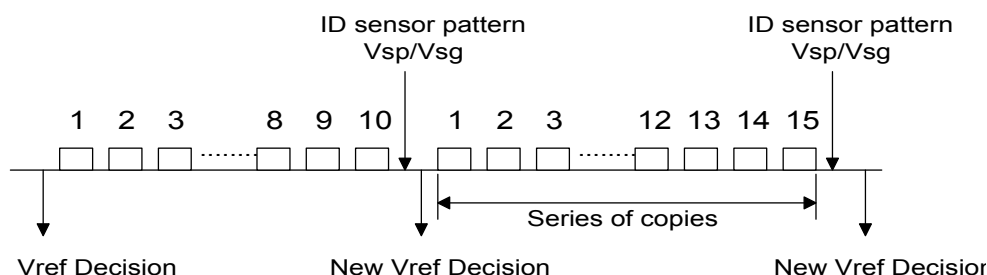
0 mm	SP 2309 1 Default: 150 mm	SP 2309 2 Default: 216 mm	297 mm
Voltage: SP2001 1 + SP2914 1 Default: -1500 + 150 V	Voltage: SP2001 1 + SP2914 2 Default: -1500 + 0 V	Voltage: SP2001 1 Default: -1500 V	

For example, with the default settings, if the paper width fed from the by-pass tray is 200 mm, the charge roller voltage will be -1500 +0 V.

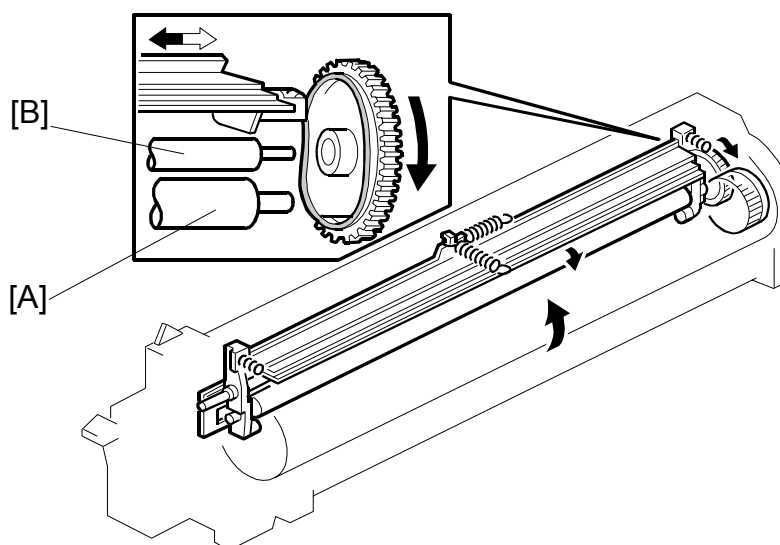
6.8.4 ID SENSOR PATTERN PRODUCTION TIMING

An ID sensor pattern is created after the main machine is powered on, and after finishing a job of 10 or more sheets.

The ID sensor pattern production interval can be adjusted with SP2-210 (ID Sensor Pattern Interval).



6.8.5 DRUM CHARGE ROLLER CLEANING

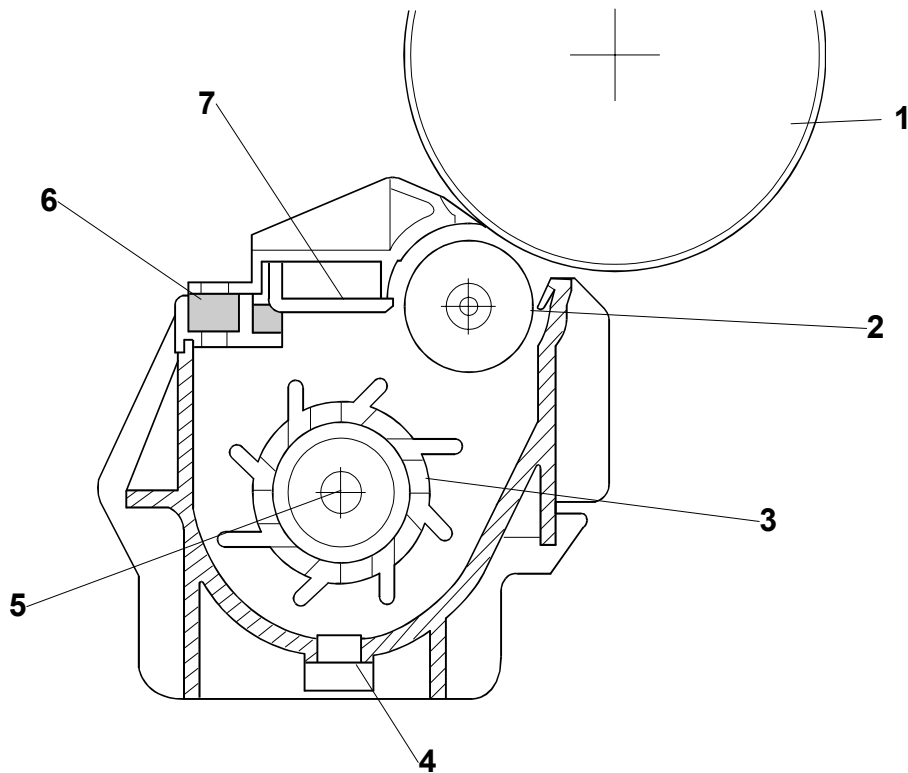


The drum charge roller [A] (always in contact with the drum), gets dirty easily.

The brush roller [B] remains in contact with the charger roller to clean the charge roller.

6.9 DEVELOPMENT

6.9.1 OVERVIEW



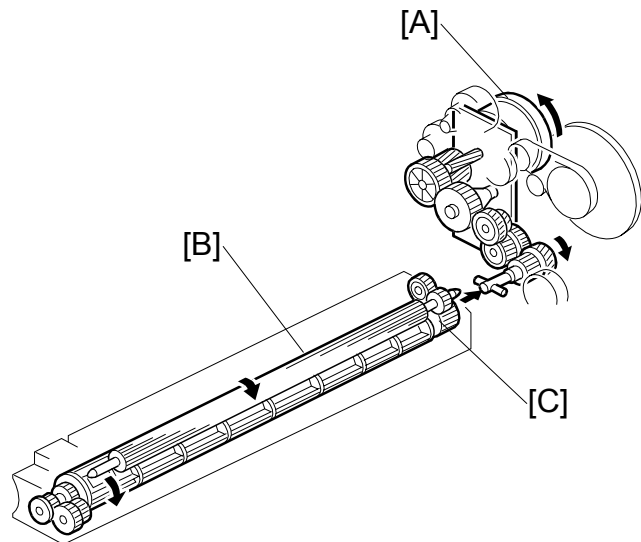
1 Drum	5 Mixing Auger
2 Development Roller	6 Development Filter
3 Paddle Roller	7 Doctor Blade
4 TD Sensor	

6.9.2 DRIVE MECHANISM

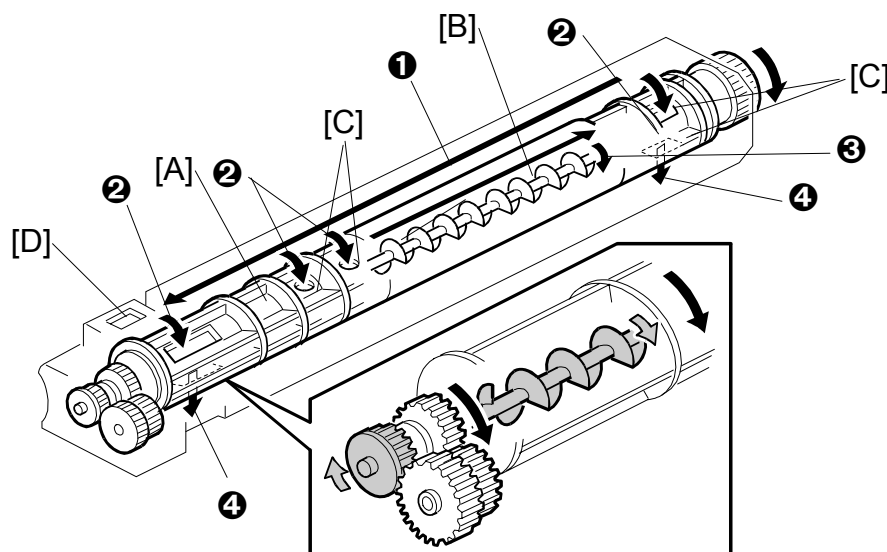
The feed/development motor [A] drives the development roller [B] through the gears and the paddle roller gear [C].

The drive shaft engages and disengages the paddle roller gear when the development unit is inserted into and removed from the machine.

NOTE: The development drive gears are helical gears, quieter than normal gears.



6.9.3 DEVELOPER MIXING



The dual mixing roller consists of the outer paddle [A] and the inner auger [B].

The outer paddle moves developer to the front ① and supplies it to the development roller. Developer that spills off by the doctor blade ② passes through the holes [C] in the outer paddle, and is transported to the rear ③ by the inner auger.

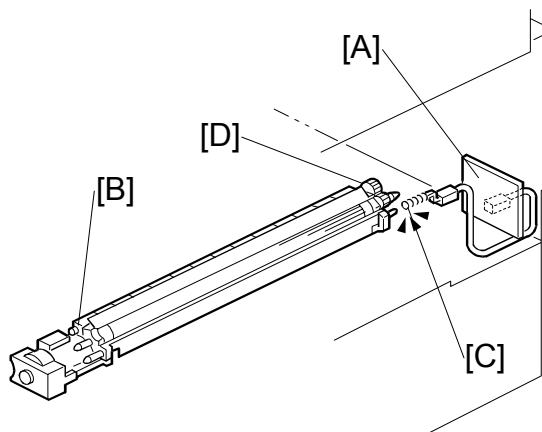
While the dual mixing roller is moving the developer, some developer also passes back to the development unit through the holes in the bottom of the paddle roller ④. New toner from the toner bottle and recycled toner from the toner collection coil both enter the development unit at [D].

6.9.4 DEVELOPMENT BIAS

Mechanism

Black areas of the latent image are at a low negative charge (about -150 V) and white areas are at a high negative charge (about -850 V).

To attract negatively charged toner to the black areas of the latent image on the drum, the high voltage supply board [A] applies a bias of -560 volts to the development roller throughout the image development process. The bias is applied to the development roller shaft [B] through the bias terminal spring [C] and bias terminal [D].



The development bias voltage (-560 V) can be adjusted with SP2-201 (Development Bias).

Correction for paper width and thickness (by-pass tray only)

The by-pass tray can be used for non-standard paper narrow than sizes accepted by the paper trays. Thicker paper, OHP sheets, etc. can also be loaded in the by-pass tray but adjustments must be performed with the SP modes listed below in order to avoid jams and misfeeds.

SP Mode	SP Name	
SP2201 1	Development Bias	Width 216 - 297 mm (Default: -560V)
SP2309 1	Paper Lower Width [a]	Width limit (Default: 150 mm)
SP2309 2	Paper Upper Width [b]	Width limit (Default: 216 mm)
SP2914 3	Process Control Setting ($B\gamma$)	Adjust 10V/step (Default: 200V)
SP2914 4	Process Control Setting ($B\delta$)	Adjust 10V/step (Default: 50V)

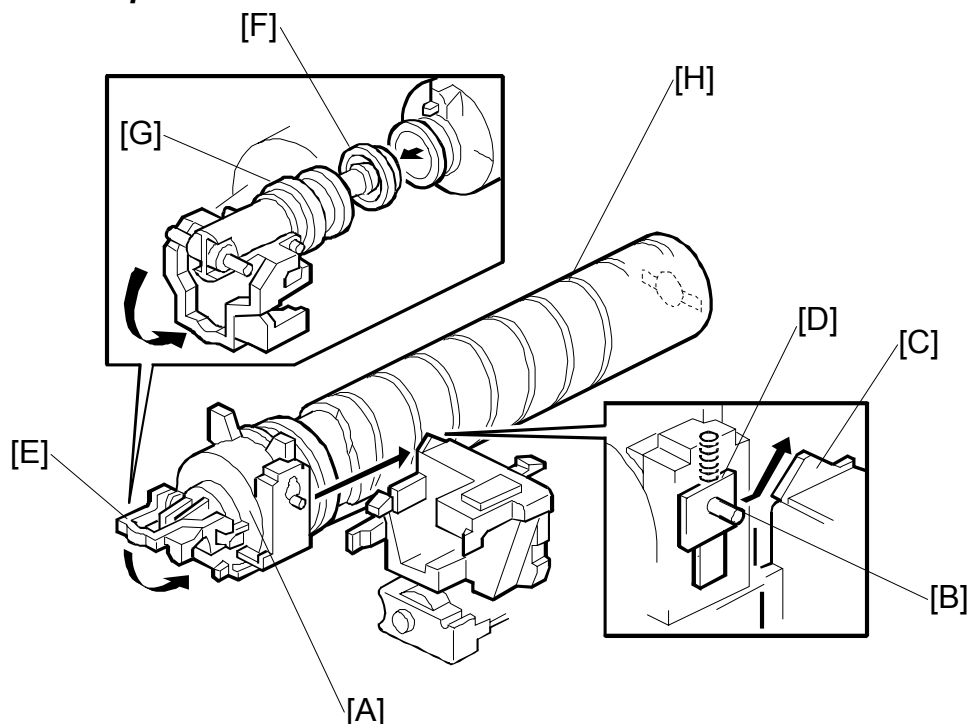
The way that these SP modes are used is shown below.

0 mm	SP 2309 1 Default: 150 mm	SP 2309 2 Default: 216 mm	297 mm
	Voltage: SP2201 1 + SP2914 3 Default: $-560 + 200\text{ V}$	Voltage: SP2201 1 + SP2914 4 Default: $-560 + 50\text{ V}$	Voltage: SP2201 1 Default: -560 V

For example, with the default settings, if the paper width fed from the by-pass tray is 200 mm, the development bias voltage will be $-560 + 50\text{ V}$.

6.9.5 TONER SUPPLY

Toner bottle replenishment mechanism



When the toner bottle is installed in the bottle holder [A], pin [B] slides up the side of the PCU [C], pulling out the toner shutter [D]. When the toner bottle holder lever [E] is returned to its original position, the cap [F] pulls away and is kept in place by the chuck [G].

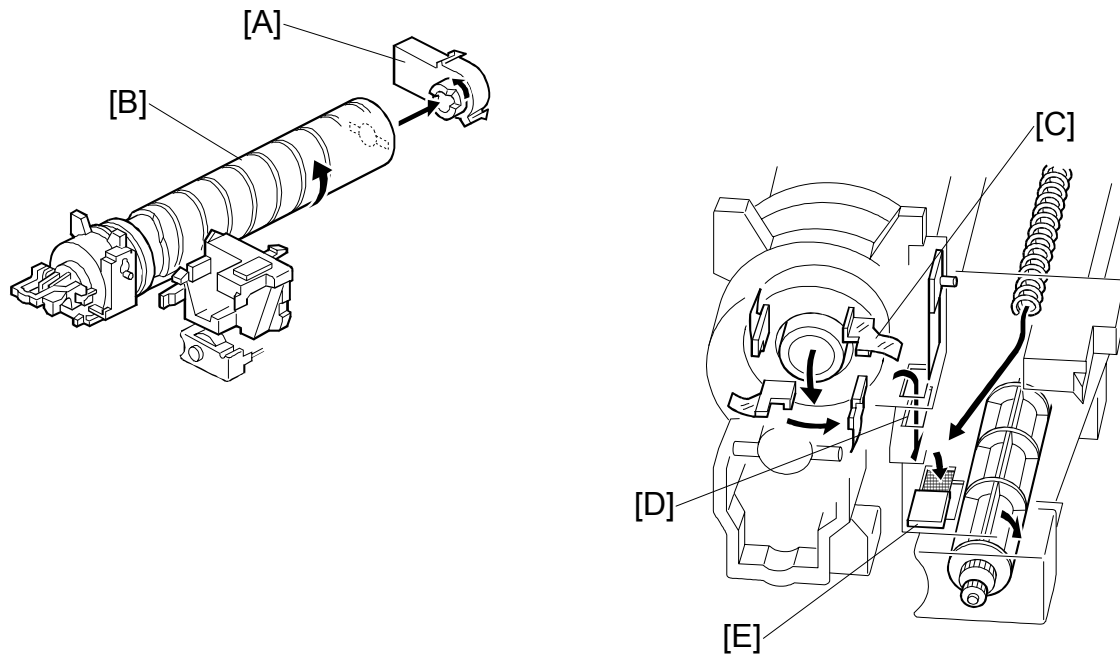
The toner bottle holder lever [E] cannot be lowered:

- Until a toner bottle is installed in the holder. This prevents toner falling out of the holder unit as a result of lowering the handle with no toner bottle installed.
- Until the holder and bottle have been pushed into the machine completely and locked in place. Instruct the customer to always follow the bottle replacement instructions of the new decal attached to the toner bottle.

The toner bottle has a spiral groove [H], which rotates the bottle to move toner to the development unit. When the bottle holder unit is pulled out, the chuck [G] releases the toner bottle cap and the toner shutter [D] closes and blocks the opening.

DEVELOPMENT

Toner supply mechanism



The toner supply motor [A] rotates the toner bottle [B] and the mylar blades [C] (see below).

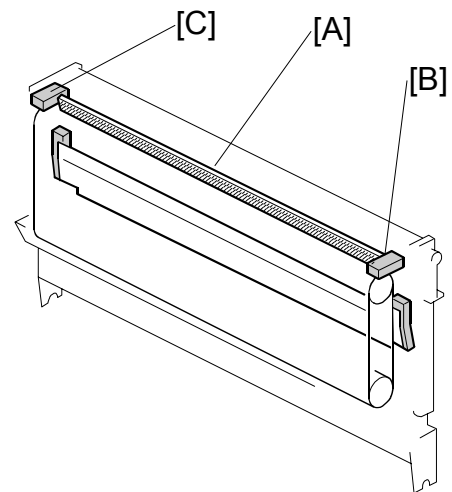
Toner falls into the toner bottle holder, and the toner supply mylar blades [C] transfer the toner to slit [D]. Installing the PCU opens the shutter [E].

The toner falls into the development unit through the port.

The left side of the entrance seal is higher than the right. This improves the efficiency of seal on the left side, especially when the PCU is removed.

Toner Scatter Prevention

To reduce toner scattering, a velvet strip [A] extends across the length of the fusing unit, Seals are attached at each end of the strip [B] and [C].



Toner density control

There are two modes for controlling and maintaining constant toner supply: sensor control (both direct and indirect) and image pixel count control. The mode can be changed with SP2-208-1 (Toner Supply Mode).

NOTE: The factory setting is sensor control mode; image pixel count mode should only be used temporarily until a defective TD or ID sensor can be replaced.

Sensor Control Mode

In the sensor control mode, the amount of toner required to print the page is calculated by the CPU; it adds up the image data value of each pixel and converts the sum to a value between 0 and 255. (255 would mean a completely black page.)

The machine must vary toner supply for each copy in order to maintain the correct amount of toner in the developer and to account for changes in drum reflectivity due to changes in temperature and humidity. The CPU uses data from the TD sensor and ID sensor to determine whether or not the toner supply motor should be switched on and to calculate how long it should remain on in order to supply more toner to the mixture in the development unit.

TD Sensor. When new developer of standard toner concentration is installed, namely 20 g of toner per 500 g of developer (4.0% by weight), the TD sensor must be set to its initial setting of 4.0V with SP2-801. This initial setting is used as the toner supply reference voltage or V_{ref} . For every copy cycle, the TD sensor directly checks the toner density in the developer mixture, and after 10 copies these 10 readings are averaged and this value becomes TD sensor output voltage $V_t(10)$.

The machine compares $V_t(10)$ with V_{ref} . If $V_t(10)$ is greater than V_{ref} , the toner concentration in the development unit judged to be low. When $V_t(10)$ is detected to be greater than V_{ref} 20 times, then this indicates that the toner concentration is consistently low, V_{ref} is incremented by 0.1V, and the conditions are checked again. The result of this check determines the value of K , the toner supply rate coefficient, which is one of the factors that is used in the toner supply motor on-time calculation.

ID Sensor. In addition to comparing $V_t(10)$ from the TD sensor and V_{ref} , after every 10 copies the ID sensor, located at the lower right area of the drum, checks both the reflectivity (V_{sg}) and the pattern on the drum (V_{sp}), created by the laser diodes and charge roller. If the reflected light is too strong, this indicates that toner is low and toner is added to the development unit. (The frequency of these checks can be adjusted with SP2-210 (ID Sensor Pattern Interval).

Image Pixel Count Mode

This mode should only be used only as a temporary measure while waiting for replacement parts, such as a TD sensor. This mode controls the toner supply amount using the same method for determining the toner bottle motor on time. However, the values that were in effect when the toner density control mode was changed over to image pixel count mode with SP2-208-1 (Toner Supply Mode) remain in effect and cannot be changed.

6.9.6 TONER NEAR END/END DETECTION

Toner Near End

The machine triggers the toner near-end alert and starts to rotate the toner supply bottle when either of the following two conditions occur.

- The machine detects (1) the toner supply rate (amount of toner supplied per second set with SP2209 1) drops to 25, (2) the current output of the TD sensor (V_t) has dropped below the target value after 40 samples, and then (3) still fails to detect the target V_t after an additional 40 samples.
- The machine determines that the toner density is too light after it detects that (1) the difference between V_{ref} (the TD sensor reference voltage) and the averaged density of the previous 10 copies is more than 0.2V, and (2) V_{sp} (the reflectivity of the ID sensor pattern) is greater than 0.7V.

Toner End

After the machine enters the toner near-mode, it will trigger the toner end alert if any of the conditions below continue to exist:

- TD sensor output does not reach the target value within 90 copies after the toner near-end alert ("90" is the default setting for SP2213).
- The ID sensor output from reading the ID sensor pattern (V_{sp}) is extremely low (light).
- The averaged TD sensor output V_t exceeds 0.15V.

6.9.7 TONER END RECOVERY

If the front door is opened and then closed while a toner near end/end condition exists, the machine will attempt to recover. When the front door is closed, the toner supply motor turns on to supply toner. The machine checks the TD sensor output 2 seconds after the main motor turns on (V_{tp}), and the sensor is checked again every 1 second (V_{tp}^1)

The machine detects the toner concentration using V_{ref} , V_t (10), V_{tp} , and V_{tp}^1 . If the toner concentration is still too low, the toner supply motor remains on for another 10 seconds while the machine checks V_t . If toner concentration is judged to be at the standard level, then the toner near end/end condition is cancelled and K (toner supply coefficient) is reset. If toner concentration has not reached the standard level, the toner supply motor rotates continuously until it does (maximum motor on time is 16 seconds) and then it will switch off.

6.9.8 TONER SUPPLY WITH ABNORMAL SENSORS

The TD sensor is checked every copy. If the readings from the TD sensor become abnormal during a copy job, the machine holds the GAIN factor constant (GAIN is normally calculated from TD sensor readings) to allow toner supply to vary with only pixel count for the rest of the copy job. Then at the end of the copy job, an SC code is generated and the machine must be repaired.

The ID sensor is checked every 10 copies. If readings become abnormal, an SC code is generated and the machine must be repaired. If this happens during a copy job, V_{ref} is not changed, the copy job is allowed to finish, and then the SC code is generated.

If spare parts are not available, the technician can use SP2-208 to temporarily put the machine in image pixel count mode. (☛ Chapter 5 Service Tables)

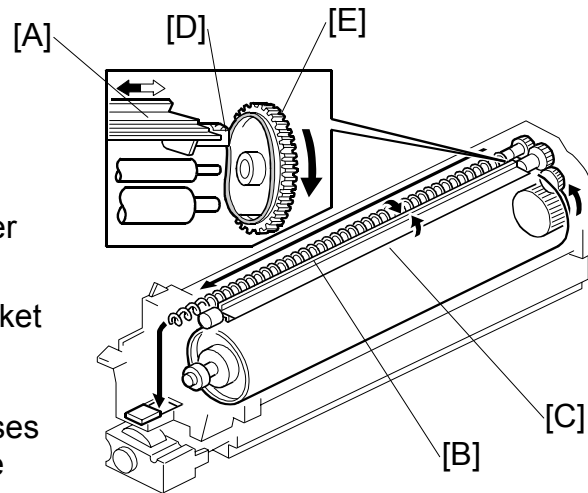
6.10 DRUM CLEANING AND TONER RECYCLING

6.10.1 DRUM CLEANING

This machine employs a counter blade system. After the image is transferred to paper, a cleaning blade [A] removes any toner remaining on the drum. The toner collection coil [B] carries scraped off toner to the toner collection plate [C].

The collar [D] on the cleaning blade bracket contacts the outer rim of cam gear [E], which moves the cleaning blade side to side. This side-to-side movement disperses accumulated toner to prevent early blade edge wear at one location.

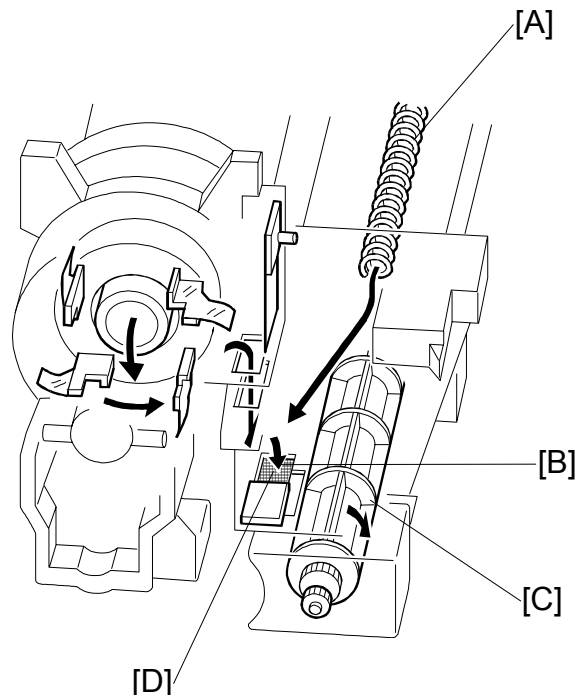
The drum reverses about 5 mm after every print job to remove particles on the edge of the cleaning blade.



6.10.2 TONER RECYCLING

Toner collected by the toner collection coil [A] is transported to the opening [B]. This toner falls into the development unit with new toner coming from the toner bottle. The paddle roller [C] mixes the collected toner with the new toner.

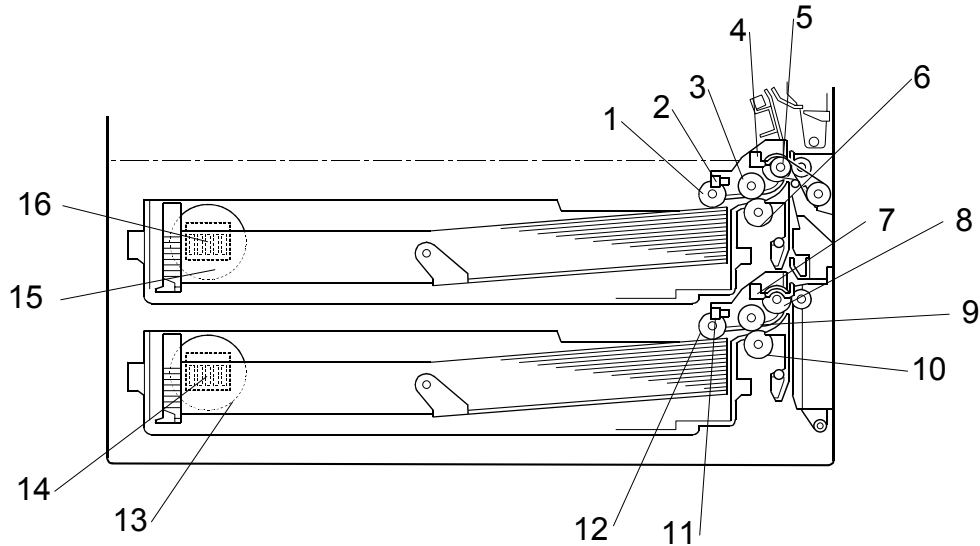
NOTE: A screen filter [D] has been added to strain out paper dust and other foreign matter.



Detailed
Descriptions

6.11 PAPER FEED

6.11.1 OVERVIEW



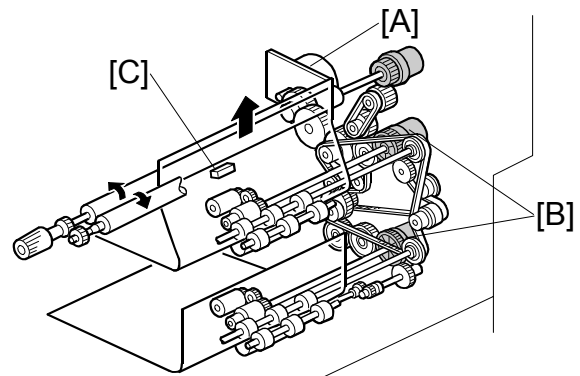
1 Upper pick-up roller	9 Lower paper feed roller
2 Upper paper height sensor	10 Lower separation roller
3 Upper paper feed roller	11 Lower paper height sensor
4 Upper relay sensor	12 Lower pick-up roller
5 Upper relay roller	13 Lower paper size dial
6 Upper separation roller	14 Lower paper size switch
7 Lower relay sensor	15 Upper paper size dial
8 Lower relay roller	16 Upper paper size switch

Each paper tray, which employs the FRR system, can hold 500 sheets. Two relay sensors, positioned above each set of relay rollers, detect paper jams. A selection dial allows you to select the setting for the size of the paper loaded in the tray.

6.11.2 PAPER FEED DRIVE

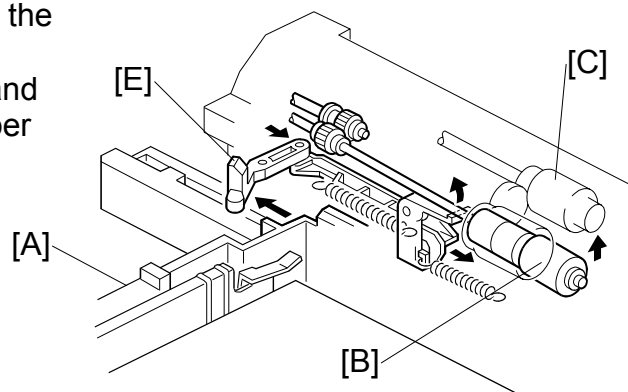
The feed/development motor [A] drives the pick-up and feed mechanism of both the upper and second paper feed stations through gears and the paper feed clutches [B].

When the paper feed clutch turns on, the pick-up roller, paper feed roller, and separation roller start rotating to feed the paper. The paper feed clutch stays on until shortly after the registration sensor [C] actuates.

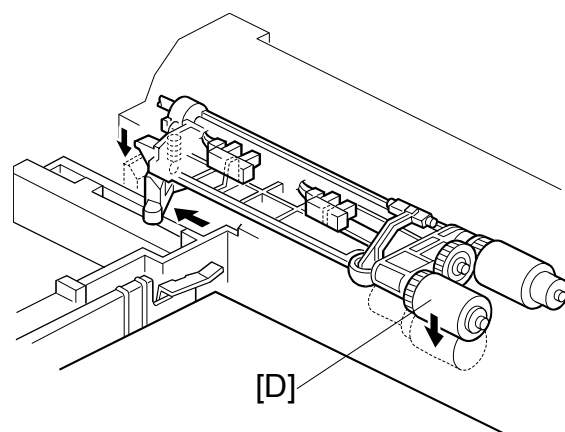


6.11.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION ROLLER RELEASE MECHANISM

When the paper tray [A] is not inside the machine, the separation roller [B] is away from the paper feed roller [C] and the pick-up roller [D] stays in the upper position.

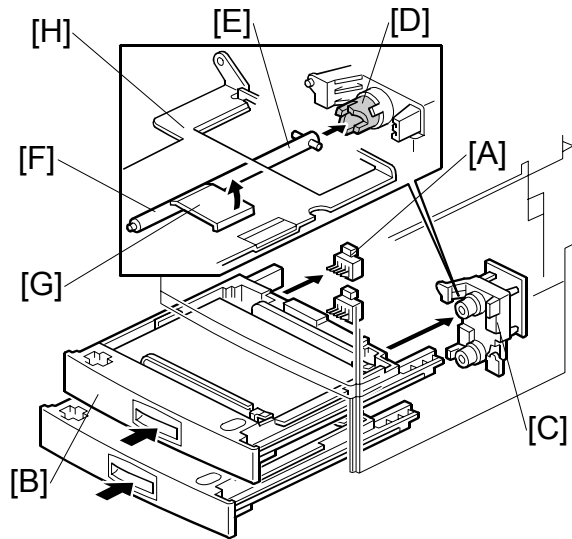


When the paper tray is set into the machine, it pushes the release lever [E]. This causes the pick-up roller [D] to go down and the separation roller [B] to move up and contact the paper feed roller.

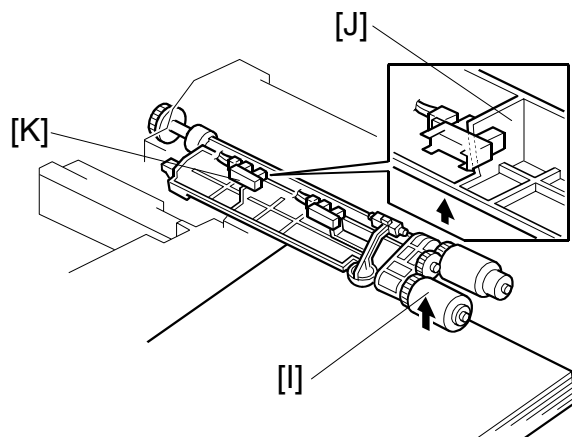


6.11.4 PAPER LIFT

The paper size switch [A] detects when the paper tray [B] is set in the machine, and the tray lift motor [C] rotates, and the coupling gear [D] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [E] on the lift arm shaft [F]. Then the tray lift arm [G] lifts the tray bottom plate [H].



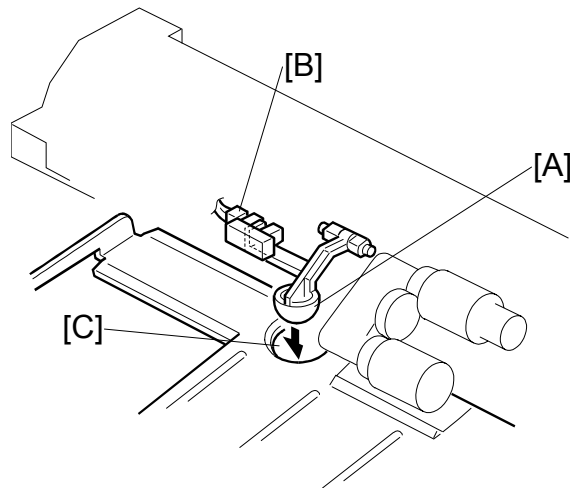
When the paper tray is set in the machine, the pick-up roller [I] lowers. When the top sheet of paper reaches the proper height for paper feed, the paper pushes up the pick-up roller, and the actuator [J] on the pick-up roller supporter activates the paper height sensor [K] to stop the tray lift motor.



After several paper feed cycles, the paper level gradually lowers and the paper height sensor is de-activated. The tray lift motor turns on again until this sensor is activated again.

When the paper tray is removed from the machine, the tray lift motor coupling gear disengages the pin on the lift arm shaft, and the tray bottom plate then drops under its own weight.

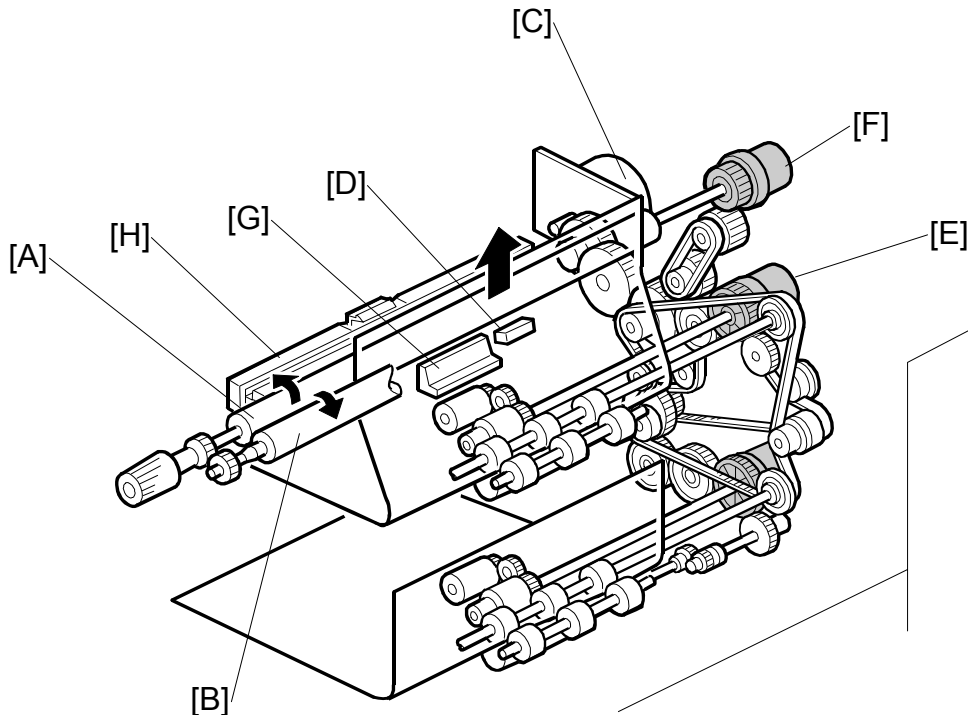
6.11.5 PAPER END DETECTION



If there is paper in the paper tray, the paper end feeler [A] is raised by the paper stack, and the paper end sensor [B] is deactivated.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler drops into the cutout [C] in the tray bottom plate and the paper end sensor is activated.

6.11.6 PAPER REGISTRATION



The registration drive roller [A] and idle roller [B] correct the skew of the paper to ensure that the leading edge of the paper is positioned correctly at the drum. The paper feed/development motor [C] drives the registration mechanism.

The registration sensor [D] is positioned just before the registration rollers. When the leading edge activates the registration sensor, the registration clutch is switched off and the registration rollers stop turning. However, the relay clutch [E] remains on slightly longer. This delay allows more time for the paper to press against the registration rollers and buckle slightly to correct any skew. The registration sensor also detects misfeeds.

Next, the registration clutch [F] and the relay clutch actuates at the correct time to align the paper with the image on the drum. The registration rollers then feeds the paper to the image transfer section.

Two new dust blades have been added around the registration roller. The idle roller dust blade [G] cleans the registration idle roller. This dust blade has a small dust box that collects paper dust that must be emptied periodically.

The registration roller dust blade [H] cleans the registration roller. For details about how to remove and clean these new parts, see Section “3 Replacement and Adjustment”.

6.11.7 PAPER SIZE DETECTION

The paper size switch includes four microswitches. Actuators behind the paper size dial actuate the switches.

Each paper size has its own actuator, with a unique combination of notches. To determine the paper size, the CPU reads which switches the actuator had turned off.

The CPU disables paper feed from a tray if the paper size cannot be detected. If the paper size actuator is broken, or if there is no tray installed, the printer control board recognizes that the paper tray is not installed.

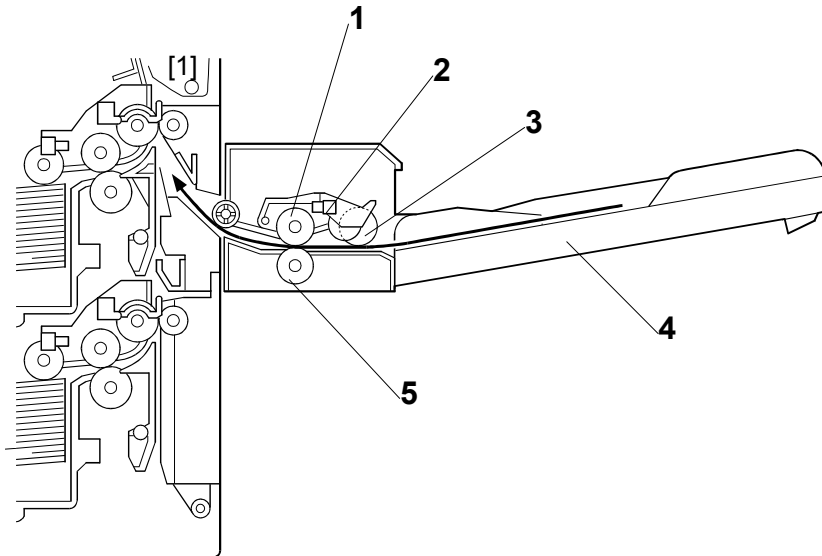
When the paper size actuator is at the “*” mark, the paper tray can be set up to accommodate one of a wider range of paper sizes by using one of the user tools on the machine’s operation panel.

Models		Paper Size Switch			
North America	Europe/Asia	1	2	3	4
8 1/2" x 13" Portrait	A3 Portrait	ON	ON	OFF	ON
A4 Landscape	A4 Landscape	ON	ON	ON	ON
A4 Portrait	A4 Portrait	ON	OFF	ON	ON
11" x 17" Portrait	A5 Portrait	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
8 1/2" x 14" Portrait	8" x 13" Portrait	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
8 1/2" x 11" Portrait	8 1/2" x 11" Portrait	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
8 1/2" x 11" Landscape	8 1/2" x 11" Landscape	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
*	*	ON	ON	ON	OFF

ON: Pushed OFF: Not Pushed

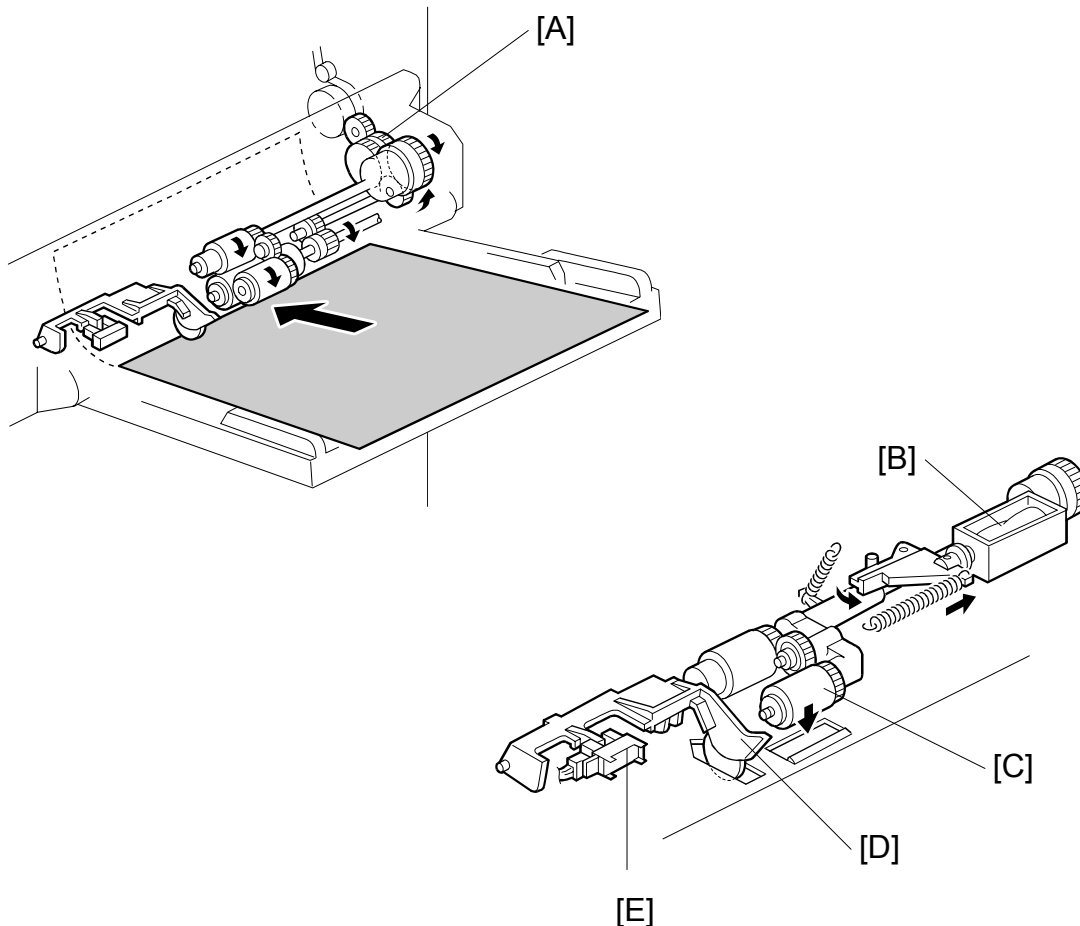
6.12 BY-PASS TRAY

6.12.1 OVERVIEW



1	Paper feed roller
2	Paper end sensor
3	Pick-up roller
4	By-pass tray
5	Separation roller

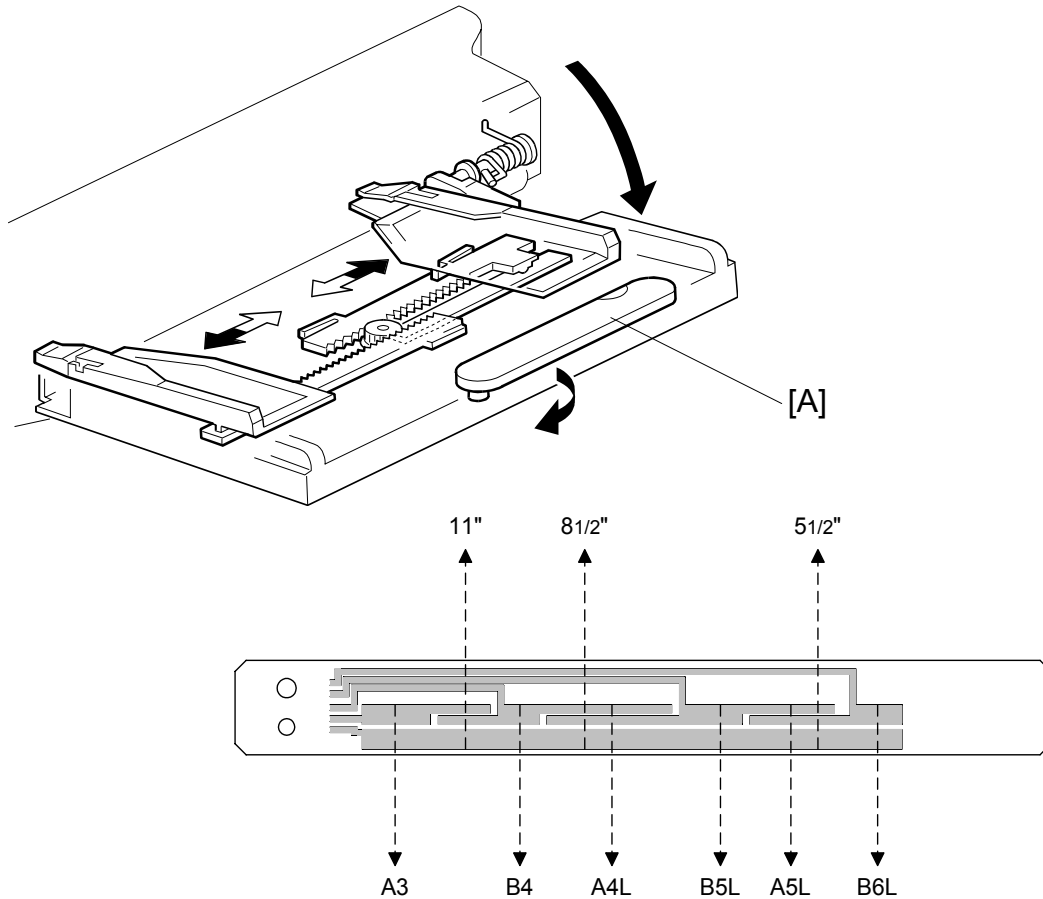
6.12.2 BY-PASS TRAY OPERATION



The by-pass unit is directly driven by the copier through gear [A].

When the print key is pressed, the pick-up solenoid [B] turns on and the pick-up roller [C] moves onto the paper. When the by-pass tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler [D] drops into the cutout in the by-pass tray and the paper end sensor [E] is activated.

6.12.3 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE DETECTION

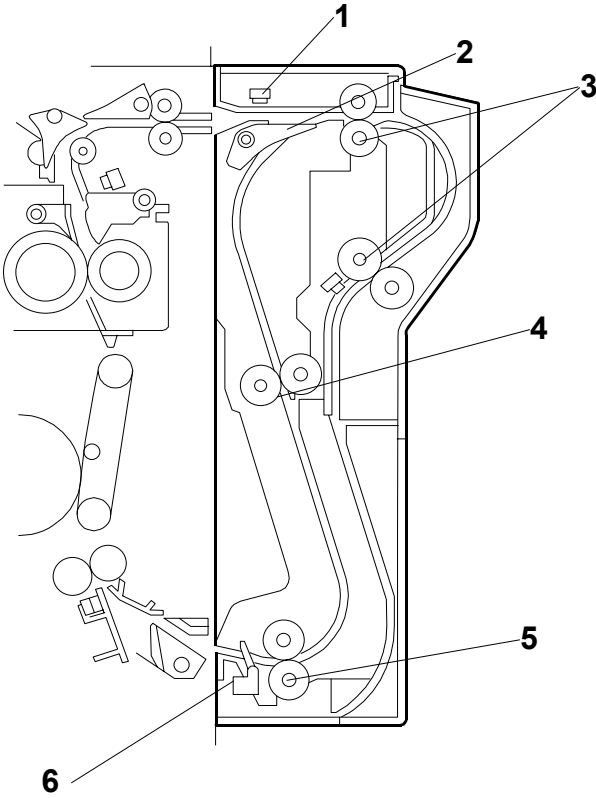


The paper size sensor board [A] monitors the paper width.

The rear side fence is connected to the terminal plate. The pattern for each paper width is unique. Therefore, the copier determines which paper has been placed in the by-pass tray by the signal output from the board. However, the copier does not determine the paper length from the by-pass tray hardware.

6.13 DUPLEX UNIT

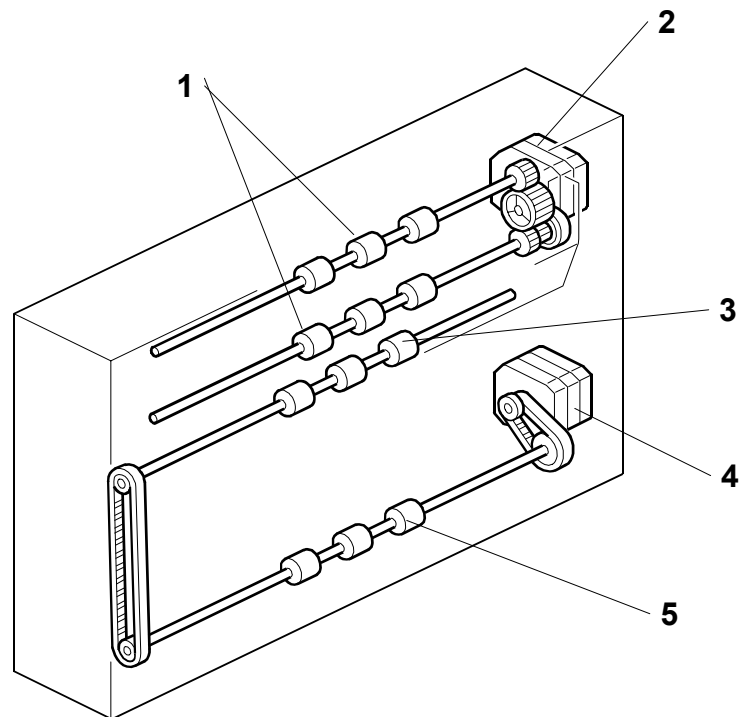
6.13.1 OVERVIEW



1	Entrance sensor	4	Upper transport roller
2	Inverter gate	5	Lower transport roller
3	Inverter roller	6	Exit sensor

Detailed
Descriptions

6.13.2 DUPLEX DRIVE LAYOUT



1	Inverter roller	4	Transport motor
2	Inverter motor	5	Lower transport roller
3	Upper transport roller		

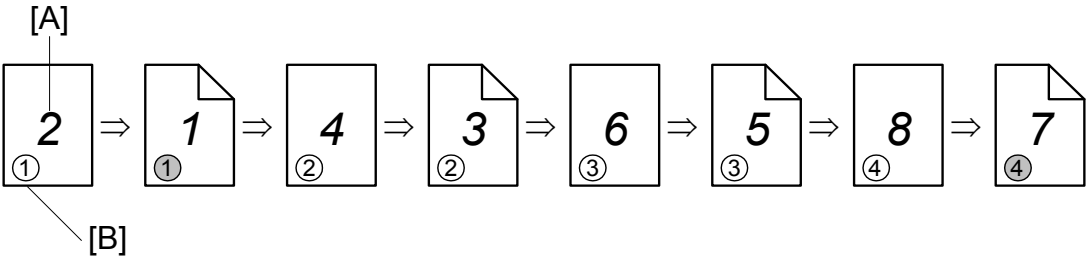
6.13.3 DUPLEX BASIC OPERATION

To increase the productivity of the duplex unit, copies are printed as follows.

Longer than A4 lengthwise/LT lengthwise

The duplex unit can store only one sheet of copy paper.

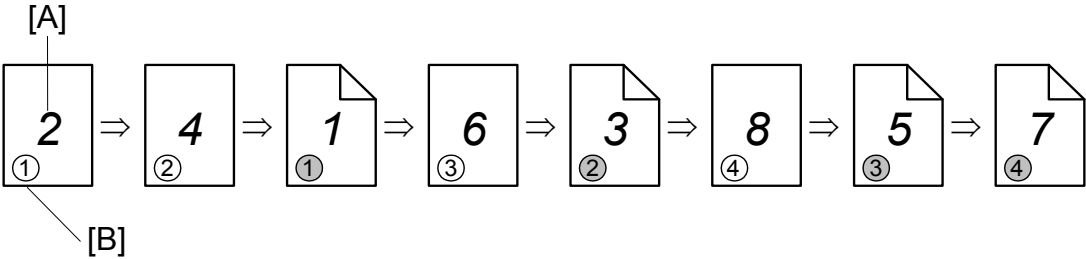
Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of copy paper (if shaded, this indicates the second side).



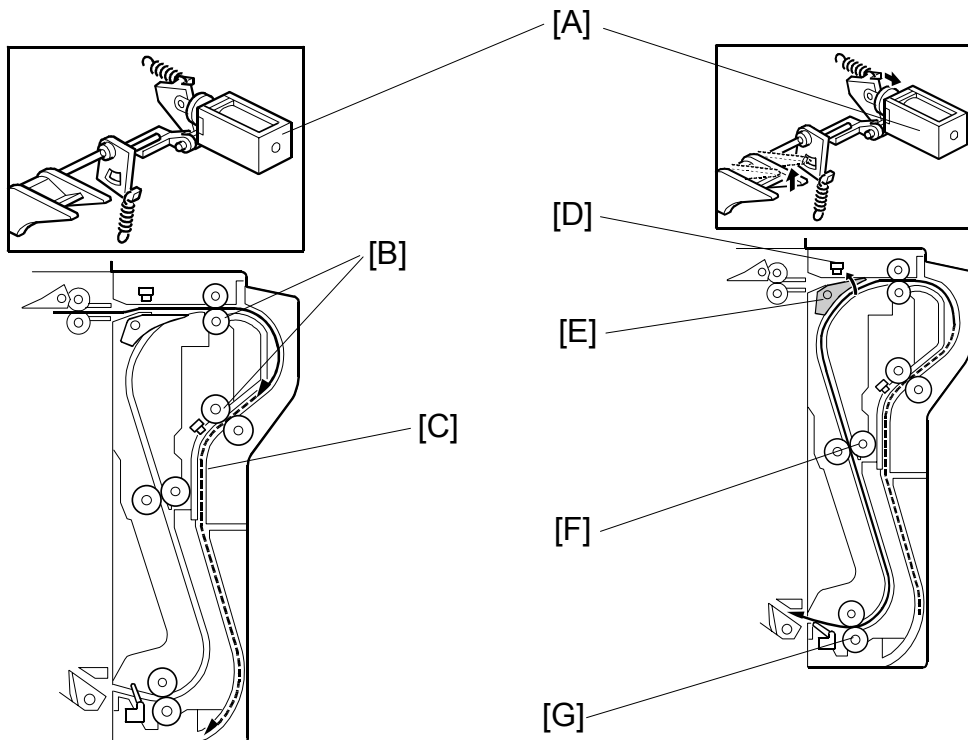
Up to A4 lengthwise/LT lengthwise

The duplex unit can store two sheets of copy paper

Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of copy paper (if shaded, this indicates the second side).



6.13.4 DUPLEX UNIT FEED IN AND EXIT MECHANISM



Feed-in

The inverter gate solenoid [A] stays off and the inverter rollers [B] rotate clockwise. A sheet of paper is sent to the inverter section [C].

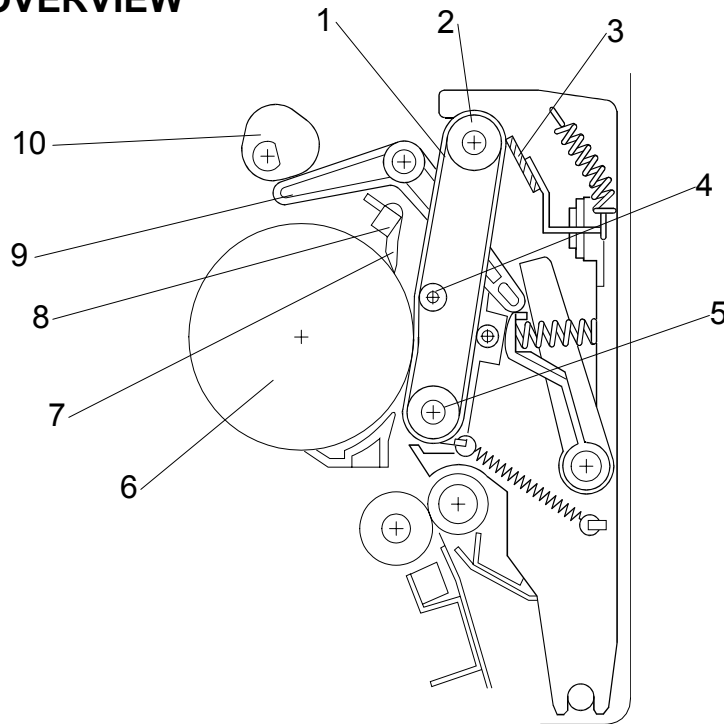
NOTE: The cover guide has been eliminated in order to accommodate paper sizes longer than A4/LT in the reverse feed path which has been lengthened in the design of this machine.

Inversion and Exit

The inverter gate solenoid turns on and the inverter motor turns on in reverse shortly after the trailing edge of the paper passes through the entrance sensor [D]. As a result, the inverter gate [E] is opened and the inverter roller rotates counterclockwise. The paper is sent to the copier through the upper and lower transport rollers [F, G].

6.14 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION

6.14.1 OVERVIEW



1 Transfer belt	6 OPC
2 Drive roller	7 Pick-off pawls
3 Transfer belt cleaning blade	8 ID sensor
4 Transfer roller	9 Contact lever
5 Idle roller	10 Transfer belt contact clutch/cam

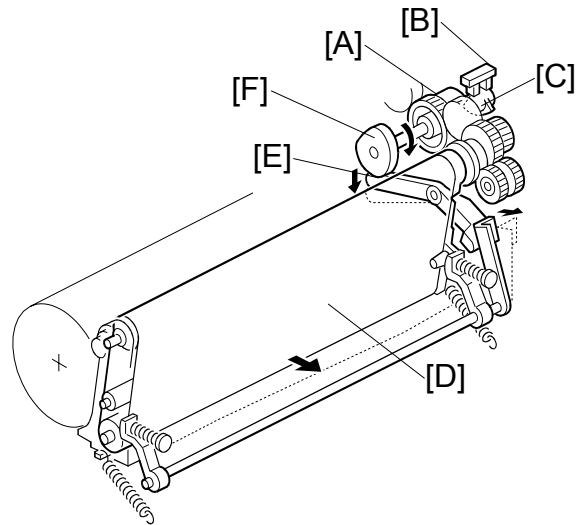
6.14.2 BELT DRIVE MECHANISM

After the main motor switches on during copying, the transfer belt contact clutch [A] switches on after a specified interval and the cam [F] makes a half-turn to raise the contact lever [E] to bring the transfer belt [D] into contact with the drum.

The actuator [C], on the same axis as the cam, and the transfer belt position sensor [B] detects whether the drum and transfer belt are in contact.

When the main motor is off, or when the ID sensor pattern is being measured, the transfer belt unit separates from the drum.

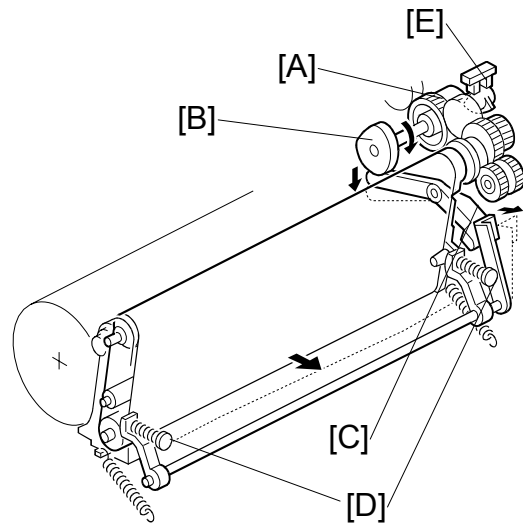
The ID sensor pattern must not be transferred to the belt. Also, the transfer belt and drum must not remain in contact for too long, to prevent contamination of the drum with oil or other foreign material from the transfer belt.



6.14.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT CONTACT MECHANISM

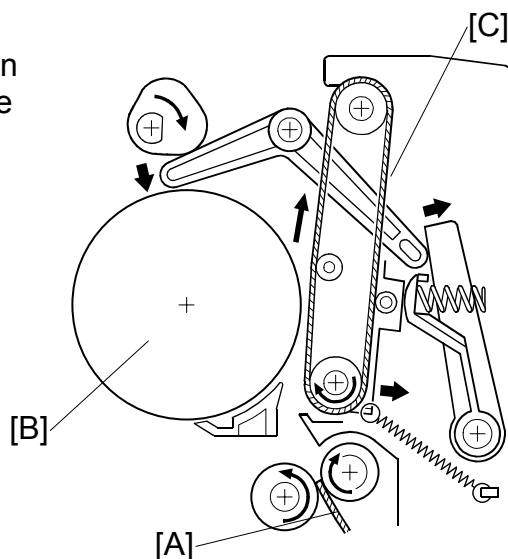
The belt contact and release mechanism consists of the belt contact clutch [A], cam [B], and contact lever [C]. The belt contact clutch turns on and the cam attached to the clutch rotates half a complete rotation. The contact lever, riding on the cam, is lifted up and the springs [D] push the belt into contact with the drum.

The transfer belt position sensor [E] detects the home position of the cam (this is when the belt is away from the drum). The belt must be released from the drum between copy jobs in order to prevent the ID sensor pattern from being rubbed off and to prevent contamination of the drum from the surface of the belt.

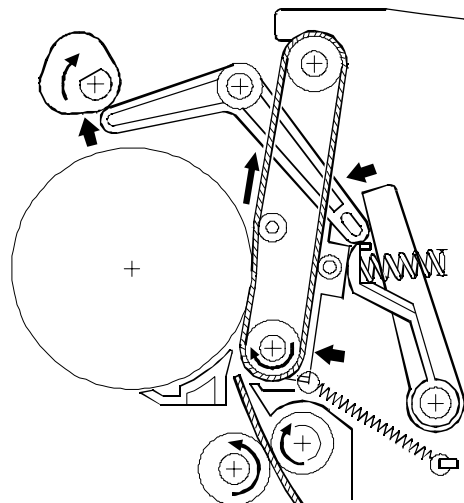


6.14.4 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION MECHANISM

When the registration clutch switches on to align the leading edge of the paper [A] with the image on the drum [B], the transfer belt [C] is away from the drum.

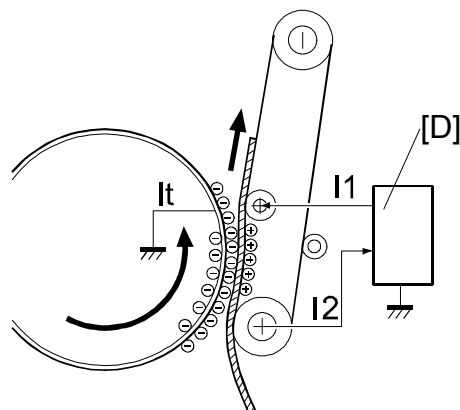


At the designated time after the main motor switches on, the transfer belt contact clutch switches on and the transfer belt touches the drum.



When the paper enters the gap between the belt and the drum, the high voltage supply board [D] applies a high positive current to the belt to transfer the image to the paper.

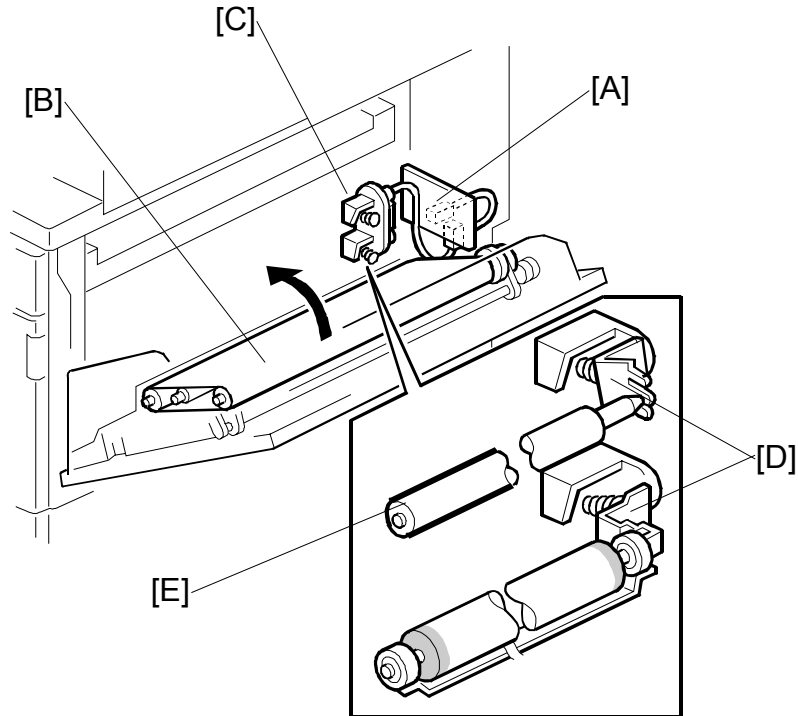
After receiving the image from the drum, the paper is fed by the belt. The paper moves to the end of the transfer belt unit, where it separates from the belt as the belt curves away. Then the paper moves on to the fusing unit.



Detailed
Descriptions

6.14.5 TRANSFER BELT CHARGE

Mechanism



The high voltage supply board [A] applies a positive current to the transfer belt [B] through the terminal block [C], terminal plate [D], and the bias roller [E].

The high voltage supply board adjusts the current to the roller to keep a small but constant current flow to ground through the belt, paper, and drum. If this current is not kept constant, efficiency of toner transfer and paper separation will vary with paper thickness, type, environmental condition, or changes in transfer belt surface resistance.

Correction for paper width and thickness

A range of SP modes is available in order to adjust the machine so it can handle papers of non-standard size and thickness.

For paper width, there are two thresholds. The factory settings are 150 mm (5.9") and 216 mm (8.5"). Below 216 mm, the transfer current can be increased. By default, the current is multiplied by 1.2 for the main machine paper trays. For paper widths below 150 mm, the transfer current can be set higher, but by default it is kept the same as the current for paper widths below 216 mm. The higher current allows for the tendency of the current to flow directly from the transfer belt to the drum and not through the paper which could cause an insufficient amount of toner to transfer to narrow width paper.

Thick paper must be fed from the by-pass tray because SP modes are available only for the by-pass tray in order to accommodate thick paper. By default, the current for paper narrower than 216 mm is 1.5 times the normal current.

This illustration shows the SP modes, which control these currents. The base transfer current ('current' in the diagram) depends on SP 2-301. This is different for various parts of the image, and is different for the by-pass tray; see the next page for details.

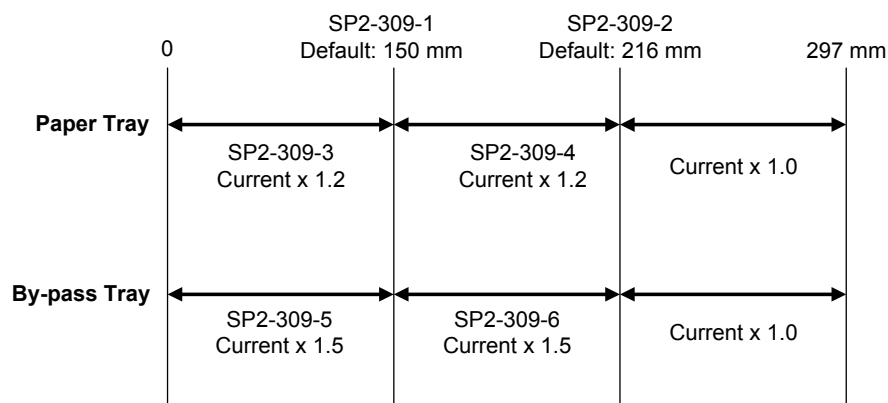


IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION

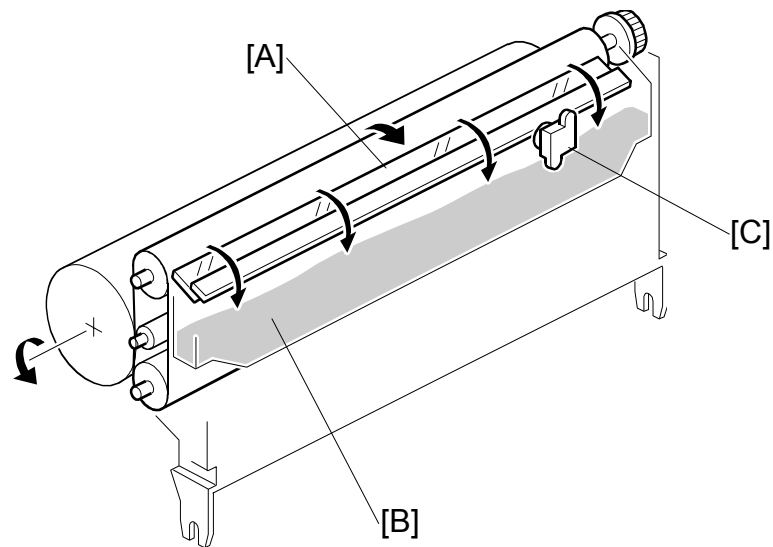
Currents applied to leading edge, image areas - by-pass feed

Transfer current can also be adjusted for the leading edge and the image area, and for by-pass feed. The timing for starting to apply leading edge current, for the switchover from leading edge current to image area current, and for switching off at the trailing edge can also be changed.

The table below lists the SP modes you can use to adjust these settings.

SP2-301 Transfer Current Adjustment		
Image areas	SP2-301-1	1st Side of Paper
	SP2-301-2	2nd Side of Paper
	SP2-301-4	By-pass Feed
Leading edge areas	SP2-301-3	Leading Edge
	SP2-301-5	Leading Edge By-pass Feed
SP2-911 Transfer Current Timing		
Timing	SP2-911-1	On Timing (at leading edge)
	SP2-911-2	Switch Timing (from leading edge to image area current)
	SP2-911-3	Off Timing (at trailing edge)

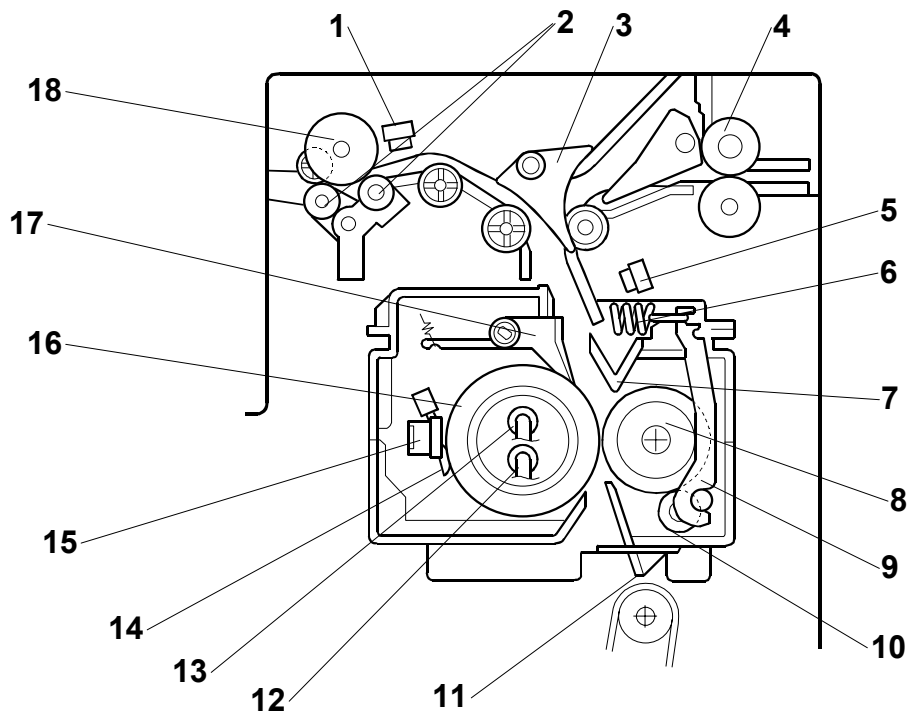
6.14.6 TRANSFER BELT CLEANING MECHANISM



The cleaning blade [A], always in contact with the transfer belt, scrapes off toner and paper dust remaining on the transfer belt.

Scraped off toner and paper dust falls into the toner collection tank [B] in the transfer belt unit. This toner is not recycled. When the toner overflow sensor [C] detects toner overflow, the toner overflow indicator lights. Up to 999 copies can be made before the toner overflow condition shuts down the machine.

6.15 IMAGE FUSING AND PAPER EXIT

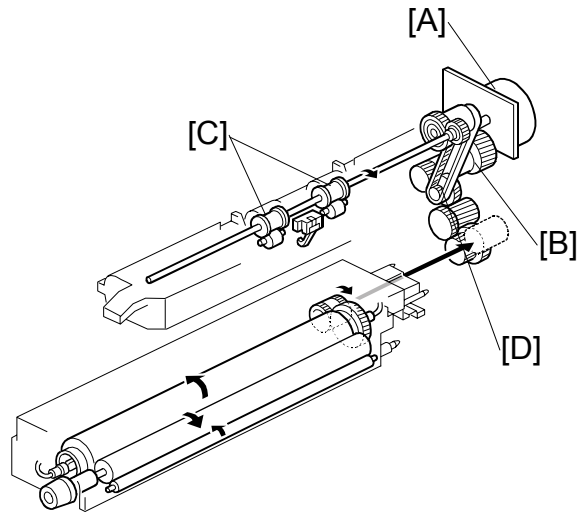


6.15.1 OVERVIEW

1 Paper exit sensor	10 Cleaning roller
2 De-curler rollers	11 Entrance guide
3 Junction gate	12 Fusing lamp (center)
4 Idle roller (duplex unit)	13 Fusing lamp (ends)
5 Fusing unit exit sensor	14 Thermistors (center/end)
6 Spring	15 Thermostats (center/end)
7 Fusing exit guide plate	16 Hot roller
8 Pressure roller	17 Hot roller strippers
9 Pressure arm	18 Exit roller

6.15.2 FUSING DRIVE

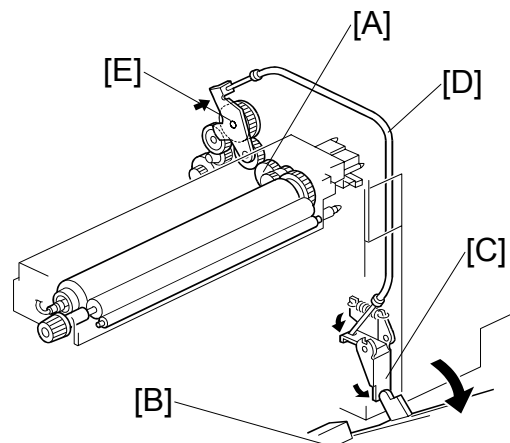
The fusing exit motor [A] drives the fusing unit through the gears [B] and also drives the paper exit rollers [C] through a gear and a timing belt [D].



6.15.3 FUSING DRIVE RELEASE MECHANISM

The fusing unit drive release mechanism automatically disengages the fusing unit drive gear [A] when the right door [B] is opened.

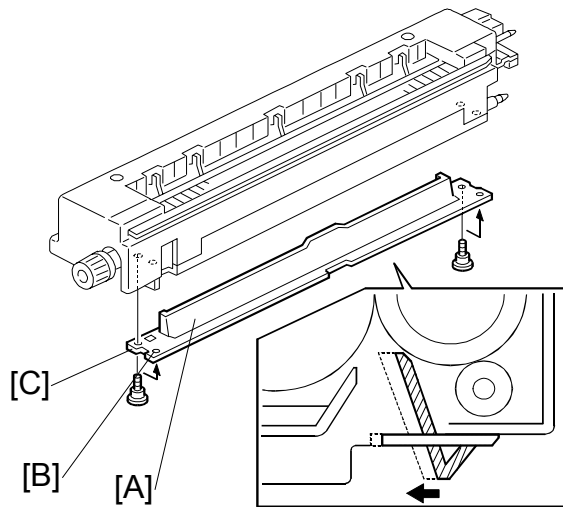
When the right cover is opened, the actuator plate [C] pulls release wire [D]. The wire pulls the fusing drive gear bracket [E] and the fusing unit drive is disengaged.



6.15.4 FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE SHIFT MECHANISM

The entrance guide [A] has two holes on each side to adjust for paper thickness to prevent creasing. Normally, the left screw hole [C] on each side is used.

For *thin* paper, use screw holes [B] to move the entrance guide to the left. This setting allows more direct access to the gap between the hot and pressure rollers, and prevents thin paper from buckling against the hot roller which can cause blurring at the leading edge of the copy.

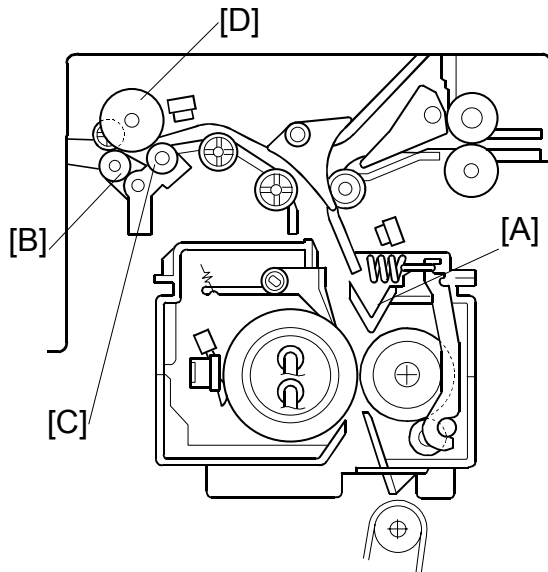


6.15.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE AND DE-CURLER ROLLERS

The exit guide plate [A] also functions as a pressure roller stripper. The exit guide plate can be moved in order to remove jammed paper.

Stacking has been improved by mounting a face-curl correction mechanism at the paper exit roller.

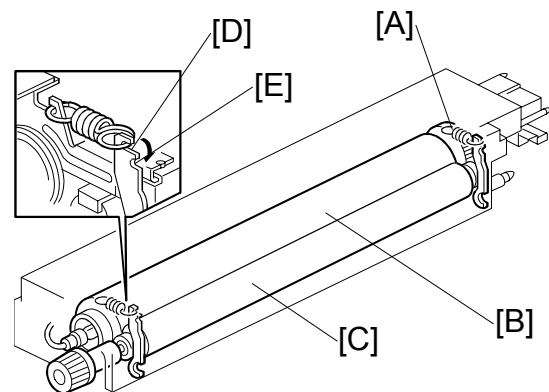
Two de-curler rollers [B] and [C] have been added under the exit roller [D] to correct the curl that paper acquires during transport through the fusing unit.



6.15.6 PRESSURE ROLLER

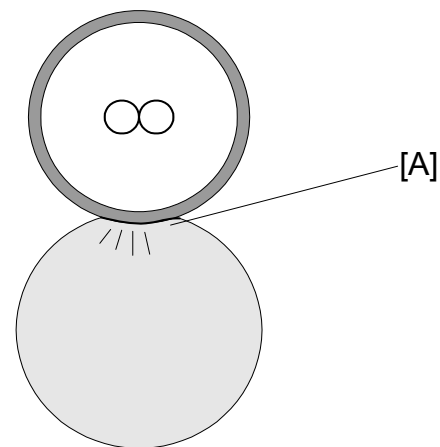
The pressure springs [A] apply constant pressure between the hot roller [B] and the pressure roller [C].

The applied pressure can be changed by adjusting the position of the pressure springs. The left position [D] is the normal setting. The right position [E] increases the pressure to prevent insufficient fusing by the fusing unit.



A stopper counters the tension of the pressure springs to keep the pressure roller pressing against the hot roller with constant pressure.

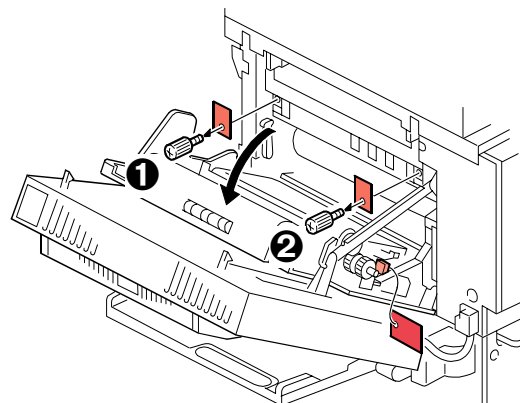
This prevents the pressure roller from flattening and increasing the width of the nip band as shown at [A]. This can lead to paper slippage and paper jams in the fusing unit.



Until the machine is installed, two screws ❶ and ❷ maintain a gap between the pressure roller and hot roller.

This relieves pressure on the surface of the pressure roller and prevents it from becoming deformed during storage before the machine is shipped.

These screws are removed and discarded when the machine is installed.



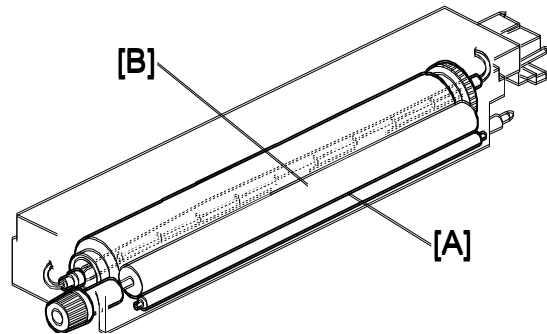
Detailed
Descriptions

6.15.7 CLEANING MECHANISM

The cleaning roller [A], in constant contact with the pressure roller [B], collects toner and paper dust from the surface of the pressure roller.

Because the cleaning roller is metal, it can collect adhering matter better than the pressure roller, which is coated with Teflon.

Some new design features have been implemented in order to cope with the lower temperatures required for new toner which has a melting temperature much lower than the previous toner. The cleaning roller [A] is composed of an aluminum shell with an internal "heat pipe" suspended in the middle of the roller to dissipate heat more rapidly.



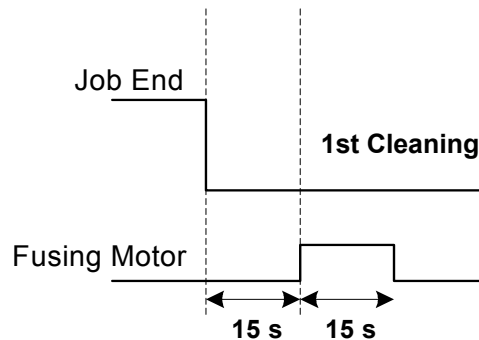
6.15.8 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER CLEANING

Toner clinging to the hot roller strippers can cause black dots to appear on the back sides of copies. To ensure that the hot roller strippers are clean and not contaminated by old toner;

- The widths of the strippers have been reduced from 3 mm to 0.5 mm.
- The machine can be set so the fusing/exit motor switches on and rotates the drum freely for 5 sec. at the beginning of every job. This feature can be switched on with SP5959. The amount of time for free rotation can be adjusted with this SP code. Make sure that the customer understands that increasing this SP setting slows down the start of the job.
- The machine switches on the fusing/exit motor and rotates the drum after the job.

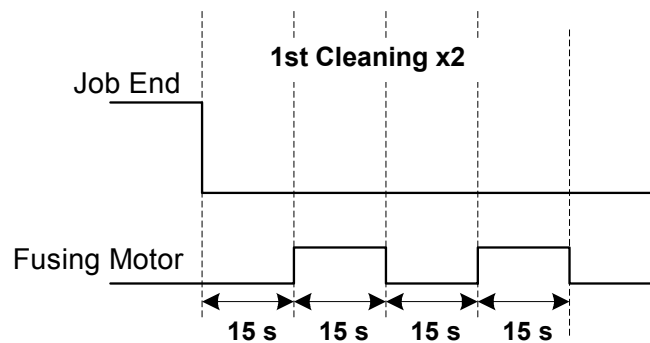
The drum rotation sequence at the end of a job depends on the size of the job.

Small Jobs



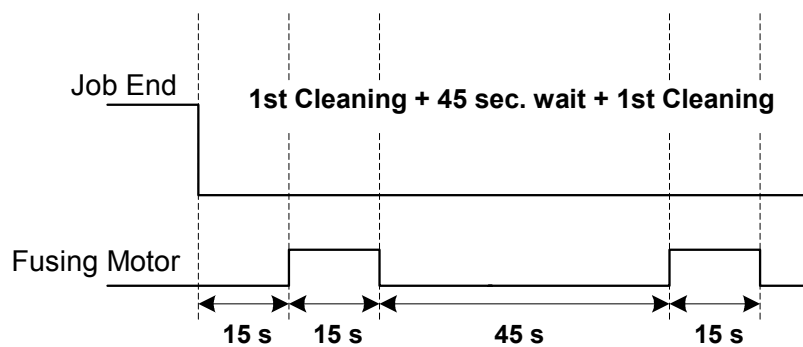
After the machine prints a total of **5 sheets** (five jobs of 1-sheet each for example, or a continues print of up to 29 pages), 15 sec. after the job ends the fusing/exit motor switches on for 15 sec. and then stops. This 15 sec. on/off cycle, called the 1st Cleaning is done once.

Medium Jobs



After the machine prints a job of **30 to 99 continuous pages**, the 1st Cleaning is done twice. (15 sec. after the job ends the fusing/exit motor switches on for 15 sec., pauses for 15 sec. then switches on again for 15 sec.)

Large Jobs



After the machine prints a job of over **100 continuous pages**, the 1st Cleaning is done, there is a pause of 45 sec. then the 1st cleaning is done again.

SP Settings for Post-Job Cleaning

The previous description of stripper cleaning with drum rotation after small, medium, and large print jobs is based on the default settings of SP3905. These settings can be adjusted.

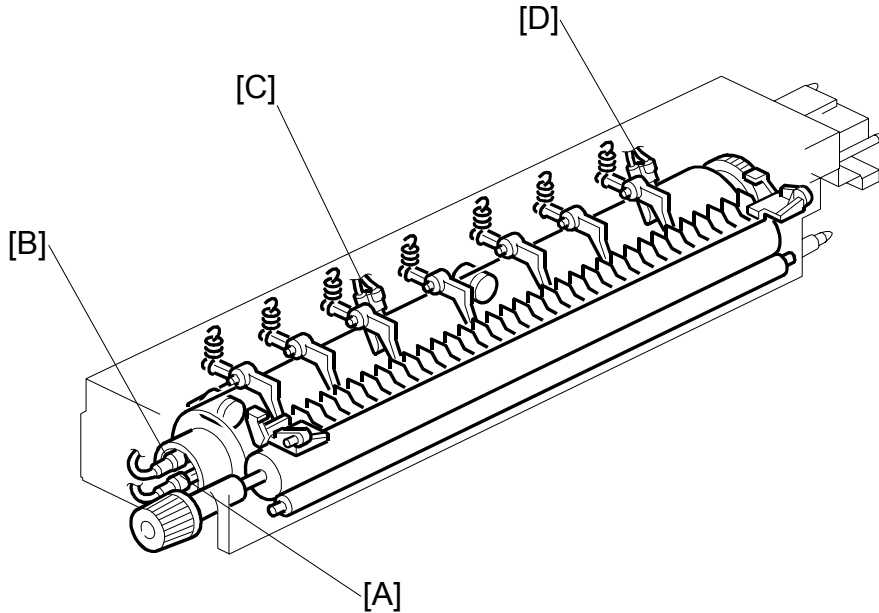
These are the SP codes that control how cleaning is done at the end of a job.

No.	Name	Function
3905 001	Number Rotations	Sets the number of times the 1st Cleaning is done. Default: 1
3905 002	Number of Pages	Sets the number of pages (accumulative total) to print before 1st Cleaning is done ("Small Jobs" on previous page. Default: 5
3905 003	No. addtnl. sheets for 2nd HR stripper cleaning	Sets the number of pages to print (continuous print job) before 1st Cleaning is done twice ("Medium Jobs" on previous page). Default: 30
3905 004	No. addtnl. sheets for 3rd HR stripper cleaning	Sets the number of pages to print (continuous print job) before 1st Cleaning is done once, then done again after a 15 sec. interval ("Large Jobs" on previous page).(Default: 100
3905 005	No. addtnl. sheets for 3rd HR stripper cleaning	Sets the number of times that the cycle for SP3905 004 is repeated for "Large Jobs". Default: 0. If set to "1", for example, the cleaning sequence is repeated once.
3905 006	Job/HR stripper cleaning priority setting	This SP determines what happens if a new job starts while cleaning is in progress. Default: 0 (Off): If a new job starts while cleaning is in progress, cleaning is canceled so the new job can start. If you set this SP to "1", a new job cannot start until cleaning has been completed.

Here are some important points to keep in mind about hot roller stripper cleaning:

- If the machine switches to any of the energy saver modes (low power mode, etc.) while cleaning is in progress, the cleaning cycle will not be interrupted.
- The cleaning cycle is not interrupted by free rotation of the hot roller when the machine is getting ready to print.
- Opening the front door, however, while cleaning is in progress will stop a cleaning cycle.

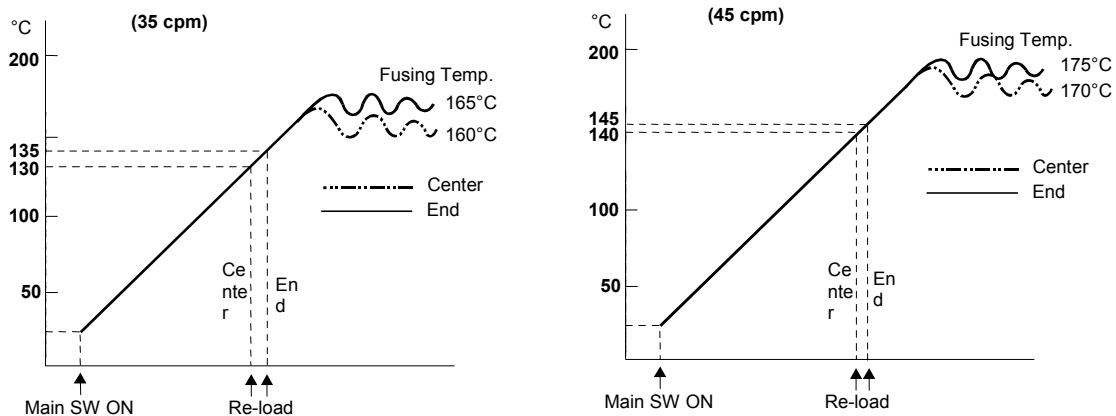
6.15.9 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL



The fusing unit has two fusing lamps: the first fusing lamp (center: 650W) [A] heats the center of the fusing roller, and the second fusing lamp (ends: 650W) [B] heats both ends of the hot roller. This arrangement ensures even heat on all surfaces of the roller.

In order to control the temperature of the roller, two high response thermistors are attached to the unit, one near the center [C] and one at the end [D] of the hot roller.

Temperature Control



There are two types of temperature control:

- On/off control (Default)
- Phase control.

Either mode can be selected with SP1104 (Fusing Temperature Control).

After the machine is powered on, the CPU checks the ac frequency for 500 ms, in case phase control is selected later for the temperature control, and then switches on the fusing lamp.

As soon as both the center and end thermistors detect the print ready temperature (also known as the “re-load” temperature), the machine can operate. The “reload” temperature is 3 °C below the fusing temperature (this depends on the settings of SP1105 1~4, 7, 8). As soon as the thermistors detect the fusing temperature, the CPU switches the lamps off but frequently switches on/off again in order to maintain the fusing temperature.

The default temperatures of SP1105 for these models are set 10 ~ 30 degrees lower than the temperatures for the previous machines. Some new SP codes have been added and others removed. For details, see Section “5. Service Tables”.

Fusing Idling Temperature

If copies are not sufficiently fused soon after the main power switch is turned on, fusing idling should be enabled with SP1103 1.

When fusing idling is enabled, it is done when the temperature reaches the print ready ("re-load") temperature. The re-load temperature can be adjusted with SP1105 5,6.

In the opposite case, even if fusing idling is disabled, it is done when the temperature at power-up $\leq 15\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$

The fusing idling time is as follows.

Temperature at power-on	Fusing Idling Mode		
	0: Disabled	1: Enabled	
15 °C or less	30 s	30 s	SP1103 2
Higher than 15°C	Not done	30 s	

6.15.10 CPM DOWN FOR THICK PAPER

Because the fusing temperatures are set lower for the new toner which has a lower melting point, the results of printing on thick paper cannot be guaranteed at 45 cpm. Therefore, the 45 cpm line speed is adjusted down to 35 cpm as follows:

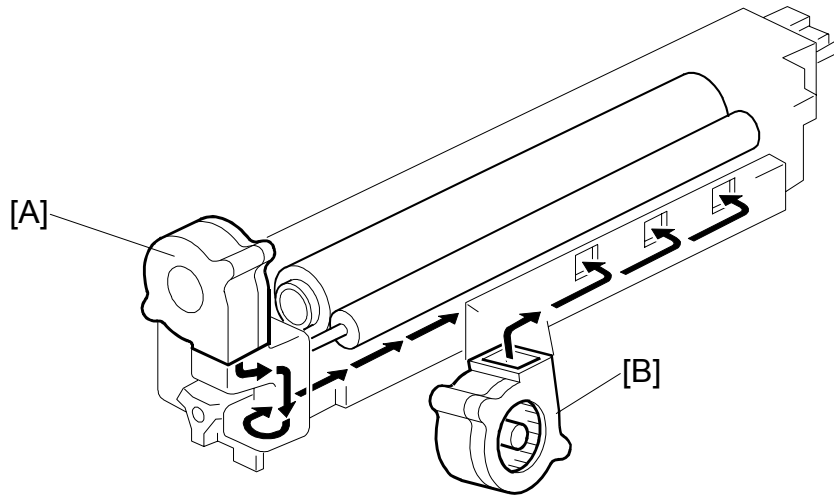
- After switching from Normal to Thick Paper for printing, the machine halts temporarily and re-starts for 35 cpm running.
- If the previous job included stapling or other finisher processing, these settings remain in effect for the next job on thick paper after the line speed is adjusted.
- If the print job on thick paper does not include an image on the page (a cover), then the speed is not adjusted down from 45 cpm to 35 cpm.

NOTE: The previous machine automatically reduced line speed 30% (ppm down) for thick paper. In these models, however, the speed is reduced from 45 cpm to 35 cpm for the 45 cpm machine. This adjustment is performed automatically for the 45 cpm machine only.

Note these other important points regarding cpm down for thick paper on the 45 cpm machine:

- When the line speed switches from 45 cpm to 35 cpm for thick paper, the transfer current changes to the settings specified with SP2301 (Transfer Current Adjustment). (For details, see Section “5. Service Tables”.) Bias voltage, development and other settings are not affected.
- Fusing temperature adjustment switches on, but no operation can start until the machine reaches the temperature specified for the job.
- The ID sensor pattern is created and the line speed remains the same until the end of the job.
- The intensity of the LD unit is lowered evenly, 30 steps from its specified value.

6.15.11 COOLING AND OVERHEAT PROTECTION



The fusing unit operates at temperatures lower than the previous model in order to accommodate the new toner which has a lower melting temperature. In order to further ensure cooler running temperatures for the fusing unit, two cooling fans have been added.

The side cooling fan [A] and corner cooling fan [B] switch on when the temperature of the fusing unit exceeds 150 °C and switch off when the main motor switches off.

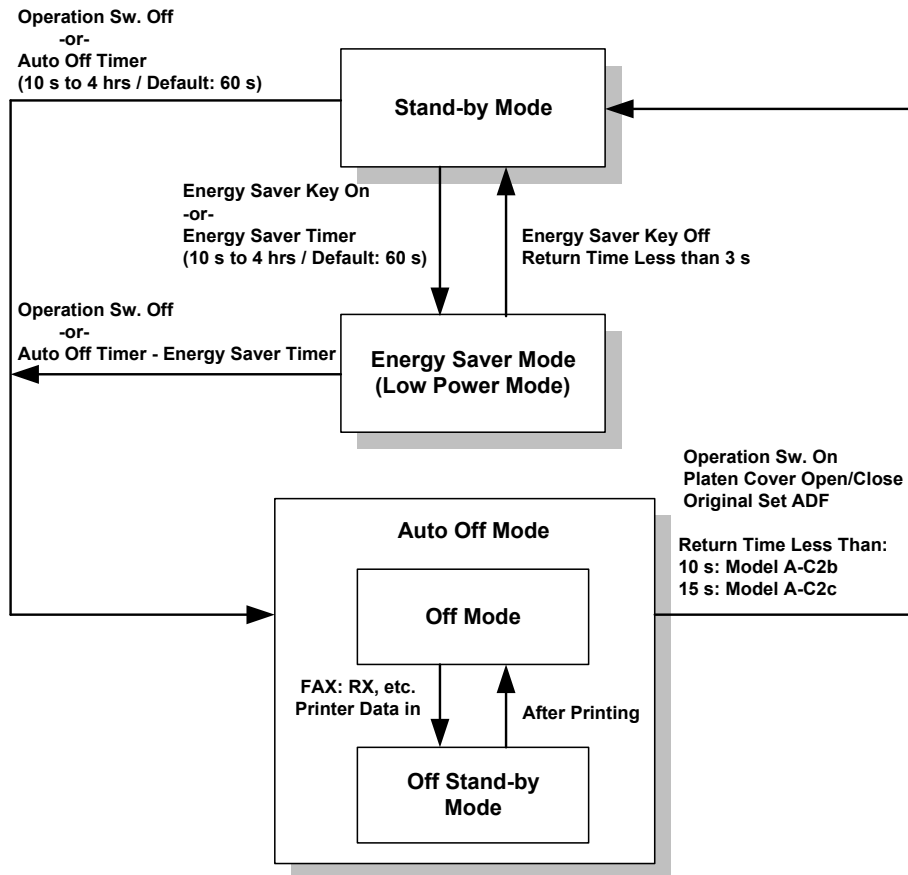
6.15.12 OVERHEAT PROTECTION

If the hot roller temperature becomes greater than 250°C, the CPU cuts off the power to the fusing lamp, and SC543 (Fusing Overheat Error) will be displayed.

Even if the thermistor overheat protection fails, there is a thermostat in series with the common ground line of the fusing lamp. If the temperature of the thermostat reaches 199°C, the thermostat opens, removing power from the fusing lamp. At the same time, the copier stops operating. At this time, SC542 (Fusing Temperature Warm-up Error) will be displayed.

6.16 ENERGY SAVER MODES

6.16.1 OVERVIEW



When the machine is not used, the energy saver function reduces power consumption by decreasing the fusing temperature.

This machine has two types of energy saver mode as follows.

- 1) Energy saver mode
- 2) Auto Off mode

These modes are controlled by the following UP and SP modes.

- Energy timer (UP mode)
- Auto off timer (UP mode)
- Auto off disabling (SP mode)

6.16.2 ENERGY SAVER MODE

Entering the energy saver mode

The machine enters energy saver mode when one of the following occur.

- The Clear Mode/Energy Saver Key is held down for a second.
- The energy saver timer runs out after the end of a job.

What happens in energy saver mode

When the machine enters energy saver mode, the fusing lamp drops to a certain temperature, and the operation panel indicators are turned off except for the Energy Saver LED and the Power LED.

If the CPU receives the image print out command from an application (e. g. to print incoming fax data or to print data from a PC), the fusing temperature rises to print the data.

Return to stand-by mode

If one of the following occur, the machine returns to stand-by mode:

- The Clear Mode/Energy Saver Mode key is pressed
- Any key on the operation panel or touch panel screen is pressed
- An original is placed in the ADF
- The ADF is lifted
- A sheet of paper is placed in the by-pass feed table

The recovery time from energy saver mode is about 3 s.

Mode	Operation Switch	Energy Saver LED	Fusing Temp.	+24V	System +5V
Energy Saver	On	On	B264: 130°C B265: 150°C	On	On

6.16.3 AUTO OFF MODE

There are two Auto Off modes: Off Stand-by mode and Off mode. The difference between Off Stand-by mode and Off mode is the machine's condition when the machine enters Auto Off mode.

Entering off stand-by and off modes

The machine enters the Off Stand-by mode or Off mode when one of the following occur:

- The auto off timer runs out
- The operation switch is pressed to turn the power off

If one or more of the following conditions exists, the machine enters Off Stand-by mode. If none of these conditions exist, the machine enters Off Mode.

- Error or SC condition
- An optional G4 unit is installed
- Image data is stored in the memory
- During memory TX or polling RX
- The handset is off hook
- An original is in the ADF
- The ADF is open

Off Stand-by mode

The system +5V is still supplied to all components. When the machine detects a ringing signal or receives a stream of data for a print job, the +24V supply is activated and the machine automatically prints the incoming message or executes the print job.

Off Mode

The system +5V supply also turns off. However, +5VE (+5V for energy saver mode) is still activated. When the machine detects a ringing signal, off-hook signal, or receives a print job, the machine returns to the Off Stand-by mode and the system +5V and +24V supplies are activated.

Returning to stand-by mode

The machine returns to stand-by mode when the operation switch is pressed. The recovery time is about 10 s (B264) or 15 s for the (B265).

Mode	Operation Switch	Energy Saver Mode	Fusing Lamp	+24V	System +5V	Note
Off Stand-by	Off	Off	Off (On when printing)	On	On	
Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	+5VE is supplied

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATIONS

1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Configuration	Desktop	
Copy Process	Dry electrostatic transfer system	
Original	Sheet/Book	
Original Size	Maximum A3/11" x 17"	
Copy Paper Size	Paper tray, Duplex:	A3/11" x 17" - A5 SEF
	By-pass tray:	A3/11" x 17" - A6 SEF
	Non-standard sizes:	Width: 100 - 297 mm (3.9" - 11.7") Length: 148 - 432 mm (5.8" - 17.0")
Copy Paper Weight	Paper Tray/ Duplex:	64 - 105 g/m ² (20 - 28 lb.)
	By-pass:	52 - 163 g/m ² (16 - 44 lb.)
Reproduction Ratios	7R5E:	Metric version (%): 400, 200, 141, 122, 115, 93, 82, 75, 71, 65, 50, 25 Inch version (%): 400, 200, 155, 129, 121, 93, 85, 78, 73, 65, 50, 25
	Zoom:	25 ~ 400% in 1% steps
Copying Speed	B264:	35 cpm A4, 8 1/2" x 11" LEF, 1-to-1 (ADF)
	B265:	45 cpm, A4, 8 1/2" x 11" LEF, 1-to-1 (ADF)
First Copy Time	B264:	4.1 s, 1st Tray, A4/8 1/2" x 11" LEF
	B265:	3.5 s, 1st Tray, A4/8 1/2" x 11" LEF
Warm-up Time	B264:	Less than 12.5 s (Basic), 15 s (MFP)
	B265:	Less than 12.5 s (Basic), 15 s (MFP)
Continuous Copy	1~999 (operation panel entry)	
Paper Capacity	1,050 sheets (500 sheets/tray x 2 with 50 sheets in by-pass tray)	
Paper Output	A4, 8 1/2" x 11" and smaller:	500 sheets
	B4 and larger:	250 sheets
Power Source	North America:	120V/60 Hz, More than 12.5 A
	Europe/Asia:	220 - 240 V/50, 60 Hz, More than 6.8 A
Dimensions (w x d x h)	Without ADF	670 mm x 650 mm x 720 mm (26.3" x 25.6" x 28.3")
	With ADF	670 mm x 650 mm x 870 mm (26.3" x 25.6" x 34.3")
Weight	Less than 79 kg (174 lb.)	
Resolution	600 dpi (Scanning and Printing)	
Gradation	256 levels (Scanning and Printing)	
Original Archive	More than 2,500 A4 pages for document server (ITU-T No. 4 Chart)	
Toner Replenishment	Cartridge exchange (550 g)	
Total Counter	Electric counter	

SPECIFICATIONS

Power Consumption

Mainframe only

	B264		B265	
Copying	Less than 1.3 kW		Less than 1.3 kW	
Warm-up	Less than 1.4 kW		Less than 1.4 kW	
Stand-by	NA	Less than 123W	NA	Less than 148W
	EU, Asia	Less than 126W	EU, Asia	Less than 138W
Auto Off Mode	NA	Ave. 1.2W	NA	Ave. 1.2W
	EU, Asia	Ave. 1.2W	EU, Asia	Ave. 1.2W
Maximum	Less than 1.44 kW (NA)		Less than 1.44 kW (NA)	
	Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia)		Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia)	

Full system (including options)

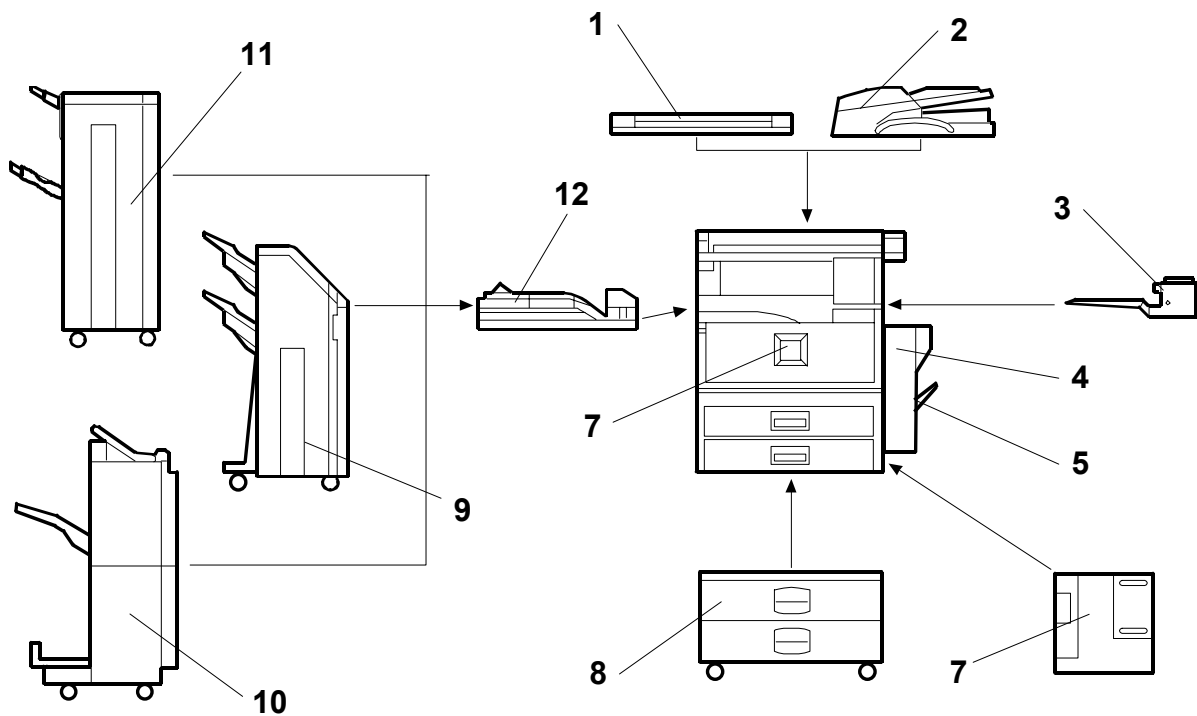
	B264		B265	
Copying	Less than 1.4 kW		Less than 1.4 kW	
Warm-up	Less than 1.3 kW		Less than 1.3 kW	
Stand-by	NA	Less than 125W	NA	Less than 159W
	EU, Asia	Less than 130W	EU, Asia	Less than 149W
Auto Off Mode	NA	Ave. 8.5W	NA	Ave. 8.5
	EU, Asia	Ave. 8.5	EU, Asia	Ave. 8.5
Maximum	Less than 1.44 kW (NA)		Less than 1.44 kW (NA)	
	Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia)		Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia)	

Noise Emission:

Mode	Model	Mainframe Only		Full System	
Copying	B264	NA	64.0	NA	69.8
		EU, Asia	65.0	EU, Asia	65.0
	B265	NA	67.0	NA	70.9
		EU, Asia	67.0	EU, Asia	67.0
Stand-by	B264	NA	34.0	NA	37.1
		EU, Asia	34.0	EU, Asia	43.0
	B265	NA	34.0	NA	37.1
		EU, Asia	34.0	EU, Asia	34.0

NOTE: 1) The above measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779.
 2) Full system measurements include the ARDF, Finisher and LCT unit.
 3) In the above stand-by condition, the polygonal mirror motor is not rotating.

2. MACHINE CONFIGURATION



1. Platen cover	8. Paper tray unit
2. ARDF	9. Two-tray finisher (2 shift trays)
3. One-bin tray	10. Booklet Finisher
4. Duplex unit	11. 1000 Sheet Finisher (1 shift tray)
5. By-pass tray	12. Bridge Unit
6. LCT (Large Capacity Tray)	
7. Copier	

NOTE: The Bridge Unit is required for the optional finishers.

SPECIFICATIONS

Key: Symbol: **U**: Unique option, **C**: Option also used with other products

	Item	Key	Machine Code
Copier	B264		B264
	B265		B265
	ARDF (See Note 1.)	C	B714
	Platen Cover (See Note 1.)	C	G329
	Paper Tray Unit	C	B542
	LCT (Large Capacity Tray)	C	B543
	1-Bin Tray	C	B544
	Bridge Unit	C	B538
	1000-sheet Finisher (See Note 2.)	C	B408
	Two-tray Finisher (See Note 2.)	C	B545
	Booklet Finisher	C	B546
	Punch Unit (See Note 3.)	C	B377-17 (2/3-hole) US
	Punch Unit (See Note 3.)	C	B377-27 (2/4-hole) Metric
	Punch Unit (See Note 3.)	C	B377-31 (4-hole) Northern Europe/
	Key Counter Bracket	C	A674
	User Account Enhance Unit	C	G395
	PI Board Kit	C	B669
	Data Overwrite Security	C	B735
	Copy Data Security Unit	C	B770
	Scanner Accessibility Option	U	B815
Fax	Fax Option	U	B779
	G3 Interface Unit	U	B780
	SAF Memory	C	G578
	Handset (USA model only)	C	A646
Printer/Scanner	Printer/Scanner Unit	U	B783
	PostScript3 Unit	U	B720
	1394 Interface Unit	C	B581
	IEEE 802.11b Wireless LAN	C	G813
	Bluetooth	C	B736
	Memory Unit 256 MB	C	G818
	File Format Converter	C	B609

NOTE: 1) The ARDF and platen cover cannot be installed together.
 2) The finishers require the paper tray unit and bridge unit.
 3) The punch unit requires the two-tray finisher.

3. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ARDF (B714)

Original Size:	Normal Original Mode: A3 to B6, DLT to HLT Duplex Original Mode: A3 to B5, DLT to HLT
Original Weight:	Normal Original Mode: 40 ~ 128 g/m ² (11 ~ 34 lb.) Duplex Original Mode: 52 ~ 105 g/m ² (14 ~ 28 lb.)
Table Capacity:	80 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb.)
Original Standard Position:	Rear left corner
Separation:	Feed belt and separation roller
Original Transport:	Roller transport
Original Feed Order:	From the top original
Reproduction Range:	30 ~ 200% (Sub scan direction only)
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V from the copier
Power Consumption:	Less than 60 W
Dimensions (W × D × H):	570 mm x 518 mm x 150 mm (22.4" x 20.4" x 5.9")
Weight:	12 kg

PAPER TRAY UNIT (B542)

Paper Size:	A5 SEF to A3 SEF 5 1/2" x 8 1/2" SEF to 11" x 17" SEF
Paper Weight:	64 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² (20 lb. ~ 28 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb.)
Paper Feed System:	FRR
Paper Height Detection:	4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Near end)
Power Source:	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from the copier) 120 Vac: 115 V version (from the copier) 220 ~ 240 Vac: 224/240 V version (from the copier)
Power Consumption:	50 W
Weight:	Less than 25 kg (55.1 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	540 mm x 600 mm x 270 mm (21.3" x 23.6" x 10.6")

SPECIFICATIONS

ONE-BIN TRAY (B544)

Paper Size:	A5 SEF to A3 SEF 5 1/2"x8 1/2" SEF to 11"x17" SEF
Paper Weight:	60 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² (16 lb. ~ 28 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	125 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb.)
Power Source:	5 Vdc, 24 Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption:	15 W
Weight:	Less than 4 kg (8.8 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	470 mm x 565 mm x 140 mm (18.5" x 22.2" x 5.5")

1000 Sheet Finisher (B408)

Upper Tray				
Paper Size	A3 to A6 11" x 17" to 5 1/2" x 8 1/2"			
Paper Weight	60 to 157 g/m2 (16 to 42 lb.)			
Paper Capacity	250 sheets, A4 LEF, 8 1/2" x 11" SEF or smaller, 80 g/m ² (20 lb.)			
Lower Tray				
Paper Size	Staple Mode Off: A3 to B5, 11" x 17" to 5 1/2" x 8 1/2" Staple Mode On: A3, B4, A4, B5, 11" x 17" to 8 1/2" x 11"			
Paper Weight	Staple Mode Off: 60 to 157 g/m ² (16 ~ 43 lb.)			
	Staple Mode On: 64 to 90 g/m ² (17 ~ 24 lb.)			
Stapler Capacity	30 sheets (A3, B4, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14" 50 sheets (A4, B5 LEF, 8 1/2" x 11"			
Paper Capacity	Staple Mode Off: 1,000 sheets, A4, 8 1/2" x 11" or smaller, 80 g/m ² (20 lb.) 500 sheets, A3, B4, 11" x 17", 8 1/2" x 14", 80 g/m ² (20 lb.)			
	Staple Mode On: 80 g/m2 (20 lb.)			
	Number of Sets			
	Set Size	2 to 9	10 to 50	
	Size		10 to 30	31 to 50
	A4, 8 1/2"x14" LEF	100	100 to 20	100 to 20
	A4, 8 1/2"x11" SEF	100	50 to 10	50 to 10
A3, B4, 11"x17", 8 1/2"x14"	50	50 to 10	---	
Staple Positions	1 Staple: 2 positions (Front, Rear) 2 Staples: 2 positions (Upper, Left)			
Staple Replenishment	Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridge)			
Power Source	DC 24 V, 5V (from copier)			
Power Consumption	50 W			
Weight	25 kg (55.2 lb.)			
Dimensions	527 x 520 x 790 mm 20.8" x 20.5" x 31.1"			

TWO-TRAY FINISHER (B545)**NOTE:** The punch unit is an option for this machine.

Paper Size	Normal/Shift Mode: A3 to A5/DLT to HLT (A6L in no shift mode and no staple mode) Staple Mode: A3 to B5/DLT to LT Punch Mode: 2 Holes: A3 to A5/DLT to HLT 3 Holes: A3 to B5/DLT to LT 4 Holes (Europe/Asia) : A3 to A5/ DLT to HLT 4 Holes (North Europe): A3 to B5/DLT to LT
Paper Weight	Normal/Shift Mode: 52 g/m ² ~ 163 g/m ² (14 ~ 43 lb.) Staple Mode: 64 g/m ² ~ 90 g/m ² (17 ~ 23 lb.) Punch mode (All types): 52 g/m ² ~ 163 g/m ² (14 ~ 43 lb.)
Tray Paper Capacity	Upper Tray: 500 sheets (A4S ~ A5S/LTS, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 250 sheets (A3 ~ A4L/DLT ~ LTL, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 100 sheets (A5L/HLT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) Lower Tray (Multi-tray Staple Mode): 1500 sheets (A4S/LTS, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 750 sheets (A3 ~ B5/DLT ~ LTL, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 500 sheets (A5S, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 100 sheets (A5L/HLT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) Lower Tray (Normal Mode): 2000 sheets (A4S/LTS, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 750 sheets (A3 ~ B5/DLT ~ LTL, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 500 sheets (A5S, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 100 sheets (A5L/HLT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.)
Stapler Tray Capacity	No Mixed Original Mode: 50 sheets (A4 ~ B5/LT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) 30 sheets (A3 ~ B4/DLT ~ LG, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) Mixed Original Mode: 30 sheets (A4S/A3, B5S/B4, LTS/DLT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.)
Staple Position	4 positions 1 staple: 3 positions (Front, Rear, Rear-Slant) 2 staple: 1 position
Staple Replenishment	Cartridge (5,000 staples)
Power Source	24 Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption	60 W
Weight	Less than 53 kg (116.8 lb.) (without punch unit) Less than 55 kg (121.3 lb.) (with punch unit)
Size (W x D x H)	680 mm x 620 mm x 1030 mm (26.8" x 24.4" x 40.6")

SPECIFICATIONS

Booklet Finisher (B546)

Paper Size	Tray	Modes		Sizes		
	Proof tray			A3 to A5, DLT to HLT		
	Shift tray	No staple mode		A3 to A5, DLT to HLT		
		Staple Mode	Rear	A4 SEF, LG SEF, LT SEF		
			Front/Slant	A3 SEF, A4 LEF/SEF, B4 SEF, B5 LEF, DLT SEF, LG SEF, LT LEF/SEF		
			Rear/Slant	A3 SEF, A4 LEF, B4 SEF, B5 LEF, DLT SEF, LT LEF		
		2 Staple	A3 SEF, A4, LEF, B4 SEF, B5 LEF, DLT SEF, LT LEF			
Booklet tray	Staple Mode		A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, DLT SEF, LT SEF			
Paper Weight	Tray	Weight				
	Stack mode		52 g/m ² to 163 g/m ² , 14 to 42 lb			
	Staple mode		64 g/m ² to 80 g/m ² , 17 to 21 lb			
	Saddle stitch mode		64 g/m ² to 80 g/m ² , 17 to 21 lb 64 g/m ² to 128 g/m ² , 17 to 34 lb (Cover sheet only)			
Paper Capacity ^{*1}	Tray	Modes	Paper size	Capacity		
	Proof tray			A4 LEF, LT LEF or shorter	150 sheets	
				A4 SEF, LT SEF or longer	75 sheets	
	Shift tray	No staple		A4 LEF, LT LEF or shorter	1000 sheets	
				A4 SEF, LT SEF or longer	500 sheet	
		Staple		A4 LEF, LT LEF or shorter	750 sheets, or 30 sets ^{*2}	
				A4 SEF, LT SEF or longer	500 sheets, or 30 sets ^{*2}	
			Booklet tray		1-5 sheets	25 sets
					6-10 sheets	15 sets
		11-15 sheets		10 sets		

^{*1}: 80 g/m², 20 lb

^{*2}: Setting DIP SW 3 No. 5 to ON releases the 30 set limit.

Staple Capacity	Modes	Paper size	Total capacity
	Staple	A4 LEF, LT LEF or shorter	50 sheets
		A4 SEF, LT SEF or longer	30 sheets
	Saddle stitch		15 sheets
Staple Position	Staple mode: 4 positions 1 staple: 3 positions (Rear, Front/Slant, Rear/Slant) 2 staples: 1 position Saddle stitch mode: 2 positions, 2 staples (center), fixed position		
Staple Replenishment	Cartridge Staple: 5000 staples Saddle stitch: 2000 staples		
Power Source	24 Vdc (from copier)		
Power Consumption	Less than 170 W		
Dimensions (w x d x h)	689 x 603 x 1055 mm 27.1 x 23.7 x 41.5 in.		
Weight:	49 kg (107.8 lb.)		

*1: 80 g/m², 20 lb

BRIDGE UNIT (B538)

Paper Size	Standard sizes A6 lengthwise to A3 HLT to DLT Non-standard sizes Width: 100 to 305 mm Length: 148 to 432 mm
Paper Weight	52 g/m ² ~ 135 g/m ² , 16 lb. ~ 42 lb.

LCT (B543)

Paper Size	A4 (S)/LT (S)
Paper Weight	60 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² , 16 lb. ~ 28 lb.
Tray Capacity	1500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20lb.)
Remaining Paper Detection	5 steps (100%, 75%, 50%, 25%, Near end)
Power Source	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption	40 W
Weight	Less than 17 kg (37.5 lb.)
Size (W x D x H)	390 mm x 500 mm x 390 mm (15.4" x 19.7" x 15.4")

PUNCH UNIT
B377

PUNCH UNIT B377

TABLE OF CONTENTS

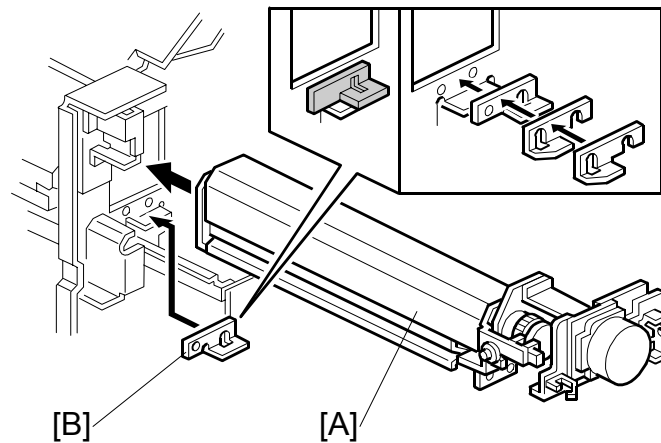
1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT	1
2. DETAILS.....	2
2.1 PUNCH DRIVE MECHANISM	2
2.2 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION	4

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the position of the punch holes in the paper feed direction, use SP6113 (Punch Hole Adjustment).

The punch position can be adjusted by up to 4 mm using combinations of the 3 spacers provided with the finisher. To adjust the horizontal position of the holes, use the spacers provided with the punch unit.



1. Rear cover (🔩 x 4)
2. Punch unit [A] (🔩 x 3, 📏 x 5)
3. Spacers [B]

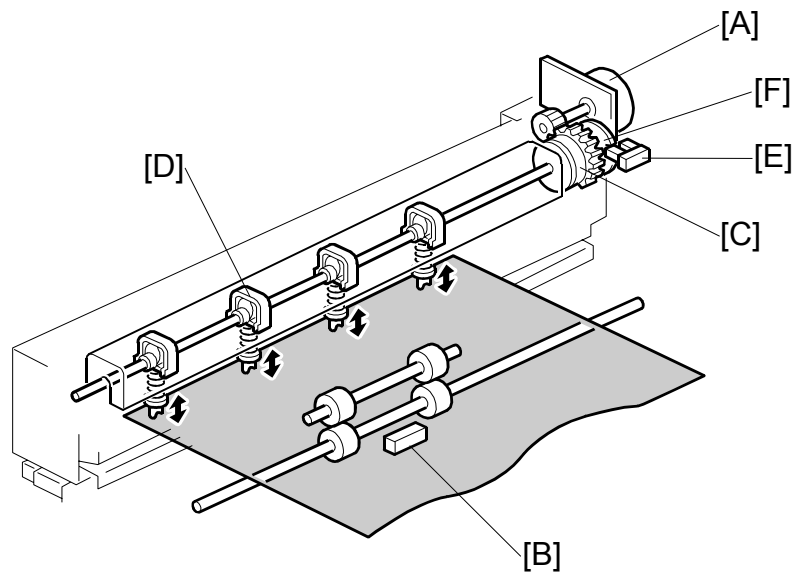
Punch Unit
B377

2. DETAILS

The punch unit punches holes in printed sheets, one by one. The punch unit is provided with a new punch mechanism to improve the accuracy of punching.

NOTE: The illustrations below show the unit for Europe for 2/4 hole punching. The North American unit has five holes for 2/3 hole punching.

2.1 PUNCH DRIVE MECHANISM

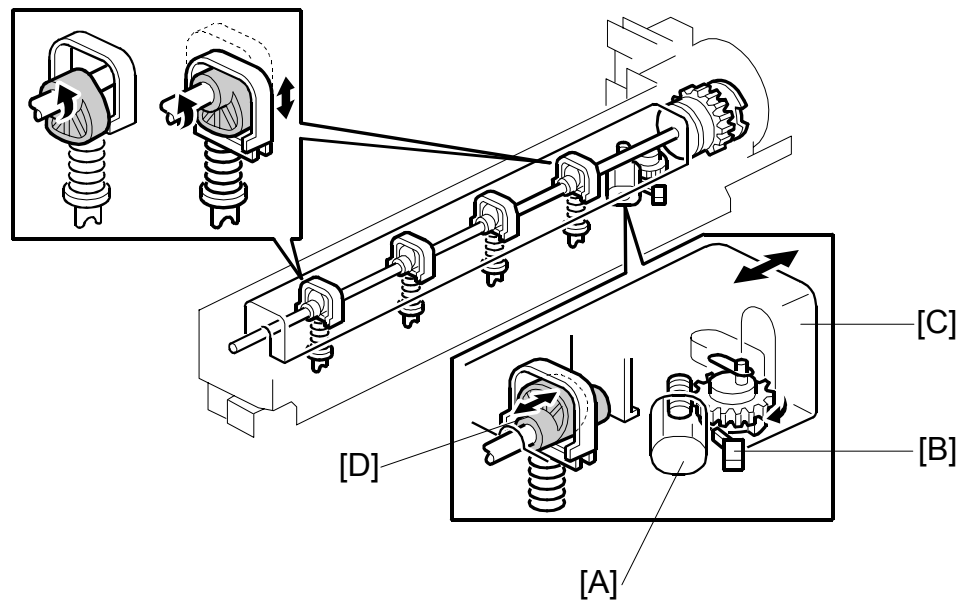


The punch motor [A] drives the punch mechanism. At the correct time after the trailing edge of the paper passes the finisher entrance sensor [B], the punch motor turns on and the paper stops. The punch clutch [C] turns and drives the punch heads [D].

The punch HP sensor [E] detects the home position for the actuator. The punch unit switches off when the cut-out in the punch shaft disk [F] enters the punch HP sensor.

NOTE: SP6113 (Punch Hole Adjustment) adjusts the punch hole position in the sub scan direction for two holes (001 2-Hole) or for three holes (002 3-Hole). Use the spacers provided with the punch unit to adjust the position of the punch in the main scan direction. For details, refer to the installation of the punch unit in section "1. Installation").

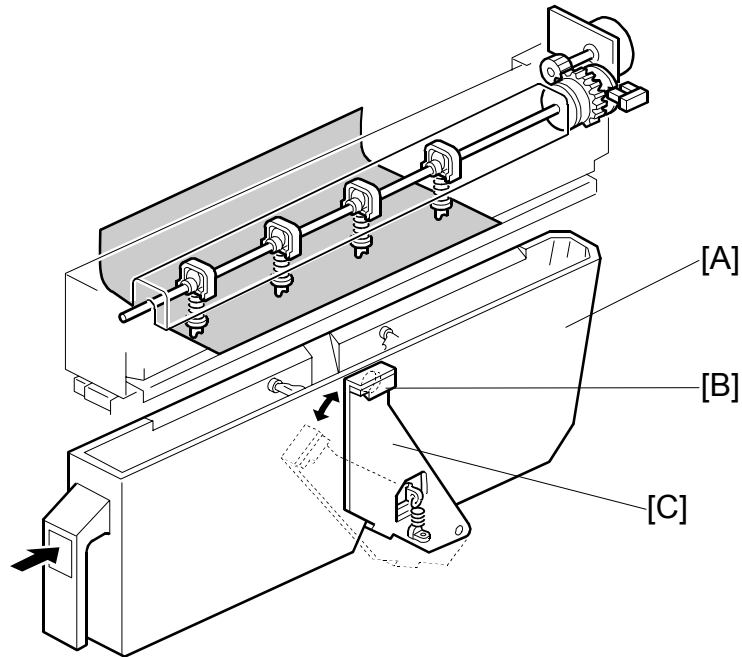
PUNCH DRIVE MECHANISM



When the finisher has received the command that changes the number of punch holes for the job, the punch hole motor [A] turns on until the actuator disk changes the status of the punch hole switch [B] (until it switches on or off). This indicates that the cover [C] and the punch cam [D] have moved to one side or the other to determine which punchers are used.

Punch Unit
B377

2.2 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION



Waste punchouts are collected in the punch waste hopper [A] below the punch unit inside the finisher.

When the top of the punchout waste in the hopper reaches and actuates the hopper sensor [B], a message will be displayed on the operation panel after the current job is completed.

This sensor also detects whether the punch waste hopper is installed. When the waste hopper is taken out, the arm [C] moves down and this will actuate the sensor and display a message in the operation panel. This message is the same as for the hopper full condition.

**1000-SHEET FINISHER
B408**

1000-SHEET FINISHER B408

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 MAIN PCB	1
1.2 STAPLER UNIT	2
1.3 MOTORS.....	3
1.3.1 SHIFT MOTOR.....	3
1.3.2 STAPLER MOTOR.....	3
1.3.3 UPPER TRANSPORT MOTOR AND EXIT MOTOR	4
1.3.4 LOWER TRANSPORT MOTOR.....	4
1.4 MOTORS AND SENSORS.....	5
1.4.1 PREPARATION	5
1.4.2 STACK HEIGHT SENSOR	6
1.4.3 STAPLER TRAY PAPER SENSOR.....	6
1.4.4 LOWER TRAY LIFT MOTOR	7
1.4.5 STACK FEED-OUT MOTOR.....	7
2. TROUBLESHOOTING	8
2.1 JAM DETECTION.....	8
3. SERVICE TABLES.....	9
3.1 DIP SWITCH SETTINGS	9
4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	10
4.1 GENERAL LAYOUT	10
4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	11
4.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION.....	13
4.4 DRIVE LAYOUT	15
4.5 JUNCTION GATES	16
Upper Tray Mode	16
Sort/Stack Mode	16
Staple Mode.....	16
4.6 UPPER TRAY.....	17
4.7 LOWER TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISMS	18
4.8 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM	19
4.9 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM.....	20
4.10 EXIT GUIDE PLATE.....	21
4.11 STAPLER MECHANISM	22
4.12 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM	23
4.13 PAPER FEED-OUT MECHANISM	24

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

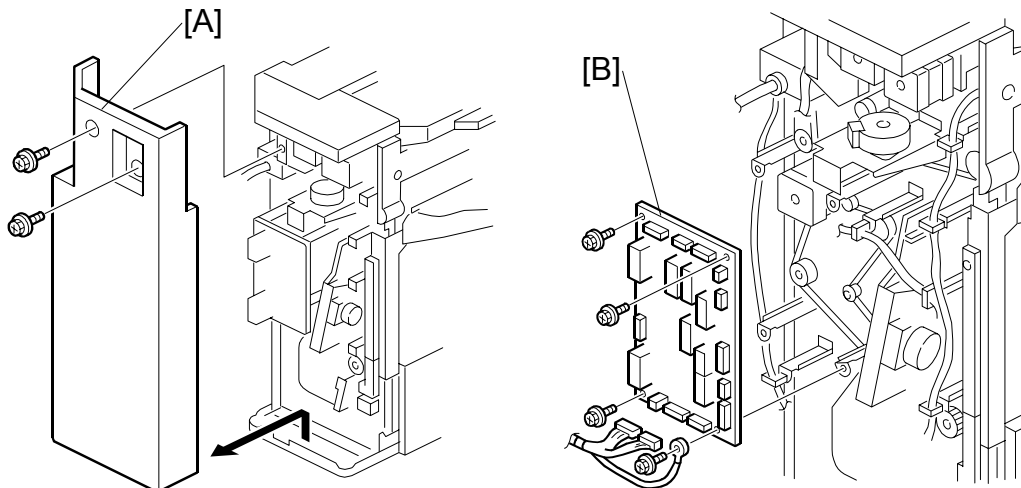
⚠ CAUTION

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

☞ : See or Refer to 🔩 : Screws 📡 : Connector 📎 : Clip ring
 Ⓢ : E-ring

1.1 MAIN PCB

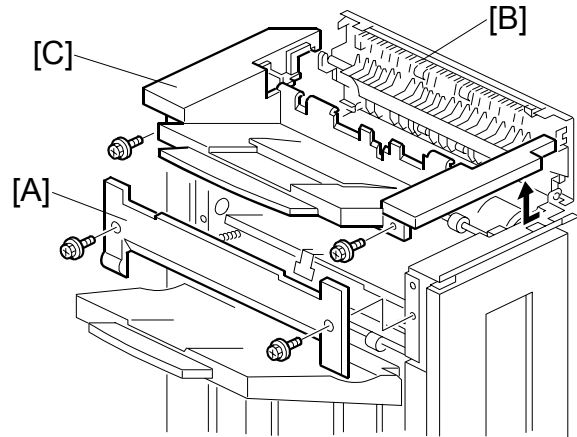


1. Rear cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
2. Main PCB [B] (🔩 x 4, All 📡)

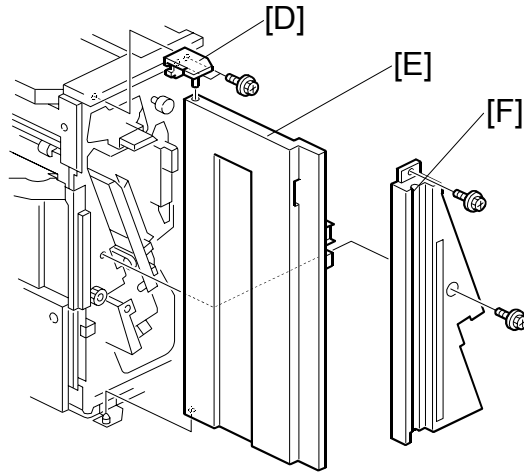
STAPLER UNIT

1.2 STAPLER UNIT

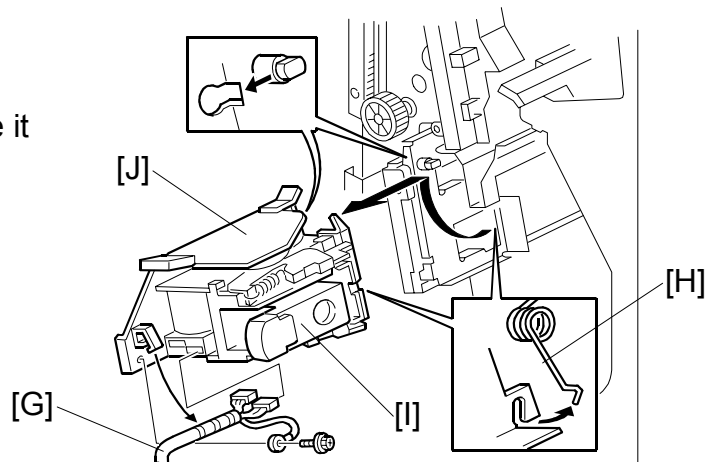
1. Side cover [A] (⚙ x 2)
2. Open exit guide plate [B]
3. Upper side cover [C] (⚙ x 2)



4. Front cover support plate [D] (⚙ x 1)
5. Front cover [E]
6. Front inner cover [F] (⚙ x 2)



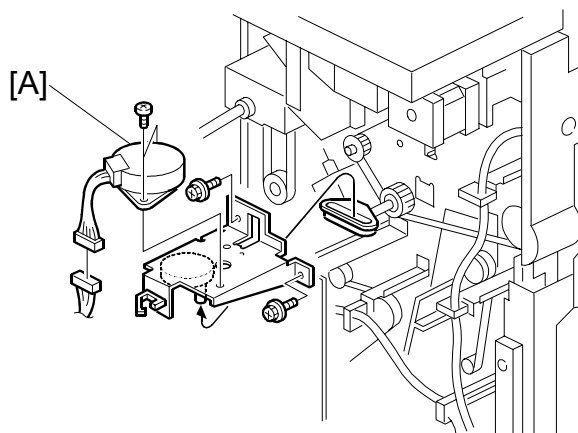
7. Harness [G]
8. Unhook the spring [H]
9. Turn the stapler unit [I] and take it out.
10. Bracket [J] (⚙ x 2)



1.3 MOTORS

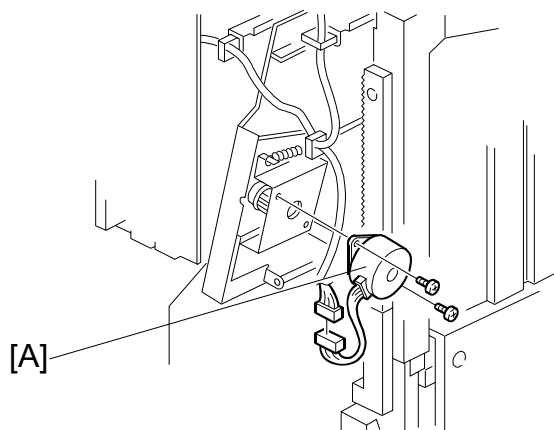
1.3.1 SHIFT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☞1.1)
2. Shift motor [A] (⚙ x 2, 📡 x 1)



1.3.2 STAPLER MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☞1.1)
2. Stapler motor [A] (⚙ x 2, 📡 x 1)

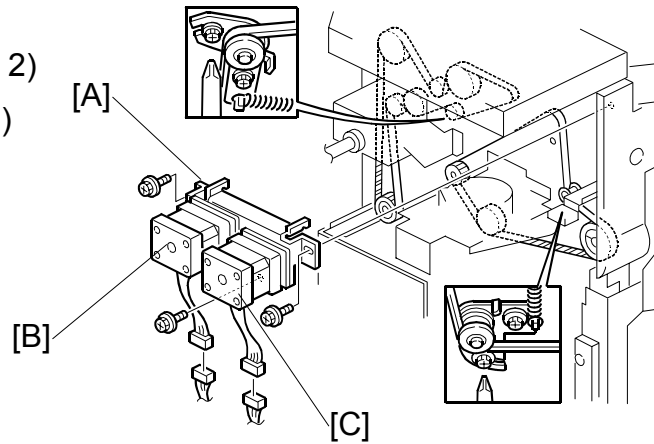


1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

MOTORS

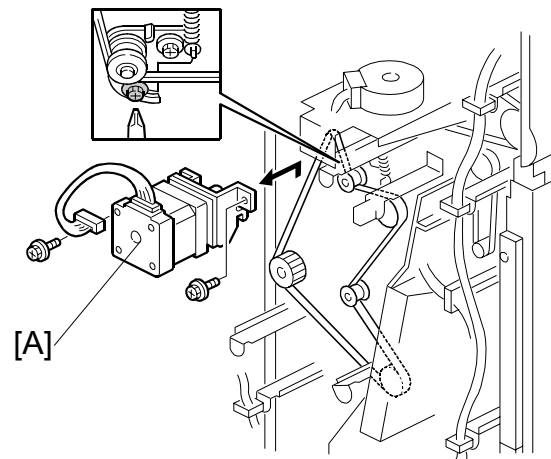
1.3.3 UPPER TRANSPORT MOTOR AND EXIT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (➡1.1)
2. Motor assembly [A] (⚙️ x 4, 📡 x 2)
3. Upper transport motor [B] (⚙️ x 4)
4. Exit motor [C] (⚙️ x 4)



1.3.4 LOWER TRANSPORT MOTOR

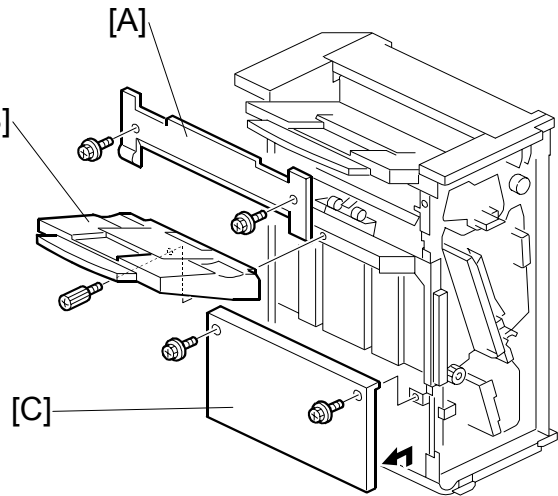
1. Main PCB (➡1.1)
2. Lower transport motor [A] (⚙️ x 2, 📡 x 1)



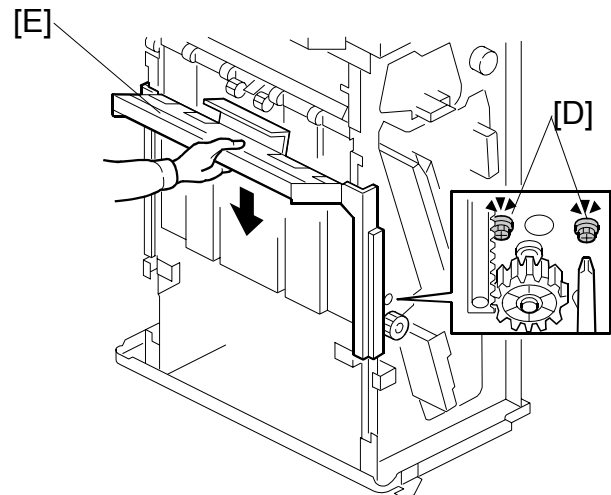
1.4 MOTORS AND SENSORS

1.4.1 PREPARATION

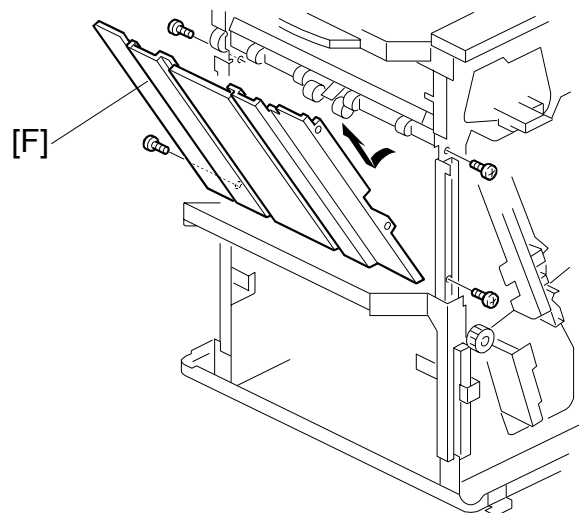
1. Front cover and inner cover (☛1.2)
2. Upper side cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
3. Upper tray [B] (🔩 x 1)



4. Lower side cover [C] (🔩 x 2)
5. Loosen the 2 screws [D].
6. Lower the lower tray guide plate [E].



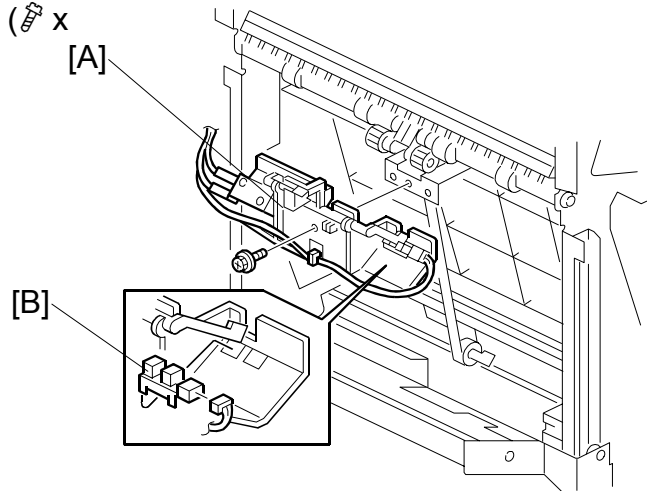
7. Guide plate [F] (🔩 x 4)



1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

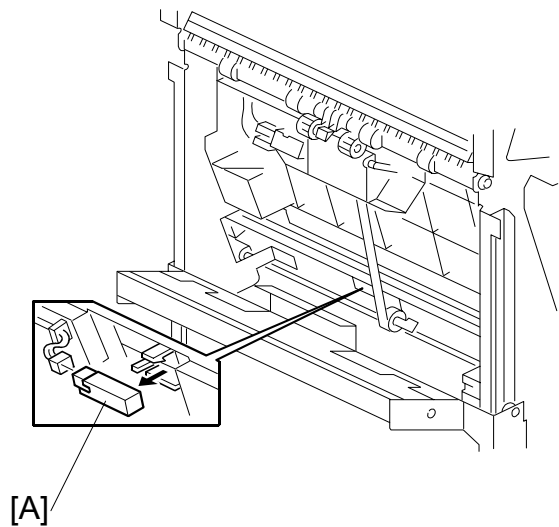
1.4.2 STACK HEIGHT SENSOR

1. Stack height sensor assembly [A] (🔧 x 1)
2. Stack height sensor [B] (🔌 x 1)



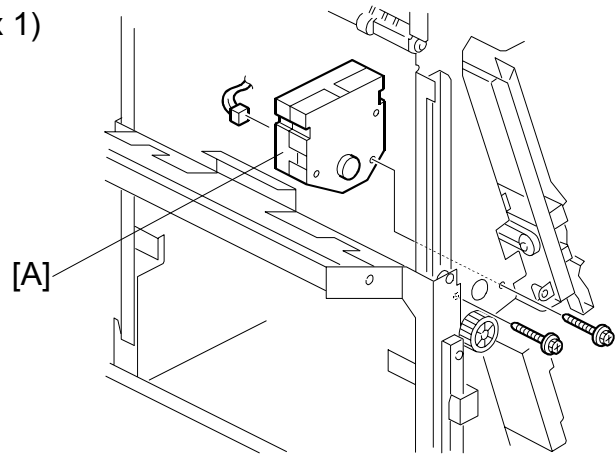
1.4.3 STAPLER TRAY PAPER SENSOR

1. Stapler tray paper sensor [A] (🔌 x 1)



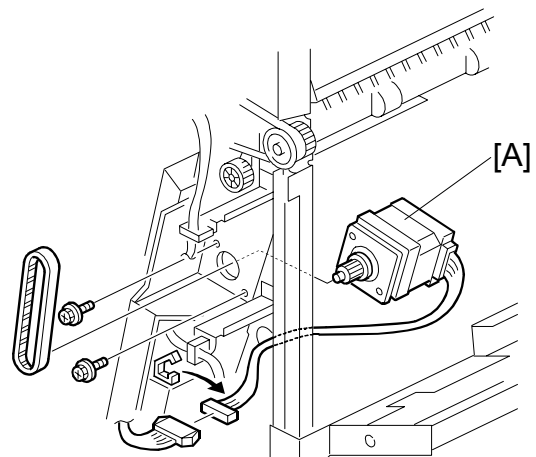
1.4.4 LOWER TRAY LIFT MOTOR

1. Lower tray lift motor [A] (⚙️ x 2, 📡 x 1)



1.4.5 STACK FEED-OUT MOTOR

1. Stack feed-out motor [A] (⚙️ x 2, 📡 x 1)



1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

2. TROUBLESHOOTING

2.1 JAM DETECTION

Mode		Jam	Content
Shift	Staple		
✓	✓	Entrance sensor: On check	The entrance sensor does not turn on within the normal time after the main machine exit sensor turns on
✓	✓	Entrance sensor: Off check	The entrance sensor does not turn off within the normal time after it turns on.
✓		Lower tray exit sensor: On check	The lower tray exit sensor does not turn on within the normal time after the entrance sensor turns off.
✓		Tray exit sensor: Off check	The tray exit sensor does not turn off within the normal time after it turns on.
	✓	Stapler tray entrance sensor: On check	The stapler tray entrance sensor does not switch on within the normal time after the entrance sensor switched on.
	✓	Stapler tray entrance sensor: Off check	The staple tray entrance sensor does not turn off within the normal time after it turns on.
	✓	Lower tray exit sensor: On check	The lower exit sensor does not turn on after the feed-out pawl feeds out the outputs.
	✓	Lower tray exit sensor: Off check	The lower exit sensor turns on when the feed-out pawl returns to its home position after feeding out the outputs.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCH SETTINGS

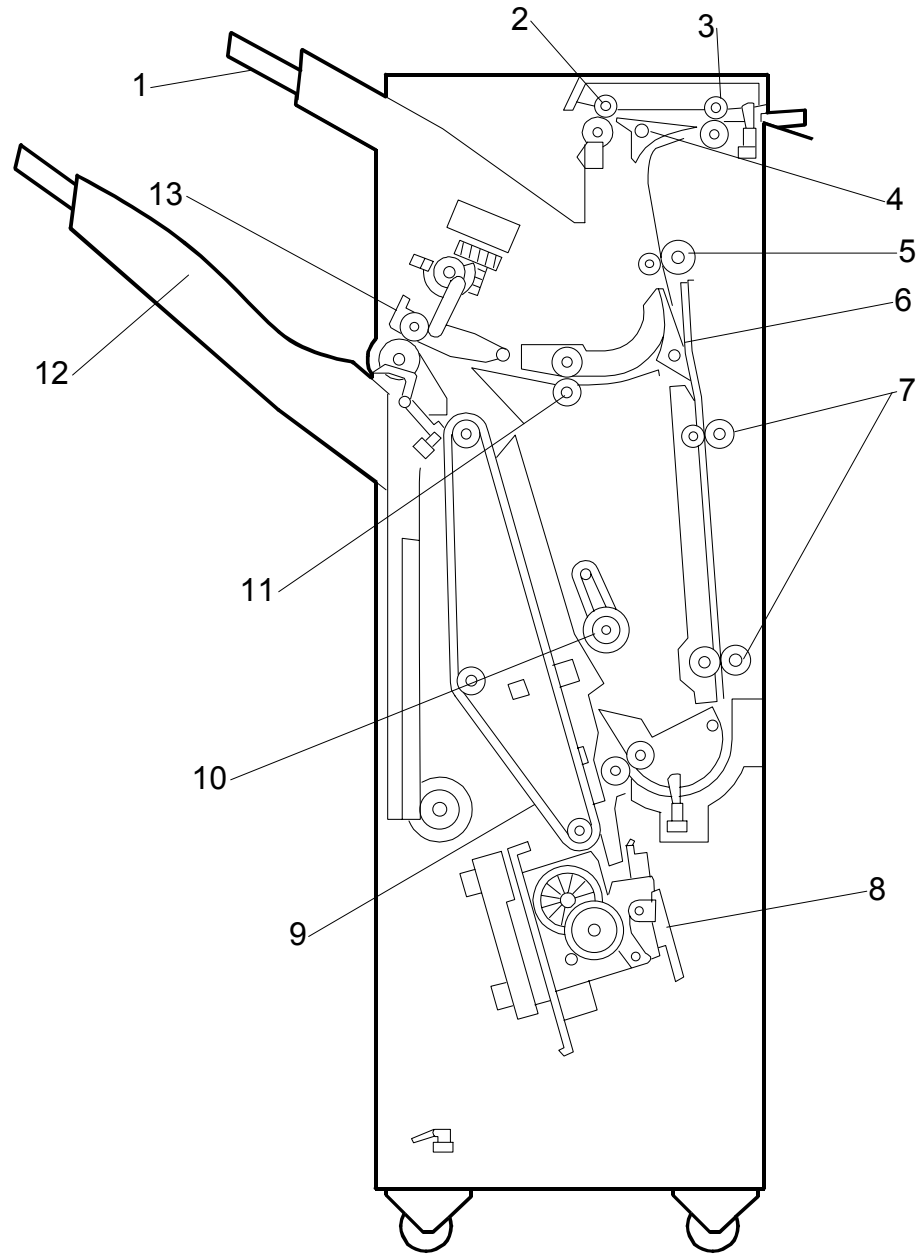
The DIP switches should not be set to any combination other than those listed in the table below.

SW100		Description
1	2	
0	0	Normal operation mode (Default)
1	0	Packing mode.

- Before packing the machine, do the following: Set switch 1 to 1 then back to zero. The lower tray moves to the lowest position. Then turn off the main switch.
- After unpacking the machine, do the following: After turning the main switch back on, the lower tray returns to home position automatically.

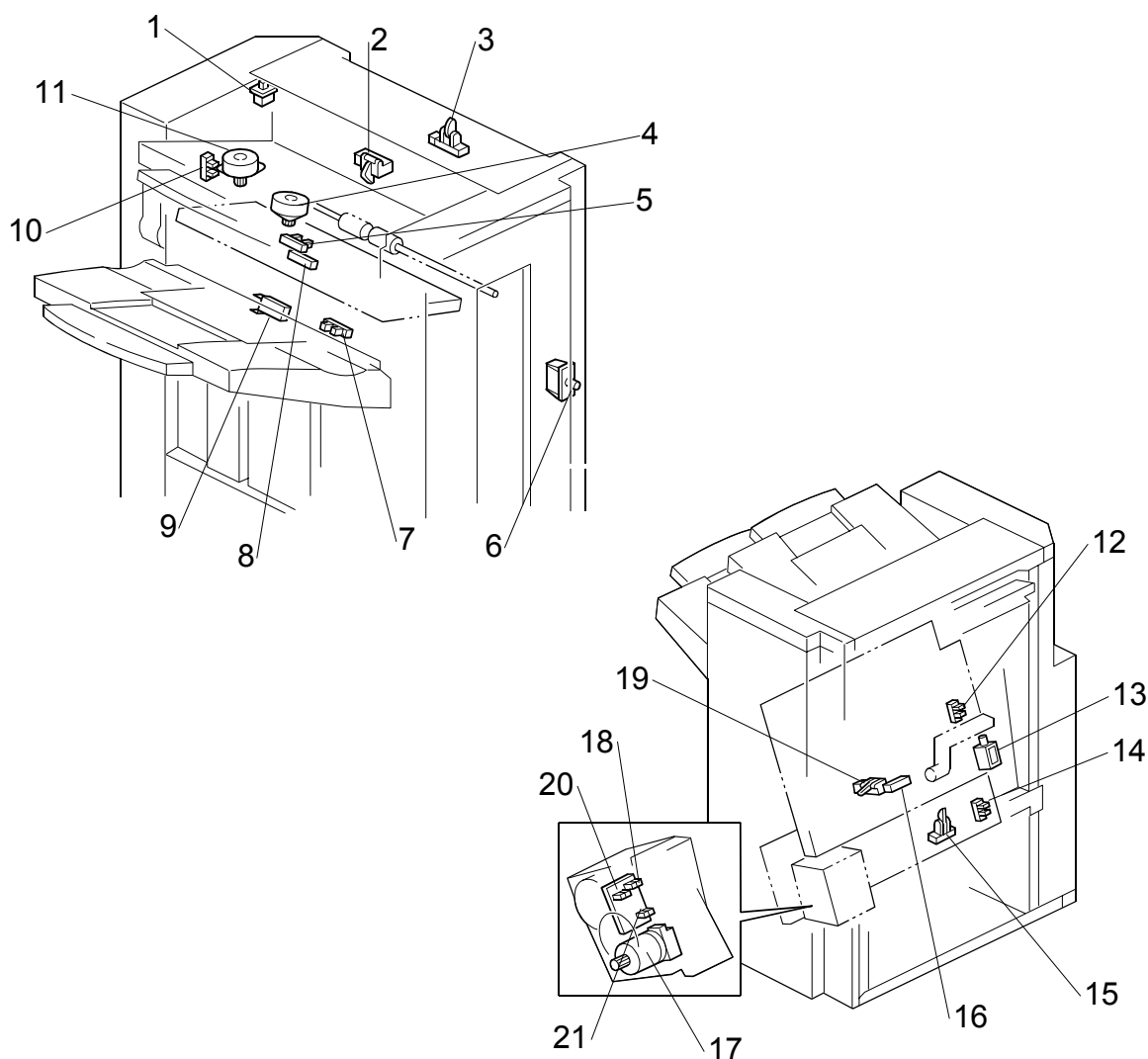
4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

4.1 GENERAL LAYOUT



1. Upper Tray	8. Stapler
2. Upper Tray Exit Roller	9. Stack Feed-out Belt
3. Entrance Roller	10. Positioning Roller
4. Tray Junction Gate	11. Shift Roller
5. Upper Transport Roller	12. Lower Tray
6. Stapler Junction Gate	13. Lower Tray Exit Roller
7. Lower Transport Rollers	

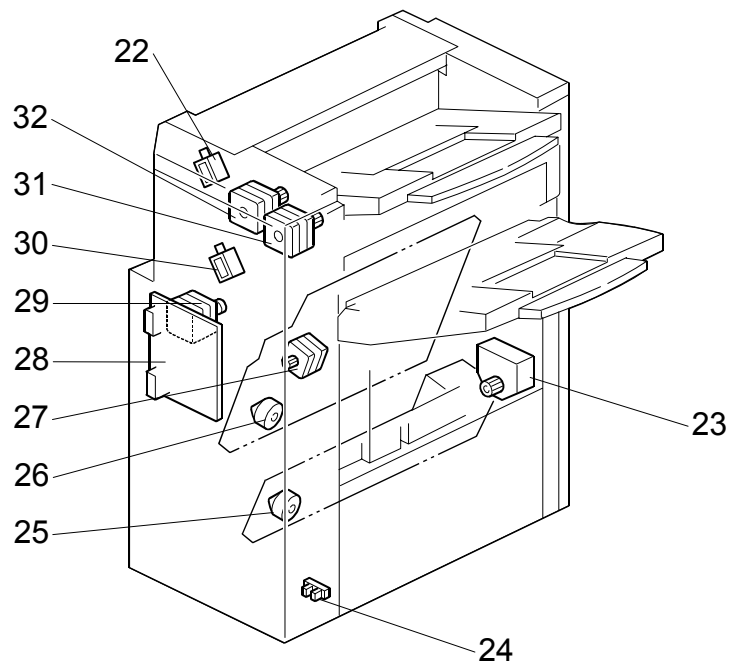
4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

1. Upper Cover Switch	12. Jogger Fence HP Sensor
2. Paper Limit Sensor	13. Positioning Roller Solenoid
3. Entrance Sensor	14. Stapler HP Sensor
4. Exit Guide Plate Motor	15. Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor
5. Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor	16. Stapler Tray Paper Sensor
6. Front Door Safety Switch	17. Stapler Hammer Motor
7. Stack Height Sensor	18. Staple Sheet Sensor
8. Lower Tray Exit Sensor	19. Stack Feed-out Belt HP Sensor
9. Lower Tray Upper Limit Switch	20. Stapler Rotation HP Sensor
10. Shift HP Sensor	21. Staple Sensor
11. Shift Motor	

ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



- 22. Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
- 23. Lower Tray Lift Motor
- 24. Lower Tray Lower Limit Sensor
- 25. Stapler Motor
- 26. Jogger Fence Motor
- 27. Stack Feed-out Motor
- 28. Main Board
- 29. Lower Transport Motor
- 30. Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
- 31. Exit Motor
- 32. Upper Transport Motor

4.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

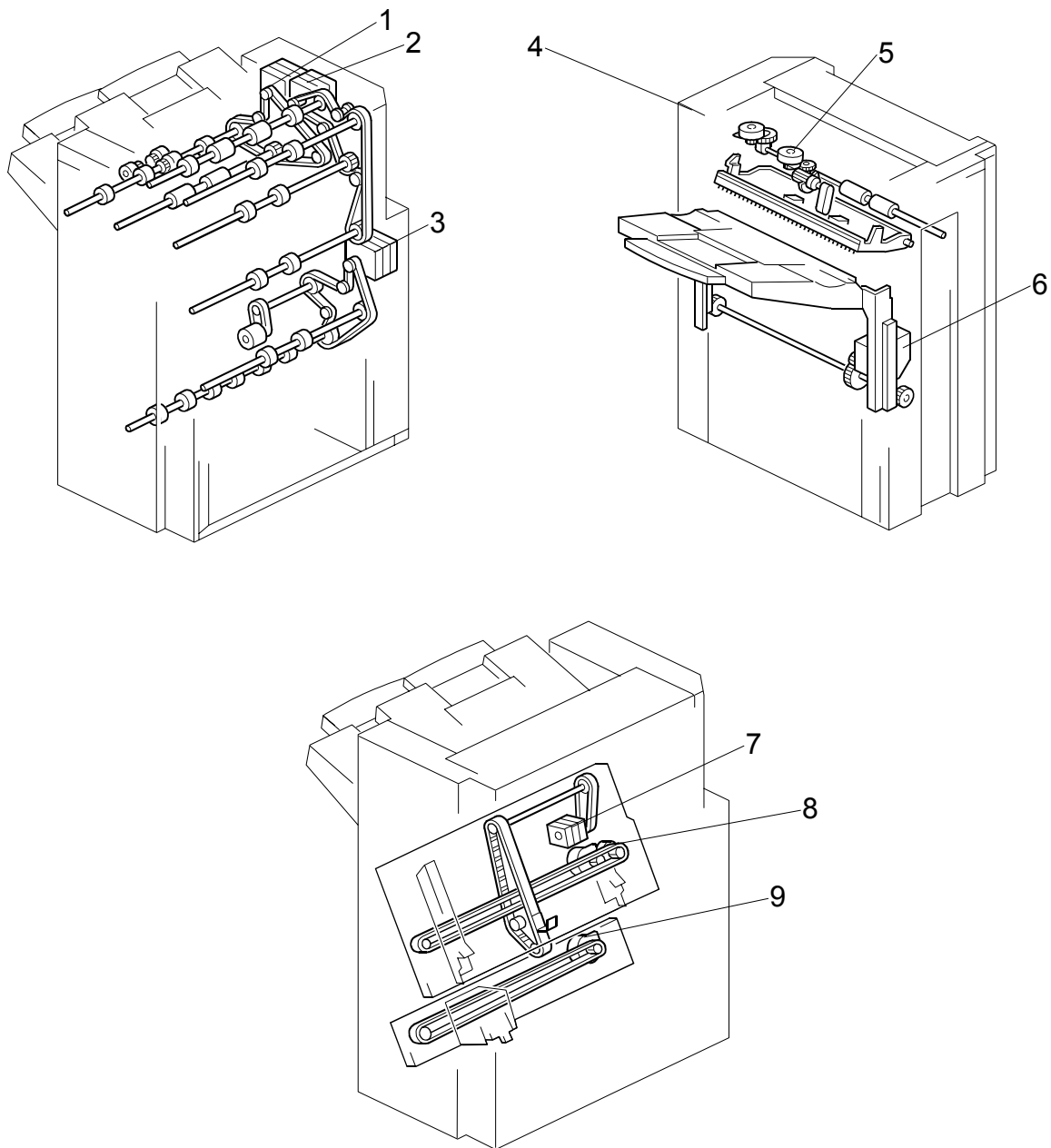
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Upper Transport	Drives the entrance roller and upper transport rollers.	32
M2	Lower Transport	Drives the lower transport rollers and the positioning roller.	29
M3	Jogger Fence	Drives the jogger fences.	26
M4	Staple Hammer	Drives the staple hammer.	17
M5	Stack Feed-out	Drives the stack feed-out belt.	27
M6	Exit Guide Plate	Opens and closes the exit guide plate.	4
M7	Exit	Drives the exit roller.	31
M8	Lower Tray Lift	Moves the lower tray up or down.	23
M9	Shift	Moves the shift roller from side to side.	11
M10	Stapler	Moves the stapler unit from side to side.	25
Sensors			
S1	Entrance	Detects copy paper entering the finisher and checks for misfeeds.	3
S2	Paper Limit	Detects when the paper stack height in the upper tray is at its limit.	2
S3	Jogger Fence HP	Detects when the jogger fence is at home position.	12
S4	Shift HP	Detects when the shift roller is at home position.	10
S5	Stack Feed-out Belt HP	Detects when the stack feed-out belt is at home position.	19
S6	Stapler HP	Detects when the stapler is at home position.	14
S7	Exit Guide Plate HP	Detects when the exit guide plate is at home position.	5
S8	Stapler Tray Entrance	Detects copy paper entering the stapler tray and checks for misfeeds.	15
S9	Lower Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds.	8
S10	Stack Height	Detects the top of the copy paper stack.	7
S11	Lower Tray Lower Limit	Detects when the lower tray is at its lower limit position.	24
S12	Stapler Tray Paper	Detects when there is copy paper in the stapler tray.	16
S13	Staple Sheet	Detects the leading edge of the staple sheet.	18
S14	Stapler Rotation HP	Detects when the staple hammer is at home position.	20
S15	Staple	Detects whether there are staples in the staple cartridge.	21
Solenoids			
SOL1	Tray Junction Gate	Drives the tray junction gate.	22
SOL2	Stapler Junction Gate	Drives the stapler junction gate.	30

1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

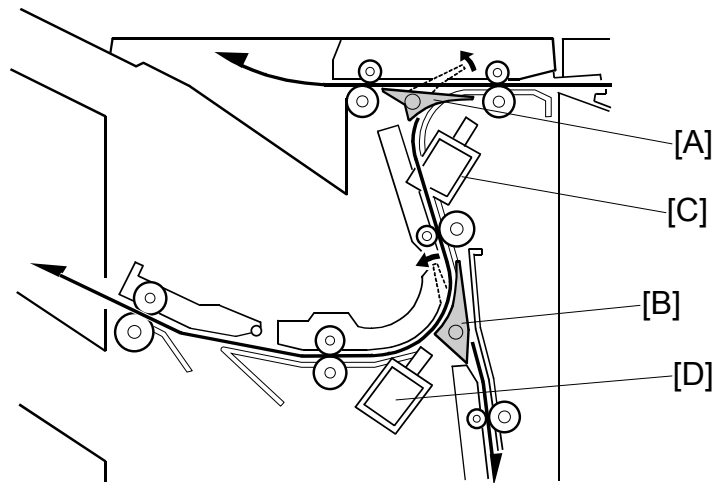
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
SOL3	Positioning Roller	Moves the positioning roller.	13
Switches			
SW1	Lower Tray Upper Limit	Detects when the lower tray is at its upper limit position.	9
SW2	Front Door Safety	Cuts the dc power when the front door is opened.	6
SW3	Upper Cover	Cuts the dc power when the upper cover is opened.	1
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the finisher and communicates with the copier/printer.	28

4.4 DRIVE LAYOUT



1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

4.5 JUNCTION GATES



Depending on the finishing mode, the copies are directed up, straight through, or down by the combination of the tray junction gate [A] and stapler junction gate [B]. These gates are controlled by the tray junction gate solenoid [C] and stapler junction gate solenoid [D].

Upper Tray Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid remains off. The copies go up to the upper tray.

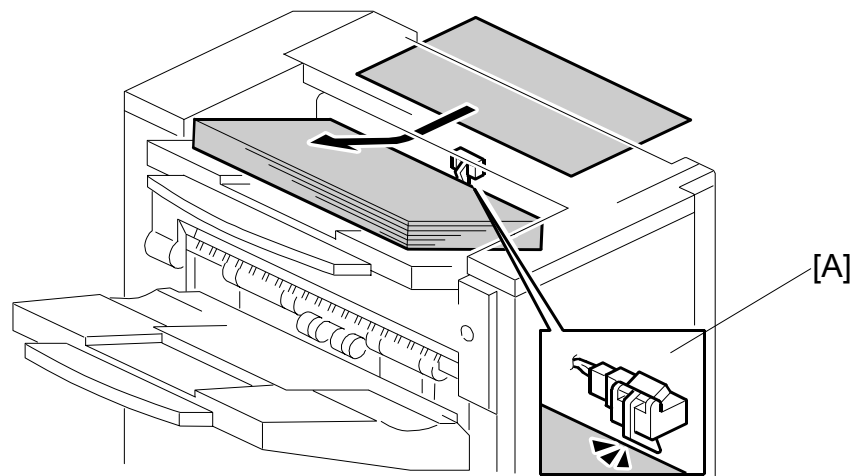
Sort/Stack Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid turns on and the stapler junction gate solenoid remains off. The copies are sent to the lower tray directly.

Staple Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid and the stapler junction gate solenoid both turn on. The copies go down to the jogger unit.

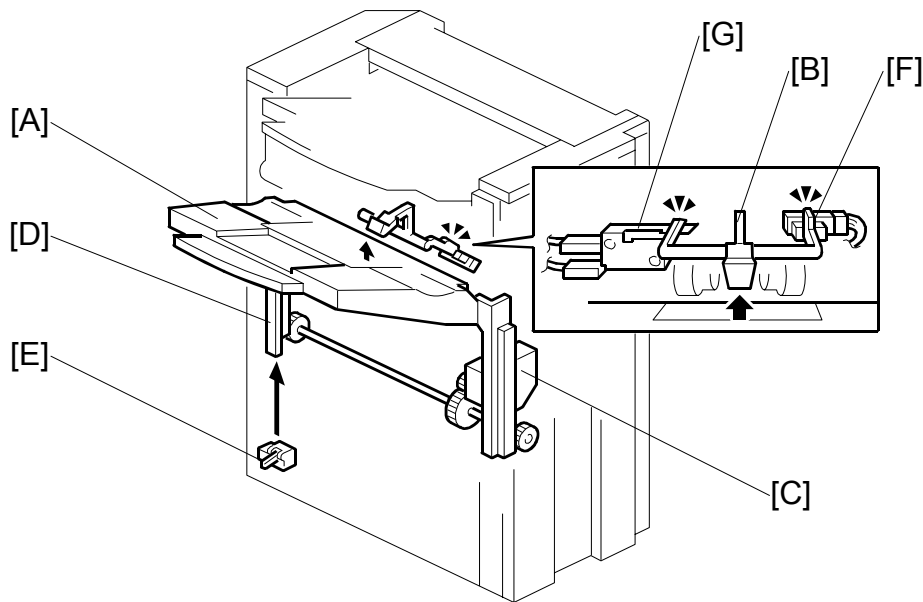
4.6 UPPER TRAY



When the paper limit sensor [A] switches on during feed-out for each of three consecutive sheets of paper, paper overflow is detected.

1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

4.7 LOWER TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISMS



The vertical position of the lower tray [A] depends on the height of the copied paper stack on the lower tray. The stack height sensor feeler [B] contacts the top of the stack, and the lower tray lift motor [C] controls the tray height.

When the lower tray reaches its lowest possible position, the actuator [D] turns on the lower tray lower limit sensor [E], and copying stops.

Tray Up

When the copy paper on the tray is removed, the stack height sensor [F] turns off and the tray lifts up. Then, the tray stops when the sensor turns on again (the tray pushes up the feeler).

If the stack height sensor fails, the lower tray upper limit switch [G] detects the tray and stops the motor. This is a safety measure against stack height sensor failure.

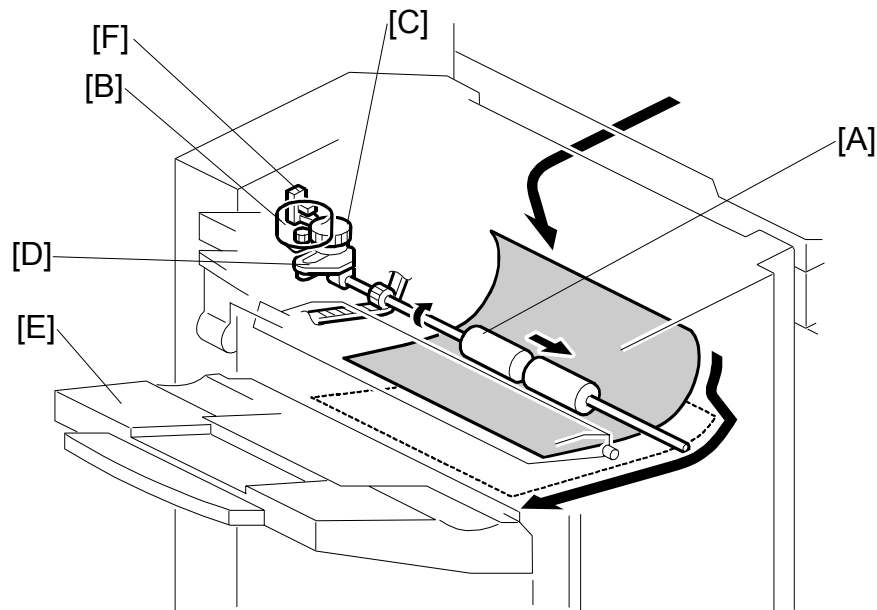
Sort/Stack Mode (Tray Down)

Every five sheets of paper, the tray goes down until the sensor turns off again. Then, it goes up until the sensor is on again.

Staple Mode (Tray Down)

After a stapled copy is fed out, the tray goes up for 220 ms and stops for 300 ms. Then, it goes down for 1 second, waits for 500 ms, then goes up until the sensor turns on.

4.8 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM



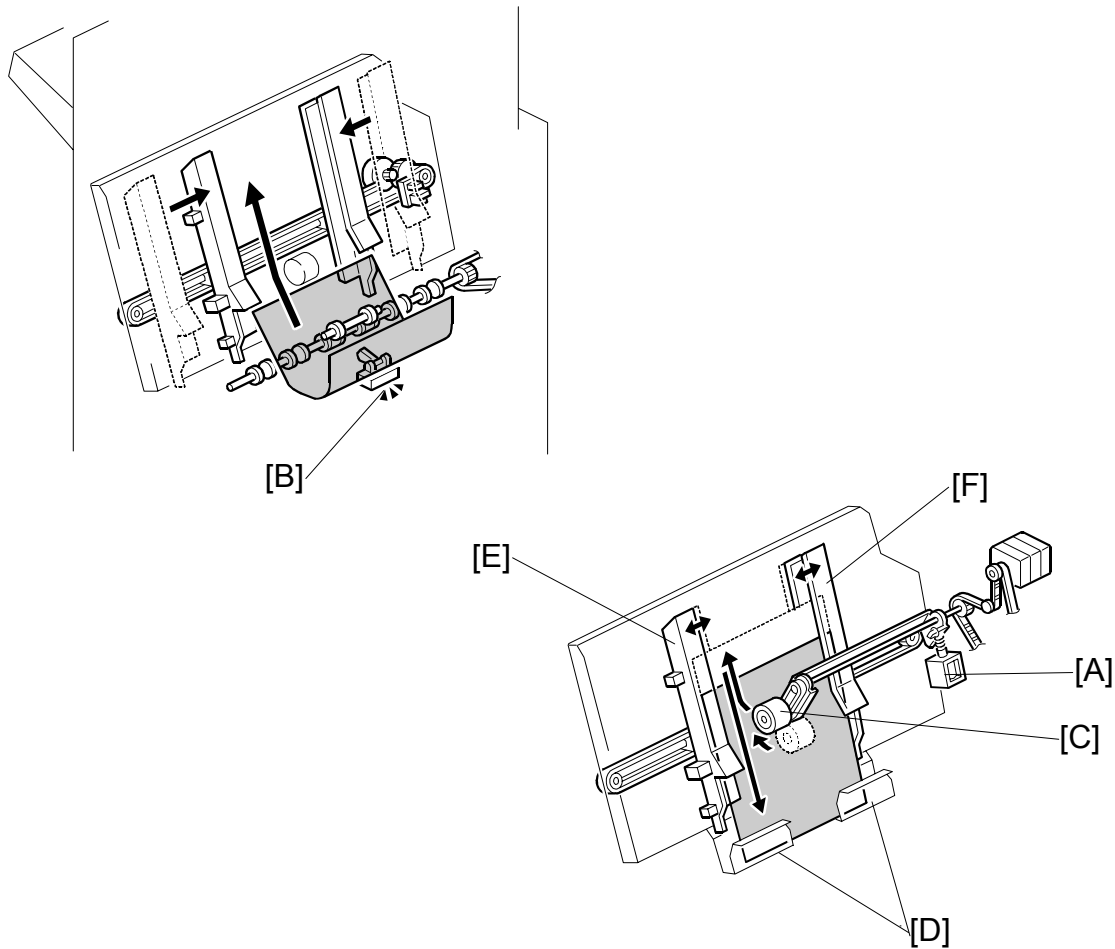
In the sort/stack mode, the shift roller [A] moves from side to side to separate the sets of copies.

The horizontal position of the shift roller is controlled by the shift motor [B] and the shift gear disk [C]. After the trailing edge of the copy passes the upper transport roller, the shift motor turns on, driving the shift gear disk and the link [D].

After the paper is delivered to the lower tray [E], the shift roller moves to its home position, which is detected by the shift HP sensor [F]. Then, when the trailing edge of the next copy passes the upper transport roller, the shift roller shifts again. This operation is done every sheet.

When the trailing edge of each page in the next set of copies passes the upper transport roller, the shift roller shifts in the opposite direction.

4.9 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM

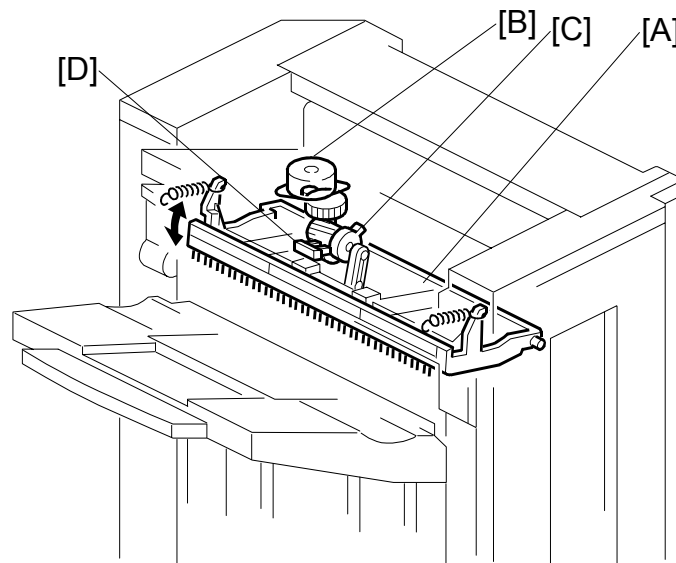


In staple mode, each sheet of copy paper is vertically and horizontally aligned when it arrives in the jogger unit.

For the vertical paper alignment, the positioning roller solenoid [A] turns on shortly after the stapler tray entrance sensor [B] turns off, and the positioning roller [C] pushes the copy against the bottom of the stack stopper [D].

For the horizontal paper alignment, the jogger front fence [E] and the rear fence [F] move to the waiting position, which is 18 mm away from the side of the paper. When aligning the paper vertically, the jogger fence moves in 14 mm from the waiting position. After the vertical position has been aligned, the jogger fence pushes the paper 4 mm against the rear fence to align the paper horizontally. Then the jogger fence moves back to the previous position.

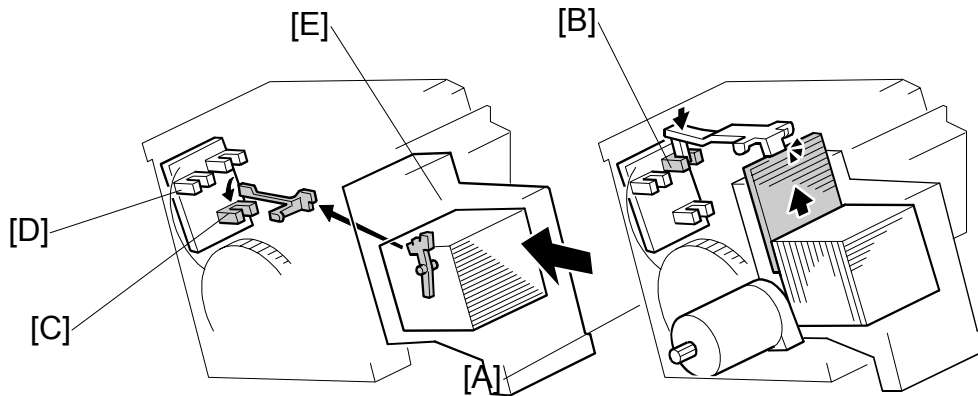
4.10 EXIT GUIDE PLATE



When stacking a large size of paper (such as A3, DLT) in the jogger unit, the leading edge of the paper reaches the exit rollers. To prevent the paper from running into the exit rollers and not being aligned correctly, the exit guide plate [A] is moved up to make a gap between the exit rollers. This operation is done for all paper sizes, but is only needed for the larger sizes.

The exit guide plate motor [B] and exit roller release cam [C] control the exit guide plate movement. When the exit guide plate motor starts, the cam turns and the exit guide plate moves up. When stapling is finished, the exit guide plate motor turns on again to close the exit guide plate. When the exit guide plate HP sensor [D] turns on, the motor stops.

4.11 STAPLER MECHANISM



The staple hammer motor [A] drives the staple hammer.

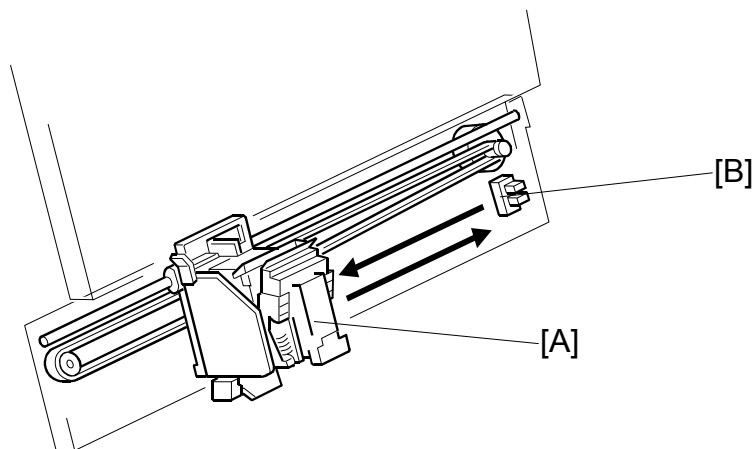
The staple sheet sensor [B] detects the leading edge of the staple sheet at the stapling position to prevent the hammer from operating if there are no staples at the stapling position.

If there is no staple cartridge in the stapler unit or no staples in the staple cartridge, staple end is indicated on the operation panel. The stapler sensor [C] detects this.

The stapler rotation HP sensor [D] checks whether the staple hammer mechanism returns to home position after each stack has been stapled.

When excessive load is applied to the staple hammer motor, the copier detects a staple jam. When a staple jam has occurred, the jammed staple is inside the staple cartridge [E]. Therefore, the jammed staple can be removed easily after pulling out the staple cartridge.

4.12 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM



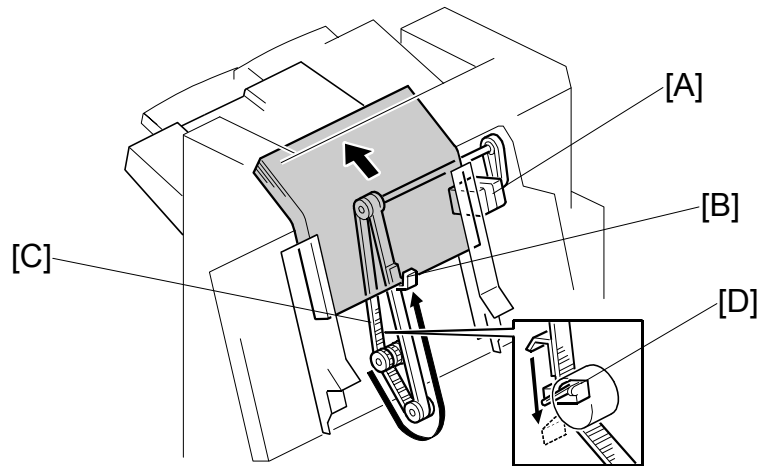
The stapler motor moves the stapler [A] from side to side. After the start key is pressed, the stapler moves from its home position to the stapling position.

If two-staple-position mode is selected, the stapler moves to the front stapling position first, then moves to the rear stapling position. However, for the next copy set, it staples in the reverse order (at the rear side first, then at the front side).

After the job is completed, the stapler moves back to its home position. The stapler HP sensor [B] detects this.

1000-Sheet
Finisher
B408

4.13 PAPER FEED-OUT MECHANISM



After the copies have been stapled, the stack feed-out motor [A] starts. The pawl [B] on the stack feed-out belt [C] transports the set of stapled copies up and feeds it to the shift roller. The shift roller takes over stack feed-out after the leading edge reaches this roller.

Just before the stapled stack passes through the lower tray exit sensor, the stack-feed-out motor turns off until the shift rollers have completely fed the stack out to the lower tray. Then, the stack-feed-out motor turns on again until the pawl [B] actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor [D].

BRIDGE UNIT

B538

BRIDGE UNIT B538

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION.....	1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	2
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	3
1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION.....	3
1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT	4
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTION	5
2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM.....	5
3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	6
3.1 EXIT SENSOR REPLACEMENT.....	6

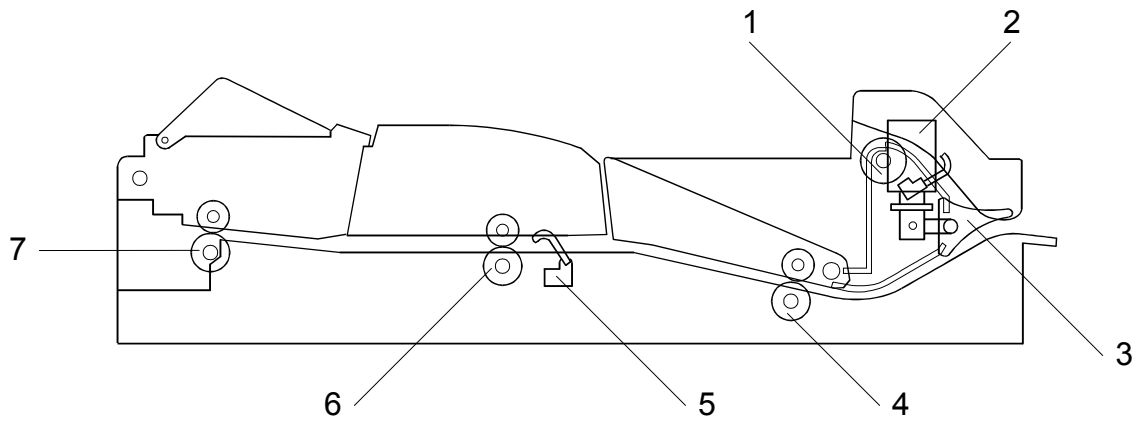
1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:	Standard sizes
	A6 lengthwise to A3
	HLT to DLT
	Non-standard sizes
	Width: 100 to 305 mm
	Length: 148 to 432 mm
Paper Weight:	52 g/m ² ~ 135 g/m ² , 16 lb ~ 42 lb

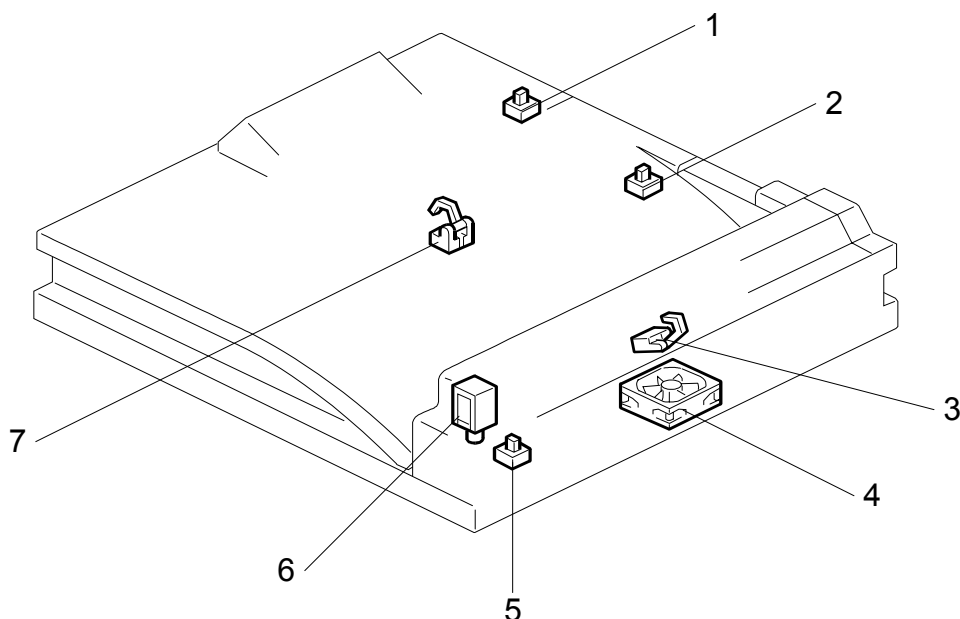


1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Upper Exit Roller	5. Relay Sensor
2. Junction Gate Solenoid	6. 2nd Transport Roller
3. Junction Gate	7. Left Exit Roller
4. 1st Transport Roller	

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT

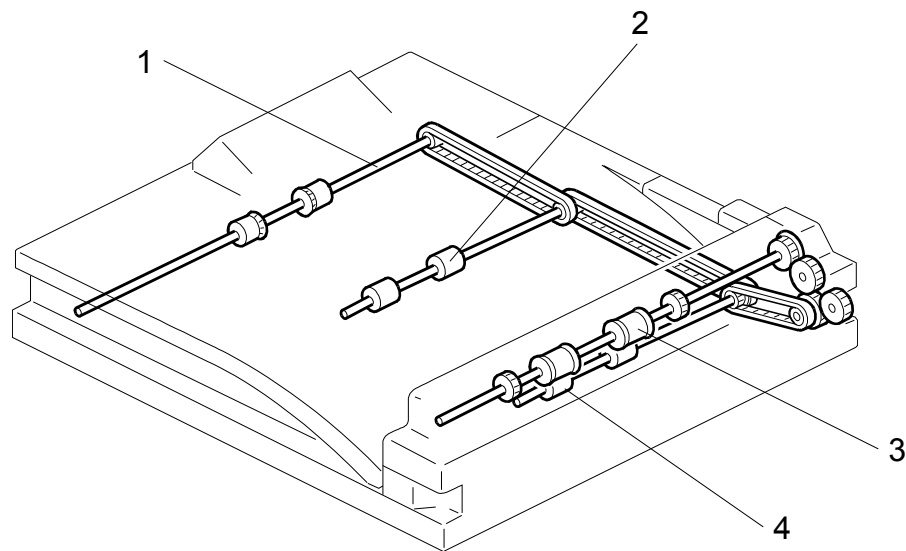


1. Left Guide Switch	5. Tray Exit Unit Switch
2. Right Guide Switch	6. Junction Gate Solenoid
3. Tray Exit Sensor	7. Relay Sensor
4. Cooling Fan Motor	

1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Cooling Fan	Cools the transport unit.	4
Sensors			
S1	Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds.	3
S2	Relay	Checks for misfeeds.	7
Switches			
SW1	Tray Exit Unit	Detects when the tray exit unit is opened.	5
SW2	Right Guide	Detects when the right guide is opened.	2
SW3	Left Guide	Detects when the left guide is opened.	1
Solenoids			
SOL1	Junction Gate	Moves the junction gate to direct the paper to the upper or left tray.	6

1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Left Exit Roller

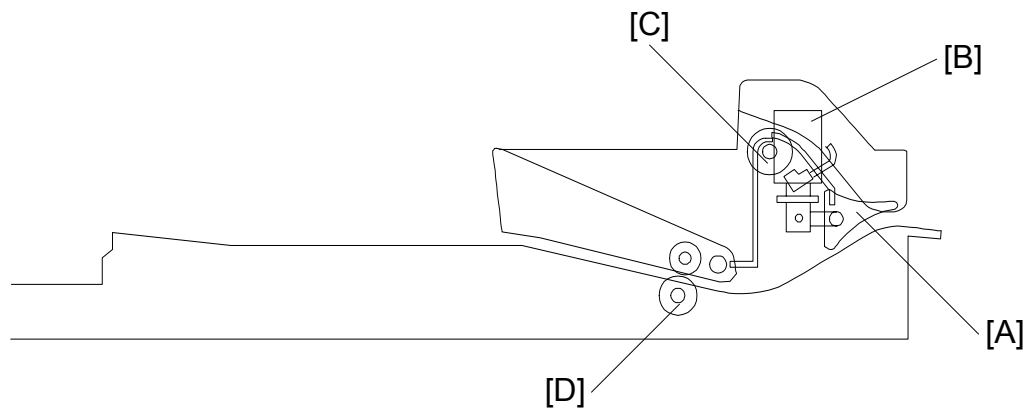
2. 2nd Transport Roller

3. Upper Exit Roller

4. 1st Transport Roller

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTION

2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM



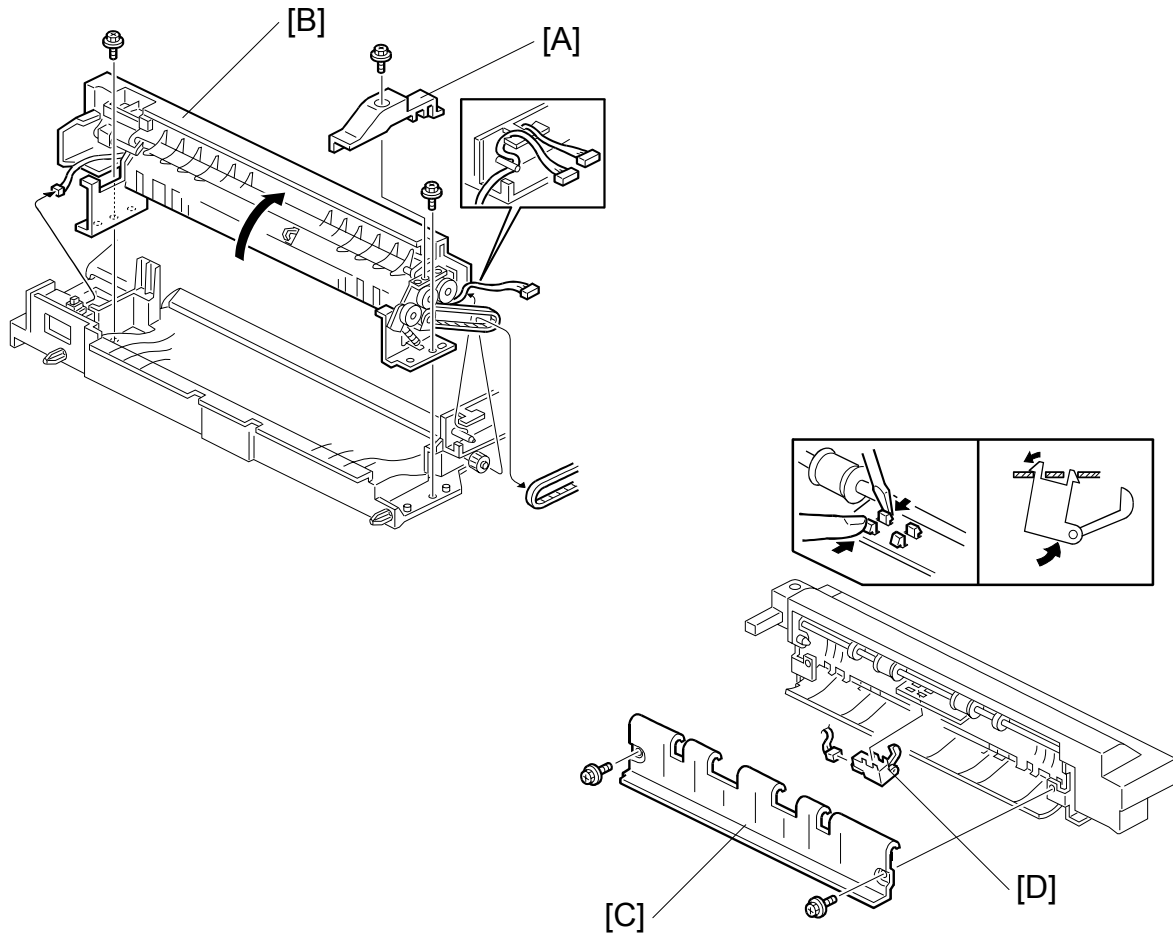
Depending on the selected mode, the copies are directed up or down by the junction gate [A], which is controlled by the junction gate solenoid [B].

When the upper tray is selected, the junction gate solenoid turns on and the paper is sent to the upper tray through the upper exit roller [C].

When the left tray or the finisher is selected, the junction gate stays off and the paper is sent to the left tray or the finisher through the transport rollers [D] and the left exit roller.

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 EXIT SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the whole unit from the copier.
2. Remove the rear upper cover [A] (1 screw).
3. Remove the upper cover unit [B] (2 screws, 2 connectors).
4. Remove the exit guide plate [C] (2 screws).
5. Replace the exit sensor [D] (1 connector).

PAPER TRAY UNIT
B542

PAPER TRAY UNIT B542

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 COVER REPLACEMENT	1
Right Cover	1
Rear Cover	1
1.2 ROLLER REPLACEMENT	2
1.2.1 PAPER FEED, SEPARATION, AND PICK-UP ROLLERS	2
Pick-up Roller	2
Paper Feed Roller	2
Separation Roller	2
1.3 TRAY MOTOR REPLACEMENT	3
1.4 PAPER FEED AND RELAY Clutch REPLACEMENT	4
1.5 Paper FEED UNIT REPLACEMENT	5
Upper Paper Feed Unit	6
Lower Paper Feed Unit	6
1.6 PAPER END, TRAY LIFT, AND RELAY SENSOR REPLACEMENT	7
Paper End Sensor	7
Tray Lift Sensor	7
Relay Sensor	7
2. SERVICE TABLES	8
2.1 DIP SWITCHES	8
2.2 test points	8
2.3 switches	8
2.4 fuses	8
3. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONs	9
3.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	9
3.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	10
3.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION	11
3.4 DRIVE LAYOUT	12
3.5 Pick-up and separation roller release mechanism	13
3.6 Paper lift mechanism	14
3.7 Paper end detection	16
3.8 Paper Height Detection	17
4. SPECIFICATIONS	18

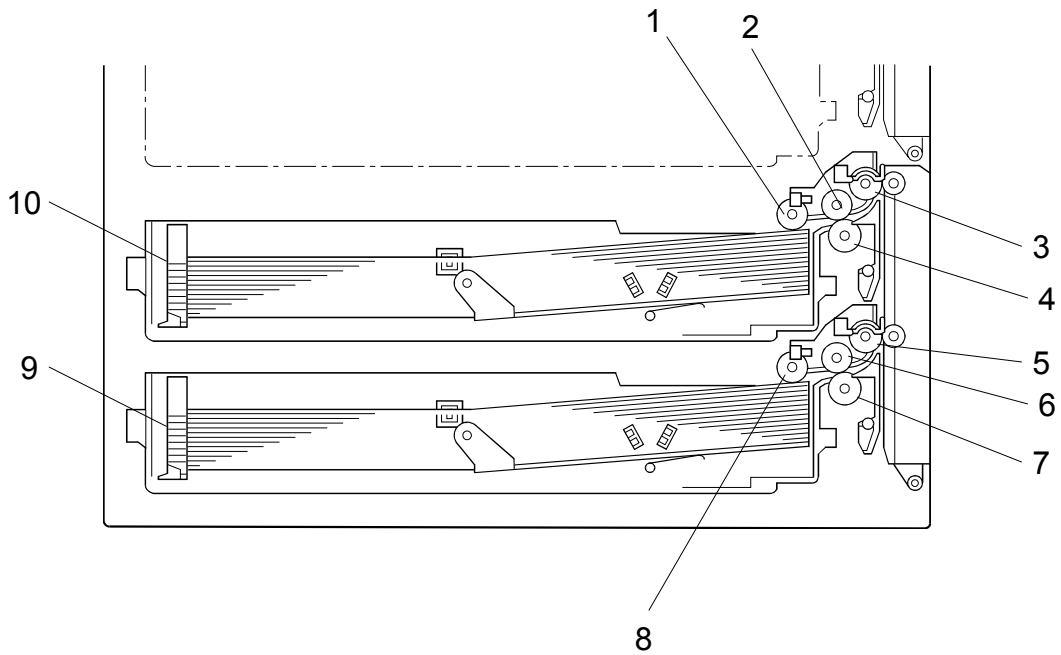
1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:	A5 lengthwise to A3 HLT lengthwise to DLT
Paper Weight:	60 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² , 16 lb ~ 28 lb
Tray Capacity:	500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb) x 2
Paper Feed System:	FRR (Feed and Reverse Roller)
Paper Height Detection:	4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Near end)
Power Source:	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from the copier) 120 Vac: 115 V version (from the copier) 220 ~ 240 Vac: 224/240 V version (from the copier)
Power Consumption:	50 W
Weight:	25 kg
Size (W x D x H):	540 mm x 600 mm x 270 mm

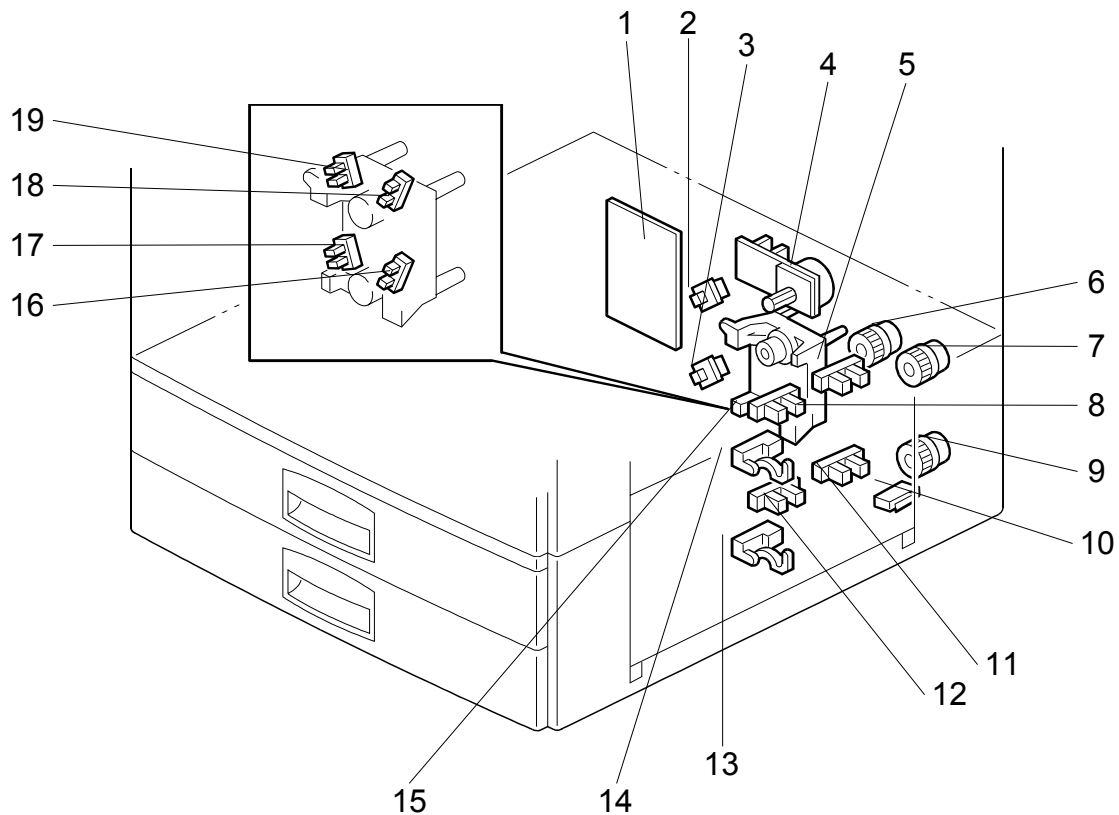
Paper Tray
Unit B542

1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Upper Pick-up Roller	6. Lower Paper Feed Roller
2. Upper Paper Feed Roller	7. Lower Separation Roller
3. Upper Relay Roller	8. Lower Pick-up Roller
4. Upper Separation Roller	9. Lower Tray
5. Lower Relay Roller	10. Upper Tray

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



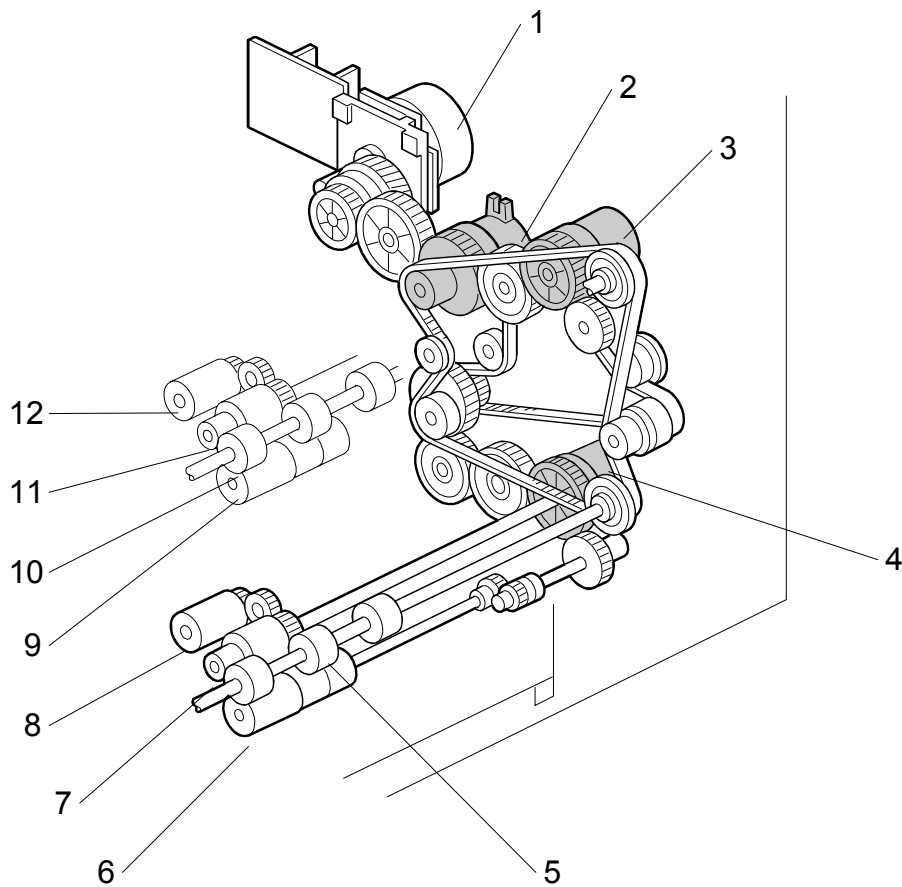
Paper Tray
Unit B542

1. Main Board	11. Lower Lift Sensor
2. Upper Tray Switch	12. Lower Paper End Sensor
3. Lower Tray Switch	13. Lower Relay Sensor
4. Tray Motor	14. Upper Relay Sensor
5. Upper Lift Sensor	15. Upper Paper End Sensor
6. Relay Clutch	16. Lower Paper Height 2 Sensor
7. Upper Paper Feed Clutch	17. Lower Paper Height 1 Sensor
8. Tray Lift Motor	18. Upper Paper Height 2 Sensor
9. Lower Paper Feed Clutch	19. Upper Paper Height 1 Sensor
10. Vertical Guide Switch	

1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Tray	Drives all rollers.	4
M2	Tray Lift	Lifts the upper and lower tray bottom plates (there are two motors in this unit, one for each tray).	15
Sensors			
S1	Upper Lift	Detects when the paper in the upper tray is at the correct feed height.	5
S2	Lower Lift	Detects when the paper in the lower tray is at the correct feed height.	11
S3	Upper Paper End	Informs the copier when the upper tray runs out of paper.	15
S4	Lower Paper End	Informs the copier when the lower tray runs out of paper.	12
S5	Upper Relay	Detects misfeeds.	14
S6	Lower Relay	Detects misfeeds.	13
S7	Upper Paper Height 1	Detects the amount of paper in the upper tray.	17
S8	Upper Paper Height 2	Detects the amount of paper in the upper tray.	16
S9	Lower Paper Height 1	Detects the amount of paper in the lower tray.	19
S10	Lower Paper Height 2	Detects the amount of paper in the lower tray.	18
Switches			
SW1	Upper Tray	Informs the copier when the upper tray is set in the machine.	2
SW2	Lower Tray	Informs the copier when the lower tray is set in the machine.	3
SW3	Vertical Guide	Detects whether the vertical guide is opened or not.	10
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Upper Paper Feed	Starts paper feed from the upper tray.	7
MC2	Lower Paper Feed	Starts paper feed from the lower tray.	9
MC3	Relay	Drives the transport rollers.	6
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the paper tray unit and communicates with copier.	1

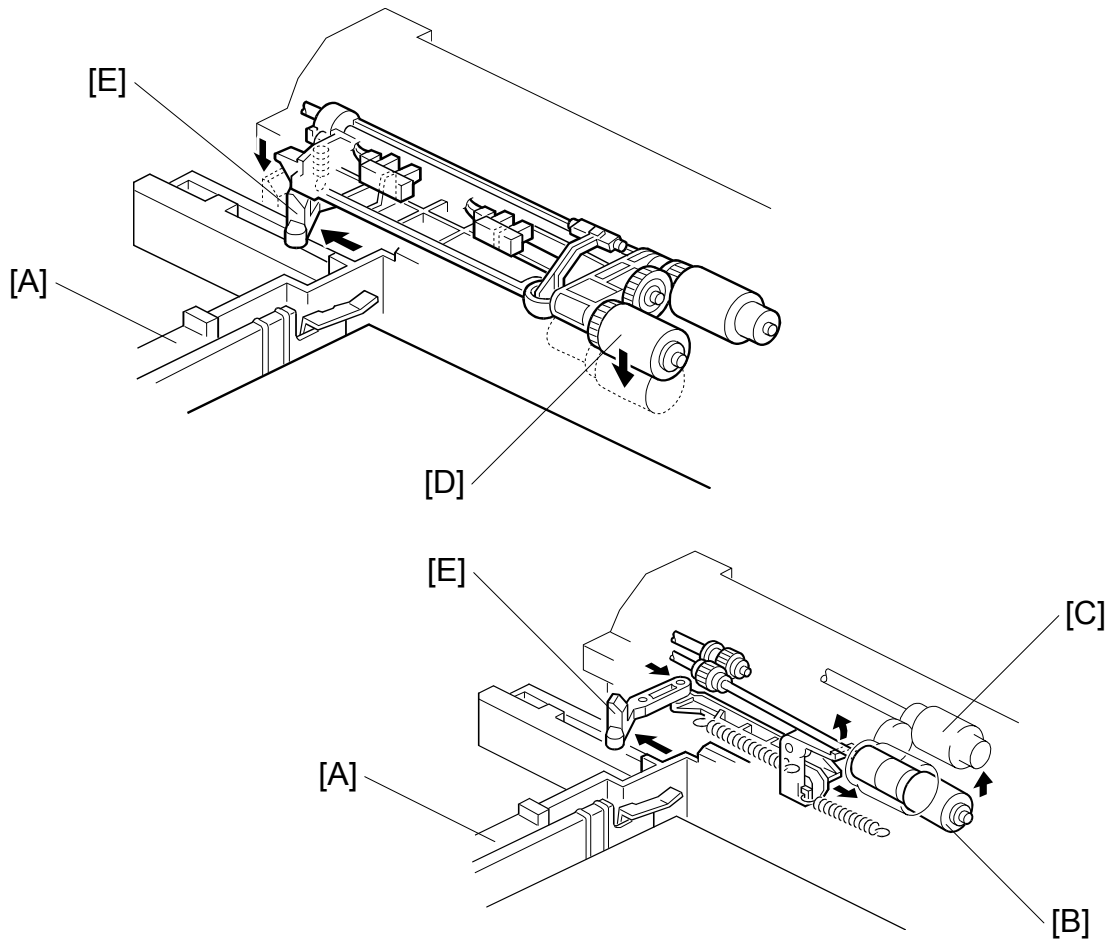
1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Tray Motor	7. Lower Paper Feed Roller
2. Relay Clutch	8. Lower Pick-up Roller
3. Upper Paper Feed Clutch	9. Upper Separation Roller
4. Lower Paper Feed Clutch	10. Upper Relay Roller
5. Lower Relay Roller	11. Upper Paper Feed Roller
6. Lower Separation Roller	12. Upper Pick-up Roller

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

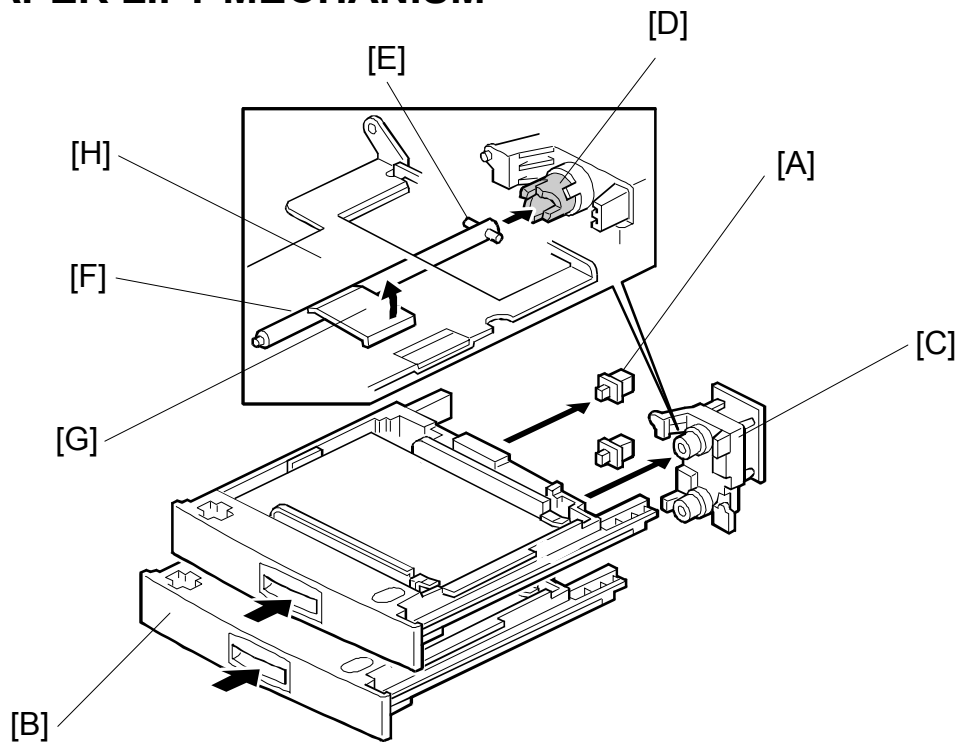
2.1 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION ROLLER RELEASE MECHANISM



When the paper tray [A] is not inside the paper tray unit, the separation roller [B] is away from the paper feed roller [C], and the pick-up roller [D] stays in the upper position.

When the paper tray is put into the paper tray unit, it pushes the release lever [E]. This causes the pick-up roller to move down (top diagram) and the separation roller to move into contact with the paper feed roller (bottom diagram).

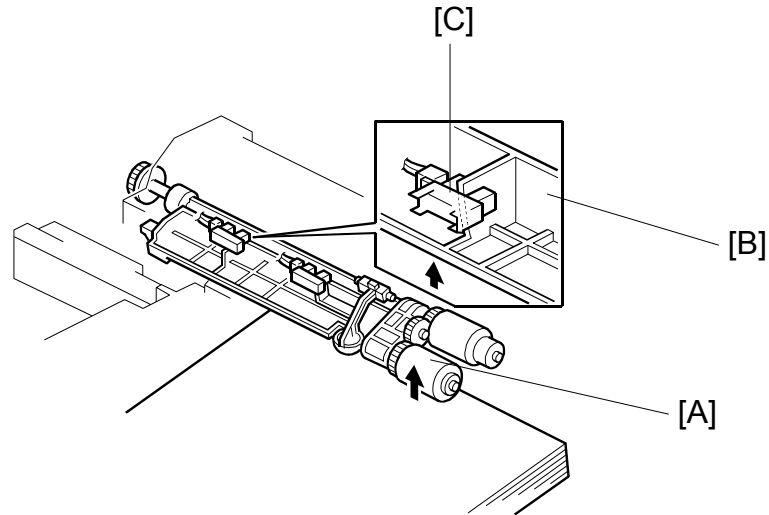
2.2 PAPER LIFT MECHANISM



Paper Tray
Unit B542

The paper tray switch [A] detects when the paper tray [B] is placed in the machine. When the machine detects that the paper tray is in the machine, the tray lift motor [C] rotates and the coupling gear [D] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [E] on the lift arm shaft [F]. Then the tray lift arm [G] lifts the tray bottom plate [H].

PAPER LIFT MECHANISM

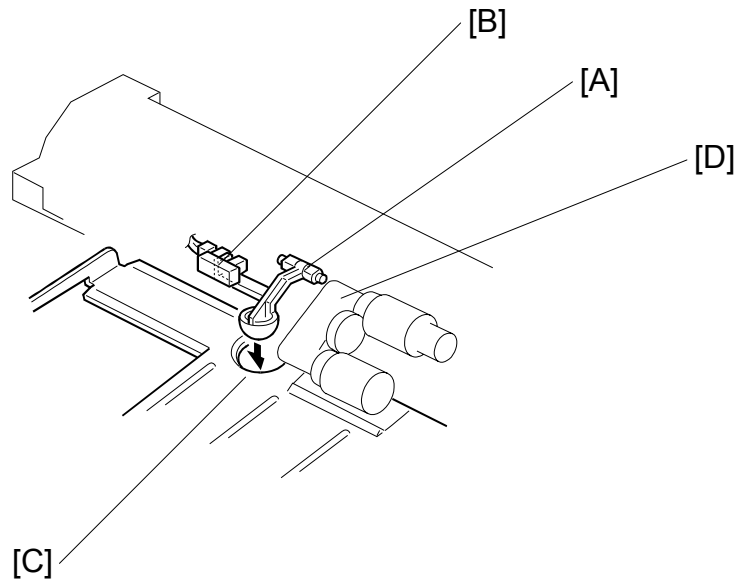


When the paper tray is placed in the machine, the pick-up roller [A] lowers. When the top sheet of paper reaches the proper height for paper feed, the paper pushes up the pick-up roller, and the actuator [B] on the pick-up roller supporter activates the lift sensor [C] to stop the tray lift motor.

After several paper feed cycles, the paper level gradually lowers and the lift sensor is de-activated. The tray lift motor turns on again until this sensor is activated again.

When the tray is drawn out of the machine, the tray lift motor coupling gear disengages the pin on the lift arm shaft, and the tray bottom plate then drops under its own weight.

2.3 PAPER END DETECTION



If there is some paper in the paper tray, the paper end feeler [A] is raised by the paper stack and the paper end sensor [B] is deactivated.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler drops into the cutout [C] in the tray bottom plate and the paper end sensor is activated.

When the paper tray is drawn out, the paper end feeler is lifted up by the pick-up roller supporter [D].

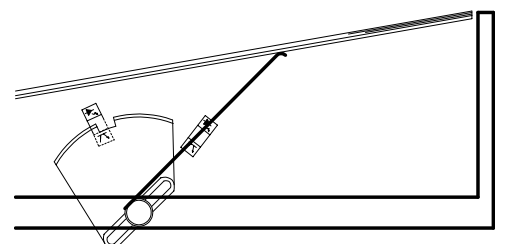
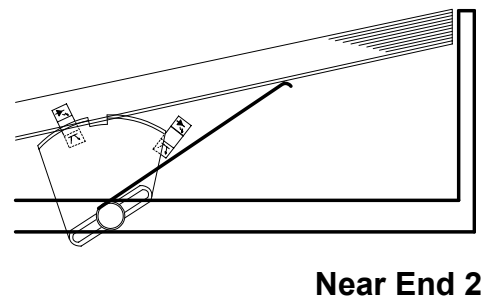
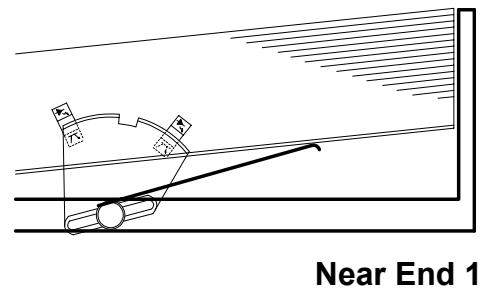
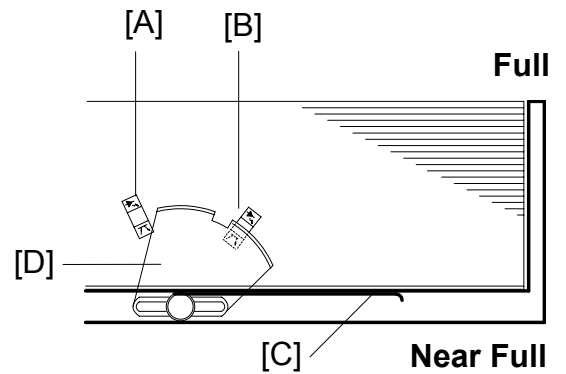
2.4 PAPER HEIGHT DETECTION

The amount of paper in the tray is detected by the combination of two paper height sensors, [A] and [B].

When the amount of 2 paper decreases, the bottom plate pressure lever [C] moves up and the actuator [D] which is mounted on the same drive shaft as the pressure lever rotates.

The following combination of sensor signals is sent to the copier.

Amount of Paper	Paper Height Sensor 1	Paper Height Sensor 2
Full	OFF	ON
Near Full	ON	ON
Near End 1	ON	OFF
Near End 2	OFF	OFF



3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCHES

DPS101								Description
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Default
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Free run, feed from upper tray
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Free run, feed from lower tray
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Free run, feed from upper and lower trays alternately

NOTE: 1) Do not use any other settings.

2) To do the free run, proceed as follows:

1. Remove the paper from the tray (this is because the machine has no jam detection).
2. Set DPS101 for the required free run as shown above.
3. Turn the main power switch off, wait a few seconds, then switch on.
4. Press SW101 to start the free run.
5. To stop the free run, press SW102.

3.2 TEST POINTS

No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP100	(24 V)	+24 V
TP101	(GND)	Ground
TP103	(TXD)	TXD to the copier
TP104	(RXD)	RXD from the copier
TP105	(5 V)	+5 V
TP106	(GND)	Ground

3.3 SWITCHES

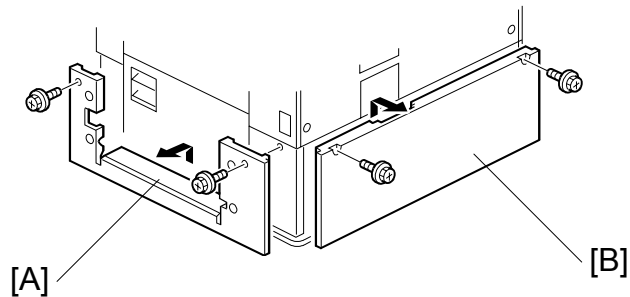
No.	Function
SW101	Starts the free run
SW102	Stops the free run

3.4 FUSES

No.	Function
FU101	Protects the 24 V line.

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT



Right Cover

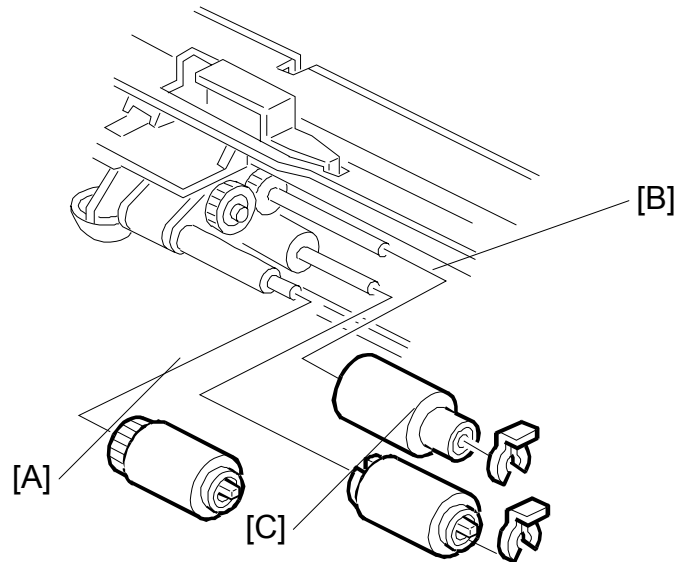
1. Remove the right cover [A] (2 screws).

Rear Cover

1. Remove the rear cover [B] (2 screws).

4.2 ROLLER REPLACEMENT

4.2.1 PAPER FEED, SEPARATION, AND PICK-UP ROLLERS



Paper Tray
Unit B542

1. Remove the paper tray.

Pick-up Roller

2. Replace the pick-up roller [A].

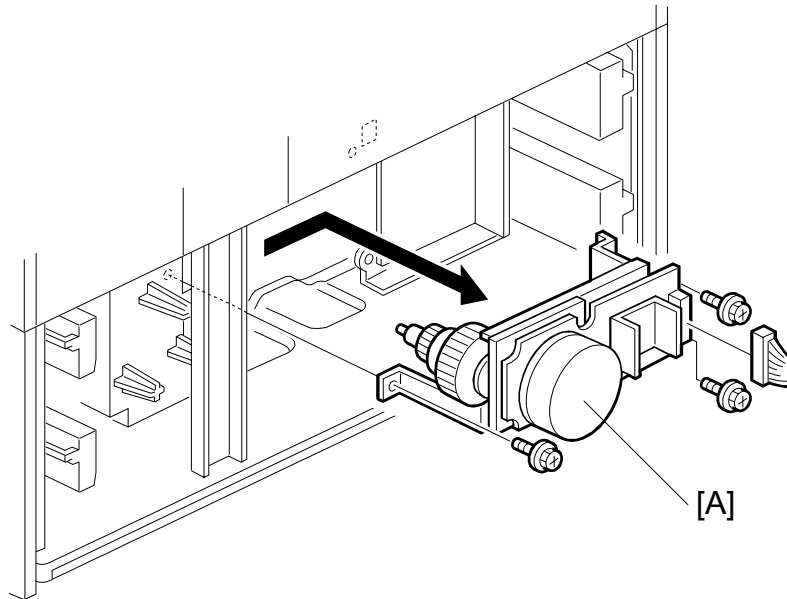
Paper Feed Roller

2. Replace the paper feed roller [B] (1 snap ring).

Separation Roller

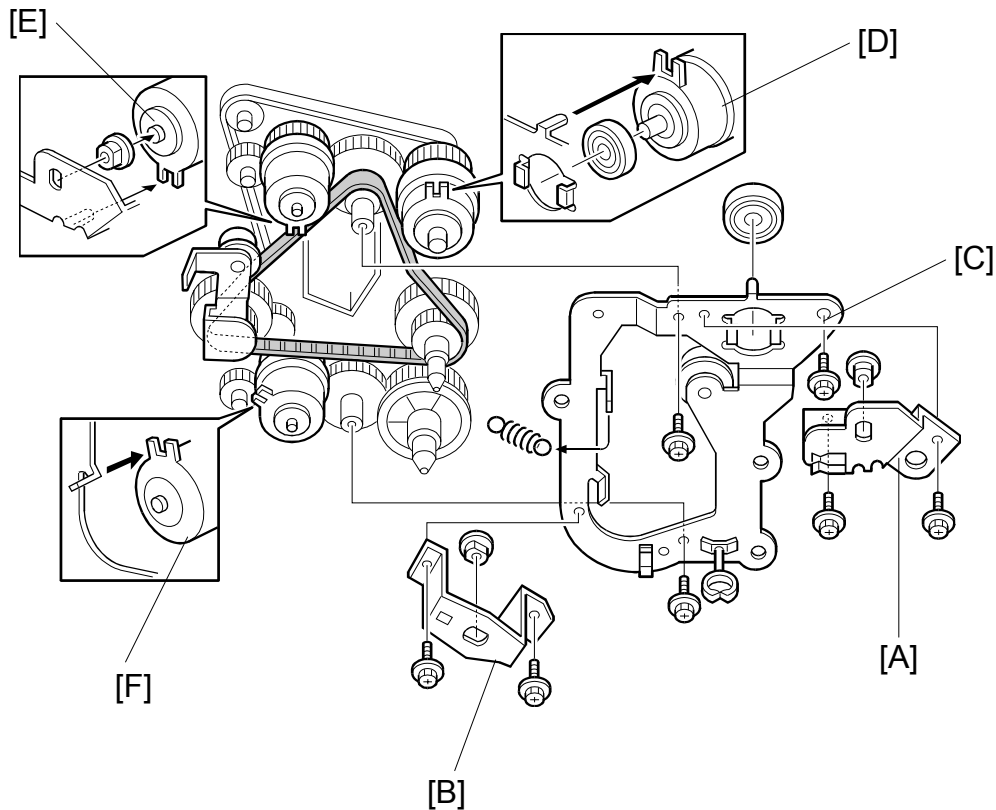
2. Replace the separation roller [C] (1 snap ring).

4.3 TRAY MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the tray motor [A] (1 connector, 3 screws).

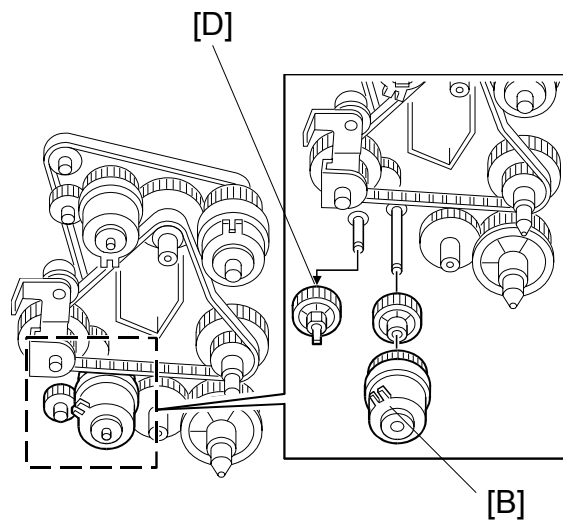
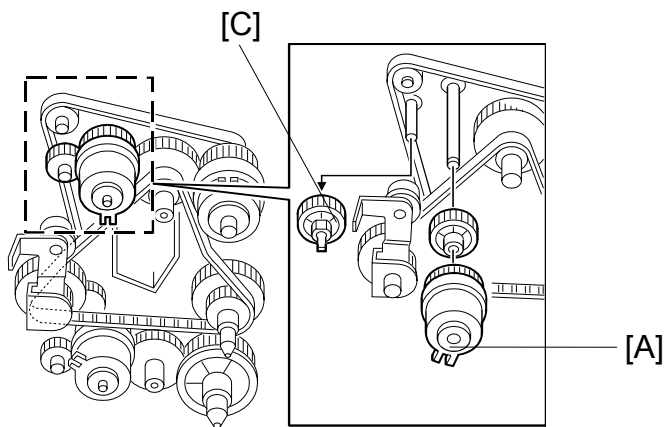
4.4 PAPER FEED AND RELAY CLUTCH REPLACEMENT



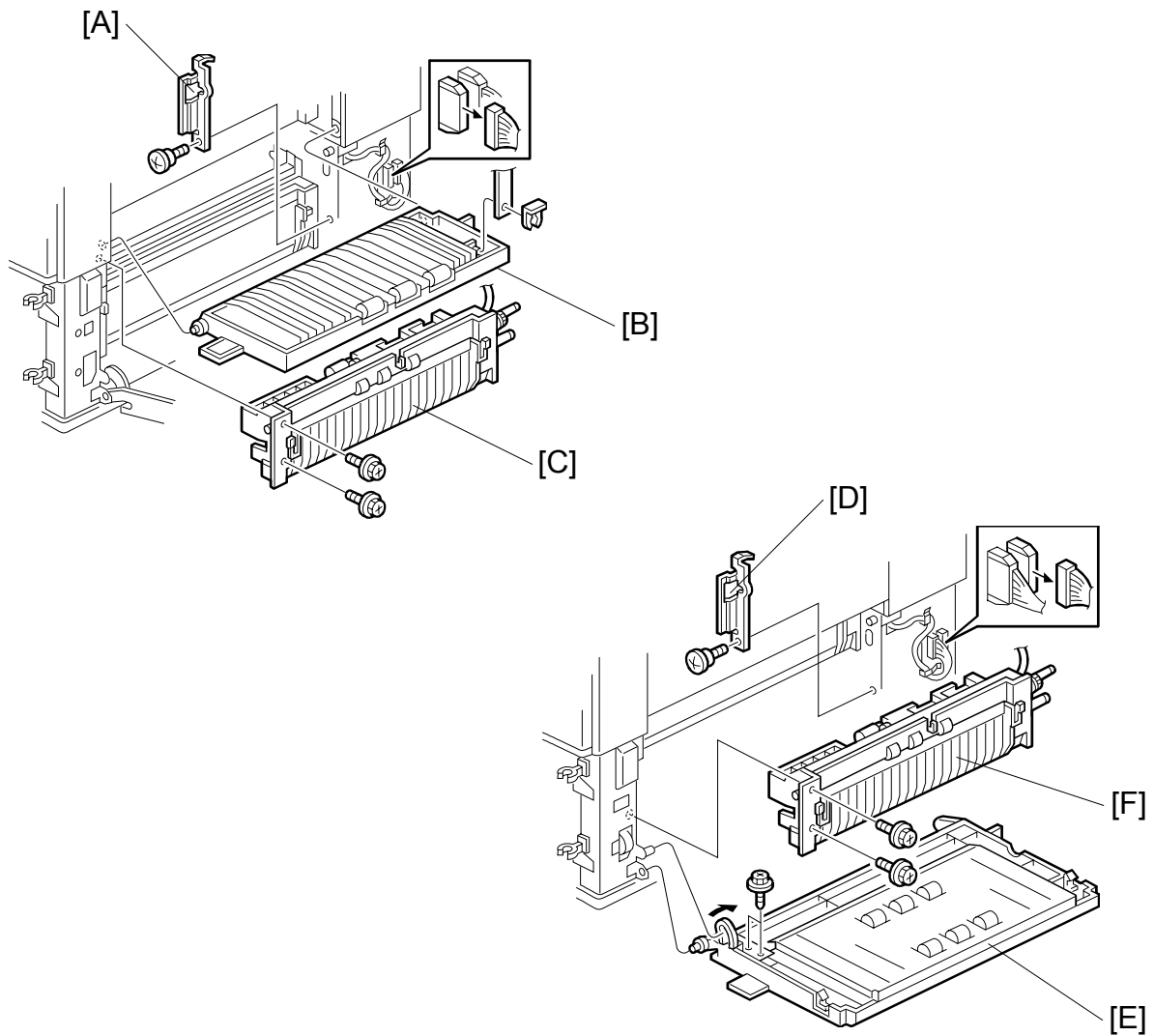
Paper Tray
Unit B542

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the upper paper feed clutch holder [A] (2 screws).
3. Remove the lower paper feed clutch holder [B] (2 screws).
4. Remove the gear holder [C] (3 screws, 1 spring, 1 bearing).
5. Replace the relay clutch [D] (1 connector).
6. Replace the upper feed clutch [E] (1 bushing, 1 connector).
7. Replace the lower feed clutch [F] (1 connector).

4.5 PAPER FEED UNIT REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the upper and lower paper feed clutch holder.
3. Remove the gear holder.
4. Remove the upper feed clutch [A] or lower feed clutch [B].
5. Remove the upper or lower gear [C, D].



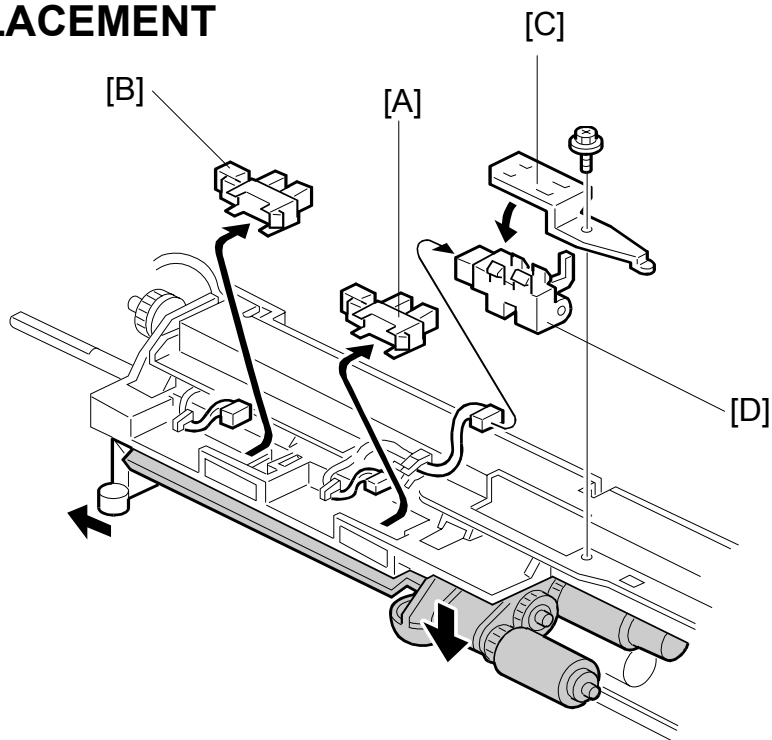
Upper Paper Feed Unit

6. Remove the docking bracket [A] (1 screw).
7. Remove the vertical transport cover [B] of the copier (1 snap ring).
8. Remove the upper paper feed unit [C] (2 screws, 1 connector).

Lower Paper Feed Unit

6. Remove the docking bracket [D] (1 screw).
7. Remove the vertical transport guide [E] (2 screws).
8. Remove the lower paper feed unit [F] (2 screws, 1 connector).

4.6 PAPER END, TRAY LIFT, AND RELAY SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the paper feed unit.

Paper End Sensor

2. Replace the paper end sensor [A] (1 connector).

Tray Lift Sensor

2. Replace the tray lift sensor [B] (1 connector).

Relay Sensor

2. Remove the sensor bracket [C] (1 screw).
3. Replace the relay sensor [D] (1 connector).

LARGE CAPACITY TRAY
B543

LARGE CAPACITY TRAY B543

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION.....	1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	2
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	3
1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION.....	4
1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT	5
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	6
2.1 PAPER FEED MECHANISM	6
2.2 TRAY LIFT AND PaPER HEIGHT DETECTION MECHANISM	7
Tray lifting conditions	7
Tray lowering conditions	7
2.3 TRAY UNIT SLIDE MECHANISM	8
3. SERVICE TABLES.....	9
3.1 DIP SWITCHES.....	9
3.2 test points	9
3.3 switches.....	9
3.4 fuses.....	9
4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	10
4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT	10
Tray Cover	10
Front Cover	10
Rear Cover	10
Right Lower Cover	10
Upper Cover	10
4.2 ROLLER REPLACEMENT	11
4.2.1 PAPER FEED, SEPARATION, AND PICK-UP rollerS.....	11
Pick-up Roller	11
Paper Feed Roller.....	11
Separation Roller	11
4.3 TRAY LIFT AND PAPER END SENSOR REPLACEMENT.....	12
Tray Lift Sensor	12
Paper End Sensor	12
4.4 RELAY SENSOR REPLACEMENT	13
4.5 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE.....	14

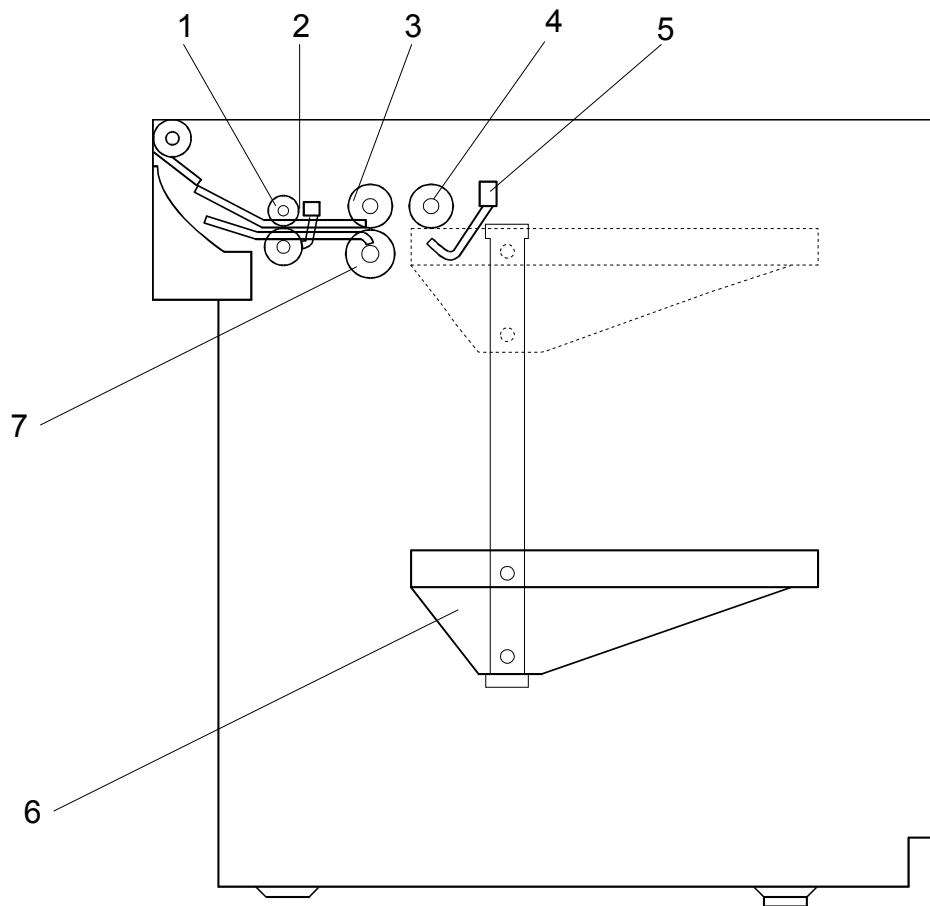
1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:	A4 sideways/LT sideways
Paper Weight:	60 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² , 16 lb ~ 28 lb
Tray Capacity:	1500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20lb)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 75%, 50%, 25%, Near end)
Power Source:	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption:	40 W
Weight:	17 kg
Size (W x D x H):	390 mm x 500 mm x 390 mm

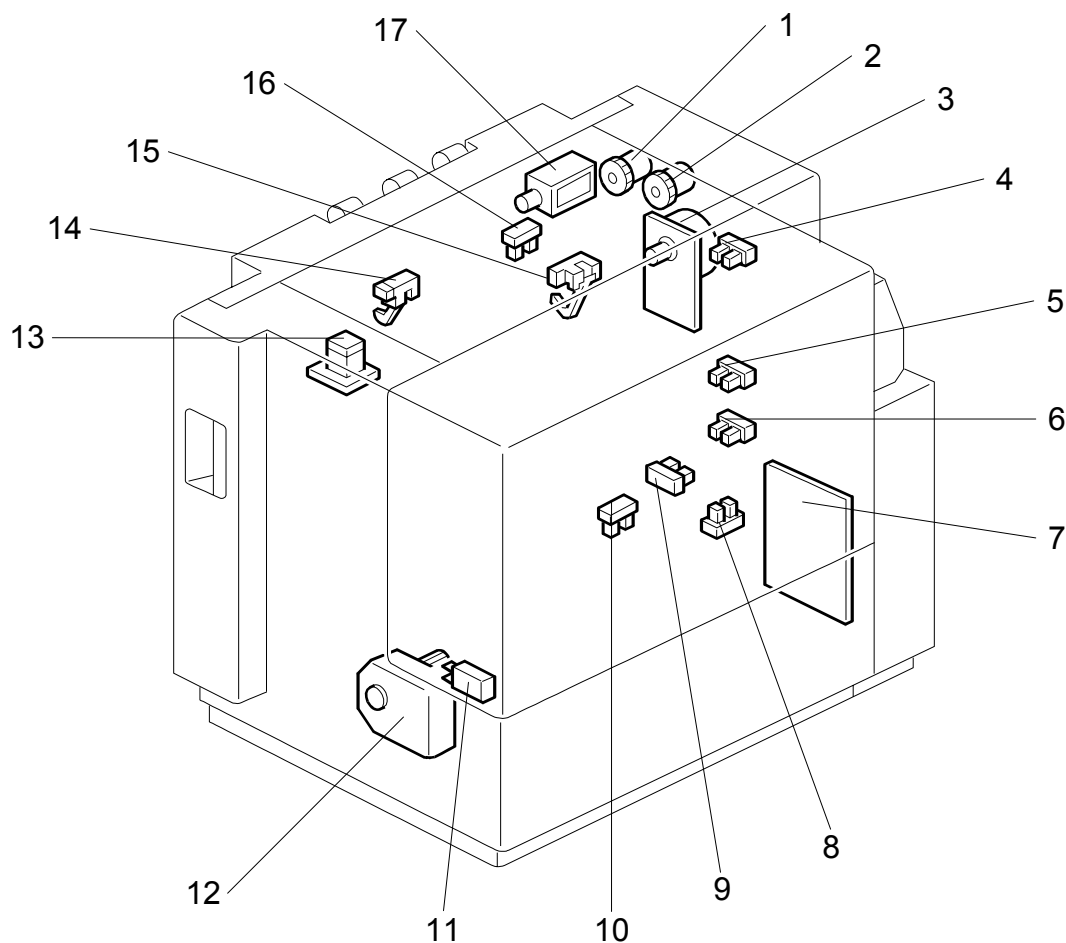
Large
Capacity Tray
B543

1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Relay Roller	5. Paper End Sensor
2. Relay Sensor	6. Paper Tray
3. Paper Feed Roller	7. Separation Roller
4. Pick-up Roller	

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



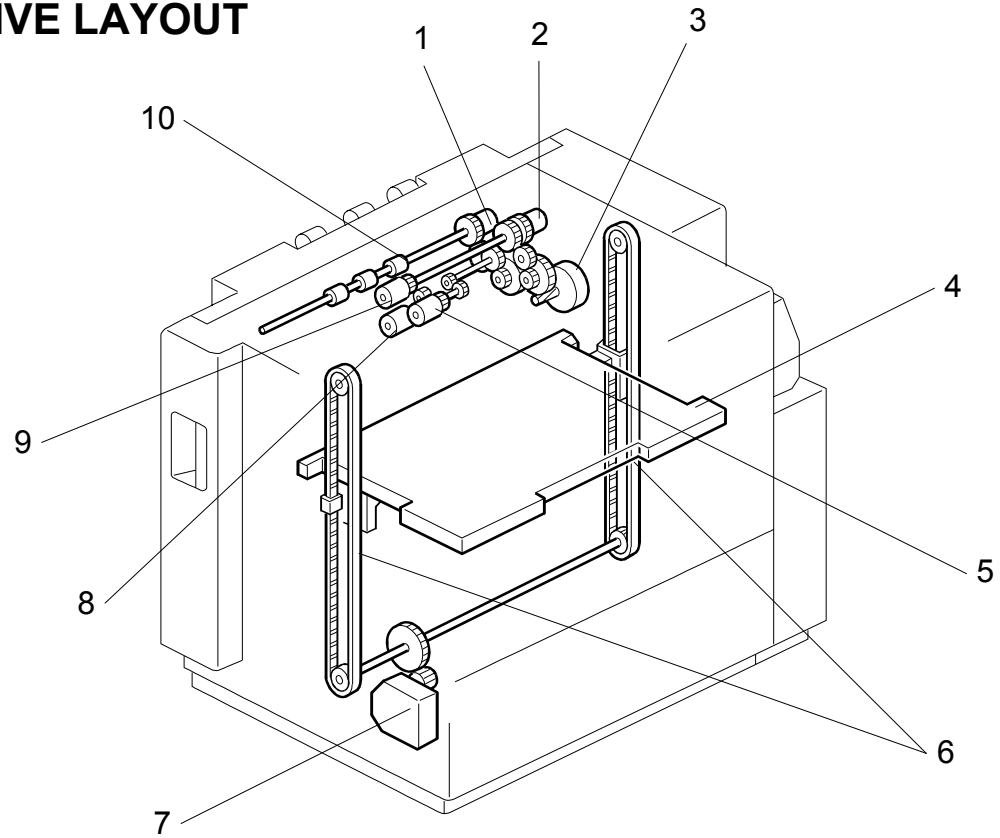
Large
Capacity Tray
B543

1. Relay Clutch	10. LCT Set Sensor
2. Paper Feed Clutch	11. Tray Cover Switch
3. LCT Motor	12. Lift Motor
4. Paper Height 1 Sensor	13. Down Switch
5. Paper Height 2 Sensor	14. Relay Sensor
6. Paper Height 3 Sensor	15. Paper End Sensor
7. Main Board	16. Lift Sensor
8. Side Fence Position Sensor	17. Pick-up Solenoid
9. Lower Limit Sensor	

1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	LCT	Drives all rollers.	3
M2	Lift	Drives the paper tray up or down.	12
Sensors			
S1	Paper End	Informs the copier when the paper has run out.	15
S2	Relay	Detects the copy paper coming to the relay roller and checks for misfeeds.	14
S3	Lift	Detects when the paper is at the correct paper feed height.	16
S4	Lower Limit	Detects when the tray is completely lowered, to stop the LCT motor.	9
S5	Paper Height 1	Detects the paper height.	4
S6	Paper Height 2	Detects the paper height.	5
S7	Paper Height 3	Detects the paper height.	6
S8	LCT Set	Detects whether the LCT is correctly set or not.	10
S9	Side Fence Position	Detects when the side fence is set at the A4 size position.	8
Switches			
SW1	Tray Cover	Stops the LCT lift motor when the tray cover is opened.	11
SW2	Down	Lowers the LCT bottom plate if pressed by the user.	13
Solenoids			
SOL1	Pick-up	Controls up-down movement of the pick-up roller.	17
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Paper Feed	Drives the paper feed roller.	2
MC2	Relay	Drives the relay roller.	1
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the LCT and communicates with the copier.	7

1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT

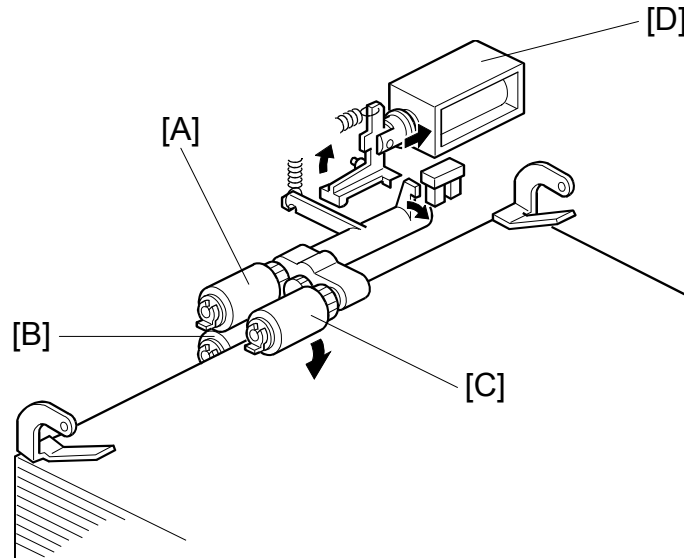


Large
Capacity Tray
B543

1. Relay Clutch	6. Tray Drive Belts
2. Paper Feed Clutch	7. Lift Motor
3. LCT Motor	8. Separation Roller
4. Tray Bottom Plate	9. Paper Feed Roller
5. Pick-up Roller	10. Relay Roller

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

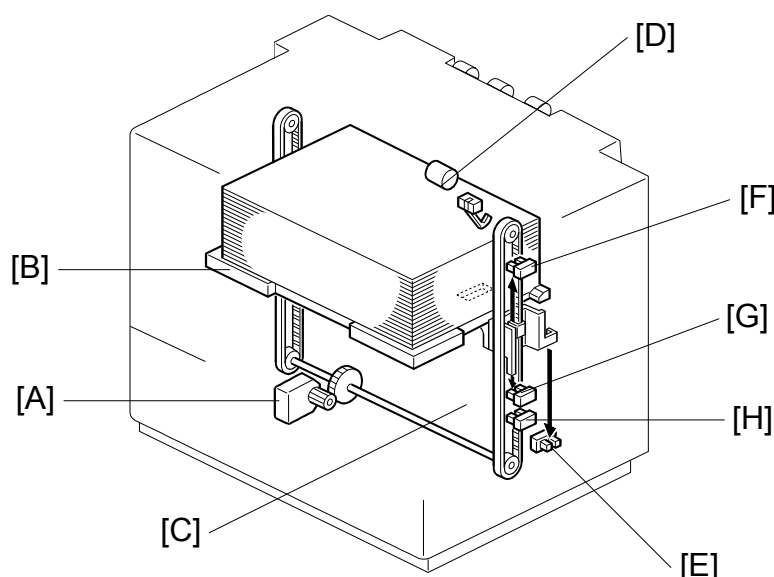
2.1 PAPER FEED MECHANISM



This machine uses the FRR (Feed and Reverse Roller) paper feed system (paper feed roller [A], separation roller [B], pick-up roller [C]).

When the start key is pressed, the pick-up solenoid [D] energizes and the pick-up roller touches the paper.

2.2 TRAY LIFT AND PAPER HEIGHT DETECTION MECHANISM



The lift motor [A] controls the vertical position of the tray bottom plate [B] through gears and timing belts [C].

Tray lifting conditions

When the tray lift sensor [D] turns off in the following conditions, the tray lift motor raises the tray bottom plate until the tray lift sensor [D] turns on again.

- Just after the main switch is turned on
- During copying
- Just after the tray cover is closed
- Just after leaving the energy saving mode

Tray lowering conditions

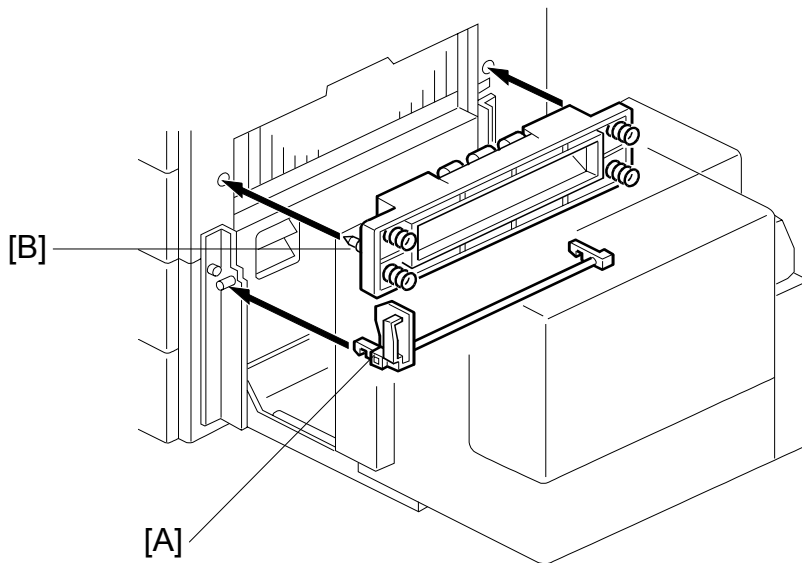
In the following conditions, the lift motor lowers the tray bottom plate until the lower limit [E] sensor turns on.

- Just after the paper end sensor turns on
- Just after the down switch is pressed by the user

The amount of the paper in the tray is detected by combination of high/low outputs from three sensors (paper height sensor 1 [F], 2 [G], and 3 [H].)

Amount of paper	Paper Height Sensor 1	Paper Height Sensor 2	Paper Height Sensor 3
Near end	On (High)	Off (Low)	Off (Low)
25%	Off (Low)	On (High)	Off (Low)
50%	Off (Low)	On (High)	On (High)
75%	Off (Low)	Off (Low)	On (High)
100%	Off (Low)	Off (Low)	Off (Low)

2.3 TRAY UNIT SLIDE MECHANISM



When there is a paper jam between the copier and the LCT, the user releases the lock lever [A] and can slide the LCT away from the copier to remove the jammed paper.

When sliding the LCT back into position, the LCT is secured against the copier in the correct position by the docking pins [B] on the LCT.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCHES

DPS101								Description
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Default
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Free run

NOTE: 1) Do not use any other settings.

2) To do the free run, proceed as follows:

1. Remove the paper from the LCT (this is because the machine has no jam detection).
2. Set DPS101 for the free run as shown above.
3. Turn the main switch off, wait a few seconds, then switch back on.
4. Press SW101 to start the free run.
5. To stop the free run, press SW102.

Large
Capacity Tray
B543

3.2 TEST POINTS

No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP100	(24 V)	+24 V
TP101	(GND)	Ground
TP103	(TXD)	TXD to the copier
TP104	(RXD)	RXD from the copier
TP105	(5 V)	+5 V
TP106	(GND)	Ground

3.3 SWITCHES

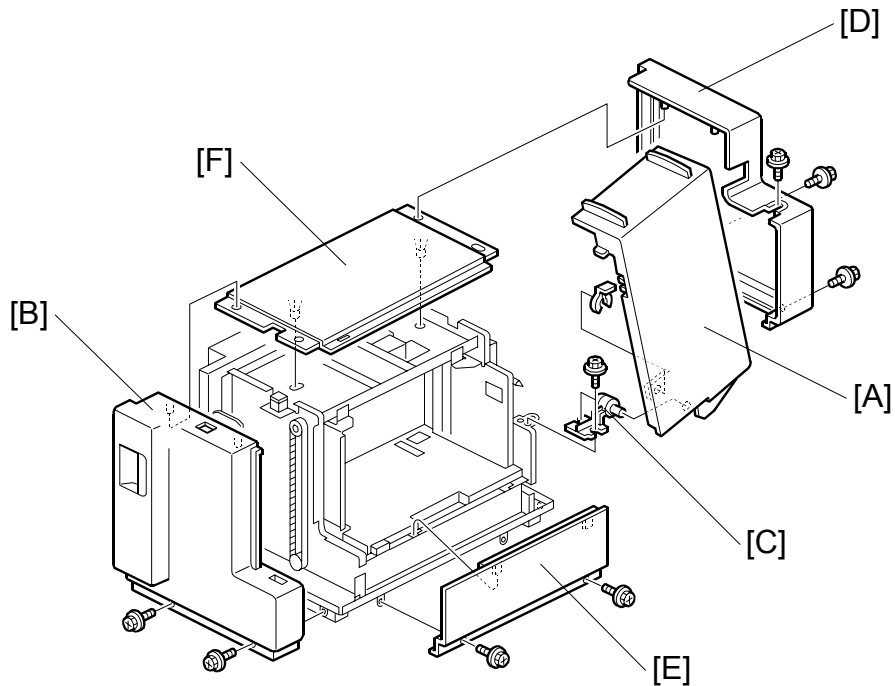
No.	Function
SW101	Starts the free run
SW102	Stops the free run

3.4 FUSES

No.	Function
FU101	Protects the 24 V line.

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT



Tray Cover

1. Remove the tray cover [A] (1 snap ring).

Front Cover

1. Remove the front cover [B] (2 screws).

Rear Cover

1. Remove the tray cover.
2. Remove the cover hinge [C] (2 screws).
3. Remove the rear cover [D] (3 screws).

Right Lower Cover

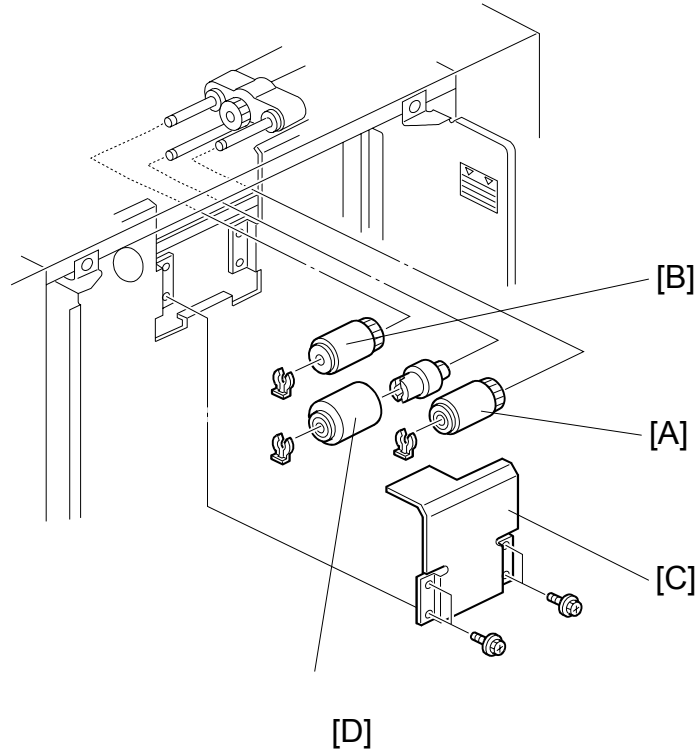
1. Remove the right lower cover [E] (2 screws).

Upper Cover

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the upper cover [F].

4.2 ROLLER REPLACEMENT

4.2.1 PAPER FEED, SEPARATION, AND PICK-UP ROLLERS



Large
Capacity Tray
B543

1. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate until it reaches its lowest position.
2. Open the tray cover.

Pick-up Roller

3. Replace the pick-up roller [A] (1 snap ring).

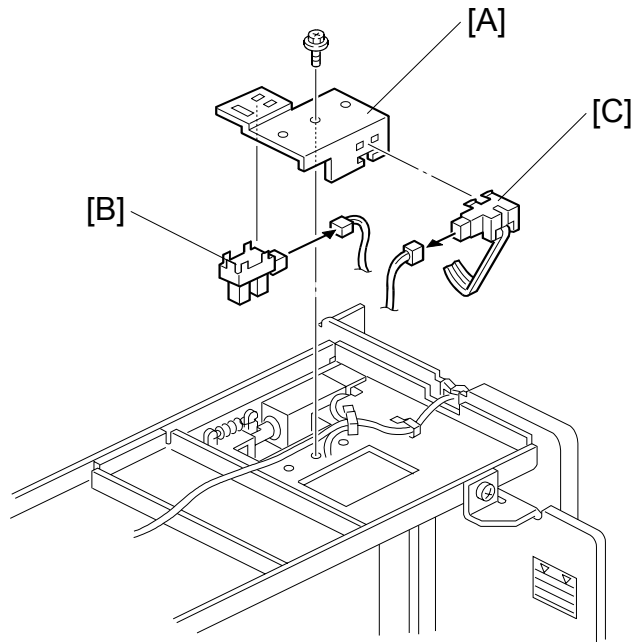
Paper Feed Roller

3. Replace the paper feed roller [B] (1 snap ring).

Separation Roller

3. Remove the guide plate [C] (2 screws).
4. Replace the separation roller [D] (1 snap ring).

4.3 TRAY LIFT AND PAPER END SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the front and rear cover.
2. Remove the upper cover.
3. Remove the sensor bracket [A] (1 screw).

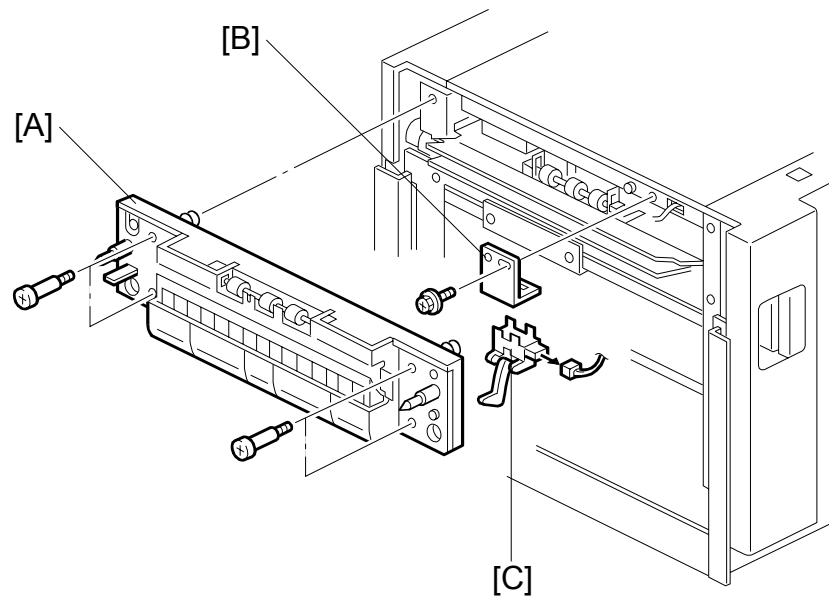
Tray Lift Sensor

3. Replace the tray lift sensor [B] (1 connector).

Paper End Sensor

3. Replace the paper end sensor [C] (1 connector).

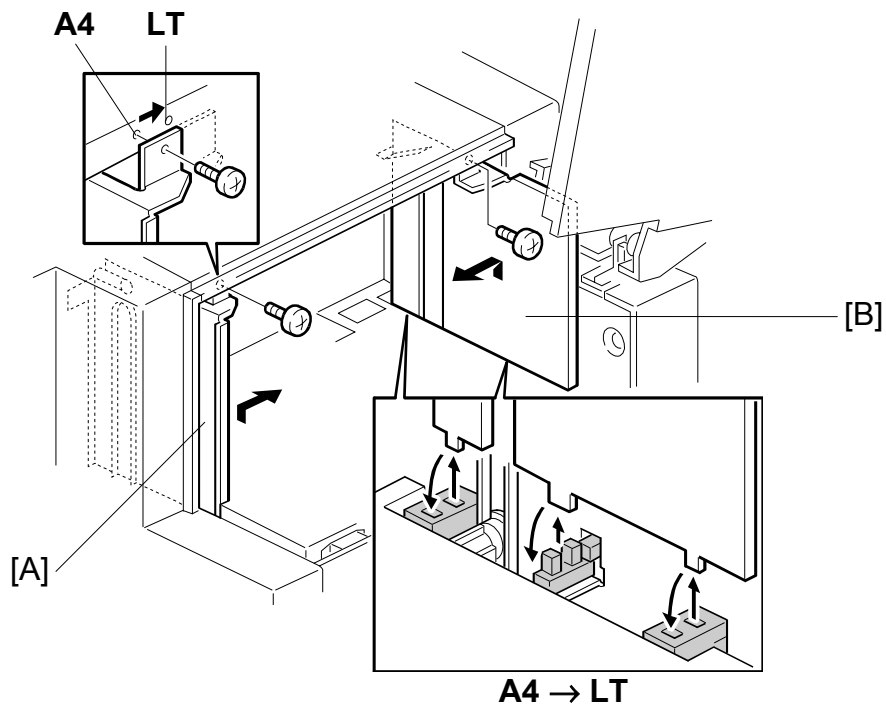
4.4 RELAY SENSOR REPLACEMENT



Large
Capacity Tray
B543

1. Pull out the LCT.
2. Remove the joint guide [A] (4 screws).
3. Remove the sensor bracket [B] (1 screw).
4. Replace the relay sensor [C] (1 connector).

4.5 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE



1. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate until it reaches its lowest position.
2. Remove the tray cover.
3. Remove the front and rear side fences [A, B] (1 screw each).
4. Install the side fences in the correct position.

1-BIN TRAY
B544

1-BIN TRAY B544

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION	1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT AND DRIVE LAYOUT	2
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	3
1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION.....	3
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	4
2.1 BASICS OPERATION	4
3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	5
3.1 COVER REMOVAL	5
Front Cover.....	5
Upper Cover.....	5
Rear Cover.....	5
3.2 PAPER SENSOR REPLACEMENT	6
3.3 ENTRANCE AND PAPER LIMIT SENSOR REPLACEMENT	7
Paper Limit Sensor	7
Entrance Sensor	7

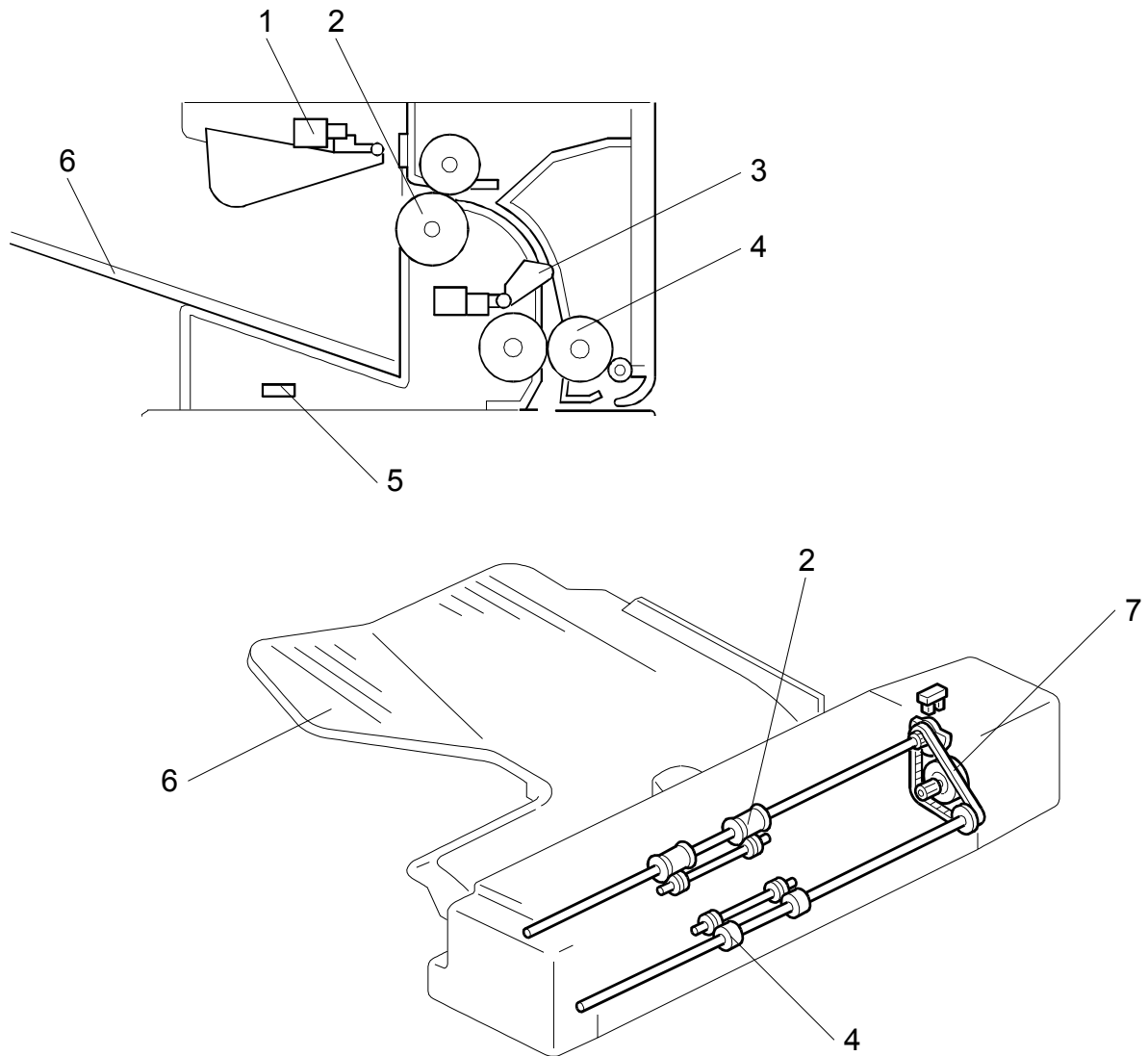
1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:	A5 lengthwise to A3 HLT to DLT
Paper Weight:	60 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² , 16 lb ~ 28 lb
Tray Capacity:	125 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb)
Power Source:	5 Vdc, 24 Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption:	15 W
Weight:	4 kg
Size (W x D x H):	470 mm x 550 mm x 110 mm



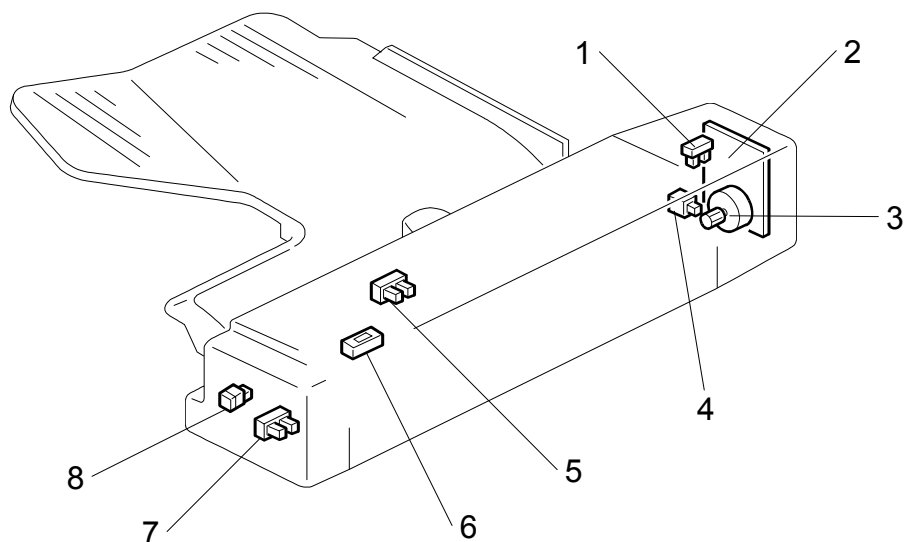
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT AND DRIVE LAYOUT



- 1. Paper Limit Sensor
- 2. Exit Roller
- 3. Entrance Sensor
- 4. Entrance Roller

- 5. Paper Sensor
- 6. Paper Tray
- 7. Tray Motor

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



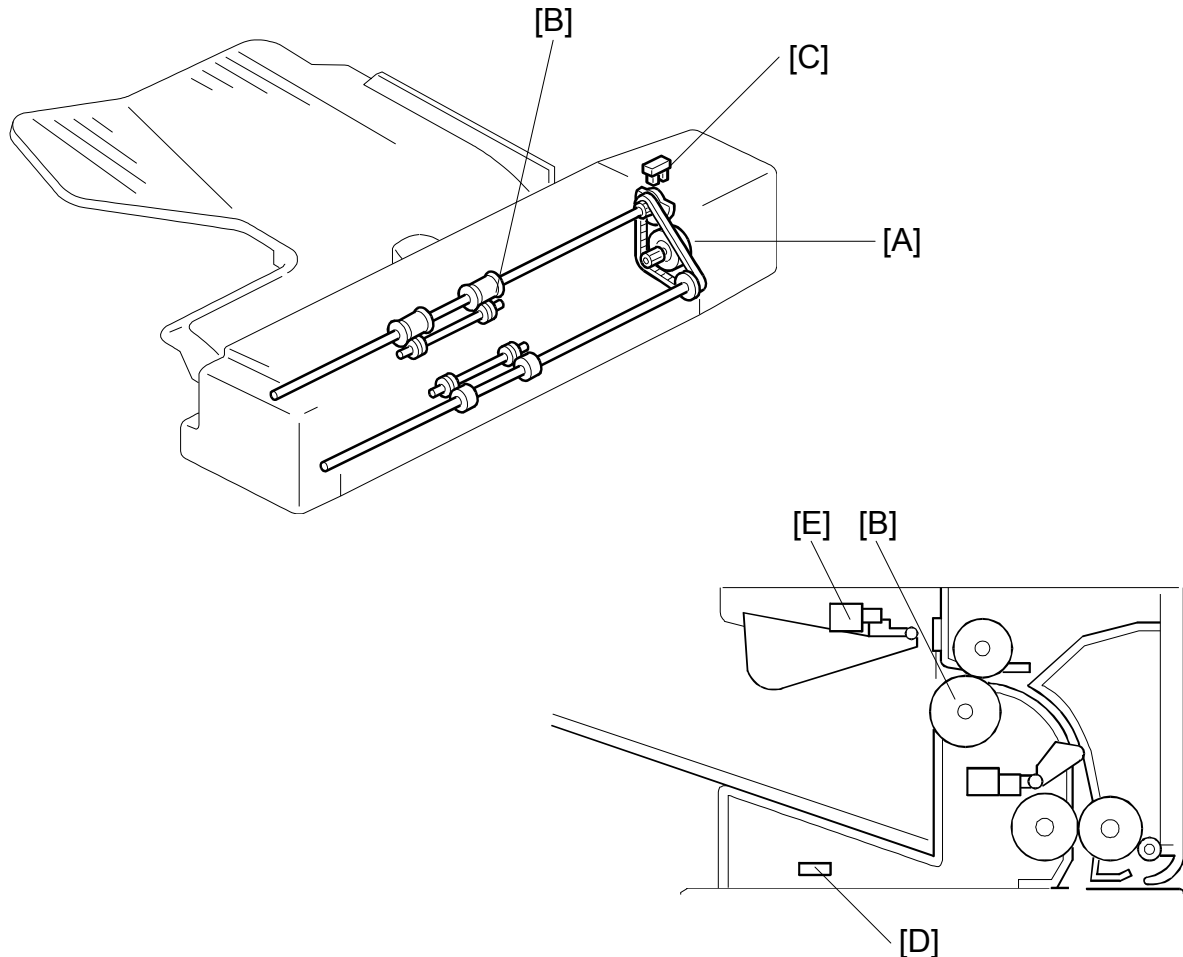
1. Motor Lock Sensor	5. Paper Limit Sensor
2. Main Board	6. Paper Sensor
3. Tray Motor	7. Entrance Sensor
4. Right Cover Switch	8. Paper Indicator

1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Tray	Drives the entrance and exit rollers.	3
Sensors			
S1	Entrance	Checks for misfeeds.	7
S2	Paper Limit	Detects the paper stack limit in the tray.	5
S3	Paper	Detects whether there is paper in the tray.	6
S4	Motor Lock	Detects whether the tray motor is turning.	1
Switches			
SW1	Right Cover	Detects whether the right cover is opened.	4
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the 1-bin tray and communicates with the copier.	2
LEDs			
LED1	Paper Indicator	Indicates when there is paper in the tray.	8

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 BASIC OPERATION



When the leading edge of the first sheet of copy paper reaches the copier's hot roller, the tray motor [A] starts and turns off approximately 0.5 s after the trailing edge of the paper passes through the exit rollers [B].

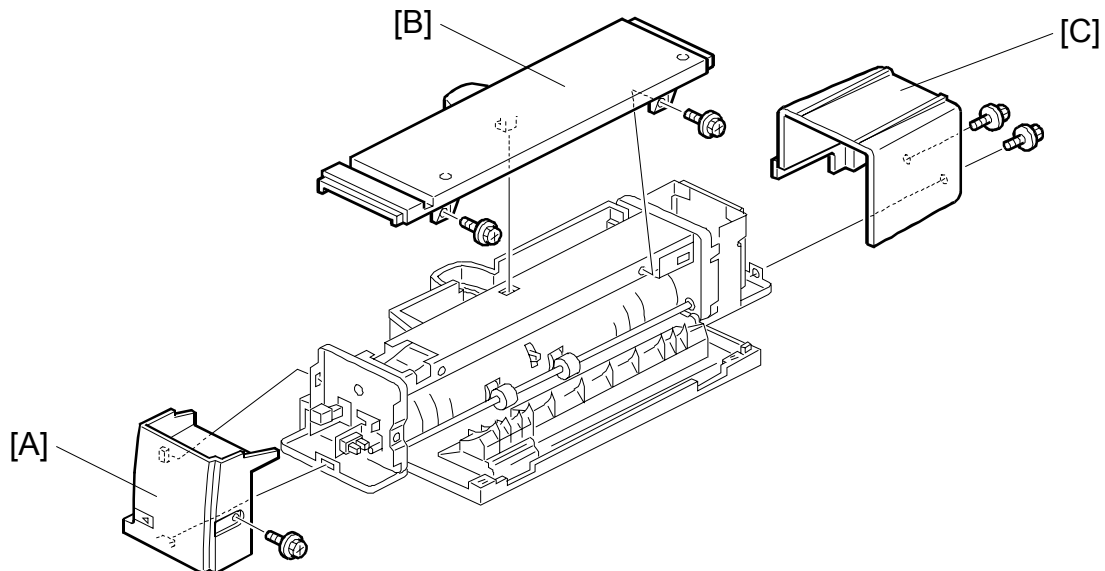
The tray lock sensor [C] checks whether the tray motor rotates or not. When the tray lock sensor does not generate pulses for 300 ms while the tray motor is on, the copier will stop and display an SC code.

The paper sensor [D] checks whether there is paper in the tray or not. The paper sensor turns on when paper is stacked in the tray, and the paper indicator is turned on.

The paper limit sensor [E] detects when the tray is full. While a sheet of copy paper is passing this sensor, the sensor feeler is always pushed up by the paper. When the paper limit sensor stays on for more than the expected time (based on the copy speed and paper size), the copier indicates that the tray is full.

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 COVER REMOVAL



Front Cover

1. Remove the scanner unit if it is at the front.
2. Remove the front cover [A] (1 screw).

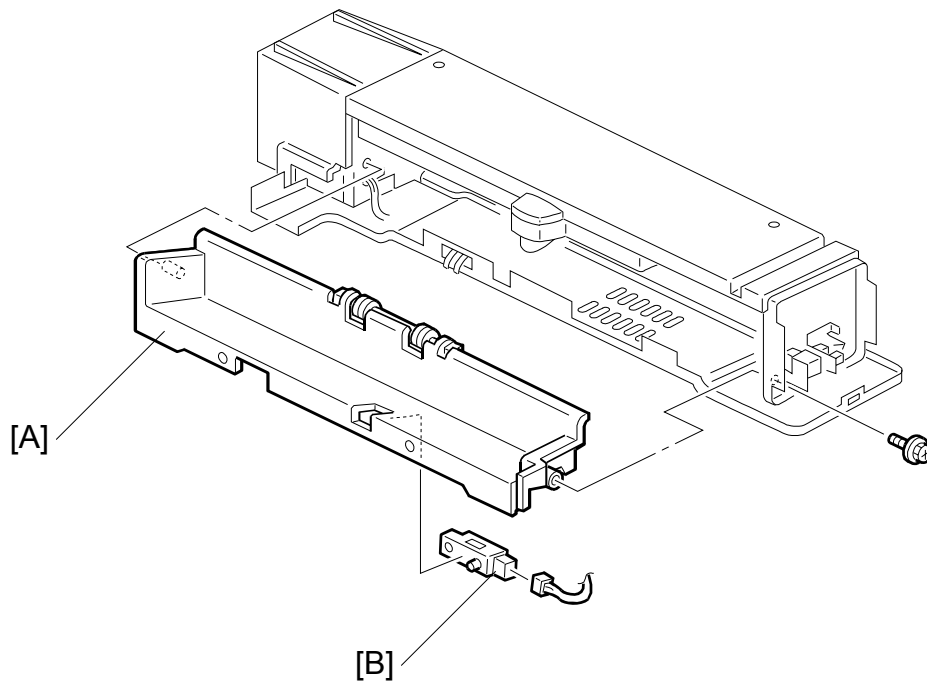
Upper Cover

1. Remove the scanner unit.
2. Remove the upper cover [B] (2 screws).

Rear Cover

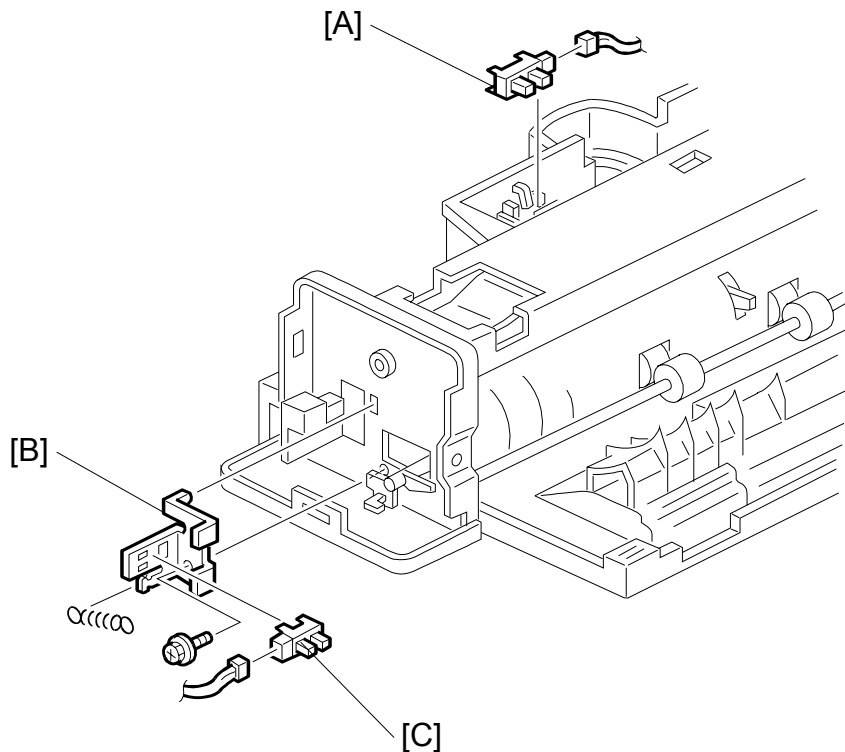
1. Remove the scanner unit.
2. Remove the rear cover [C] (2 screws).

3.2 PAPER SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove the exit guide plate [A] (1 screw).
3. Replace the paper sensor [B] (1 connector).

3.3 ENTRANCE AND PAPER LIMIT SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the front and upper covers.

Paper Limit Sensor

2. Replace the paper limit sensor [A] (1 connector).

Entrance Sensor

2. Remove the sensor bracket [B] (1 screw, 1 spring).
3. Replace the entrance sensor [C] (1 connector).

**TWO-TRAY FINISHER
B545**

TWO-TRAY FINISHER B545

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 COVERS	1
1.1.1 EXTERNAL COVERS.....	1
1.1.2 INNER COVER.....	1
1.2 POSITIONING ROLLER.....	2
1.3 TRAY 1 EXIT SENSOR.....	2
1.4 ENTRANCE SENSOR/STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSOR	3
1.5 STAPLER TRAY.....	3
1.6 UPPER STACK HEIGHT SENSORS/TRAY 1 UPPER LIMIT SWITCH	4
1.7 EXIT GUIDE PLATE MOTOR.....	5
1.8 LIFT MOTORS	5
1.9 LOWER EXIT SENSOR	7
1.10 LOWER STACK HEIGHT SENSORS.....	8
1.11 TRAY 2 SHUNT POSITION SENSOR.....	8
1.12 STAPLER UNIT	9
1.13 STAPLER ROTATION HP SENSOR.....	9
1.14 TRAY 1 INTERIOR.....	10
1.14.1 TRAY 1 COVERS	10
tray Shift Sensors and tray release sensor	11
1.14.3 TRAY 1 SHIFT MOTOR	11
1.14.4 BACK FENCE LOCK CLUTCH.....	11
1.15 FINISHER MAIN BOARD	12
1.16 PUNCH HOLE POSITION ADJUSTMENT	12
2. TROUBLESHOOTING	13
2.1 TIMING CHARTS	13
2.1.1 A4(S)/LT(S) SHIFT MODE WITH PUNCH – TRAY 1	13
2.1.2 A4(S)/LT(S) SHIFT MODE WITH PUNCH – TRAY 2	14
2.1.3 A4(S)/LT(S) STAPLE MODE WITH PUNCH	15
2.2 JAM DETECTION.....	16
3. SERVICE TABLES.....	17
3.1 DIP SWITCH SETTINGS.....	17
3.2 TEST POINTS	17
3.3 FUSES.....	17
4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	18
4.1 GENERAL LAYOUT	18
4.2 DRIVE LAYOUT	19
4.3 JUNCTION GATES	20
4.4 TRAY SHIFTING	21
4.4.1 TRAY SHIFT MECHANISMS.....	21

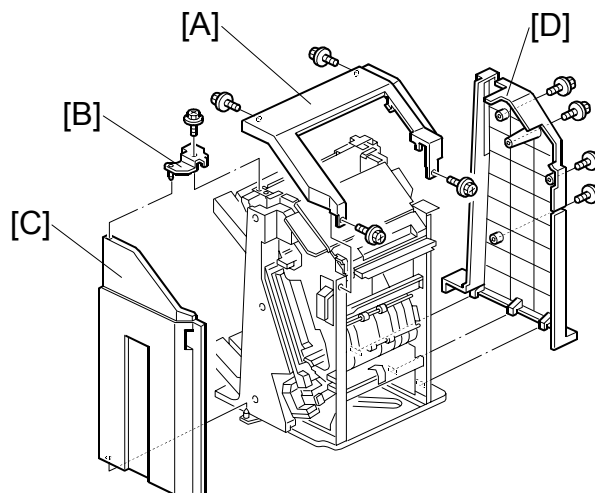
Tray 1 (Upper Tray)	21
TRAY 2 (LOWER TRAY)	23
4.5.1 TRAY 1	23
Introduction	23
Normal and sort/stack modes	23
Staple mode	24
Tray 1 release mechanism	25
4.5.2 TRAY 2	27
4.5.3 PRE-STACK MECHANISM	28
4.6 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM	29
Vertical Paper Alignment	29
Horizontal Paper Alignment	29
4.7 STAPLER MECHANISM	30
4.7.1 STAPLER MOVEMENT	30
Stapler Rotation	30
Side-to-Side Movement	30
4.7.2 STAPLER	31
4.7.3 FEED OUT AND TRANSPORT	32
4.8 PUNCH UNIT (OPTIONAL)	33
4.8.1 PUNCH DRIVE MECHANISM	33
4.8.2 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION	34

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 COVERS

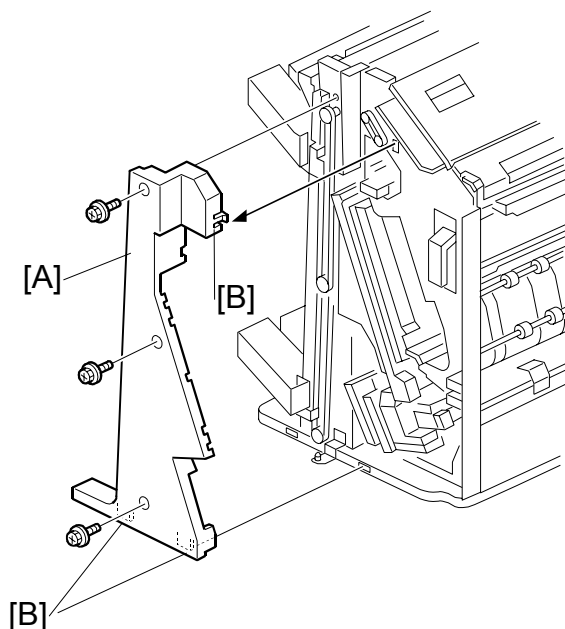
1.1.1 EXTERNAL COVERS

1. Top cover [A] (⌘ x4)
If the shift tray below is blocking the screw hole, remove the shift tray.
2. Bracket [B] (⌘ x1)
3. Front door [C]
4. Rear cover [D] (⌘ x4)



1.1.2 INNER COVER

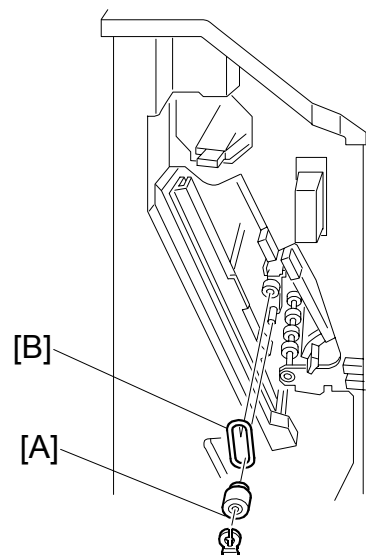
1. Front cover (➡ 1.1.1)
2. Inner cover [A] (⌘ x3, tabs [B] x3)



Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

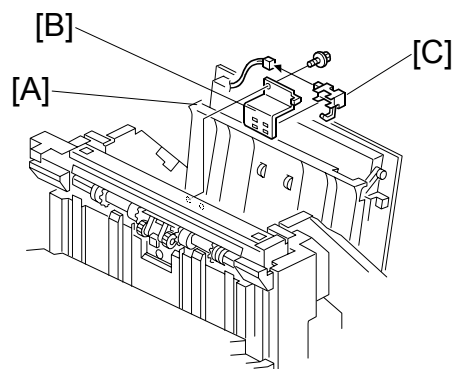
1.2 POSITIONING ROLLER

1. Open the front door.
2. Positioning roller [A] ( x1)
3. Belt [B]



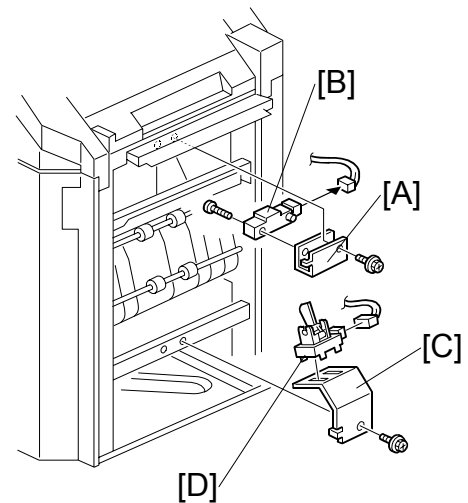
1.3 TRAY 1 EXIT SENSOR

1. Top cover ( 1.1.1)
2. Open transport door [A]
3. Bracket [B] ( x1,  x1)
4. Tray 1 exit sensor [C]

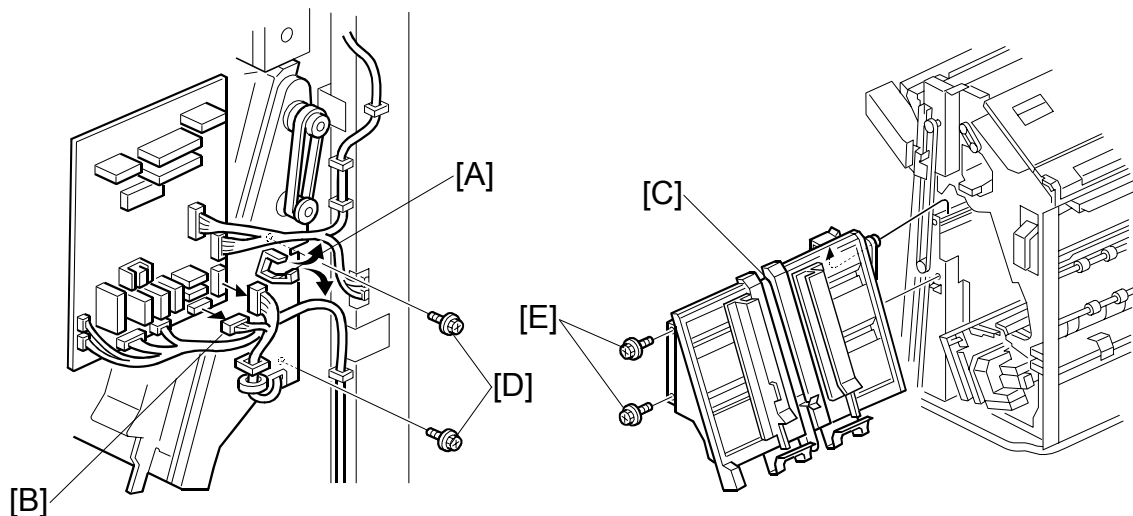


1.4 ENTRANCE SENSOR/STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSOR

1. Entrance sensor bracket [A] (⚙ x1, 📏 x1)
2. Entrance sensor [B] (⚙ x1)
3. Stapler tray entrance sensor bracket [C] (⚙ x1, 📏 x1)
4. Stapler tray entrance sensor [D]



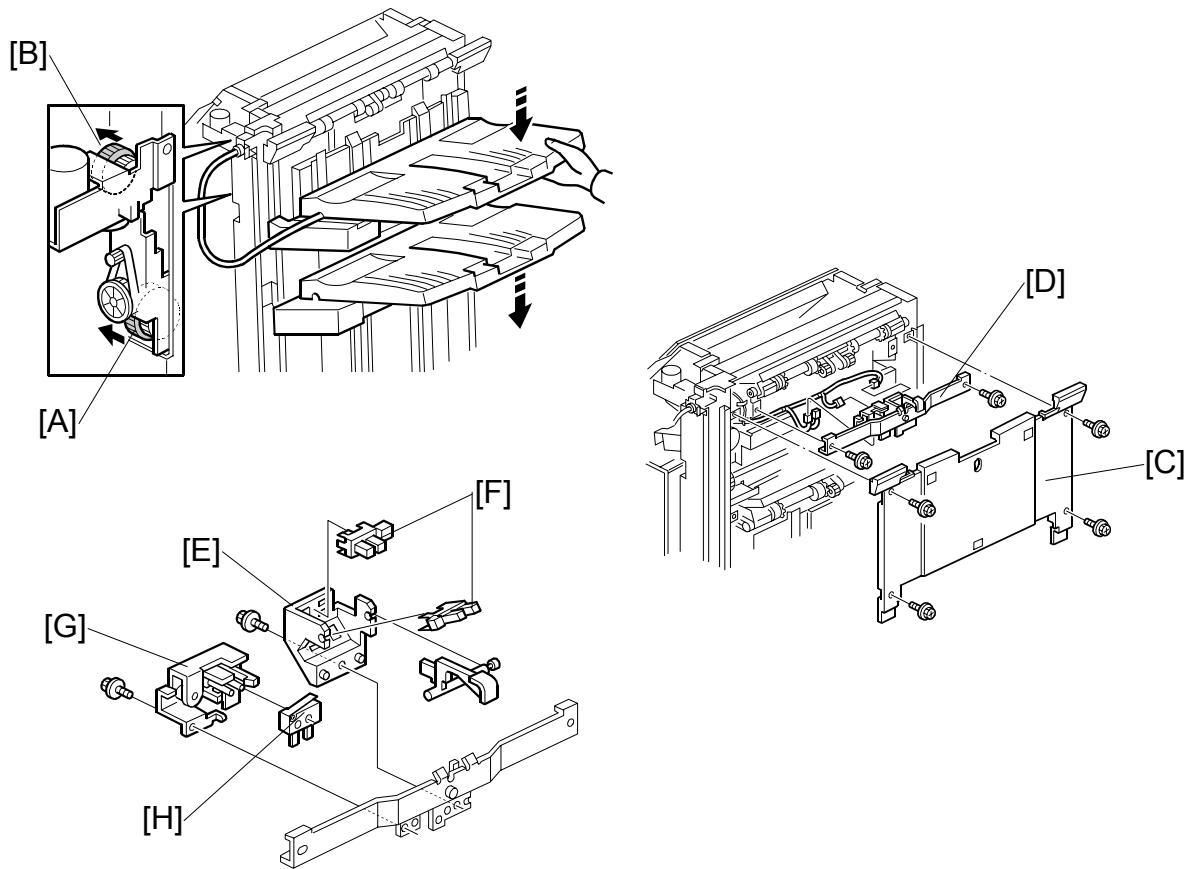
1.5 STAPLER TRAY



1. External covers, front door, inner cover (🔧 1.1.1, 1.1.2)
2. Two clamps [A]
3. Harnesses [B] (📏 x8)
4. Stapler tray [C] (⚙ x2 [D], ⚙ x2 [E])

At the front of the finisher, pull the stapler tray toward you and lift it out.

1.6 UPPER STACK HEIGHT SENSORS/TRAY 1 UPPER LIMIT SWITCH

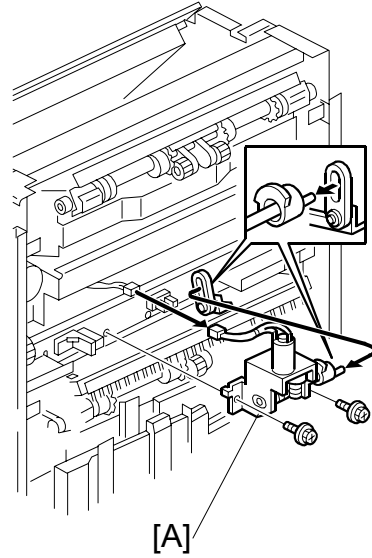


1. External covers (☛ 1.1.1)
2. Place one hand under tray 2 (the lower tray), press in on the gear [A] to release the tray, and then support it with your hand as it descends.
3. Place one hand under tray 1 (the upper tray), press in on the gear [B] to release the tray, and then support it with your hand as it descends.
4. Tray 1 back fence [C] (🔩 x4)
5. Sensor stay [D] (🔩 x2, 🛠 x4)
6. Plastic bracket [E] (🔩 x1)
7. Stack height sensors [F]
8. Metal bracket [G] (🔩 x1)
9. Upper limit switch [H]

1.7 EXIT GUIDE PLATE MOTOR

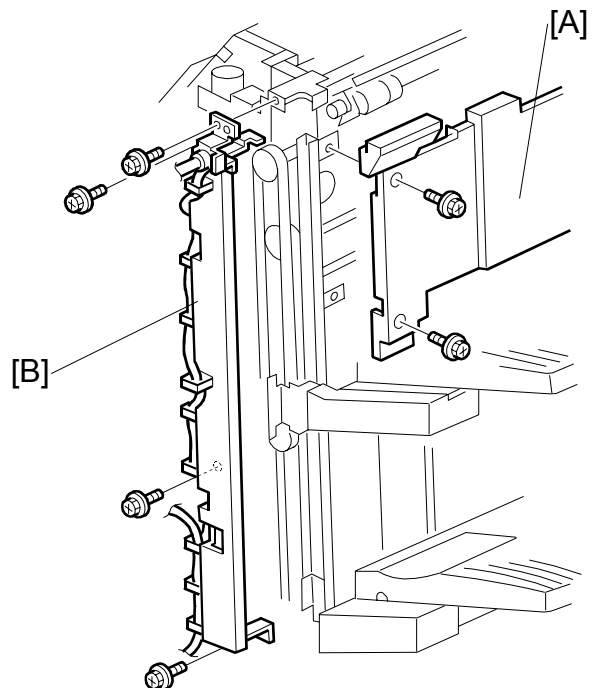
1. Tray 1 back fence (☛ 1.6)
2. Exit guide plate motor [A] (⚙ x2, 📏 x1)

Disengage the shaft of the exit guide plate motor from the ring.



1.8 LIFT MOTORS

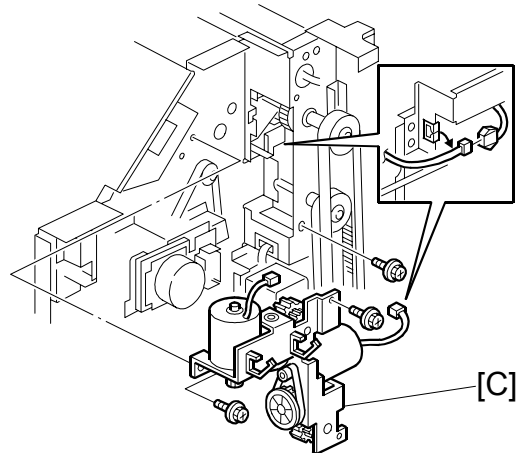
1. Top cover and rear cover (☛ 1.1.1)
2. Tray 1 back fence [A] (☛ 1.6)
3. Sensor stay [B] (⚙ x4)



Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

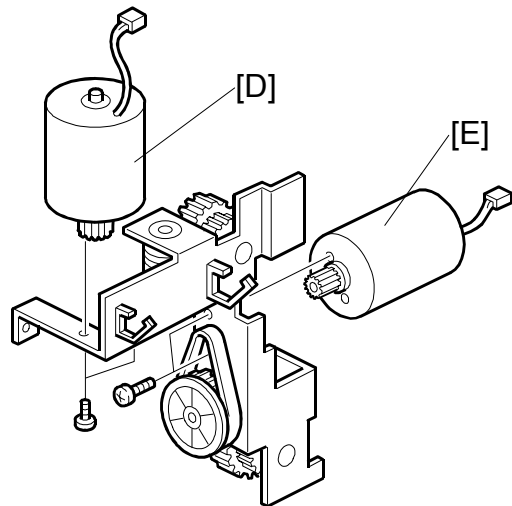
LIFT MOTORS

4. Motor bracket [C] (⚙ x3, 🌀 x2)



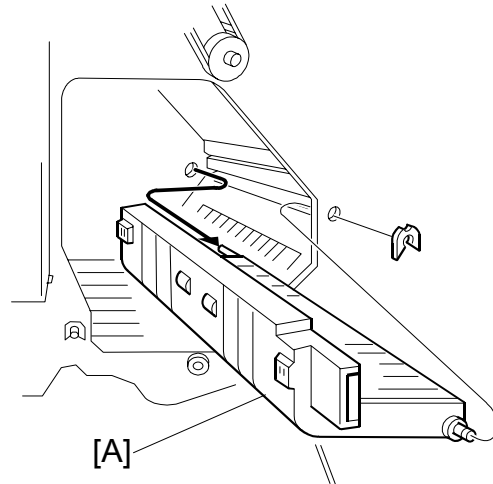
5. Tray 1 lift motor [D] (⚙ x2, drive belt)

6. Tray 2 lift motor [E] (⚙ x2, drive belt)

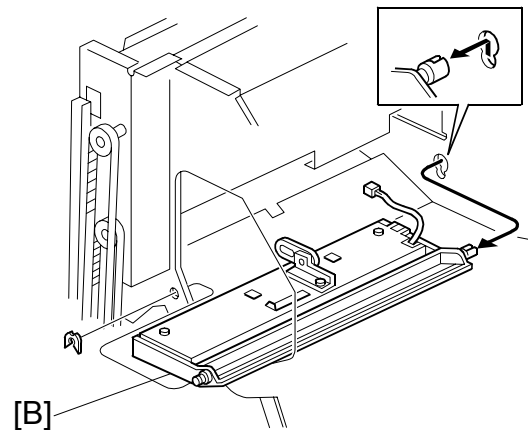


1.9 LOWER EXIT SENSOR

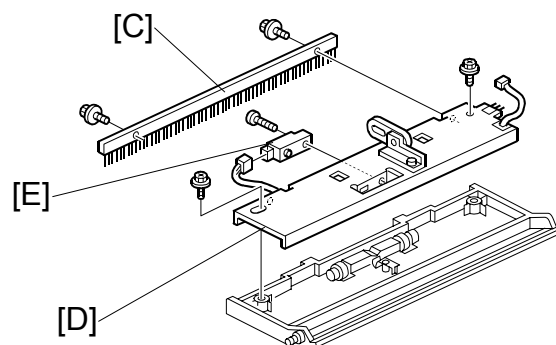
1. Front door, external and internal covers. (🔩 1.1)
2. Exit guide plate motor (🔩 1.7)
3. Guide plate [A] (🔩 x1)
Pull the shaft toward you through the round hole.



4. Guide plate exit assembly [B] (🔩 x1, 🔩 x1)

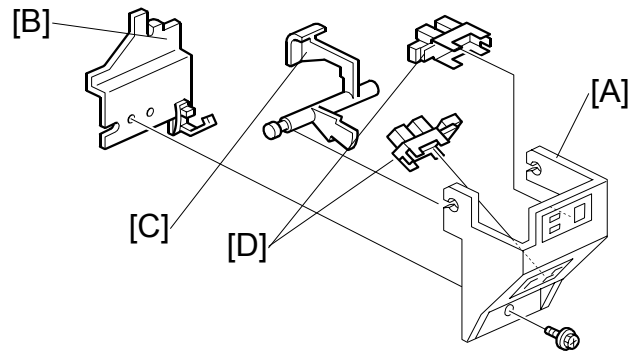


5. Anti-static brush [C] (🔩 x2)
6. Bracket guide exit [D] (🔩 x2)
7. Lower exit sensor [E] (🔩 x1, 🔩 x1)



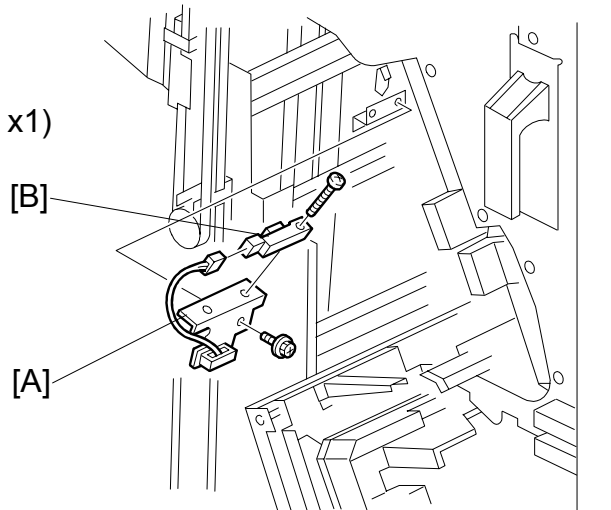
1.10 LOWER STACK HEIGHT SENSORS

1. Stapler tray (☛ 1.5)
2. Sensor bracket [A] (⚙ x1, 📡 x2)
3. Bracket [B] (⚙ x1)
4. Feeler [C]
5. Lower stack height sensors [D]



1.11 TRAY 2 SHUNT POSITION SENSOR

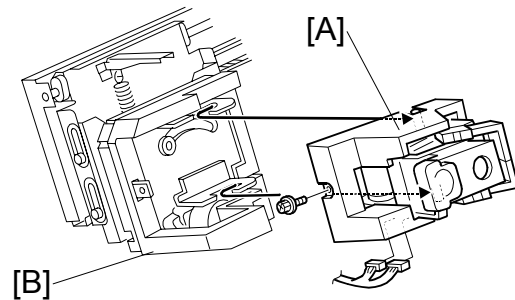
1. Stapler tray (☛ 1.5)
2. Sensor bracket [A] (⚙ x1, 📡 x1)
3. Tray 2 position shunt sensor [B] (⚙ x1)



1.12 STAPLER UNIT

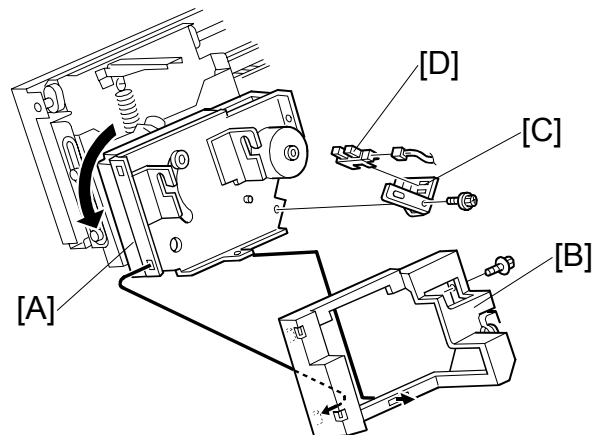
1. Open the front door
2. Stapler unit [A] (⚙️ x1, 📏 x2)

Hold the stapler holder [B] with one hand as you remove the stapler. Do not twist or rotate the stapler bracket as you remove it.



1.13 STAPLER ROTATION HP SENSOR

1. Stapler unit (☞ 1.12)
2. Carefully rotate the stapler holder [A].
3. Stapler cover [B] (⚙️ x1)
4. Sensor bracket [C] (⚙️ x1, 📏 x1)
5. Stapler rotation HP sensor [D]

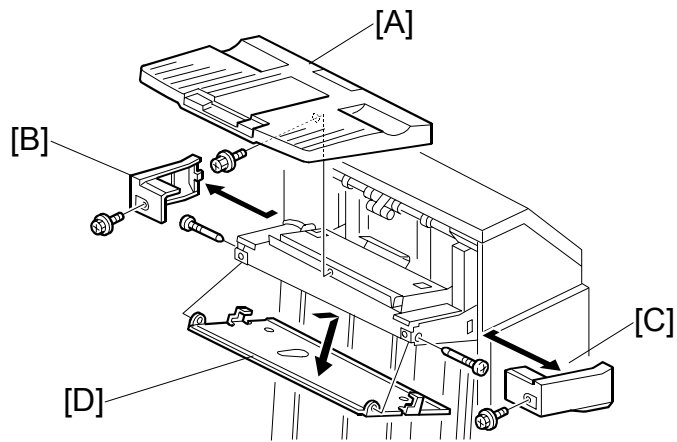


Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

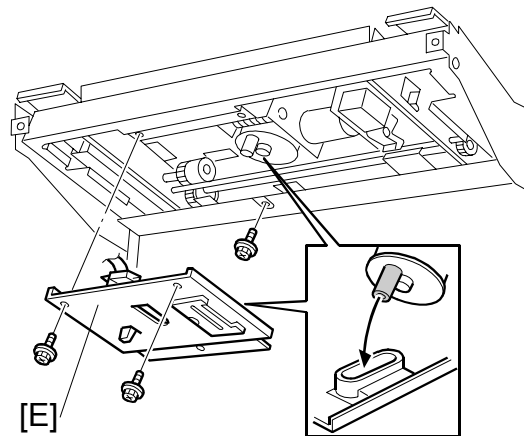
1.14 TRAY 1 INTERIOR

1.14.1 TRAY 1 COVERS

1. Tray 1 [A] (⚙ x1)
2. Rear tray cover [B] (⚙ x1)
3. Front tray cover [C] (⚙ x1)
4. Bottom tray cover [D] (⚙ x2)

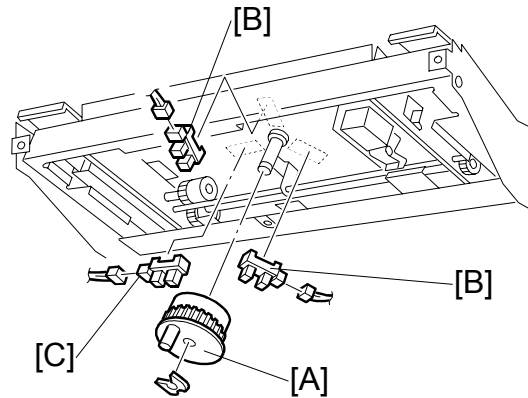


5. Bottom bracket [E] (⚙ x3)



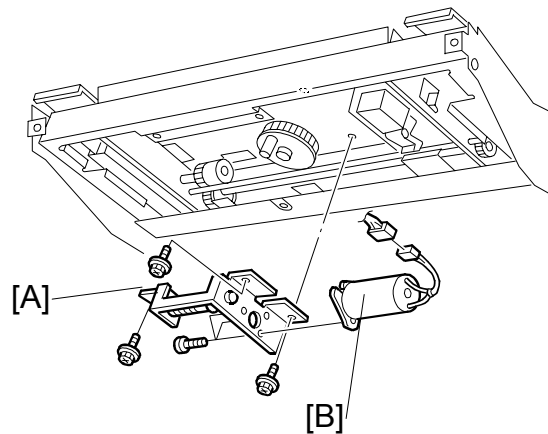
1.14.2 TRAY SHIFT SENSORS AND TRAY RELEASE SENSOR

1. Tray 1 covers (☛ 1.14.1)
2. Gear disk [A] (⚙️ x1)
3. Tray shift sensors [B] (🔌 x1 each).
4. Tray release sensor [C] (🔌 x1)



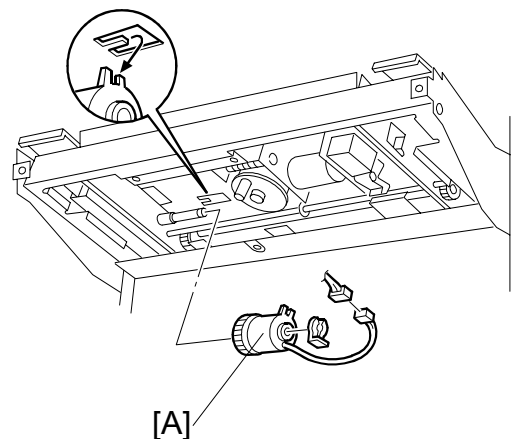
1.14.3 TRAY 1 SHIFT MOTOR

1. Tray 1 covers (☛ 1.14.1)
2. Motor bracket [A] (🔩 x3, 📏 x1)
3. Tray 1 shift motor [B] (🔩 x3, belt x1)



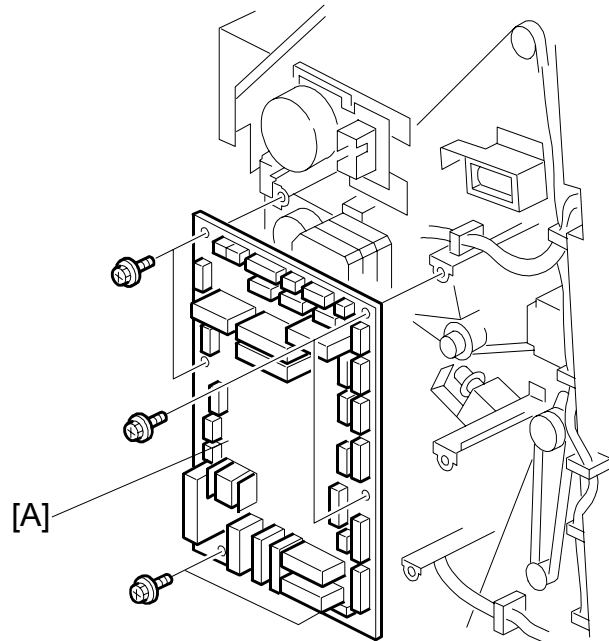
1.14.4 BACK FENCE LOCK CLUTCH

1. Tray 1 covers (☛ 1.14.1)
2. Back fence lock clutch [A] (⚙️ x1, 📏 x1)



1.15 FINISHER MAIN BOARD

1. Rear cover (☛ 1.1.1)
2. Main PCB [A] (⚙ x 6, All ☛)



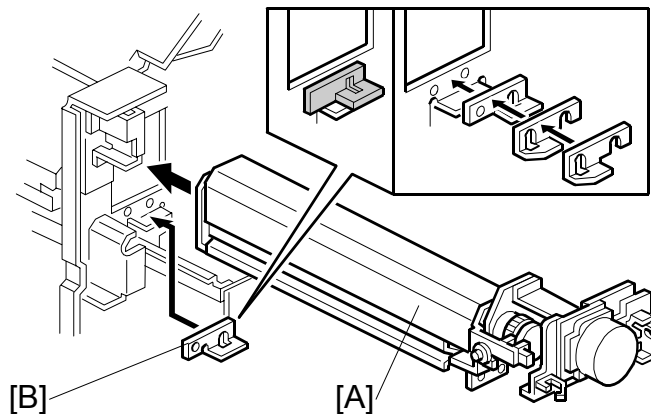
1.16 PUNCH HOLE POSITION ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the position of the punch holes in the paper feed direction, use the appropriate SP mode.

To adjust the horizontal position of the holes, use the spacers provided with the punch unit.

1. Rear cover (☛ 1.1.1)
2. Punch unit [A] (⚙ x3, ☛ x5)
3. Spacers [B]

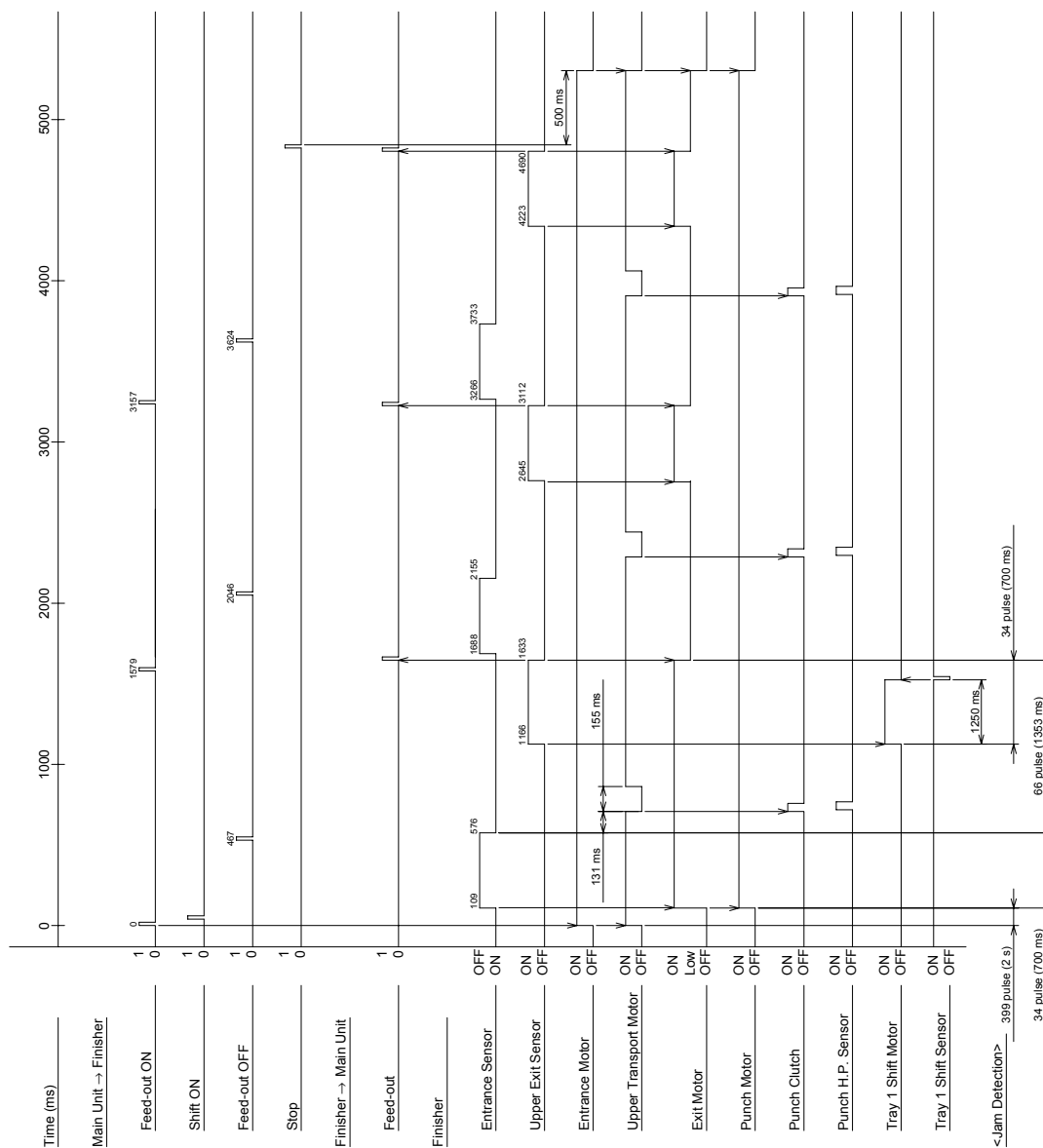
The punch position can be adjusted by up to 4 mm using combinations of the 3 spacers provided with the finisher.



2. TROUBLESHOOTING

2.1 TIMING CHARTS

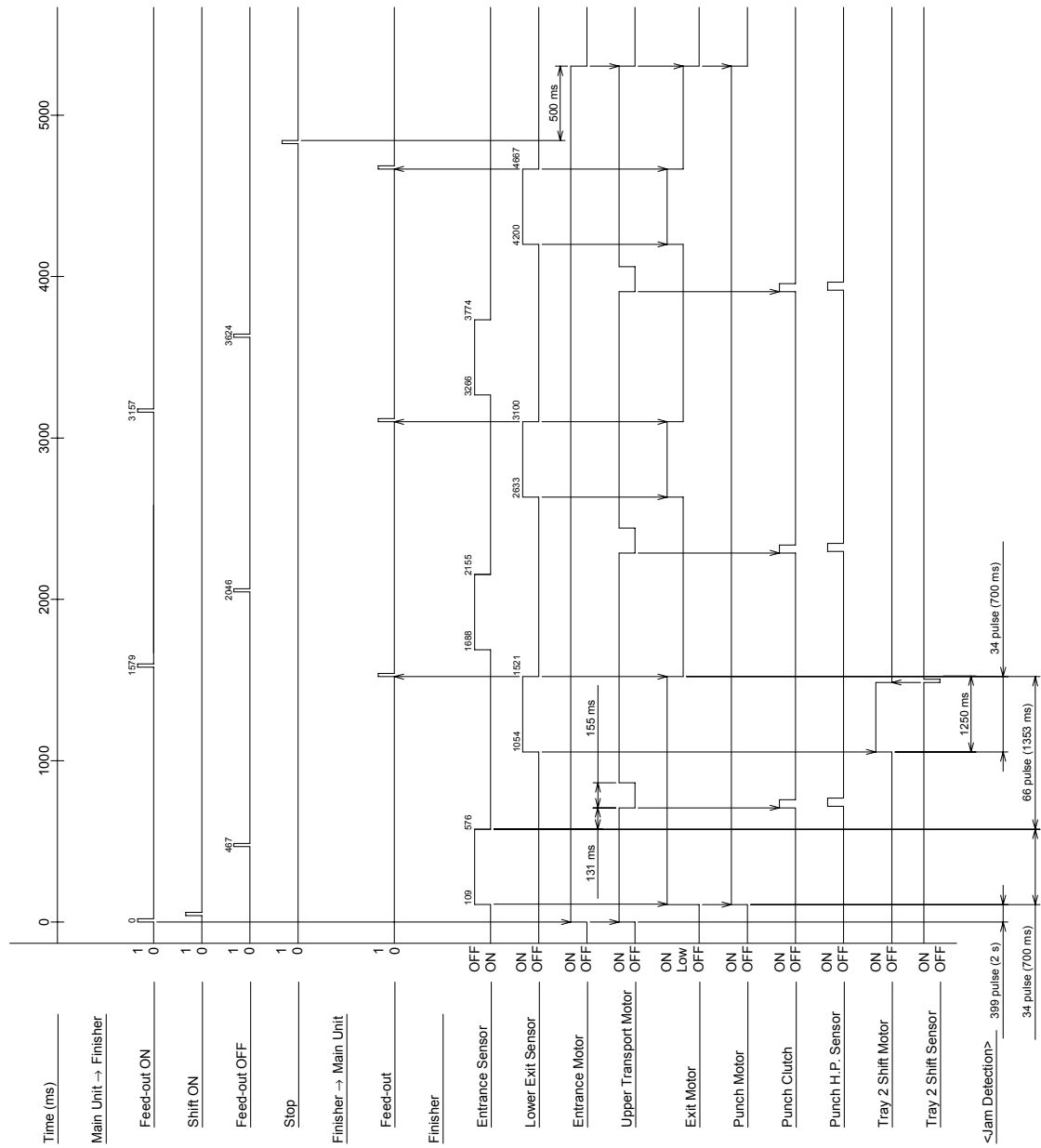
2.1.1 A4(S)/LT(S) SHIFT MODE WITH PUNCH – TRAY 1



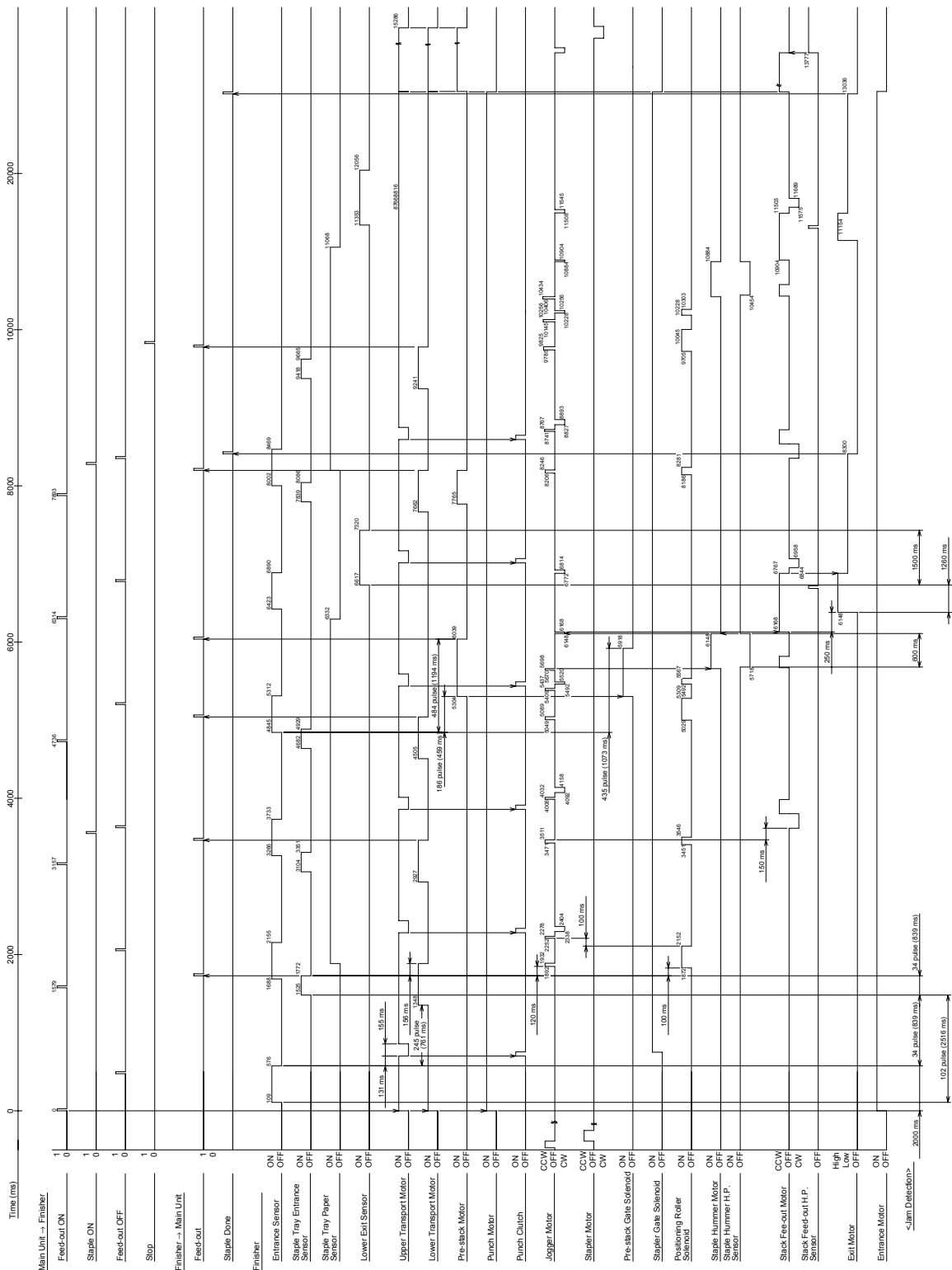
Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

TIMING CHARTS

2.1.2 A4(S)/LT(S) SHIFT MODE WITH PUNCH – TRAY 2



2.1.3 A4(S)/LT(S) STAPLE MODE WITH PUNCH



Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

2.2 JAM DETECTION

Mode		Jam	Content
Shift	Staple		
✓	✓	Entrance sensor: On check	The entrance sensor does not turn on within 399 pulse after the main machine exit sensor turns off. ^{*1}
✓	✓	Entrance sensor: Off check	The entrance sensor does not turn off within 34 pulse after it turns on. ^{*1}
✓		Tray exit sensor: On check	The tray exit sensor does not turn on within 66 pulse after the entrance sensor turns off. ^{*1}
✓		Tray exit sensor: Off check	The tray exit sensor does not turn off within 66 pulse after the tray exit sensor turns on.
	✓	Stapler tray entrance sensor: On check	The stapler tray entrance sensor does not switch on within 102 pulses after the entrance sensor switched off. ^{*1}
	✓	Stapler tray entrance sensor: Off check	The staple tray entrance sensor does not turn off within 34 pulse after the stapler tray entrance sensor turns on. ^{*1}
	✓	Lower tray exit sensor: On check	The lower exit sensor does not on within 1260 ms after the stack feed-out motor turns on.
	✓	Lower tray exit sensor: Off check	The lower exit sensor does not off within 1500 ms after it turns on.

^{*1} Counted by entrance motor pulses because timing differs for feed out.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCH SETTINGS

The DIP switches should not be set to any combination other than those described in the table below.

DPS101				Mode	Description
1	2	3	4		
0	0	0	0	Default.	
1	1	1	0	Free run.	No paper.
0	0	0	1	Factory shipping.	See the note below.

To position the shift trays for shipping, on the finisher main board set DIP SW4 ON, cycle the main machine power off and on, then set DIP SW4 OFF. The shift trays move automatically to the shipping position. After unpacking the machine again and switching on, turn all DIP switches off to put the machine into factory default mode.

3.2 TEST POINTS

No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP101	GND	Ground
TP102	5V	5V
TP103	RXD	Received command data
TP104	TXD	Transmitted command data

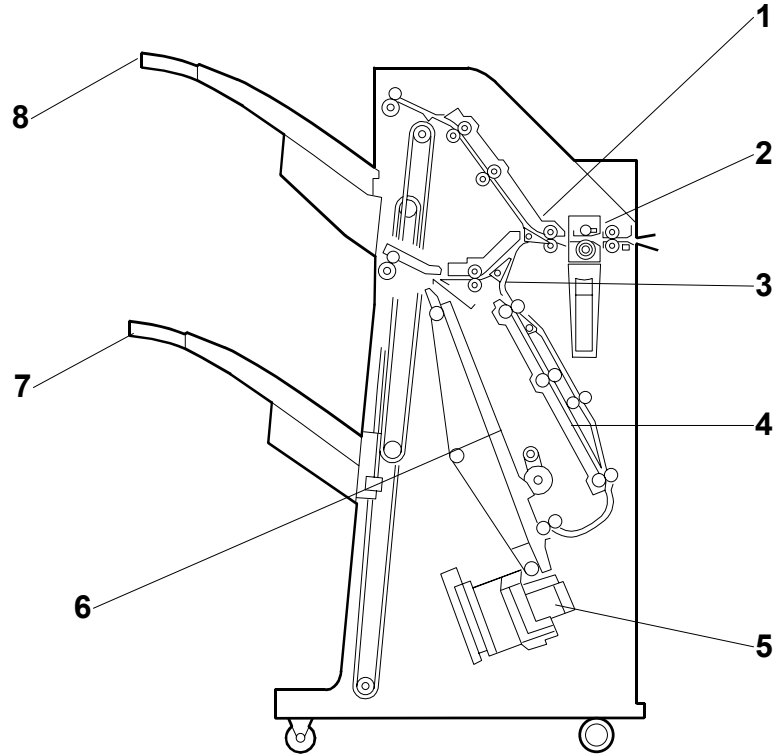
Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

3.3 FUSES

No.	Function
FU101	Protects 24 V.

4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

4.1 GENERAL LAYOUT



1 Upper junction gate	5 Stapler
2 Punch unit (option)	6 Stapler tray
3 Stapler junction gate	7 Tray 2
4 Pre-stack tray	8 Tray 1

Tray junction gate: Directs paper either to the upper or lower exit. In staple mode, the stack always goes out to the lower exit.

Stapler junction gate: Directs paper either to the lower exit or to the stapler tray.

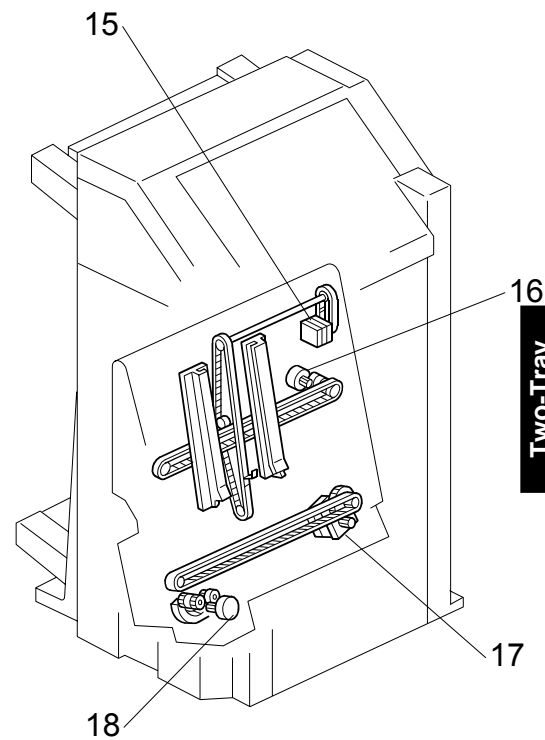
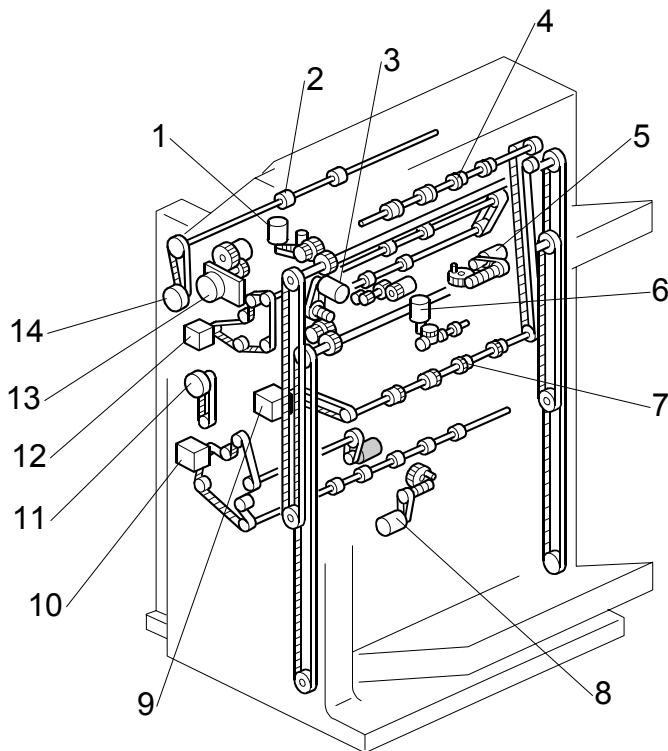
Pre-stack tray: When stapling multiple copies (A4 S, LT S, B5 S only) in the staple mode, the first sheet of the second copy waits here for the next sheet to feed while the previous stack is stapled. After the second copy is fed, the first and second sheets are fed together to the pre-stack tray. This delay allows enough time for the previous stack to be stapled without interrupting paper feed.

Shift trays: Tray 1 (upper) and tray 2 (lower) shift side to side in the sort mode, and raise and lower to receive ejected copies.

Stapler tray jogger: Employs positioning rollers and jogger fences to align stacks for stapling.

Punch unit. Punches holes in stacked copies.

4.2 DRIVE LAYOUT



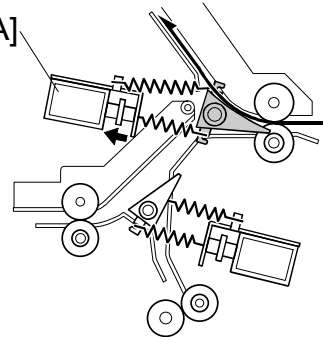
Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

1. Tray 1 lift motor	10. Lower transport motor
2. Entrance roller	11. Pre-stack motor
3. Tray 2 lift motor	12. Upper transport motor
4. Upper exit roller	13. Punch motor
5. Tray 1 shift motor	14. Entrance motor
6. Exit guide plate motor	15. Stack feed-out motor
7. Lower exit roller	16. Jogger motor
8. Tray 2 shift motor	17. Stapler motor
9. Exit motor	18. Stapler rotation motor

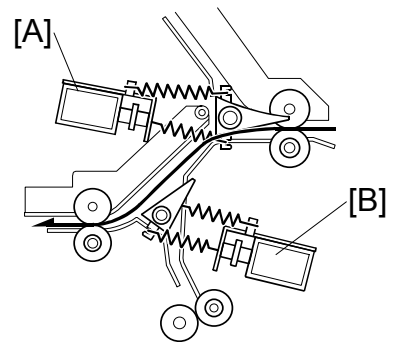
4.3 JUNCTION GATES

The two junction gates can direct paper to three destinations.

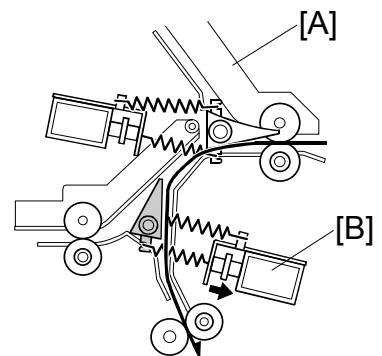
In sort/stack mode for tray 1, the tray junction solenoid [A] is on, and the copies go to the upper exit [A] (tray 1 is at the upper exit for sort/stack mode).



In sort/stack mode for tray 2, both the tray junction gate solenoid [A] and stapler junction gate solenoid [B] are off, and copies go to the lower exit.

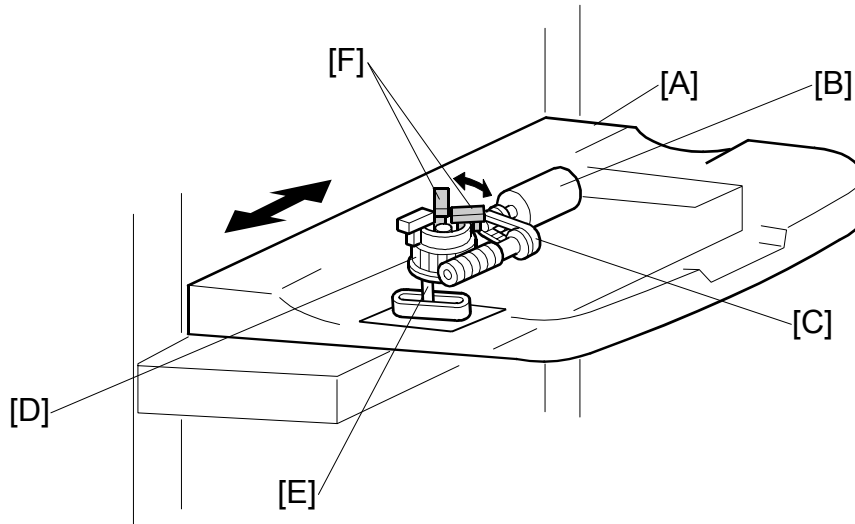


In staple mode, the tray junction solenoid [A] is off and the stapler junction gate solenoid [B] is on, and copies go to the stapler tray.



4.4 TRAY SHIFTING

4.4.1 TRAY SHIFT MECHANISMS



Tray 1 (Upper Tray)

In sort/stack mode, tray 1 [A] moves from side to side to separate the printed sets.

The tray 1 shift motor [B], inside the shift tray, controls the horizontal position of tray 1 through the timing belt [C] and gear disk [D].

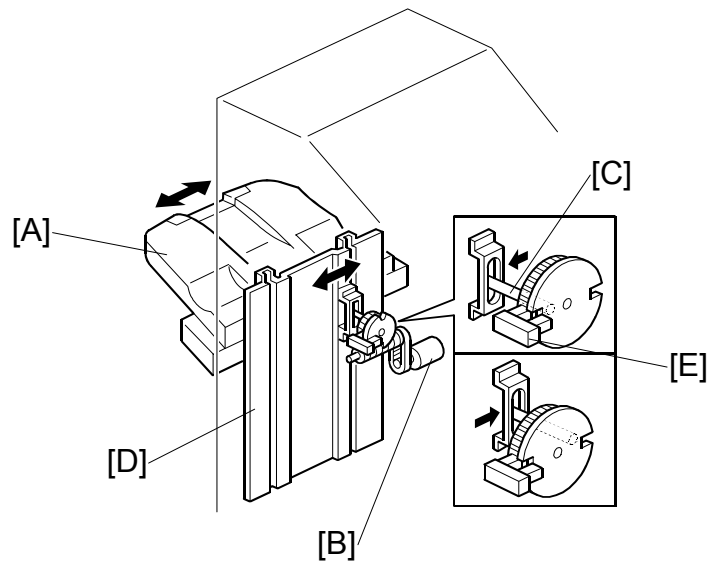
After one print set is delivered to tray 1, the shift motor turns on, driving the gear disk and the arm [E], and the tray drive unit moves to one side.

Two shift sensors [F] detect when to stop this side-to-side movement. There is a cut-out in the gear disk. The shift tray moves in one direction until one of the shift sensors detects the cut-out. Then the shift tray stops.

The next set of prints is then delivered, and the gear disk is turned in the opposite direction until the other shift sensor is activated.

TRAY SHIFTING

Tray 2 (Lower Tray)



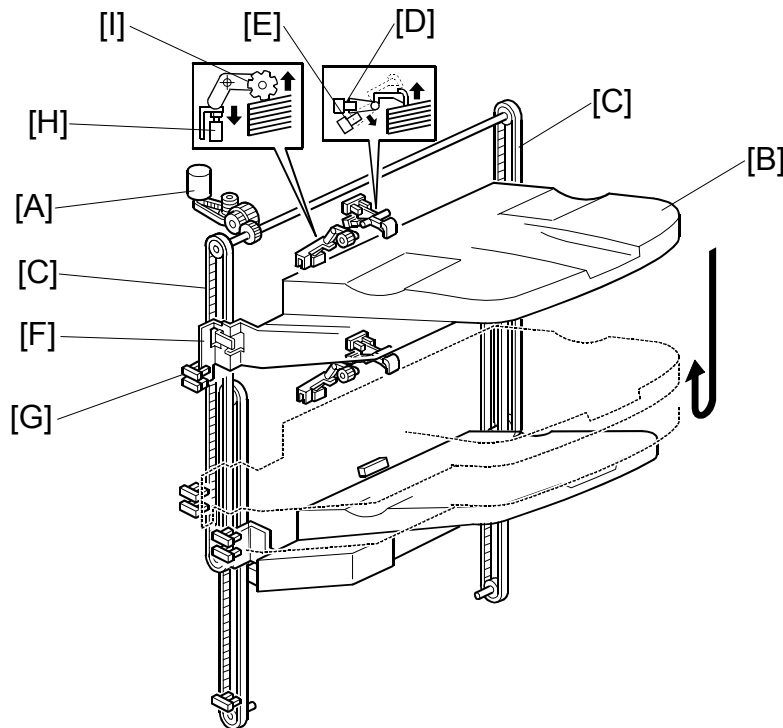
In sort/stack mode, tray 2 [A] moves from side to side to separate the sets of prints.

The shift mechanism for tray 2 is similar to that used for tray 1. However, when the tray 2 shift motor [B] turns on, the arm [D] moves the entire end fence [C] from side to side (not just the tray).

After the gear disk has turned 180 degrees, the cut-out in the gear disk enters the tray half-turn sensor [E], and the motor stops. When the next set of prints is delivered, the motor turns on again, and moves the tray back to its previous position.

4.5 TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISMS

4.5.1 TRAY 1



Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

Introduction

The tray 1 lift motor [A] controls the vertical position of tray 1 [B] through gears and timing belts [C].

Normal and sort/stack modes

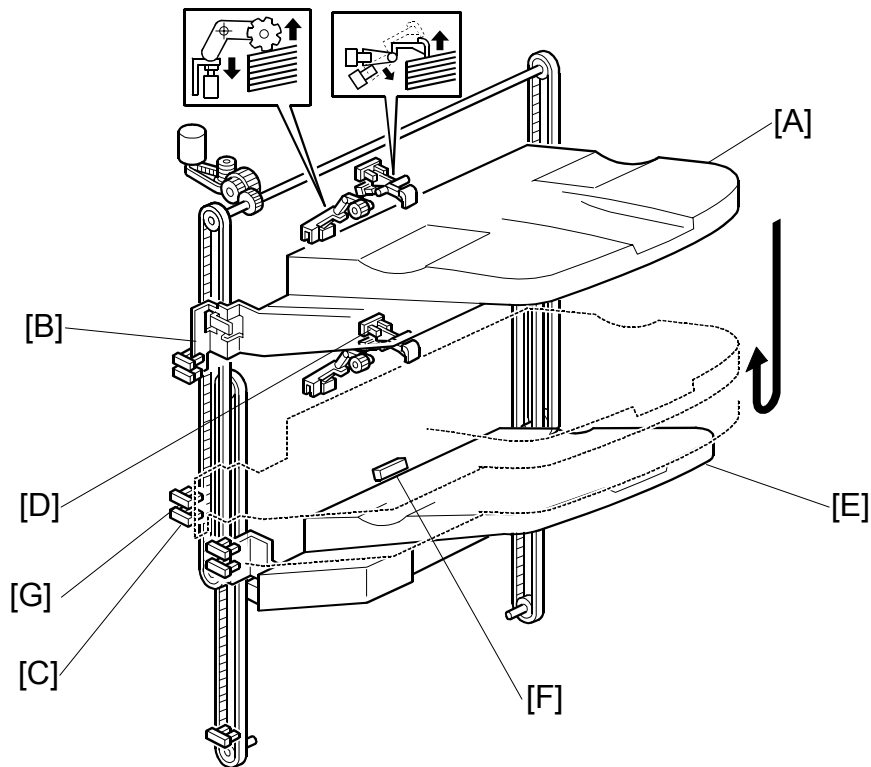
When the main switch is turned on, the tray is initialized at the upper position. To do this, the tray is moved up until upper stack height sensor 1 [D] is de-actuated.

During printing, if upper stack height sensor 2 [E] is actuated, the tray 1 lift motor lowers the tray for a specified time.

When the tray lowers during printing, the actuator [F] will pass through the tray 1 overflow sensor [G]. When the actuator drops below the sensor (to deactivate the sensor), the machine detects that the paper stack height has exceeded a certain limit.

The upper limit switch for tray 1 [H] prevents the drive gear from being damaged if the upper stack height sensor 1 should fail. If the tray is raised to the tray positioning roller [I], the switch will automatically cut the power to the tray 1 lift motor.

Staple mode



In staple mode, stapled stacks can be delivered to either tray, but they can only go to the lower exit. So, if tray 1 is selected, tray 1 [A] moves down to the lower paper exit.

Tray 1 lowers until the actuator [B] enters the tray 1 lower limit sensor [C]. Tray 1 then lifts up until lower stack height sensor 1 [D] is activated.

When tray 1 is moved down to the lower exit, tray 2 must be moved down out of the way. So, tray 2 [E] is also lowered until the tray 2 shunt position sensor [F] detects tray 2 (or the top of the paper stack in tray 2).

The method of paper height detection is the same as for the upper exit area.

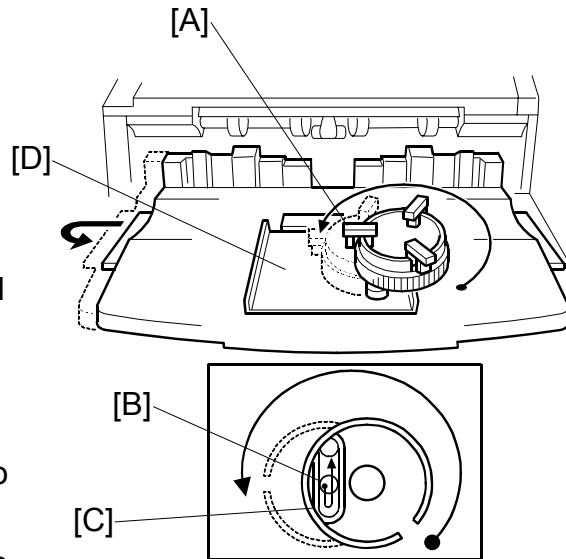
When the tray lowers during printing, the actuator will enter the tray 1 overflow 2 sensor [G]. When this happens, the machine detects that the paper stack height has exceeded the overflow limit.

Tray 1 release mechanism

When tray 1 is selected for staple mode, tray 1 must be moved down to the lower paper exit. However, to move past the sensors at the lower exit, the tray must be moved away from the finisher.

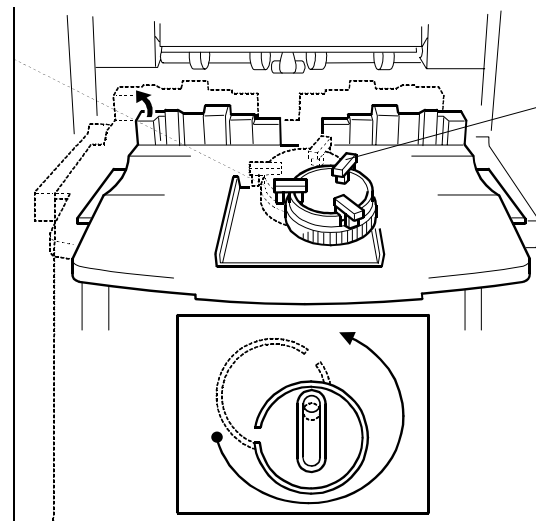
To do this, the tray 1 shift motor turns until the cut-out in the gear disk enters the tray release sensor [A]. At this time, the arm [B] has reached position [C], and is pushing against the plate [D], in towards the finisher. However, the plate is fixed, so the tray moves out away from the finisher.

Then, the tray 1 shift motor stops, then the tray 1 lift motor lowers tray 1.



When the tray 1 lower limit sensor is activated (as described on the previous page), the tray has moved past the sensors at the lower exit. The tray 1 shift motor turns on again until the gear disk activates the tray shift sensor [E]. This moves the tray back against the finisher.

Next, tray 1 lifts until the finisher detects that the tray is at the correct height.



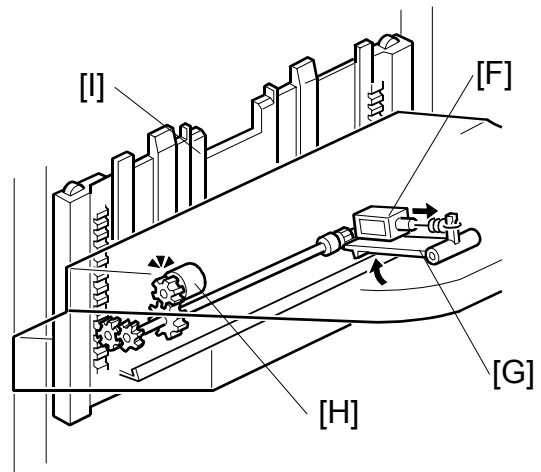
Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISMS

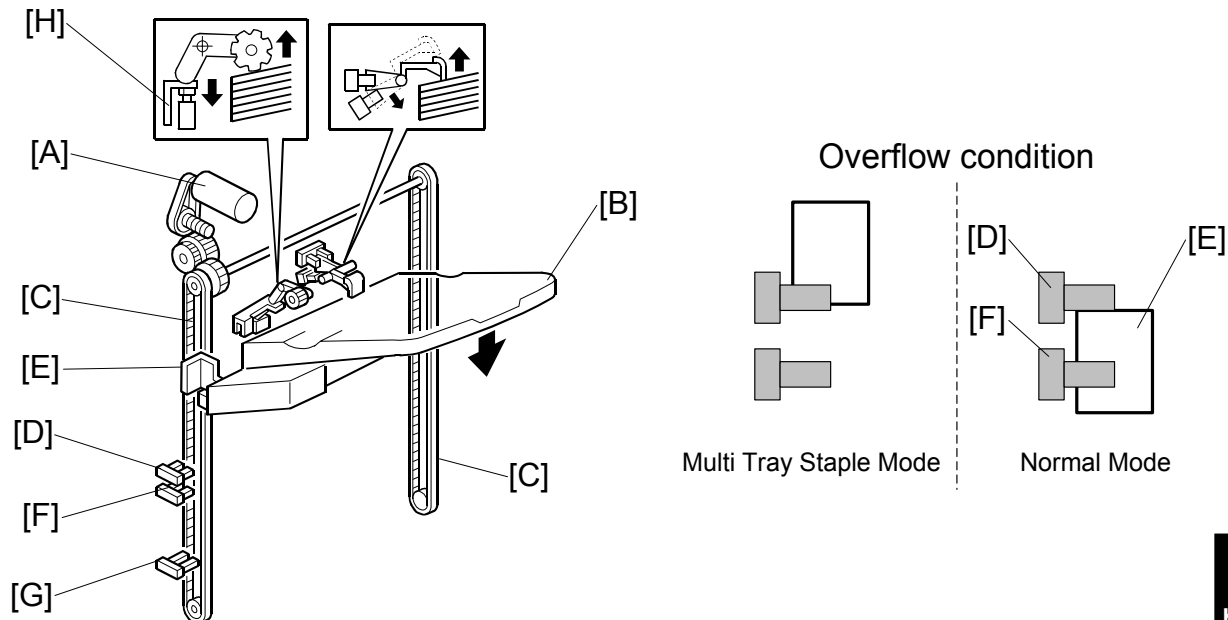
When tray 1 is at the lower exit, the tray lock solenoid [F] is on, and the lever [G] locks the tray. This prevents the user from moving the tray out of position (the first tray has some play when it is at the lower position).

Before tray 1 goes back to the upper exit area, the tray lock solenoid [F] turns off to unlock the tray. In addition, the back fence lock clutch [H] turns on to hold the back fence [I]. This prevents the springs inside the back fence from suddenly contracting (these springs normally keep the tray steady during side-to-side shift).

Then, tray 1 is released and it moves up to the upper exit area.



4.5.2 TRAY 2



The tray 2 lift motor [A] controls the vertical position of tray 2 [B] through gears and timing belts [C].

The paper height detection is the same as for tray 1.

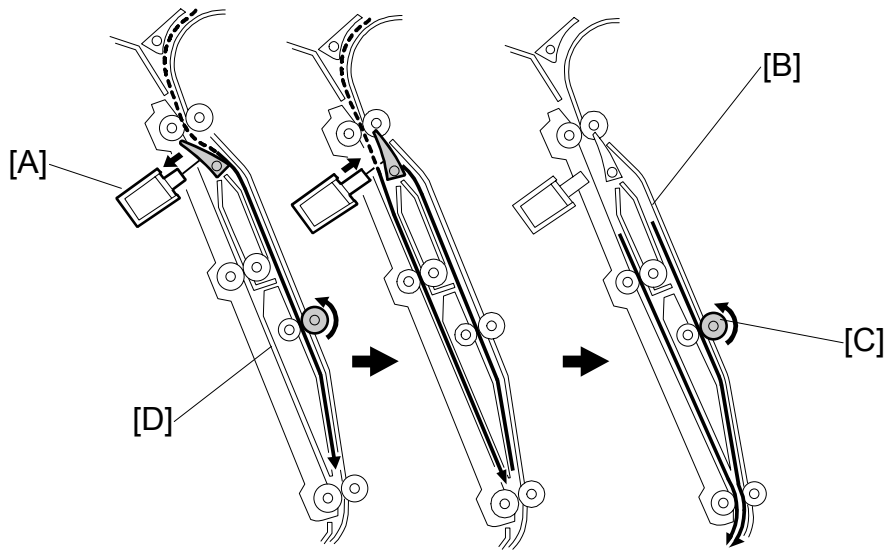
When the tray lowers during printing, the tray is judged to be overflowing when the tray 2 overflow sensor 1 [D] is off and the tray 2 overflow sensor-2 [F] is on (see 'Normal Mode' in the above diagram).

In the multi-tray staple mode (selected by the service technician), the machine detects that the paper stack height has exceeded the overflow limit when the actuator [E] enters the tray 2 overflow 1 sensor [D].

The lower limit sensor [G] for tray 2 detects when tray 2 is at its lowest limit and stops the tray 2 lift motor.

The function of the tray 2 upper limit switch [H] is the same as for tray 1.

4.5.3 PRE-STACK MECHANISM



This feature is available only when using A4 L, LT L, and B5 L.

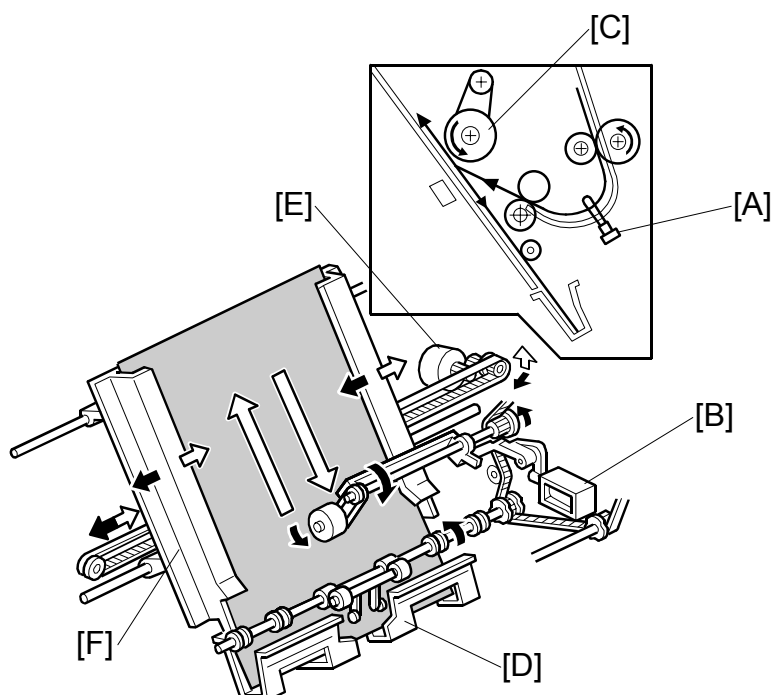
During stapling, the main machine must wait. This mechanism reduces the wait by holding the first two sheets of a job while the previous job is still being stapled. It only works during the second and subsequent sets of a multi-set print job.

The pre-stack junction gate solenoid [A] switches on after the first sheet activates the entrance sensor. This directs the sheet to the pre-stack tray [B].

The pre-stack feed roller [C] stops for a specified time after the trailing edge of the paper has passed through the entrance sensor and stops the paper from leaving the pre-stack tray.

At the same time, the pre-stack junction gate solenoid switches off, and the second sheet is sent to the paper guide [D]. The pre-stack feed roller (controlled by the pre-stack motor) starts to rotate again for a specified time after the trailing edge of the second page has been passed through the entrance sensor, and then both sheets are sent to the stapler tray together.

4.6 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM



Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

In staple mode, each sheet of copy paper is vertically and horizontally aligned when it arrives in the stapler tray.

Vertical Paper Alignment

After the trailing edge of the paper passes the stapler tray entrance sensor [A], the positioning roller solenoid [B] is energized for a specified time to push the positioning roller [C] into contact with the paper.

The positioning roller rotates to push the paper back and align the trailing edge of the paper against the stack stopper [D].

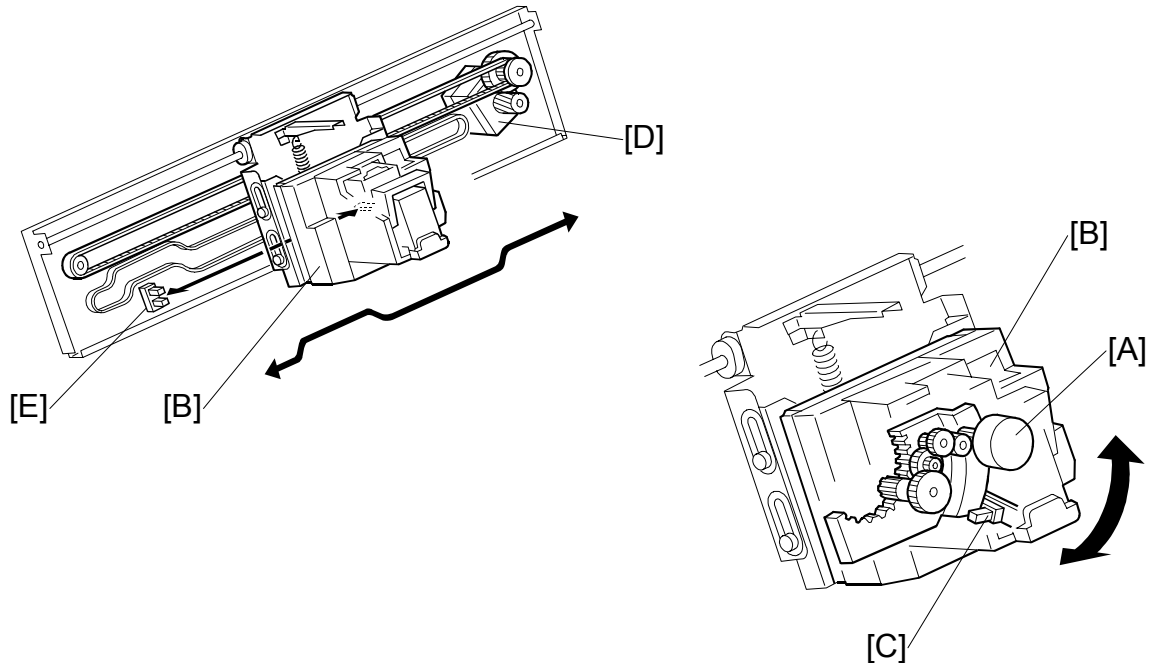
Horizontal Paper Alignment

When the start key is pressed, the jogger motor [E] turns on and the jogger fences [F] move to the waiting position, which is 8 mm wider on both sides than the selected paper.

When the trailing edge of the paper passes the stapler tray entrance sensor, the jogger motor turns on to move the jogger fences 5 mm towards the paper. After a short time, the jogger motor turns on again for the horizontal paper alignment then returns to the waiting position.

4.7 STAPLER MECHANISM

4.7.1 STAPLER MOVEMENT



The stapler can be moved from side to side or rotated according to the requirements of the selected stapling mode.

Stapler Rotation

After the start key is pressed, the stapler rotation motor [A] rotates the staple unit [B] until the stapler rotation HP sensor [C] is activated. Then, the stapler moves from front to rear of the finisher.

When oblique stapling at one position has been selected, after the stapler moves to the stapling position, the stapler rotation motor rotates the stapler 45 degrees (clockwise) at the stapling position before the stapler fires.

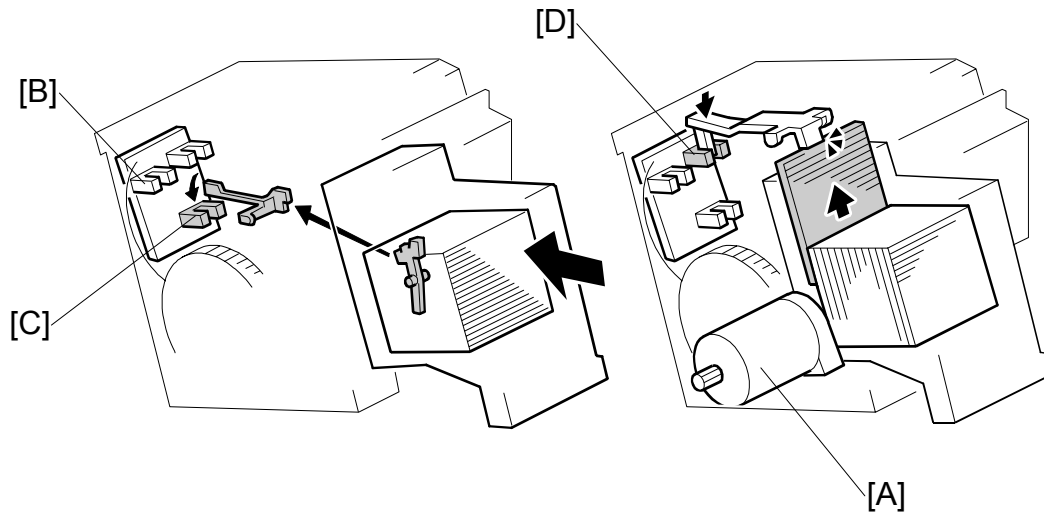
Side-to-Side Movement

The stapler motor [D] moves the stapler from side to side. After the start key is pressed, the stapler moves from its home position to the stapling position.

The amount of movement required to reach the stapling position is determined by the size of the selected paper. If the two-staple mode is selected, the stapler moves to the front stapling position first, and then moves to the rear stapling position. However, for the next print set, it staples in the reverse order.

After the stapling job is finished, the stapler returns to its home position, determined by the stapler HP sensor [E].

4.7.2 STAPLER



The staple hammer is driven by the stapler hammer motor [A] inside the stapler.

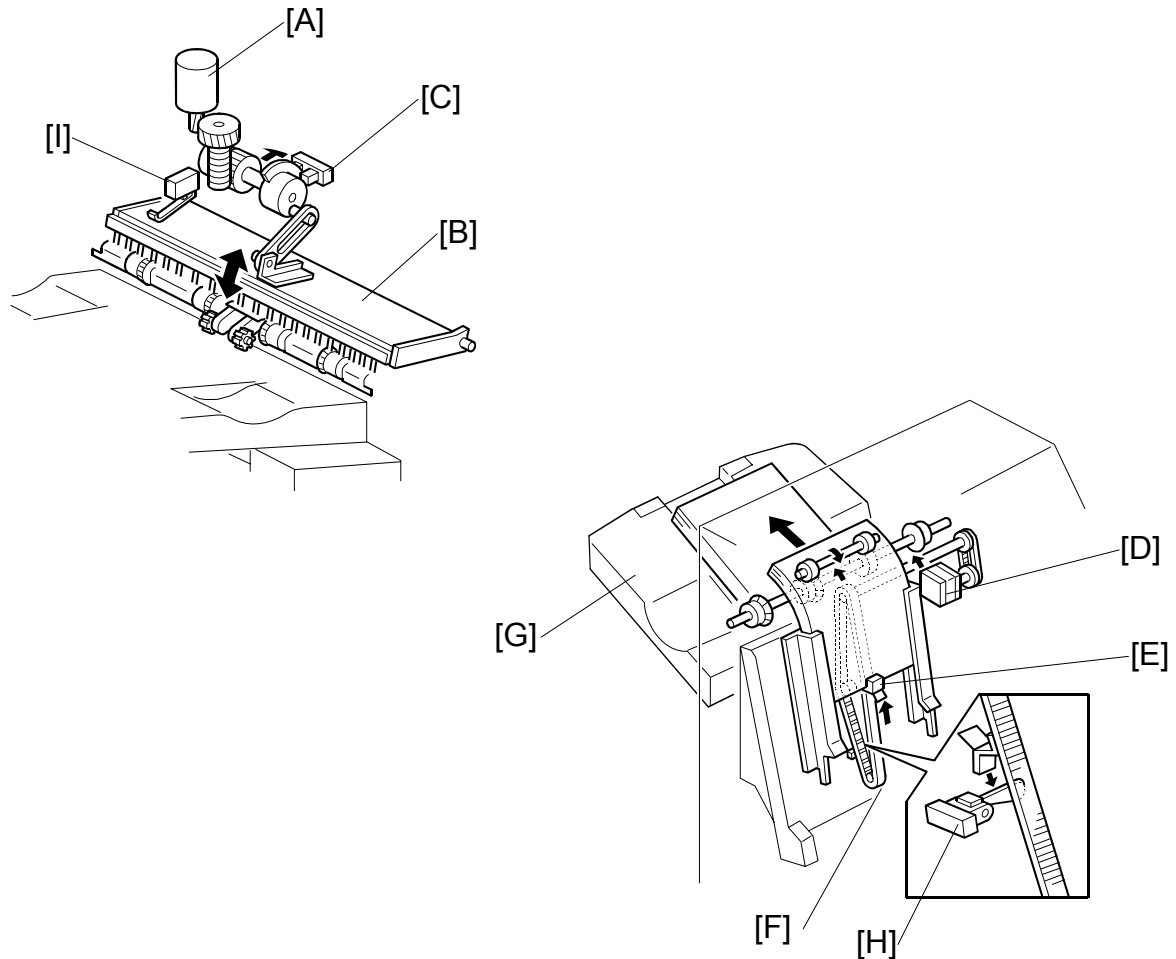
As soon as the paper stack is aligned, the staple hammer motor starts. When stapling is finished, the staple hammer HP sensor [B] is turned on, and the staple hammer motor then stops.

The staple end sensor [C] detects the staple end condition and whether the staple cartridge is installed or not. If a stapler cassette is not installed, or after the stapler cassette runs out of staples, a message is displayed in the operation panel. If this condition is detected during a print job, the indicator will appear, but the print job will not stop.

The staple position sensor [D] detects if there is a staple sheet at the stapling position. After a new staple cartridge is installed, the staple hammer motor turns on to transfer the staple sheet until the staple position sensor is activated by the staple sheet.

If a staple jam occurs and overloads the motor, this causes a staple jam message to appear on the operation panel.

4.7.3 FEED OUT AND TRANSPORT



When stapling starts, the exit guide plate motor [A] switches on and opens the exit guide plate [B], so that the stapled stack can exit to the tray. The exit guide plate sensor [C] detects when to switch off the exit guide plate motor.

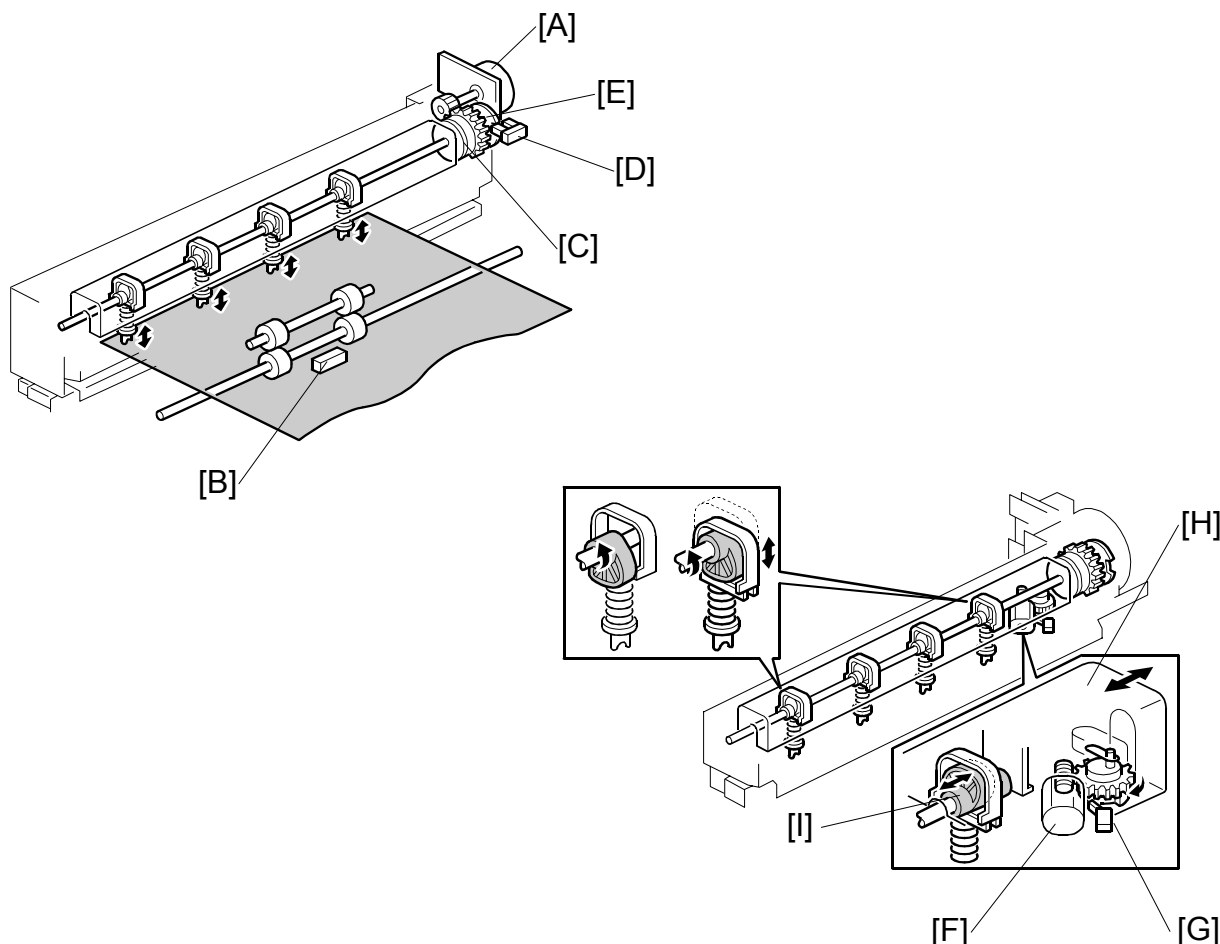
After the prints have been stapled, the stack feed-out motor [D] starts. The pawl [E] on the stack feed out belt [F] lifts the stapled set and feeds it to the tray [G].

The exit guide plate closes at a specified interval after the stapled prints have started to feed out. Then the exit roller takes over the stack feed-out. The stack feed-out motor turns off when the pawl actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor [H].

When tray 1 is passing this area on its way back up to the upper exit, the exit guide safety switch [I] cuts power to the tray lift motor if the guide is opened too far. This prevents damage to the user's fingers if they are inside the lower exit when the tray is moving up.

4.8 PUNCH UNIT (OPTIONAL)

The punch unit punches holes in printed sheets, one by one. The punch unit is provided with a new punch mechanism to improve the accuracy of punching.



Two-Tray
Finisher
B545

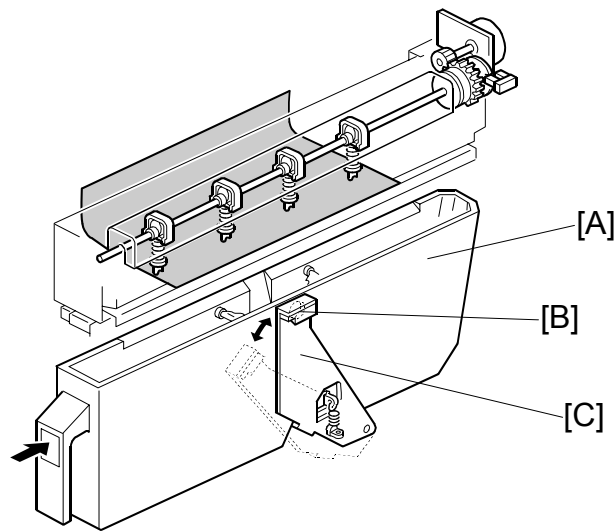
4.8.1 PUNCH DRIVE MECHANISM

The punch drive mechanism is driven by the punch motor [A]. Each sheet is positioned and punched by pressure from above. A certain time after the trailing edge of the paper passes through the finisher entrance sensor [B], the punch motor turns on and the paper stops. Then the punch clutch [C] turns on to make the punch holes.

The home position is detected by the punch HP sensor [D]. When the cut-out in the punch shaft disk [E] enters the punch HP sensor, the punch clutch turns off.

When the finisher has received the command that changes the number of punch holes, the punch hole motor [F] turns on until the disk changes the status of the punch hole switch [G] (until it switches on or off). This indicates that the cover [H] and the punch cam [I] have moved to one side or the other to change the number of holes.

4.8.2 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION



Waste punchouts are collected in the punch waste hopper [A] below the punch unit inside the finisher.

When the top of the punchout waste in the hopper reaches and actuates the hopper sensor [B], a message will be displayed on the operation panel after the current job is completed.

This sensor also detects whether the punch waste hopper is installed. When the waste hopper is taken out, the arm [C] moves down and this will actuate the sensor and display a message in the operation panel. This message is the same as for the hopper full condition.

BOOKLET FINISHER
B546

BOOKLET FINISHER B546

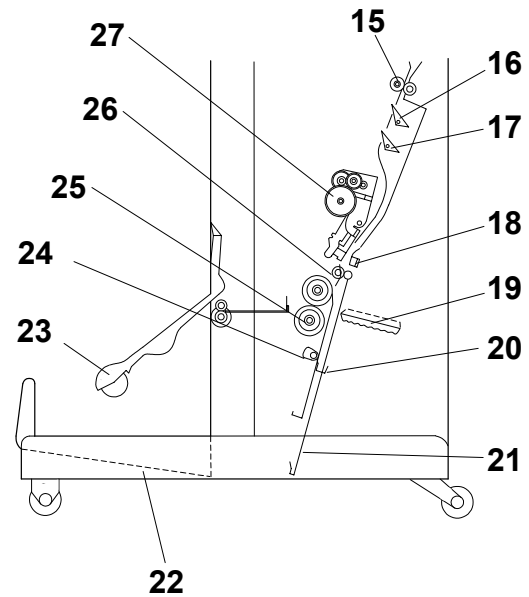
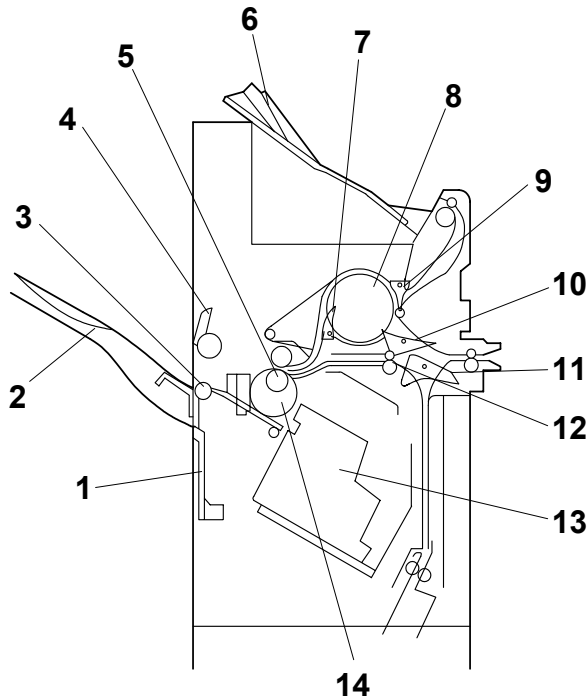
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION.....	1
1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT.....	1
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	2
2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM.....	2
2.1.1 SHIFT TRAY MODE	2
A4/LT sideways or shorter	2
Longer than A4 sideways.....	2
2.1.2 PROOF TRAY MODE.....	3
2.1.3 BOOKLET STITCH MODE	3
2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM	4
2.3 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM	5
2.4 PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM	6
2.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM	7
2.5.1 DRIVE.....	7
2.5.2 MOVEMENT	7
Front and Rear Stapling.....	7
Tow-position Stapling.....	7
2.6 STAPLER	8
2.7 SHIFT TRAY MECHANISM.....	9
2.8 BOOKLET UNIT GATE MECHANISM.....	10
2.9 RELAY ROLLER AND POSITIONING PLATE MECHANISM	12
2.10 POSITIONING ROLLER MECHANISM	13
2.11 BOOKLET UNIT JOGGER MOVEMENT MECHANISM.....	14
2.12 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT	15
2.13 PAPER FOLDER MECHANISM	16
3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	18
3.1 REMOVAL	18
3.1.1 UPPER DOOR.....	18
3.1.2 UPPER REAR COVER.....	19
3.1.3 LOWER REAR COVER.....	19
3.1.4 TOP COVER.....	20
3.1.5 UPPER INNER COVER	20
3.1.6 SHIFT TRAY UNIT	21
3.1.7 UPPER SHIFT GUIDE.....	22
3.1.8 LOWER SHIFT GUIDE	22
3.1.9 EXIT UNIT	23
3.1.10 BUFFER ROLLER UNIT.....	24
3.1.11 STAPLER	25
3.1.12 FINISHER BOARD	26
3.1.13 BOOKLET UNIT	27

3.1.14 FOLDER ROLLERS	29
3.1.15 FOLDER PLATE.....	32
Removal.....	32
Reinstalling	33
3.1.16 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT	34
Removal.....	34
Adjustment.....	35
3.1.17 BOOKLET BOARD	37
3.1.18 POSITIONING PLATE UNIT.....	37
3.1.19 1ST AND 2ND BOOKLET UNIT GATES	38
3.2 ADJUSTMENT	39
3.2.1 SHIFT TRAY HEIGHT	39
3.2.2 JOGGER FENCE POSITION	40
3.2.3 STAPLING POSITION.....	41
3.2.4 BOOKLET STAPLING POSITION	42

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Shutter
2. Shift Tray
3. Lower Exit Roller
4. Upper Exit Guide
5. 2nd Transport Roller
6. Proof Tray
7. Buffer Roller Exit Gate
8. Buffer Roller
9. Proof Tray Gate
10. Buffer Roller Entrance Gate
11. Booklet Gate
12. 1st Transport Roller
13. Stapler Unit
14. Transport Belt

15. Booklet Unit Entrance Roller
16. 1st Booklet Unit Gate
17. 2nd Booklet Unit Gate
18. Anvil
19. Folder Plate
20. Positioning Plate
21. Shutter Guide
22. Booklet Tray
23. Exit Guide
24. Positioning Roller
25. Folder Roller
26. Relay Roller
27. Booklet Stapler Unit

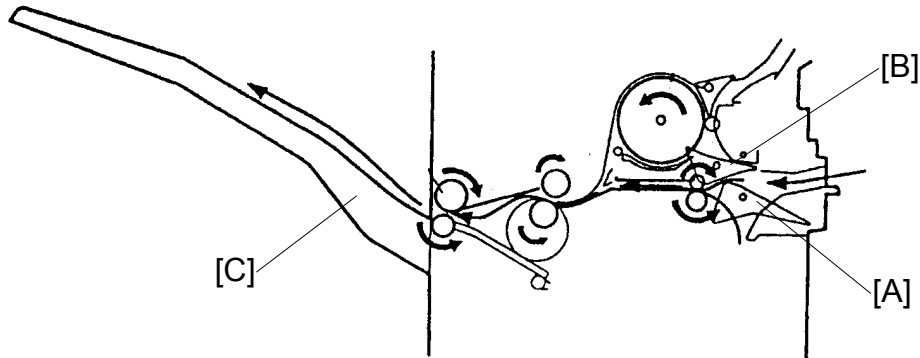
Booklet
Finisher
B546

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM

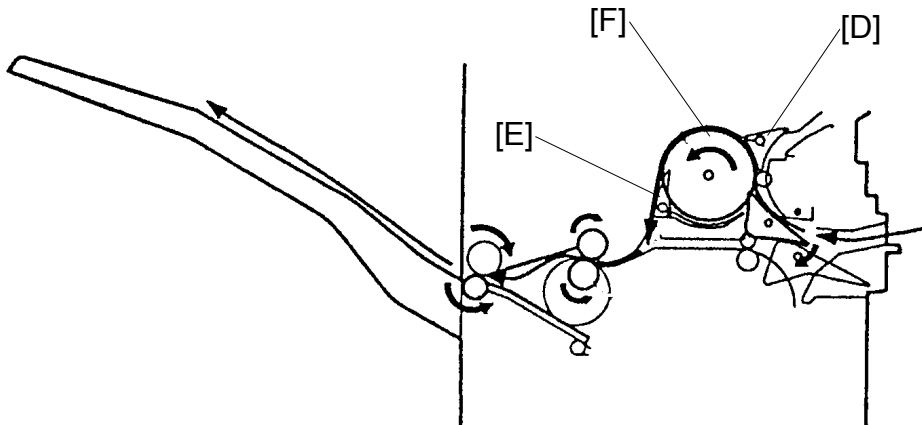
2.1.1 SHIFT TRAY MODE

A4/LT sideways or shorter



The booklet gate [A] and buffer roller entrance gate [B] are closed and the copy paper goes directly to the shift tray [C].

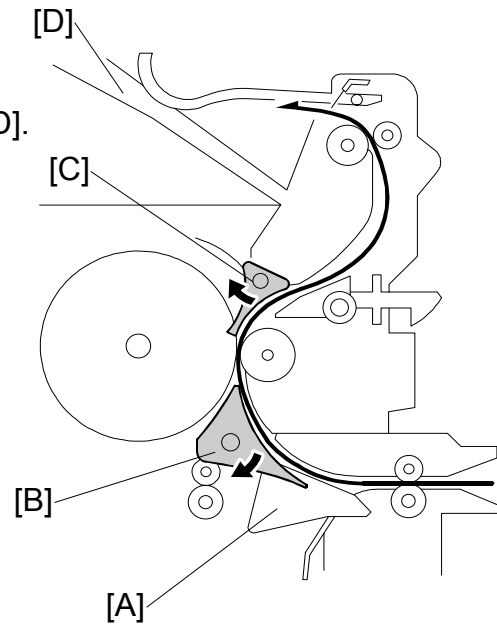
Longer than A4 sideways



The booklet gate, proof tray gate [D], and buffer roller exit gate [E] are closed, and the buffer roller entrance gate is opened. The copy paper passes through the buffer roller [F]. This paper path creates a distance between copies.

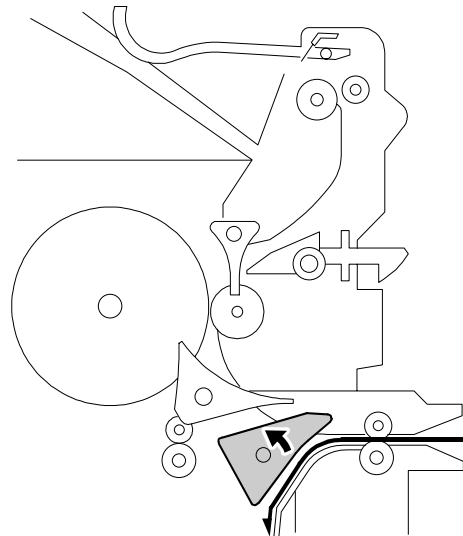
2.1.2 PROOF TRAY MODE

The booklet gate [A] is closed. The buffer roller entrance gate [B] and proof tray gate [C] are opened. The copy paper goes to the proof tray [D].



2.1.3 BOOKLET STITCH MODE

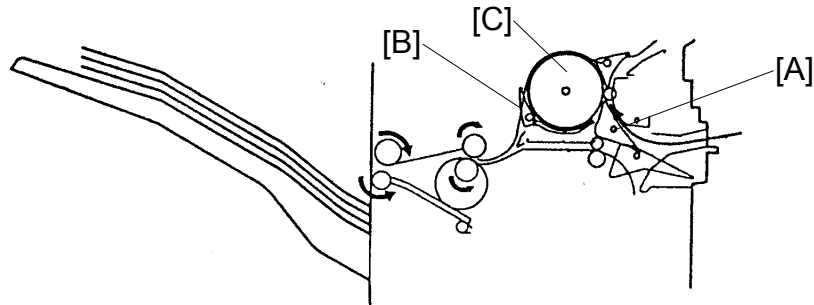
The booklet gate is opened and the copy paper goes to the booklet unit.



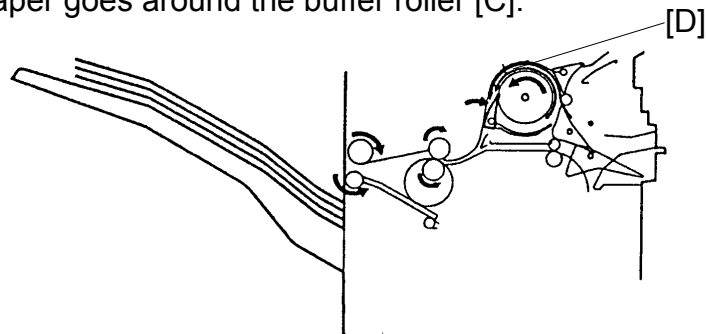
2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM

This mechanism improves productivity in staple mode and shift mode.

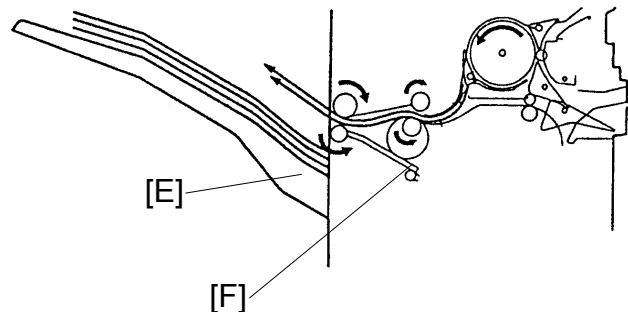
During stapling, the copier has to wait. This mechanism reduces the wait by holding the first two sheets of a job while the previous job is still being stapled. It only works during the second and subsequent sets of a multi-set copy job.



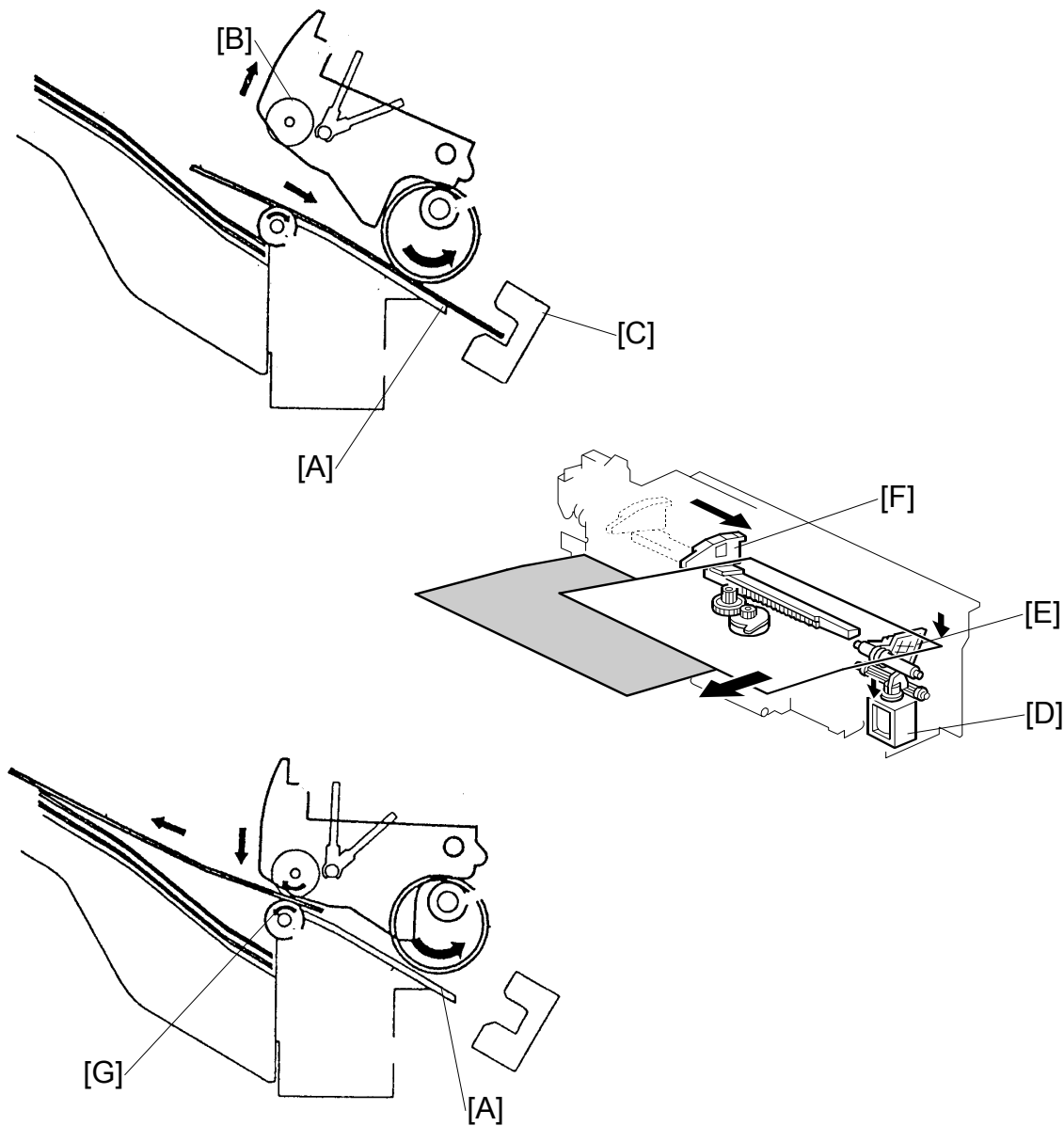
The buffer roller entrance gate [A] and buffer roller exit gate [B] are opened. Then, the 1st sheet of paper goes around the buffer roller [C].



When the 2nd copy [D] comes to the buffer roller, the buffer roller exit gate is closed. The two sheets of paper go to the shift tray [E] or staple tray [F].



2.3 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM



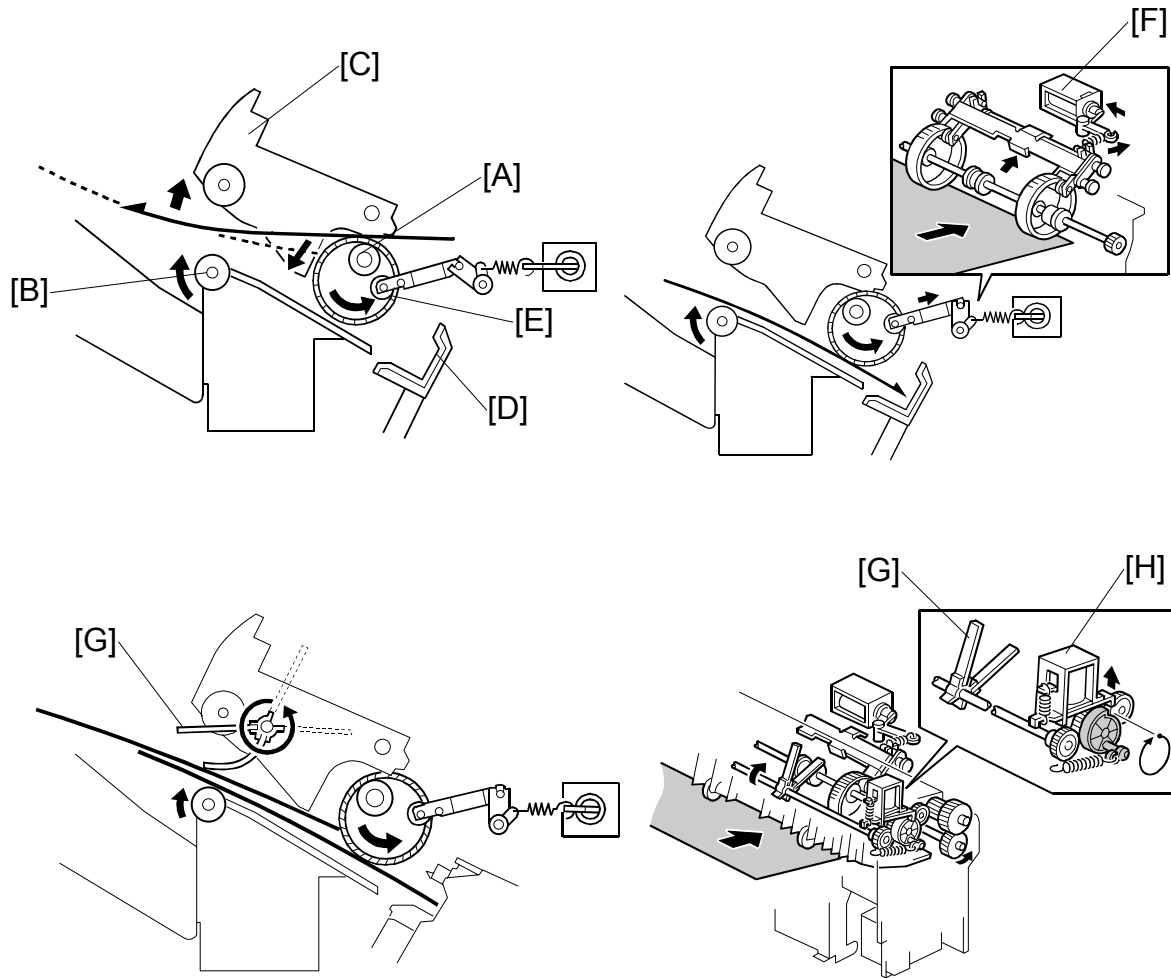
Booklet
Finisher
B546

In sort and stack mode, only the 1st sheet of copy paper from the 2nd set is shifted to the front to separate each set of copies.

When the copy paper comes into the staple tray [A], the upper exit guide [B] (which contains the upper exit roller) opens. The paper switches back to the stopper [C]. Then the front guide release solenoid [D] turns on and the front guide [E] is released, the shift motor moves jogger fence [F] to the front, and the copy paper shifts to the front by 30 mm.

After copy paper has been shifted, the upper exit guide closes and the lower exit roller [G] turns in the opposite direction to feed out the copy paper.

2.4 PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM



When the trailing edge of the 1st copy paper passes the 2nd transport roller [A], the lower exit roller [B] stops and turns reverse. At the same time, the upper guide plate motor turns on and opens the upper exit guide [C]. The copy paper is sent to the stopper [D] by the lower exit roller and feed belt [E], and it is aligned by the jogger motor.

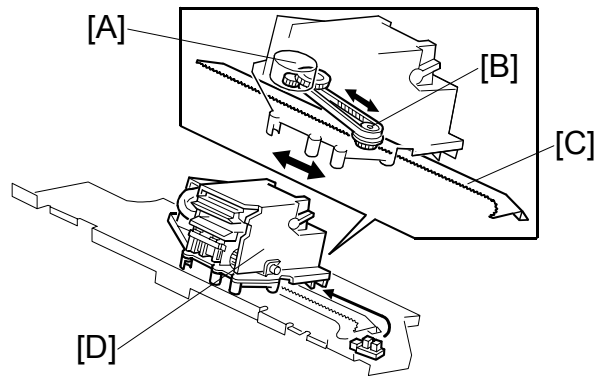
The feed belt solenoid [F] turns on to move the feed belt to the stopper. This function prevents excessive buckling of the paper between belt and stopper.

The paddles [G] send the paper to the stopper starting from the 2nd copy paper. When the trailing edge of the 2nd copy paper passes the 2nd transport roller, the paddle solenoid [H] turns on and the drive from the transport roller transmits to the paddle shaft.

2.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM

2.5.1 DRIVE

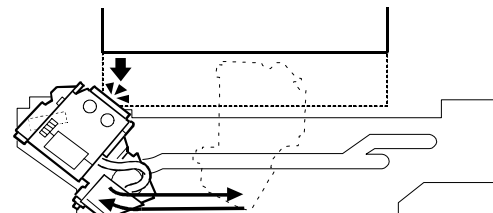
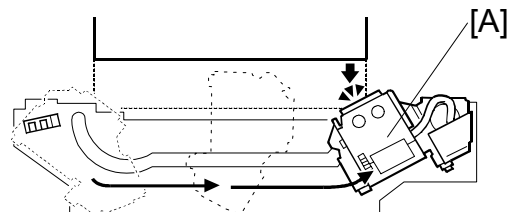
The stapler motor [A] drives the stapler unit drive gear [B] via a timing belt. The stapler unit guide has a rack gear [C]. The stapler unit moves along the rack gear via the stapler unit [D] drive gear.



2.5.2 MOVEMENT

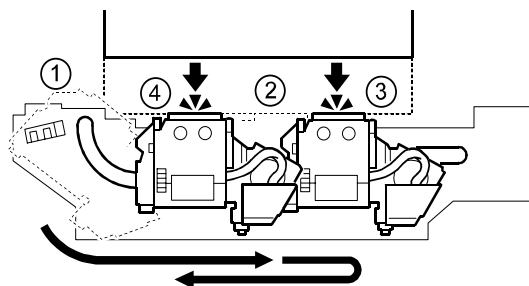
Front and Rear Stapling

When the print key is pressed, the stapler unit moves to the center. The stapler unit moves to the front (or rear) stapling position when the copy paper comes into the finisher and stays until the copy job finishes. It returns to home position when the job is finished.

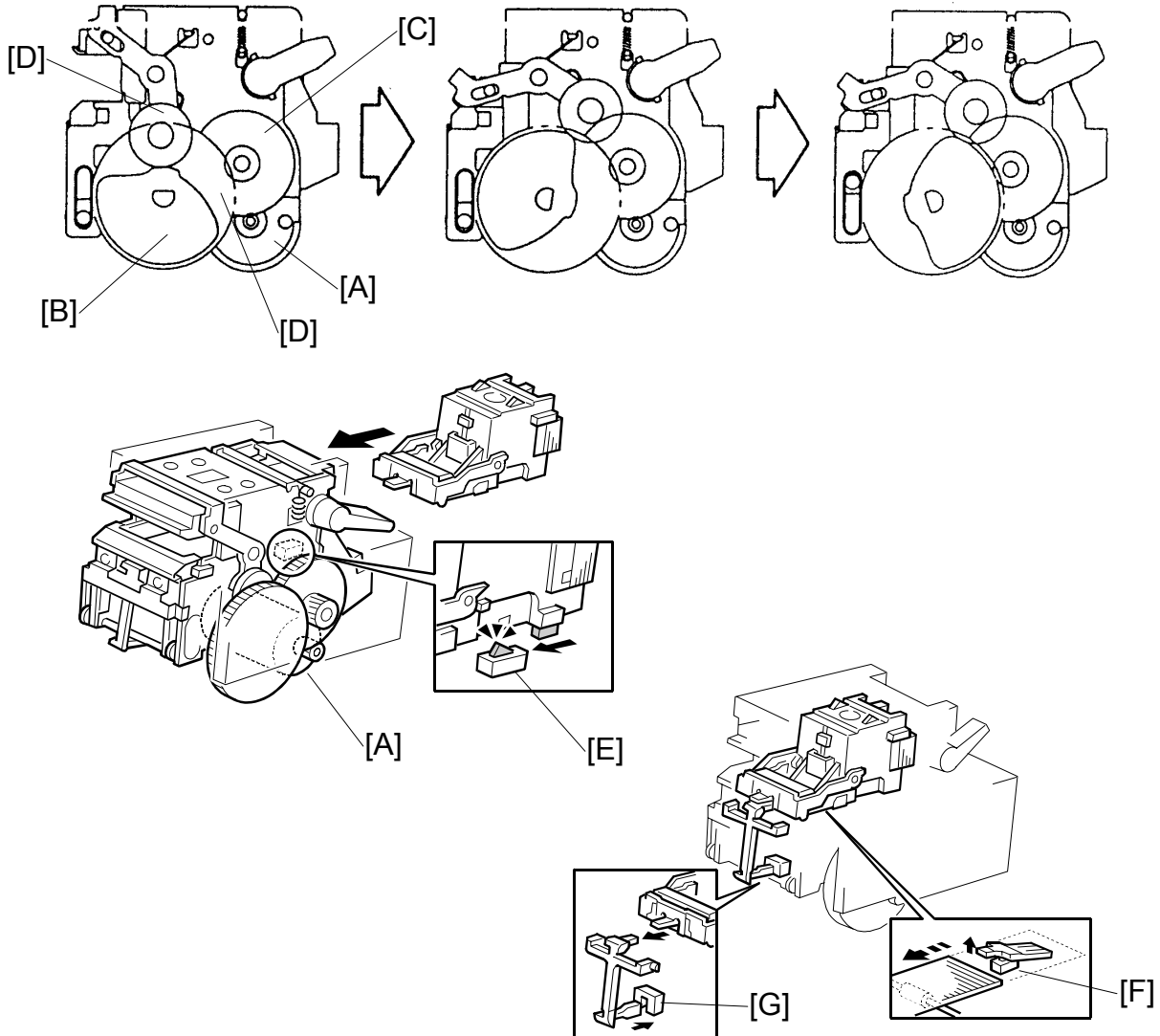


Two-position Stapling

When the print key is pressed, the stapler unit moves to the center. The stapler unit moves to the rear stapling position first and moves to the front stapling position when stapling. Then it goes back to the center until the copy job finishes. It returns to home position when the job is finished.



2.6 STAPLER

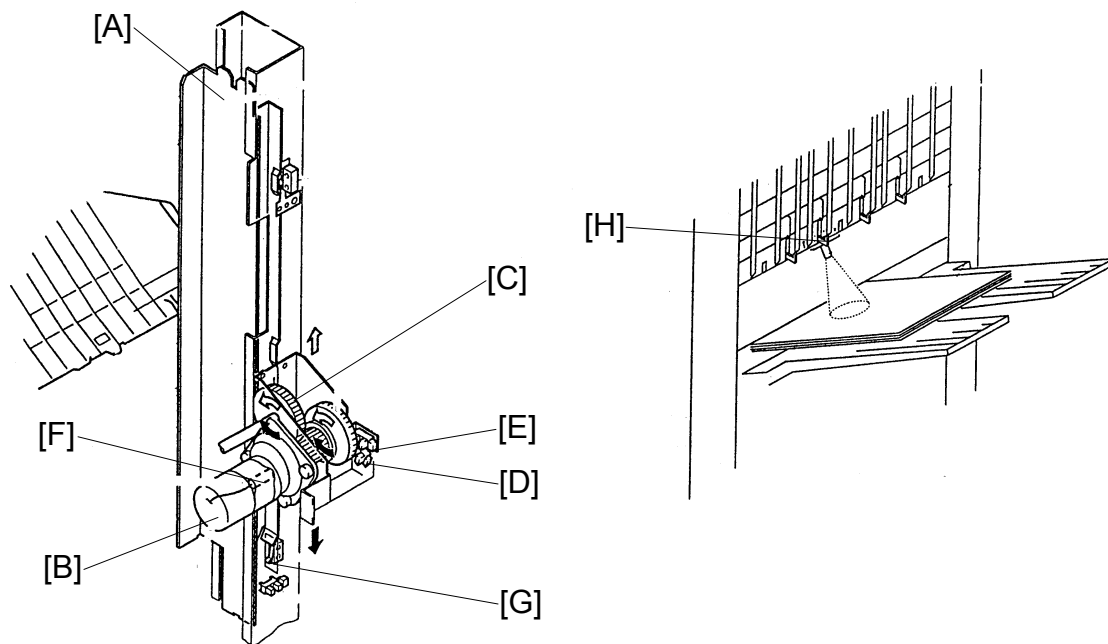


The staple hammer motor [A] drives the cam [B] via 2 gears [C, D] and the guide roller on the staple hammer moves on the cam [D]. When the guide roller moves to the highest position on the cam, the copy paper is stapled.

The stapler unit contains the cartridge set switch [E], staple end switch [F] and staple position sensor [G].

The staple position sensor detects whether the staple sheet has come to the stapler unit or not.

2.7 SHIFT TRAY MECHANISM



The guide gear [A] on which the shift tray is mounted is driven by the lift motor [B] via gear [C].

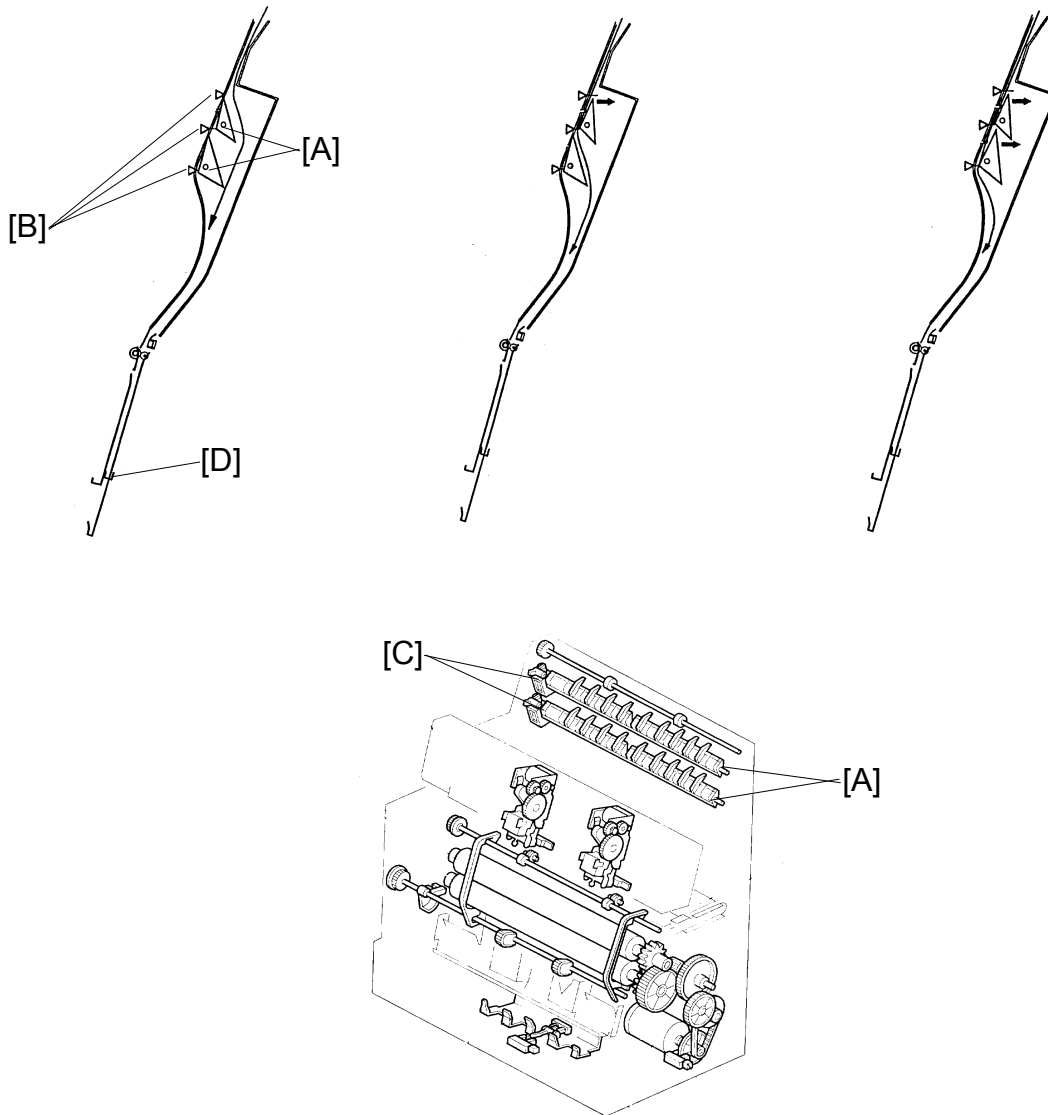
The finisher board detects the direction of the motor rotation and motor position using the lift motor sensors 1 [D] and 2 [E].

The lift motor contains a thermoswitch [F]. When it detects 73.5° C, the finisher board stops the lift motor until its temperature reaches approximately 40° C.

The shutter position switch [G] cuts the lift motor power for safety when the upper exit guide plate opens.

The shift tray height sensor [H] detects the distance between the sensor and the top of the copy paper on the shift tray.

2.8 BOOKLET UNIT GATE MECHANISM



There are two junction gates [A] and three paper sensors [B] at the entrance area of the booklet unit.

Depending on paper size, the appropriate gate solenoid(s) [C] are energized to close the gate(s) in order to transport paper to the positioning plate [D] through a suitable paper path.

This is done for the following reasons:

- To detect the trailing edge of paper with the correct sensor.
- To prevent the leading edge of the next sheet from hitting the trailing edge of the previous sheets on the positioning plate.

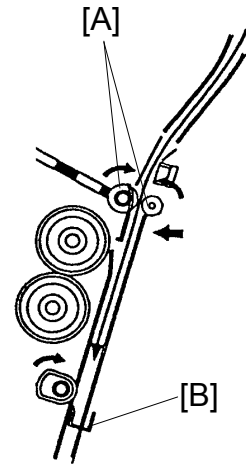
The following tables show the relation between paper sizes and solenoids/sensors:

	A3, 11" x 17"	B4, 11" x 14"	A4, 8 1/2" x 11"
1st Solenoid (Gate)	OFF (Opened)	ON (Closed)	ON (Closed)
2nd Solenoid (Gate)	OFF (Opened)	OFF (Opened)	ON (Closed)

	A3, 11" x 17"	B4, 11" x 14"	A4, 8 1/2" x 11"
Trailing Edge Sensor 1	ON	ON	ON
Trailing Edge Sensor 2	OFF	ON	ON
Trailing Edge Sensor 3	OFF	OFF	ON

2.9 RELAY ROLLER AND POSITIONING PLATE MECHANISM

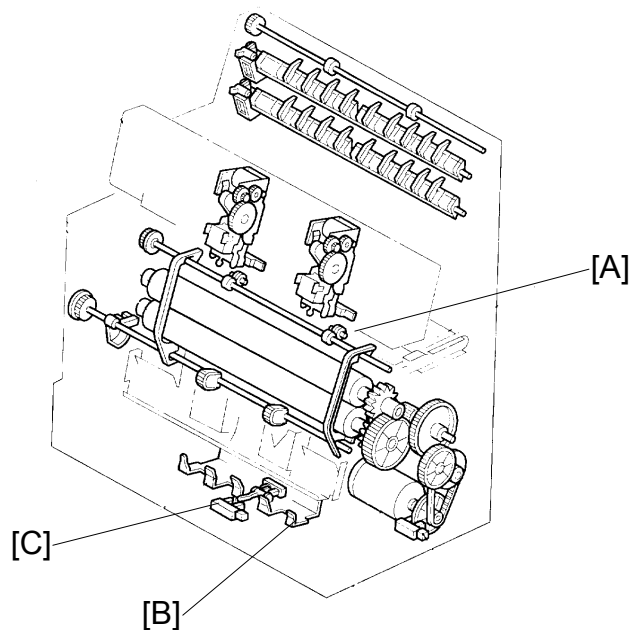
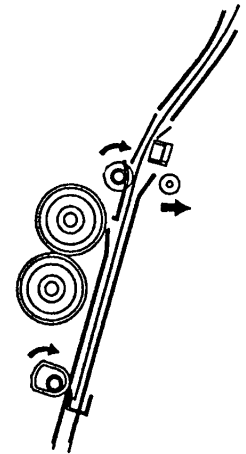
When the first sheet of paper comes to the booklet unit, the booklet transport motor turns on to drive the relay roller [A]. The two relay rollers are out of contact with each other before the paper comes. When the leading edge of the paper passes trailing edge sensor 1, the relay roller solenoid is energized to make the two relay rollers contact each other to transport the paper to the positioning plate [B]. When the trailing edge of the paper comes to the trailing edge sensor that the paper passes last, the relay roller solenoid is de-energized. This solenoid on/off cycle is done for each sheet of paper.



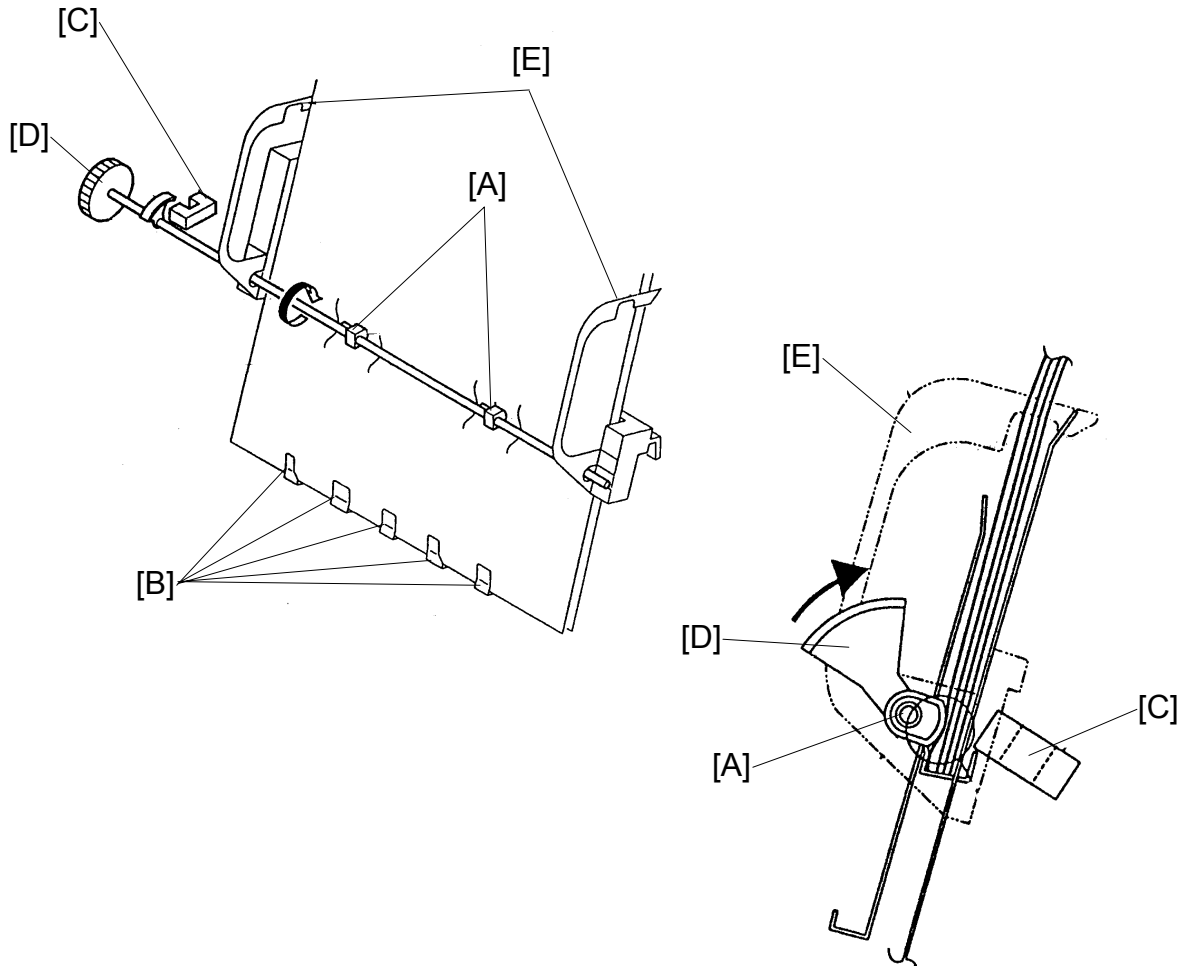
Before paper comes, the positioning plate moves up from the home position to a position that is suitable for the selected paper size in order that the middle of the paper just comes to the stapling position.

The positioning plate motor drives the positioning plate using pulse counts.

Only when the first sheet of paper reaches the positioning plate, the positioning plate sensor [C] detects the paper.



2.10 POSITIONING ROLLER MECHANISM

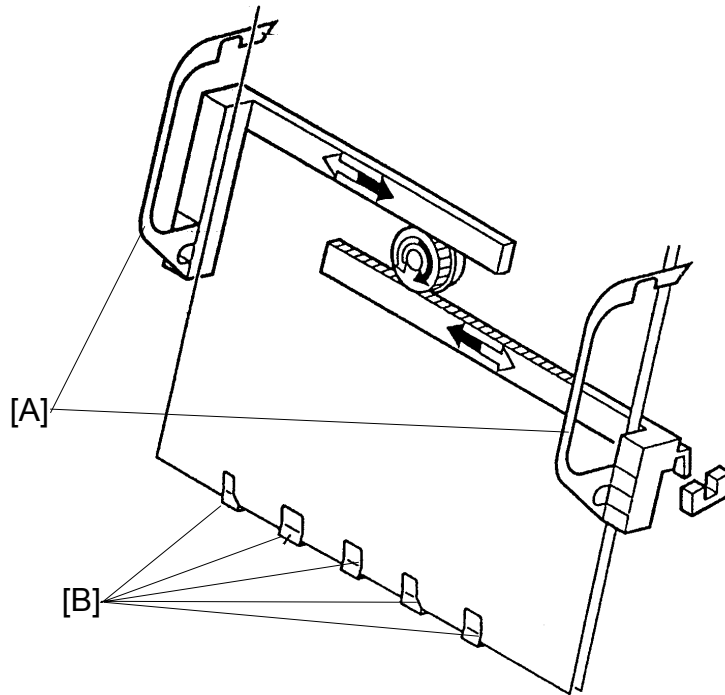


The booklet transport motor also drives the positioning roller [A] to vertically align paper against the positioning plate [B].

The positioning roller is not round but elliptical in shape so that it moves away from the paper while the paper is being horizontally aligned.

The positioning roller sensor [C] detects the actuator [D] on the roller shaft to determine the rotation of the positioning roller. When the sensor is de-actuated, the roller is away from the paper and the jogger fences [E] start moving.

2.11 BOOKLET UNIT JOGGER MOVEMENT MECHANISM

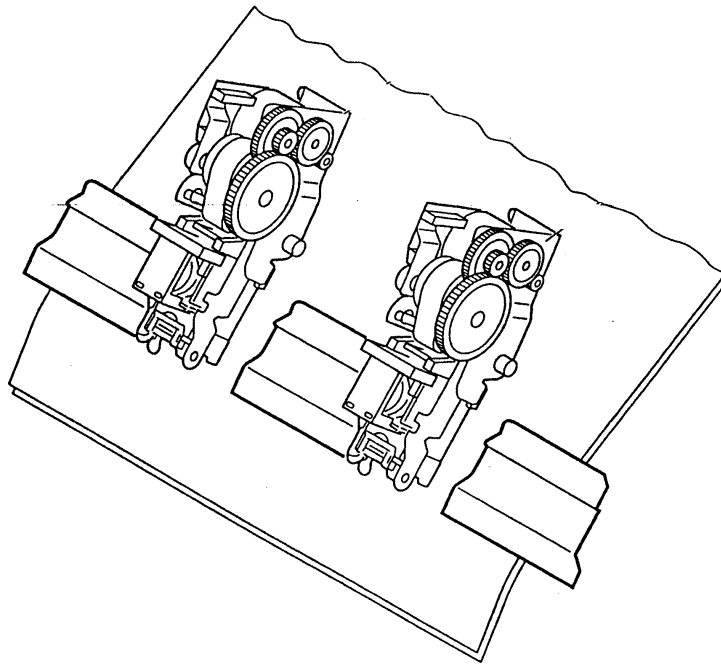


When the start key is pressed, the booklet jogger motor turns on to move the jogger fences [A] to the waiting positions that are 10 mm from each of the paper side edges.

Each time a sheet of paper reaches the positioning plate [B], the jogger fences move toward the paper to align the paper once. The fences move back a short distance and move forward again the paper to align for the second time. Then, the fences go back to the waiting position.

When the last sheet is aligned, the fences stay at the aligning positions during stapling.

2.12 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT



Booklet
Finisher
B546

There are two staplers whose positions are fixed.

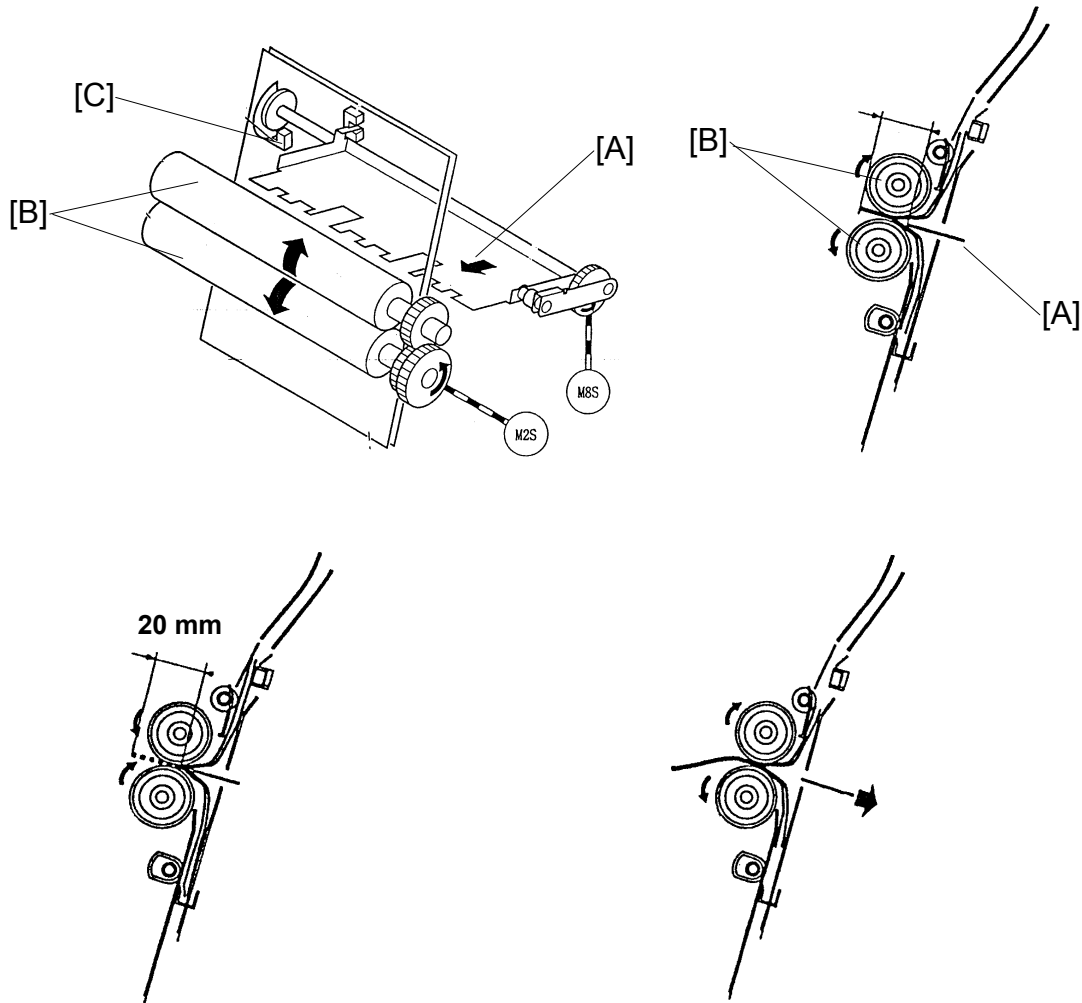
When the jogger fences finish aligning the last sheet, the jogger fences stay at the aligning positions and stapling starts. The two staplers do not operate at the same time, the rear stapler operates first, then the front one. This is for the following reasons:

- To prevent paper from becoming waved in the area between the two stapled positions.
- To minimize necessary electric power.

The staple hammer HP switch in each stapler detects a stapling cycle and the staple end sensor detects the presence of staples in the cartridge.

The stapler unit, including the two staplers, can be pulled out to enable staple cartridge replacement or jam removal. The stapler unit set sensor detects when the stapler unit is back in the right position.

2.13 PAPER FOLDER MECHANISM



The positioning plate moves down from the stapling position to a position such that the middle of the paper just comes to the folding position. It depends on the paper size.

At the same time, the shutter guide motor moves the shutter guide, which is covering the folder rollers to prevent paper arriving at the positioning plate from being caught by the rollers, down to the home position.

Shortly after that, the folder plate motor and the folder roller motor start rotating. The folder plate [A] moves to push the middle of the stapled sheets of paper toward the folder rollers [B] until the folder plate return sensor [C] is de-actuated. Then, the folder plate comes back to the home position.

After that, the folder rollers and booklet exit roller feed the paper to the booklet tray.

PAPER FOLDER MECHANISM

In the case of 10 sheets or more of A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" paper, folding is done twice for 20 mm of the leading edge to fold the paper more firmly.

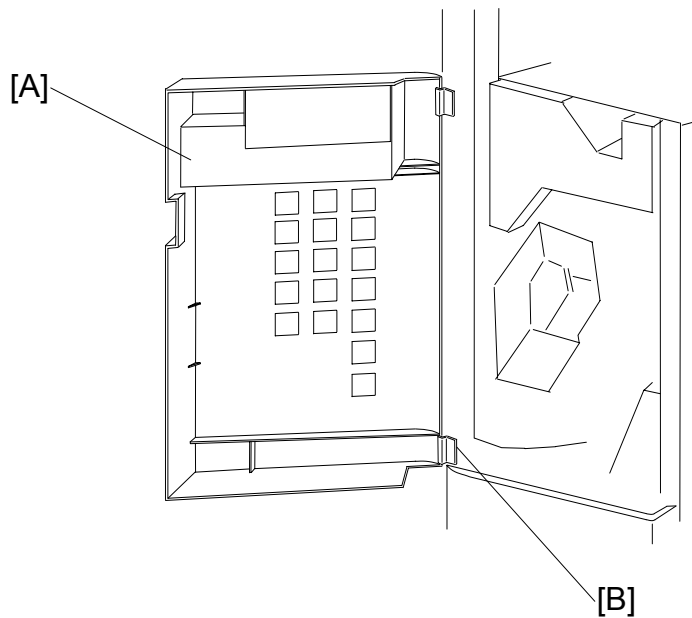
When the leading edge of the folded paper passes 20 mm from the folder rollers, the folder roller motor reverses to feed the paper back 20 mm. During this action, the folder plate stays at the return position.

Then, the folder roller motor rotates forward again to feed the set of papers out and the folder plate goes back to the home position.

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

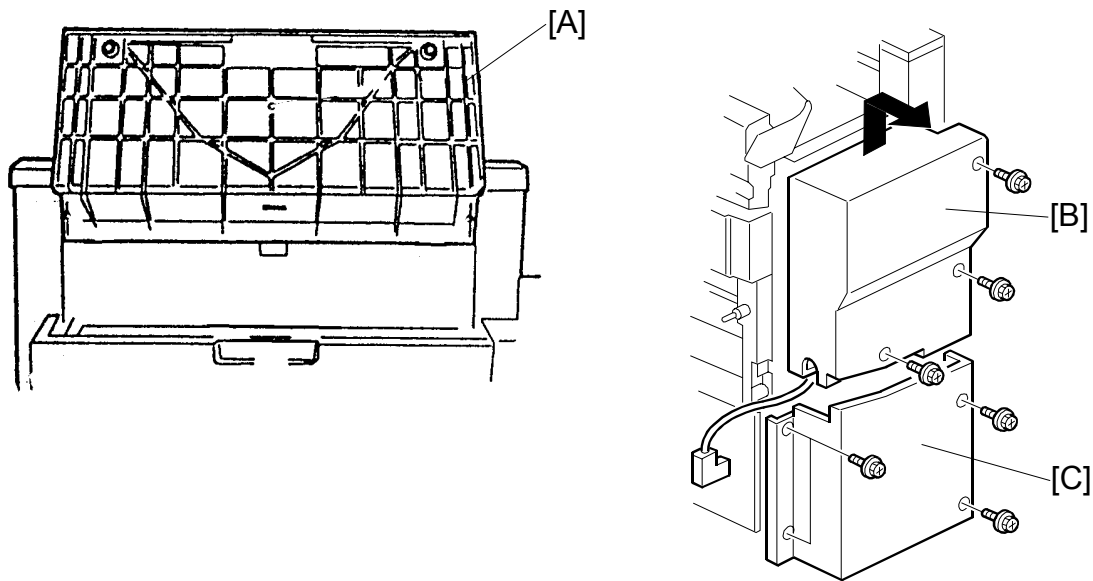
3.1 REMOVAL

3.1.1 UPPER DOOR



1. Open the upper door [A].
2. Remove the lower hinge [B] (⚙️ x1).
3. Push up the upper door and remove it.

3.1.2 UPPER REAR COVER



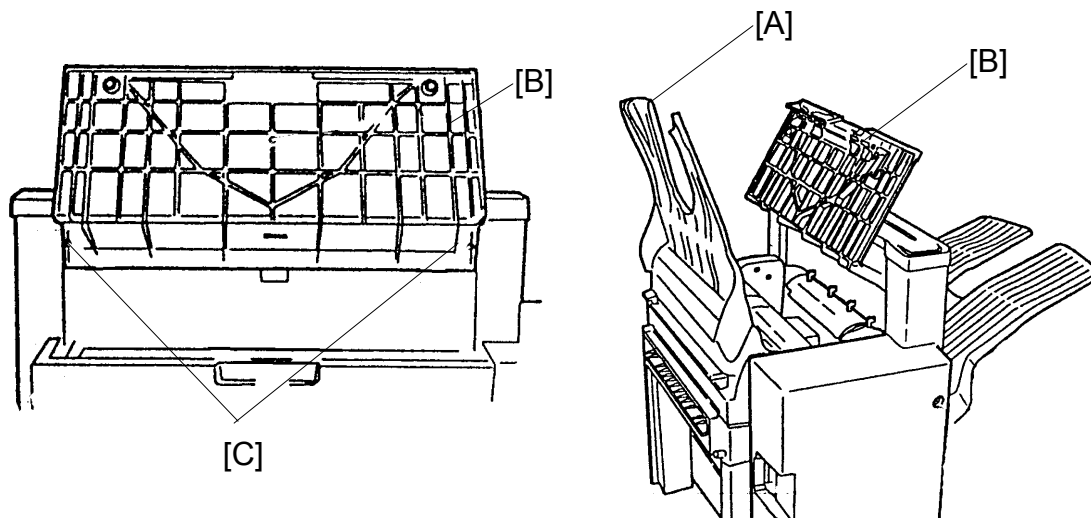
1. Hold up the proof tray and open the top cover [A].
2. Unhook the upper rear cover [B] and remove it (⚙ x3).

3.1.3 LOWER REAR COVER

1. Remove the lower rear cover [C] (⚙ x4).

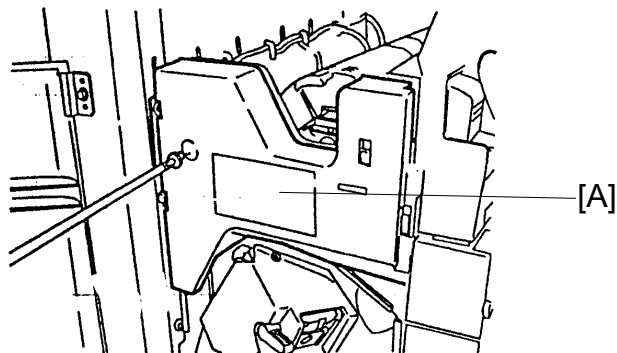
REMOVAL

3.1.4 TOP COVER



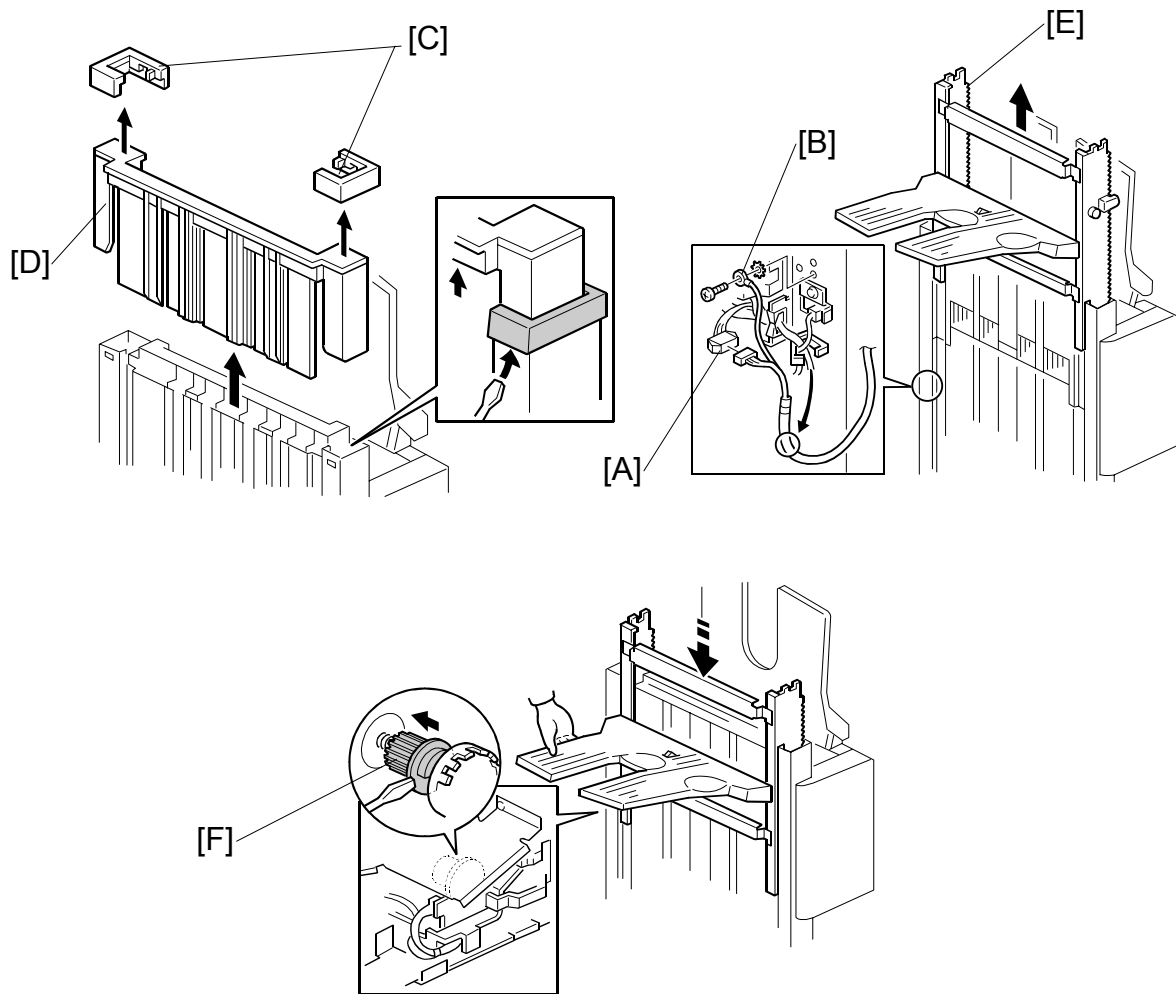
1. Hold up the upper tray [A] and open the top cover [B].
2. Push the hooks [C] of the top cover and remove it.

3.1.5 UPPER INNER COVER



1. Open the upper door.
2. Remove the upper inner cover [A] (⚙ x 1).

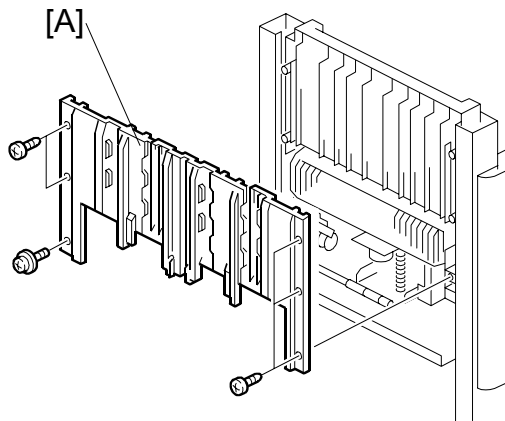
3.1.6 SHIFT TRAY UNIT



1. Remove the upper and lower rear covers.
 2. Disconnect the connector [A] and remove the grounding wire [B] (⚡ x 1).
 3. Unhook the two stoppers [C] and remove them.
 4. Remove the slide guide [D] by pulling it up.
 5. Remove the shift tray unit [E] by pulling it up.
- NOTE:** When reinstalling the shift tray unit, release the clutch gear [F] of the tray lift motor by carefully inserting a screwdriver.

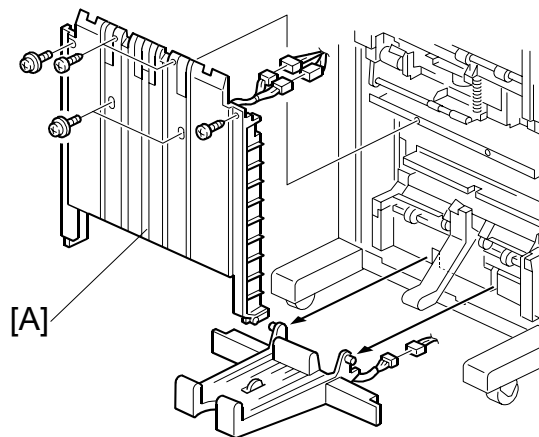
REMOVAL

3.1.7 UPPER SHIFT GUIDE



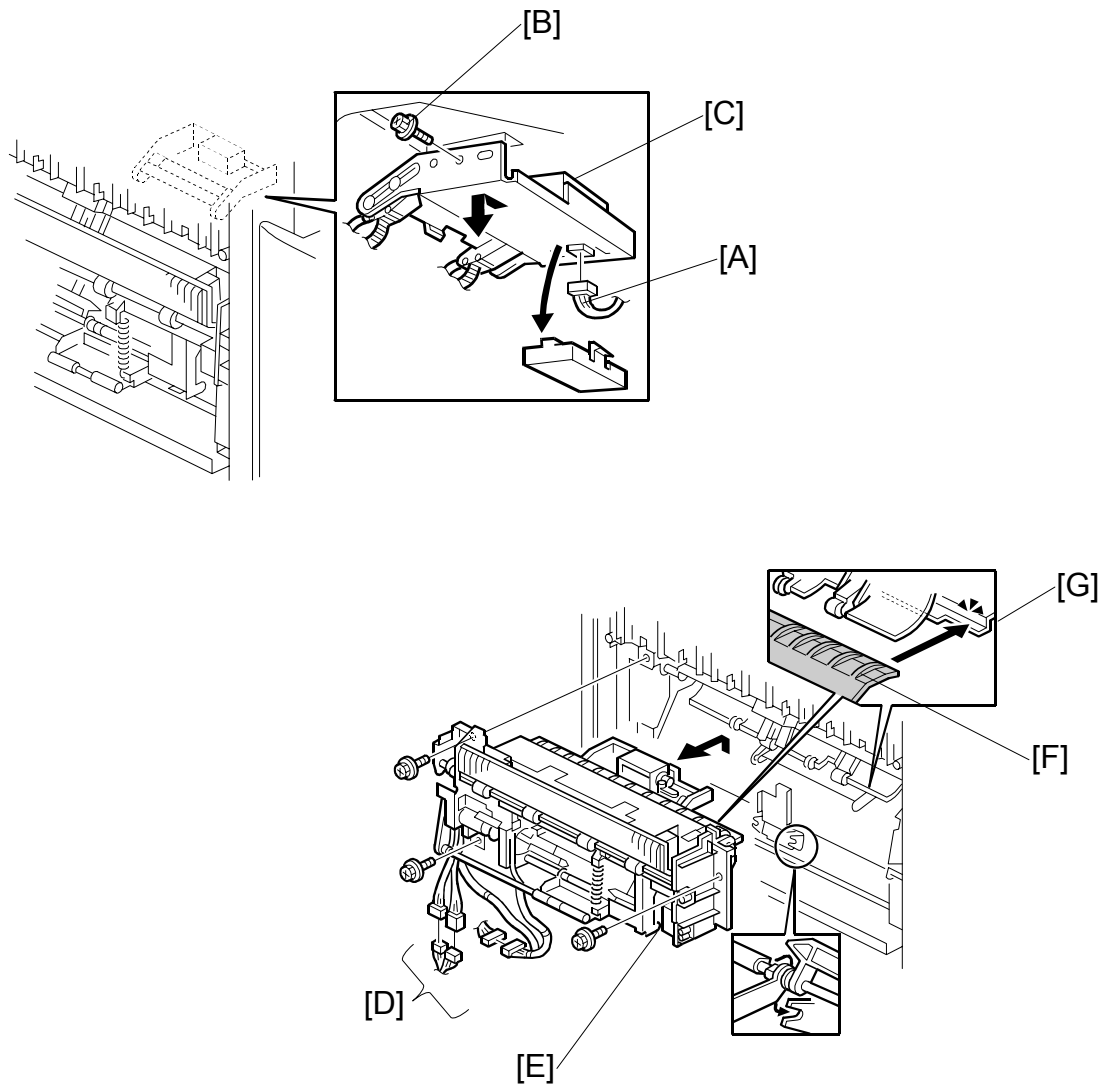
1. Remove the slide guide and shift the shift tray unit down by releasing the clutch gear of the tray lift motor (see Shift Tray Unit Removal).
2. Remove the upper shift guide [A] (⌘ x 6 (5 x M4, 1 x M3)).

3.1.8 LOWER SHIFT GUIDE



1. Remove the shift tray unit.
2. Remove the lower shift guide [A] (⌘ x 2, ⌘ x 6 (3 x M4, 3 x M3)).

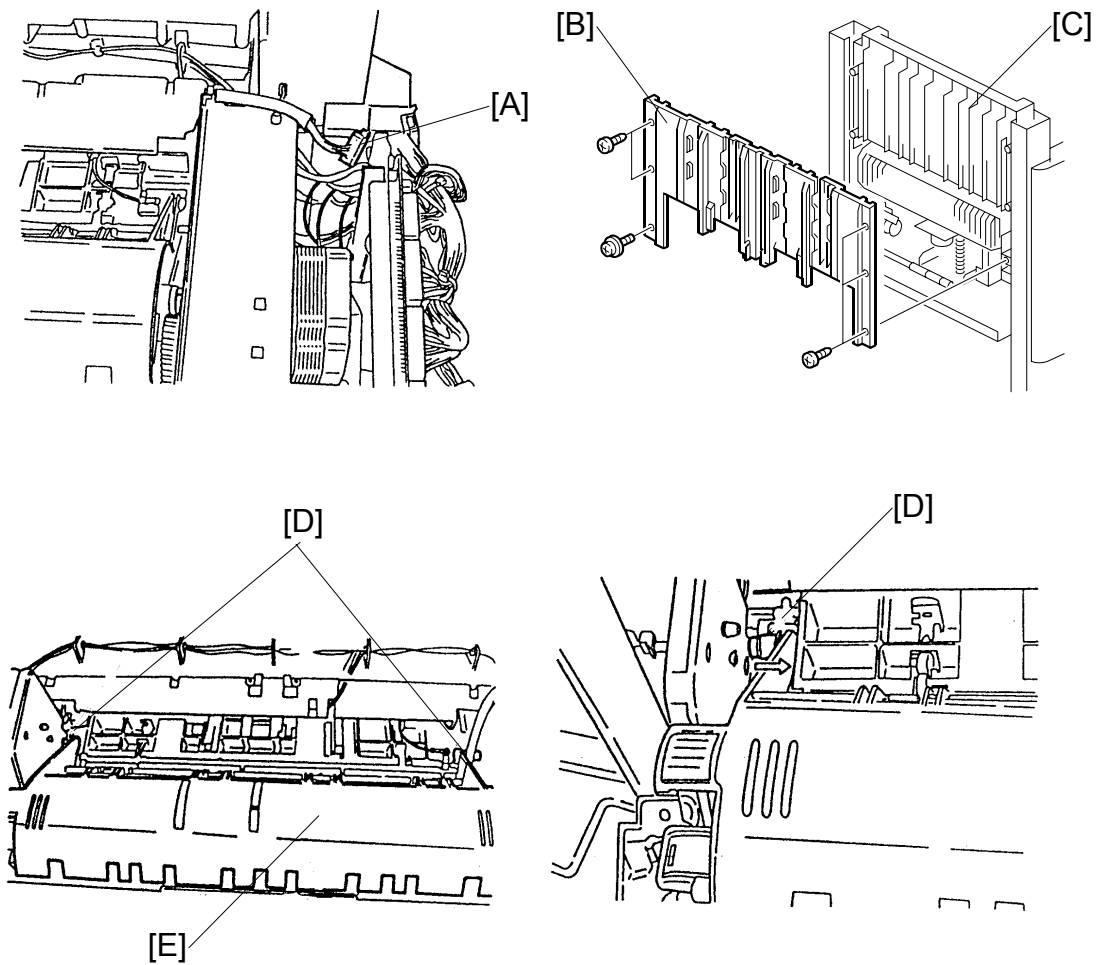
3.1.9 EXIT UNIT



1. Remove the shift tray unit, and the upper and lower shift guides.
2. Disconnect the connector [A] and remove the screw [B] that secures the transport belt unit [C].
3. Disconnect [D] (⌘ x4).
4. Hold up the exit unit [E] and remove it with the transport belt unit (⌘ x 3, 1 clamp).
NOTE: When installing the exit unit, make sure to position the exit unit guide plate (black) [F] over the transport guide plate [G].

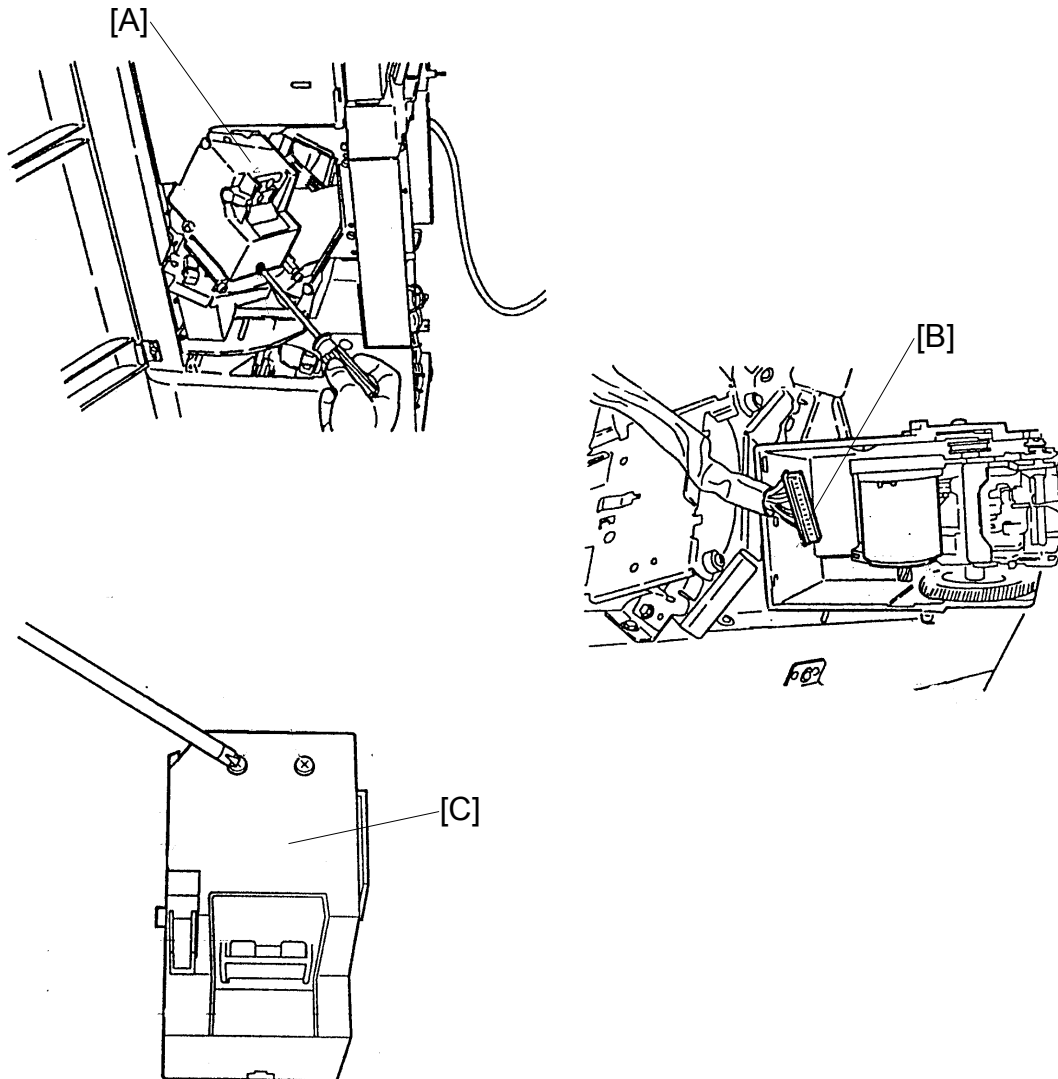
REMOVAL

3.1.10 BUFFER ROLLER UNIT



1. Remove the upper rear cover and the top cover.
2. Disconnect the connector [A].
3. Remove the upper shift guide [B] (⌀ x 6) and the guide holder [C] (⌀ x 2).
4. Unhook the shafts [D], and remove the buffer roller unit [E] (2 clamps).

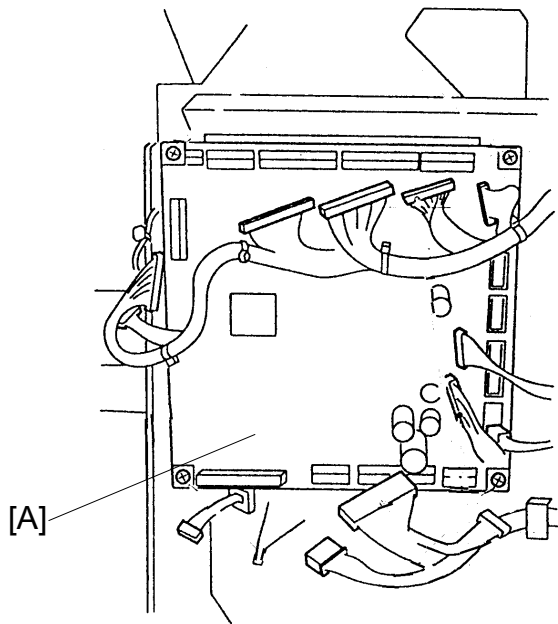
3.1.11 STAPLER



1. Open the upper front door.
2. Slide the stapler [A] towards the front.
3. Remove the stapler (⚙ x 1, 📄 x 1 [B]).
4. Remove the cover [C] from the stapler (🔩 x 2).

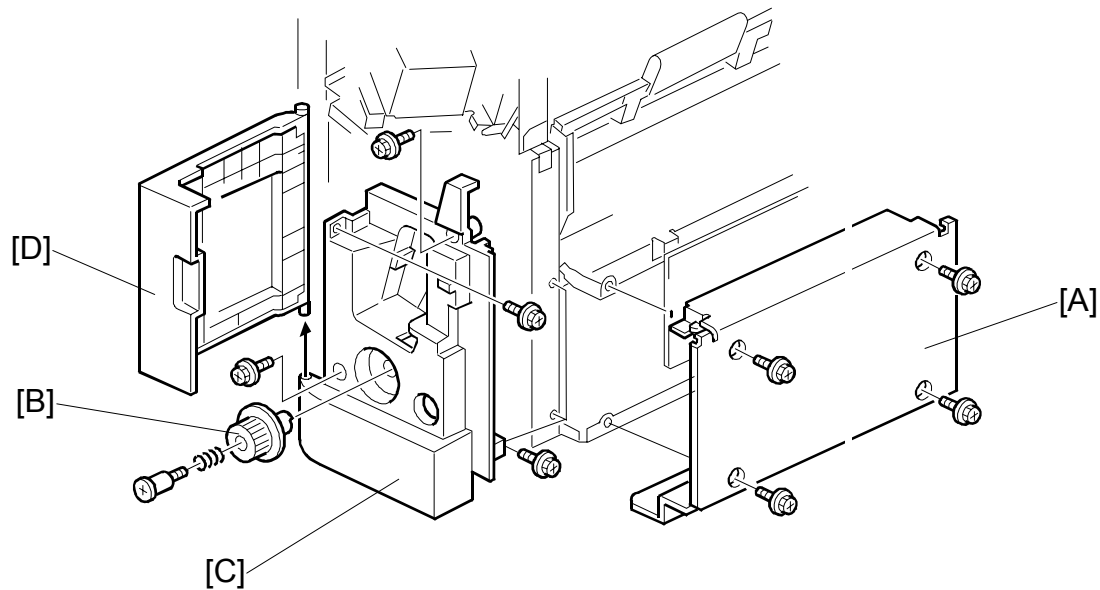
REMOVAL

3.1.12 FINISHER BOARD



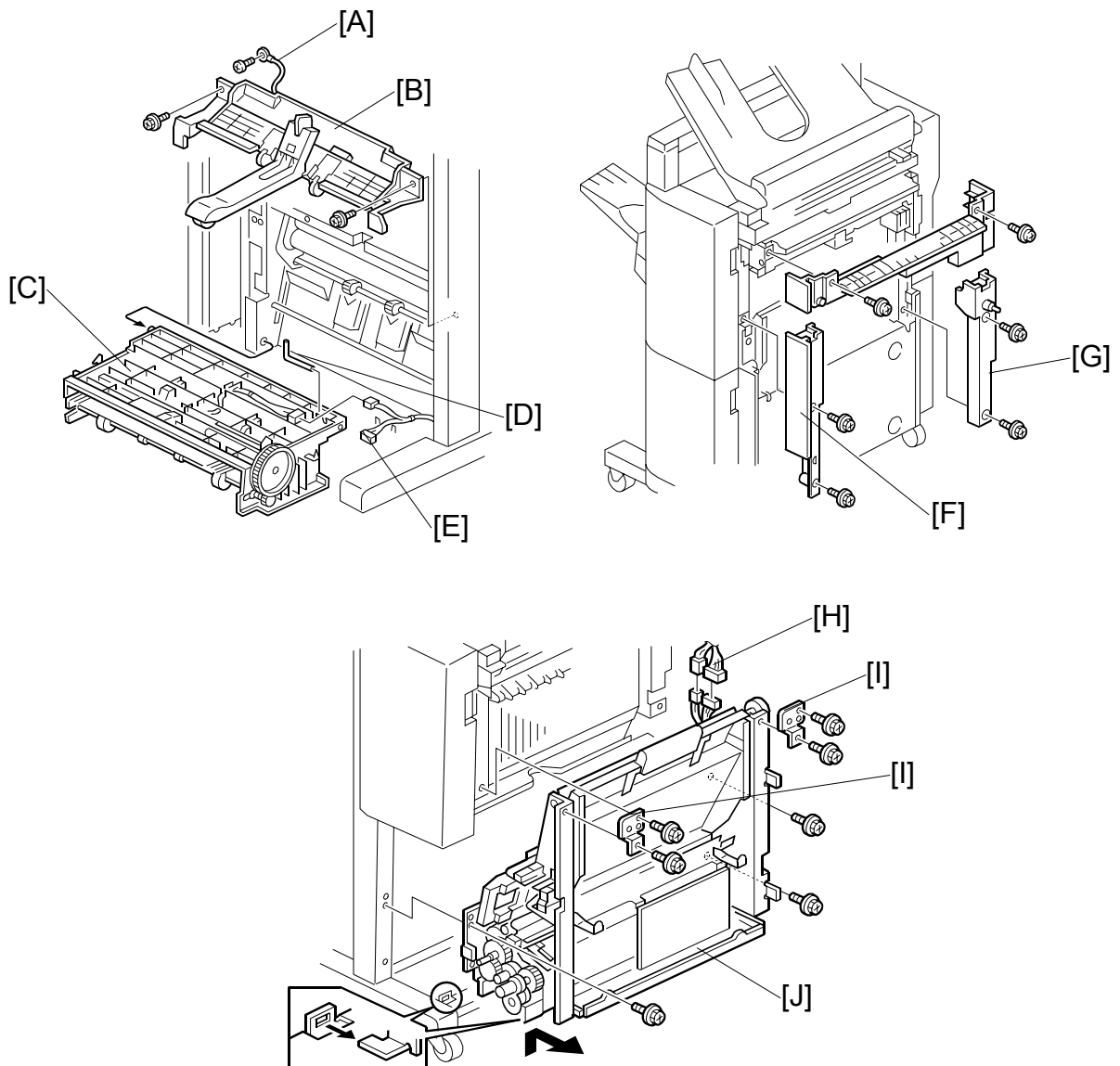
1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Remove the finisher board [A] (⌀ x 4, 19 x 19).
3. Do the following adjustments after replacing the board:
 - Shift tray height
 - Jogger fence position
 - Stapling position
4. If you need to release the setting for the maximum number of stacks allowed on the shift tray in the staple mode, set DIP S3 No.5 to ON.

3.1.13 BOOKLET UNIT



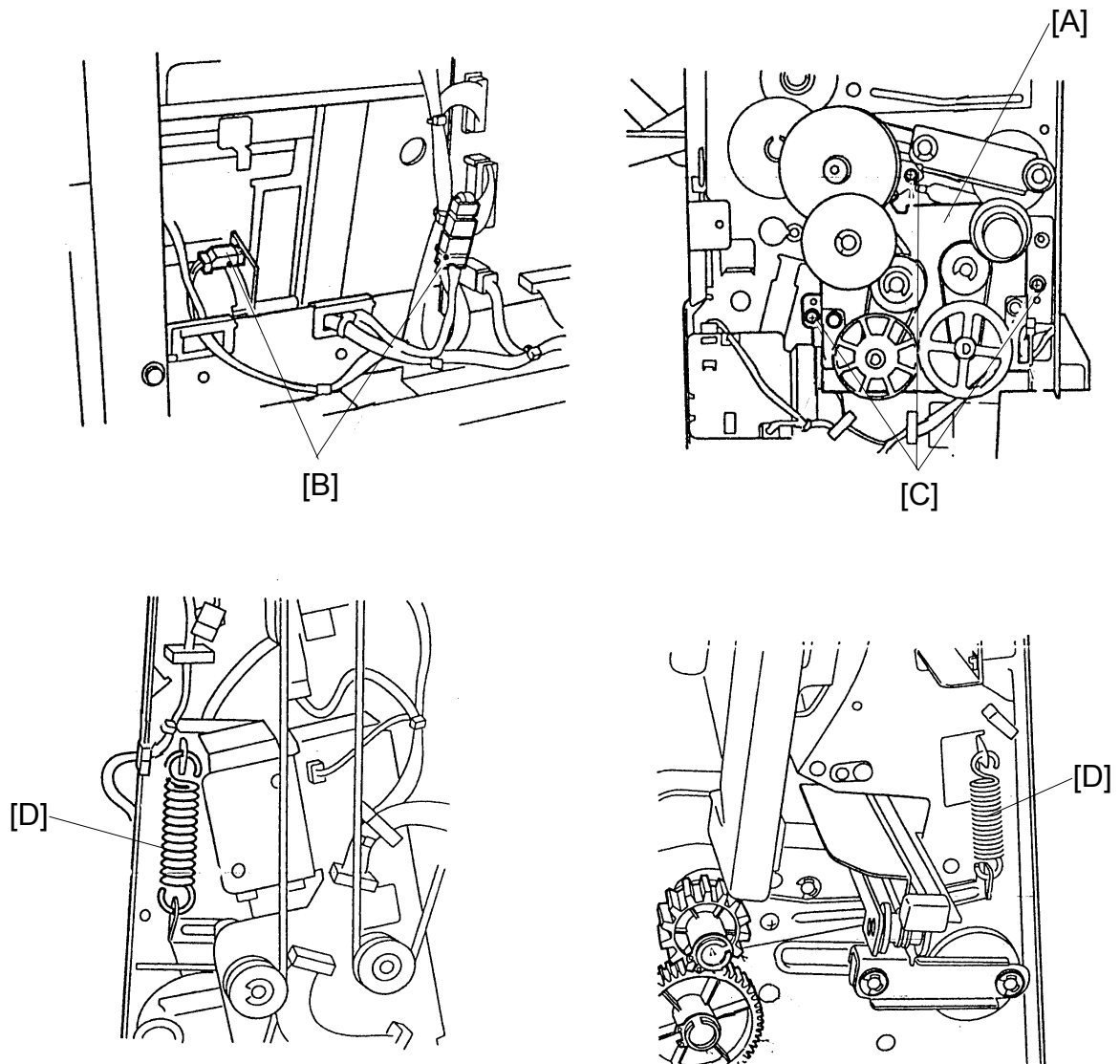
1. Remove the following items.
 - Upper and lower rear covers.
 - Shift tray unit.
 - Lower shift guide.
2. Remove the lower right cover [A] (⌀ x 4).
3. Remove the folder roller knob [B] (⌀ x 1 stepped).
4. Remove the lower inner cover [C] and lower door [D] (⌀ x 5).

REMOVAL



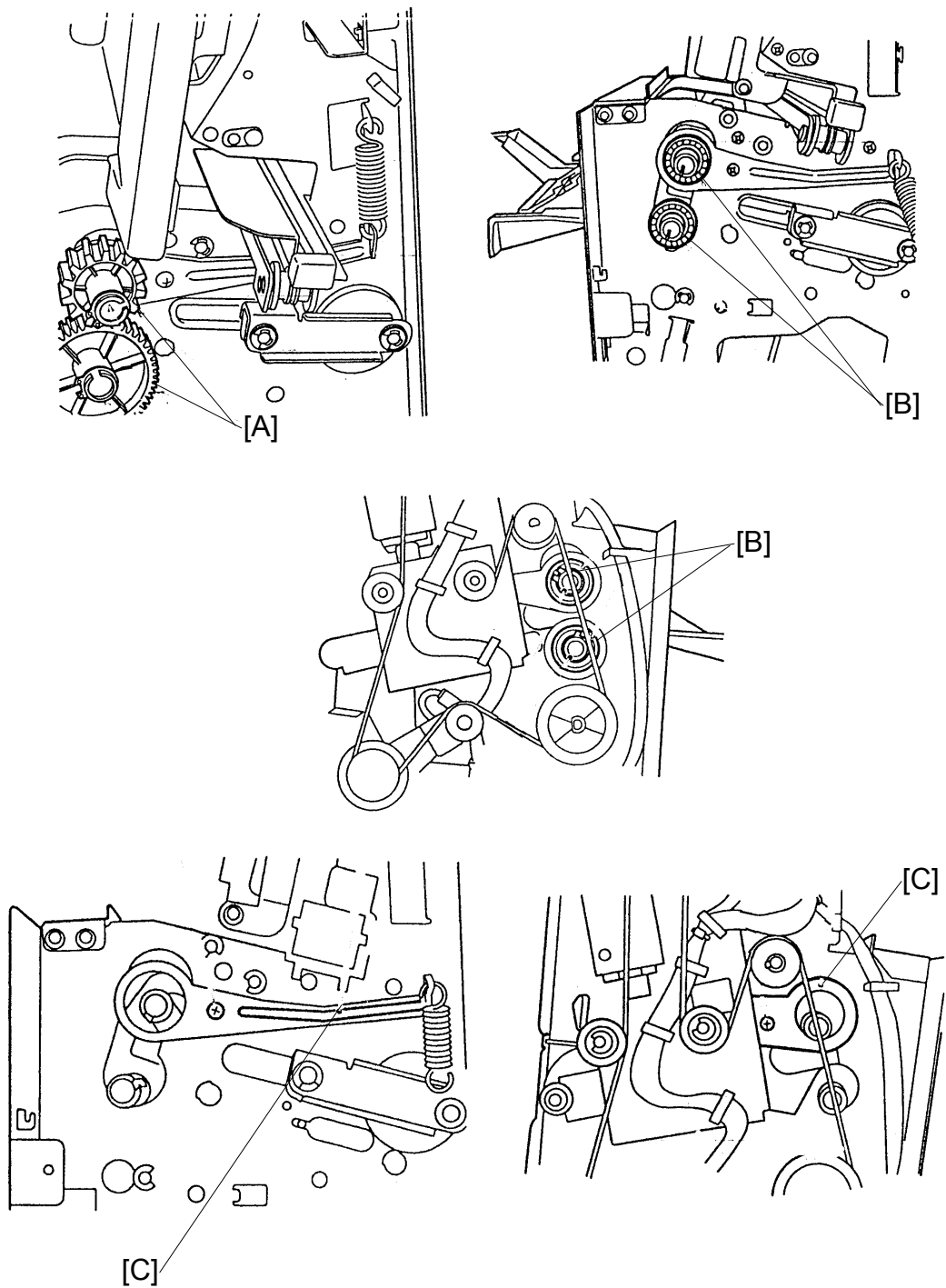
5. Remove the grounding wire [A] (⚙ x 1) and upper booklet exit guide [B] (⚙ x 2).
6. Open the lower booklet exit guide [C] and remove it (1 L-pin [D], ⚙ x 2 [E]).
7. Remove the right front and right rear covers [F , G] (⚙ x 2 ea.).
8. Disconnect the two connectors [H].
9. Remove the two joints [I] and then pull out the booklet unit [J] from the right side (⚙ x 3).

3.1.14 FOLDER ROLLERS

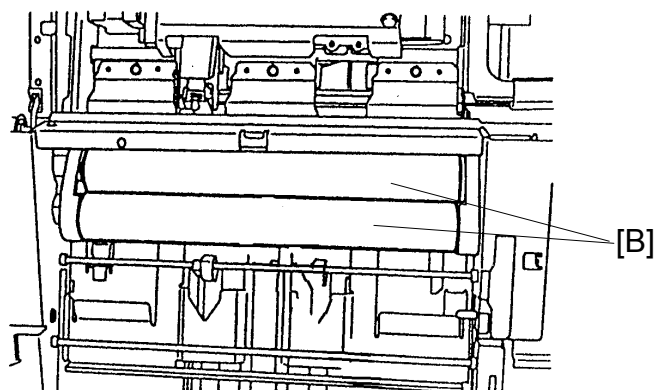
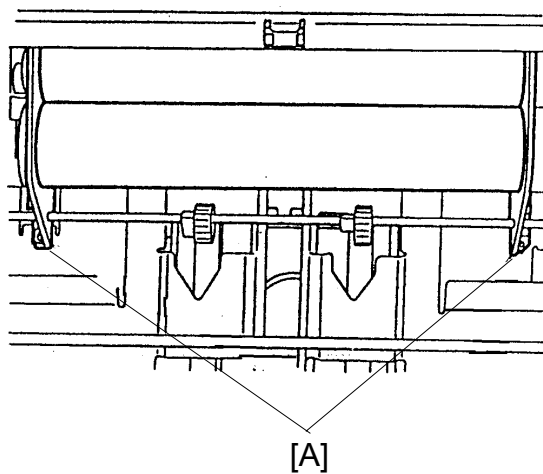


1. Remove the booklet unit
2. Remove the drive unit [A] (🔧 x 4) [B], (🔧 x 3), [C]).
3. Remove the front and rear tension springs [D].

REMOVAL



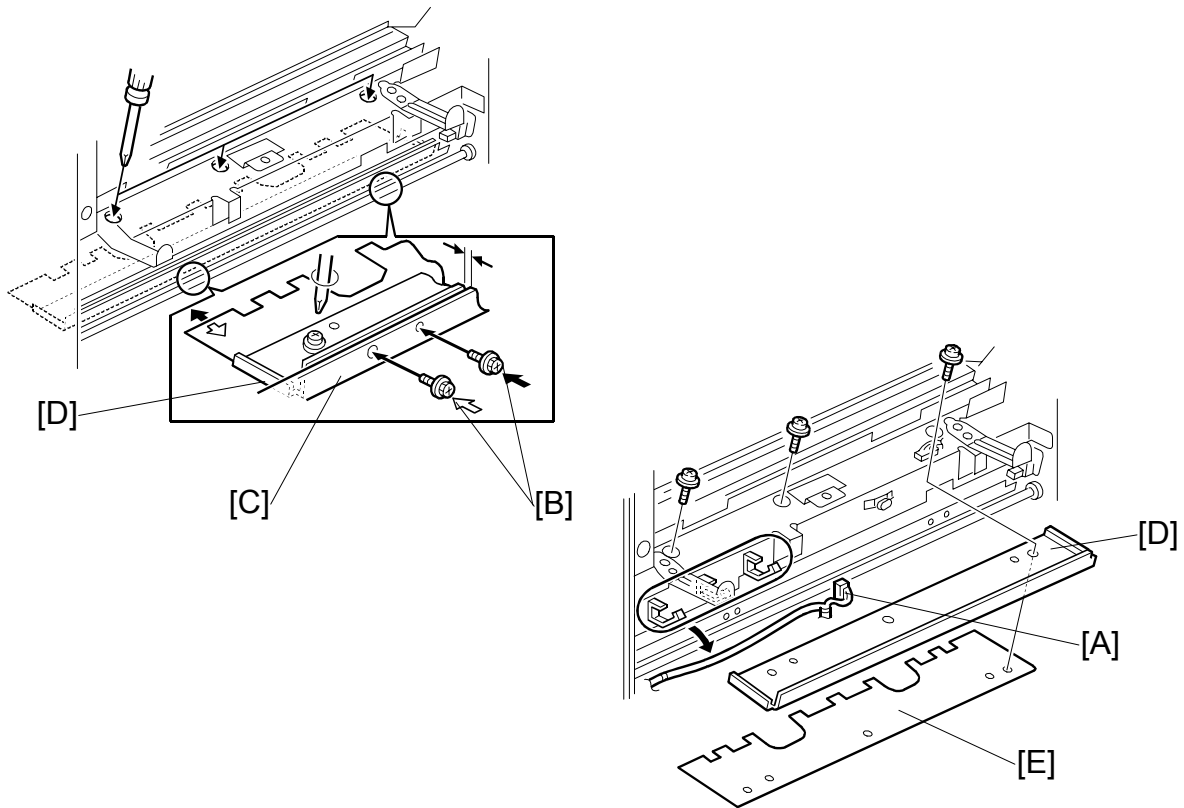
4. Remove the gears [A] and ball bearings [B] (4 C-rings).
5. Remove the front and rear tighteners [C] (⌀ x 1 stepped ea.).



6. Remove the jogger plates [A] (2 x 1 ea.).
7. Slide the folder rollers [B] to the front and remove them.

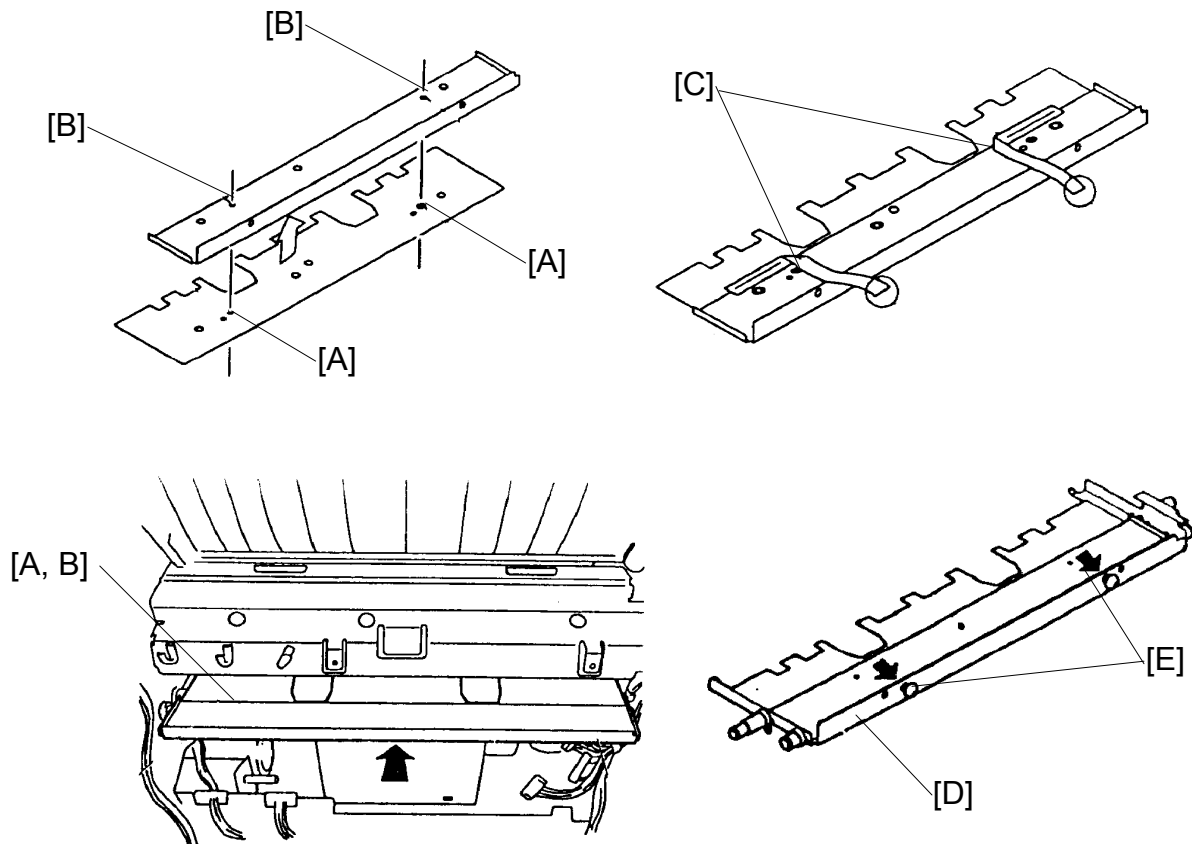
REMOVAL

3.1.15 FOLDER PLATE



Removal

1. Remove the following items
 - Lower right cover
 - Folder roller knob
 - Lower door and lower inner cover
 - Booklet board
2. Release the harness [A] from the clamps.
3. Insert two positioning screws [B] in the holes provided in the folder table [C].
4. Tighten the screws until the ends touch the securing plate [D] for the folder plate.
5. Remove the folder plate [E] and the securing plate (⚙ x 3).

Reinstalling

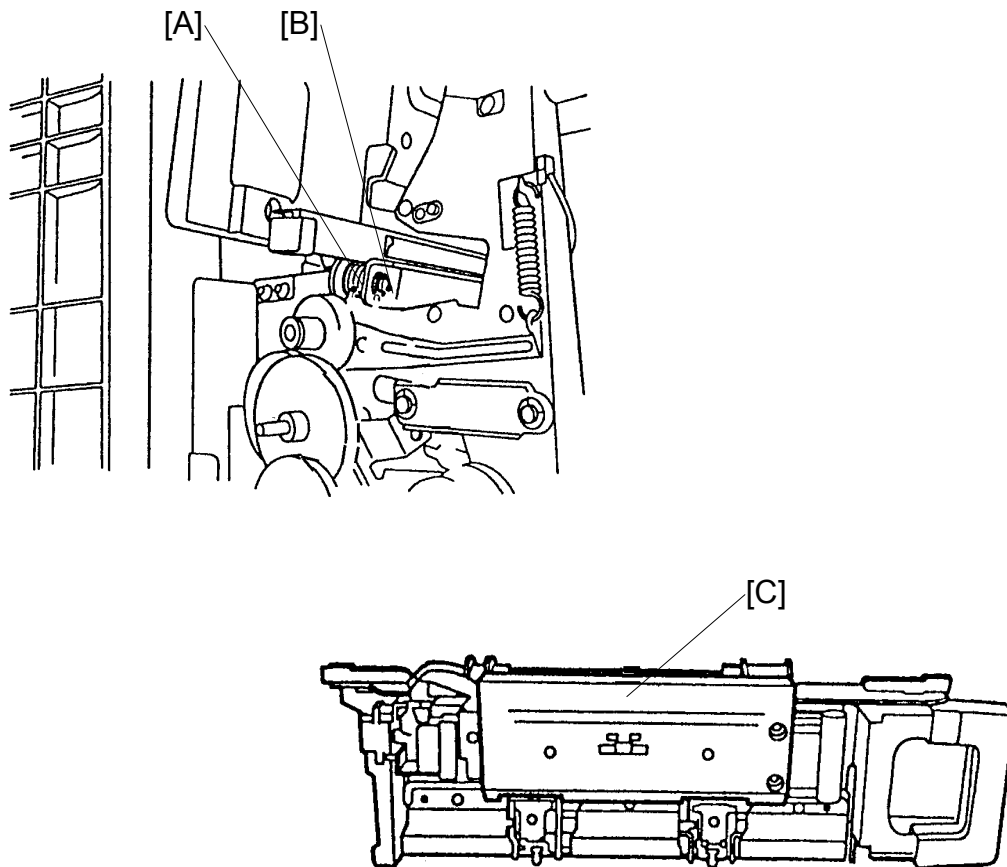
Booklet
Finisher
B546

1. Line up the two small holes [A] in the folder plate with the two small protrusions on the bottom of the securing plate [B]. Then, push the two protrusions through the holes.
 Note: Be sure that the three screw holes are also lined up.
2. Temporarily fix the two plates together by attaching two strips of electrical tape [C] along the line where they meet (see the illustration).
NOTE: 1) Be sure to fold the two strips back toward you so that they can easily be removed.
 2) Be careful not to attach the tape too close to the three screw holes.
3. Reattach the two plates [A, B] to the folder table [D] (⌀ x 3).
NOTE: Tighten these three screws while holding the securing plate against the two positioning screws [E] that were installed in step 3 of the "Removal" procedure.
4. Remove the two strips of tape.

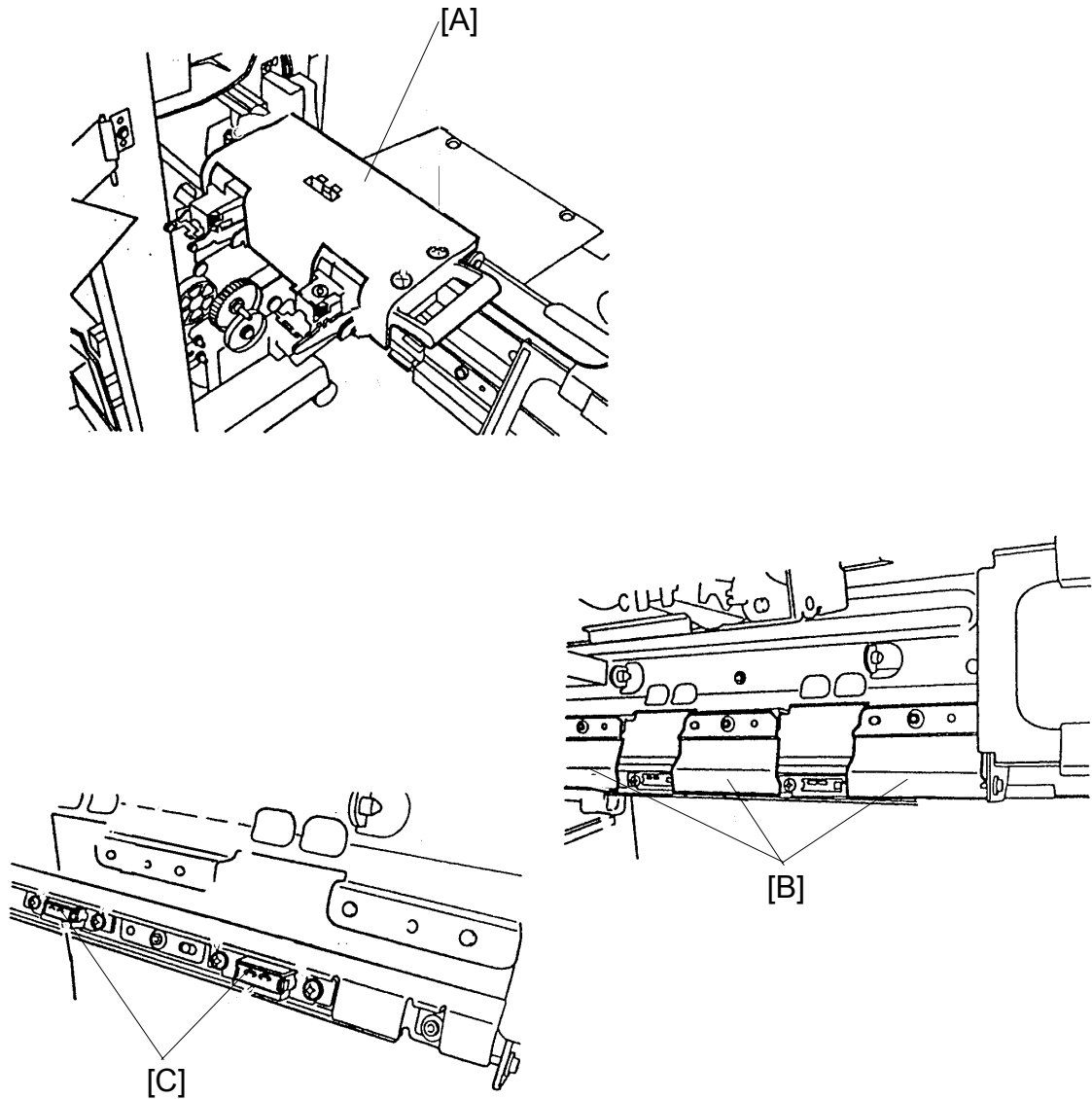
REMOVAL

3.1.16 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT

Removal



1. Remove the lower door and inner cover.
2. Remove the guide roller [A] and shaft [B] (1 E-ring).
3. Pull out the booklet stapler unit [C].

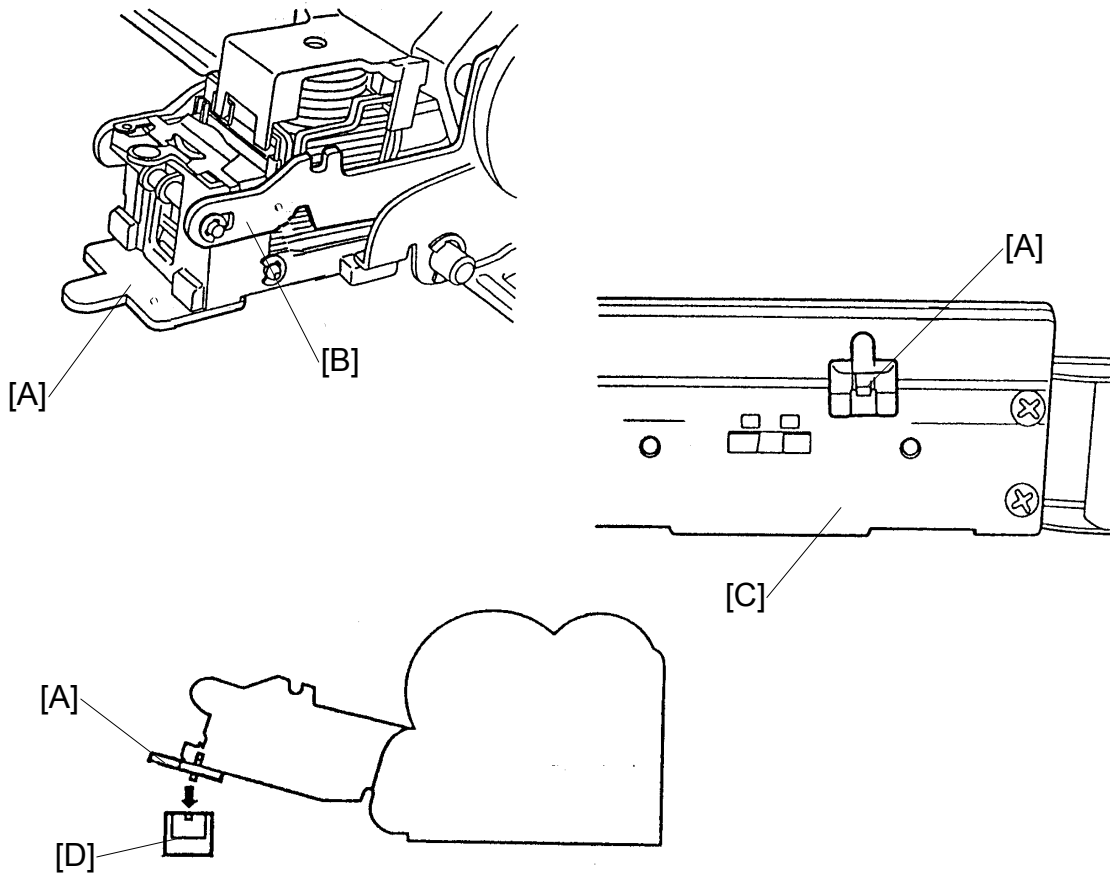


Booklet
Finisher
B546

Adjustment

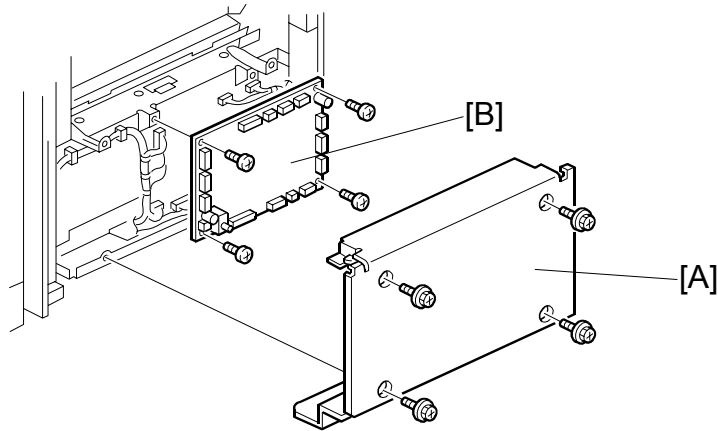
1. Remove the booklet stapler cover [A] (⚙ x 3).
2. Remove the three paper guides [B] (⚙ x 1 ea.).
3. Loosen the two screws on each of the anvils [C].

REMOVAL



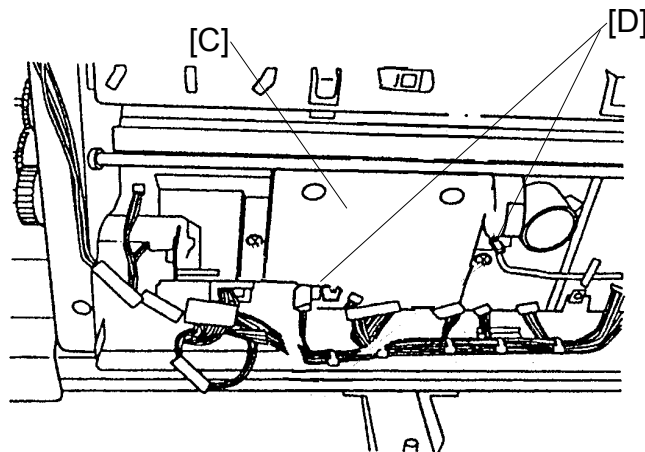
4. Insert the anvil positioning plate [A] into the staple slot of the stapler [B].
NOTE: The anvil positioning plate is stored in the booklet stapler cover [C].
5. Rotate the gear to move down the stapler. Then align the anvil positioning plate and the anvil [D]. Then secure the anvils (⚙ x 2 ea.).

3.1.17 BOOKLET BOARD



1. Remove the lower right cover [A] (⚙ x 4).
 2. Remove the booklet board [B] (⚙ x 4, 📐 x 14).
- NOTE:** After replacing the board, adjust the booklet stapling position.

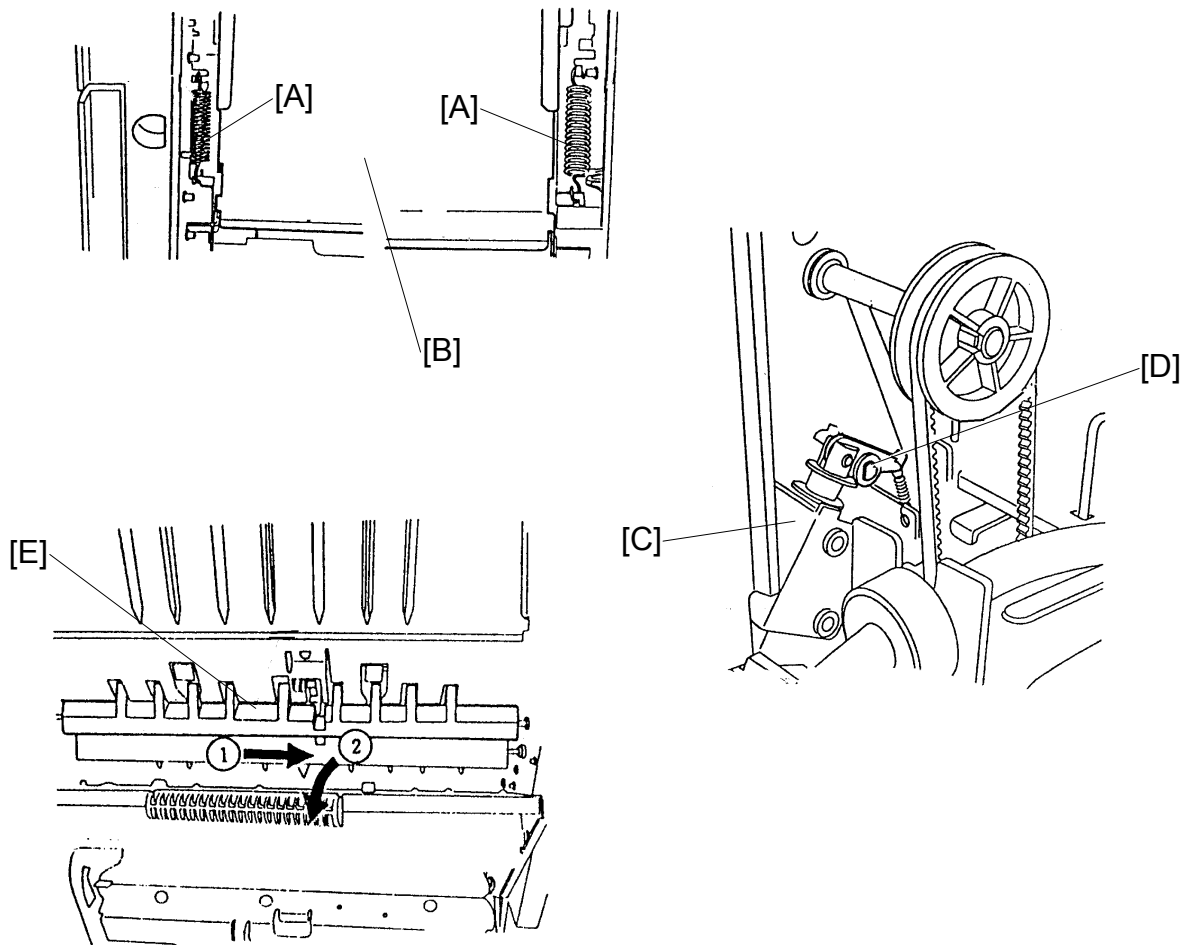
3.1.18 POSITIONING PLATE UNIT



1. Remove the booklet board (⚙ x 4, 📐 x 14).
2. Slide the paper positioning unit [C] to the right and remove it (⚙ x 2, 📐 x 2 [D]).

REMOVAL

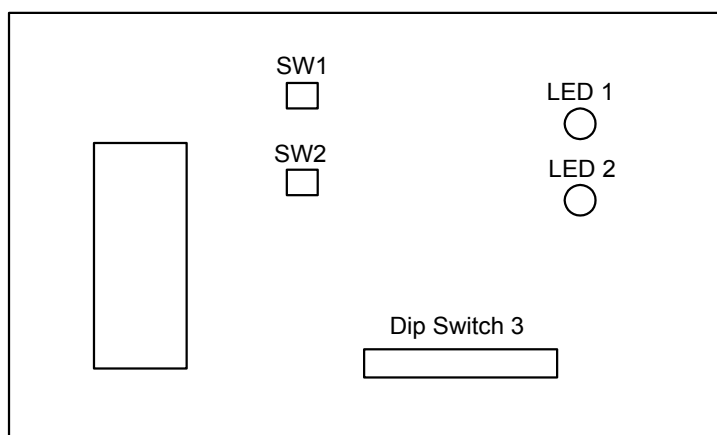
3.1.19 1ST AND 2ND BOOKLET UNIT GATES



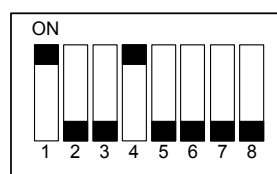
1. Remove the upper and lower rear covers.
2. Release the two tension springs [A] of the booklet entrance guide [B].
3. Remove the booklet unit gate solenoids [C] (⚙ x 1, 1 spring each).
4. Pull out the link of the solenoid [D].
5. Remove the booklet unit gates [E].

3.2 ADJUSTMENT

3.2.1 SHIFT TRAY HEIGHT



Dip Switch 3

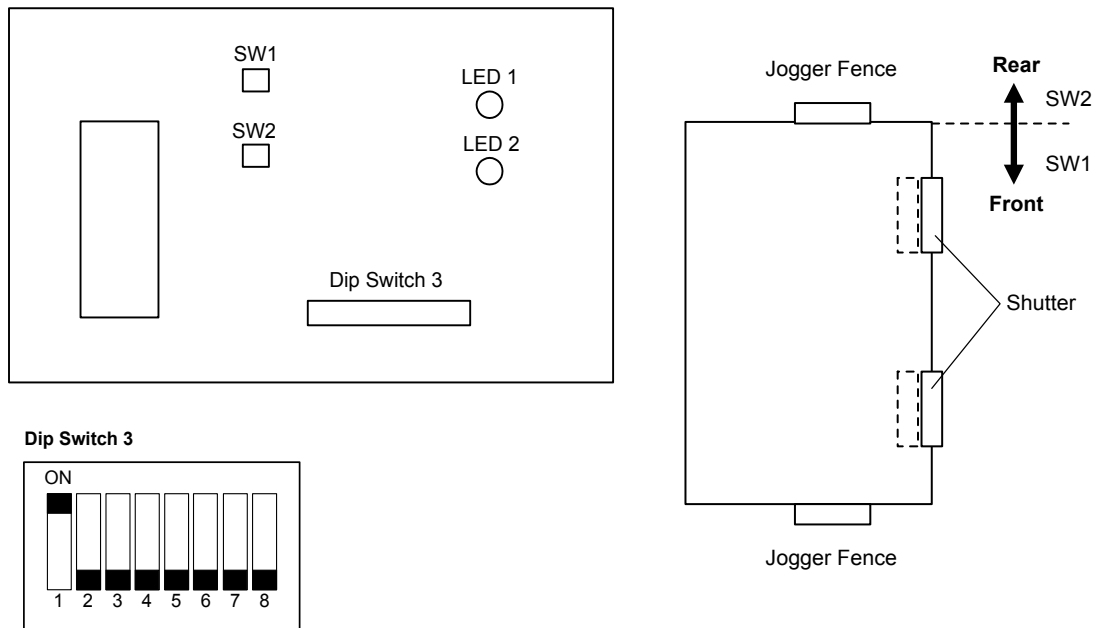


After replacing the finisher board or shift tray height sensor, always do this adjustment.

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switches 3 -1 and -4 on the finisher board.
3. Put blank paper (A4/81/2" x 11") on the shift tray.
4. Press switch 1 (SW1) on the finisher board.
The finisher automatically adjusts the shift tray height when switch 1 is pressed.
 - After performing the adjustment, the shift tray will return to home position.
 - During the adjustment, LED 1 flashes. After performing the adjustment, LED 1 turns on and remains on.
 - If the automatic adjustment fails, the finisher stops and LED 1 turns off.
5. Turn off dip switches 3 -1 and -4, then turn off the copier main switch.

ADJUSTMENT

3.2.2 JOGGER FENCE POSITION

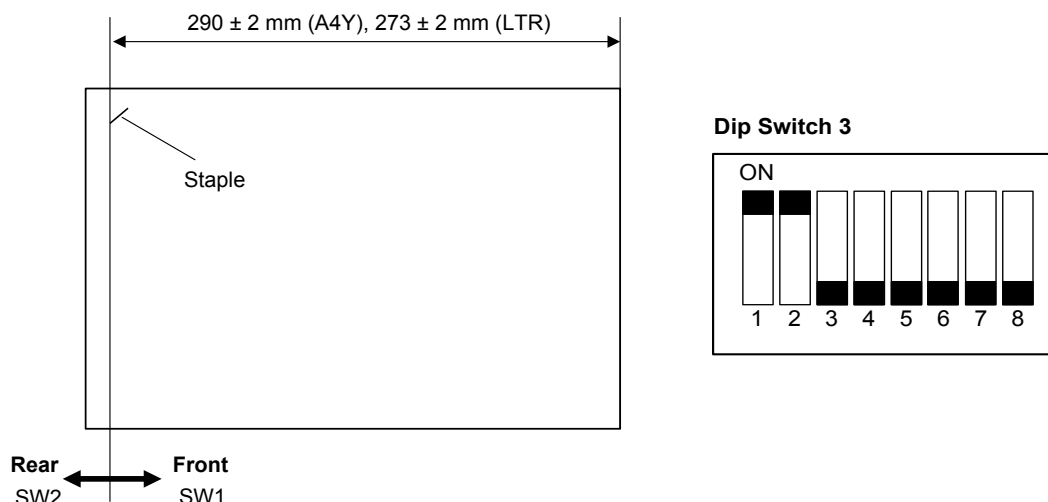


After replacing the finisher board or if a paper alignment fault occurs, do this adjustment.

Doing this adjustment once will affect all paper sizes.

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switch 3-1 on the finisher board.
3. Press the following switch on the finisher board.
Using A4: Switch 1 (SW1)
Using 8 1/2" x 11": Switch 2 (SW2)
 - After pressing the switch, the upper exit unit will open and the jogger fences will move to the A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" position.
4. Place 10 sheets of A4/8 1/2" x 11" paper between the jogger fences and push them until they touch the shutters.
5. Adjust the jogger fence position by pressing switch 1 or 2.
 - Switch 1: Move to the front (0.35 mm/press)
 - Switch 2: Move to the rear (0.35 mm/press)
6. Press switches 1 and 2 simultaneously to store the adjustment data.
 - After pressing the switches, the upper exit unit will close.
7. Turn off dip switch 3-1, then turn off the copier main switch.

3.2.3 STAPLING POSITION

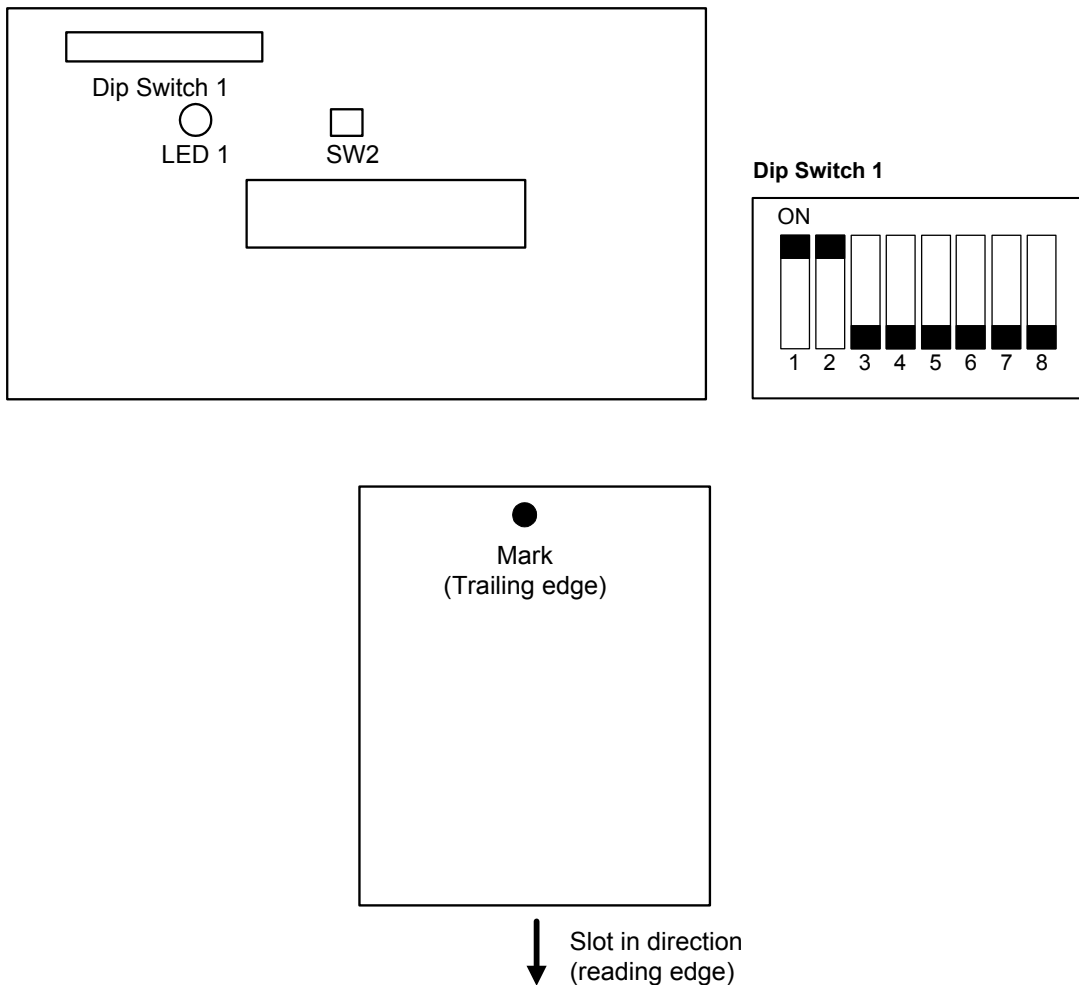


After replacing the finisher board, do this adjustment. Doing this adjustment once will affect all paper sizes and all stapling positions.

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switches 3 -1 and -2 on the finisher board.
3. Press the following switch on the finisher board.
 Using A4: Switch 1 (SW1)
 Using 8 1/2" x 11": Switch 2 (SW2)
 - After pressing the switch, the upper exit unit will open and the transport belt will rotate.
4. Within five seconds after pressing the switch, place one sheet of A4/8 1/2" x 11" paper between the jogger fences and push it until it touches the shutter. When the staple tray paper sensor detects the paper, the stapler will staple (rear, 1 point).
5. Take out the stapled paper manually and check the staple position.
 Staple position: Good → Turn off dip switches 3 -1 and -2 to end the procedure.
 Staple position: No good → Change the staple position by doing the following steps.
6. Adjust the staple position by pressing switch 1 or 2.
 Switch 1: Move the front (0.3 mm/press)
 Switch 2: Move to the rear (0.3 mm/press)
7. Press switches 1 and 2 simultaneously to store the adjustment data. After pressing the switches, check the staple position again.
8. Turn off dip switches 3 -1 and -2, then turn off the copier main switch.

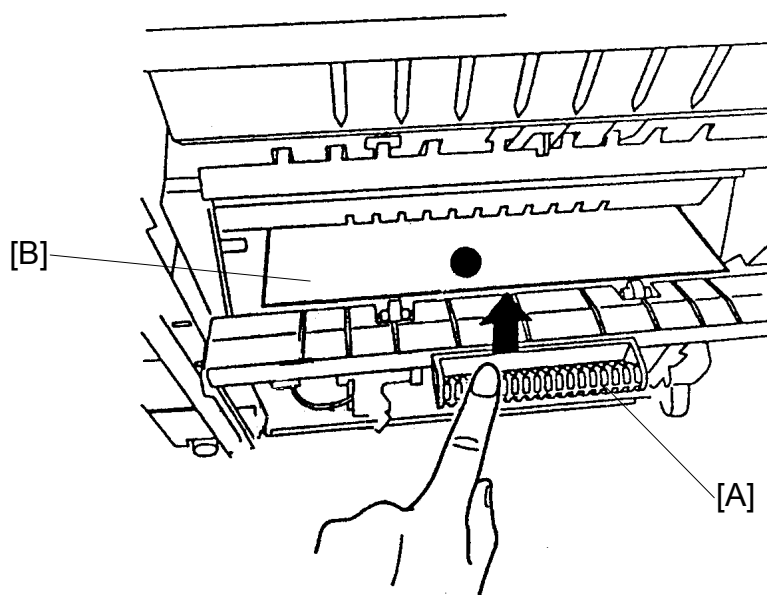
ADJUSTMENT

3.2.4 BOOKLET STAPLING POSITION



After replacing the booklet board, dip switches 1 -6, -7, -8 on the new board must be set up the same way as on the old board.

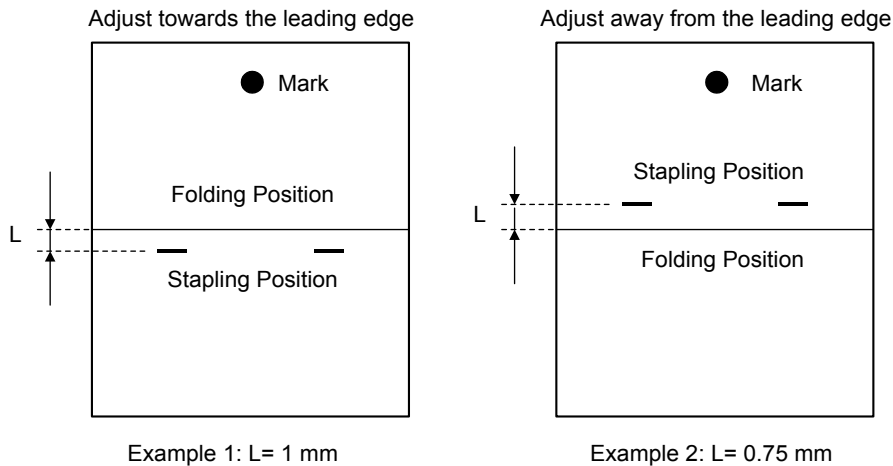
1. Remove the lower right cover and lower rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switches 1 -1 and -2 on the booklet board.
3. Tape the actuators of the booklet entrance guide sensor (S42) and the booklet entrance guide safety switch (SW11), so that S42 and SW11 remain actuated.
4. Press switch 2 (SW2) on the booklet board.
 - After pressing the switch, the booklet transport motor (M10) will start to rotate.
5. Put a mark on the trailing edge of some A3/11" x 17" paper (two sheets).



6. Open the booklet entrance guide [A], then slide in the two sheets of paper [B] until their leading edges touch the positioning plate.
7. Press switch 2 on the booklet board.
 - The booklet finisher makes a booklet automatically.

Booklet
Finisher
B546

ADJUSTMENT



Dip switch 1 -6, -7, -8 setting			Adjustment (0.25 mm/ step)
-6	-7	-8	
OFF	ON	ON	+3
OFF	ON	OFF	+2
OFF	OFF	ON	+1
OFF	OFF	OFF	0
ON	OFF	ON	-1
ON	ON	OFF	-2
ON	ON	ON	-3
ON	OFF	OFF	Do not use

8. Measure the distance (L) between the stapling position and the folder position.
9. Adjust the stapling position with dip switches 1 -6, -7, -8.
 Inputting a lower value than the current setting moves the stapling position towards the leading edge. Adjusting by 1 step moves the stapling position 0.25 mm.

Example 1:

To move the stapling position 1 mm towards the leading edge.

If dip switch 1 is currently set to +2, set the dip switch to reflect -2 (this moves the stapling position 4 steps towards the leading edge).

Example 2:

To move the stapling position 0.75 mm away from the leading edge.

If dip switch 1 is currently set to -1, set the dip switch to reflect +2 (this move,s the stapling position 3 steps away from the leading edge).

10. Turn off dip switched 1-1 and -2, then turn off the copier main switch.

AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER
B714

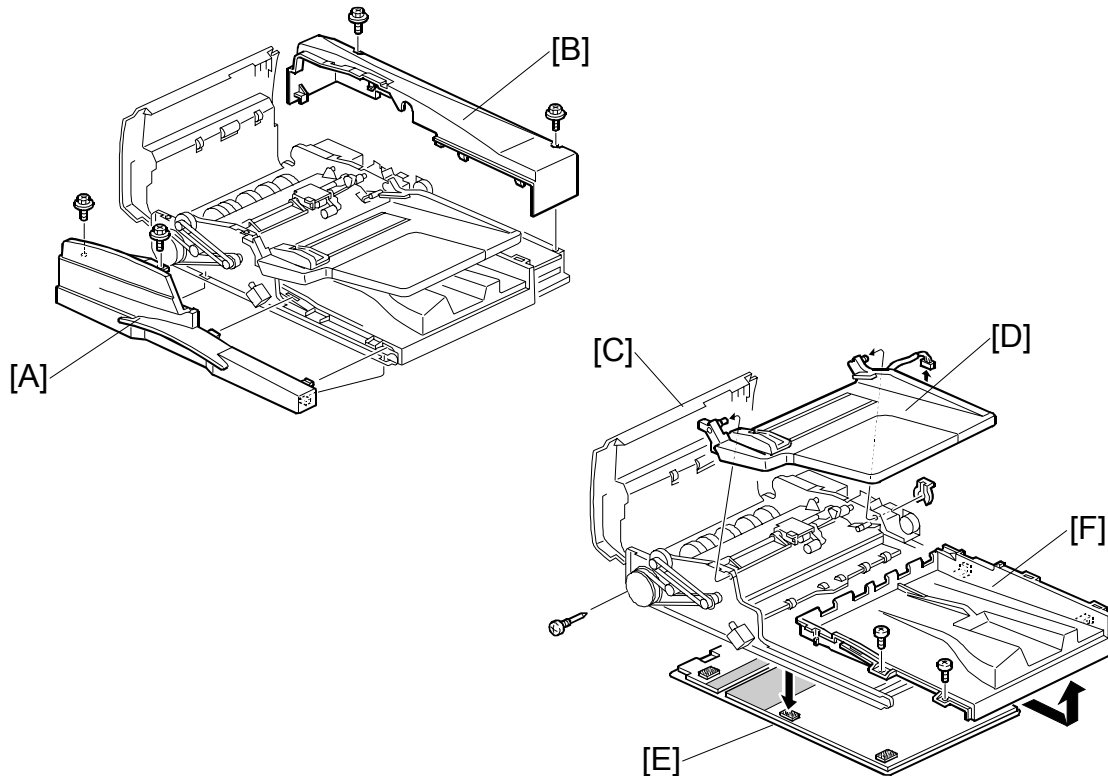
ARDF B714

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	1
1.1 COVERS	1
1.2 ORIGINAL FEED UNIT	2
1.3 ORIGINAL PICK-UP ROLLER.....	2
1.4 ORIGINAL FEED BELT	3
1.5 SKEW CORRECTION/INTERVAL/ REGISTRATION/ORIGINAL WIDTH SENSORS	4
1.6 ORIGINAL LENGTH SENSORS	5
1.7 SEPARATION ROLLER	5
1.8 INVERTER /ORIGINAL SET SENSORS.....	6
1.9 PICK-UP MOTOR/ORIGINAL STOPPER HP SENSOR/PICK-UP HP SENSOR	6
1.10 TRANSPORT MOTOR AND INVERTER MOTOR	7
1.11 FEED MOTOR, SKEW CORRECTION ROLLER CLUTCH	8
1.12 EXIT SENSOR	9
1.13 STAMP SOLENOID.....	9
1.14 CONTROLLER BOARD	9
2. TROUBLESHOOTING	10
2.1 TIMING CHARTS	10
2.1.1 A4(S)/LT(S) SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE	10
2.1.2 A4(S)/LT(S) DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE	11
2.2 JAM DETECTION.....	12
3. SERVICE TABLES	13
3.1 DIP SWITCHES.....	13
3.2 TEST POINTS	13
3.3 FUSES	13
4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	14
4.1 MAIN COMPONENTS	14
4.2 DRIVE LAYOUT	15
4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION.....	16
4.3.1 BASIC MECHANISM	16
4.3.2 MIXED ORIGINAL SIZE MODE	18
4.4 ORIGINAL FEED-IN MECHANISM	19
4.4.1 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION	19
4.4.2 ORIGINAL SKEW CORRECTION	20
4.4.3 REDUCING THE INTERVAL BETWEEN PAGES	20
4.5 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT	21
4.5.1 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINALS	21
4.5.2 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINALS	22
4.6 STAMP	23

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 COVERS



[A]: Front cover (⌘ x 2)

[B]: Rear cover (⌘ x 2)

[C]: Top cover (⌘ x 1, ⌘ x 2)

[D]: Original tray (⌘ x 1, ⌘ x 1)

[E]: Platen sheet (Velcro pads)

[F]: Original exit tray (⌘ x 2). Slide to the right and then pull out.

⚠ CAUTION

The hinge of the ARDF is spring-loaded and becomes much lighter with all the covers removed. After removing all the covers, lay a heavy book on the front right corner of the ARDF to prevent it from springing up unexpectedly.

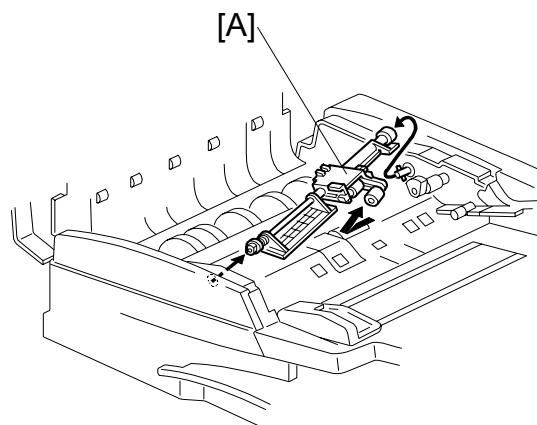
ORIGINAL FEED UNIT

1.2 ORIGINAL FEED UNIT

Open the top cover.

[A]: Original feed unit

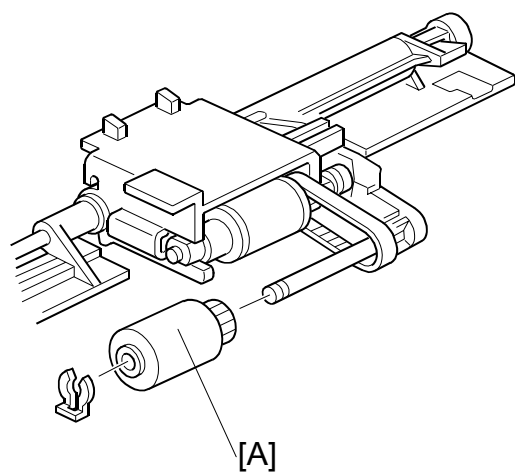
Press it toward you on its shaft to release and lift out.



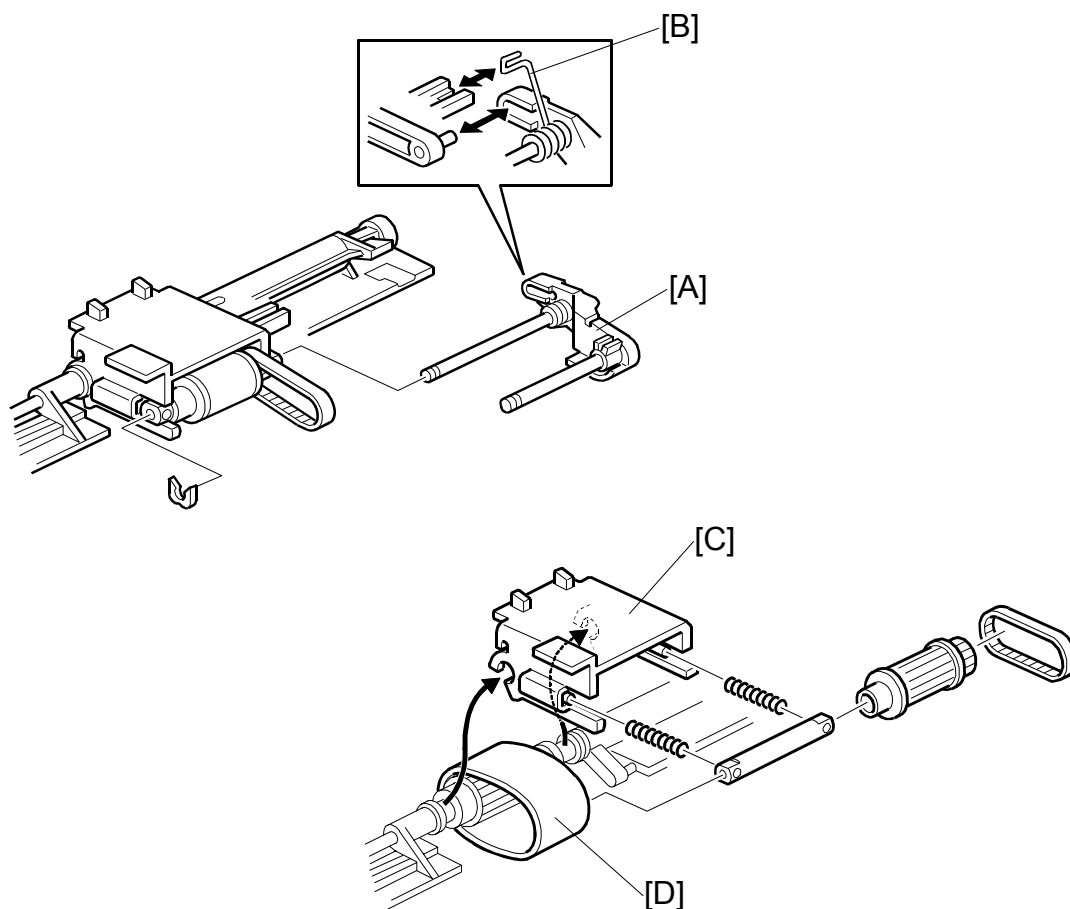
1.3 ORIGINAL PICK-UP ROLLER

Original feed unit (☛ 1.2)

[A]: Pick-up roller (🌀 x 1)



1.4 ORIGINAL FEED BELT



Original feed unit and original pick-up roller (➡ 1.2, 1.3)

[A]: Shaft (⌀ x 1)

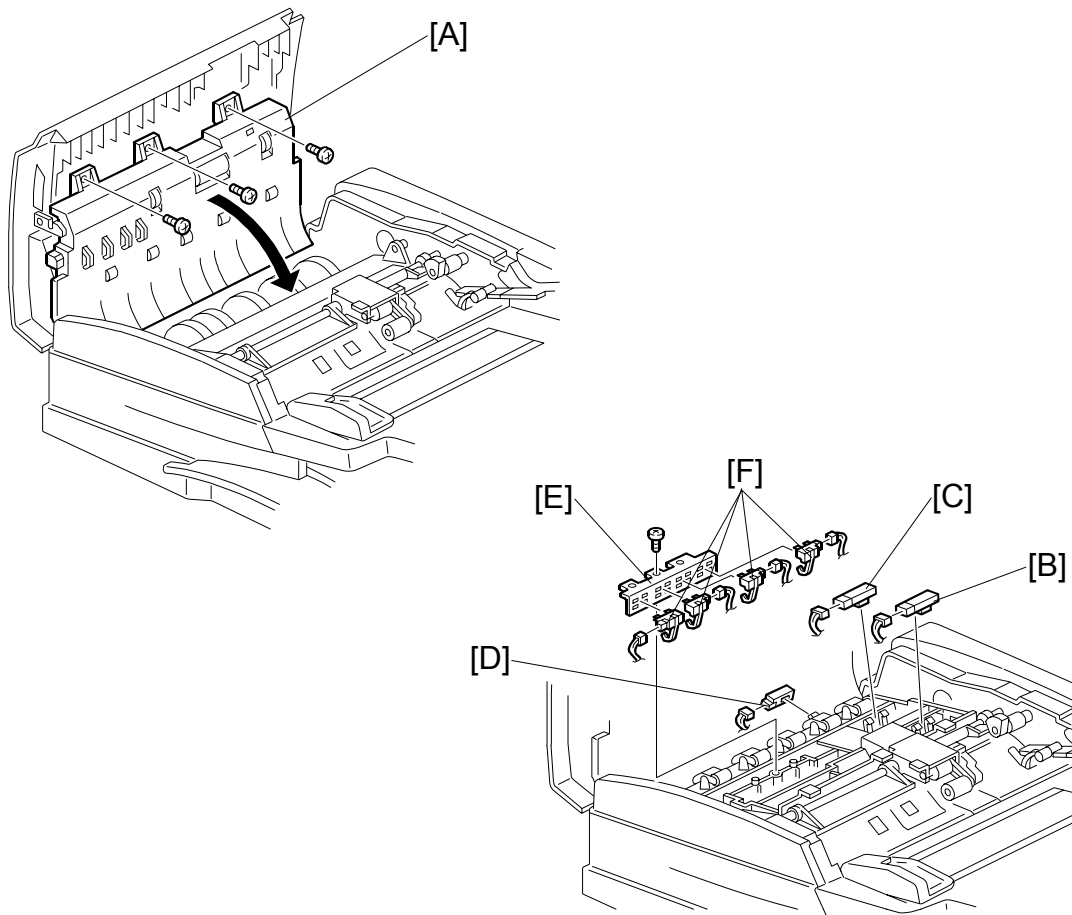
NOTE: Before removing the shaft, note carefully the positioning of the spring [B]. This must be reset during re-installation.

[C]: Feed belt cover (Timing belt, gear, shaft, springs x 2)

NOTE: Do not lose the springs.

[D]: Original feed belt

1.5 SKEW CORRECTION/INTERVAL/ REGISTRATION/ORIGINAL WIDTH SENSORS



Open the top cover.

- [A]: Upper original guide (🔩 x 3).
- [B]: Skew correction sensor (🔩 x 1)
- [C]: Interval sensor (🔩 x 1)
- [D]: Registration sensor (🔩 x 1)
- [E]: Original width sensor bracket (🔩 x 1, 🔩 x 4)
- [F]: Original width sensors

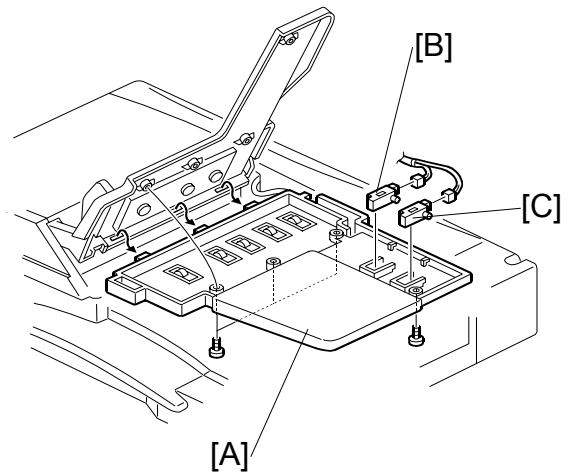
1.6 ORIGINAL LENGTH SENSORS

Raise the original table.

[A]: Lower cover of original tray (🔩 x 4)

[B]: Original length sensor-1 (🔌 x 1)

[C]: Original length sensor-2 (🔌 x 1)

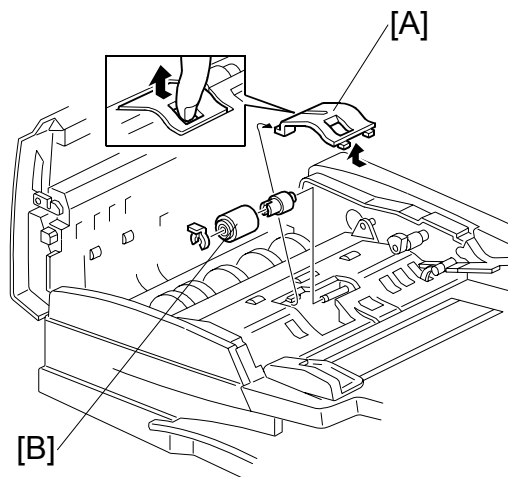


1.7 SEPARATION ROLLER

Original feed unit (🔩 1.2)

[A]: Separation roller cover

[B]: Separation roller (🔩 x 1)



1.8 INVERTER /ORIGINAL SET SENSORS

Rear cover. (☛ 0)

[A]: Lower the original stopper by rotating the pick-up motor

Original feed unit (☛ 1.2)

[B]: Feed guide plate (⚙ x 4, stepped screw)

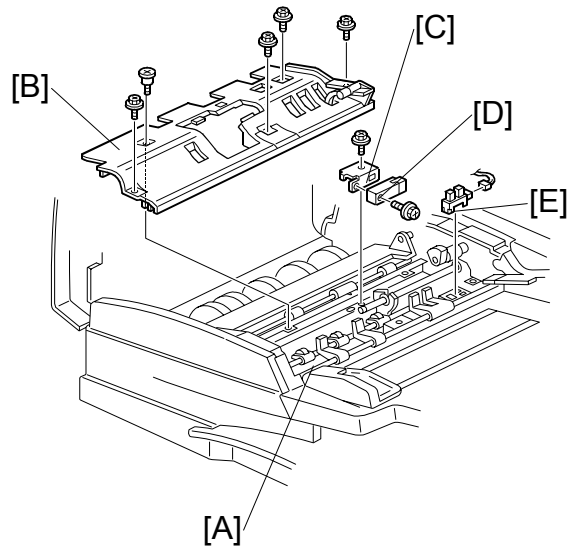
NOTE: Raise the original tray before you re-install the paper feed guide.

Separation roller, torque limiter (⚙ x 1) (☛ 1.7)

[C]: Bracket (⚙ x 1, ⚙ x 1)

[D]: Inverter sensor (⚙ x 1)

[E]: Original set sensor (⚙ x 1)



1.9 PICK-UP MOTOR/ORIGINAL STOPPER HP SENSOR/PICK-UP HP SENSOR

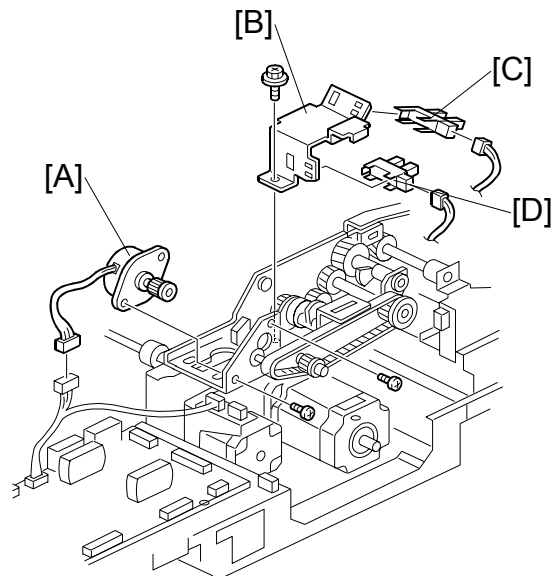
Rear cover (☛ 0)

[A]: Pick-up motor (⚙ x 1, ⚙ x 2, Timing belt)

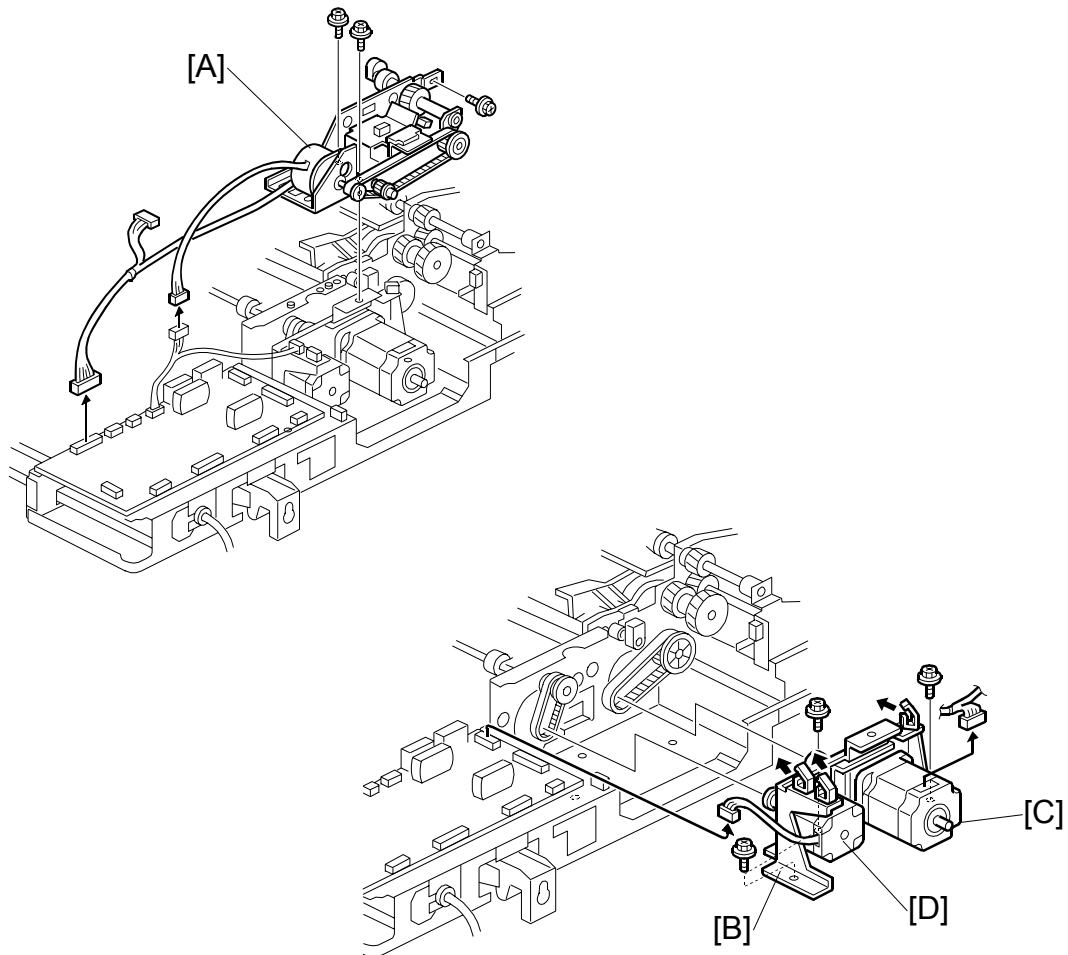
[B]: Sensor bracket (⚙ x 2, ⚙ x 1)

[C]: Pick-up HP sensor

[D]: Original stopper HP sensor



1.10 TRANSPORT MOTOR AND INVERTER MOTOR



Rear cover (0)

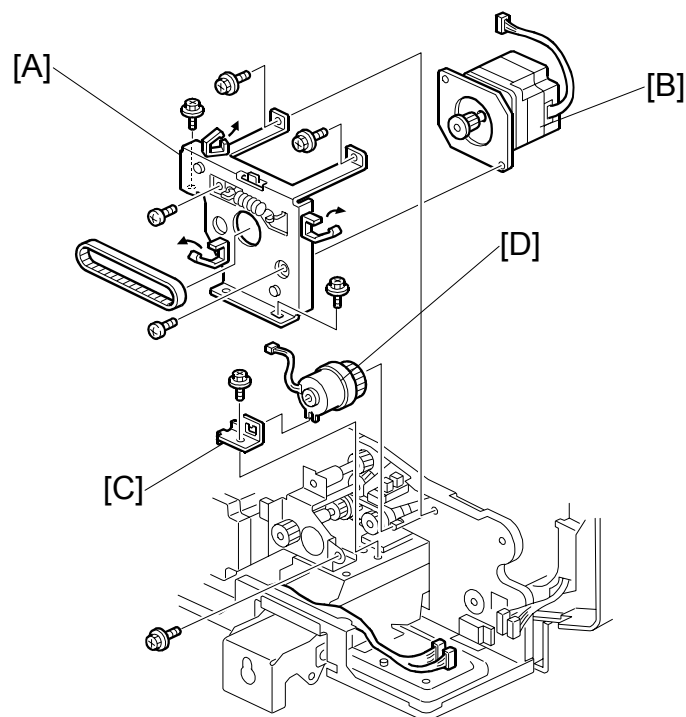
[A]: Pick-up roller assembly (1 x 1, 3 x 3, 3 x 3)

[B]: Motor bracket (3 x 3, 2 x 2, Timing belt x 2)

[C]: Transport motor (2 x 2, Spring x 1)

[D]: Inverter motor (2 x 2)

1.11 FEED MOTOR, SKEW CORRECTION ROLLER CLUTCH



Rear cover (☛ 0)

[A]: Motor bracket (🔩 x 5, 📌 x 1)

[B]: Feed motor (🔩 x 2)

[C]: Clutch stopper (🔩 x 1)

[D]: Skew correction roller clutch (📌 x 1)

1.12 EXIT SENSOR

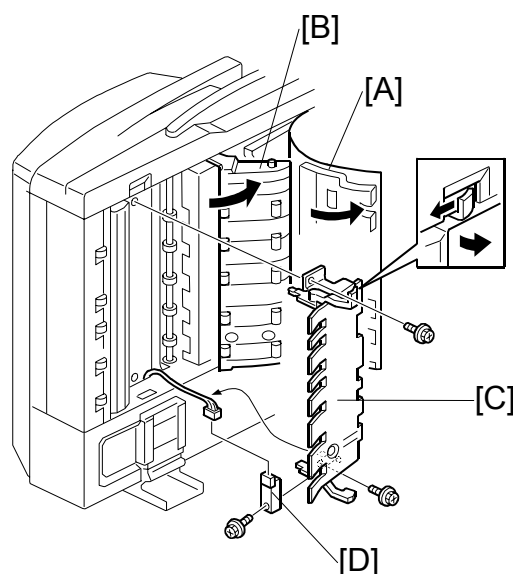
Open the ARDF.

[A]: Pull the platen sheet off halfway.

[B]: Open the exit guide plate.

[C]: Exit guide plate cover (⌘ x 2)

[D]: Exit sensor (⌘ x 1, ≡ x 1)



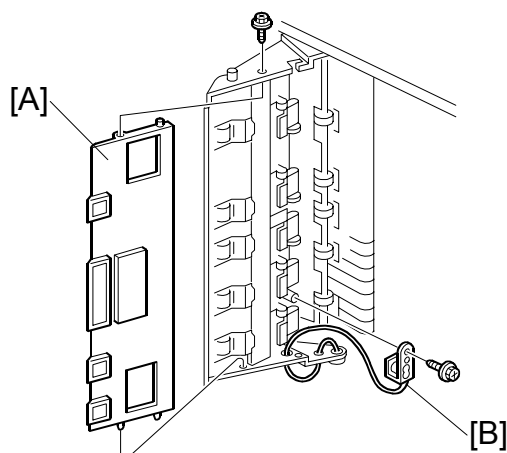
1.13 STAMP SOLENOID

Rear cover (➡ 0)

Open exit guide plate (➡ 1.12)

[A]: Exit guide plate cover (⌘ x 1)

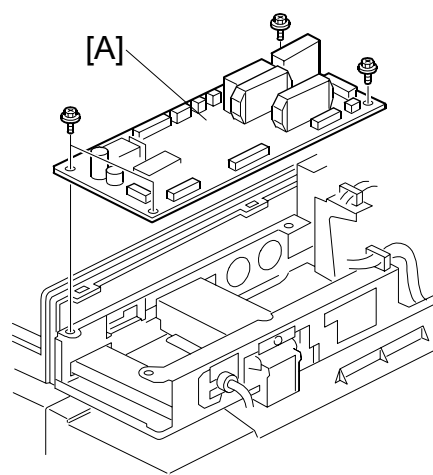
[B]: Stamp solenoid (⌘ x 1, ≡ x 1)



1.14 CONTROLLER BOARD

Rear cover (➡ 0)

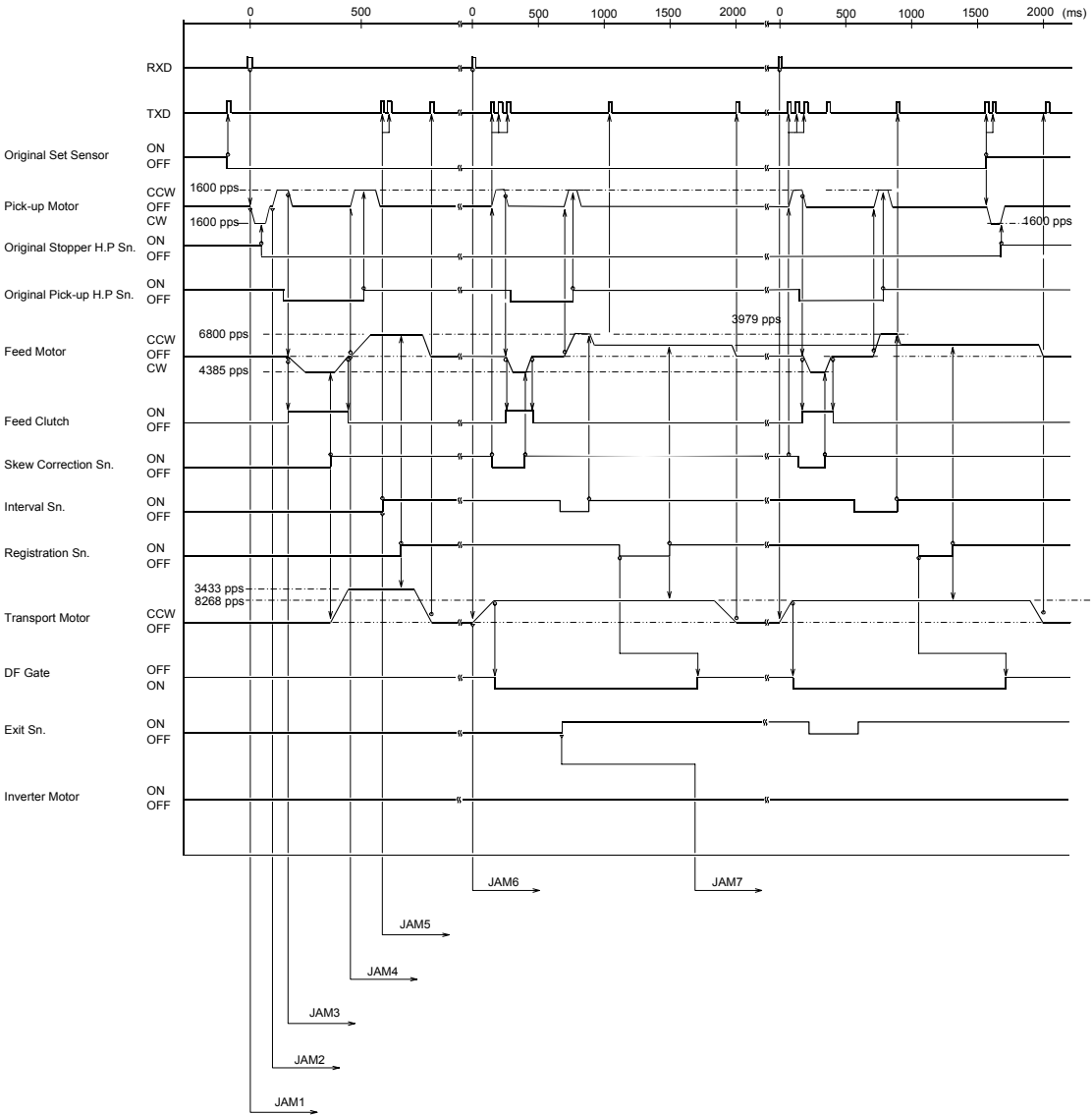
[A]: Controller board (⌘ x 4, all ≡)



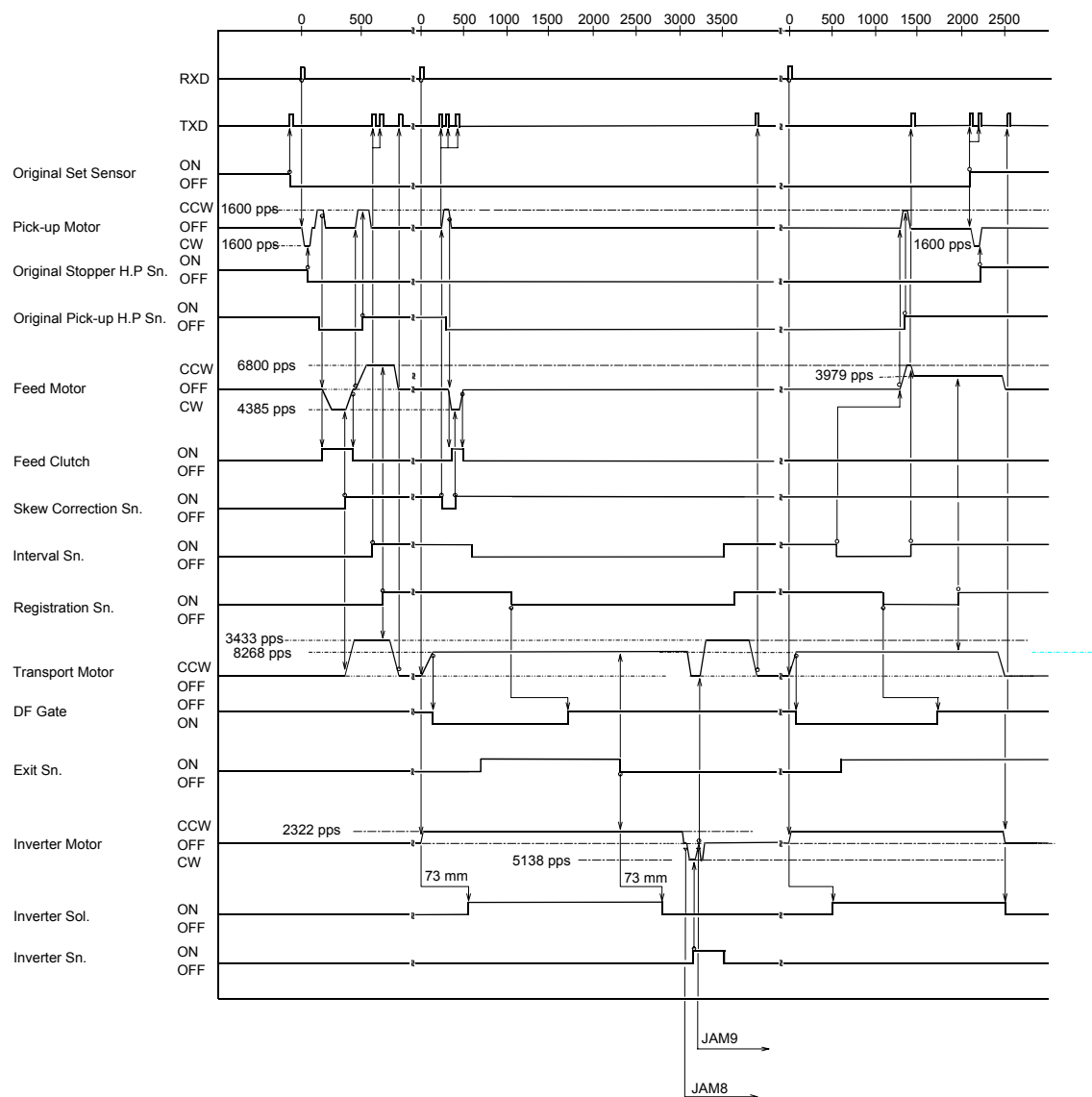
2. TROUBLESHOOTING

2.1 TIMING CHARTS

2.1.1 A4(S)/LT(S) SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE

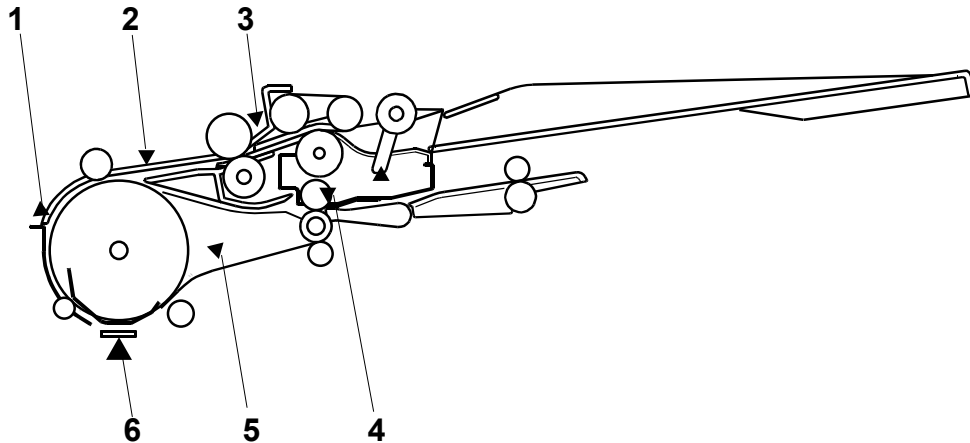


2.1.2 A4(S)/LT(S) DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE



Auto Reverse
Document
Feeder B714

2.2 JAM DETECTION



1. Registration sensor	4. Inverter sensor
2. Interval sensor	5. Exit sensor
3. Skew correction sensor	6. Scanning position

Jam Site	Cause
Original stopper HP sensor (Jam 1)	Original stopper home position could not be detected within 1000 ms after the pick-up motor switched on and started rotating counter-clockwise.
Pick-up HP sensor (Jam 2)	Pick-up roller home position could not be detected within 1000 ms after the pick-up motor switched on and started rotating clockwise.
Skew correction sensor jam (Jam 3)	The skew correction sensor does not turn on after the feed motor has fed the original 185 mm.
Transport jam (Jam 4)	The interval sensor does not turn on after the feed motor has fed the original 141 mm.
Registration sensor (Jam 5)	The registration sensor does not turn on after the interval sensor turned on and the original has been fed 117 mm.
Exit jam (Jam 6)	The exit sensor does not turn on after the transport motor has fed the original 124 mm.
Exit jam (Jam 7)	The exit sensor does not turn off after the exit sensor turned on and the original has been fed 294 mm.
Inverter sensor jam (Jam 8)	The inverter sensor does not turn on after the inverter motor has fed the original 100 mm.
Interval sensor jam (Jam 9)	The interval sensor does not turn on after the inverter motor has fed the original 339 mm.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCHES

DPS101				Description
1	2	3	4	
0	0	0	0	Normal operating mode, with/without stamp.
0	0	0	1	Not used
0	0	1	0	Not used
0	0	1	1	Not used
0	1	0	0	Feed motor rotation (pull-out mode) 6800 pps (1-2 phase)
0	1	0	1	Feed motor rotation (feed mode) 4385 pps (1-2 phase)
0	1	1	0	Transport motor rotation 8268 pps (2W1-2 phase)
0	1	1	1	Inverter motor rotation 7720 pps (1-2 phase)
1	0	0	0	Free run: one-sided original 100% (color mode)
1	0	0	1	Free run: one-sided original 200% (color mode)
1	0	1	0	Free run: one-sided original 32% (color mode)
1	0	1	1	Free run: one-sided original 100% (b/w mode)
1	1	0	0	Free run: two-sided original 100% (color mode)
1	1	0	1	Free run: two-sided original 100% (b/w mode)
1	1	1	0	Free run: one-sided (fax mode) 48% (b/w mode)
1	1	1	1	Free run: one-sided (mixed original size mode) 100% (color mode)

3.2 TEST POINTS

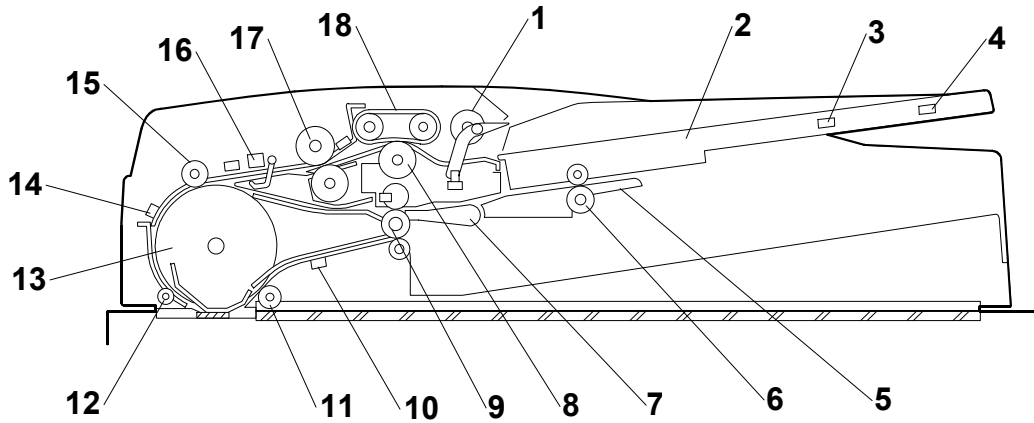
No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP100	(GND)	Ground
TP101	(Vcc)	+5V
TP103	(TXD)	TXD to the copier
TP104	(RXD)	RXD from the copier

3.3 FUSES

No.	Function
FU101	Protects the 24 V line.

4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

4.1 MAIN COMPONENTS



1 Pick-up roller	10 Exit sensor
2 Original tray	11 Idle roller 3
3 Original length sensor 1	12 Idle roller 2
4 Original length sensor 2	13 Transport roller
5 Reverse table	14 Registration sensor
6 Inverter roller	15 Idle roller 1
7 Junction gate	16 Original width sensor
8 Separation roller	17 Skew correction roller
9 Exit roller	18 Feed belt

Pick-up Mechanism: Picks up the originals for scanning.

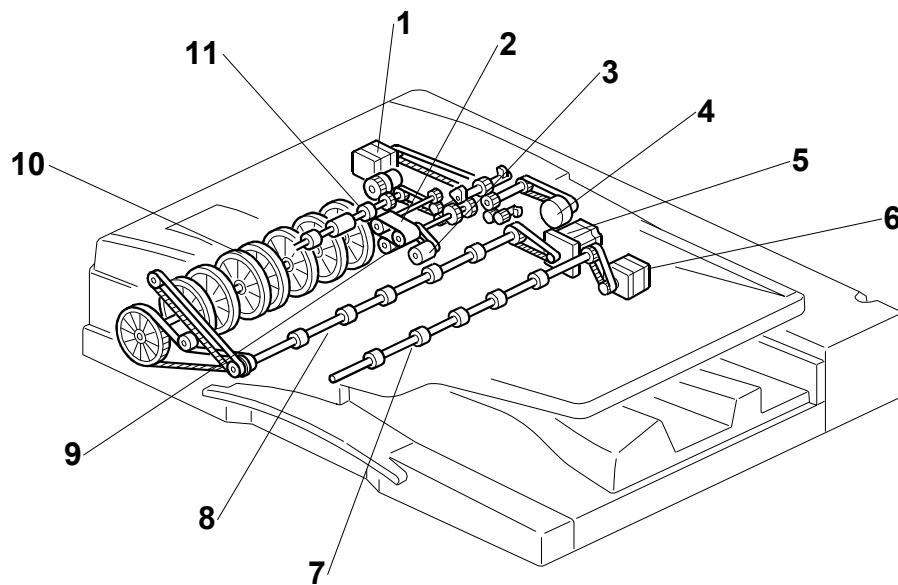
Feed/Separation Mechanism: Comprised of the feed belt and separation roller, feeds and separates the originals, and corrects skew.

Original Size Detection Sensors: Comprised of 4 width sensors and 2 length sensors, detect the sizes of the originals.

Original Transport Mechanism: Comprised of the transport roller, ADF exposure glass, and exit roller.

Original Reverse/Exit Mechanism: Exit/junction gate.

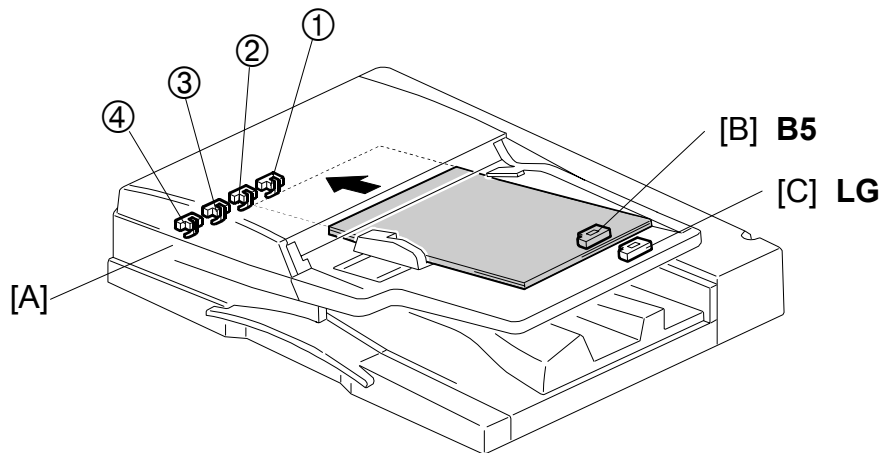
4.2 DRIVE LAYOUT



1 Feed motor	7 Inverter roller
2 Feed belt	8 Exit roller
3 Pick-up roller	9 Separation roller
4 Pick-up motor	10 Transport roller
5 Transport motor	11 Skew correction roller
6 Inverter motor	

4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

4.3.1 BASIC MECHANISM



The original size is detected by four original width sensors [A] and two original length sensors, [B] and [C].

The machine determines the original width when the leading edge of the original activates the registration sensor.

The ARDF detects the original size by combining the readings of the four width sensors and two length sensors, as shown in the table on the next page.

Size (Width x Length)	Width Sensor				Length Sensor	
	①	②	③	④	B5	LG
A3 L ^{*1} (297 x 420 mm)	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
B4 L (257 x 364 mm)	ON	ON	-	-	ON	ON
A4 L (210 x 297 mm)	ON	-	-	-	ON	-
A4 S ^{*2} (297 x 210 mm)	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	-
B5 L (182 x 257 mm)	-	-	-	-	ON	-
B5 S (257 x 182 mm)	ON	ON	-	-	-	-
A5 L (148 x 210 mm)	-	-	-	-	-	-
A5 S (210 x 148 mm)	ON	-	-	-	-	-
B6 L (128 x 182 mm)	-	-	-	-	-	-
B6 S (182 x 128 mm)	-	-	-	-	-	-
DLT L (11" x 17")	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON
11" x 15" L	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON
10" x 14" L	ON	ON	-	-	ON	ON
LG L (8 1/2" x 14")	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON
F4 L (8 1/2" x 13")	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON
F L (8" x 13")	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON
LT L (8.5" x 11")	ON	-	-	-	ON	-
LT S (11" x 8.5")	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-
7 1/4" x 10 1/2" L	-	-	-	-	ON	-
10 1/2" x 7 1/4" S	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-
8" x 10" L	ON	-	-	-	ON	-
HLT L 5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	-	-	-	-	-	-
HLT S 8 1/2" x 5 1/2"	ON	-	-	-	-	-
267 x 390 mm	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON
195 x 267 mm	ON	-	-	-	ON	-
267 x 195 mm	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-

*¹ L: Lengthways*² S: Sideways

ON: Paper present

4.3.2 MIXED ORIGINAL SIZE MODE

This section explains what happens when the user selects mixed original size mode.

Because this ADF is a sheet-through document feeder, the method for original document width detection is the same as when the originals are the same size, but the document length detection method is different. Therefore, the scanning speed is slightly slower.

Document length detection

From when the registration sensor switches on until the interval sensor switches off, the CPU counts the transport motor pulses. The number of pulses determines the length of the original.

Feed-in cycle

When the original size for the copy modes listed below cannot be determined, the image cannot be correctly scaled (reduced or enlarged) or processed until the document length has been accurately detected. The length must be determined before the image is scanned.

- Auto Reduce/Enlarge
- Centering
- Erase Center/Border
- Booklet
- Image Repeat

An original follows this path during transport:

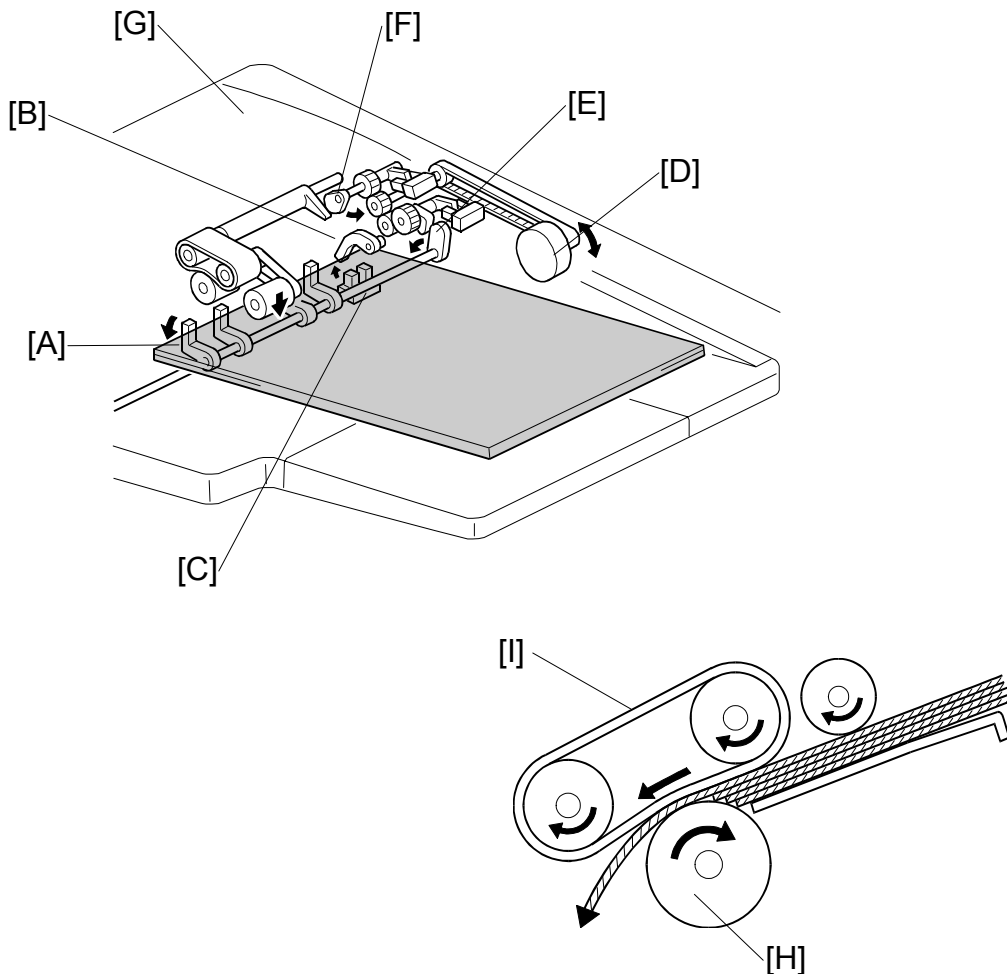
1. Document length detection → Scanning glass → Inverter table
2. Inverter table → Scanning glass → Inverter table (restores original order)
3. Inverter table → Scanning glass (image scanned) → Exit tray

Normal feed-in

In a copy mode other than those listed above, when the rate of reduction/enlargement has been determined, the originals are scanned normally. In order to store the scanned images, a large area of memory (the detected document width x 432 mm) is prepared. Next, only the portion of the image up to the detected document length is read from memory and printed.

4.4 ORIGINAL FEED-IN MECHANISM

4.4.1 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION

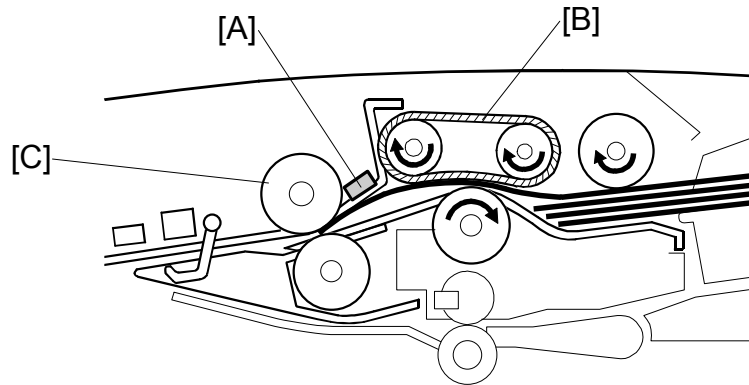


When the original is put on the original table, it contacts the original stopper [A] and pushes the actuator [B] out of the original set sensor [C].

When Start  is pressed, the pick-up motor [D] turns on and the original stopper cam [E] rotates. The original stopper lowers and releases the original.

Next, the pick-up roller cam [F] lowers the pick-up roller, and then the feed motor [G (at this location but not shown in the drawing)] turns on to feed the top sheet of paper. After being fed from the pick-up roller, the top sheet is separated from the stack by the separation roller [H] and the feed belt [I].

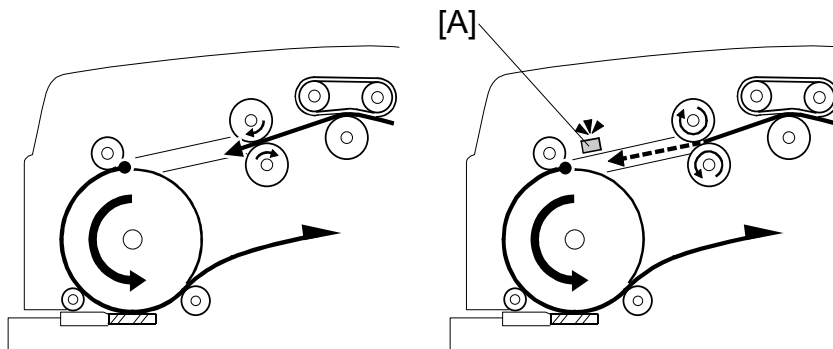
4.4.2 ORIGINAL SKEW CORRECTION



This mechanism is the same as the skew correction used by the registration roller in the main machine.

The feed motor and the skew correction clutch control the skew correction roller. Immediately after separation, the skew correction sensor [A] detects the leading edge of the original. The feed belt [B] moves the paper slightly until it presses against the skew correction roller [C] and buckles slightly to correct any skew.

4.4.3 REDUCING THE INTERVAL BETWEEN PAGES

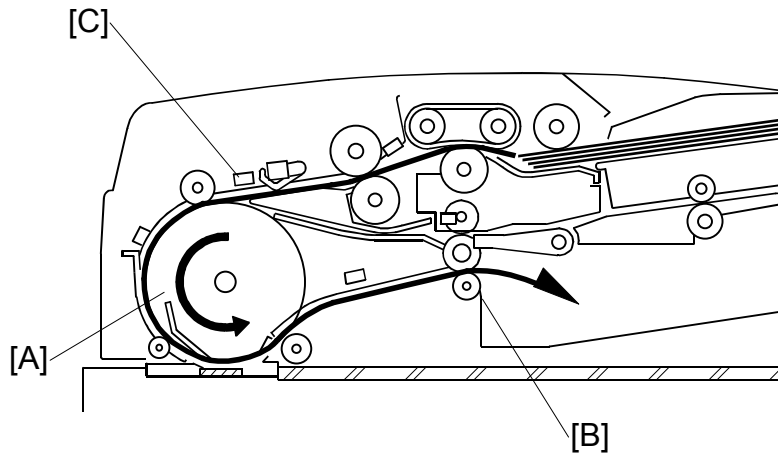


After performing skew correction, the feed motor runs at a speed higher than its original speed in order for the next original to catch up to the one ahead of it. This reduces the gap between the leading edge of the next original with the trailing edge of the one ahead.

When the leading edge of the original activates the interval sensor [A], the feed motor slows to match the speed of paper transport.

4.5 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT

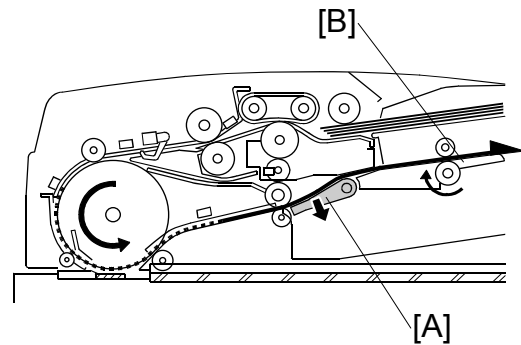
4.5.1 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINALS



The transport motor drives the transport roller [A] and the exit roller [B]. When the leading edge of the original activates the interval sensor [C], the transport motor rotates the transport roller. The transport roller then feeds the original through scanning area. After scanning, the original is fed out by the exit roller to the exit tray.

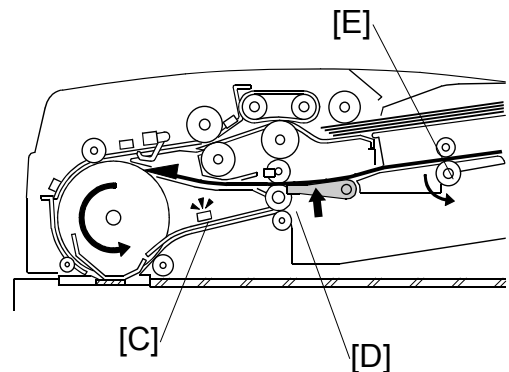
4.5.2 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINALS

Shortly after the transport motor has been turned on, the inverter solenoid is activated and junction gate [A] opens. The original is then scanned and transported towards the reverse table [B].

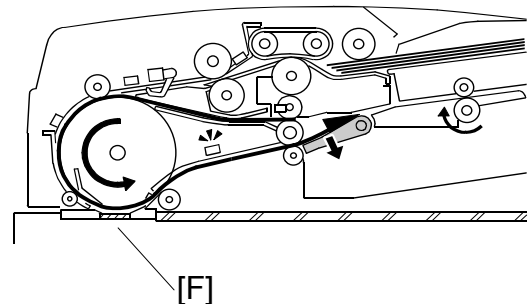


Shortly after the original exit sensor [C] detects the trailing edge of the original, the inverter solenoid turns off and the junction gate [D] closes.

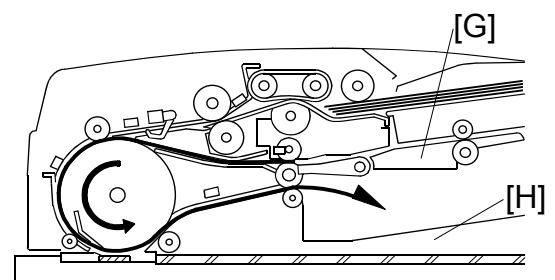
Next, the inverter motor turns on and the inverter roller [E] starts rotating to feed the original from the reverse table.



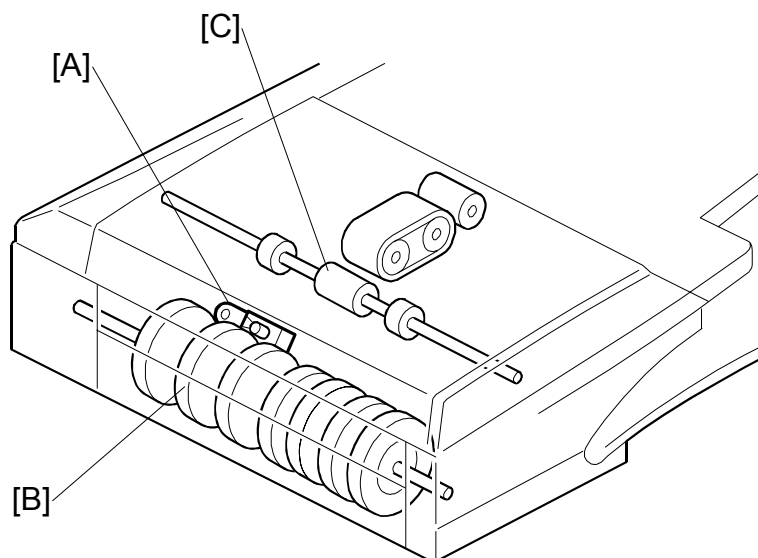
Then the original is fed to the transport roller and the scanning area [F] (where the reverse side is scanned).



After scanning the reverse side of the original, the original is then sent to the reverse table [G] a second time and turned over. This ensures that the double-sided original will be properly stacked in the correct order, front side down, in the original exit tray [H].



4.6 STAMP



NOTE: This function is only for fax mode.

The stamp [A] is located between the transport roller [B] and the exit roller [C].

When the original reaches the stamp, the transport motor stops and the stamp solenoid turns on if the page is sent successfully (immediate transmission) or stored successfully (memory transmission). After stamping, the ARDF feed motor re-starts to feed out the document.

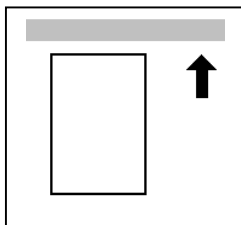
NOTE: The position of the stamp can be adjusted with the Stamp Position Adjustment SP mode.

FAX OPTION
B779

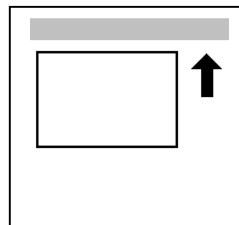
Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	See Core Tech Manual for details
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Lengthwise, SEF
(Short Edge Feed)



Sideways, LEF
(Long Edge Feed)

Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

 WARNING
FAILURE TO OBEY WARNING INFORMATION COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.

 CAUTION
Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.

IMPORTANT

- **ALWAYS OBEY THESE GUIDELINES TO AVOID SERIOUS PROBLEMS SUCH AS MISFEEDS, DAMAGE TO ORIGINALS, LOSS OF VALUABLE DATA AND TO PREVENT DAMAGE TO THE MACHINE. BOLD IS ADDED FOR EMPHASIS.**

NOTE: This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

1.1 CAUTIONS AND WARNINGS

WARNING

1. Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
2. Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
3. Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
4. Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
5. Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
6. Do not use a telephone or cellular phone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

CAUTION

1. Before installing the fax unit, switch off the main switch, and disconnect the power cord.
2. The fax unit contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

NOTE FOR AUSTRALIA

Unit must be connected to Telecommunication Network through a line cord which meets the requirements of ACA Technical Standard TS008.

FAX OPTION B779

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION.....	1
1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1
1.2 FAX OPTION INSTALLATION PROCEDURE.....	2
1.3 G3 INTERFACE UNIT TYPE 3045.....	6
1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	6
1.3.2 INSTALLATION: ONE G3 BOARD	7
1.3.3 INSTALLATION: TWO G3 BOARDS.....	8
2. TROUBLESHOOTING	9
2.1 ERROR CODES.....	9
2.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING.....	21
2.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING	24
IP-Fax Transmission.....	24
IP-Fax Reception	27
2.4 FAX SC CODES.....	29
2.4.1 OVERVIEW	29
2.4.2 SC1201.....	29
2.4.3 FAX SC CODE TABLE.....	30
3. SERVICE TABLES.....	31
3.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE.....	31
3.2 BIT SWITCHES.....	38
3.2.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES.....	38
3.2.2 I-FAX SWITCHES.....	48
3.2.3 PRINTER SWITCHES.....	54
3.2.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES.....	59
3.2.5 G3 SWITCHES.....	67
3.2.6 G3-2/3 SWITCHES.....	73
3.2.7 G4 INTERNAL SWITCHES	79
3.2.8 G4 PARAMETER SWITCHES.....	79
3.2.9 IP FAX SWITCHES	79
3.3 NCU PARAMETERS.....	85
3.4 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS	95
3.4.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE.....	95
3.4.2 PARAMETERS.....	96
Fax Parameters	96
E-mail Parameters	99
3.5 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES.....	101
4. DETAILS.....	110
4.1 OVERVIEW	110
4.2 BOARDS	111

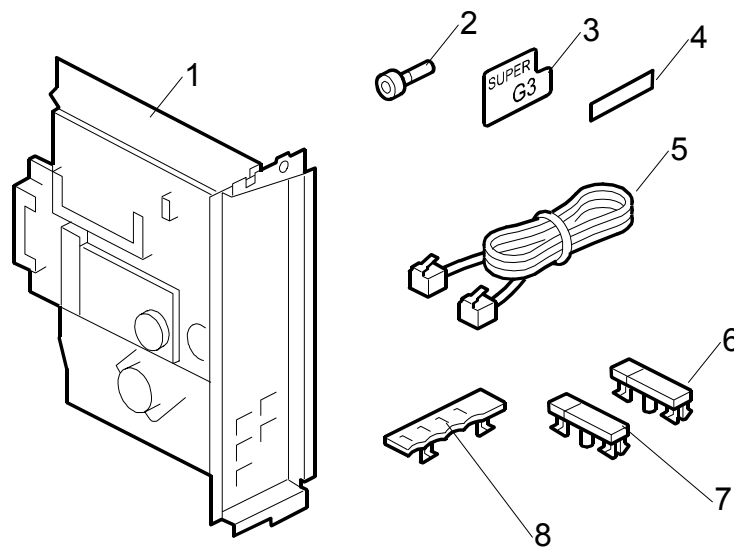
4.2.1	FCU	111
4.2.2	MBU	112
4.2.3	SG3 BOARD	113
4.3	VIDEO DATA PATH	114
4.3.1	TRANSMISSION	114
	Memory Transmission and Parallel Memory Transmission	115
	Immediate Transmission	115
	JBIG Transmission	115
	Adjustments	115
4.3.2	RECEPTION	116
4.4	FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES	117
4.4.1	MULTI-PORT	117
4.4.2	DOCUMENT SERVER	118
4.4.3	INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION	119
	Mail Transmission	119
	Mail Reception	121
	Handling Mail Reception Errors	123
	Secure Internet Reception	123
	Transfer Request: Request by Mail	124
	E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode)	125
	Subject and Level of Importance	125
	How the Subject Differs According to Mail Type	125
	Subjects Displayed on the PC	125
	E-mail Messages	126
	Message Disposition Notification (MDN)	127
	Handling Reports	128
4.5	IP-FAX	129
	What is IP-FAX?	129
	T.38 Packet Format	129
5.	SPECIFICATIONS	130
5.1	GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS	130
5.2	CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS	131
5.3	IFAX SPECIFICATIONS	132
5.4	IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS	133
5.5	FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION	134

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

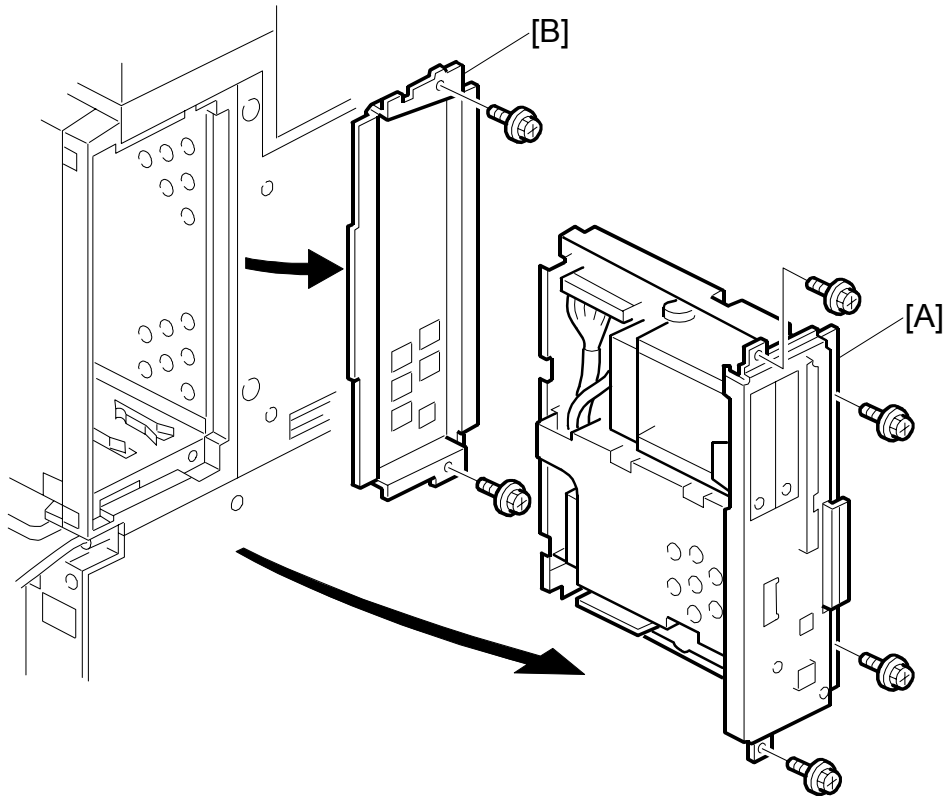
Description	Qty
1. Fax Unit B779 (FCU Board).....	1
2. Stamp Cartridge.....	1
3. Super G3 Label.....	1
4. Serial Number Tape.....	1
5. Cable	1
6. Facsimile Keytops.....	2
7. Copy Keytops	2
8. Printed Plate	1



Important

- The installation procedure of the previous model required the removal of knockouts from the rear lower cover of the machine.
- The rear lower covers of the previous model and this model are identical in that both covers contain these knockouts.
- However, removal of these knockouts on the rear lower cover is not required with this installation.

1.2 FAX OPTION INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠ CAUTION

Before installation:

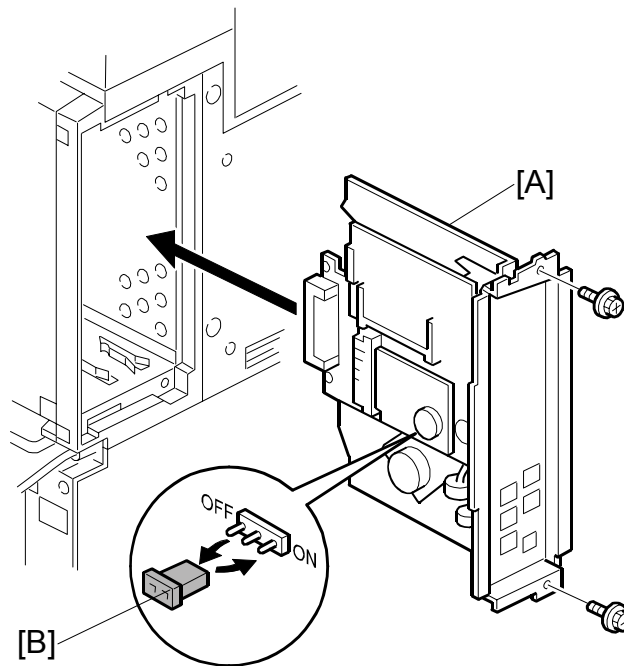
1. If there is a printer option in the machine, print out all data in the printer buffer.
2. Push the operation switch to put the machine in standby mode. Make sure the power LED is off, turn the main switch off, and then disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

NOTE: This installation procedure uses the following symbols.

: Screws

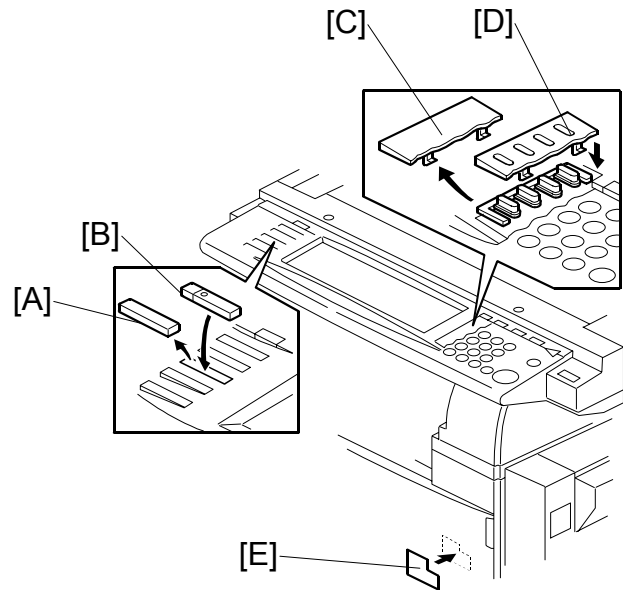
: Connectors

1. After removing the accessories from the box, read the serial number on the box and write it on the serial number tape provided.
2. Attach the serial number tape near the serial number plate of the mainframe.
3. Remove the controller unit [A] ( x 2)
4. Remove the cover [B] ( x 2)

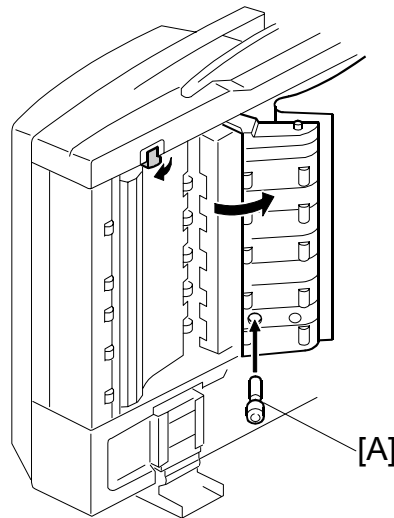


5. Remove the jumper [B] (set to OFF) and set it to ON.
6. If you are going to install one or two G3 Interface Units do this now.
 - If you are installing one G3 board, go to page 1-7.
 - If you are installing two G3 boards, go to page 1-8.
7. After installing the G3 board, slide the FCU board [A] into the right slot of the expansion box.
8. Fasten the board with the screws (⌘ x2).
NOTE: Make sure that the MBU is seated correctly. The machine will issue SC819, SC820 if it is not seated correctly.
9. Re-install the controller board.

FAX OPTION INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



10. Remove dummy keytop [A] and replace it with the **Facsimile** keytop [B]
11. Remove the blank plate [C] and replace it with the printed plate [D]
12. Attach the Super G3 decal [E].



13. Reattach the covers.

14. If the ARDF is installed, raise the ARDF and insert the stamp cartridge [A].

15. Connect the telephone line to the “LINE” jack at the rear of the machine.

NOTE: The copier must be connected to a properly grounded socket outlet.

16. Plug in the machine and turn on the main power switch.

Important

- After you turn the machine on, if you see a message that tells you the SRAM has been formatted due to a problem with SRAM, turn the machine off and on again to clear the message.

17. Enter the User Tools mode and set date and time.

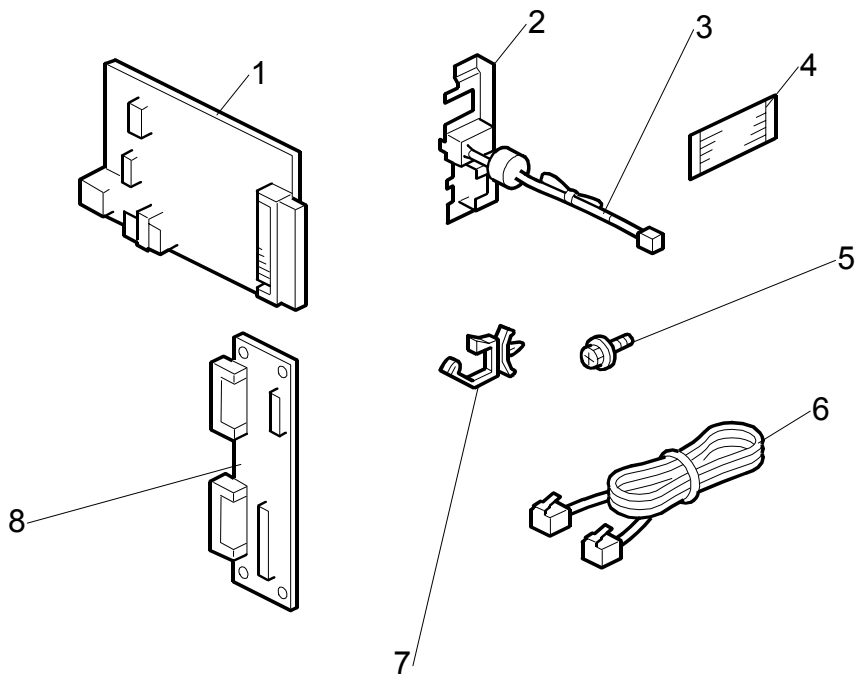
18. Do **SP3102** and enter the serial number for the fax unit.

NOTE: This is the serial number that you wrote on the plate and attached near the serial number plate of the mainframe in Steps 1 and 2.

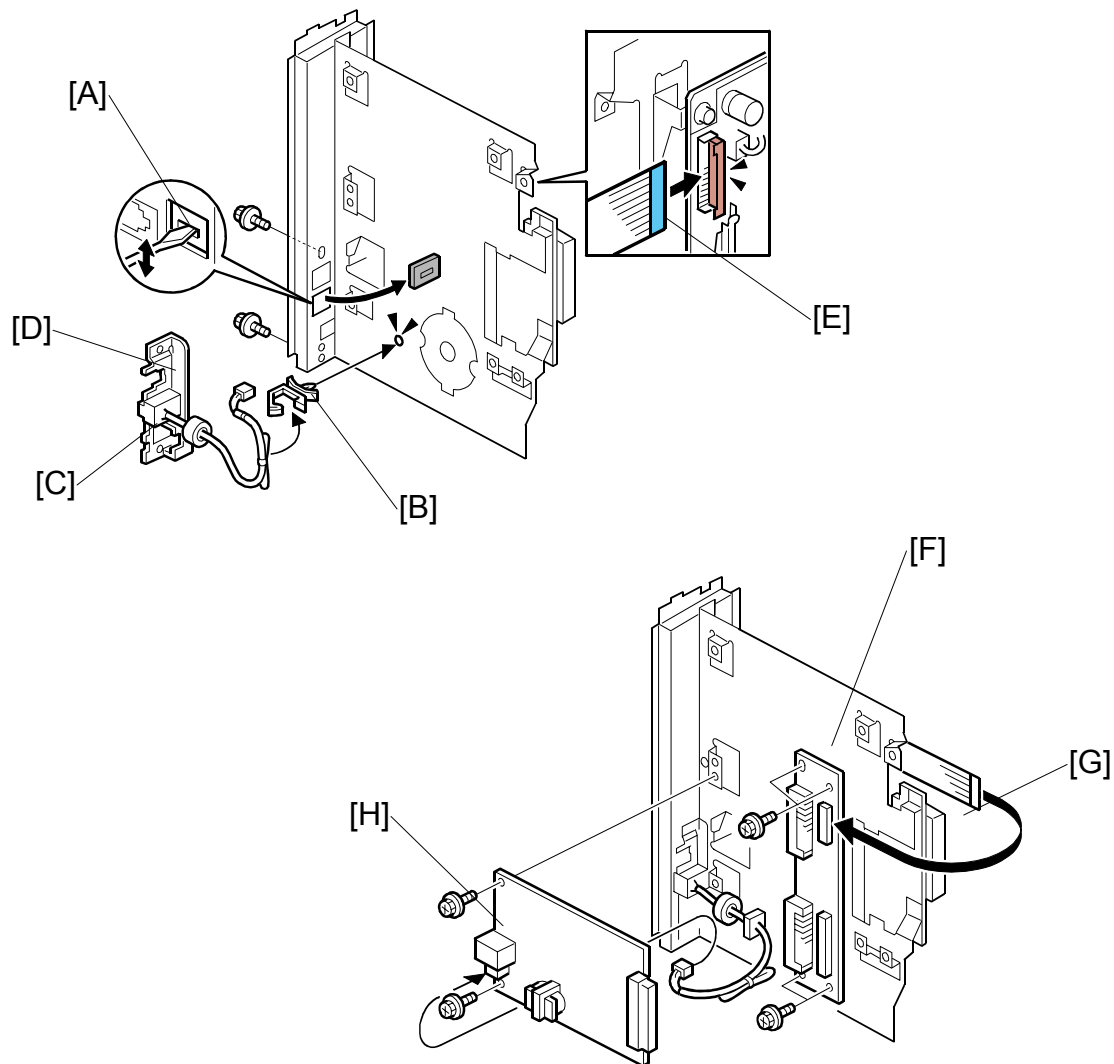
1.3 G3 INTERFACE UNIT TYPE 3045

1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Description	Qty
1. G3 Board	1
2. RJ-45 Connector Bracket	1
3. RJ-45 Connector with Cable	1
4. Flat Film Connector	1
5. Screws	8
6. Cable	1
7. Clamps	2
8. CCUIF	1

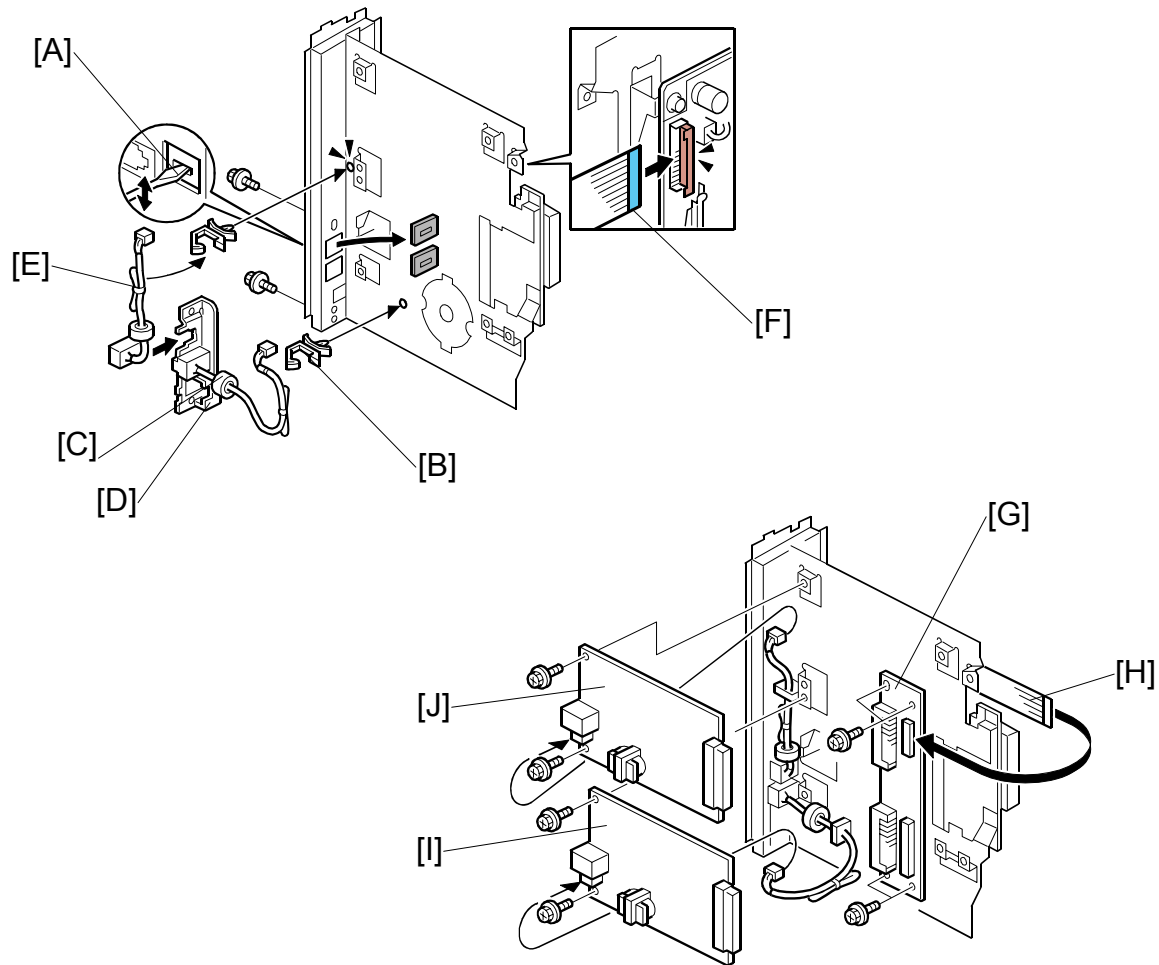


1.3.2 INSTALLATION: ONE G3 BOARD



1. Remove the knockout [A].
2. Attach the clamp [B] (⚙️ x1).
3. Attach the head of the RJ-45 connector [C] to the bracket [D].
4. Set the bracket [D] and fasten it. (⚙️ x2).
5. Attach one end of the flat film connector [E].
6. Attach the CCUIF [F] (⚙️ x4)
7. Attach the other end of the flat film connector [G] to the CCUIF.
8. Attach the G3 board [H] (⚙️ x2, ⚙️ x1, ⚙️ x2).
9. Return to page 3 and complete the installation.

1.3.3 INSTALLATION: TWO G3 BOARDS



1. Remove the two knockouts [A].
2. Attach the clamps [B] (🔩 x1).
3. For the lower board:
 - Attach the head of the RJ-45 connector [C] to the bracket [D].
 - Set the bracket [D] and fasten it. (🔩 x2).
4. For the upper board, set the second RJ-45 connector [E] in the bracket.

NOTE: Cut the band [E] before connecting.
5. Attach one end of the flat film connector [F].
6. Attach the CCUIF [G] (🔩 x4)
7. Attach the other end of the flat film connector [H] to the CCUIF.
8. Attach the lower G3 board [I] (🔩 x2, 🔩 x1, 🔩 x2).
9. Attach the upper G3 Board [J] (🔩 x2, 🔩 x1, 🔩 x2).
10. Return to page 3 and complete the installation.

2. TROUBLESHOOTING

2.1 ERROR CODES

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below. Note that some error codes appear only in the error code display and on the service report.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-00	DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of Start being pressed	• Check the line connection. • Check the NCU - FCU connectors. • The machine at the other end may be incompatible. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope. • If the rx signal is weak, there may be a bad line.
0-01	DCN received unexpectedly	• The other party is out of paper or has a jammed printer. • The other party pressed Stop during communication.
0-03	Incompatible modem at the other end	• The other terminal is incompatible.
0-04	CFR or FTT not received after modem training	• Check the line connection. • Check the NCU - FCU connectors. • Try changing the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. • Replace the FCU or NCU. • The other terminal may be faulty; try sending to another machine. • If the rx signal is weak or defective, there may be a bad line. Cross reference • Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN) • Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) • Dedicated Tx parameters - Section 4
0-05	Unsuccessful after modem training at 2400 bps	• Check the line connection. • Check the NCU - FCU connectors. • Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer. • Replace the FCU or NCU. • Check for line problems. Cross reference • See error code 0-04.

ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-06	The other terminal did not reply to DCS	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • The other end may be defective or incompatible; try sending to another machine. • Check for line problems. Cross reference • See error code 0-04.
0-07	No post-message response from the other end after a page was sent	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • The other end may have jammed or run out of paper. • The other end user may have disconnected the call. • Check for a bad line. • The other end may be defective; try sending to another machine.
0-08	The other end sent RTN or PIN after receiving a page, because there were too many errors	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper or memory space. • Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. • The other end may have a defective modem/NCU/FCU; try sending to another machine. • Check for line problems and noise. Cross reference • Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN) • Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) • Dedicated Tx parameters - Section 4
0-14	Non-standard post message response code received	• Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try sending to another machine. • Noisy line: resend. • Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. • Replace the NCU or FCU. Cross reference • See error code 0-08.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-15	The other terminal is not capable of specific functions.	The other terminal is not capable of accepting the following functions, or the other terminal's memory is full. • Confidential rx • Transfer function • SEP/SUB/PWD/SID
0-16	CFR or FTT not detected after modem training in confidential or transfer mode	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. • The other end may have disconnected, or it may be defective; try calling another machine. • If the rx signal level is too low, there may be a line problem. Cross reference • See error code 0-08.
0-20	Facsimile data not received within 6 s of retraining	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • Check for line problems. • Try calling another fax machine. • Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first line and/or rx cable equalizer setting. Cross reference • Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, bit 6 • Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
0-21	EOL signal (end-of-line) from the other end not received within 5 s of the previous EOL signal	• Check the connections between the FCU, NCU, & line. • Check for line noise or other line problems. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • The remote machine may be defective or may have disconnected. Cross reference • Maximum interval between EOLs and between ECM frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, bit 4
0-22	The signal from the other end was interrupted for more than the acceptable modem carrier drop time (default: 200 ms)	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • Defective remote terminal. • Check for line noise or other line problems. • Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Cross reference • Acceptable modem carrier drop time - G3 Switch 0A, bits 0 and 1

ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-23	Too many errors during reception	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Replace the NCU or FCU. • Defective remote terminal. • Check for line noise or other line problems. • Try asking the other end to adjust their tx level. • Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting and/or rx error criteria. Cross reference • Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) • Rx error criteria - Communication Switch 02, bits 0 and 1
0-30	The other terminal did not reply to NSS(A) in AI short protocol mode	• Check the line connection. • Check the FCU - NCU connectors. • Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. • The other terminal may not be compatible. Cross reference • Dedicated tx parameters - Section 4
0-32	The other terminal sent a DCS, which contained functions that the receiving machine cannot handle.	• Check the protocol dump list. • Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-52	Polarity changed during communication	• Check the line connection. • Retry communication.
0-55	FCE does not detect the SG3-V34.	• FCU firmware or board defective. • SG3-V34 firmware or board defective.
0-56	The stored message data exceeds the capacity of the mailbox in the SG3-V34.	• SG3-V34 firmware or board defective.
0-70	The communication mode specified in CM/JM was not available (V.8 calling and called terminal)	• The other terminal did not have a compatible communication mode (e.g., the other terminal was a V.34 data modem and not a fax modem.) • A polling tx file was not ready at the other terminal when polling rx was initiated from the calling terminal.
0-74	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect ANSam after sending CI.	• The calling terminal could not detect ANSam due to noise, etc. • ANSam was too short to detect. • Check the line connection and condition. • Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-75	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CM in response to ANSam (ANSam timeout).	• The terminal could not detect ANSam. • Check the line connection and condition. • Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-76	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a JM in response to a CM (CM timeout).	- The called terminal could not detect a CM due to noise, etc. - Check the line connection and condition. - Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-77	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CJ in response to JM (JM timeout).	- The calling terminal could not detect a JM due to noise, etc. - A network that has narrow bandwidth cannot pass JM to the other end. - Check the line connection and condition. - Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-79	The called terminal detected CI while waiting for a V.21 signal.	Check for line noise or other line problems. If this error occurs, the called terminal falls back to T.30 mode.
0-80	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 2 – line probing.	- The guard timer expired while starting these phases. Serious noise, narrow bandwidth, or low signal level can cause these errors. If these errors happen at the transmitting terminal: - Try making a call at a later time. - Try using V.17 or a slower modem using dedicated tx parameters. - Try increasing the tx level. - Try adjusting the tx cable equalizer setting. If these errors happen at the receiving terminal: - Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting. - Try increasing the tx level. - Try using V.17 or a slower modem if the same error is frequent when receiving from multiple senders.
0-81	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 3 – equalizer training.	
0-82	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	
0-83	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 control channel restart sequence.	
0-84	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	- The signal did not stop within 10 s. - Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-85	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 control channel restart.	- The signal did not stop within 10 s. - Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-86	The line was disconnected because the other terminal requested a data rate using MPh that was not available in the currently selected symbol rate.	- The other terminal was incompatible. - Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-87	The control channel started after an unsuccessful primary channel.	- The receiving terminal restarted the control channel because data reception in the primary channel was not successful. - This does not result in an error communication.
0-88	The line was disconnected because PPR was transmitted/received 9 (default) times within the same ECM frame.	- Try using a lower data rate at the start. - Try adjusting the cable equalizer setting.

ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
2-11	Only one V.21 connection flag was received	Replace the FCU.
2-12	Modem clock irregularity	Replace the FCU.
2-13	Modem initialization error	- Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - Update the modem ROM. - Replace the FCU.
2-23	JBIG compression or reconstruction error	- Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - Replace the EXFUNC board if the error is frequent.
2-24	JBIG ASIC error	- Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - Replace the EXFUNC board if the error is frequent.
2-25	JBIG data reconstruction error (BIH error)	- JBIG data error - Check the sender's JBIG function. - Update the MBU ROM.
2-26	JBIG data reconstruction error (Float marker error)	
2-27	JBIG data reconstruction error (End marker error)	
2-28	JBIG data reconstruction error (Timeout)	
2-29	JBIG trailing edge maker error	- FCU defective - Check the destination device.
2-50	The machine resets itself for a fatal FCU system error	If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-51	The machine resets itself because of a fatal communication error	If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-53	Snd msg() in the manual task is an error because the mailbox for the operation task is full.	The user did the same operation many times, and this gave too much load to the machine.
4-01	Line current was cut	- Check the line connector. - Check the connection between FCU and NCU. - Check for line problems. - Replace the FCU or the NCU.
4-10	Communication failed because of an ID Code mismatch (Closed Network) or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection against Wrong Connections)	- Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs programmed correctly, then resend. - The machine at the other end may be defective.
5-10	DCR timer expired	Replace the FCU.
5-20	Storage impossible because of a lack of memory	- Temporary memory shortage. - Test the SAF memory. - Replace the FCU or optional EXMEM board
5-21	Memory overflow	
5-23	Print data error when printing a substitute rx or confidential rx message	- Test the SAF memory. - Ask the other end to resend the message. - Replace the FCU or optional EXMEM board.
5-25	SAF file access error	Replace the FCU or EXMEM board.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
6-00	G3 ECM - T1 time out during reception of facsimile data	- Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer. - Replace the FCU or NCU.
6-01	G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was received	
6-02	G3 ECM - EOR was received	
6-04	G3 ECM - RTC not detected	- Check the line connection. - Check connections from the NCU to the FCU. - Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. - Replace the FCU or NCU.
6-05	G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not received within 18 s of CFR, but there was no line fail	- Check the line connection. - Check connections from the NCU to the FCU. - Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. - Replace the FCU or NCU. - Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer Cross reference - Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
6-06	G3 ECM - coding/decoding error	- Defective FCU. - The other terminal may be defective.
6-08	G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL	- The other end pressed Stop during communication. - The other terminal may be defective.
6-09	G3 ECM - ERR received	- Check for a noisy line. - Adjust the tx levels of the communicating machines. - See code 6-05.
6-10	G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps	- Check for line noise. - Adjust the tx level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated tx parameter for that address). - Check the line connection. - Defective remote terminal.
6-21	V.21 flag detected during high speed modem communication	The other terminal may be defective or incompatible.
6-22	The machine resets the sequence because of an abnormal handshake in the V.34 control channel	- Check for line noise. - If the same error occurs frequently, replace the FCU. - Defective remote terminal.
6-99	V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s	Replace the FCU.
13-17	SIP user name registration error	- Double registration of the SIP user name. - Capacity for user-name registration in the SIP server is not sufficient.
13-18	SIP server access error	- Incorrect initial setting for the SIP server. - Defective SIP server.

ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
14-00	SMTP Send Error	Error occurred during sending to the SMTP server. Occurs for any error other than 14-01 to 16. For example, the mail address of the system administrator is not registered.
14-01	SMTP Connection Failed	Failed to connect to the SMTP server (timeout) because the server could not be found. • The PC is not ready to transfer files. • SMTP server not functioning correctly. • The DNS IP address is not registered. • Network not operating correctly. • Destination folder selection not correct.
14-02	No Service by SMTP Service (421)	SMTP server operating incorrectly, or the destination for direct SMTP sending is not correct. • Contact the system administrator and check that the SMTP server has the correct settings and operates correctly. • Contact the system administrator for direct SMTP sending and check the sending destination.
14-03	Access to SMTP Server Denied (450)	Failed to access the SMTP server because the access is denied. • SMTP server operating incorrectly. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem with the SMTP server and to check that the SMTP server settings are correct. • Folder send destination is incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine that the SMTP server settings and path to the server are correct. • Device settings incorrect. Confirm that the user name and password settings are correct. • Direct SMTP destination incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem at the destination at that the settings at the destination are correct.
14-04	Access to SMTP Server Denied (550)	• SMTP server operating incorrectly • Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly
14-05	SMTP Server HDD Full (452)	Failed to access the SMTP server because the HDD on the server is full. • Insufficient free space on the HDD of the SMTP server. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the SMTP server HDD. • Insufficient free space on the HDD where the destination folder is located. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the HDD where the target folder is located. • Insufficient free space on the HDD at the target destination for SMTP direct sending. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the target HDD.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
14-06	User Not Found on SMTP Server (551)	The designated user does not exist. - The designated user does not exist on the SMTP server. - The designated address is not for use with direct SMTP sending.
14-07	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (4XX)	Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. - PC not operating correctly. - SMTP server operating incorrectly - Network not operating correctly. - Destination folder setting incorrect. - Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.
14-08	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (5XX)	Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. - SMTP server operating incorrectly - Destination folder setting incorrect. - Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly. - Software application error.
14-09	Authorization Failed for Sending to SMTP Server	- POP-Before-SMTP or SMTP authorization failed. - Incorrect setting for file transfer
14-10	Addresses Exceeded	Number of broadcast addresses exceeded the limit for the SMTP server.
14-11	Buffer Full	The send buffer is full so the transmission could not be completed. Buffer is full due to using Scan-to-Email while the buffer is being used send mail at the same time.
14-12	Data Size Too Large	Transmission was cancelled because the detected size of the file was too large.
14-13	Send Cancelled	Processing is interrupted because the user pressed Stop.
14-30	MCS File Creation Failed	Failed to create the MCS file because: - The number of files created with other applications on the Document Server has exceeded the limit. - HDD is full or not operating correctly. - Software error.
14-31	UFS File Creation Failed	UFS file could not be created: - Not enough space in UFS area to handle both Scan-to-Email and IFAX transmission. - HDD full or not operating correctly. - Software error.
14-32	Cancelled the Mail Due to Error Detected by NFAX	Error detected with NFAX and send was cancelled due to a software error.
14-33	No Mail Address For the Machine	Neither the mail address of the machine nor the mail address of the network administrator is registered.
14-34	Address designated in the domain for SMTP sending does not exist	Operational error in normal mail sending or direct SMTP sending. - Check the address selected in the address book for SMTP sending. - Check the domain selection.

ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
14-50	Mail Job Task Error	Due to an FCU mail job task error, the send was cancelled: • Address book was being edited during creation of the notification mail. • Software error.
14-51	UCS Destination Download Error	Not even one return notification can be downloaded: • The address book was being edited. • The number for the specified destination does not exist (it was deleted or edited after the job was created).
14-60	Send Cancel Failed	The cancel operation by the user failed to cancel the send operation.
14-61	Notification Mail Send Failed for All Destinations	All addresses for return notification mail failed.
15-01	POP3/IMAP4 Server Not Registered	At startup, the system detected that the IP address of the POP3/IMAP4 server has not been registered in the machine.
15-02	POP3/IMAP4 Mail Account Information Not Registered	The POP3/IMAP4 mail account has not been registered.
15-03	Mail Address Not Registered	The mail address has not been registered.
15-10	DCS Mail Receive Error	Error other than 15-11 to 15-18.
15-11	Connection Error	The DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server could not be found: • The IP address for DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server is not stored in the machine. • The DNS IP address is not registered. • Network not operating correctly.
15-12	Authorization Error	POP3/IMAP4 send authorization failed: • Incorrect IFAX user name or password. • Access was attempted by another device, such as the PC. • POP3/IMAP4 settings incorrect.
15-13	Receive Buffer Full	Occurs only during manual reception. Transmission cannot be received due to insufficient buffer space. The buffer is being used for mail send or Scan-to-Email.
15-14	Mail Header Format Error	The mail header is not standard format. For example, the Date line description is incorrect.
15-15	Mail Divide Error	The e-mail is not in standard format. There is no boundary between parts of the e-mail, including the header.
15-16	Mail Size Receive Error	The mail cannot be received because it is too large.
15-17	Receive Timeout	May occur during manual receiving only because the network is not operating correctly.
15-18	Incomplete Mail Received	Only one portion of the mail was received.
15-31	Final Destination for Transfer Request Reception Format Error	The format of the final destination for the transfer request was incorrect.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
15-39	Send/Delivery Destination Error	The transmission cannot be delivered to the final destination: • Destination file format is incorrect. • Could not create the destination for the file transmission.
15-41	SMTP Receive Error	Reception rejected because the transaction exceeded the limit for the "Auth. E-mail RX" setting.
15-42	Off Ramp Gateway Error	The delivery destination address was specified with Off Ramp Gateway OFF.
15-43	Address Format Error	Format error in the address of the Off Ramp Gateway.
15-44	Addresses Over	The number of addresses for the Off Ramp Gateway exceeded the limit of 30.
15-61	Attachment File Format Error	The attached file is not TIFF format.
15-62	TIFF File Compatibility Error	Could not receive transmission due to: Resolution error • Image of resolution greater than 200 dpi without extended memory. • Resolution is not supported. • Page size error • The page size was larger than A3. • Compression error • File was compressed with other than MH, MR, or MMR.
15-63	TIFF Parameter Error	The TIFF file sent as the attachment could not be received because the TIFF header is incorrect: • The TIFF file attachment is a type not supported. • The TIFF file attachment is corrupted. • Software error.
15-64	TIFF Decompression Error	The file received as an attachment caused the TIFF decompression error: • The TIFF format of the attachment is corrupted. • Software error.
15-71	Not Binary Image Data	The file could not be received because the attachment was not binary image data.
15-73	MDN Status Error	Could not find the Disposition line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-74	MSDN Message ID Error	Could not find the Original Message ID line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-80	Mail Job Task Read Error	Could not receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).

ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
15-81	Repeated Destination Registration Error	Could not repeat receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).
15-91	Send Registration Error	Could not receive the file for transfer to the final destination: • The format of the final destination or the transfer destination is incorrect. • Destinations are full so the final and transfer destinations could not be created.
15-92	Memory Overflow	Transmission could not be received because memory overflowed during the transaction.
15-93	Memory Access Error	Transaction could not complete due to a malfunction of SAF memory.
15-94	Incorrect ID Code	The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer request, because the ID code in the incoming e-mail did not match the ID code registered in the machine.
15-95	Transfer Station Function	The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer because the transfer function was unavailable.
22-00	Original length exceeded the maximum scan length	Divide the original into more than one page. Check the resolution used for scanning. Lower the scan resolution if possible. Add optional page memory.
22-01	Memory overflow while receiving	Wait for the files in the queue to be sent. Delete unnecessary files from memory. Transfer the substitute reception files to an another fax machine, if the machine's printer is busy or out of order. Add an optional SAF memory card or hard disk.
22-02	Tx or rx job stalled due to line disconnection at the other end	The job started normally but did not finish normally; data may or may not have been received fully. Restart the machine.
22-04	The machine cannot store received data in the SAF	• Update the ROM • Replace the FCU.
22-05	No G3 parameter confirmation answer	• Defective FCU board or firmware.
23-00	Data read timeout during construction	Restart the machine. Replace the FCU
25-00	The machine software resets itself after a fatal transmission error occurred	• Update the ROM • Replace the FCU.
F0-xx	V.34 modem error	Replace the FCU.
F6-xx	SG3-V34 modem error	Update the SG3-V34 modem ROM. Replace the SG3-V34 board. • Check for line noise or other line problems. • Try communicating another V.8/V.34 fax.

2.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Use the following procedures to determine whether the machine or another part of the network is causing the problem.

Communication Route	Item	Action	Remarks
General LAN	1. Connection with the LAN	- Check that the LAN cable is connected to the machine. - Check that the LEDs on the hub are lit.	
	2. LAN activity	Check that other devices connected to the LAN can communicate through the LAN.	
Between IFAX and PC	1. Network settings on the PC	Check the network settings on the PC.	Is the IP address registered in the TCP/IP properties in the network setup correct? Check the IP address with the administrator of the network.
	2. Check that PC can connect with the machine	Use the "ping" command on the PC to contact the machine.	At the MS-DOS prompt, type ping then the IP address of the machine, then press Enter.
	3. LAN settings in the machine	- Check the LAN parameters - Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs.	- Use the "Network" function in the User Tools. - If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.
Between machine and e-mail server	1. LAN settings in the machine	- Check the LAN parameters - Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs.	- Use the "Network" function in the User Tools. - If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.

IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Communication Route	Item	Action	Remarks
Between machine and e-mail server	2. E-mail account on the server	• Make sure that the machine can log into the e-mail server. • Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine.	• Ask the administrator to check.
	3. E-mail server	• Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail.	• Ask the administrator to check. • Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.
Between e-mail server and internet	1. E-mail account on the Server	• Make sure that the PC can log into the e-mail server. • Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine.	• Ask the administrator to check.
	2. E-mail server	• Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail.	• Ask the administrator to check. • Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.
	3. Destination e-mail address	Make sure that the e-mail address is actually used. Check that the e-mail address contains no incorrect characters such as spaces.	

Communication Route	Item	Action	Remarks
Between e-mail server and internet	4. Router settings	Use the “ping” command to contact the router. Check that other devices connected to the router can sent data over the router.	Ask the administrator of the server to check.
Between e-mail server and internet	1. Error message by e-mail from the network of the destination.	- Check whether e-mail can be sent to another address on the same network, using the application e-mail software. - Check the error e-mail message.	Inform the administrator of the LAN.

2.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING

IP-Fax Transmission

Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Specified IP address/host name correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
3	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	IP address of local machine registered?	Register the IP address.
6	Remote terminal port number setting other than 1720?	Send by specifying the port number.
7	Specified port number correct?	Confirm the port number of the remote fax.
8	DNS server registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
10	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Check that the remote fax is switched on.
11	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.
12	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot send via VoIP Gateway

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	VoIP Gateway T.38 standard?	Contact the network administrator.
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	Is the IP address/host name of the specified Gateway correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
6	Number of the specified fax correct?	Check the remote fax number.
7	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
8	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
9	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
10	DNS registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
11	Remote fax a G3 fax?	Check that the remote fax is a G3 fax.
12	G3 fax is connected to VoIP gateway?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
13	Remote G3 fax turned on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.
14	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the network delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.

IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Cannot send by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Number of specified Alias fax correct?	Confirm the Alias of the remote fax. Error Code: 13-14
3	Firewall/NAT installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
6	Gatekeeper power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
7	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
8	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Check the settings. See User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0
10	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address of the local fax.
11	Alias number of local fax registered?	Register the Alias number of the local fax.
12	Remote fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator.
13	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
14	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Contact the network administrator.
15	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		Lower the modem transmission baud rate. IPFAX SW 05
16	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

IP-Fax Reception***Cannot receive by IP Address/Host name.***

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
4	Port number specified at remote sender fax (if required)?	Request the sender to specify the port number.
5	Specified port number correct (if required)?	Request the sender to check the port number.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator. Note: The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth. Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
8	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	IP address/host name of specified VoIP Gateway correct on sender's side?	Request the remote fax to check the IP address/host name.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
8	G3 fax connected?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
9	G3 fax power switched on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.

Cannot receive by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot the breach firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator. Note: The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
4	Power to Gatekeeper switched on?	Contact the network administrator. Note: The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
5	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct on the sender's side?	Request the sender to check the IP address/host name. Note: The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
6	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified on sender's side?	Contact the network administrator. Note: The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Request the sender to check the settings. User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0 Note: Only if the remote sender fax is a Ricoh fax.
8	Local fax IP address registered?	Register the IP address.
9	Local fax Alias number registered?	Register the Alias number.
10	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth. Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
11	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.
12	Local fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator. Note: The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.

2.4 FAX SC CODES

2.4.1 OVERVIEW

When the FCU detects a Fax SC Code condition, it resets itself automatically (default setting). This initializes the FCU without erasing files in the SAF memory or resetting the switches.

For details on Fax SC Codes 1201, refer to the following sections.

If bit 7 of System Switch 1F is changed to “1”, when the FCU detects a Fax SC Code condition, it displays the code on the display and stops working until the fax unit is initialized using one of the following methods:

Hold down the “7” and “9” keys for more than 10 s.

Turn off the main power switch and turn it back on.

2.4.2 SC1201

When the FCU detects an unrecoverable error in the SRAM, which requires a complete SRAM initialization, the fax unit displays this SC Code and stops. There is no way to recover from this error condition without a complete SRAM initialization (all the user and service programmed data will be erased).

The possible causes are:

- SRAM backup battery defect, or SW1 on the MBU is at the “OFF” position.
- The SRAM on the MBU has a physical defect.
- SD card connection was loose.

2.4.3 FAX SC CODE TABLE

SC Code	Description	Suggested Action	Sys Switch 1F bit 7 = 0	Sys Switch 1F bit 7 = 1
1001	FCU error	Initialize the fax unit.	Automatic reset	SC Code display
1201	Unrecoverable FCU - SRAM error	Refer to section 2.4.2.	“Service Call” display	
1299	Software error	Initialize the fax unit.	Automatic reset	
1305				
1310				
1311				
1312				
1401				
1405				

3. SERVICE TABLES

CAUTION

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED () lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

3.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

SP1-XXX (Bit Switches) Section 3.2 Bit Switches

1	Mode No.		Function
101	System Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Change the bit switches for system settings for the fax option  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
102	Ifax Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for internet fax settings for the fax option  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
103	Printer Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for printer settings for the fax option  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
104	Communication Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Change the bit switches for communication settings for the fax option  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
105	G3-1 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the standard G3 board  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
106	G3-2 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
107	G3-3 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board  Section 3.2 Bit Switches
108	G4 Internal Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Not used (Do not change the bit switches)

SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

109	G4 Parameter Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Not used (Do not change the bit switches)
111	IP fax Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for optional IP fax parameters ➡ Section 3.2 Bit Switches

SP2-XXX (RAM Data)

2	Mode No.		Function
101	RAM Read/Write		
	001		Change RAM data for the fax board directly. ➡ Section 3.5 Service RAM Addresses
102	Memory Dump		
	001	G3-1 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the fax board. ➡ Section 3.5 Service RAM Addresses
102	002	G3-2 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.
	003	G3-3 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.
	004	G4 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the SiG4 board.
103	G3-1 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the standard G3 board. ➡ Section 3.3 NCU Parameters
104	G3-2 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. ➡ Section 3.3 NCU Parameters
105	G3-3 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. ➡ Section 3.3 NCU Parameters

SP3-XXX (Tel Line Settings)

3	Mode No.		Function
101	Service Station		
	001	Fax Number	Enter the fax number of the service station.
	002	Select Line	Select the line type.
102	Serial Number		
	000		Enter the fax unit's serial number.
103	PSTN-1 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line type setting for the G3-1 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-1 line.

3	Mode No.		Function
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, turn this SP on.
104	PSTN-2 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line setting for the G3-2 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-2 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, change this SP to on.
	004	Transmission Disabled	If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-2 line.
105	PSTN-3 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line setting for the G3-3 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-3 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, change this SP to on.
	004	Transmission Disabled	If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-3 line.
106	ISDN Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Not used (Do not change the bit switches)
	002	PSTN Access Number	
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	
	004	Transmission Disabled	
107	IPFAX Port Settings		
	001	H323 Port	
	002	SIP Port	
	003	RAS Port	
	004	Gatekeeper port	
	005	T.38 Port	
	006	SIP Server Port	
	007	IPFAX Protocol Priority	Select "H323" or "SIP".
201	FAX SW		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	

SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

SP4-XXX (ROM Versions)

4	Mode No.		Function
101	001	FCU ROM Version	Displays the FCU ROM version.
102	001	Error Codes	Displays the latest 64 fax error codes.
103	001	G3-1 ROM Version	Displays the G3-1 modem version.
104	001	G3-2 ROM Version	Displays the G3-2 modem version.
105	001	G3-3 ROM Version	Displays the G3-3 modem version.
106	001	G4 ROM Version	Not used (Do not change the bit switches)
107	001	Charge ROM Version	Not used (Do not change the bit switches)

SP5-XXX (Initializing)

5	Mode No.		Function
101	Initialize SRAM		
	000		Initializes the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM, files in the SAF memory, and clock.
102	Erase All Files		
	000		Erases all files stored in the SAF memory.
103	Reset Bit Switches		
	000		Resets the bit switches and user parameters.
104	Factory setting		
	000		Resets the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM and files in the SAF memory.
105	Initialize All Bit Switches		
	000		Initializes all the current bit switch settings.
106	Initialize Security Bit Switches		
	000		Initializes only the security bit switches. If you select automatic output/display for the user parameter switches, the security settings are initialized.

SP6-XXX (Reports)

6	Mode No.		Function
101	System Parameter List		
	000		Touch the "ON" button to print the system parameter list.
102	Service Monitor Report		
	000		Touch the "ON" button to print the service monitor report.
103	G3 Protocol Dump List		
	001	G3 All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for all G3 lines.
	002	G3-1 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-1 line.
103	003	G3-1 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-1 line.
	004	G3-2 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-2 line.
	005	G3-2 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-2 line.
	006	G3-3 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-3 line.
	007	G3-3 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-3 line.
104	G4 Protocol Dump List		
	001	Dch + Bch 1	Not used (Do not change the bit switches)

SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

6	Mode No.		Function
	002	Dch	
	003	Bch 1 Link Layer	
	004	Dch Link Layer	
	005	Dch +Bch 2	
	006	Bch 2 Link Layer	
105	All Files print out		
	000		Prints out all the user files in the SAF memory, including confidential messages. NOTE: Do not use this function, unless the customer is having trouble printing confidential messages or recovering files stored using the memory lock feature.
106	Journal Print out		
	001	All Journals	The machine prints all the communication records on the report.
	002	Specified Date	The machine prints all communication records after the specified date.
107	Log List Print out		
	001	All log files	These log print out functions are for designer use only.
	002	Printer	
	003	SC/TRAP Stored	
	004	Decompression	
	005	Scanner	
	006	JOB/SAF	
	007	Reconstruction	
	008	JBIG	
	009	Fax Driver	
	010	G3CCU	
	011	Fax Job	
	012	CCU	
	013	Scanner Condition	
108	IP Protocol Dump List		
	001	All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the IP fax line.
	002	1 Communication	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the IP fax line.

SP7-XXX (Test Modes)

These are the test modes for PTT approval.

7	Function
101	G3-1 Modem Tests
102	G3-1 DTMF Tests
103	Ringer Test
104	G3-1 V34 (S2400baud)
105	G3-1 V34 (S2800baud)
106	G3-1 V34 (S3000baud)
107	G3-1 V34 (S3200baud)
108	G3-1 V34 (S3429baud)
109	Recorded Message Test
110	G3-2 Modem Tests
111	G3-2 DTMF Tests
112	G3-2 V34 (S2400baud)
113	G3-2 V34 (S2800baud)
114	G3-2 V34 (S3000baud)
115	G3-2 V34 (S3200baud)
116	G3-2 V34 (S3429baud)
117	G3-3 Modem Tests
118	G3-3 DTMF Tests
119	G3-3 V34 (S2400baud)
120	G3-3 V34 (S2800baud)
121	G3-3 V34 (S3000baud)
122	G3-3 V34 (S3200baud)
123	G3-3 V34 (S3429baud)
124	IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used
125	IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used
126	IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used
127	IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used
128	IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used
129	IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used
130	IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used
131	IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used
132	IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used
133	IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used
134	IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used
135	IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used
136	IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used
137	IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used

SP9-XXX (Design Switch Mode)

9	Mode No.	Function
702	Design Switch DFU	

3.2 BIT SWITCHES

WARNING

Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as “Not used”, as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

NOTE: Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

3.2.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES

System Switch 00		SP No. 1-101-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Dedicated transmission parameter programming 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Set this bit to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission parameters. Reset this bit to 0 after programming dedicated transmission parameters.
1	Not used	Do not change
2	Technical data printout on the Journal 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Instead of the personal name, the following data are listed on the Journal for each G3 communication. e.g. 0000 32V34 288/264 L0100 03 04 (1) (2)(3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (1): EQM value (Line quality data). A larger number means more errors. (2): Symbol rate (V.34 only) (3): Final modem type used (4): Starting data rate (for example, 288 means 28.8 kbps) (5): Final data rate (6): Rx level (refer to the note after this table for how to read the rx level) (7): Total number of error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception. (8): Total number of burst error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception. Note: EQM and rx level are fixed at “FFFF” in tx mode. The seventh and eighth numbers are fixed at “00” for transmission records and ECM reception records.
2	Rx level calculation Example: 0000 32 V34 288/264 L <u>01</u> <u>00</u> 03 04 The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after “L” indicates the rx level. The <u>high</u> byte is given first, followed by the <u>low</u> byte. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the rx level. In the above example, the decimal value of N (= 0100 [H]) is 256. So, the actual rx level is 256/-16 = -16 dB	
3	Not used	Do not change this setting.

System Switch 00		SP No. 1-101-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
4	Line error mark print 0: OFF, 1: ON (print)	When "1" is selected, a line error mark is printed on the printout if a line error occurs during reception.
5	G3/G4 communication parameter display 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters (see below). This is normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user. Be sure to reset this bit to 0 after testing.
6	Protocol dump list output after each communication 0: Off 1: On	This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset this bit to 0 after finishing testing. If system switch 09 bit 6 is at "1", the list is only printed if there was an error during the communication.
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.

G3 Communication Parameters

Modem rate	336: 33600 bps 168: 16800 bps 312: 31200 bps 144: 14400 bps 288: 28800 bps 120: 12000 bps 264: 26400 bps 96: 9600 bps 240: 24000 bps 72: 7200 bps 216: 21600 bps 48: 4800 bps 192: 19200 bps 24: 2400 bps
Resolution	S: Standard (8 x 3.85 dots/mm) D: Detail (8 x 7.7 dots/mm) F: Fine (8 x 15.4 dots/mm) SF: Superfine (16 x 15.4 dots/mm) 21: Standard (200 x 100 dpi) 22: Detail (200 x 200 dpi) 44: Superfine (400 x 400 dpi)
Compression mode	MMR: MMR compression MR: MR compression MH: MH compression JBO: JBIG compression (Optional mode) JBB: JBIG compression (Basic mode)
Communication mode	ECM: With ECM NML: With no ECM
Width and reduction	A4: A4 (8.3"), no reduction B4: B4 (10.1"), no reduction A3: A3 (11.7"), no reduction
I/O rate	0: 0 ms/line 10: 10 ms/line 25: 2.5 ms/line 20: 20 ms/line 5: 5 ms/line 40: 40 ms/line Note: "40" is displayed while receiving a fax message using AI short protocol.

System Switch 01 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

BIT SWITCHES

System Switch 02		SP No. 1-101-003
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change these settings.
2	Force after transmission stall 0: Off 1: On	With this setting on, the machine resets itself automatically if a transmission stalls and fails to complete the job.
3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4	File retention time 0: Depends on User Parameter 24 [18(H)] 1: No limit	1: A file that had a communication error will not be erased unless the communication is successful.
5	Not used	Do not change this setting.
6-7	Memory read/write by RDS Bit 7 6 Setting 0 0 Always disabled 0 1 User selectable 1 0 User selectable 1 1 Always enabled	(0,0): All RDS systems are always locked out. (0,1), (1,0): Normally, RDS systems are locked out, but the user can temporarily switch RDS on to allow RDS operations to take place. RDS will automatically be locked out again after a certain time, which is stored in System Switch 03. Note that if an RDS operation takes place, RDS will not switch off until this time limit has expired. (1,1): At any time, an RDS system can access the machine.

System Switch 03		SP No. 1-101-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Length of time that RDS is temporarily switched on when bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable"	00 - 99 hours (BCD). This setting is only valid if bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable". The default setting is 24 hours.

System Switch 04		SP No. 1-101-005
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-2	Not used	Do not change these settings.
3	Printing dedicated tx parameters on Quick/Speed Dial Lists 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Each Quick/Speed dial number on the list is printed with the dedicated tx parameters (10 bytes each). The first 10 bytes of data are the programmed dedicated tx parameters; 34 bytes of data are printed (the other 24 bytes have no use for service technicians).
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 05 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 06		SP No. 1-101-007
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Margin setting for Create Margin Transmission	71 to 99 (BCD) %. This setting determines the reduction ratio when the user uses the Create Margin Transmission feature. Default setting:1001 0011 (93%)

System Switch 07 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 08 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 09		SP No. 1-101-010
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Addition of image data from confidential transmissions on the transmission result report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If this feature is enabled, the top half of the first page of confidential messages will be printed on transmission result reports.
1	Inclusion of communications on the Journal when no image data was exchanged. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications that reached phase C (message tx/rx) of the T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. 1: Communications that reached phase A (call setup) of T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. This will include telephone calls.
2	Automatic error report printout 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Error reports will not be printed. 1: Error reports will be printed automatically after failed communications.
3	Printing of the error code on the error report 0: No 1: Yes	1: Error codes are printed on the error reports.
4	Not used	Do not change this setting.
5	Power failure report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: A power failure report will be automatically printed after the power is switched on if a fax message disappeared from the memory when the power was turned off last.
6	Conditions for printing the protocol dump list 0: Print for all communications 1: Print only when there is a communication error	This switch becomes effective only when system switch 00 bit 6 is set to 1. 1: Set this bit to 1 when you wish to print a protocol dump list only for communications with errors.
7	Priority given to various types of remote terminal ID when printing reports 0: RTI > CSI > Dial label > Tel. number 1: Dial label > Tel. number > RTI > CSI	This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses when listing remote terminal names on reports. Dial Label: The name stored, by the user, for the Quick/Speed Dial number.

BIT SWITCHES

System Switch 0A		SP No. 1-101-011
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Automatic port selection 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	When "1" is selected, a suitable port is automatically selected if the selected port is not used.
1-2	Not used	Do not change these settings.
3	Continuous polling reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This feature allows a series of stations to be polled in a continuous cycle. This will continue until the polling reception file is erased. The dialing interval is the same as memory transmission.
4	Dialing on the ten-key pad when the external telephone is off-hook 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Prevents dialing from the ten-key pad while the external telephone is off-hook. Use this setting when the external telephone is not by the machine, or if a wireless telephone is connected as an external telephone. 1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook.
5	On hook dial 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: On hook dial is disabled.
6-7	Not used	Do not change the factory settings

System Switch 0B - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0C - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0D - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 0E		SP No. 1-101-015
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Not used	Do not change the settings.
2	Enable/disable for direct sending selection 0: Direct sending off 1: Direct sending on	Direct sending cannot operate when the capture function is on during sending. Setting this switch to "1" enables direct sending without capture. Setting this switch to "0" masks the direct sending function on the operation panel so it cannot be selected.
3	Action when the external handset goes off-hook 0: Manual tx and rx operation 1: Memory tx and rx operation (the display remains the same)	0: Manual tx and rx are possible while the external handset is off-hook. However, memory tx is not possible. 1: The display stays in standby mode even when the external handset is used, so that other people can use the machine for memory tx operation. Note that manual tx and rx are not possible with this setting.
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 0F		SP No. 1-101-016
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Country/area code for functional settings (Hex)	This country/area code determines the factory settings of bit switches and RAM addresses. However, it has no effect on the NCU parameter settings and communication parameter RAM addresses. Cross reference NCU country code: SP No. 2-103-001 for G3-1 SP No. 2-104-001 for G3-2 SP No. 2-105-001 for G3-3
	00: France	
	11: USA	
	01: Germany	
	12: Asia	
	02: UK	
	13: Japan	
	03: Italy	
	14: Hong Kong	
	04: Austria	
	15: South Africa	
	05: Belgium	
	16: Australia	
	06: Denmark	
	17: New Zealand	
	07: Finland	
	18: Singapore	
	08: Ireland	
	19: Malaysia	
	09: Norway	
	1A: China	
	0A: Sweden	
	1B: Taiwan	
	0B: Switz.	
	1C: Korea	
	0C: Portugal	
	20: Turkey	
	0D: Holland	
	21: Greece	
	0E: Spain	
	22: Hungary	
	0F: Israel	
	23: Czech	
	10: ---	
	24: Poland	

System Switch 10		SP No. 1-101-017
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Threshold memory level for parallel memory transmission	Threshold = N x 128 KB + 256 KB N can be between 00 - FF(H) Default setting: 02(H) = 512 KB

System Switch 11		SP No. 1-101-018
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	TTI printing position 0: Superimposed on the page data 1: Printed before the data leading edge	Change this bit to 1 if the TTI overprints information that the customer considers to be important (G3 transmissions).
1	TSI (G3) printing position 0: Superimposed on the page data 1: Printed before the data leading edge	Change this bit to 1 if the TSI (G3) overprints information that the customer considers to be important.
2	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.
3	TTI used for broadcasting 0: The TTIs selected for each Quick/Speed dial are used 1: The same TTI is used for all destinations	1: The TTI (TTI_1 or TTI_2) which is selected for all destinations during broadcasting.
4-7	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.

BIT SWITCHES

System Switch 12		SP No. 1-101-019
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	TTI printing position in the main scan direction	TTI: 08 to 92 (BCD) mm Input even numbers only. This setting determines the print start position for the TTI from the left edge of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may overwrite the file number which is on the top right of the page. On an A4 page, if the TTI is moved over by more than 50 mm, it may overwrite the page number.

System Switch 13 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 14 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 15		SP No. 1-101-022
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change the settings.
1	Going into the Energy Saver mode automatically 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: The machine will restart from the Energy Saver mode quickly, because the +5V power supply is active even in the Energy Saver mode.
2-3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4-5	Interval for preventing the machine from entering Energy Saver mode if there is a pending transmission file. Bit 5 4 Setting 0 0 1 min 0 1 30 min 1 0 1 hour 1 1 24 hours	If there is a file waiting for transmission, the machine does not go to Energy Saver mode during the selected period. After transmitting the file, if there is no file waiting for transmission, the machine goes to the Energy Saver mode.
6-7	Not used	Do not change

System Switch 16		SP No. 1-101-023
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Parallel Broadcasting 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine sends messages simultaneously using all available ports during broadcasting.
1	Priority setting for the G3 line. 0: PSTN-1 > PSTN-2 or 3 1: PSTN-2 or 3 > PSTN-1	This function allows the user to select the default G3 line type. The optional SG3 unit(s) are required to use the PSTN-2 or 3 setting.
2-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 17 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 18 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 19		SP No. 1-101-026
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-5	Not used	Do not change the settings.
6	Extended scanner page memory after memory option is installed 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: After installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 4 MB from 2 MB. 1: If this bit is set to 1 after installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 12 MB. But the SAF memory decreases to 18 MB.
7	Special Original mode 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: If the customer frequently wishes to transmit a form or letterhead which has a colored or printed background, change this bit to "1". "Original 1" and "Original 2" can be selected in addition to the "Text", "Text/Photo" and "Photo" modes.

System Switch 1A		
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	LS RX memory capacity threshold setting 00-FF (0-1020 Kbyte: Hex)	Sets the value to x4KB. When the amount of available memory drops below this setting, RX documents are printed to conserve memory. Initial setting 0x80 (512 KB)

System Switch 1B - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 1C - Not used (do not change these settings)

BIT SWITCHES

System Switch 1D		SP No. 1-101-030
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	RTI/CSI/CPS code display 0: Enable 1: Disable	0: RTI, CSI, CPS codes are displayed on the top line of the LCD panel during communication. 1: Codes are switched off (no display)
1	Not used	Do not change this setting.
2	Destination telephone number display limitation 0: OFF, 1: ON	When "1" is selected, the destination telephone number display is limited and redial is disabled.
3-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 1E		SP No. 1-101-031
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Communication after the Journal data storage area has become full 0: Impossible 1: Possible	0: When this switch is on and the journal history becomes full, the next report prints. If the journal history is not deleted, the next transmission cannot be received. This prevents overwriting communication records before the machine can print them. 1: If the buffer memory of the communication records for the Journal is full, fax communications are still possible. But the machine will overwrite the oldest communication records. Note: This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the report (e.g., no paper).
1	Action when the SAF memory has become full during scanning 0: The current page is erased. 1: The entire file is erased.	0: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the successfully scanned pages are transmitted. 1: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the file is erased and no pages are transmitted. This bit switch is ignored for parallel memory transmission.
2	RTI/CSI display priority 0: RTI 1: CSI	This bit determines which identifier, RTI or CSI, is displayed on the LCD while the machine is communicating in G3 non-standard mode.
3	File No. printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: File numbers are not printed on any reports.
4	Action when authorized reception is enabled but authorized RTIs/CSIs are not yet programmed 0: All fax reception is disabled 1: Faxes can be received if the sender has an RTI or CSI	If authorized reception is enabled but the user has stored no acceptable sender RTIs or CSIs, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages. If the customer wishes to receive messages from any sender that includes an RTI or CSI, and to block messages from senders that do not include an RTI or CSI, change this bit to "1", then enable Authorized Reception. Otherwise, keep this bit at "0 (default setting)".
5-7	Not used	Do not change the settings

System Switch 1F		SP No. 1-101-032
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change the settings.
1	Report printout after an original jam during SAF storage or if the SAF memory fills up 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When an original jams, or the SAF memory overflows during scanning, a report will be printed. Change this bit to "1" if the customer does not want to have a report in these cases. Memory tx – Memory storage report Parallel memory tx – Transmission result report
2	Not used	Do not change the settings.
3	Received fax print start timing (G3 reception) 0: After receiving each page 1: After receiving all pages	0: The machine prints each page immediately after the machine receives it. 1: The machine prints the complete message after the machine receives all the pages in the memory.
4-6	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.
7	Action when a fax SC has occurred 0: Automatic reset 1: Fax unit stops	0: When the fax unit detects a fax SC code other than SC1201 and SC1207, the fax unit automatically resets itself. 1: When the fax unit detects any fax SC code, the fax unit stops. Cross Reference Fax SC codes - See "Troubleshooting"

3.2.2 I-Fax Switches

I-fax Switch 00		SP No. 1-102-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
	Original Width of TX Attachment File	This setting sets the maximum size of the original that the destination can receive. (Bits 3~7 are reserved for future use or not used.)
0	A4	0: Off (not selected), 1: On (selected) If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the larger size has priority. For example, if both Bit 2 and Bit 1 are set to "1" then the maximum size is "A3" (Bit 2). When mail is sent, there is no negotiation with the receiving machine at the destination, so the sending machine cannot make a selection for the receiving capabilities (original width setting) of the receiving machine. The original width selected with this switch is used as the RX machine's original width setting, and the original is reduced to this size before sending. The default is A4. <i>If the width selected with this switch is higher than the receiving machine can accept, the machine detects this and this causes an error.</i>
1	B4	
2	A3	
3-6	Reserved	
7	Not used	

I-fax Switch 01		SP No. 1-102-002
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
	Original Line Resolution of TX Attachment File	These settings set the maximum resolution of the original that the destination can receive.
0	200x100 Standard	0: Not selected 1: Selected If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the higher resolution has priority. For example, if both Bit 0 and Bit 2 are set to "1" then the resolution is set for "Bit 2 200 x 400."
1	200x200 Detail	
2	200x400 Fine	
3	300 x 300 Reserve	
4	400 x 400 Super Fine	
5	600 x 600 Reserve	
6	Reserve	
7	mm/inch	
	This setting selects mm/inch conversion for mail transmission. 0: Off (No conversion), 1: On (Conversion) When on (set to "1"), the machine converts millimeters to inches for sending mail. There is no switch for converting inches to millimeters. NOTE: Unlike G3 fax transmissions which can negotiate between sender and receiver to determine the setting, mail cannot negotiate between terminals; the mm/inch selection is determined by the sender fax. When this switch is Off (0): • Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. • Images scanned in mm are sent in mm. • Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. • Images received in mm are transmitted in mm. When this switch is On (1): • Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. • Images scanned in mm are converted to inches. • Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. • Images received in mm are converted to inches.	

BIT SWITCHES

I-fax Switch 02		SP No. 1-102-003
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	RX Text Mail Header Processing	
	This setting determines whether the header information is printed with text e-mails when they are received. 0: Prints only text mail. 1: Prints mail header information attached to text mail. - When a text mail is received with this switch On (1), the "From" address and "Subject" address are printed as header information. - When a mail with only binary data is received (a TIFF-F file, for example), this setting is ignored and no header is printed.	
1	Output from Attached Document at E-mail TX Error	
	This setting determines whether only the first page or all pages of an e-mail attachment are printed at the sending station when a transmission error occurs. This allows the customer to see which documents have not reached their intended destinations if sent to the wrong e-mail addresses, for example. 0: Prints 1st page only. 1: Prints all pages.	
2-3	Text String for Return Receipt	
	This setting determines the text string output for the Return Receipt that confirms the transmission was received normally at the destination. 00: "Dispatched" Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "dispatched" in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; <u>dispatched</u> The "dispatched" string is included in the Subject string. 01: "Displayed" Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "displayed" in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; <u>displayed</u> The "displayed" string is included in the Subject string. 10: Reserved 11: Reserved NOTE: A mail requesting a Return Receipt sent from an IFAX with this switch set to "00" (for "dispatched") received by Microsoft Outlook 2000 may cause an error. If any setting other than "displayed" (01) causes a problem, change the setting to "01" to enable normal sending of the Return Receipt.	
4	Media accept feature	
	This setting adds or does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail to confirm a reception. 0: Does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail 1: Adds the media accept feature to the answer mail. NOTE: Use this bit switch if a problem occurs when the machine receives an answer mail, which contains the media accept feature field.	
5-6	Not Used	

7	Image Resolution of RX Text Mail
	This setting determines the image resolution of the received mail. 0: 200 x 200 1: 400 x 400 NOTE: The “1” setting requires installation of the Function Upgrade Card in order to have enough SAF (Store and Forward) memory to receive images at 400 x 400 resolution.

I-fax Switch 03		SP No. 1-102-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Original Output at Transfer Station	
	This setting determines whether the original is output at the transfer station when it is received from the sender that initiated the transfer transmission. This feature is the same as for G3 transfer transmissions. 0: Received original not output at the transfer station. 1: Received original output. The original is printed after the transfer station has transferred it to the destinations, so its output confirms that the original has been transferred.	
1	Transfer Result Report	
	This setting determines when a Transfer Result Report is generated and returned to the transfer requestor. 0: Returns the report after each transfer. 1: Returns the report only if an error occurred during transfer.	
2	Destination Error Handling for Reception Transfer Request	
	This setting restricts transfer transmission based on whether the final destinations are correct or not. 0: The transfer station transmits to correct destinations only (addresses with no errors in them). 1: If any address has an error in it, the transfer station transfers no transmissions and returns a transfer transmission failure report to the requestor that initiated the transfer. There is no negotiation between the transfer initiator and the transfer station to determine whether the final destination addresses are correct or not. This setting determines whether or not the transfer station transfers the transmissions if there is a mistake in even one of the final destination addresses.	
3	Polling ID Check for Reception of Transfer Request	
	This setting determines whether the polling IDs of incoming transmissions are checked to ensure that the polling IDs match. 0: Receives and transfers only messages that have matching polling IDs. 1: Receives and transfers all messages, even if the polling IDs do not match.	
4-7	Not Used	

BIT SWITCHES

I-fax Switch 04		SP No. 1-102-005
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Subject for Delivery TX/Memory Transfer This setting determines whether the RTI/CSI registered on this machine or the RTI/CSI of the originator is used in the subject lines of transferred documents. 0: Puts the RTI/CSI of the originator in the Subject line. If this is used, either the RTI or CSI is used. Only one of these can be received for use in the subject line. 1: Puts the RTI/CSI registered on this machine in the Subject line. When this switch is used to transfer and deliver mail to a PC, the information in the Subject line that indicates where the transmission originated can be used to determine automatically the destination folder for each e-mail.	
1	Subject corresponding to mail post database 0: Standard subject 1: Mail post database subject The standard subject is replaced by the mail post database subject in the following three cases: 1) When the service technician sets the service (software) switch. 2) When memory sending or delivery specified by F code is applied by the SMTP server 3) With relay broadcasting (1st stage without the Schmidt 4 function). Note: This switch does not apply for condition 3) when the RX system is set up for memory sending, delivery by F-code, sending with SMTP RX and when operators are using FOL (to prevent problems when receiving transmissions).	
2-7	Not Used	

I-fax Switch 05		SP No. 1-102-006
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Mail Addresses of SMTP Broadcast Recipients Determines whether the e-mail addresses of the destinations that receive transmissions broadcasted using SMTP protocol are recorded in the Journal. For example: "1st destination + Total number of destinations: 9" in the Journal indicates a broadcast to 9 destinations. 0: Not recorded 1: Recorded	
1-7	Not Used	

I-fax Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-007
I-fax Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-008

I-fax Switch 08		SP No. 1-102-009
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Memory Threshold for POP Mail Reception	
	This setting determines the amount of SAF (Store and Forward) memory. (SAF stores fax messages to send later for transmission to more than one location, and also holds incoming messages if they cannot be printed.) When the amount of SAF memory available falls below this setting, mail can no longer be received; received mail is then stored on the mail server. 00-FF (0 to 1024 KB: HEX) NOTE: The hexadecimal number you enter is multiplied by 4 KB to determine the amount of memory.	

I-fax Switch 09		SP No. 1-102-010
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4-7	Restrict TX Retries	This setting determines the number of retries when connection and transmission fails due to errors. 01-F (1-15 Hex)

I-fax Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-011
I-fax Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-012
I-fax Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-013
I-fax Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-014
I-fax Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)	SP No. 1-102-015

I-fax Switch 0F		SP No. 1-102-016
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Delivery Method for SMTP RX Files	
	This setting determines whether files received with SMTP protocol are delivered or output immediately. 0: Off. Files received via SMTP are output immediately without delivery. 1: On. Files received via SMTP are delivered immediately to their destinations.	
1-7	Not used	

3.2.3 Printer Switches

Printer Switch 00		SP No. 1-103-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Select page separation marks 0: Off 1: On	0: If a 2 page RX transmission is split, [*] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. 1: If a 2 page RX transmission is split into two pages, for example, [*] [2] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. Note: This helps the user to identify pages that have been split because the size of the paper is smaller than the size of the document received. (When A5 is used to print an A4 size document, for example.)
1	Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the printer paper 0: Off 1: On	1: Default. 10 mm of the trailing edge of the previous page are repeated at the top of the next page. 0: The next page continues from where the previous page stopped without any repeated text.
2	Prints the date and time on received fax messages 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This switch is only effective when user parameter 02 - bit 2 (printing the received date and time on received fax messages) is enabled. 1: The machine prints the received and printed date and time at the bottom of each received page.
3-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 01		SP No. 1-103-002															
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS															
0-2	Not used	Do not change the settings.															
3-4	Maximum print width used in the setup protocol <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit 4</th> <th>3</th> <th>Setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Not used</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>A3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>B4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>A4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit 4	3	Setting	0	0	Not used	0	1	A3	1	0	B4	1	1	A4	These bits are only effective when bit 7 of printer switch 01 is "1".
Bit 4	3	Setting															
0	0	Not used															
0	1	A3															
1	0	B4															
1	1	A4															
5-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.															
7	Received message width restriction in the protocol signal to the sender 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the print width depending on the paper size available from the paper feed stations. Refer to the table on the next page for how the machine chooses the paper width used in the setup protocol (NSF/DIS). 1: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the fixed paper width which is specified by bits 3 and 4 above.															

Relationship between available paper sizes and printer width used in the setup protocol

Available Paper Size	Printer width used in the Protocol (NSF/DIS)
A4 or 8.5" x 11"	297 mm width
B5	256 mm width
A5 or 8.5" x 5.5"	216 mm width
No paper available (Paper end)	216 mm width

Printer Switch 02		SP No. 1-103-003
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	1st paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: The paper feed station can be used to print fax messages and reports. 1: The specified paper feed station will not be used for printing fax messages and reports. Note: Do not disable usage for a paper feed station which has been specified by User Parameter Switch 0F (15), or which is used for the Specified Cassette Selection feature.
1	2nd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
2	3rd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
3	4th paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
4	LCT usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
5-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

BIT SWITCHES

Printer Switch 03		SP No. 1-103-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Length reduction of received data 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction. (Page separation threshold: Printer Switch 03, bits 4 to 7) 1: Incoming page length is reduced when printing. (Maximum reducible length: Printer Switches 04, bits 0 to 4)
1-3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4 to 7	Page separation setting when sub scan compression is forbidden 00-0F (0-15 mm: Hex) Default: 6 mm	Page separation threshold (with reduction disabled with switch 03-0 above). For example, if this setting is set to "10", and A4 is the selected paper size: - If the received document is 10 mm or less longer than A4, then the 10 mm are cut and only 1 page prints. - If the received document is 10 mm longer than A4, then the document is split into 2 pages.

Printer Switch 04		SP No. 1-103-005																														
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS																														
0 to 4	Maximum reducible length when length reduction is enabled with switch 03-0 above. <Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + (N x 5mm) “N” is the decimal value of the binary setting of bits 0 to 4. <table><tr><td>Bit 4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Setting</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0 mm</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>20 mm (default setting)</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>155 mm</td></tr></table> For A5 sideways and B5 sideways paper <Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + 0.75 x (N x 5mm)	Bit 4	3	2	1	0	Setting	0	0	0	0	0	0 mm	0	0	0	0	1	5 mm	0	0	1	0	0	20 mm (default setting)	1	1	1	1	1	155 mm	
Bit 4	3	2	1	0	Setting																											
0	0	0	0	0	0 mm																											
0	0	0	0	1	5 mm																											
0	0	1	0	0	20 mm (default setting)																											
1	1	1	1	1	155 mm																											
5 to 6	Length of the duplicated image on the next page, when page separation has taken place. $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 4 \text{ mm} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 10 \text{ mm} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = 15 \text{ mm} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \text{Not used}$																															
7	Not used.	Do not change the setting.																														

Printer Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 06		SP No. 1-103-007
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Printing while a paper cassette is pulled out, when the Just Size Printing feature is enabled. 0: Printing will not start 1: Printing will start if another cassette has a suitable size of paper, based on the paper size selection priority tables.	Cross reference Just size printing on/off – User switch 05, bit 5
1-7	Not used.	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 07		SP No. 1-103-008
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Reduction for Journal printing 0: Off 1: On	1: The Journal is reduced to 91% to ensure that there is enough space in the left margin for punch holes or staples.
2-3	Not used.	Do not change the settings.
4	List of destinations in the Communication Failure Report for broadcasting 0: All destinations 1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred	1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred are printed on the Communication Failure Report.
5-7	Not used.	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)

BIT SWITCHES

Printer Switch 0E			SP No. 1-103-015
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Paper size selection priority 0: Width 1: Length	0: A paper size that has the same width as the received data is selected first. 1: A paper size which has enough length to print all the received lines without reduction is selected first.	
1	Paper size selected for printing A4 width fax data 0: 8.5" x 11" size 1: A4 size	This switch determines which paper size is selected for printing A4 width fax data, when the machine has both A4 and 8.5" x 11" size paper.	
2	Page separation 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: If all paper sizes in the machine require page separation to print a received fax message, the machine does not print the message (Substitute Reception is used). After a larger size of paper is set in a cassette, the machine automatically prints the fax message.	
3 to 4	Printing the sample image on reports Bit 4 Bit 3 Setting 0 0 The upper half only 0 1 50% reduction in sub-scan only 1 0 Same size 1 1 Not used	"Same size" means the sample image is printed at 100%, even if page separation occurs. User Parameter Switch 19 (13H) bit 4 must be set to "0" to enable this switch. Refer to Detailed Section Descriptions for more on this feature.	
5-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
7	Equalizing the reduction ratio among separated pages (Page Separation) 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When page separation has taken place, all the pages are reduced with the same reduction ratio. 1: Only the last page is reduced to fit the selected paper size when page separation has taken place. Other pages are printed without reduction.	

Printer Switch 0F			SP No. 1-103-016
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 to 1	Smoothing feature Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting 0 0 Disabled 0 1 Disabled 1 0 Enabled 1 1 Not used	(0, 0) (0, 1): Disable smoothing if the machine receives halftone images from other manufacturers fax machines frequently.	
2	Duplex printing 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine always prints received fax messages in duplex printing mode:	
3	Binding direction for Duplex printing 0: Left binding 1: Top binding	0: Sets the binding for the left edge of the stack. 1: Sets the binding for the top of the stack.	
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

3.2.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES

Communication Switch 00			SP No. 1-104-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 to 1	Compression modes available in receive mode Bit 1 0 Modes 0 0 MH only 0 1 MH/MR 1 0 MH/MR/MMR 1 1 MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.	
2 to 3	Compression modes available in transmit mode Bit 3 2 Modes 0 0 MH only 0 1 MH/MR 1 0 MH/MR/MMR 1 1 MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.	
4	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
5	JBIG compression method: Reception 0: Only basic supported 1: Basic and optional both supported	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.	
6	JBIG compression method: Transmission 0: Basic mode priority 1: Optional mode priority	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.	
7	Closed network (reception) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Reception will not go ahead if the polling ID code of the remote terminal does not match the polling ID code of the local terminal. This function is only available in NSF/NSS mode.	

BIT SWITCHES

Communication Switch 01				SP No. 1-104-002
No	FUNCTION			COMMENTS
0	ECM 0: Off 1: On			If this bit is set to 0, ECM is switched off for all communications. In addition, V.8 protocol and JBIG compression are switched off automatically.
1	Not used			Do not change the setting.
2 to 3	Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting	(0,1) - The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the last 8 digits of the received CSI do not match the last 8 digits of the dialed telephone number. This does not work when manually dialed. (1,0) - The same as above, except that only the last 4 digits are compared. (1,1) - The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the other end does not identify itself with an RTI or CSI. (0,0) - Nothing is checked; transmission will always go ahead. Note: This function does not work when dialing is done from the external telephone.
	0	0	None	
	0	1	8 digit CSI	
	1	0	4 digit CSI	
	1	1	CSI/RTI	
4-5	Not used			Do not change the setting.
6 to 7	Bit 7	6	Setting	The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).
	0	0	No limit	
	0	1	B4 (364 mm)	
	1	0	A4 (297 mm)	
	1	1	Not used	

Communication Switch 02			SP No. 1-104-003	
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	G3 Burst error threshold 0: Low 1: High	If there are more consecutive error lines in the received page than the threshold, the machine will send a negative response. The Low and High threshold values depend on the sub-scan resolution, and are as follows.		
		100 dpi	6(L) → 12(H)	
		200 dpi	12(L) → 24(H)	
		300 dpi	18(L) → 36(H)	
		400 dpi	24(L) → 48(H)	
1	Acceptable total error line ratio 0: 5% 1: 10%	If the error line ratio for a page exceeds the acceptable ratio, RTN will be sent to the other end.		
2	Treatment of pages received with errors during G3 reception 0: Deleted from memory without printing 1: Printed	0: Pages received with errors are not printed.		

Communication Switch 02		SP No. 1-104-003
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
3	Hang-up decision when a negative code (RTN or PIN) is received during G3 immediate transmission 0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up	0: The next page will be sent even if RTN or PIN is received. 1: The machine will send DCN and hang up if it receives RTN or PIN. This bit is ignored for memory transmissions or if ECM is being used.
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 03		SP No. 1-104-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Maximum number of page retransmissions in a G3 memory transmission	00 - FF (Hex) times. This setting is not used if ECM is switched on. Default setting - 03(H)

Communication Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)	
Communication Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)	
Communication Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)	
Communication Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)	
Communication Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)	
Communication Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)	

Communication Switch 0A		SP No. 1-104-011
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Point of resumption of memory transmission upon redialing 0: From the error page 1: From page 1	0: The transmission begins from the page where transmission failed the previous time. 1: Transmission begins from the first page, using normal memory transmission.
1-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

BIT SWITCHES

Communication Switch 0B		SP No. 1-104-012
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Use of Economy Transmission during a Transfer operation to end receivers 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	These bits determine whether the machine uses the Economy Transmission feature when it is carrying out a Transfer operation as a Transfer Station.
1	Use of Economy Transmission during a Transfer operation to the Next Transfer Stations 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	
2	Use of Label Insertion for the End Receivers in a Transfer operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This bit determines whether the machine uses the Label Insertion feature when it is carrying out a Transfer operation as a Transfer Station.
3	Conditions required for Transfer Result Report transmission 0: Always transmitted 1: Only transmitted if there was an error	0: When acting as a Transfer Station, the machine will always send a Transfer Result Report back to the Requesting Station after completing the Transfer Request, even if there were no problems. 1: The machine will only send back a Transfer Result Report if there were errors during communication, meaning one or more of the End Receivers could not be contacted.
4	Printout of the message when acting as a Transfer Station 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	When the machine is acting as a Transfer Station, this bit determines whether the machine prints the fax message coming in from the Requesting Terminal.
5	Action when there is no fax number in the programmed Quick/Speed dials which meets the requesting terminal's own fax number 0: Transfer is disabled 1: Transfer is enabled	After the machine receives a transfer request, the machine compares the last N digits of the requesting terminal's own fax number with all the Quick/Speed dials programmed in the machine. (N is the number programmed in communication switch 0C.) 0: If there is no matching number programmed in the machine, the machine rejects the transfer request. 1: Even if there is no matching number programmed in the machine, the machine accepts the transfer request. The result report will be printed at the transfer terminal, but will not be sent back to the requesting terminal.
6-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 0C		SP No. 1-104-013
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 4	Number of digits compared to find the requester's fax number from the programmed Quick/Speed Dials when acting as a Transfer Station	00 – 1F (0 to 31 digits) After the machine receives a transfer request, the machine compares the own telephone number sent from the Requesting Terminal with all Quick/Speed Dials programmed in the machine, starting from Quick Dial 01 to the end of the Speed Dials. This number determines how many digits from the end of the telephone numbers the machine compares. If it is set to 00, the machine will send the report to the first Quick/Speed Dial that the machine compared. If Quick Dial 01 is programmed, the machine will send the report to Quick 01. If Quick Dial 01 through 04 are not programmed and Quick Dial 05 is programmed, the machine will send the report to Quick 05. Default setting – 05(H) = 5 digits
5-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 0D		SP No. 1-104-014
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	The available memory threshold, below which ringing detection (and therefore reception into memory) is disabled	00 to FF (Hex), unit = 4 kbytes (e.g., 06(H) = 24 kbytes) One page is about 24 kbytes. The machine refers to this setting before each fax reception. If the amount of remaining memory is below this threshold, the machine cannot receive any fax messages. If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing signals and go into receive mode even if there is no memory available. This will result in communication failure.

Communication Switch 0E		SP No. 1-104-015
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Minimum interval between automatic dialing attempts	06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s (e.g., 06(H) = 12 s) This value is the minimum time that the machine waits before it dials the next destination.

Communication Switch 0F – Not used (do not change the settings.)

BIT SWITCHES

Communication Switch 10		SP No. 1-104-017
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FE (Hex) times

Communication Switch 11 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 12		SP No. 1-104-019
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FF (Hex) minutes

Communication Switch 13 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 14		SP No. 1-104-021															
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS															
0	Inch-to-mm conversion during transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: In immediate transmission, data scanned in inch format are transmitted without conversion. In memory transmission, data stored in the SAF memory in mm format are transmitted without conversion. Note: When storing the scanned data into SAF memory, the fax unit always converts the data into mm format. 1: The machine converts the scanned data or stored data in the SAF memory to the format which was specified in the set-up protocol (DIS/NSF) before transmission.															
1-5	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.															
6 to 7	Available unit of resolution in which fax messages are received <table> <tr> <th>Bit 7</th><th>Bit 6</th><th>Unit</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>0</td><td>mm</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>1</td><td>inch</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>0</td><td>mm and inch (default)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr> </table>	Bit 7	Bit 6	Unit	0	0	mm	0	1	inch	1	0	mm and inch (default)	1	1	Not used	For the best performance, do not change the factory settings. The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).
Bit 7	Bit 6	Unit															
0	0	mm															
0	1	inch															
1	0	mm and inch (default)															
1	1	Not used															

Communication Switch 15 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 16		SP No. 1-104-023
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change the settings.
1	Optional G3 unit (G3-2) 0: Not installed 1: Installed	Change this bit to 1 when installing the first optional G3 unit.
2	Not used	
3	Select PSTN connection 0: Off 1: On	This switch enables the G3-2. 0: Off, no connection 1: Recognizes and enables G3-2. This switch can be used only after G3-2 has been installed.
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 17		SP No. 1-104-024
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	SEP reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Polling transmission to another maker's machine using the SEP (Selective Polling) signal is disabled.
1	SUB reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Confidential reception to another maker's machine using the SUB (Sub-address) signal is disabled.
2	PWD reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Disables features that require PWD (Password) signal reception.
3-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Action when there is no box with an F-code that matches the received SUB code 0: Disconnect the line 1: Receive the message (using normal reception mode)	Change this setting when the customer requires.

Communication Switch 18 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)

BIT SWITCHES

Communication Switch 1B		SP No. 1-104-028
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 7	Extension access code (0 to 7) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	If the PABX does not support V.8/V.34 protocol procedure, set this bit to "1" to disable V.8. Example: If "0" is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects "0" as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (Alternatively, if "3" is the PSTN access code, set bit 3 to 1.)

Communication Switch 1C		SP No. 1-104-029
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 1	Extension access code (8 and 9) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	Refer to communication switch 1B. Example: If "8" is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects "8" as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (If "9" is the PSTN access code, use bit 1.)
2-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings)

3.2.5 G3 SWITCHES

G3 Switch 00			SP No. 1-105-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx) Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting 0 0 Disabled 0 1 Up to Phase B 1 0 All the time 1 1 Not used	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.	
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.	
3-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

G3 Switch 01			SP No. 1-105-002
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
1	Select V.8 protocol for manual RX function 0: No 1: Yes	This switch switches the V.8 protocol for manual receiving off and on.	
2-3	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).	
5	Not used	Do not change the setting.	
6	Forbid CED/AMsam output 0: Off 1: On (Forbid output)	Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.	
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.	

G3 Switch 02			SP No. 1-105-003
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)	
1-4	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
5	Use of modem rate history for transmission using Quick/Speed Dials 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications using Quick/Speed Dials always start from the highest modem rate. 1: The machine refers to the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication.	
6	Not Used	Do not change the settings.	

BIT SWITCHES

G3 Switch 02		SP No. 1-105-003
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

G3 Switch 03		SP No. 1-105-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	Not Used	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible. Note: Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	Keep this bit at "0" in most cases.
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{N_{\text{Transmit}} \leq N_{\text{Resend}}}$ NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change 1: Fallback	1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	Not Used	Do not change the settings
7	Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing 0: Off 1: On	This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting 0: No detection → Outside Japan 1: Detection → Inside Japan only

G3 Switch 04		SP No. 1-105-005
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 05		SP No. 1-105-006
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 3	Initial Tx modem rate Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps) 0 0 0 1 2.4 k 0 0 1 0 4.8 k 0 0 1 1 7.2 k 0 1 0 0 9.6 k 0 1 0 1 12.0 k 0 1 1 0 14.4 k 0 1 1 1 16.8 k 1 0 0 0 19.2 k 1 0 0 1 21.6 k 1 0 1 0 24.0 k 1 0 1 1 26.4 k 1 1 0 0 28.8 k 1 1 0 1 31.2 k 1 1 1 0 33.6 k Other settings - Not used	These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
4 to 5	Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps. Bit 5 Bit 4 Setting 0 0 V.29 0 1 V.17 1 0 V.34 1 1 Not used	These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.
6-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

BIT SWITCHES

G3 Switch 06		SP No. 1-105-007
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 3	Initial Rx modem rate Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps) 0 0 0 1 2.4 k 0 0 1 0 4.8 k 0 0 1 1 7.2 k 0 1 0 0 9.6 k 0 1 0 1 12.0 k 0 1 1 0 14.4 k 0 1 1 1 16.8 k 1 0 0 0 19.2 k 1 0 0 1 21.6 k 1 0 1 0 24.0 k 1 0 1 1 26.4 k 1 1 0 0 28.8 k 1 1 0 1 31.2 k 1 1 1 0 33.6 k Other settings - Not used	These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
4 to 7	Modem types available for reception Bit 7 6 5 4 Setting 0 0 0 1 V.27ter 0 0 1 0 V.27ter, V.29 0 0 1 1 V.27ter, V.29 V.33 0 1 0 0 V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33 0 1 0 1 V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33, V.34 Other settings - Not used	The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode. If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2

G3 Switch 07		SP No. 1-105-008
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting 0 0 None 0 1 Low 1 0 Medium 1 1 High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. • Communication error • Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note: This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.

G3 Switch 07			SP No. 1-105-008
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
2 to 3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) Bit 3 Bit 2 Setting 0 0 None 0 1 Low 1 0 Medium 1 1 High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. • Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. • Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note: This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.	
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at "1".	
5-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

G3 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 0A			SP No. 1-105-011
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1 Bit 0 Value (ms) 0 0 200 0 1 400 1 0 800 1 1 Not used	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.	
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode	
3	Not used	Do not change the settings	
4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.	
5	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

BIT SWITCHES

G3 Switch 0A		SP No. 1-105-011
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20. ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.
7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 0B Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0C Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0D Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0E		SP No 1-105-015
0-7	Set CNG send time interval Some machines on the receiving side may not be able to automatically switch the 3-second CNG interval.	
	High order bit	3000-2250ms: 3000-50xNms 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ FF (2250 ms)
	Low order bit	00-0E(3000-3700ms: 3000+50xNms 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ 0F (3700 ms)

G3 Switch 0F		SP No. 1-105-016
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Alarm when an error occurred in Phase C or later 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm after each error communication, change this bit to “1”.
1	Alarm when the handset is off-hook at the end of communication 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm if the handset is off-hook at the end of fax communication, change this bit to “1”.
2-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

3.2.6 G3-2/3 SWITCHES

These switches require an optional G3 interface unit.

G3-3 switches are the same as for G3-2 switches.

G3-2 Switch 00			SP No. 1-106-001
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0-1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx)	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication.	
	Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting	(0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol.	
	0 0 Disabled	(1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.	
	0 1 Up to Phase B		
	1 0 All the time		
	1 1 Not used		
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.	
3-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

G3-2 Switch 01			SP No. 1-106-002
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0-3	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).	
5	Not used	Do not change the setting.	
6	Forbid CED/AMsam output 0: Off 1: On (Forbid output)	Do not change this setting, unless the communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.	
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.	

BIT SWITCHES

G3-2 Switch 02		SP No. 1-106-003
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)
1-4	Not used	Do not change the settings.
5	Use of modem rate history for transmission using Quick/Speed Dials 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications using Quick/Speed Dials always start from the highest modem rate. 1: The machine refers to the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication.
6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

G3-2 Switch 03		SP No. 1-106-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	Not used	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible. Note: Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	Keep this bit at "0" in most cases.

G3-2 Switch 03		SP No. 1-106-004
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{N_{\text{Transmit}}} \leq N_{\text{Resend}}$ N_{Transmit}- Number of transmitted frames N_{Resend}- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change 1: Fallback	1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing 0: Off 1: On	This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting 0: No detection → Outside Japan 1: Detection → Inside Japan only

G3-2 Switch 04		SP No. 1-106-005
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

BIT SWITCHES

G3-2 Switch 05		SP No. 1-106-006
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 3	Initial Tx modem rate Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps) 0 0 0 1 2.4 k 0 0 1 0 4.8 k 0 0 1 1 7.2 k 0 1 0 0 9.6 k 0 1 0 1 12.0 k 0 1 1 0 14.4 k 0 1 1 1 16.8 k 1 0 0 0 19.2 k 1 0 0 1 21.6 k 1 0 1 0 24.0 k 1 0 1 1 26.4 k 1 1 0 0 28.8 k 1 1 0 1 31.2 k 1 1 1 0 33.6 k Other settings - Not used	These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - SG3 switch 03, bit2
4 to 5	Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps. Bit 5 Bit 4 Setting 0 0 V.29 0 1 V.17 1 0 V.34 1 1 Not used	These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.
6-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 06		SP No. 1-106-007
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 3	Initial Rx modem rate Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps) 0 0 0 1 2.4 k 0 0 1 0 4.8 k 0 0 1 1 7.2 k 0 1 0 0 9.6 k 0 1 0 1 12.0 k 0 1 1 0 14.4 k 0 1 1 1 16.8 k 1 0 0 0 19.2 k 1 0 0 1 21.6 k 1 0 1 0 24.0 k 1 0 1 1 26.4 k 1 1 0 0 28.8 k 1 1 0 1 31.2 k 1 1 1 0 33.6 k Other settings - Not used	These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - SG3 switch 03, bit2

G3-2 Switch 06					SP No. 1-106-007	
No	FUNCTION				COMMENTS	
4 to 7	Modem types available for reception				The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.	
	Bit 7	6	5	4		Setting
	0	0	0	1	V.27ter	If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.
	0	0	1	0	V.27ter, V.29	
	0	0	1	1	V.27ter, V.29 V.33	
	0	1	0	0	V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33	
	0	1	0	1	V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V33, V.34	
Other settings - Not used				Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - SG3 switch 03, bit2		

G3-2 Switch 07		SP No. 1-106-008															
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS															
0 to 1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) <table> <tr> <th>Bit 1</th><th>Bit 0</th><th>Setting</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Low</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Medium</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1</td><td>High</td></tr> </table>	Bit 1	Bit 0	Setting	0	0	None	0	1	Low	1	0	Medium	1	1	High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. • Communication error • Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note: This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
Bit 1	Bit 0	Setting															
0	0	None															
0	1	Low															
1	0	Medium															
1	1	High															
2 to 3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) <table> <tr> <th>Bit 3</th><th>Bit 2</th><th>Setting</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Low</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Medium</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1</td><td>High</td></tr> </table>	Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting	0	0	None	0	1	Low	1	0	Medium	1	1	High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. • Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. • Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note: This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting															
0	0	None															
0	1	Low															
1	0	Medium															
1	1	High															
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at "1".															
5-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.															

BIT SWITCHES

G3-2 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3-2 Switch 0A			SP No. 1-106-011
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1 Bit 0 Value (ms) 0 0 200 0 1 400 1 0 800 1 1 Not used	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.	
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode	
3	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.	
5	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20. ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.	
7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

G3-2 Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 0F - Not used (do not change the settings)

3.2.7 G4 INTERNAL SWITCHES

The G4 internal switches (SW00 to 1F) are displayed but do not change these settings.

3.2.8 G4 PARAMETER SWITCHES

The G4 parameter switches (SW00 to 0F) are displayed but do not change these settings.

3.2.9 IP FAX SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 00		SP No. 1-111-001
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change this setting.
1	IP Fax Transport 0: TCP, 1: UDP	Selects TCP or UDP protocol for IP-Fax
2	IP Fax single port selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects single data port.
3	IP Fax double ports (single data port) selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects whether IP-Fax uses a double port.
4	IP Fax Gatekeeper 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Enables/disables the gatekeeper for IP-Fax.
5	IP Fax T30 bit signal reverse 0: LSB first, 1: MSB first	Reverses the T30 bit signal.
6	IP Fax max bit rate setting 0: Not affected, 1: Affected	When "0" is selected, the max bit rate does not affect the value of the DIS/DCS. When "1" is selected, the max bit rate affects the value of the DIS/DCS.
7	IP Fax received telephone number confirmation 0: No confirmation, 1: Confirmation	When "0" is selected, fax data is received without checking the telephone number. When "1" is selected, fax data is received only when confirming that the telephone number from the sender matches the registered telephone number in this machine. If this confirmation fails, the line is disconnected.

BIT SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 01				SP No. 1-111-002																										
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS																												
0-3	IP Fax delay level setting Selects the acceptable delay level. Level 0 is the highest quality Default is "0000" (level 0).	<table><tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Level 0</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Level 1</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Level 2</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Level 3</td></tr></table>				Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0		0	0	0	0	Level 0	0	0	0	1	Level 1	0	0	1	0	Level 2	0	0	1	1	Level 3
		Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0																									
		0	0	0	0	Level 0																								
		0	0	0	1	Level 1																								
		0	0	1	0	Level 2																								
		0	0	1	1	Level 3																								
4-7	IP Fax preamble wait time setting	Selects the preamble wait time. [00 to 0f] There are 16 values in this 4-bit binary switch combination. Waiting time: set value level x 100 ms Max: 0f (1500 ms) Min: 00 (No wait time) The default is "0000" (00H).																												

IP Fax Switch 02		SP No. 1-111-003
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	IP Fax bit signal reverse setting 0: Maker code setting 1: Internal bit switch setting	When "0" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the maker code. When "1" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the internal bit switch. NOTE: When communicating between IP Fax devices, LSB first is selected.)
1	IP Fax transmission speed setting 0: Modem speed 1: No limitation	Selects the transmit speed for IP Fax communication.
2	SIP transport setting 0: TCP 1: UDP	This bit switch sets the transport that has priority for receiving IP Fax data. This function is activated only when the sender has both TCP and UDP.
3-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 03		SP No. 1-111-004
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Effective field limitation for G3 standard function information 0: OFF, 1: 4byte (DIS)	Limits the effective field for standard G3 function information.
1	Switching between G3 standard and G3 non standard 0: Enable switching 1: G3 standard only	Enables/disables switching between G3 standard and G3 non-standard.
2	AI modem rate function 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Enables/disables the AI modem rate.
3	ECM frame size selection at transmitting 0: 256byte, 1: 64byte	Selects the ECM frame size for sending.
4	DIS detection times for echo prevention 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Sets the number of times for DIS to detect echoes.
5	CTC transmission selection 0: PPRx1 1: PPRx4	When "0" is selected, the transmission condition is decided by error frame numbers. When "1" is selected, the transmission condition is based on the ITU-T method.
6	Shift down setting at receiving negative code 0: OFF, 1: ON	Selects whether to shift down when negative codes are received.
7	Not used	Do not change this setting.

IP Fax Switch 04		SP No. 1-111-005
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	TCF error threshold	Sets the TCF error threshold level. [00 to 0f] The default is "1111" (0fH).
1		
2		
3		
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

BIT SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 05					SP No. 1-111-006
No.	FUNCTION				COMMENTS
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for transmission Sets the modem bit rate for transmission. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).				
	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	0	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps
	0	1	0	1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1	0	14.4 Kbps
	0	1	1	1	16.8 Kbps
	1	0	0	0	19.2 Kbps
	1	0	0	1	21.6 Kbps
	1	0	1	0	24.0 Kbps
	1	0	1	1	26.4 Kbps
	1	1	0	0	28.8 Kbps
	1	1	0	1	31.2 Kbps
	1	1	1	0	33.6 Kbps
4-5	Modem setting for transmission Sets the modem for transmission. The default is "00" (V29).				
	Bit 5	Bit 4			
	0	0	V29		
	0	1	V17		
	1	0	V34		
	1	1	Not used		
6-7	Not used				Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 06					SP No. 1-111-007
No.	FUNCTION				COMMENTS
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for reception Sets the modem bit rate for reception. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).				
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	
	0	0	0	1	V27ter
	0	0	1	0	V27ter, V29
	0	0	1	1	V27ter, V29, V33 (invalid)
	0	1	0	0	V27ter, V29, V17
4-7	Modem setting for reception Sets the modem type for reception. The default is "0100" (V27ter, V29, V17).				
	Bit 3	Bit 1	Bit 1		
	0	0	1		V27ter
	0	1	0		V27ter, V29
	0	1	1		Not used
	1	0	0		V27ter, V29, V17
	1	0	1		V27ter, V29, V17, V34

IP Fax Switch 07					SP No. 1-111-008
No.	FUNCTION				COMMENTS
0	TSI information 0: Not added, 1: Added				Adds or does not add TSI information to NSS(S).
1	DCN transmission setting at T1 timeout 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted				Transmits or does not transmit DCN at T1 timeout.
2	Not used				Do not change this setting.
3	Hang up setting at DIS reception disabled 0: No hang up 1: Hang up after transmitting DCN				Sets whether the machine disconnects after DIS reception.
4	Number of times for training 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times				Selects the number of times training is done at the same bit rate.
5	Space CSI transmission setting at no CSI registration 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted				When "0" is selected, frame data is enabled. When "1" is selected, the transmitted data is all spaces.
6-7	Not used				Do not change these settings.

BIT SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 08		SP No. 1-111-009	
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0-1	T1 timer adjustment Adjusts the T1 timer. The default is "00" (35 seconds).	Bit 1	Bit 0
		0	0
		0	1
		1	0
		1	1
2-3	T4 timer adjustment Adjust the T4 timer. The default is "00" (3 seconds).	Bit 3	Bit 2
		0	0
		0	1
		1	0
		1	1
4-5	T0 timer adjustment Bit 5 Bit 4 0 0 75 sec 0 1 120 sec 1 0 180 sec 1 1 240 sec Adjusts the fail safe timer. This timer sets the interval between "setup" data transmission and T.38 phase decision. If your destination return is late on the network or G3 fax return is late, adjust the longer interval timer. The default is "00" (75 seconds).	Bit 5	Bit 4
		0	0
		0	1
		1	0
		1	1
6-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.	

3.3 NCU PARAMETERS

The following tables give the RAM addresses and the parameter calculation units that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (SP2-102), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (SP2-103, 104 and 105); if SP2-103, 104 and 105 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.

NOTE: The following addresses describe settings for the standard NCU. Change the fourth digit from “5” to “6” (e.g. 680500 to 680600) for the settings for the first optional G3 interface unit and from “5” to “7” (e.g. 680700) for the settings for the second optional G3 interface unit.

NCU PARAMETERS

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks																																																																																															
680500	Country/Area code for NCU parameters																																																																																																	
	Use the Hex value to program the country/area code directly into this address, or use the decimal value to program it using SP2-103-001																																																																																																	
	<table><tr><th>Country/Area</th><th>Decimal</th><th>Hex</th><th></th><th></th></tr><tr><td>France</td><td>00</td><td>00</td><td>Hong Kong</td><td>20 14</td></tr><tr><td>Germany</td><td>01</td><td>01</td><td>South Africa</td><td>21 15</td></tr><tr><td>UK</td><td>02</td><td>02</td><td>Australia</td><td>22 16</td></tr><tr><td>Italy</td><td>03</td><td>03</td><td>New Zealand</td><td>23 17</td></tr><tr><td>Austria</td><td>04</td><td>04</td><td>Singapore</td><td>24 18</td></tr><tr><td>Belgium</td><td>05</td><td>05</td><td>Malaysia</td><td>25 19</td></tr><tr><td>Denmark</td><td>06</td><td>06</td><td>China</td><td>26 1A</td></tr><tr><td>Finland</td><td>07</td><td>07</td><td>Taiwan</td><td>27 1B</td></tr><tr><td>Ireland</td><td>08</td><td>08</td><td>Korea</td><td>28 1C</td></tr><tr><td>Norway</td><td>09</td><td>09</td><td>Greece</td><td>33 21</td></tr><tr><td>Sweden</td><td>10</td><td>0A</td><td>Turkey</td><td>32 20</td></tr><tr><td>Switzerland</td><td>11</td><td>0B</td><td>Greece</td><td>33 21</td></tr><tr><td>Portugal</td><td>12</td><td>0C</td><td>Hungary</td><td>34 22</td></tr><tr><td>Holland</td><td>13</td><td>0D</td><td>Czech</td><td>35 23</td></tr><tr><td>Spain</td><td>14</td><td>0E</td><td>Poland</td><td>36 24</td></tr><tr><td>Israel</td><td>15</td><td>0F</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>USA</td><td>17</td><td>11</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Asia</td><td>18</td><td>12</td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>	Country/Area	Decimal	Hex			France	00	00	Hong Kong	20 14	Germany	01	01	South Africa	21 15	UK	02	02	Australia	22 16	Italy	03	03	New Zealand	23 17	Austria	04	04	Singapore	24 18	Belgium	05	05	Malaysia	25 19	Denmark	06	06	China	26 1A	Finland	07	07	Taiwan	27 1B	Ireland	08	08	Korea	28 1C	Norway	09	09	Greece	33 21	Sweden	10	0A	Turkey	32 20	Switzerland	11	0B	Greece	33 21	Portugal	12	0C	Hungary	34 22	Holland	13	0D	Czech	35 23	Spain	14	0E	Poland	36 24	Israel	15	0F			USA	17	11			Asia	18	12				
Country/Area	Decimal	Hex																																																																																																
France	00	00	Hong Kong	20 14																																																																																														
Germany	01	01	South Africa	21 15																																																																																														
UK	02	02	Australia	22 16																																																																																														
Italy	03	03	New Zealand	23 17																																																																																														
Austria	04	04	Singapore	24 18																																																																																														
Belgium	05	05	Malaysia	25 19																																																																																														
Denmark	06	06	China	26 1A																																																																																														
Finland	07	07	Taiwan	27 1B																																																																																														
Ireland	08	08	Korea	28 1C																																																																																														
Norway	09	09	Greece	33 21																																																																																														
Sweden	10	0A	Turkey	32 20																																																																																														
Switzerland	11	0B	Greece	33 21																																																																																														
Portugal	12	0C	Hungary	34 22																																																																																														
Holland	13	0D	Czech	35 23																																																																																														
Spain	14	0E	Poland	36 24																																																																																														
Israel	15	0F																																																																																																
USA	17	11																																																																																																
Asia	18	12																																																																																																
680501	Line current detection time	20 ms	Line current detection is disabled. Line current is not detected if 680501 contains FF.																																																																																															
680502	Line current wait time																																																																																																	
680503	Line current drop detect time																																																																																																	
680504	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.																																																																																															
680505	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)																																																																																																	
680506	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.																																																																																															
680507	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)																																																																																																	
680508	PSTN dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680508 contains FF(H), the machine pauses for the pause time (address 68050D / 68050E). Italy: See Note 2.																																																																																															
680509	PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW)																																																																																																	
68050A	PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH)																																																																																																	
68050B	PSTN dial tone continuous tone time																																																																																																	
68050C	PSTN dial tone permissible drop time																																																																																																	
68050D	PSTN wait interval (LOW)																																																																																																	
68050E	PSTN wait interval (HIGH)																																																																																																	
68050F	PSTN ring-back tone detection time	20 ms	Detection is disabled if this contains FF.																																																																																															
680510	PSTN ring-back tone off detection time	20 ms																																																																																																

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680511	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	
680512	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
680513	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680514	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680515	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680516	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680517	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680518	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680519	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
68051A	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
68051B	PABX dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 68051B contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680520 / 680521).
68051C	PABX dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68051D	PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68051E	PABX dial tone continuous tone time		
68051F	PABX dial tone permissible drop time		
680520	PABX wait interval (LOW)		
680521	PABX wait interval (HIGH)		
680522	PABX ringback tone detection time	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680523	PABX ringback tone off detection time	20 ms	
680524	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680525	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
680526	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680527	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680528	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680529	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
68052A	Busy tone ON time: range 1	20 ms	
68052B	Busy tone OFF time: range 1		
68052C	Busy tone ON time: range 2		
68052D	Busy tone OFF time: range 2		
68052E	Busy tone ON time: range 3		

NCU PARAMETERS

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68052F	Busy tone OFF time: range 3	20 ms	
680530	Busy tone ON time: range 4		
680531	Busy tone OFF time: range 4		
680532	Busy tone continuous tone detection time		
680533	Busy tone signal state time tolerance for all ranges, and number of cycles required for detection (a setting of 4 cycles means that ON-OFF-ON or OFF-ON-OFF must be detected twice). Tolerance (±) Bit 1 0 0 0 75% Bits 2 and 3 must always 0 1 50% be kept at 0. 1 0 25% 1 1 12.5% Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles required for cadence detection		
680534	International dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680535	International dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680536	International dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680537	International dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680538	International dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680538 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (68053D / 68053E). Belgium: See Note 2.
680539	International dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68053A	International dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68053B	International dial tone continuous tone time		
68053C	International dial tone permissible drop time		
68053D	International dial wait interval (LOW)		
68053E	International dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68053F	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (HIGH)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680540	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (LOW)		
680541	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (HIGH)		If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680542	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (LOW)		
680543	Country dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680543 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680548 / 680549).
680544	Country dial tone reset time (LOW)		
680545	Country dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
680546	Country dial tone continuous tone time		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680547	Country dial tone permissible drop time	20 ms	
680548	Country dial wait interval (LOW)		
680549	Country dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68054A	Time between opening or closing the DO relay and opening the OHDI relay	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-012 (parameter 11).
68054B	Break time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-013 (parameter 12).
68054C	Make time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-014 (parameter 13).
68054D	Time between final OHDI relay closure and DO relay opening or closing	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-015 (parameter 14). This parameter is only valid in Europe.
68054E	Minimum pause between dialed digits (pulse dial mode)	20 ms	See Note 3 and 8. SP2-103-016 (parameter 15).
68054F	Time waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel		SP2-103-017 (parameter 16). See Note 3.
680550	DTMF tone on time	1 ms	SP2-103-018 (parameter 17).
680551	DTMF tone off time		SP2-103-019 (parameter 18).
680552	Tone attenuation level of DTMF signals while dialing	-N x 0.5 -3.5 dBm	SP2-103-020 (parameter 19). See Note 5.
680553	Tone attenuation value difference between high frequency tone and low frequency tone in DTMF signals	-dBm x 0.5	SP2-103-021 (parameter 20). The setting must be less than -5dBm, and should not exceed the setting at 680552h above. See Note 5.
680554	PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialing	-N x 0.5 -3.5 dBm	SP2-103-022 (parameter 21). See Note 5.
680555	ISDN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialing	-dBm x 0.5	See Note 5
680556	Not used		Do not change the settings.
680557	Time between 68054Dh (NCU parameter 14) and 68054Eh (NCU parameter 15)	1 ms	This parameter takes effect when the country code is set to France.
680558	Not used		Do not change the setting.
680559	Grounding time (ground start mode)	20 ms	The Gs relay is closed for this interval.
68055A	Break time (flash start mode)	1 ms	The OHDI relay is open for this interval.

NCU PARAMETERS

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68055B	International dial access code (High)	BCD	For a code of 100: 68055B - F1 68055C - 00
68055C	International dial access code (Low)		
68055D	PSTN access pause time	20 ms	This time is waited for each pause input after the PSTN access code. If this address contains FF[H], the pause time stored in address 68054F is used. Do not set a number more than 7 in the UK.
68055E	Progress tone detection level, and cadence detection enable flags	Bit 7 Bit 6 Bit 5 dBm 0 0 0 -25.0 0 0 1 -35.0 0 1 0 -30.0 1 0 0 -40.0 1 1 0 -49.0 Bits 2, 0 - See Note 2.	
68055F to 680564	Not used		Do not change the settings.
680565	Long distance call prefix (HIGH)	BCD	For a code of 0: 680565 - FF 680566 - FF
680566	Long distance call prefix (LOW)	BCD	
680567 to 680571	Not used		Do not change the settings.
680572	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, upper limit	1000/ N (Hz).	SP2-103-003 (parameter 02).
680573	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, lower limit		SP2-103-004 (parameter 03).
680574	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, upper limit		SP2-103-005 (parameter 04).
680575	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, lower limit		SP2-103-006 (parameter 05).
680576	Number of rings until a call is detected	1	SP2-103-007 (parameter 06). The setting must not be zero.
680577	Minimum required length of the first ring	20 ms	See Note 4. SP2-103-008 (parameter 07).
680578	Minimum required length of the second and subsequent rings	20 ms	SP2-103-009 (parameter 08).
680579	Ringing signal detection reset time (LOW)	20 ms	SP2-103-010 (parameter 09).
68057A	Ringing signal detection reset time (HIGH)		SP2-103-011 (parameter 10).

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68057B to 680580	Not used		Do not change the settings.
680581	Interval between dialing the last digit and switching the Oh relay over to the external telephone when dialing from the operation panel in handset mode.	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
680582	Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook detection time Bit 1 0 Setting 0 0 200 ms 0 1 800 ms Other Not used Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook detection time Bit 3 2 Setting 0 0 200 ms 0 1 800 ms Other Not used Bits 4 to 7 - Not used		
680583 to 6805A0	Not used		Do not change the settings.
6805A1	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A2	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A3	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A4	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805A5	CED detection time	20 ms ± 20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms
6805A6	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A7	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A8	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A9	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805AA	Not used		Do not change the setting.
6805AB	CNG on time	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
6805AC	CNG off time	20 ms	Factory setting: 3000 ms
6805AD	Number of CNG cycles required for detection		The data is coded in the same way as address 680533.
6805AE	Not used		Do not change the settings.

NCU PARAMETERS

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
6805AF	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B0	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805B1	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz(BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B2	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805B3	Detection time for 800 Hz AI short protocol tone	20 ms	Factory setting: 360 ms
6805B4	PSTN: Tx level from the modem	-N – 3 dBm	SP2-103-002 (parameter 01).
6805B5	PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B5 –3.5 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B6	PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B6 –3 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B7	PABX: Tx level from the modem	- dBm	
6805B8	PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B8 (dB)	
6805B9	PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B9 (dB)	
6805BD	Modem turn-on level (incoming signal detection level)	-37-0.5N (dBm)	
6805BE to 6805C6	Not used		Do not change the settings.
6805C7	Bits 0 to 3 – Not used. Bit 4 – V.34 protocol dump 0: Simple, 1: Detailed (default) Bits 5 to 7 – Not used.		
6805C8 to 6805D9	Not used		Do not change the settings.
6805DA	T.30 T1 timer	1 s	
6805E0 bit 3	Maximum wait time for post message	0: 12 s 1: 30 s	1: Maximum wait time for post message (EOP/EOM/MPS) can be changed to 30 s. Change this bit to “1” if communication errors occur frequently during V.17 reception.

6805E3	Voltage setting to detect off-hook for voltage/DP detection for an externally connected line.				0: Auto 1: Fixed V	Do not change these settings
	Here is a summary of the fixed voltage settings (1: Fixed) for an externally connected line.					
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4		
	0	0	0	0	Not used	
	0	0	0	1	2.75 V	
	0	0	1	0	5.5 V	
	1	0	0	0	22 V	
	1	1	1	1	41.25 V	
6805E4 bit 2	Threshold for ring level				Change bit 2 to 1 This will increase the threshold for ringing level detection.	
6805E4 bit 3	On-Hook impedance level				Change bit 3 0 to 1 This will decrease the on-hook impedance level	
6805E5 bits 0 and 1	Selection of positive and negative sides of the signal waveform for incoming call detection				Bit 0= 0: Automatically judged Bit 0= 1: Manually select to use either positive or negative side Bit 1= 0: Use positive side of waveform Bit 1= 1: Use negative side of waveform	

NOTES

1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.
2. Italy and Belgium only

RAM address 68055E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.

Bit 2 - 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)

Bit 1 - Not used

Bit 0 - 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)

If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.

680508 (if bit 0 = 1) or 680538 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 680533.

68050B (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

68050C (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053C (if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

3. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 68054A to 68054F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.
4. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.
5. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10.
The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are:
High frequency tone: $-0.5 \times N_{680552/680554} - 3.5$ dBm
 $-0.5 \times N_{680555}$ dBm
Low frequency tone: $-0.5 \times (N_{680552/680554} + N_{680553}) - 3.5$ dBm
 $-0.5 \times (N_{680555} + N_{680553})$ dBm
NOTE: N_{680552} , for example, means the value stored in address 680552(H)
6. 68054A: Europe - Between Ds opening and Di opening, France - Between Ds closing and Di opening
68054D: Europe - Between Ds closing and Di closing, France - Between Ds opening and Di closing
7. Tone signals which frequency is lower than 1500Hz (e.g., 800Hz tone for AI short protocol) refer to the setting at 6805B5h. Tones which frequency is higher than 1500Hz refer to the setting at 6805B6h.
8. 68054A, 68054D, 68054E: The actual inter-digit pause (pulse dial mode) is the sum of the period specified by the RAM addresses 68054A, 68054D, and 68054E.

3.4 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

There are two sets of transmission parameters: iFax and E-mail

Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has eight bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.

The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the eight bytes will be described.

3.4.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE

1. Set the bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 1.
2. Enter Address Book Management mode ([User Tools]> System Settings> Key Operator> Address Book Management).
3. Press "Program/Change/Delete Quick Dial".
4. Select the address book that you want to program.
5. For the fax parameter, select "Fax Dest.", for the E-mail parameter, select "E-mail", then press "Start". Make sure that the LED of the Start button lights green.
6. The settings for the switch 00 are now displayed. Press the bit number that you wish to change.
7. To scroll through the parameter switches, either:
8. Select the next switch: press "Next"
or
Select the previous switch: "Prev." until the correct switch is displayed.
Then go back to step 6.
9. After the setting is changed, press "OK".
10. After finishing, reset bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 0.

3.4.2 PARAMETERS

Fax Parameters

The initial settings of the following fax parameters are all FF(H) - all the parameters are disabled.

Switch 00	
FUNCTION AND COMMENTS	
ITU-T T1 time (for PSTN G3 mode) If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting, adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second. Range: 0 to 120 s (00h to 78h) FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used. Do not program a value between 79h and FEh.	

Switch 01		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 to 4	Tx level	If communication with a particular remote terminal often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the Tx level for communications with that terminal until the results are better. If the setting is "Disabled", the NCU parameter 01 setting is used. Note: Do not use settings other than listed on the left.
	Bit 4 3 2 1 0 Setting	
	0 0 0 0 0 0	
	0 0 0 0 1 -1	
	0 0 0 1 0 -2	
	0 0 0 1 1 -3	
	0 0 1 0 0 -4	
	:	
	:	
	0 1 1 1 1 -15	
	1 1 1 1 1 Disabled	
5 to 7	Cable equalizer	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. • Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. • Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note: Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
	Bit 7 6 5 Setting	
	0 0 0 None	
	0 0 1 Low	
	0 1 0 Medium	
	0 1 1 High	
	1 1 1 Disabled	

DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

Fax Option
B779

Switch 02						
No	FUNCTION				COMMENTS	
0 to 3	Initial Tx modem rate				If training with a particular remote terminal always takes too long, the initial modem rate may be too high. Reduce the initial Tx modem rate using these bits. For the settings 14.4 or kbps slower, Switch 04 bit 4 must be changed to 0. Note: Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.	
	Bit3	2	1	0		
	Setting (bps)					
	0	0	0	0		Not used
	0	0	0	1		2,400
	0	0	1	0		4,800
	0	0	1	1		7,200
	0	1	0	0		9,600
	0	1	0	1		12,000
	0	1	1	0		14,400
	0	1	1	1		16,800
	1	0	0	0		19,200
	1	0	0	1		21,600
	1	0	1	0		24,000
	1	0	1	1		26,400
	1	1	0	0		28,800
	1	1	0	1		31,200
	1	1	1	0		33,600
	1	1	1	1		Disabled
Other settings: Not used						
4-7	Not used				Do not change the settings.	

Switch 03				
No	FUNCTION			COMMENTS
0 1	Inch-mm conversion before tx			The machine uses inch-based resolutions for scanning. If “inch only” is selected, the printed copy may be slightly distorted at the other end if that machine uses mm-based resolutions. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
	Bit 1	Bit 0	Setting	
	0	0	Inch-mm conversion available	
	0	1	Inch only	
	1	0	Not used	
	1	1	Disabled	
2 to 3	DIS/NSF detection method			(0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set-up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting	
	0	0	First DIS or NSF	
	0	1	Second DIS or NSF	
	1	0	Not used	
	1	1	Disabled	
4	V.8 protocol 0: Off 1: Disabled			If transmissions to a specific destination always end at a lower modem rate (14,400 bps or lower), disable V.8 protocol so as not to use V.34 protocol. 0: V.34 communication will not be possible. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.

DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

Switch 03		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
5	Compression modes available in transmit mode 0: MH only 1: Disabled	This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other terminal during transmission. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
6	ECM during transmission	For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to a particular terminal, use the (0, 0) setting. Note that V.8/V.34 protocol and JBIG compression are automatically disabled if ECM is disabled. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
7	Bit 7 Bit 6 Setting	
	0 0 Off	
	0 1 On	
	1 0 Not used	
	1 1 Disabled	

Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

E-mail Parameters

The initial settings of the following e-mail parameters are all "0" (all parameters disabled).

Switch 00		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
00	HM Compression mode for e-mail attachments 0 : Off 1 : On	Switches HM compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
01	HR Compression mode for e-mail attachments 0 : Off 1 : On	Switches HR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
02	MMR Compression mode for e-mail attachments 0 : Off 1 : On	Switches MMR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
03-06	Not used	Do not change these settings.
07	Designates the bits to reference for compression method of e-mail attachments 0 : Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1 : No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 01		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
00	Original width of e-mail attachment: A4 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A4.
01	Original width of e-mail attachment: B4 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as B4.
02	Original width of e-mail attachment: A3 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A3.
03-06	Not used	Do not change these settings.
07	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments 0 : Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1 : No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

Switch 02		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
00	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 100 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 100.
01	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 200 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 200.
02	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 400 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 400.
03	Not used	Do not change these settings.
04	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 400 x 400 0 : Off 1 : On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 400 x 400.
05-06	Not used	Do not change these settings.
07	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments 0 : Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1 : No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02, 04 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02, 04.

Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

3.5 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

CAUTION

Do not change the settings which are marked as “Not used” or “Read only.”

680001 to 680004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

680001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

680002(H) - Year (BCD)

680003(H) - Month (BCD)

680004(H) - Day (BCD)

680006 to 680015(H) - Machine's serial number (16 digits - ASCII)

680018(H) - Total program checksum (low)

680019(H) - Total program checksum (high)

680020 to 68003F(H) - System bit switches

680050 to 68005F(H) - Printer bit switches

680060 to 68007F(H) - Communication bit switches

680080 to 68008F(H) - G3 bit switches

680090 to 68009F(H) - G3-2 bit switches

6800A0 to 6800AF(H) - G3-3 bit switches

6800D0(H) - User parameter switch 00 (SWUER_00) : Not used

6800D1(H) - User parameter switch 01 (SWUSR_01) : Not used

6800D2(H) - User parameter switch 02 (SWUSR_02)

Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Reception time printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 3: TSI print on received messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 4: Checkered mark printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

6800D3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (SWUSR_03: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 1: Not used
 Bit 2: Memory storage report 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 6: Polling clear report 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 7: Journal 0: Off, 1: On

6800D4(H) - User parameter switch 04 (SWUSR_04: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Automatic confidential reception report output 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 1: Automatic communication failure report and transfer result report output
 0: Off, 1: On
 Bits 2 to 3: Not used
 Bit 4: Indicates the parties 0: Not indicated, 1: Indicated
 Bit 5: Include sender's name on reports 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 6: Not used
 Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports 0: Off, 1: On

6800D5(H) - User parameter switch 05 (SWUSR_05)

Bit 0: Substitute reception when the base copier is in an SC condition
 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
 Bits 1 and 2: Condition for substitute rx when the machine cannot print messages
 (Paper end, toner end, jam, and during night mode)

Bit 2	1	Setting
0	0	The machine receives all the fax messages.
0	1	The machine receives the fax messages with RTI or CSI.
1	0	The machine receives the fax messages with the same ID code.
1	1	The machine does not receive anything.

Bit 3: Not used
 Bit 4: Not used
 Bit 5: Just size printing 0: Off, 1: On
 Bit 6: Not used
 Bit 7: Add paper display when a cassette is empty 0: Off, 1: On

6800D6(H) - User parameter switch 06 (SWUSR_06)

Bits 0 to 5: Not used
 Bit 6: Scan sequence in Book transmission
 0: Left page then right page, 1: Right page then left page
 Bit 7: Not used

6800D7(H) - User parameter switch 07 (SWUSR_07)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used
 Bit 2: Parallel memory transmission 0: Off, 1: On
 Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800D8(H) - User parameter switch 08 (SWUSR_08)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used.

Bit 2: Authorized reception

0: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.

1: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 3 to 7: Not used.

6800D9(H) - User parameter switch 09 (SWUSR_09) : Not used**6800DA(H) - User parameter switch 10 (SWUSR_0A)**

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: 2 into 1 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: Page reduction 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Not used

Bit 5: Reception file printout 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 6: Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission results 0: Off, 1: On

6800DB(H) - User parameter switch 11 (SWUSR_0B)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Not used

Bits 2 to 5: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Polling Standby duration 0: Once, 1: No limit

6800DC(H) - User parameter switch 12 (SWUSR_0C): Not used**6800DD(H) - User parameter switch 13 (SWUSR_0D): Not used****6800DE(H) - User parameter switch 14 (SWUSR_0E)**

Bit 0: Message printout while the machine is in Night Printing mode 0: On, 1: Off

Bit 1: Maximum document length detection

0: Double letter, 1: Longer than double-letter (well log) – up to 1,200 mm

Bit 2: Batch transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: Fax mode settings, such as resolution, before a mode key (Copy/Fax/Printer/Scanner) is pressed

0: Not cleared, 1: Cleared

Bits 4 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Manual service call (sends the system parameter list to the service station)

0: Off, 1: On

SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

6800DF(H) - User parameter switch 15 (SWUSR_0F)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0, 1 and 2: Cassette for fax printout

Bit	2	1	0	Setting
0	0	1	0	1st paper feed station
0	1	0	0	2nd paper feed station
0	1	1	1	3rd paper feed station
1	0	0	0	4th paper feed station
1	0	1	1	LCT

Other settings Not used

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Using the cassette specified by bits 0, 1 and 2 above only 0: On, 1: Off

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E1(H) – User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR_11)

Bit 0: IFAX Group Destination Selection/Release Method

- 0 Priority Select Mode
Select the priority destination according to input mode. The Group button reflects either email or fax input mode. Released as soon as the entry mode is selected, regardless of the current entry mode.
- 1 All Select Mode
Acquires all registered members regardless of entry mode. If both email and fax are registered, both are selected. The Group button reflects either email or fax input mode. All registered members are released, regardless of the entry mode. If both email/fax are registered, both are released.

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Paper size selection priority for an A4 size fax message when A4/LT size paper is not available.

0: A3 has priority, 1: B4 has priority

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800E1(H) – User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR_11)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Inclusion of the “Add” button when a sequence of Quick/Speed dials is selected for broadcasting

0: Not needed, 1: Needed

Bits 3 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Press “Start” key without an original when using the on hook dial or the external telephone,

0: displays “Cannot detect original size”.

1: Receives fax messages.

6800E2(H) - User parameter switch 18 (SWUSR_12)

Bit 0: TTI date 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: TTI sender 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: TTI file number 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: TTI page number 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4 to 7: Not used

6800E3(H) - User parameter switch 19 (SWUSR_13)

Bit 0: Offset sort function for the fax (only using the shift tray on the 1,000 sheet finisher)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Journal format

0: The Journal is separated into transmissions and receptions

1: The Journal is separated into G3-1, G3-2, and G3-3 communications

Bit 2: Action when the paper cassette that was selected by the specified cassette selection feature becomes empty.

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: The machine will not print any received files until paper is added.

1: The machine will use other cassettes to print received files that are not specified by this feature.

Bit 3: 90° image rotation during B5 portrait Tx

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Reduction of sample images on reports to 50% in the main scan and sub-scan directions. (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Technician adjustment (printer switch 0E bits 3 and 4), 1: 50% reduction

Bit 5: Use of A5 size paper for reports

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E4(H) - User parameter switch 20 (SWUSR_14)

Bit 0: Automatic printing of the LAN fax result report

0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used.

Bits 2 to 5: Store documents in memory which could not be printed from PC fax (LAN fax) driver

Bit	5	4	3	2	Setting
	0	0	0	0	0 min.
	0	0	0	1	1 min.
			↓		↓
	1	1	1	0	14 min.
	1	1	1	1	15 min.

Bits 6 and 7: Not used.

6800E5(H) - User parameter switch 21 (SWUSR_15)

Bit 0: Print results of sending reception notice request message

0: Disabled (print only when error occurs), 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: File format for forwarded folders 0: TIFF, 1: PDF

Bit 4: Transmit Journal by E-mail 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Network error display 0: Displayed, 1: Not displayed

Bit 7: Transmit error mail notification 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

6800E6(H) - User parameter switch 22 (SWUSR_16)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bit 0: Dial tone detection (PSTN 1) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Dial tone detection (PSTN 2) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Dial tone detection (PSTN 3) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800E7(H) – User parameter switch 23 (SWUSR_17) : Not used

6800E8(H) - User parameter switch 24 (SWUSR_18)

Bits 0 and 1: File retention time (Cross reference: System switch 02 bit 4)

Bit	1	0	Setting
	0	0	File retention impossible
	0	1	24 hours
	1	0	File retention impossible
	1	1	72 hours

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

6800E9(H) - User parameter switch 25 (SWUSR_19)

Bit 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Auto switching 0: Fax, 1: Telephone

Bit 3: Not used

Bit 4: RDS operation

0: Not acceptable

1: Acceptable for the limit specified by system switch 03

NOTE: This bit is only effective when RDS operation can be selected by the user (see system switch 02).

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

6800EA(H) to 6800EF(H) - User parameter switch 26 to 31 (SWUSR_1A to 1F) : Not used

6800F0(H) - User parameter switch 32 (SWUSR_20)

Bit 0: Quotation priority for a destination when there is no destination of the specified type

0: Paper output priority

Priority order

1. IP-fax destination, 2. Fax Number, 3. E-mail address, 4. Folder

1: Electric putout order

Priority order

1. E-mail address, 2. Folder, 3. IP-fax destination, 4. Fax number

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800F1(H) - User parameter switch 33 (SWUSR_21): Not used

6800F2(H) - User parameter switch 34 (SWUSR_22)

Bit 0: SIP server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Gatekeeper server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

680100 to 68010F(H) - G4 Parameter Switches – Not used

680110 to 68012F(H) - G4 Internal Switches – Not used

680170 to 68017F(H) - IFAX Switches

680180 to 68018F(H) - IP-FAX Switches

680190 to 6801AF(H) - Service station's fax number (SP3-101)

6801B0 to 6801B9(H) - Own fax PABX extension number

6801BA to 6801C3(H) - Own fax number (PSTN)

6801C4 to 6801D7(H) - Own fax number (ISDN G4) – Not used

6801D8 to 6801E3(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

6801E4 to 6801EF(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

6801F0 to 6801FB(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

6801FC to 680207(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

680208 to 68021B(H) - PSTN-1 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

68021C to 68022F(H) - PSTN-2 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

680230 to 680246(H) - PSTN-3 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

680247 to 680286(H) - TTI 1 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

680287 to 6802C6(H) - TTI 2 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See following note.

6802C7 to 680306(H) - TTI 3 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See following note.

680307 to 68031A(H) - PSTN-1 CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

68031B to 68032E(H) - PSTN-2 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)

68032F to 680342(H) - PSTN-3 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)

680343(H) - Number of PSTN-1 CSI characters (Hex)

680344(H) - Number of PSTN-2 CSI characters (Hex)

680345(H) - Number of PSTN-3 CSI characters (Hex)-

NOTE: If the number of characters is less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 64 for TTI), add a stop code (00[H]) after the last character.

680380 to 680387(H) - Last power off time (Read only)

680380(H) - 01(H) - 24-hour clock, 00(H) - 12-hour clock (AM),
02(H) - 12-hour clock (PM)

680381(H) - Year (BCD)

680382(H) - Month (BCD)

680383(H) - Day (BCD)

680384(H) - Hour

680385(H) - Minute

680386(H) - Second

680387(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, ... , 06: Sunday

680394(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

Bit 0: Page Memory 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 1: SAF Memory 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bits 2 to 7; Not used

680395(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

Bits 0 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: G3-2 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 5: G3-3 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 6 and 7: Not used

SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

680406 to 68040A – Option G3 board (G3-2) ROM information (Read only)

680406(H) - Suffix (BCD)
680407(H) - Version (BCD)
680408(H) - Year (BCD)
680409(H) - Month (BCD)
68040A(H) - Day (BCD)

68040B to 68040F – Option G3 board (G3-3) ROM information (Read only)

68040B(H) - Suffix (BCD)
68040C(H) - Version (BCD)
68040D(H) - Year (BCD)
68040E(H) - Month (BCD)
68040F(H) - Day (BCD)

680410(H) - G3-1 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680412(H) - G3-2 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680414(H) - G3-3 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680420(H) - Number of multiple sets print (Read only)

680476(H) - Time for economy transmission (hour in 24h clock format - BCD)

680477(H) - Time for economy transmission (minute - BCD)

680492(H) - Transmission monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680493(H) - Reception monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680494(H) - On-hook monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680495(H) - Dialing monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680496(H) - Buzzer volume 00 - 07(H)

680497(H) - Beeper volume 00 - 07(H)

69ED04 to 69F003(H) - SIP server address (Read only)

69ED04(H) - Proxy server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69ED84(H) - Proxy server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69EE04(H) - Redirect server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69EE04(H) - Redirect server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69EF04(H) - Registrar server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69EF04(H) - Registrar server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69F004(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69F084(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69F104(H) - Arias Number (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69F184(H) - SIP user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69F204(H) - Gateway address information (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

6A0DC0(H) - Stand-by port number for H.232 connection

6A0DC2(H) - Stand-by port number for SIP connection

6A0DC4(H) - RAS port number

6A0DC6(H) - Gatekeeper port number

6A0DC8(H) - Port number of data waiting for T.38

6A0DCA(H) - Port number of SIP server

6A0DCC(H) - Priority for SIP and H.323 0: H.323, 1: SIP

6A0DCD(H) - SIP function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

6A0DCE(H) - H.323 function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

6A0DD0(H) - RAS/SIP back-up server: IP address (Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A0DD4(H) - SIP back-up server: Host name (Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A0E54(H) - RAS back-up server: gatekeeper address - Main
(Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A0ED4(H) - RAS back-up server: gatekeeper address - Sub
(Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A0F54(H) - SIP back-up server: registrar server address - Main
(Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A0FD4(H) - SIP back-up server: registrar server address - Sub
(Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A1054(H) - RAS back-up server: Arias number (Max. 128 characters- ASCII)

6A10D4(H) - RAS back-up server: Stand-by port number for H.232 connection

6A10D6(H) - RAS back-up server: RAS port number

⇒ **6BEBFE(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

⇒ **6BEBFF(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

⇒ **6BEC00(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

⇒ **6BEC01(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

⇒ **6BEC02(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

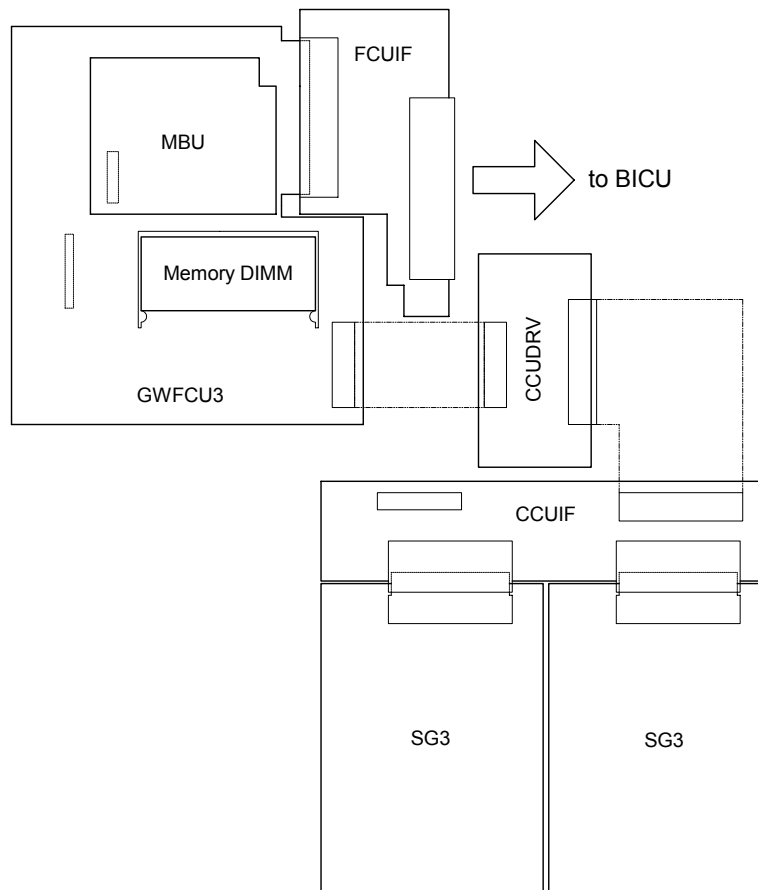
⇒ **6BEC03 to 6BEC04** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM
addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⇒ **6BEC05(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

⇒ **6BEC06(H)** – Important: **Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses.
They are not for use in the field.

4. DETAILS

4.1 OVERVIEW



The basic fax unit consists of two PCBs: an FCU and an MBU.

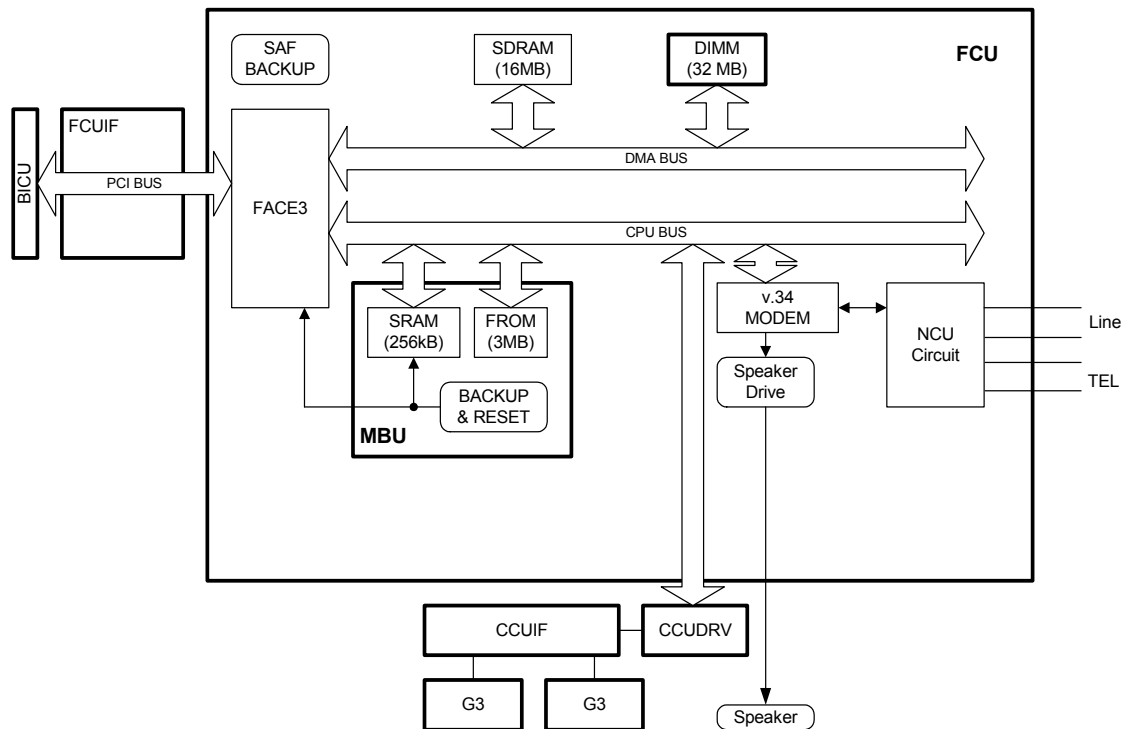
The FCU controls all the fax communications and fax features, in cooperation with the controller board. The MBU contains the ROM and SRAM. Also, the FCU has an NCU circuit.

Fax Options:

1. Extra G3 Interface option: This provides one more analog line interface. This allows full dual access. Two extra G3 interface options can be installed.
2. Memory Expansion: This expands the SAF memory and the page memory (used for image rotation); without this expansion, the page memory is not big enough for image rotation at 400 dpi, so transmission at 400 dpi is not possible.

4.2 BOARDS

4.2.1 FCU



The FCU (Facsimile Control Unit) controls fax communications, the video interface to the base copier's engine, and all the fax options.

FACE3 (Fax Application Control Engine)

- CPU
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- DMA control
- Clock generation
- DRAM backup control

Modem (FAME)

- V.34, V33, V17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21, and V.8

BOARDS

DRAM

- The 16 MB of DRAM is shared as follows.
SAF memory : 4MB
Working memory : 4MB
Page memory : 8MB
- The SAF memory is backed up by a rechargeable battery.

Memory back-up

- A Rechargeable battery backs up the SAF memory (DRAM) for 1 hour.

4.2.2 MBU

On this board, the flash ROM contains the FCU firmware, and the SRAM contains the system data and user parameters. Even if the FCU is changed, the system data and user parameters are kept on the MBU board.

ROM

- 3MB flash ROMs for system software storage
2MB (16bit x 1MB) + 1MB (16bit x 512K)

SRAM

- The 256 KB SRAM for system and user parameter storage is backed up by a lithium battery.

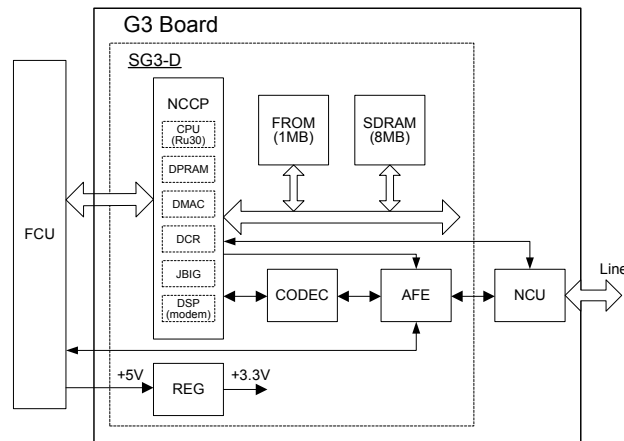
Memory back-up

- A lithium battery backs up the system parameters and programmed items in the SRAM, in case the base copier's main switch is turned off.

Switches

Item	Description
SW1	Switches the SRAM backup battery on/off.

4.2.3 SG3 BOARD



The SG3 board allows up to three simultaneous communications when used in combination with the FCU and optional G3 boards. The NCU is on the same board as the common SG-3 board. This makes the total board structure smaller. But, the specifications of the SG3 board do not change.

NCCP (New Communication Control Processor)

- Controls the SG3 board.
- CPU (RU30)
- DPRAM (Dual Port RAM): Handshaking with the FCU is done through this block.
- DMA controller
- JBIG
- DSP V34 modem (RL5T892): Includes the DTMF Receiver function
- DCR for MH, MR, MMR, and JBIG compression and decompression

FROM

- 1Mbyte flash ROM for SG3 software storage and modem software storage

SDRAM

- 4Mbyte DRAM shared between ECM buffer, line buffer, and working memory

AFE (Analog Front End)

- Analog processing

CODEC (COder-DECoder)

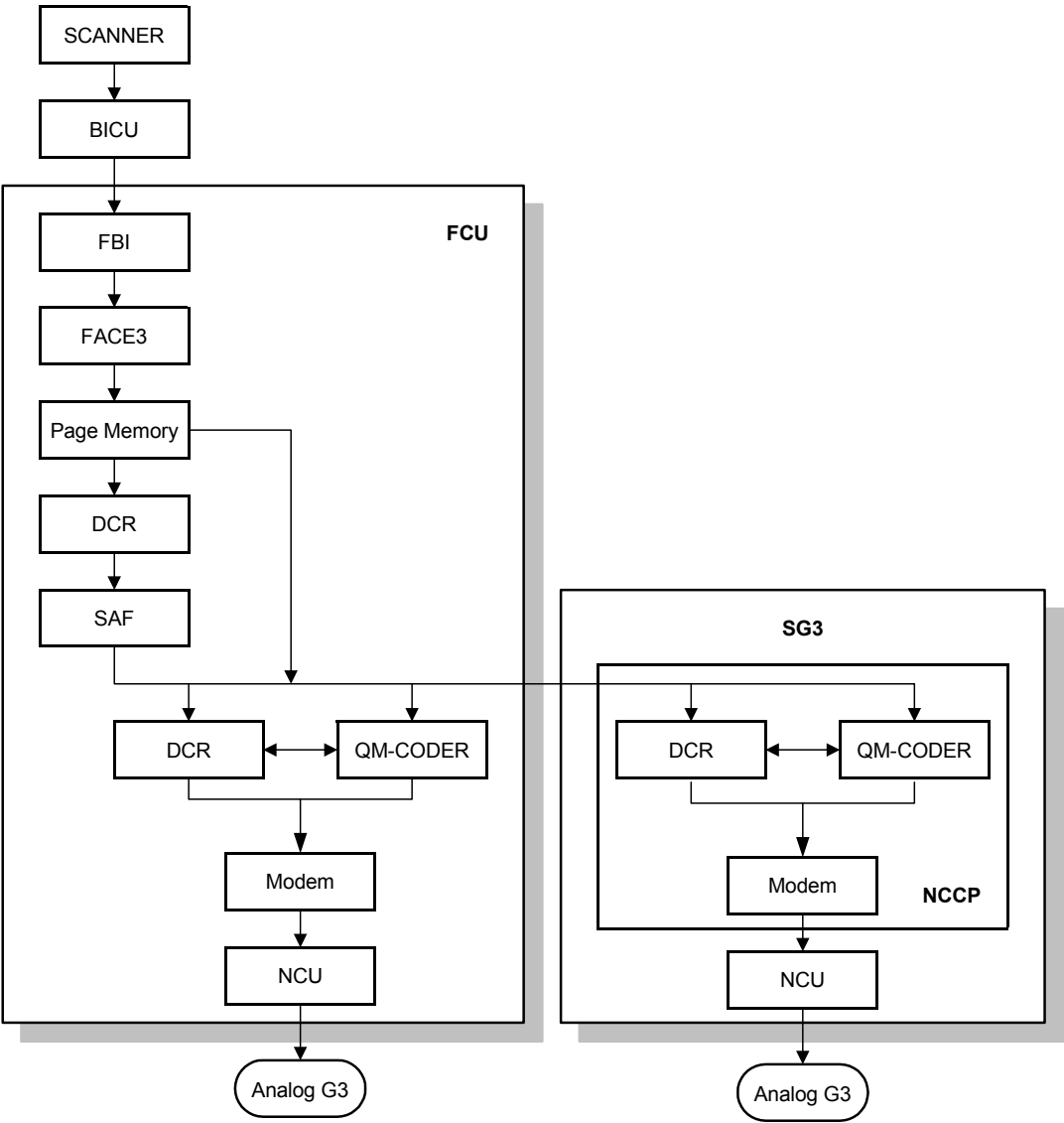
- A/D & D/A conversions for modem

REG

- Generates +3.3 V from the +5V from the FCU

4.3 VIDEO DATA PATH

4.3.1 TRANSMISSION



Memory Transmission and Parallel Memory Transmission

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution in inch format. The BICU processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.

NOTE: When scanning a fax original, the BICU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then, the FCU converts the data to mm format, and compresses the data in MMR or raw format to store it in the SAF memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in page memory before compression.

At the time of transmission, the FCU decompresses the stored data, then re-compresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

Immediate Transmission

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the resolution agreed with the receiving terminal. The BICU video processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.

NOTE: When scanning a fax original, the BICU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then the FCU stores the data in page memory, and compresses the data for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

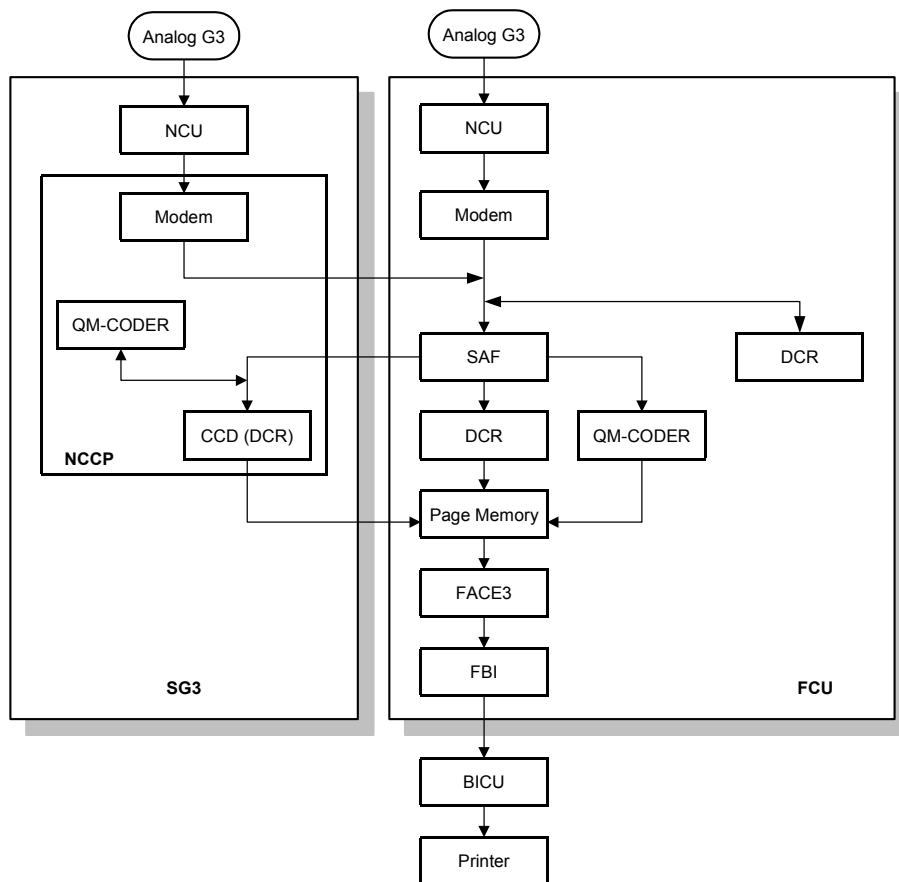
JBIG Transmission

- **Memory transmission:** If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the DCR to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.
- **Immediate transmission:** If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the page memory to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.

Adjustments

- Priority for the line used for G3 transmissions (PSTN 1/PSTN 2 or 3): System switch 16 bit 1

4.3.2 RECEPTION



First, the FCU stores the incoming data from either an analog line to the SAF memory. (The data goes to the FACE3 at the same time, and is checked for error lines/frames.)

The FCU then decompresses the data and transfers it to page memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory. The data is transferred to the BICU.

If the optional G3 unit is installed, the line that the message comes in on depends on the telephone number dialed by the other party (the optional G3 unit has a different telephone number from the main fax board).

JBIG Reception

When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-1 (the standard analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER for decompression. Then the data is stored in the page memory, and transferred to the BICU.

When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-2 (optional extra analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER on the SG3 board for decompression.

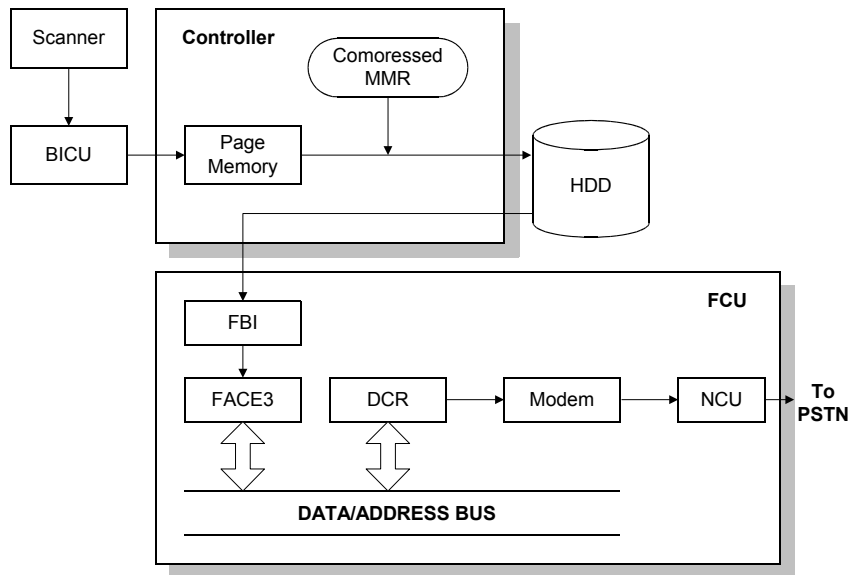
4.4 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES

4.4.1 MULTI-PORT

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, communication can take place at the same time through the two or three lines at once.

Option	Available Line Type	Available protocol Combinations
Standard only	PSTN	G3
Extra G3 Interface Unit (single)	PSTN + PSTN	G3 + G3
Extra G3 Interface Unit (double)	PSTN + PSTN +PSTN	G3 + G3 +G3

4.4.2 DOCUMENT SERVER



The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution. The BICU video processes the data and transfers it to the controller board.

Then the controller stores the data in the page memory for the copier function, and compresses the data in MMR (by software) to store it in the HDD. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory before compression.

For transmission, the stored image data is transferred to the FCU. The FCU decompresses the image data, then recompresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. the NCU transmits the data to the line.

The documents can be stored in the HDD (Document Server) from the fax application. The stored documents in the document sever can be used for the fax transmission in many times. More than one document and the scanned document can be combined into one file and then the file can be transmitted.

- When using the document server, the SAF memory is not used.
- The document is compressed with MMR and stored.
- Up to 9,000 pages can be stored. (1 file: Up to 1,000 pages) from the fax application.
- Only stored documents from the fax application can be transmitted.
- Scanned documents are given a name automatically, such as "FAX001". But it is possible to change the file name, user name and password.
- Up to 30 files can be selected at once.

NOTE: 1) The compression method of the fax application is different from the copy application. The storing time is longer than the copier storing.

2) When selecting "Print 1st page", the stored document will be reduced to A4 size.

4.4.3 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION

Mail Transmission

This machine supports T.37 full mode. (ITU-, RFC232). The difference between T.37 simple mode and full mode is as follows.

Function	T.37 Simple Mode	T.37 Full Mode
Resolution	200 x 100 200 x 200	200 x100 200 x 200 200 x 400 400 x 400 (if available)
RX Paper Width	A4	A4, B4, A3
RX Data Compression Method	MH	MH (default), MR, MMR,
Signals	Image data transmission only	Image data transmission, exchange of capability information between the two terminals, and acknowledgement of receipt of fax messages

Data Formats

The scanned data is converted into a TIFF-F formatted file.

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

Field	Content
From	Mail address of the sender
Reply To	Destination requested for reply
To	Mail address of the destination
Bcc	Backup mail address
Subject	From CSI or RTI (Fax Message No. xxxx)
Content Type	Multipart/mixed Attached files: image/tiff
Content Transfer Encoding	Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable
Message Body	MIME-converted TIFF-F (MIME standards specify how files are attached to e-mail messages)

Direct SMTP Transmission

Internet Fax documents can be sent directly to their destinations without going through the SMTP server. (Internet Faxes normally transmit via the SMTP server.)

For example:

e-mail address: gts@ricoh.co.jp

SMTP server address: gts.abcd.com

In this case this feature destination e-mail address (gts@ricoh.co.jp) is read as the SMTP server address "gts.abcd.com" and the transmissions bypass the SMTP server.

Selectable Options

These options are available for selection:

- With the default settings, the scan resolution can be either standard or detail. Inch-mm conversion before TX depends on IFAX SW01 Bit 7. Detail resolution will be used if Super Fine resolution is selected, unless Fine resolution is enabled with IFAX SW01.
- The requirements for originals (document size, scan width, and memory capacity) are the same as for G3 fax memory tx.
- The default compression is TIFF-F format.
- IFAX SW00: Acceptable paper widths for sending
- IFAX SW09: Maximum number of attempts to the same destination

Secure Internet Transmission

- **SMTP Authentication:**

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> SMTP Authentication

- **POP Before SMTP:**

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP Before SMTP

Mail Reception

This machine supports three types of e-mail reception:

- POP3 (Post Office Protocol Ver. 3.)
- IMAP4 (Internet Messaging Access Protocol)
- SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Mail Reception

POP3/IMAP4 Mail Reception Procedure

The machine automatically picks up e-mail from the server at an interval which is adjustable in the range 2 to 1440 min. in 1-minute steps:

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> E-mail Reception Interval

SMTP Reception

- The IFAX must be registered as an SMTP server in the MX record of the DNS server, and the address of the received mail must specify the IFAX.
- Enable SMTP reception:

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

Even if the MX record on the DNS server includes the IFAX, mail cannot be received with SMTP until SMTP reception is enabled:

However, if SMTP reception is selected and the machine is not registered in the MX record of the DNS server, then either IMAP4 or POP3 is used, depending on the setting:

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

Mail Delivery Conditions: Transferring Mail Received With SMTP

- 1) The machine must be set up for SMTP mail delivery:
User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings
- 2) If the user wishes to limit this feature so that the machine will only deliver mail from designated senders, the machine's "Auth. E-mail RX" feature must be set (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings).
- 3) If the "SMTP RX File Delivery Setting" is set to 0 to prohibit SMTP receiving, and if there is mail designated for delivery, then the machine responds with an error. (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings)
- 4) If the quick dial, speed dial, or group dial entry is incorrect, the mail transmission is lost, and the IFAX issues an error to the SMTP server and outputs an error report.

Auth. E-mail RX

In order to limit access to mail delivery with IFAX, the addresses of senders must be limited using the Access Limit Entry. Only one entry can be registered.

1) Access Limit Entry

For example, to limit access to @IFAX.ricoh.co.jp:

gts@IFAX.ricoh.co.jp	Matches and is delivered.
gts@IFAX.abcdco.jp	Does not match and is not delivered.
IFAX@ricoh.co.jp	Does not match and is not delivered.

2) Conditions

- The length of the Access Limit Entry is limited to 127 characters.
- If the Access Limit Entry address and the mail address of the incoming mail do not match, the incoming mail is discarded and not delivered, and the SMTP server responds with an error. However, in this case an error report is not output.
- If the Access Limit Entry address is not registered, and if the incoming mail specifies a delivery destination, then the mail is delivered unconditionally.

Handling Mail Reception Errors**Abnormal files**

When an error of this type occurs, the machine stops receiving and commands the server to erase the message. Then the machine prints an error report and sends information about the error by e-mail to the sender address (specified in the "From" or "Reply-to" field of the message). If there is an incomplete received message in the machine memory, it will be erased.

The machine prints an error message when it fails to send the receive error notification after a certain number of attempts.

The following types of files are judged to be abnormal if one or more of the following are detected:

1. Unsupported MIME headers.

Supported types of MIME header

Header	Supported Types
Content-Type	Multipart/mixed, text/plain, message/rfc822 Image/tiff
Charset	US-ASCII, ISO 8859 X. Other types cannot be handled, and some garbage may appear in the data.
Content-Transfer-Encoding	Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable

2. MIME decoding errors
3. File format not recognized as TIFF-F format
4. Resolution, document size, or compression type cannot be accepted

Remaining SAF capacity error

The machine calls the server but does not receive e-mail if the remaining SAF capacity is less than a certain value (the value depends on IFAX Switch 08. The e-mail will be received when the SAF capacity increases (for example, after substitute reception files have been printed). The error handling method for this type of error is the same as for "Abnormal files".

If the capacity of the SAF memory drops to zero during reception, the machine operates in the same way as when receiving an abnormal file (refer to "Abnormal files" above).

Secure Internet Reception

To enable password encryption and higher level security:

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP3/IMAP4 Settings> Encryption (set to "On")

FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES

Transfer Request: Request by Mail

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Transfer Request

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

Field	Content
From	E-mail address of the requesting terminal
To	Destination address (Transfer Station address)
Bcc	Backup mail address
Subject	From TSI (Fax Message No. xxxx)
Content-Type	Multipart/mixed Text/Plain (for a text part), image/tiff (for attached files)
Content-Transfer-Encoding	Base 64, 7-Bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable
Mail body (text part)	RELAY-ID:- xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits for an ID code) RELAY: #01#*X#**01....
Message body	MIME-converted TIFF-F.

E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode)

The following features are available as options for mail sending: entering a subject, designating the level of importance, confirming reception of the mail.

Subject and Level of Importance

You can enter a subject message with: Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

The Subject entry for the mail being sent is limited to 64 characters. The subject can also be prefixed with an "Urgent" or "High" notation.

How the Subject Differs According to Mail Type

Mail Type	①	②		③
Subject Entry	---	Entry Condition		Fax Message No. + File No.
No Subject Entry		1. "CSI" ("RTI")		
		2. "RTI"	CSI not registered	
		3. "CSI"	RTI not registered	
		4. None	CSI, RTI not registered	
Confirmation of Reception	From	1. "CSI" ("RTI")		Normal: Return Receipt (dispatched). You can select "displayed" with IFAX SW02 Bits 2 and 3.
		2. "RTI"	CSI not registered	
		3. "CSI"	RTI not registered	Error: Return Receipt (processed/error)
		4. None	CSI, RTI not registered	
Mail delivery, memory transfer, SMTP receiving and delivery	From	RTI or CSI of the station designated for delivery	Mail delivery	Fax Message No. + File Number
		RTI or CSI of sender	Mail sending from G3 memory	
		Mail address of sender	Memory sending	
		Mail address of sender	SMTP receiving and delivery (Off Ramp Gateway)	
Mail error notification	---	Error Message No. xxxx From CSI (RTI)		

Items ① ② ③ of the table above are in the Subject.

Subjects Displayed on the PC

Sender	Date	Size	Subject
Substation 2	04/25/2002	1,513	Parts List
Substation 2	04/26/2002	1,147	Specifications
Main Station	05/09/2002	33,551	[Urgent] Memo 2041
		21,624,288	

FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES

E-mail Messages

After entering the subject, you can enter a message with:

Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

An e-mail message (up to 5 lines) can be pre-registered with:

User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Program/Change/Delete E-mail Message

Limitations on Entries

Item	Maximum
Number of Lines	5 lines
Line Length	80 characters
Name Length	20 characters

Message Disposition Notification (MDN)

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – E-mail Options

The network system administrator can confirm whether a sent mail has been received correctly or not. This confirmation is done in four steps.

1. Send request for confirmation of mail reception. To enable or disable this request (known as MDN):

Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

2. Mail reception (receive confirmation request)
3. Send confirmation of mail reception
4. Receive confirmation of mail reception

The other party's machine will not respond to the request unless the two conditions below are met:

- The other party's machine must be set up to respond to the confirmation request.
- The other party's machine must support MDN (Message Disposition Notification).

- Setting up the Receiving Party -

The receiving party will respond to the confirmation request if:

- 1) The "Disposition Notification To" field is in the received mail header (automatically inserted in the 4th line in the upper table on the previous page, if MDN is enabled), and
- 2) Sending the disposition notification must be enabled (User Parameter Setting SW21 (15 [H]) Bit 1 for this model). The content of the response is as follows:

Normal reception:	"Return Receipt (dispatched)" in the Subject line
IFAX SW02 (Bit 2, 3)	"Return Receipt (displayed)" in the Subject line
Error:	"Return Receipt (processed/error)" in the Subject line

Handling Reports**1. Sending a Request for a Return Receipt by Mail**

After the mail sender transmits a request for a return receipt, the mail sender's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and a "Q" in the Mode column.

2. Mail Receipt (Request for Receipt Confirmation) and Sending Mail Receipt Response

After the mail receiver sends a response to the request for a return receipt, the mail receiver's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and an "A" in the Mode column.

3. Receiving the Return Receipt Mail

- After the mail sender receives a return receipt, the information in the mail sender's journal about the receipt request is replaced, i.e. the journal is annotated with "OK" in the Result column.
- When the return receipt reports an error, the journal is annotated with an "E" in the Result column.
- The arrival of the return receipt is not recorded in the journal as a separate communication. Its arrival is only reported by the presence of "OK" or "E" in the Result column.
- If the mail address used by the sender specifies a mailing list (i.e., a Group destination; the machine sends the mail to more than one location. See "How to set up Mail Delivery"), the Result column of the Journal is updated every time a return receipt is received. For example, if the mailing list was to 5 destinations, the Result column indicates the result of the communication with the 5th destination only. The results of the communications to the first 4 destinations are not shown.

Exceptions:

If one of the communications had an error, the Result column will indicate E, even if subsequent communications were OK.

If two of the communications had an error, the Journal will indicate the destination for the first error only.

Report Sample

DATE	TIME	ADDRESS	MODE	TIME	PAGE	RESULT
MAY. 5	10:15	fuser_01@domlg. ricoh. co.	Mail SM	0'09"	2	--
	10:16	fuser_01@domlg. ricoh. co.	Mail SMQ	0'05"	1	--
	10:17	s_tadashi@domlg. ricoh. co.	Mail SMQ	0'09"	2	OK
	10:19	m_masataka@domlg. ricoh. co.	Mail SMA	0'05"	1	--

4.5 IP-FAX

What is IP-FAX?

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – IP-FAX

T.38 Packet Format

TCP is selected by default for this machine, but you can change this to UDP with IPFAX SW 00 Bit 1.

UDP Related Switches

IP-Fax Switch 01		
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-3	Select IP FAX Delay Level Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting 0 0 0 0 Level 0 0 0 0 1 Level 1 0 0 1 0 Level 2 0 0 1 1 Level 3	Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network. If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets. If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets. Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets Level 3: 4 Redundant packets
4-7	Not used.	Do not change these settings.

Settings

User parameter switch 34 (22[H]), bit 0

IP-Fax Gate Keeper usage 0: No, 1: Yes

IP Fax Switches: Various IP-FAX settings (see the bit switch table)

5. SPECIFICATIONS

5.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Type:	Desktop type transceiver
Circuit:	PSTN (max. 3ch.) PABX
Connection:	Direct couple
Original Size:	Book (Face down) Maximum Length: 432 mm [17 ins] Maximum Width: 297 mm [11.7 ins] ARDF (Face up) (Single-sided document) Length: 128 - 1200 mm [5.0 - 47.2 ins] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch] (Double-sided document) Length: 128 - 432 mm [5.0 - 17 inch] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch]
Scanning Method:	Flat bed, with CCD
Resolution:	G3 8 x 3.85 lines/mm (Standard) 8 x 7.7 lines/mm (Detail) 8 x 15.4 line/mm (Fine) Note1 16 x15.4 line/mm (Super Fine) See Note 1 200 x 100 dpi (Standard) 200 x 200 dpi (Detail) 400 x 400 dpi (Super Fine) See Note 1 NOTE: 1. Optional Expansion Memory required
Transmission Time:	G3: 3 s at 28800 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution
Data Compression:	MH, MR, MMR JBIG
Protocol:	Group 3 with ECM
Modulation:	V.34, V.33, V.17 (TCM), V.29 (QAM), V.27ter (PHM), V.8, V.21 (FM)
Data Rate:	G3: 33600/31200/28800/26400/24000/21600/ 19200/16800/14400/12000/9600/7200/4800/2400 bps Automatic fallback

I/O Rate:	With ECM: 0 ms/line Without ECM: 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 ms/line
Memory Capacity:	ECM: 128 KB SAF Standard: 4 MB With optional Expansion Memory: 28 MB (4 MB+ 24 MB) Page Memory Standard: 4 MB (Print: 2 MB + Scanner: 2 MB) With optional Expansion Memory: 12 MB (4 MB + 8 MB) (Print 8 MB + Scanner: 4 MB)

5.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS

The following table shows how the capabilities of each programmable item will change after the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit is installed.

Item	Standard
Quick Dial	2000
Groups	100
Destination per Group	500
Destinations dialed from the ten-key pad overall	500
Programs	100
Auto Document	6
Communication records for Journal stored in the memory	200
Specific Senders	30

The following table shows how the capabilities of the document memory will change after the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit and the Expansion Memory are installed.

	Without the Expansion Memory	With the Expansion Memory
Memory Transmission file	400	400
Maximum number of page for memory transmission	1000	1000
Memory capacity for memory transmission (☞ Note1)	320	2240

NOTE: Measured using an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at the standard resolution, the auto image density mode and the Text mode.

5.3 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS

Connectivity

Local area network
Ethernet 100base-Tx/10base-T
IEEE1394 (IP over 1394)
IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)

Resolution

Main scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi
Sub scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi, 100 dpi

NOTE: To use 400 dpi, IFAX SW01 Bit 4 must be set to "1".

Transmission Time

1 s (through a LAN to the server)
Condition: ITU-T #1 test document
(Selerexe Letter)
MTF correction: OFF
TTI: None
Resolution: 200 x 100 dpi
Communication speed: 10 Mbps
Correspondent device: E-mail server
Line conditions: No terminal access

Document Size

Maximum message width is A4/LT.
Note: To use B4 and A3 width, IFAX SW00 Bit 1 (B4) and/or Bit 2 (A3) must be set to "1".

E-mail File Format

Single/multi-part
MIME conversion
Image: TIFF-F (MH, MR, MMR)

Protocol

Transmission:

SMTP, TCP/IP

Reception:

POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP

Data rate

100 Mbps(100base-Tx)
10 Mbps (10base-T)

Authentication method

SMTP-AUTH
POP before SMTP
A-POP

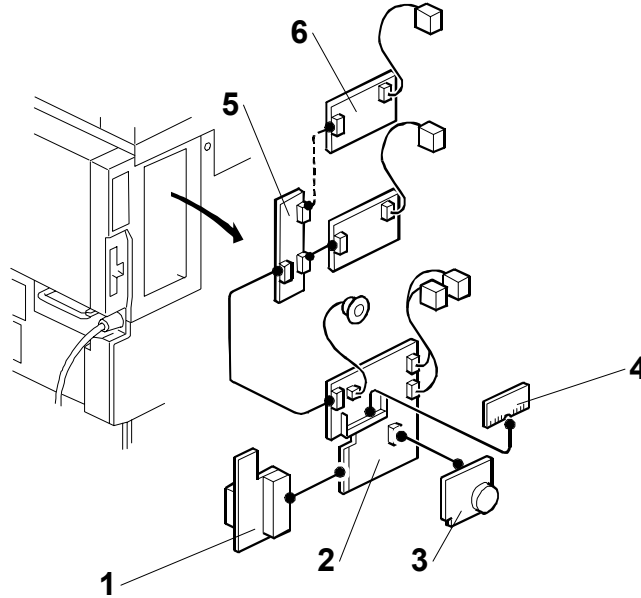
Remark

The machine must be set up as an e-mail client before installation. Any client PCs connected to the machine through a LAN must also be e-mail clients, or some features will not work (e.g. Autorouting).

5.4 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS

Network:	LAN: Local Area Network Ethernet/10base-T, 100base-TX, IEEE1394 (IP over 1394), IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)
Scan line density:	8 x 3.85 lines/mm, 200x100dpi (standard character), 8 x 7.7lines/mm, 200x200dpi (detail character), 8 x 15.4lines/mm (fine character: optional expansion memory required), 16 x 15.4lines/mm, 400x400dpi (super fine character: optional expansion memory required)
Original size:	Maximum A3 or 11"x 17" (DLT)
Maximum scanning size:	Standard: A3, 297mm x 432mm Irregular: 297mm x 1200mm
Transmission protocol:	Recommended: T.38 Annex protocol, TCP, UDP/IP communication
Compatible machines:	IP-Fax compatible machines
IP-Fax transmission function:	Specify IP address and send fax to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of sending fax from a G3 fax connected to the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.
IP-Fax reception function:	Receive a fax sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of receiving fax from a G3 fax connected the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.

5.5 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION



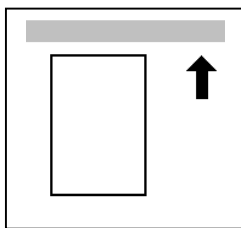
Component	Code	No.	Remarks
FCU	B799	2	Included with fax unit
MBU		3	
FCU Interface		1	
Interface Board	B780	5	Included with optional G3 unit.
G3 Board		6	
Expansion Memory	G578	4	Common with B180.
Handset Type 1018		A646	Common with B003, B079
Marker Type 30	H903		Refill for stamp ink.

PRINTER/SCANNER OPTION
B783

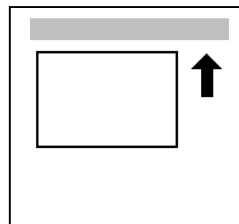
Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	See Core Tech Manual for details
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Lengthwise, SEF
(Short Edge Feed)



Sideways, LEF
(Long Edge Feed)

Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

 WARNING
FAILURE TO OBEY WARNING INFORMATION COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.

 CAUTION
Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.

IMPORTANT

- ALWAYS OBEY THESE GUIDELINES TO AVOID SERIOUS PROBLEMS SUCH AS MISFEEDS, DAMAGE TO ORIGINALS, LOSS OF VALUABLE DATA AND TO PREVENT DAMAGE TO THE MACHINE. BOLD IS ADDED FOR EMPHASIS.**

NOTE: This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

PRINTER/SCANNER OPTION B783

TABLE OF CONTENTS

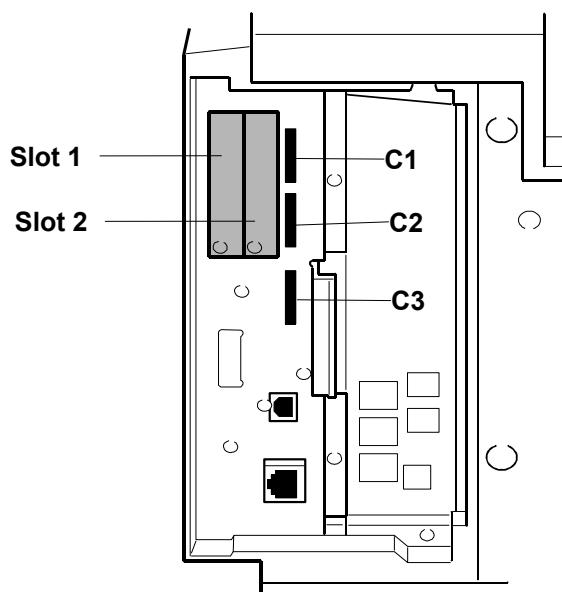
1. INSTALLATION.....	1
1.1 OVERVIEW	1
Board, SD Card Slots.....	1
Board Slots	2
1.2 INSTALLING SD CARDS	3
1.2.1 SD CARDS	3
1.3 MERGING APPLICATIONS ON ONE SD CARD	4
1.3.1 OVERVIEW	4
1.3.2 MERGING APPLICATIONS	5
1.3.3 UNDO EXEC	6
1.4 INSTALLING CONTROLLER OPTIONS	7
1.4.1 P/S MODULE (B783), 256 MB MEMORY (G818)	7
Accessories	7
Printer/Scanner Installation	8
1.4.2 USB/NIC FUNCTION ENABLE	10
1.4.3 IEEE 1284 (B679).....	11
1.4.4 IEEE 1394 INTERFACE KIT (B581).....	12
UP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394.....	13
1.4.5 IEEE 802.11B INTERFACE KIT (G813)	14
1.4.6 BLUETOOTH UNIT 2045 (B736).....	17
1.4.7 POSTSCRIPT 3 UNIT (B757).....	18
1.4.8 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER (B609).....	19
1.4.9 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS	20
2. SERVICE TABLES.....	21
2.1 PRINTER SERVICE TABLE.....	21
2.2 SCANNER SERVICE TABLE	22
3. DETAILS.....	23
3.1 OVERVIEW	23
4. SPECIFICATIONS.....	24
4.1 PRINTER CONTROLLER (GENERAL).....	24
4.2 USB SPECIFICATIONS	25
4.3 IEEE 802.11B SPECIFICATIONS	25
4.4 IEEE 1394 SPECIFICATIONS.....	25
4.5 BLUETOOTH SPECIFICATIONS.....	25
4.6 SCANNER SPECIFICATIONS	26
4.7 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES	27
4.7.1 PRINTER.....	27
4.7.2 PRINTER DRIVERS.....	27
4.7.3 SCANNER.....	28

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 OVERVIEW

Board, SD Card Slots

The machine controller box has two board slots and three SD card slots. Make sure that each board and SD card is put in the correct slot.



Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

The names of the slots for the boards and SD cards are embossed on the face of the controller plate.

Slot 1, Slot 2

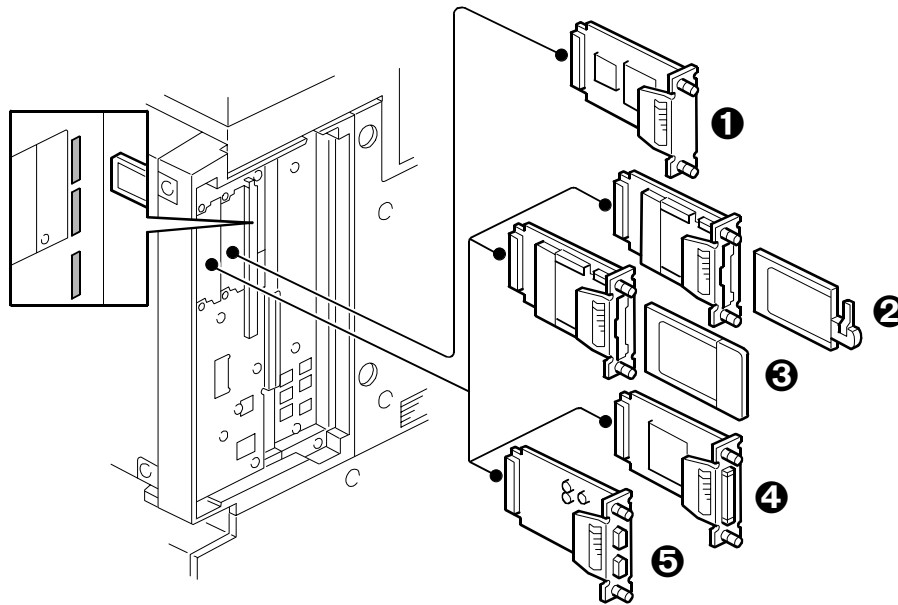
The optional boards are inserted here (see the next page).

SD Card Slots

C1	Printer/Scanner B783. The printer/scanner option also requires installation of the 256 MB memory DIMM and HDD unit.
C2	PostScript3 B720 or Data Overwrite Security B735. The DOS option can be moved to the PostScript SD card if both options will be used.
C3	Service slot for firmware version updates, moving applications to other SD cards, and downloading/uploading NVRAM contents.

Board Slots

Two slots are available for the following boards:



Slot	Board
1 or 2	❶ File Format Converter B609 (MLB)
1 or 2	❷ Bluetooth Interface Unit B736* ¹
1 or 2	❸ IEEE802.11b G813 – Wireless LAN* ¹
1 or 2	❹ IEEE1284 Interface Board B679 – Centronics* ¹
1 or 2	❺ IEEE1394 Interface Board B581 – FireWire* ¹

*¹ Only one of these boards can be installed at one time.

1.2 INSTALLING SD CARDS

⚠ WARNING!

Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you install a controller option.

Important!

- To prevent damage to the controller box, always do your work carefully. Do not put your hand or a tool into the box when you remove the controller box or install an option.
- To prevent damage to the circuits on the boards, always touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch electronic components.

1.2.1 SD CARDS

SD cards are held in position by a small spring-lock mechanism.

1. To install an SD card, push it into the slot until it stops, then release it.
2. To remove an SD card, push the SD card in carefully to release it, and then remove it from the slot.

Important: To prevent damage to the SD card or the slot lock, always push the card in, to release it, before you try to remove it.

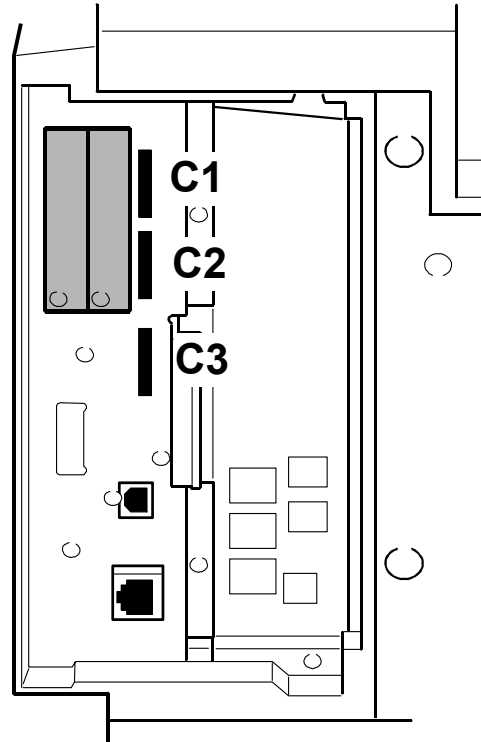
Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

1.3 MERGING APPLICATIONS ON ONE SD CARD

1.3.1 OVERVIEW

The machine has three SD card slots:

- **C1** is for the printer/scanner option only.
- **C2** is for either PostScript3 or the Data Overwrite Security SD card. If both options are to be installed, the DOS application can be moved to the PS3 SD card. (➡1.3)
- **C3** is used for servicing only. Otherwise this slot should always be empty.



Important

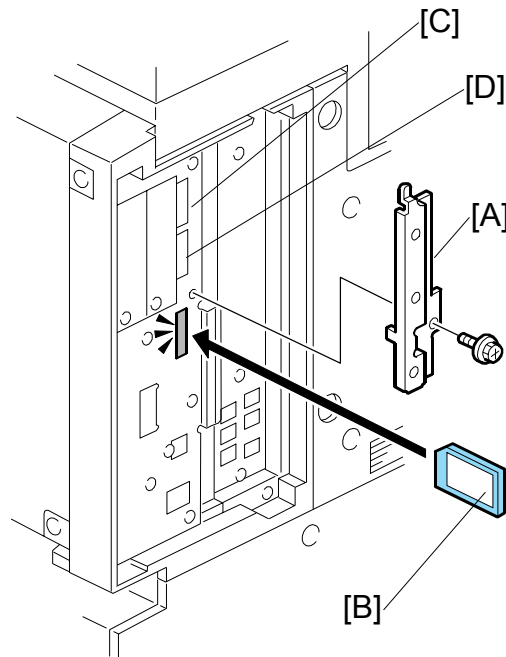
- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program to the target SD card.
- Do not use an SD card if it was used with a computer before this time. Correct operation is not guaranteed if this type of SD card is used.
- The SD card is the only evidence that the customer is licensed to use the application program. The service technician may occasionally need to check the SD card and its data to solve problems. SD cards must be stored in a safe location at the work site.
- A licensing agreement prohibits copying of the PostScript SD card. However, you can copy an application from another SD card to the PS SD card.
- If an SD card was used to combine applications on that card, that SD card cannot be used for a different function.

1.3.2 MERGING APPLICATIONS

Do this procedure to put more than one application on one SD card.

This procedure shows you how to move the DOS application to the PS3 SD card.

1. Turn off the copier.
2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x1).
3. Put the Source (DOS) SD card [B] in **C3**. This card contains the application that you want to copy.
NOTE: The PS SD card cannot be the source card, because it cannot be copied.
4. Put the Target (PS3) SD card in **C1 [C]**. The application on the card in **C3** will be copied to this card.
5. Open the front door.
6. Turn the copier on.
7. Go into the SP mode and select **SP5873 001**.
8. Touch "Execute".
9. Read the instructions on the display and touch "Execute" to start copying.
10. When the display tells you copying is completed, touch "Exit".
11. Turn the copier off.
12. Remove the Source SD card from **C3**. Remove the target SD card from **C1** and insert it in **C2 [D]**.
13. Turn the copier on.
14. Go into the User Tools mode and check that all the applications on the SD card in **C2** are enabled:
 User Tools> System Settings> Administrator Tools> Firmware Version> Next
15. Turn the copier off again, then:
 - Attach the SD card slot cover.
 - Tape the copied source card (DOS) to the faceplate of the controller box.
 - Attach the rear cover of the machine.



Important!

- After an SD card is copied, it cannot be used. But it must be stored in the front door, to serve as proof of purchase by the customer.
- The original card can also be used to perform an undo procedure (SP 5873 002). Before you put the card in the front cover, label it carefully so that you can identify it easily if you need to do the undo procedure (see the next page).

1.3.3 UNDO EXEC

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Put the SD card with the merged applications in **C1**.
3. Put the original destination SD card (the one taped to the faceplate of the controller box) into **C3**.
NOTE: The SD card in **C3** must be the original SD card of the application you want to move from **C1** to **C3**. You cannot use any blank SD card in **C3**.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Go into the SP mode and do **SP5873-002** (Undo Exec)
6. Follow the messages on the operation panel to complete the procedure.
7. Turn the main switch off.
8. Remove the SD cards from the slots.
9. Turn the main switch on.

1.4 INSTALLING CONTROLLER OPTIONS

1.4.1 P/S MODULE (B783), 256 MB MEMORY (G818)

Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Paper Sensor.....	1
2. Paper Limit Sensor Unit.....	1
3. Tapping Screws M3 x8	2
4. Pan Head Screw M3 x 8	1
5. Ferrite Core.....	1
6. Stamp	1
7. CD-ROM (Printer)	1
8. CD-ROM (Scanner)	1
9. Conductive Tape (for Bluetooth option)	1
10. Printer/Scanner SD	

Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

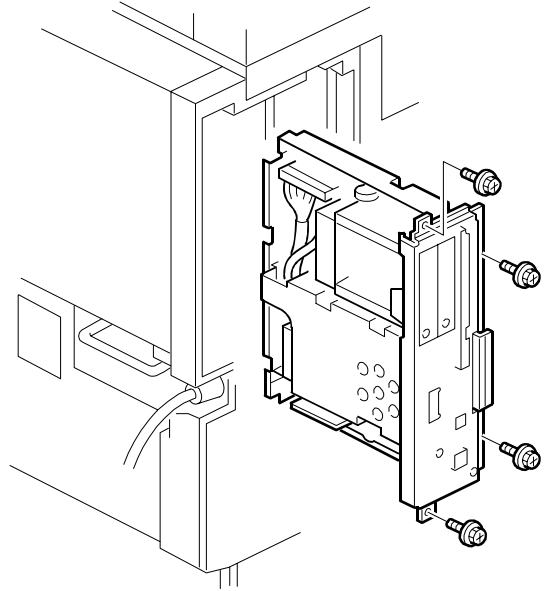
INSTALLING CONTROLLER OPTIONS

Printer/Scanner Installation

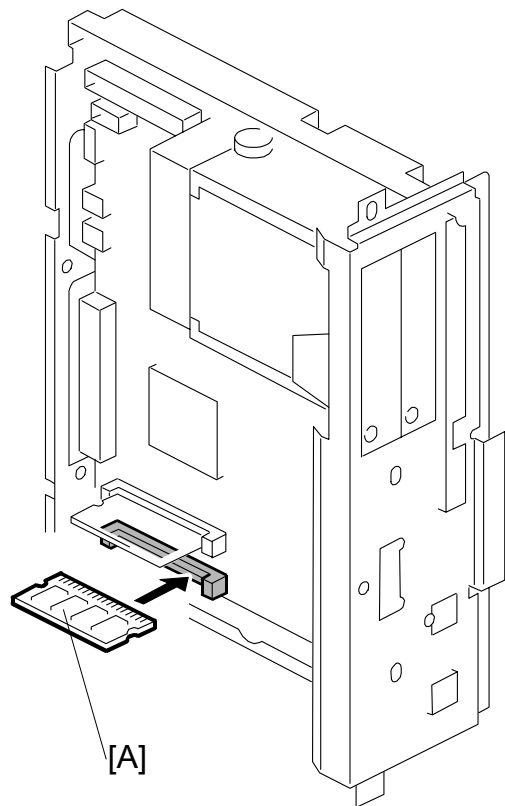
⚠ CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

1. Remove the application cover (⚙ x1).
2. Remove controller board [A] (⚙ x1).



3. Install the 256 MB memory DIMM [A].
(➡ 1.2)
4. Reinstall the controller board.



5. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x1).
6. Insert the Printer/Scanner SD card [B] in SD card slot C1.
7. Reattach the covers.
8. Connect the LAN cable to the "NIC" connection.
9. Connect the USB cable to the "USB" connection.
10. Remove the 1st, 2nd, 4th, and 5th blank key tops.

NOTE: The 3rd blank keytop from the top is reserved for the "Fax" keytop. Do not remove it at this time.

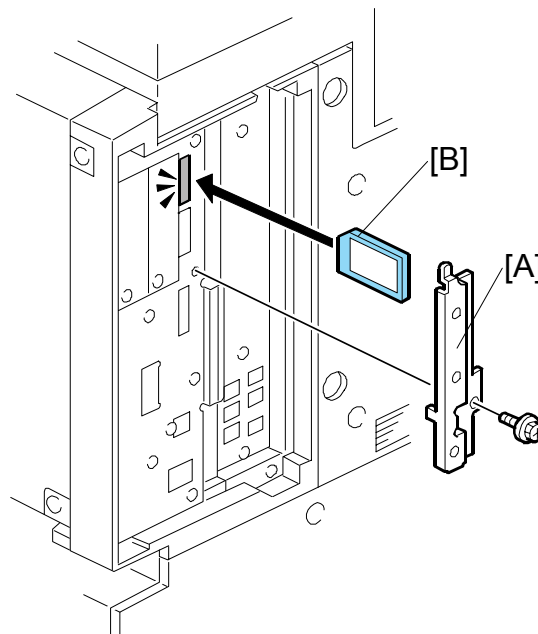
11. Replace the blank keytops:

- ❶ Copy
- ❷ Document Server
- ❸ Printer
- ❹ Scanner

12. Connect the machine's power cord and turn the main power switch on.
13. Enable the network and USB functions.

Important: The NIB and USB functions must be enabled with SP5985. These functions are built into the controller.

- To enable the Ethernet function, enter the SP mode and set SP5985-001 (On Board NIC) to "1" (Enable).
- To enable the USB function, enter the SP mode and set SP5985-002 (On Board USB) to "1" (Enable).



Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

21. If there was no HDD in the machine before you installed the printer/scanner kit, do **SP5846 41** to let the user get access to the address book.

Important

- This SP must be done immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a machine that previously had no HDD.
- The first time the machine power is turned on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it on the new HDD. But, only the system administrator can get access to the new address book on the HDD at this time.
- If you do SP5846 41 immediately after power on, then all users can use the address book.

NOTE: It is not necessary to format the HDD.

1.4.2 USB/NIC FUNCTION ENABLE

The NIB and USB functions are built into the controller. Installation procedures for these functions are not necessary. However, these functions must be enabled with SP5985.

1. If you want to use the Ethernet function, enter the SP mode and set SP5985-001 (On Board NIC) to "1" (Enable).
2. If you want to use the USB function, enter the SP mode and set SP5985-002 (On Board USB) to "1" (Enable).

1.4.3 IEEE 1284 (B679)

Accessories

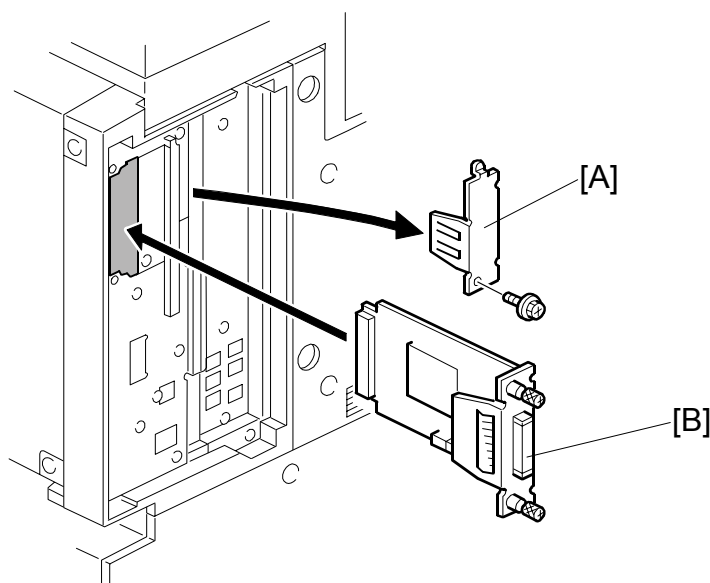
Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. IEEE 1284 Interface Board B679.....	1

CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

NOTE: You can only install one of these network interfaces: IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284 (Parallel/Centronics), IEEE1394 (FireWire), Bluetooth.



Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

1. Remove the cover [A] of board **Slot 1 or 2** (⌘ x1)
2. Install the interface board [B] (⌘ x2 knob screws)
NOTE: Use a screwdriver to tighten the knob-screws. Do not tighten manually, because this can disconnect the board.
3. Reattach the application cover (⌘ x1)

1.4.4 IEEE 1394 INTERFACE KIT (B581)

Accessories

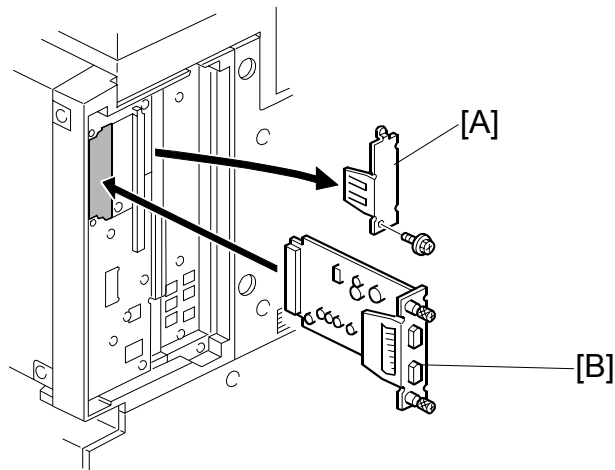
Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. IEEE 1394 Interface Board B581	1

⚠ CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

NOTE: You can only install one of these network interface boards: IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284 (Parallel/Centronics), IEEE1394 (FireWire), or Bluetooth.



1. Remove the cover [A] of board **Slot 1 or 2** (⌘ x1).
2. Install the interface board [B] (⌘ x1 knob screw).
NOTE: Use a screwdriver to tighten the knob-screw. Do not tighten manually, because this can disconnect the board.
3. Reattach the application cover (⌘ x1).

UP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 1394. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

1. Press the "User Tools/Counter" key.
2. On the touch panel, press "System Settings".
3. Press "Interface Settings".
4. Press "IEEE1394".
5. Press the following soft keys on the touch panel. Then select the following settings:
 - "IP Address". Select the "AUTO-Obtain (DHCP)" or "Specify". When you select "Specify", you can set the IP Address and Subnet Mask manually.
 - "IP over 1394".
 - Enable or disable this setting as required. This setting enables IP over 1394 as the default setting for the printing method.
 - "SCSI Print". Enable or disable this setting as required. This setting enables SCSI Print as the default setting for the printing method.
 - "Bi-directional SCSI Print". Switch bi-directional printing on or off for SCSI print.

SP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394

The following SP commands can be set for IEEE 1394.

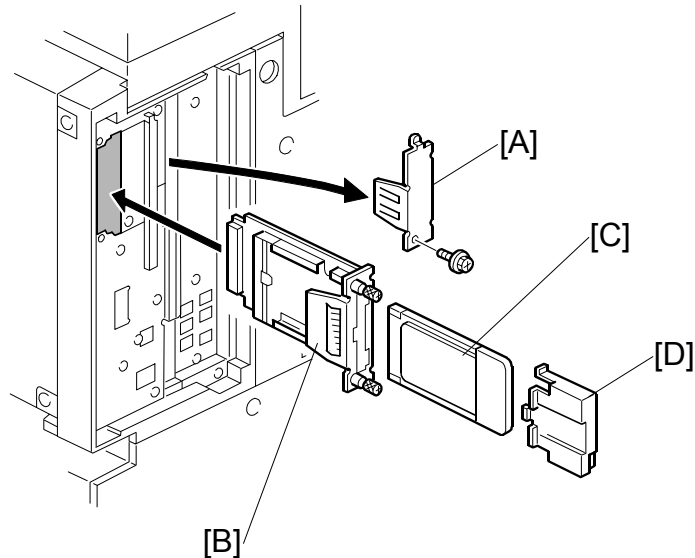
SP No.	Name	Function
5839 004	Host Name	Sets the name of the device used on the network. Example: RNPXXXXXXXXXX
5839 007	Cycle Master	Enables or disables cycle master function of the IEEE 1394 standard bus.
5839 008	BCR Mode	Sets the BCR (Broadcast Channel Register) setting for the Auto Node operation for the standard IEEE1394 bus for when IRM is not in use. The following three settings are available: "Standard," "IRM Color Copy," and "Always Effective."
5839 009	IRM 1394a Check	Determines whether an IRM check for IEEE 1394a is conducted for the Auto Node when IRM is not used.
5839 010	Unique ID	Enables the "Node_Unique_Id" setting for enumeration on the standard IEEE 1394 bus.
5839 011	Logout	Determines how successive initiator login requests are handled during login in for SBP-2.
5839 012	Login	Enables or disables exclusive login for SBP-2.
5839 013	Login MAX	Sets the limit for the number of logins for SBP-2. Range: 1 ~ 62.

1.4.5 IEEE 802.11B INTERFACE KIT (G813)

Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. IEEE 802.11b Board	1
2. PCI Card	1



CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

NOTE: You can only install one of the following network interfaces at the same time: IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284 (Parallel/Centronics), IEEE1394 (FireWire), Bluetooth.

1. Remove the cover [A] of board **Slot 1 or 2** (⌀ x1)
2. Attach the interface board [B] to the controller board (⌀ x1 knob screw).
NOTE: Use a screwdriver to tighten the knob-screws. Do not tighten manually, because this can disconnect the board.
3. With the printed side facing the front of the machine, insert the interface card [C] board.
4. Attach the antenna cap [D].

UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 802.11b. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

NOTE: You cannot use the wireless LAN if you use Ethernet.

1. Press the "User Tools/Counter" key.
2. On the touch panel, press "System Settings".
NOTE: The Network I/F (default: Ethernet) must be set for either Ethernet or wireless LAN.
3. Select "Interface Settings" → "Network" (tab) → "Network I/F Setting"
4. Press "IEEE 802.11b". Only the wireless LAN options show.
5. **Communication Mode.** Select either "802.11 Ad hoc", "Ad hoc" or "Infrastructure".
6. **SSID Setting.** Enter the SSID setting. (The setting is case sensitive.)
7. **Channel.** You need this setting when Ad Hoc Mode is selected.
 Range: 1 ~ 14 (default: 11)
NOTE: The allowed range for the channel settings may vary for different countries.
8. **WEP (Encryption) Setting.** The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) setting is designed to protect wireless data transmission. The same WEP key is required on the receiving side in order to unlock encoded data. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys.
 WEP:
 Selects "Active" or "Inactive". ("Inactive" is default.)
 Range of Allowed Settings:
 64 bit 10 characters
 128 bit 26 characters
9. **Transmission Speed.** Press the Next button to show more settings. Then select the transmission speed for the mode: Auto, 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps (default: Auto). This setting should match the distance between the closest machine or access point. This depends on which mode is selected.
NOTE: For the Ad Hoc Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest PC in the network. For the Infrastructure Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest access point.

11 Mbps	140 m (153 yd.)
5.5 Mbps	200 m (219 yd.)
2 Mbps	270 m (295 yd.)
1 Mbps	400 m (437 yd.)

INSTALLING CONTROLLER OPTIONS

10. Press “Return to Default” to initialize the wireless LAN settings.

Press “Yes” to initialize the following settings:

- Transmission mode
- Channel
- Transmission Speed
- WEP
- SSID
- WEP Key

SP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11b Wireless LAN

The following SP commands and UP modes can be set for IEEE 802.11b

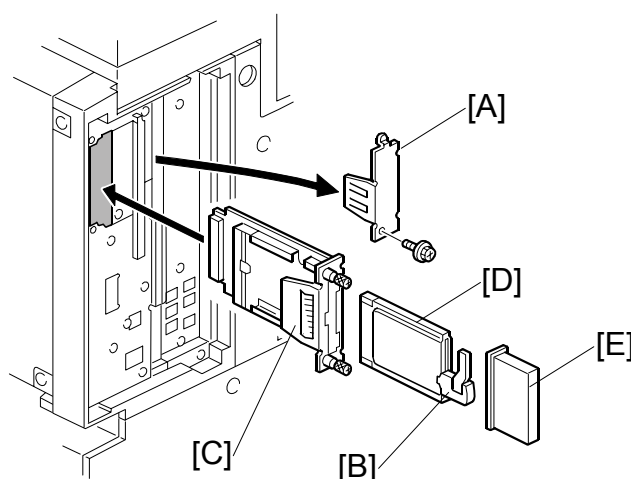
SP No.	Name	Function
5840 006	Channel MAX	Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for the country.
5840 007	Channel MIN	Sets the minimum range of the channels settings allowed for your country.
5840 011	WEP Key Select	Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00).
UP mode	Name	Function
	SSID	Used to confirm the current SSID setting.
	WEP Key	Used to confirm the current WEP key setting.
	WEP Mode	Used to show the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry.

1.4.6 BLUETOOTH UNIT 2045 (B736)

Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. Bluetooth Unit B736.....	1
2. PCI Card.....	1
3. Cap	1



Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

⚠ CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

NOTE: You can only install one of these network interfaces at the same time: IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284 (Parallel/Centronics), IEEE1394 (FireWire), Bluetooth.

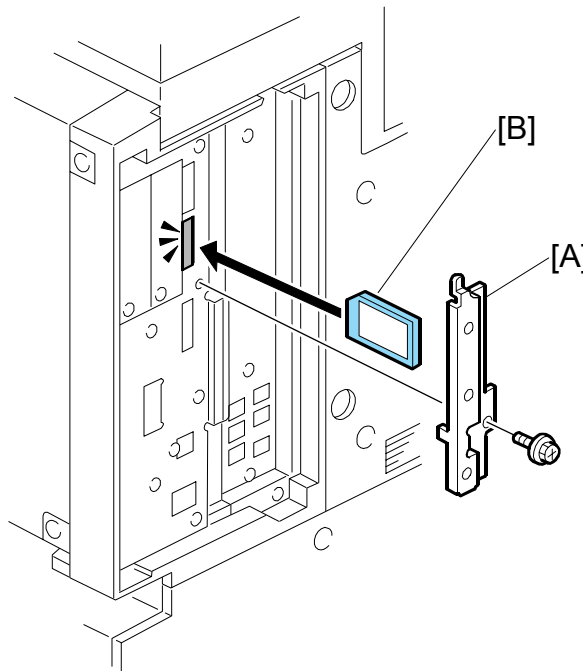
1. Remove the cover [A] of board **Slot 1 or 2** (⚙ x1).
2. Attach the conductive tape [B] to the Bluetooth card.
Important: Attach the tape to the card on the side of the card opposite to the position shown at [B]
3. Attach the interface board [C] to the controller board (⚙ x2 knob screws).
NOTE: Use a screwdriver to tighten the knob-screws. Do not tighten manually, because this can disconnect the board.
4. Install the Bluetooth card [D] in the slot in the Bluetooth unit.
5. Attach the antenna cap [E].

1.4.7 POSTSCRIPT 3 UNIT (B757)

Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. PostScript 3 Emulation SD Card	1
2. Decal	1



⚠ CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

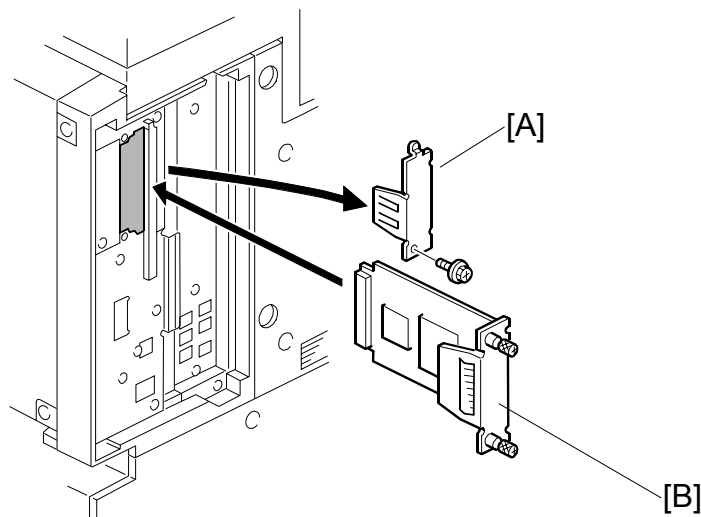
1. Remove the application cover [A] (⚙ x1).
2. With the printed side of the SD card [B] facing the rear of the machine, install the SD card in SD card slot **C2**. (➡1.2)
3. Reattach the application cover (⚙ x1).
4. Attach the “Adobe PostScript 3” decal to the front cover.

1.4.8 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER (B609)

Accessories

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. File Format Converter Board	1



Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

CAUTION

TURN OFF THE MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLY CORD.

1. Remove the cover [A] of Board **Slot 1 or 2** (⌘ x1).
2. Install the board [B] (⌘ x2 knob screws).
NOTE: Use a screwdriver to tighten the knob-screw. Do not tighten manually, because this can disconnect the board.
3. Reattach the application cover (⌘ x1).

Important:

- This option also requires installation of the Printer/Scanner Unit B783.

1.4.9 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS

1. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.
2. Enter the printer user mode and print the configuration page.
User Tools> Printer Settings> List Test Print> Config. Page

NOTE: The same data can also be printed by executing SP1-004 – Print Summary. All installed options are listed in the “System Reference” column.

2. SERVICE TABLES

2.1 PRINTER SERVICE TABLE

SP	Number/Bit SW		Initial	
1001	Bit Switch			
	001	Bit SW 1	00H	Adjusts the bit switch settings. Note: These bit switches are currently not being used
	002	Bit SW 2	00H	
	003	Bit SW 3	00H	
	004	Bit SW 4	00H	
	005	Bit SW 5	00H	
	006	Bit SW 6	00H	
	007	Bit SW 7	00H	
	008	Bit SW 8	00H	

1003	Clear setting			
	001	Initialize Printer System	Initializes the settings in the printer feature settings of UP mode.	
	002	Clear CSS Counter	DFU	
	003	Delete Program	DFU	
1004	Print Summary		Prints the printer summary sheet.	
1005	Display Version.		Displays the version of the controller firmware.	
1006	Sample/Proof Print		[0~1/0/1] 0: Link with Doc. Server 1: Enable	

7910	PDL Part No. Information			Returns a text string for the version.		
	RPCS	150	R55	156	PDF	162
	PS	151	RTIFF	157	BMLinks	163
	RPDL	152	PCL	156	PICTBRIDGE	164
	R98	153	PCLXL	159	FONT	180
	R16	154	MSIS	160	FONT1	181
	RPGL	155	MSIS (OPT)	161	FONT2	182

7911	PDL Version Information			Returns a text string for the version.		
	RPCS	150	R55	156	PDF	162
	PS	151	RTIFF	157	BMLinks	163
	RPDL	152	PCL	156	PICTBRIDGE	164
	R98	153	PCLXL	159	FONT	180
	R16	154	MSIS	160	FONT1	181
	RPGL	155	MSIS (OPT)	161	FONT2	182

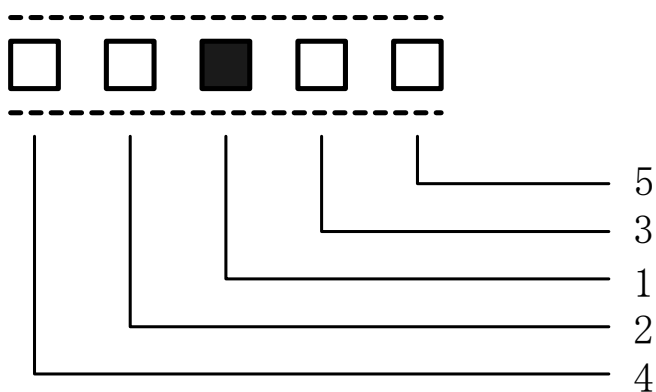
Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

2.2 SCANNER SERVICE TABLE

SP	Number/Name	Function/[Setting]
1004	Compression Type	Selects the compression type for binary picture processing. [1-3/1/1] 1: MH, 2: MR, 3: MMR
1005	Erase Margin	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. <i>If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin.</i> [0 – 5/0/1mm]
1009	Forbid Using TWAIN	Sets the system not to use the network TWAIN scanner driver. 0: Not forbidden (can use TWAIN) 1: Forbid using TWAIN driver.

SP	Number/Name	Function/[Setting]
2021	Compression level (grayscale)	
	These SP codes set the compression ratio for the grayscale processing mode that can be selected with the notch settings on the operation panel. Range: 5 (lowest ratio) $\leftrightarrow$ 95 (highest ratio)	
1	Level 3 (Middle I-Qual)	[5~95/40/1/step]
2	Level 2 (High I-Qual)	[5~95/50/1/step]
3	Level 4 (Low I-Qual)	[5~95/30/1/step]
4	Level 1 (Highest I-Qual)	[5~95/60/1/step]
5	Level 5 (Lowest I-Qual)	[5~95/20/1/step]

Compression Notch Assignment



3. DETAILS

3.1 OVERVIEW

Enhanced and New Printer Features Table

Feature	Status	Description
Sample Print	Enhanced	Outputs a single hard copy of the document so it can be checked for errors or irregularities. If the sample copy looks acceptable, the user can enter a number to print additional copies. This feature can be used before setting up large copy jobs.
Locked Print	Enhanced	Printing a document requires a password entry. This feature is useful for protecting sensitive information.
Hold Print	New	Documents are stored on the printer HDD (similar to a locked print) but printing does not require a password entry.
Stored Print	New	Documents are stored on the printer HDD and printed as needed. This is useful for documents that are printed frequently (applications, catalogs, etc.)

Printer Features Comparison Table

Model	Feature	Storage Capacity	Sort by User ID	Multiple File Print/Delete	Save at Power Off	File Password	Save After Printing
B135/B138	Sample Print	30* ¹	No	No	No	Yes (4-digit)	No
	Locked Print		No	No	No	NO	No
B264/B265	Sample Print	100* ¹	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (4-8 digits)	No
	Locked Print		Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
	Hold Print		Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
	Stored Print		Yes	Yes	Yes	Optional (4-8 digits)	Yes

*¹ Total number of files (includes all job types).

4. SPECIFICATIONS

4.1 PRINTER CONTROLLER (GENERAL)

Printing Speed:	Maximum 35 ppm (A4/LT LEF): B264 Maximum 45 ppm (A4/LT LEF): B265
Printer Languages:	PCLXL/PCL5e PostScript 3 (option) RPCS (Refined Printing Command Stream) - an original Ricoh PDL)
Resolution (Driver):	RPCS 200/600 dpi PS3 600 dpi PCL5e 300/600 dpi PCLXL 600 dpi
Resident Fonts:	PCL TrueType: 10, Intellifont: 35, International: 13, Bitmap: 1 PS3 Option fonts PS3
Connectivity	Std. RJ-45 network port (100BASE-TX, 10BASE-T, USB 2.0) Option IEEE1394 (FireWire), IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth, IEEE1284 (Centronics Parallel)
Network Protocols	TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, SMB (NetBIOS over TCP/IP), AppleTalk (Auto Switching)
RAM:	Maximum 384 MB (Resident 128 MB + Additional 256 MB) Note: Additional 256 MB is required for the printer/scanner option.

4.2 USB SPECIFICATIONS

USB connectivity is built into the controller firmware.

Interface	USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data rates	480 Mbps (high speed), 12 Mbps (full speed), 1.5 Mbps (low speed)
	High speed mode is only supported by USB 2.0.

4.3 IEEE 802.11B SPECIFICATIONS

Standard applied	IEEE802.11b	
Data transmission rates	Speed	Distance
	11 Mbps	140 m (153 yd.)
	5.5 Mbps	200 m (219 yd.)
	2 Mbps	270 m (295 yd.)
	1 Mbps	400 m (437 yd.)
Network protocols	TCP/IP, Apple Talk, NetBEUI, IPX/SPX, SMB	
Bandwidth	2.4GHz (divided over 14 channels, 2400 to 2497 MHz for each channel)	

Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

4.4 IEEE 1394 SPECIFICATIONS

Interface	IEEE 1394 (firewire)	
Number of Ports	2 ports	
Data Transmission Speed	400 Mbps, 200 Mbps, 100 Mbps	
Available Features, Functions, Protocols	SCSI print	IP over 1384
	Print	Print, Scan
	SBP-2	TCP/IP

4.5 BLUETOOTH SPECIFICATIONS

Transmission Specifications	Based on Bluetooth V1.1
Data Transfer Speed	1 Mbps
Profile	Hard Copy Cable Replacement Profile (HCRP), Serial Port Profile (SPP), BIP
Distance Between Devices	10 m (The maximum distance when using outdoors, otherwise depends on the office environment.)

SPECIFICATIONS

4.6 SCANNER SPECIFICATIONS

Standard Scanner Resolution:	Main scan/Sub scan 600 dpi
Scanning Speed	52 ppm, E-mail/Scan-to-Folder/Network Delivery Scanner (A4 LEF, Text 200 dpi, MH Compression)
Available scanning Resolution Range:	100 ~ 1200 dpi; When used as a Network TWAIN scanner. 100, 200, 300, 400, 600 dpi; When used as a network delivery scanner or for sending e-mail
Grayscales:	8 bits/pixel
Interface:	Ethernet 10/100BASE TX, IP over IEEE1394, Wireless LAN 802.11b
Compression Method:	MH, MR, MMR (Binary Picture Processing) JPEG (Grayscale Processing)
Video Memory Capacity:	384 MB
Image Storage Capacity:	Number of originals per file: Maximum 1,000 pages Maximum of files: 3000 files
Max. Storage on Doc. Svr.	9,000 pp. (B&W (ITUT No. 1/200 dpi MMR)

4.7 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

4.7.1 PRINTER

The printer drivers and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM. An auto-run installer allows you to select which components to install.

4.7.2 PRINTER DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/Me	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003	Macintosh
PCL 6	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PCL 5e	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PS3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RPCS	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

- NOTE:** 1) The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.
- 2) The PS3 drivers are all genuine AdobePS drivers, except for Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, which uses Microsoft PS. A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.

Printer/
Scanner
Option B783

Utility Software

Software	Description
Agfa Monotype Font Manager 2000 (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer.
SmartNetMonitor for Admin (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP/Server 2003)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available.
SmartNetMonitor for Client (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP/Server 2003)	A printer management utility for client users. Peer-to-peer printing utility and parallel/recovery printing functions are included.
1394 Utility (Win 2000/XP)	A utility for removal IEEE 1394 printers.
LAN-Fax M3 Driver (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP)	This driver allows use of the LAN-Fax functions by installing the LAN-Fax driver, Address Book, and LAN-Fax Cover Sheet Editor.
Printer Utility for Mac	This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients.
USB Printing Support	A utility for the USB 2.0 board. A computer running Windows 98 SE or Windows ME requires installation of this utility.
Acrobat Reader	A utility that allows reading PDF files.

4.7.3 SCANNER

The scanner driver and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM.

Scanner Driver

- Network Twain Driver for Win95/98/Me/NT4/2000/XP/Server 2003

Scanner Utilities

- Scan Router V2 Lite for Win95/98/Me/NT4.0/2000/XP
- Desk Top Binder V2 Lite for Win95/98/Me/NT4.0/2000/XP/Server 2003